DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 265 091 SO 016 942

AUTHOR	Nhi, Do Dien; And Others
TITLE	The United States History (Laotian Edition). [34 Self-Learning Packets for Laotian Students.]
INSTITUTION	George Mason Univ., Fairfax, VA. Indochina Inst.
SPONS AGENCY	Department of Education, Washington, DC.
PUB DATE	Oct 84
NOTE	713p.; For Vietnamese and Khmer translations, see respectively SO 016 941 and SO 016 943. Materials produced as a joint effort between George Mason University, Montgomery County, Maryland Public Schools, Prince William County, Virginia Public Schools, and the National Association for Vietnamese American Education.
AVAILABLE FROM	The Indochina Institute, George Mason University, 4400 University Dr., Fairfax, VA 22030
PUB TYPE	Guides - Classroom Use - Materials (For Learner) (051) -- Multilingual/Bilingual Materials (171)
LANGUAGE	English; Lao
EDRS PRICE	MF04 Plus Postage. PC Not Available from EDRS.
DESCRIPTORS	American Studies; Asian Americans; Bilingual Instructional Materials; Civil War (United States); Colonial History (United States); Global Approach; High Schools; *History Instruction; *History Textbooks; Industrialization; Land Settlement; *Laotians; Modern History; Reconstruction Era; Revolutionary War (United States); Slavery; Social Studies; United States Government (Course); *United States History; Womens Studies

ABSTRACT

Designed primarily for Indochinese students in grades 9-12, 34 United States history self-learning packets are presented in eight sections. The publication could be used by mainstream teachers who have a number of limited English proficient (LEP) Laotian students in their classes or by parents to tutor their children. The packets were adapted from "Two Centuries of Progress: U.S. History" (Laidlaw Brothers) and include both Lao and English translations. Section I deals with the first peoples to migrate to this continent, American Indian life and societies, Europeans settling the Americas, the English in North America, the thirteen colonies, and the American Revolution. Section II, "Establishing a New Nation," includes the following subtitles, "A Nation Arises," "A Nation Takes Shape," and "The First Government." Section III focuses on the Jeffersonian Era, the westward movement, the Age of Jackson, and slavery and the antislavery movement. Section IV, "Conflict and Reunion," examines the period between the slavery dispute and the Civil War, the Missouri Compromise, a nation divided and reunited, and the election of 1876. Section V, "The Transformation of a Nation," discusses industrialism, the emergence of modern America, a changing social order, and the populist crusade. Packets in sections VI through VIII focus on "The Challenge of Power and Prosperity," "Depression and Global Conflict," and "World Leadership in the Nuclear Age." A glossary concludes the publication. (LH)

ED265091

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION
CENTER (ERIC)

☒ This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it.

☐ Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality.

- Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official NIE position or policy.

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL IN MICROFICHE ONLY HAS BEEN GRANTED BY
Nguyen Manh
Hung
TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)."

THE UNITED STATES HISTORY

ພົງສາວະດານ ອະເມຣິກາ

General Editor:
Nguyen Manh Hung
Material Development Specialist:
Do Dien Nhi
Consultants:
Nguyen Ngoc Bich
Leonor Guillen, Ann Hengerer,
Francis Lynn, Nydia Piatz,
Cung Thuc Tien, Tran Nhu Trang.
Translators:
Sitthanary Kim (Khmer)
Voradeth Ditthavong (Lao)
Graphic Artist:
Ho Dac Ngoc

George Mason University
Indochina Institute

October 1984

FOREWORD

These United States self-study learning packets were developed under a grant from the Department of Education. They were designed primarily for Indochinese students in grades 9-12. They could be used by ESL teachers who may or may not speak one of the Indochinese languages. They could be used by mainstream teachers who have a number of LEP Indochinese students in their classes. They could also be used by parents to tutor their children. The only requirement is that either the parents or the students must be able to read their national languages.

These materials are the result of a joint effort between the Indochina Institute of George Mason University, Montgomery County Public Schools, Prince William County Public Schools, and the National Association for Vietnamese American Education. The main draft of the English text and its Vietnamese version were developed by Do Dien Nhi. They were then revised and edited by a team consisting of Leonor Guillen, Ann Hengerer, Francis Lynn, Nydia Piatz, Cung Thuc Tien, and myself. Other consultants included Nguyen Ngoc Bich and Tran Nhu Trang. The Khmer translation was done by Sathanary Kim. The Lao translation was done by Voradeth Ditthavong. Typing of the English text and its Vietnamese translation were carried out by Do Van; of the Khmer translation by Puthsarak Mum, and of the Lao translation by Phouvimalakey Ditthavong. Graphic works and layouts were done by Ho Dac Ngoc. Reproduction of the materials were done by GMU Duplicating Services.

We would like to express our sincere appreciation to those people whose assistance has made it possible for us to carry out this project to its conclusion. We also would like to thank Laidlaw Brothers for giving us permission to adapt Two Century of Progress: U.S. History. We hope that these packets will help LEP Indochinese students to have a better understanding of American history and facilitate their transition into the mainstream classrooms.

Nguyen Manh Hung
Director
Indochina Institute

U.S. HISTORY

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

SECTION I: SETTLING THE AMERICAS 01

Packet 1: The First America 02

1.1. Early Settlers in the Americas 03
1.2. Indian life in North America 05
1.3. Indian Societies 06
1.4. Europeans discover the Americas 10

Packet 2: Europeans Settle in the Americas 26

2.1. The Europeans in the Americas 28
2.2. The Spaniards in the Americas 28
2.3. The French in the Americas 32

Packet 3: The English in North America 49

3.1. The English Established the Colonies 50
3.2. Other English Colonies in North America 55

Packet 4: The Thirteen Colonies in North America 69

4.1. The New England Colonies 71
4.2. The Central Colonies 73
4.3. The Southern Colonies 74

Packet 5: The American Revolution 91

5.1. The French and Indian War 92
5.2. The Causes of the American Revolutionary War 95
5.3. The Revolutionary War 98

SECTION II: ESTABLISHING A NEW NATION 118

Packet 6: A Nation Arises 119

6.1. Problems of the New Nation 120

Page

6.2. The Great Compromise 121
6.3. Understanding the Constitution 124

Packet 7: A Nation Takes Shapes 138

7.1. The New Government and its Three Branches 140
7.2. The Bill of Rights 142
7.3. The New Nation Faces External Problems 142

Packet 8: The First Government of the United States 158

8.1. The First President: George Washington 159
8.2. The President and the Constitution . . 159
8.3. The Formation of Political Parites . . 162

SECTION III: PROGRESS OF THE NEW NATION 177

Packet 9: The Jefferson Era 178

9.1. Jefferson in Power 179
9.2. The Louisiana Purchase 181
9.3. The War of 1812: the Treaty of Ghent 182

Packet 10: The Westward Movement 201

10.1. The Lewis and Clark Expedition 202
10.2. The Mountain Men and the West 202
10.3. Texas and the Mexican War 203

Packet 11: The Age of Jackson 218

11.1. The Industrial Revolution 219
11.2. King Cotton 220
11.3. Sectionalism 221
11.4. The Age of Jackson 222

Packet 12: Slavery and the Antislavery Movement . 240

12.1. Slavery in the United States 241
12.2. Life as a Slave 242
12.3. The Abolitionist Movement 242
12.4. Slave Rebellions 243

Page

SECTION IV: CONFLICT AND REUNION 257

Packet 13: From the Slavery Dispute to the Civil War 258

13.1. The Missouri Compromise 259
13.2. The Compromise of 1850 261
13.3. The Kansas-Nebraska Act of 1854 263
13.4. The Election of 1860 264

Packet 14: A Nation Divided 278

14.1. Causes of the Civil War 279
14.2. Secession from the Union 281
14.3. The Civil War Begins 281

Packet 15: A Nation Reunited 291

15.1. The Emancipation Proclamation 292
15.2. The Gettysburg Address 293
15.3. Victory and Defeat 294
15.4. The Thirteenth Amendement 295
15.5. Reconstruction in the South and the Status of the Blacks 296

Packet 16: The Election of 1876 309

16.1. Reconstruction and the Election of 1876 310
16.2. The Election of 1876: A Compromise between Republicans and Democrats . . . 312

SECTION V: THE TRANSFORMATION OF A NATION . . . 324

Packet 17: The Age of Industrialization 325

17.1. New Economic Developments 327
17.2. The Organization of Industry and Labor 329
17.3. The Response to Unionization 331

Packet 18: The Emerge of Modern America 343

18.1. The Period of Political Competition and Corruption 345
18.2. The Progressive Movements 346
18.3. The Nation Becomes a World Power 348

Page

Packet 19: A Changing Social Order 364

19.1. The Rise of the City 366
19.2. Patterns of Prejudice and Discrimination 368
19.3. The Indians and the Blacks 369
19.4. The Culture of a Dynamic Nation 371

Packet 20: The Populist Crusade 385

20.1. Famers' Problems 388
20.2. The Farmers' Party: the Populists . . . 389

SECTION VI: THE CHALLENGE OF POWER AND PROSPERITY 402

Packet 21: The Great Crusade 403

21.1. The Causes of the First World War . . . 405
21.2. The First World War 407
21.3. The United States and the War 408
21.4. The Search for a Lasting Peace 410

Packet 22: The Return to Normalcy 426

22.1. The Year after World War I: the Election of 1920 427
22.2. President Harding and the "Ohio Gang" 428
22.3. The Great Depression Begins 429
22.4. President Hoover and his fight against the Depression . . . 431

Packet 23: Society and the Roaring Twenties . . . 443

23.1. Americans on wheels and People on the move 444
23.2. Disturbance in the 1920's 445
23.3. Sports and Pastimes 447

Packet 24: The Women's Rights Movement 460

24.1. The Call for Equality the Seneca Falls Convention 461
24.2. The Women's Suffrage Movement 462
24.3. The Nineteenth Amendment 463

Page

SECTION VII: DEPRESSION AND GLOBAL CONFLICT . . . 476

Packet 25: The Era of Franklin Delano Roosevelt . 477

25.1. A Nation in Despair: Franklin Delano Roosevelt Elected . . . 479
25.2. The First New Deal 479
25.3. Restoring the Banking System 480
25.4. Jobs for the Unemployment 480
25.5. Helping the Farmers 480
25.6. The Tennessee Valley Authority (TVA) . 481
25.7. The Second New Deal 481

Packet 26: American Society during the Depression 496

26.1. Unemployment, Poverty and Hunger 497
26.2. The Arts, Literature, and Movies during the Depression 498
26.3. Medical Advances during the Depression . 499

Packet 27: Foreign Policy and Global Conflict . . 510

27.1. Foreign Economic Policy and the Good Neighbor Policy 512
27.2. The Rise of Dictators and the Beginning of the Second World War 513
27.3. The Attack on Pearl Harbor: Japan at War with the U.S. 516

Packet 28: The United States and the Second World War 531

28.1. The U.S. and the Allies 534
28.2. Liberating Europe 535
28.3. Defeating the Japanese 536
28.4. Creating the United States 538

Packet 29: The Modern Labor Movement 554

29.1. The Work Force and the Union 555
29.2. The Union Retreat 557
29.3. The Advance of Unionism 558
29.4. American Labor Today 559

SECTION VIII: WORLD LEADERSHIP IN THE NUCLEAR AGE 573

Page

Packet 30: The Challenge of World Leadership . . 574

30.1. The Roots of the Cold War 575
30.2. The Areas of Confrontation 576

Packet 31: The Quest for a Peaceful World 594

31.1. The World in the Postwar Era 595
31.2. The World in the Detente Era 597
31.3. The End of the Detente Era 598

Packet 32: Politics and Economic Growth 614

32.1. The Politics of Change 615
32.2. The Challenge of Economic Expansion . . 617
32.3. The Impact of Economic Change 618

Packet 33: Politics and Social Change 635

33.1. Politics and Individual Rights: Threats to Civil Liberties 636
33.2. Minorities and Civil Rights 637
33.3. A Society of Abundance: People on the Move 638
33.4. New Patterns of Living 639
33.5. Safeguarding the Environment 646

Packet 34: The Struggle for Racial Equality and the Making of a Multi-Ethnic Society . 656

34.1. The Blacks in the Struggle for Equality 657
34.2. Indians: Americans of Asian Descent, Spanish Surname Americans, and the Struggle for Equality 659
34.3. The Southeast Asian Refugees: Our Newest Immigrants 661
34.4. A Nation of Ethnic Groups 663

GLOSSARY 679

Section I
Settling The Americas

ໝວດ ໑ : ການຄົ້ນພົບອະເມຣິກາ

ພາກ ໑ : ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຈຳພວກທຳອິດ

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ :

settler: ຜູ້ຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານຢູ່ໃນແຫ່ງອື່ນຫຼືປະເທດອື່ນ

The early settlers in the Americas were Indians.

Ice Age: ສໄໝນ້ຳກອນ

During the Ice Age, the North Pole was covered by a thick ice sheet.

land bridge: ດິນທີ່ຕໍ່ອອກຈາກທະວີບໜຶ່ງໄປຫາອີກທະວີບໜຶ່ງ

People wlked over the land bridge to reach the river bank.

animal herd: ຝູງສັດ

The Indians hunted the animal herd in the Great Plain for meat and skins.

society: ສັງຄົມ

The Indians created their own societies and customs.

environment: ສິ່ງແວດລ້ອມ

Life of the early settlers in North America was influenced by the environment.

humidity: ຄວາມຊຸ່ມຊື່ນ

The humidity heps bamboos to grow fast.

village: ໝູ່ບ້ານ

There are many villages along the Mekong River.

squash: ໝາກບວບ

There are many kinds of squash in the farm market.

league: ສະຫະພັນ

Five Iroquois tribes joined together to form a league called the league of Five Nations.

agriculture: ກະສິກັມຫຼືການປູກຝັງ

Agriculture was a major part of Pueblo economic system.

loom: ຫູກ

The Chinese used looms to make beautifull silk.

Plateau: ພູພຽງ

The climate is cool on the high plateau.

Western hemisphere: ຊີກໂລກຕາເວັນຕົກ

Europeans did not know about the Western hemisphere before 1492.

Saga: ນິຍາຍ

Leif Ericson's trip to Vinland became a saga in Norway.

spice: ເຄື່ອງປຸງອາຫານແນວຮັດເຜັດ

Chinese used a lot of spices in their food.

perfume: ນ້ຳຫອມ

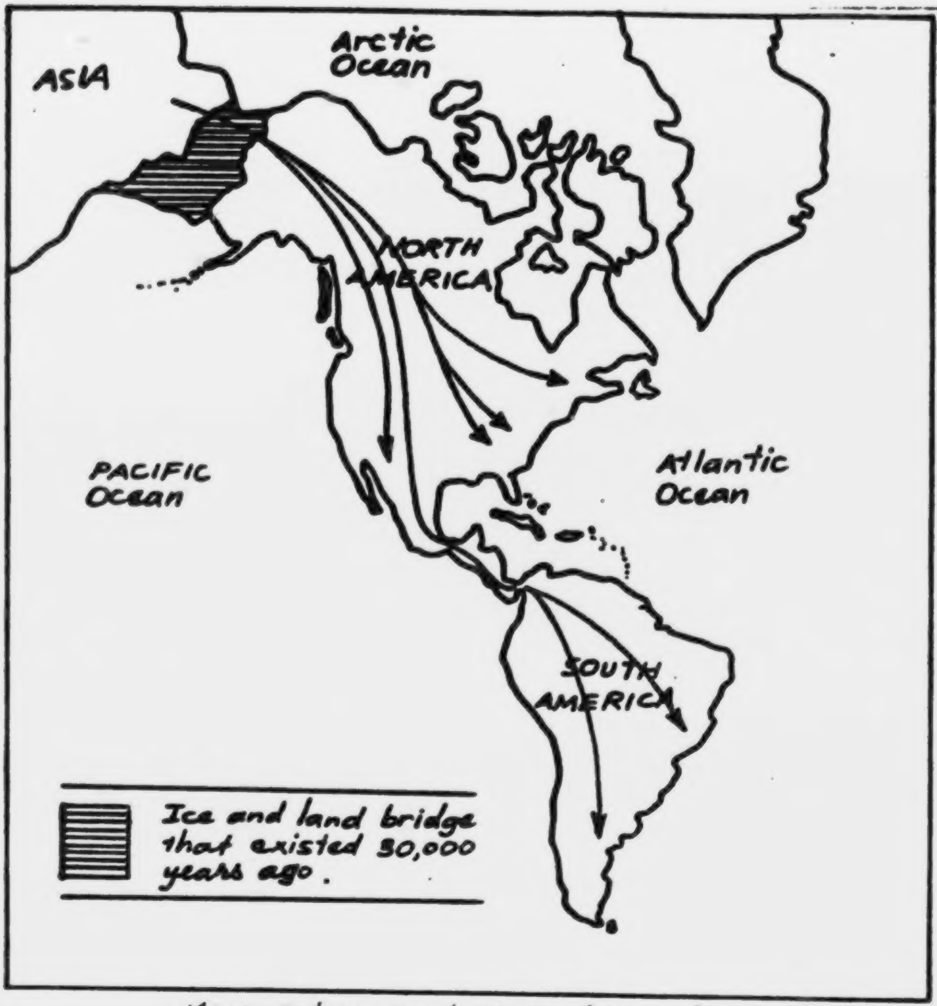
There is some expensive perfume in department stores.

voyage: ການເດີນທາງ

Columbus started his voyage from Spain.

READING

1.1. EARLY SETTLERS IN THE AMERICAS


ASIA
Arctic Ocean
NORTH AMERICA
PACIFIC Ocean
Atlantic Ocean
SOUTH AMERICA
Ice and land bridge that existed 30,000 years ago.

Movement of people from Asia into North and South America.

1.1.1. The ancestors of the people who lived in the Americas came from Asia during the Ice Age. During that time, there was a land bridge connecting the Northeastern part of Asia and Alaska. Hunters who followed animal herds and pursued game over the land bridge eventually came to Alaska. Later, the land bridge was covered by water and people forgot the land on the other side of the Bering Sea. They started to establish their own societies and created their own ways of life.

1.2. INDIAN LIFE IN NORTH AMERICA

1.2.1. In North America, Indian life adapted to the environment. Indian food, housing, clothing and tools came from the nearby area. Certain tribes, such as the Cherokees, Choctaws, Creeks, and Seminoles, adapted very well to their environment. They farmed, hunted, and fished. Their clothing was made from animal skins and their houses from wood found in nearby forests.

1.2.2. The Indians who lived on the Plains and in the Rocky Mountain areas depended on hunting and gathering seeds and wild plants for their food. They used the animal skins to build tepees and to make clothing. Some famous tribes found in this area were Wichitas, Pawnees, Comanches, Mandans, and Osages.

1.2.3. Along the Western sea coast there was plenty of food because of the humidity and the long rainy season. The

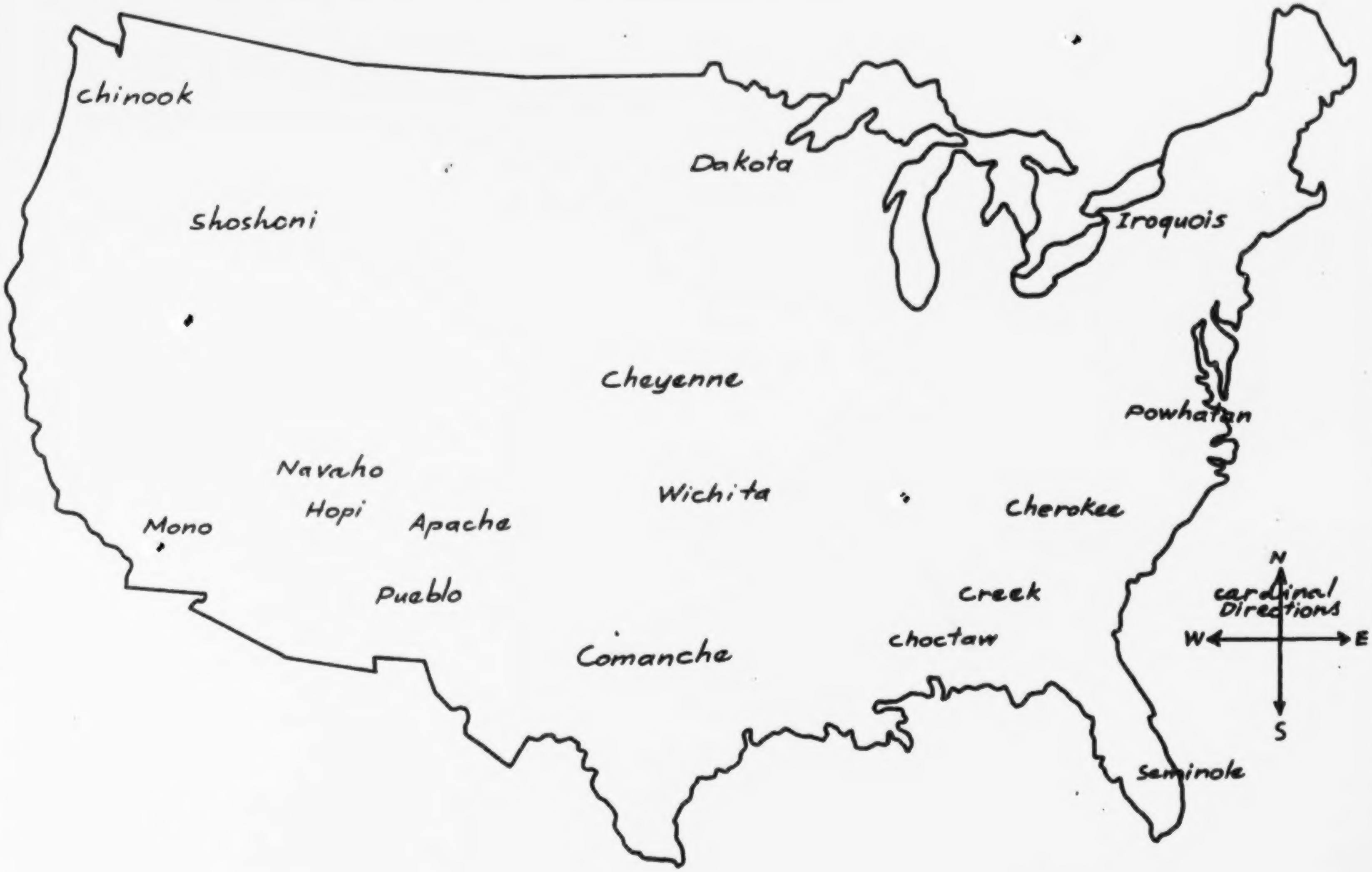
Indians in this area depended on fishing and gathering roots. They always had a surplus of food and traded it for other necessities with other tribes. The Shoshones, Nez Perces, Pudget Sounds, and Modocs were all tribes who lived in the Western Sea Coast Area.

1.2.4. Near the Mexican border, there was a special Indian society called the Pueblos. They constructed their houses many stories high and they were good farmers. Apaches, Zunis, Navahos, Hopis, and Mohaves were the most famous tribes of the Pueblos.

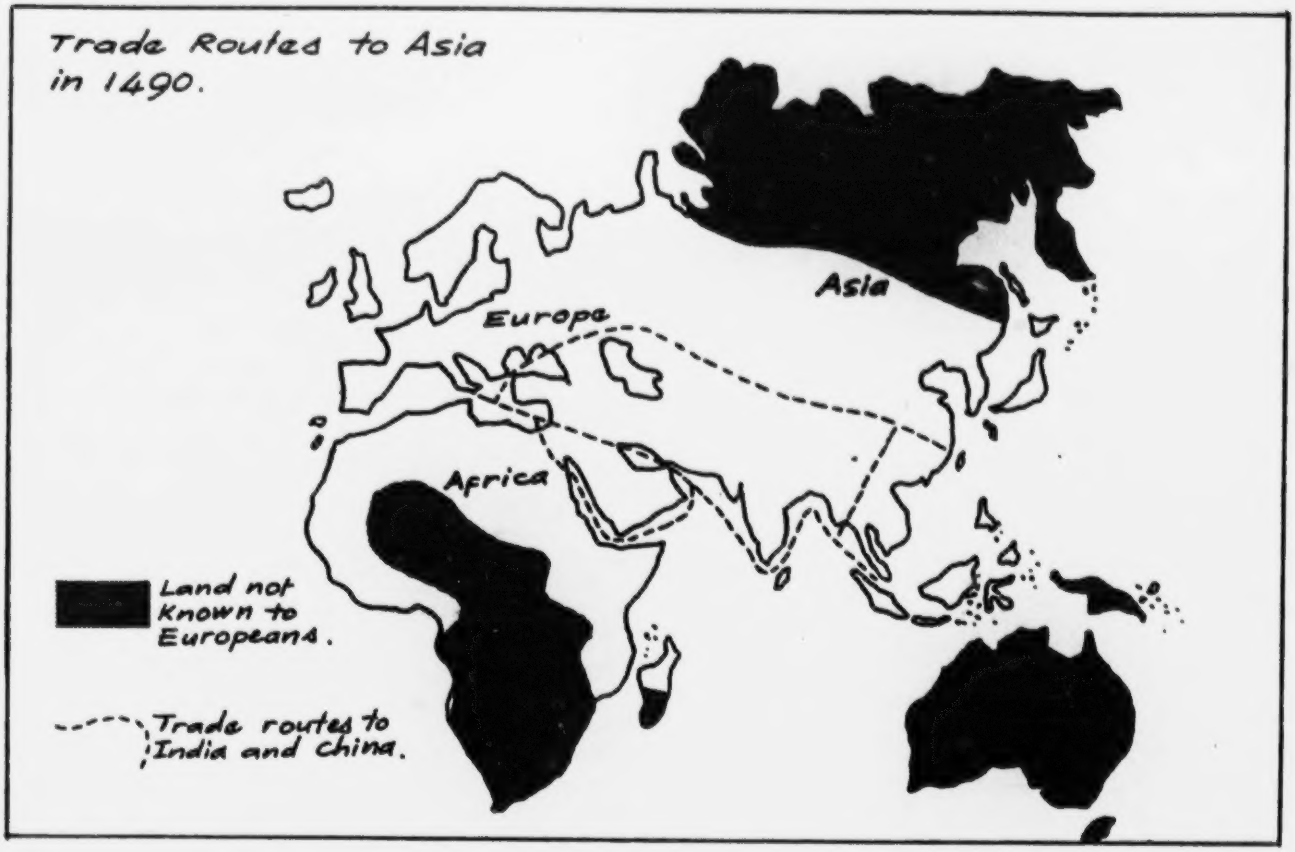
1.3. INDIANS SOCIETIES

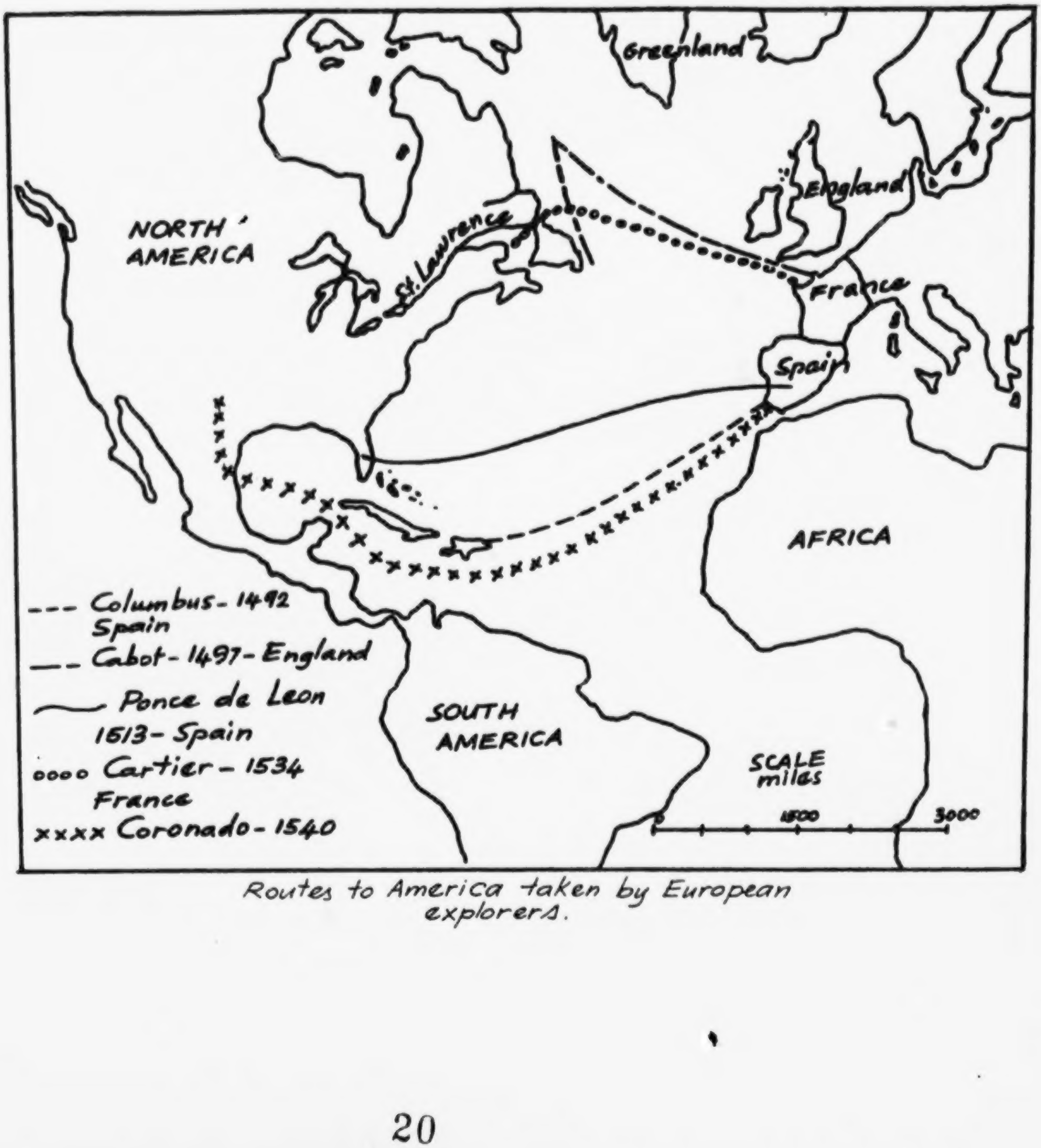
1.3.1. The Indian societies in North America were not alike. One of the most organized tribes was the Iroquois tribe in the Eastern Woodland Area. The Iroquois depended mostly on hunting and fishing for their food. They lived in villages where the men were hunters and warriors, but the women did almost all the work. Women raised corn, tobacco, pumpkins, and squash. Women held the important positions in the family. Older women had power to choose tribal leaders. In 1750, five Iroquois tribes joined together to form a league called the League of Five Nations. The Indians in the league spoke the same language and shared the same customs.

1.3.2. The Pueblo Indians, who live mostly on the lands now known as New Mexico and Arizona, also had a well organized


chinook
Dakota
Shoshoni
Iroquois
Cheyenne
Powhatan
Navaho
Wichita
Hopi
Mono
Apache
Cherokee
Pueblo
Creek
cardinal Directions
N
W
E
S
choctaw
Comanche
Seminole

Location of Indians tribes at the time Europeans discovered America


Trade Routes to Asia
in 1490.
Asia
Europe
Africa
Land not Known to Europeans.
Trade routes to India and China.


Greenland
England
NORTH AMERICA
St. Lawrence
France
Spain
AFRICA
SOUTH AMERICA
SCALE miles
0
1500
3000
--- Columbus - 1492 Spain
__ Cabot - 1497 - England
—— Ponce de Leon 1513 - Spain
oooo Cartier - 1534 France
xxxx Coronado - 1540

Routes to America taken by European explorers.

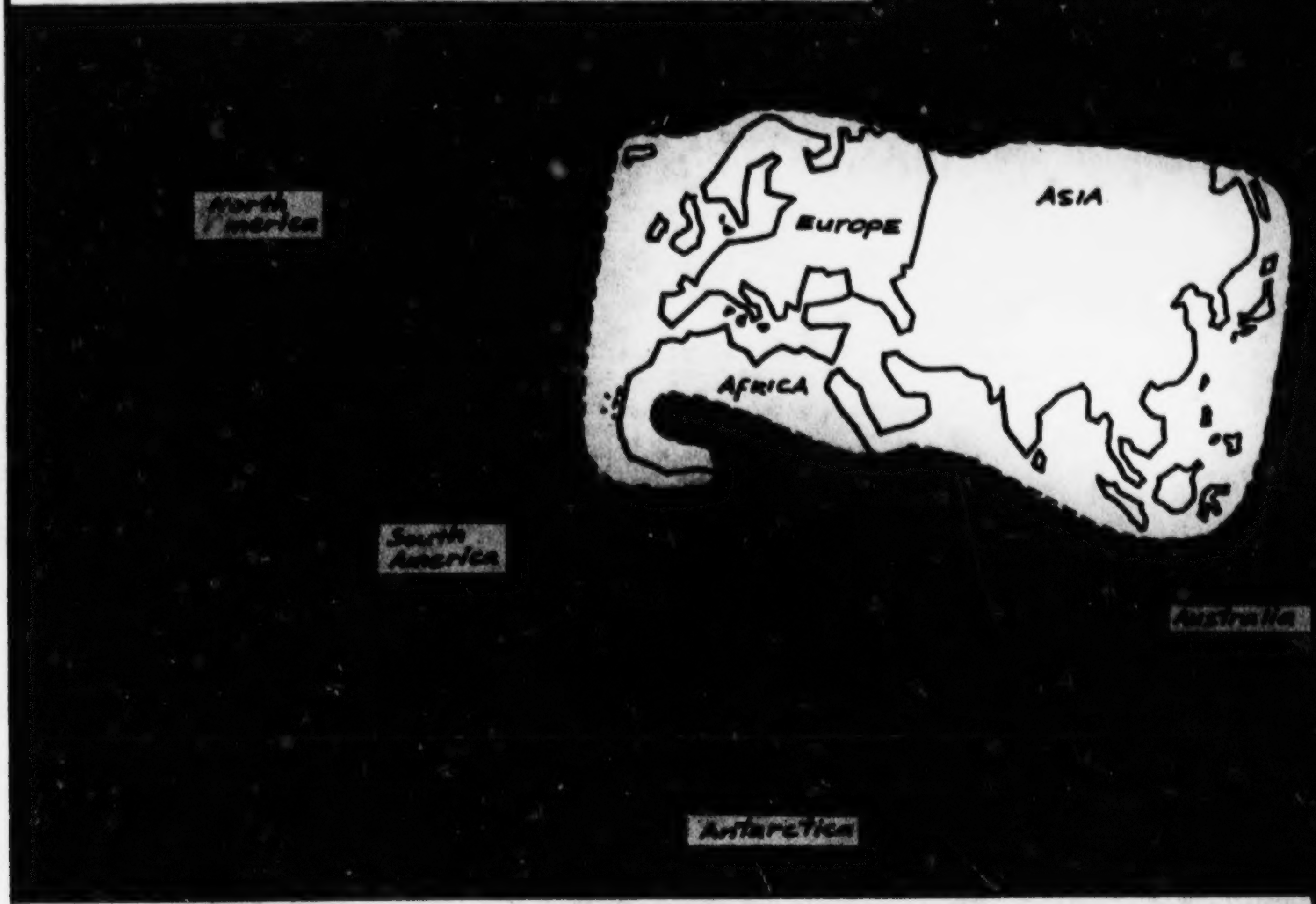
society. They were good farmers, and agriculture was a mainstay of their economy. In addition to agricultural products, the Pueblos made brightly painted pottery and wove beautiful cloth on looms. They built sophisticated houses within cliff walls or on top of the plateaus. They had their own religions and all people were equal because there were no social classes. They were very friendly and peaceful and would fight only to protect themselves or their homes.

1.4. EUROPEANS DISCOVER THE AMERICAS

1.4.1. Before 1492, Europeans were familiar only with Europe, North Africa, and some parts of Asia, such as China and India. They did not know of the existence of the Western hemisphere and of the people living there. In the Scandinavian countries, there were many sagas and legends about Vinland which Leif Ericsson had visited a long time ago. Ericsson was a Viking from Norway, and he had made many trips to Greenland and the eastern coast areas of Canada.

1.4.2. For many years, Europeans always traded with China and India. Spices, perfumes, and silks found in these two countries were precious commodities in European markets. These goods had to be carried slowly overland, and when they finally reached European markets, they became too expensive. In an effort to reduce the cost, European merchants hoped to find a shorter sea route to Asia. Christopher Columbus was one of those who

The Known and Unknown World in the 1400's


North America
Europe
Asia
Africa
South America
Australia
Antarctica

■ Not Known to people from Europe at the time of Columbus.

hoped to find a shorter sea route to China and India.

1.4.3. In 1492, Christopher Columbus left Spain in search of a sea route to India and China. He believed the earth to be round and was convinced that if he sailed west he would reach China. Queen Isabella of Spain had given him three ships -- the Nina, the Pinta, and the Santa Maria -- to cross the Atlantic Ocean. Columbus and his sailors began their voyage in August, 1492. They were on the sea for many difficult weeks but did not see any land. His men became anxious and wanted to return to Europe. Finally, in October 1492, they landed on an island. Columbus was convinced that he and his men had reached India. For this reason, they referred to the people they met as "Indians". However, this land was not India. It was the new land that we now call America.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle write it and then define it.

A	N	L	O	N	G	A	G	R	I	C	U	L	T	U	R	E	L	S	M
T	E	A	S	S	P	I	C	E	C	P	L	A	T	E	A	U	O	A	E
L	Z	N	A	S	E	T	T	L	E	R	V	O	Y	A	G	E	N	I	R
A	P	G	G	O	M	O	O	L	A	N	D	B	R	I	D	G	E	L	C
N	E	U	C	C	S	L	E	A	G	U	E	L	O	N	B	P	G	I	H
T	R	A	O	I	T	S	H	E	E	T	R	S	A	G	A	E	A	S	A
I	C	G	M	E	N	V	I	R	O	N	M	E	N	T	M	R	L	A	N
C	E	E	A	T	B	E	R	I	N	G	S	E	A	R	B	F	L	B	T
O	S	C	N	Y	T	I	D	I	M	U	H	X	O	I	O	U	I	E	M
C	X	A	C	P	L	A	I	N	H	O	P	I	S	B	O	M	V	L	A
E	Y	C	H	P	U	E	B	L	O	S	C	O	T	E	P	E	E	L	R
A	C	R	E	E	K	S	M	E	X	I	C	A	N	C	H	I	N	A	K
N	C	O	L	U	M	B	U	S	X	I	M	A	N	D	A	N	S	Y	E
R	A	M	E	R	I	C	A	T	R	I	P	S	E	A	W	A	Y	V	T
E	E	X	P	O	R	T	A	T	I	O	N	J	O	U	R	N	E	Y	O
D	A	T	N	I	P	A	I	R	A	M	A	T	N	A	S	N	I	N	A

SETTLER
LEAGUE
VILLAGE
PLATEAU
CREEKS
JOURNEY
SEAWAY

SOCIETY
VOYAGE
BAMBOO
SPICE
MANDANS
CHINA
MARKET

SHEET
SAGA
LOOM
TRIBE
TEPEE
SAIL
LONG

MERCHANT
PERFUME
HUMIDITY
COMANCHE
MEXICAN
ISABELLA
AMERICA

LAND BRIDGE
ENVIRONMENT
ICE AGE
BERING SEA
NEZ PERCES
EXPORTATION
ATLANTIC OCEAN

SANTA
MARIA
PINTA
NINA
HOPIS

II. True or False: Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put an F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. The people who lived in the Americas came from Asia during the Ice Age.

____ 2. The Asians who came to America had built a bridge from Eastern Asia to Alaska.

____ 3. The people on the Plains and in the Rocky Mountain areas depended on hunting and gathering seeds and wild plants for their food.

____ 4. The Pueblos built their houses many stories high and they were good farmers.

____ 5. The Iroquois lived in village and the women did almost all the work.

____ 6. The people in the League of Five Nations spoke five different languages.

____ 7. The Pueblos also knew how to make cloth on looms.

____ 8. Before 1492, Europeans were familiar with only Europe, North Africa, and parts of Asia.

____ 9. China and India exported spices, perfumes, and silks to European markets.

____10. Christopher Columbus came to India in 1492, and he met many Indians.

III. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

	A	B
____	a. export	1. the way something is usually done by a person or group of people.

____ b. custom

____ c. settler

____ d. humidity

____ e. village

____ f. league

____ g. loom

____ h. spice

____ i. perfume

____ j. voyage

2. an article sent out of one country for sale in another country.
3. a long trip to a foreign country.
4. a volatile liquid distilled from flowers.
5. any kind of aromatic used to flavor foods.
6. a machine from which cloth is produced.
7. a group of nations or states.
8. a small group of houses in a rural area.
9. contained water.
10. one person that lives in a new region.

IV Fill in the blanks: Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: environment, surplus, village, tribal leader, exported, journey, sail, land bridge, animal skins, Ice Age.

1. The people who lived in the Americas came from Asia during the ____________ .
2. During that time, there was a ____________ between the Northeastern part of Asia and Alaska.
3. Indian life in North America was influenced by the _______.
4. Indians used ____________ to make clothing.
5. The Indians on the western coast always had ____________ of food.

6. The Iroquois lived in the ____________ and the wowen did almost all the work.

7. Older women had power to choose a _____________ .

8. China and India ____________ spices, perfumes, and silk to the European markets.

9. In 1492, Christopher Columbus began a ______________ from Spain.

10. He believed the earth to be round and was certain that if he _____________ West he would reach China.

ບົດອ່ານ

໑.໑. ພວກທີ່ຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອແລະໃຕ້ລຸ້ນທຳອິດ

໑.໑.໑. ຜູ້ຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນທະວີບອະເມຣິກາລຸ້ນທຳອິດນັ້ນ ແມ່ນມາຈາກເອເຊັຍໃນສະໄໝນ້ຳກ້ອນ ຫຼື Ice Age. ໃນລະຫວ່າງນັ້ນ ແຜ່ນດິນລະຫວ່າງພາກຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງເໜືອຂອງອາເຊັຍແລະ Alaska ນັ້ນຕິດກັນ. ພວກຄົນເຫຼົ່ານີ້ອາດຈະຕິດຕາມຝູງສັດທີ່ໄລ່ຕິດຕາມພວກສັດປ່າຕາມດິນແດນຕິດກັນນັ້ນແລະໃນທີ່ສຸດກໍໄດ້ເຂົ້າໄປເຖິງແດນ Alaska . ເຂົາເຈົ້າປະກອບອາຊີບດ້ວຍການທຳໄຮ່ທຳນາ, ດ້ວຍການຫາປາ ແລະ ລ່າສັດ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໃຊ້ໜັງສັດສຳຫຼັບເຮັດເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງແລະໃຊ້ໄມ້ສຳຫຼັບເຮັດເຮືອນ. ພວກຄົນເຫຼົ່ານີ້ເປັນພວກເຜົ່າ Cherokees, Choctaws, Creeks ແລະ Seminoles.

໑.໒. ຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຂອງພວກອິນເດຍແດງໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອ

໑.໒.໑. ຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຂອງຊາວອິນເດຍແດງໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອໄດ້ຮັບການຈັດຮູບຈາກສະພາບສິ່ງແວດລ້ອມ. ອາຫານ, ເຮືອນຊານ, ເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງຫົ່ມ ແລະ ເຄື່ອງມືຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າທັງໝົດນີ້ແມ່ນໄດ້ມາຈາກບໍລິເວນອ້ອມຂ້າງທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າອາໄສຢູ່ນັ້ນເອງ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າປະກອບອາຊີບດ້ວຍການເຮັດໄຮ່ເຮັດສວນ, ດ້ວຍການຫາປາ ແລະ ດ້ວຍການລ່າເນື້ອ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໃຊ້ໜັງສັດເພື່ອເຮັດເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງ ແລະ ໃຊ້ໄມ້ສຳຫຼັບປຸກເຮືອນ. ຄົນພວກນີ້ເປັນຄົນຂອງເຜົ່າ Cherokees, Choctaws, Creeks ແລະ Seminoles.

໑.໒.໒. ພວກທີ່ຢູ່ຕາມທົ່ງພຽງໃນບໍລິເວນພູເຂົາ Rocky Mountains ອາໄສການລ່າສັດແລະການເກັບເມັດໄມ້ແລະພືດໃນປ່າເພື່ອນຳມາເຮັດອາຫານ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໃຊ້ໜັງສັດເພື່ອເຮັດບ້ານສຳຫຼັບຢູ່ອາໄສ (tepees) ແລະ ເຮັດເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງ. ເຜົ່າທີ່ມີຊື່ສຽງບາງເຜົ່າໄດ້ແກ່ເຜົ່າ Wichitas, Pawnes, Comanches, Mandans ແລະ Osages.

໑.໔.໓. ຢູ່ເລາະຕາມແຄມທະເລດ້ານຕາເວັນຕົກນັ້ນ ເຕັມໄປດ້ວຍອາຫານການກິນ ຍ້ອນດິນຟ້າອາກາດອຸ່ນອົບ ແລະ ຍ້ອນລະດູຝົນທີ່ຍາວນານ. ຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງໃນເຂດນີ້ອາໄສການຫາປາແລະເກັບຫົວເຜືອກຫົວມັນເພື່ອລ້ຽງຊີບ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າມີເຂົ້າປາອາຫານເຫຼືອຢູ່ສເໝີ ແລະ ໃຊ້ອາຫານທີ່ເຫຼືອນັ້ນເພື່ອແລກປ່ຽນເອົາສິ່ງທີ່ຈຳເປັນຢ່າງອື່ນກັບເຜົ່າອື່ນ. ສິ່ງເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນແມ່ນ Shoshones, Nez Perces, Pudget Sounds, Modocs.

໑.໔.໔. ຢູ່ທິດໃຕ້ຊາຍແດນປະເທດ Mexico ນັ້ນມີຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງເຜົ່າພິເສດ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າມີຊື່ວ່າ Pueblos. ເຂົາເຈົ້າສ້າງເຮືອນເປັນຫຼາຍຊັ້ນແລະຊາວນາທີ່ດີເລີດ. ເຜົ່າທີ່ມີຊື່ສຽງທີ່ສຸດແມ່ນພວກ Apaches, Zunis, Navahos, Hopis ແລະ Mohaves.

໑.໕. ສັງຄົມຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງ

໑.໕.໑. ສັງຄົມຕ່າງໆຂອງຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອນັ້ນຫຼາຍຊະນິດ. ເຜົ່າທີ່ມີການຈັດຕັ້ງດີທີ່ສຸດນັ້ນແມ່ນພວກ Iroquois ທີ່ຢູ່ໃນ Eastern Woodland ແລະ ພວກ Pueblos ທີ່ຢູ່ທາງຕາເວັນຕົກສຽງໃຕ້. ສ່ວນຫຼາຍຂອງພວກ Iroquois ຫາຢູ່ຫາກິນດ້ວຍການລ່າສັດແລະການຫາປາ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າຢູ່ຕາມໝູ່ບ້ານຕ່າງໆໂດຍແມ່ນພວກຜູ້ຍິງເປັນຜູ້ຈັດລະບຽບຄອບຄົວໝົດ. ພວກຜູ້ຍິງຍັງເປັນຜູ້ປູກໝາກສາລີ, ຢາສູບ, ໝາກຖົ່ວ ແລະ ໝາກອຶ. ພວກຜູ້ຊາຍນັ້ນເປັນນັກລ່າເນື້ອແລະນັກຮົບ. ພວກຜູ້ຍິງມີຕຳແໜ່ງອັນສຳຄັນໃນຄອບຄົວ. ພວກຜູ້ຍິງອາວຸໂສມີອຳນາດໃນການເລືອກຕັ້ງບັນດາຜູ້ນຳຂອງເຜົ່າ. ໃນປີ ໑໕໘໐ ພວກ Iroquois ຫ້າເຜົ່າໄດ້ລວມໂຮມກັນເພື່ອຕັ້ງສະຫະພັນອັນໜຶ່ງວ່າ ສະຫະພັນຫ້າຊາດ. ປະຊາຊົນໃນສະຫະພັນນັ້ນປາກພາສາດຽວກັນແລະມີປະເພນີດຽວກັນ.

໑.໕.໒. ຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງເຜົ່າ Pueblos ສ່ວນຫຼາຍອາໄສຢູ່ໃນດິນແດນທີ່ໃນປັດຈຸບັນນີ້ຊື່ວ່າ New Mexico ແລະ Arizona ເຂົາເຈົ້າເປັນຊາວນາທີ່ດີ ແລະ ການປູກຝັງເປັນສ່ວນສຳຄັນຂອງລະບົບເສດຖະກິດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເຮັດເຄື່ອງປັ້ນດິນໂດຍແຕ້ມສີຕ່າງໆໃສ່. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນພວກ Pueblos ຍັງຮູ້ຈັກໃຊ້ຝ້າຍຕ່ຳຜ້າ ແລະ ເຂົາເຈົ້າມີສາສນາຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າສ້າງເຮືອນຕາມໜ້າຜາ ຫຼື ຕາມຍອດຂອງພູພຽງຕ່າງໆ. ຄົນທຸກຄົນເທົ່າທຽມກັນເພາະວ່າໃນສັງຄົມຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້ານັ້ນ

ບໍ່ມີຈົນ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າເປັນຄົນຄົບໄດ້ງ່າຍ ແລະ ມັກຄວາມສະຫງົບ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າຈະທຳການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນຕົວເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ ແລະ ເຮືອນຊານບ້ານຊ່ອງຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເທົ່ານັ້ນ.

໑.໔. ຊາວຢູໂຣບໄດ້ຄົ້ນພົບທະວີບອະເມຣິກາ

໑.໔.໑. ກ່ອນປີ ໑໔໙໒ ຊາວຢູໂຣບຮູ້ຈັກແຕ່ຢູໂຣບ, ອາຟຣິກາເໜືອ ແລະ ບາງສ່ວນຂອງເອເຊັຍ ເຊັ່ນ ປະເທດຈີນ ແລະ ອິນເດັຍເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ຮູ້ຈັກຊີກໂລກໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ ພ້ອມດ້ວຍພື້ນດິນທີ່ຢູ່ໃນແຖວນັ້ນ. ໃນປະເທດຕ່າງໆໃນ Scandinavia ໄດ້ມີນິຍາຍ ຫຼື ນິທານຫຼາຍຢ່າງກ່ຽວກັບດິນແດນໜຶ່ງຊື່ວ່າ Vinland ຊຶ່ງທ່ານ Leif Ericson ໄດ້ໄປພົບຜ່ານມາເປັນເວລາດົນນານແລ້ວ. ທ່ານ Ericson ເປັນຄົນມາຈາກ Norway ແລະ ທ່ານໄດ້ເດີນທາງໄປຍັງ Greenland ແລະເຂດແດນທະເລໃນພາກຕາເວັນອອກຂອງປະເທດ Canada ໃນປະຈຸບັນ.

໑.໔.໒. ເປັນເວລາຈຳນວນຫຼາຍປີທີ່ຊາວຢູໂຣບໄດ້ໄປເຖິງປະເທດຈີນແລະປະເທດອິນເດັຍສະເໝີມາເພາະວ່າສອງປະເທດເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ສົ່ງເຄື່ອງປຸງອາຫານປະເພດພິກເຜັດ, ນ້ຳຫອມ ແລະ ໄໝ ອອກໄປຈຳໜ່າຍຕາມຕະຫຼາດໃນຢູໂຣບ. ພວກສະບຽງອາຫານເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ຂົນສົ່ງໄປທາງພາກພື້ນດິນໂດຍໃຊ້ເວລາອັນຍາວນານ ແລະ ເມື່ອຕົກເຖິງມືພວກພໍ່ຄ້າໃນຕະຫຼາດຂອງຢູໂຣບແລ້ວພວກສະບຽງອາຫານດັ່ງກ່າວມັກມີລາຄາແພງເກີນໄປ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ພວກພໍ່ຄ້າຊາວຢູໂຣບຈຶ່ງຕ້ອງການຊອກຫາເສັ້ນທາງເດີນທະເລໄປຫາເອເຊັຍທີ່ມີຣະຍະທາງສັ້ນເຂົ້າເພື່ອຕັດລາຍຈ່າຍລົງ. Christopher Columbus ເປັນໜຶ່ງໃນຈຳນວນພວກທີ່ເຊື່ອວ່າຈະພົບເສັ້ນທາງໄປຫາປະເທດຈີນແລະອິນເດັຍທີ່ສັ້ນທີ່ສຸດ.

໑.໔.໓. ໃນປີ ໑໔໙໒ Christopher Columbus ໄດ້ເລີ້ມເດີນທາງຈາກປະເທດ Spain. ລາວເຊື່ອວ່າແຜ່ນດິນນີ້ກົມ ແລະ ຖ້າຫາກລາວເດີນເຮືອອອກໄປທາງທິດຕາເວັນຕົກລາວກໍຈະໄປເຖິງປະເທດຈີນ. ພຣະຣາຊິນີຂອງປະເທດ Spain ໄດ້ມອບເຮືອສາມລຳໃຫ້ແກ່ລາວ ເພື່ອຂ້າມມະຫາສະມຸດ Atlantic. ເຮືອສາມລຳດັ່ງກ່າວນັ້ນມີຊື່ວ່າ Nina, Pinta ແລະ Santa Maria. Columbus ແລະ ພວກລູກເຮືອຂອງລາວໄດ້ເລີ້ມອອກເດີນທາງໃນເດືອນ ສິງຫາ ໑໔໙໒. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເດີນທາງໃນກາງທະເລເປັນເວລາຫຼາຍອາທິດແຕ່ບໍ່ເຫັນແຜ່ນດິນໃດເລີຍ. ພວກລູກເຮືອຂອງລາວ

ເກີດມີຄວາມວິຕົກແລະຕ້ອງການຢາກກັບຄືນໄປຫາຢູໂຣບ. ໃນທີ່ສຸດເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ໄປເຖິງເກາະແຫ່ງນຶ່ງໃນເດືອນ ຕຸລາ ໑໔໙໒ ແລະ ເຂົາເຈົ້າຄິດວ່າດິນແດນແຫ່ງນັ້ນແມ່ນປະເທດອິນເດັຍ. ເວລາທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າເຫັນຄົນທຳອິດໃນເກາະດັ່ງກ່າວ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເອີ້ນຄົນພູນນັ້ນວ່າ ຄົນອິນເດັຍ. ດິນແດນດັ່ງກ່າວບໍ່ແມ່ນປະເທດອິນເດັຍ ແຕ່ມັນເປັນດິນແດນທີນໃໝ່ຈຶ່ງເຮົາເອີ້ນກັນໃນປະຈຸບັນນີ້ວ່າ ອະເມຣິກາ.

EXERCISES

I. Word Search Puzzle:

Direction: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບເຫລົ່ານີ້ດີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນໃນກະດານສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບຕັ້ງສາວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບນັ້ນແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ພ້ອມຄວາມດ້ວຍຄຳອະທິບາຍ.

A	N	L	O	N	G	A	G	R	I	C	U	L	T	U	R	E	L	S	M
T	E	A	S	S	P	I	C	E	C	P	L	A	T	E	A	U	O	A	E
L	Z	N	A	S	E	T	T	L	E	R	V	O	Y	A	G	E	N	I	R
A	P	G	G	O	M	O	O	L	A	N	D	B	R	I	D	G	E	L	C
N	E	U	C	C	S	L	E	A	G	U	E	L	O	N	B	P	G	I	H
T	R	A	O	I	T	S	H	E	E	T	R	S	A	G	A	E	A	S	A
I	C	G	M	E	N	V	I	R	O	N	M	E	N	T	M	R	L	A	N
C	E	E	A	T	B	E	R	I	N	G	S	E	A	R	B	F	L	B	T
O	S	C	N	Y	T	I	D	I	M	U	H	X	O	I	O	U	I	E	M
C	X	A	C	P	L	A	I	N	H	O	P	I	S	B	O	M	V	L	A
E	Y	C	H	P	U	E	B	L	O	S	C	O	T	E	P	E	E	L	R
A	C	R	E	E	K	S	M	E	X	I	C	A	N	C	H	I	N	A	K
N	C	O	L	U	M	B	U	S	X	I	M	A	N	D	A	N	S	Y	E
R	A	M	E	R	I	C	A	T	R	I	P	S	E	A	W	A	Y	V	T
E	E	X	P	O	R	T	A	T	I	O	N	J	O	U	R	N	E	Y	O
D	A	T	N	I	P	A	I	R	A	M	A	T	N	A	S	N	I	N	A

SETTLER
LEAGUE
VILLAGE
PLATEAU
CREEKS
JOURNEY
SEAWAY

SOCIETY
VOYAGE
BAMBOO
SPICE
MANDANS
CHINA
MARKET

SHEET
SAGA
LOOM
TRIBE
TEPEE
SAIL
LONG

MERCHANT
PERFUME
HUMIDITY
COMANCHE
MEXICAN
ISABELLA
AMERICA

LAND BRIDGE
ENVIRONMENT
ICE AGE
BERING SEA
NEZ PERCES
EXPORTATION
ATLANTIC OCEAN

SANTA
MARIA
PINTA
NINA
HOPIS

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ : (ເບິ່ງຕາມພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. ຖືກຜິດ : ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຫຍກແຕ່ລະປະໂຫຍກຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ ແລ້ວໃສ່ໝາຍ T ໃສ່ໜ້າຫາກເຫັນວ່າ ປະໂຫຍກນັ້ນຖືກ ແລະ ໃສ່ໝາຍ F ໃສ່ໜ້າຫາກຜິດ.

_____ ໑. ຜູ້ຄົນທີ່ອາໃສຢູ່ໃນທະວີບອະເມຣິກາລຸ້ນທຳອິດນັ້ນມາຈາກເອເຊັຍໃນສໄມນ້ຳກ້ອນ.

_____ ໒. ຊາວເອເຊັຍທີ່ເຂົ້າໄປຢູ່ໃນອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ສ້າງຂົວຈາກເອເຊັຍຕາເວັນອອກສາ

_____ ໓. ພວກຄົນທີ່ຢູ່ຕາມທົ່ງແລະຕາມພູເຂົາ Rocky Mountains ອາໃສການລ່າເນື້ອ ແລະການເກັບເມັດໄມ້ແລະພືດໃນປ່າເພື່ອເຮັດອາຫານ.

_____ ໔. ອິນດ້ຽນແດງເຜົ່າ Pueblos ໄດ້ສ້າງເຮືອນຊານທີ່ມີຄວາມສູງຫລາຍຊັ້ນ ແລະ ເປັນ ຊາວນາທີ່ມີຝີມືດີ.

_____ ໕. ອິນດ້ຽນແດງເຜົ່າ Iroquois ອາໃສຢູ່ໃນໝູ່ບ້ານແລະພວກຜູ້ຍິງເປັນຜູ້ເຮັດວຽກ ເກືອບທັງໝົດ.

_____ ໖. ປະຊາຊົນທີ່ຢູ່ໃນສະຫະພັນຫ້າຊາດນັ້ນປາກພາສາດຽວກັນ.

_____ ໗. ພວກອິນດ້ຽນແດງເຜົ່າ Iroquois ຍັງຮູ້ຈັກໃຊ້ລູກຕຳຫ້າອິກ.

_____ ໘. ກ່ອນປີ ໑໔໙໒ ນັ້ນ ຊາວຢູໂຣບຮູ້ຈັກພຽງແຕ່ຢູໂຣບ, ອາຟຣິກາເໜືອ ແລະ ບາງສ່ວນຂອງ ເອເຊັຍເທົ່ານັ້ນ.

_____ ໙. ປະເທດຈີນແລະອິນເດັຍໄດ້ສົ່ງເຄື່ອງປຸງອາຫານທີ່ມີຣົດເຜັດ, ນ້ຳຫອມ ແລະ ໄໝໄປສູ່ຕລາດໃນຢູໂຣບ.

_____ ໑໐. Christopher Columbus ໄດ້ໄປເຖິງປະເທດອິນເດັຍໃນປີ ໑໔໙໒ ແລະ ລາວໄດ້ພົບພວກອິນເດັຍ ຫຼາຍຄົນ.

ໃ. ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ : ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາແຕ່ລະສັບຄຳເວົ້າໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ຂ). ຈົ່ງຂຽນຕົວເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ປະໄວ້ນັ້ນແທນຄຳຕອບ.

ໝວດ (ກ)

_____ ກ. ສິ່ງສິນຄ້າຂາອອກ

_____ ຂ. ປະເພນີ

_____ ຄ. ຜູ້ຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານ

_____ ງ. ຄວາມຊຸ່ມຊື່ນ

_____ ຈ. ໝູ່ບ້ານ

_____ ສ. ສະຫະພັນ

ໝວດ (ຂ)

໑. ສິ່ງທີ່ຜູ້ໃດຜູ້ໜຶ່ງຫຼືກຸ່ມສັງຄົມໃດສັງຄົມໜຶ່ງກະທຳໂດຍຖືໄປຖອດມາ.

໒. ສິ່ງຂອງທີ່ສົ່ງໄປຈາກປະເທດໜຶ່ງ ສຳຫຼັບຂາຍໃນອີກປະເທດໜຶ່ງ.

໓. ການໄປຕ່າງປະເທດ.

໔. ນ້ຳກິ່ນຈາກດອກໄມ້.

໕. ເຄື່ອງຫອມສຳຫຼັບຕື່ມຣົດອາຫານ.

໖. ເຄື່ອງສຳຫຼັບຕ່ຳຜ້າ.

_____ ຈ. ຫູກ　　　　໗. ກຸ່ມປະເທດຕ່າງໆ.

_____ ຍ. ເຄື່ອງປຸງອາຫານ　　　　໘. ຈຳນວນຫຼັງຄາເຮືອນຈຳນວນນຶ່ງໃນເຂດຊົນນະບົດ.

_____ ດ. ນ້ຳຫອມ　　　　໙. ອາຍນ້ຳ.

_____ ຕ. ການເດີນທາງ　　　　໑໐. ຜູ້ທີ່ເຂົ້າໄປອາໃສຢູ່ໃນເຂດແດນໃໝ່.

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ : ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄວາມເວົ້າຫຼືໝວດຄວາມເວົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຫຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ : ສະພາບທົ່ວແວດລ້ອມ, ສ່ວນທີ່ເຫຼືອ, ໝູ່ບ້ານ, ຫົວໜ້າເຜົ່າ, ສິ່ງ , ການເດີນທາງ, ເດີນເຮືອ, ດິນດິ່ນ, ໜັງສັດ, ສໄມນ້ຳກອນ.

໑. ຜູ້ຄົນທີ່ອາໃສຢູ່ໃນທະວີບອະເມຣິກາພວກທຳອິດນັ້ນມາຈາກເອເຊັຍໃນ ____________________.

໒. ໃນເວລານັ້ນໄດ້ມີ ________________________ ລະຫວ່າງພາກຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງເໜືອຂອງ ເອເຊັຍ ແລະ Alaska.

໓. ຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຂອງຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອໄດ້ຮັບການຈັດຕຽງຈາກ ____________ ______________ .

໔. ຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງໃຊ້ ______________________ ເພື່ອເຮັດເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງ.

໕. ນອກຈາກອິນເດັຍແດງໃນແຄມທະເລພາກຕາເວັນຕົກມີ ____________________________ ຂອງອາຫານຢູ່ສເໝີ.

໖. ຊາວອິນເດຍແດງເຜົ່າ Iroquois ອາໄສຢູ່ໃນ ________________ ແລະ ພວກແມ່ຍິງເປັນຜູ້ເຮັດວຽກເກືອບທັງໝົດ.

໗. ພວກຜູ້ຍິງອາວຸໂສມີອຳນາດໃນການເລືອກເອົາ ________________ .

໘. ປະເທດຈີນແລະອິນເດຍໄດ້ ________________ ເຄື່ອງປຸງອາຫານ, ຜ້າຕອມ ແລະ ໄໝ ໄປຂາຍໃນຕລາດຢູໂຣບ.

໙. ໃນປີ ໑໔໙໒ Christopher Columbus ໄດ້ເລີ່ມ ________________ ຈາກ ປະເທດ Spain.

໑໐. ລາວເຊື່ອວ່າໂລກນັ້ນກົມ ແລະ ຖ້າລາວ ________________ ໄປທາງທິດຕາເວັນຕົກ ລາວກໍຈະໄປເຖິງປະເທດຈີນ.

ຫມວດ ໑ : ການຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອແລະໃຕ້

ພາກ ໒ : ຊາວຢູໂຣບທີ່ໄດ້ຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອແລະໃຕ້

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະວິທີໃຊ້ສັບ :

seaway:	ທາງເດີນທະເລ

The Europeans wanted to find a shorter seaway to Asia.

explorer:	ນັກສຳຫລວດຄົ້ນຄວາ

Spanish explorers were looking for gold and silver.

colony:	ຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນ

Spain established colonies in South and Central America.

navigator:	ນັກເດີນເຮືອ

John Cabot was a famous navigatorin the 15th century.

demarcation line:	ເສັ້ນໝາຍເຂດແດນ

The colonies of Spain and Portugal were divided by a demarcation line.

conquer:	ເອົາໄຊຊະນະ

The Spanish armies invaded and conquered the Aztec Empire.

civilization:	ຄວາມສີວິໄລ

There was a very sophisticated civilization in ancient Egypt.

empire:	ອານາຈັກ

Spanish explorers destroyed both the Aztec Empire and the Inca Empire.

disease:	ພະຍາດ

There are many diseases in tropical countries.

priest: ພຣະສົງ; ນັກບວດ

After the explorers, the priests came to the New World to teach the Christian faith to the Indians.

cruelty: ຄວາມໂຫດຮ້າຍທາລຸນ

The priests and Christian missionaries wanted to stop the cruelty of the Spanish explorers.

attract: ດຶງດູດ

The gold mines in California attracted many settlers from the East Coast.

discrimination: ການກີ້ນແກ້ງ

prejudice: ຄວາມກຽດຊັງ

The Spaniards did not face any religious discrimination and prejudice.

self government: ຣັຖບານຂອງຕົນເອງ

The British government allowed its colonists to establish a self-government.

take place: [illegible]

French exploration of the New World took place in the 15th century.

fur: ຂົນສັດ

The French colonists found furs in North America.

obtain: ມີ, ໄດ້

France obtained and claimed a large area West of the Mississippi River.

2.1. THE EUROPEANS IN THE AMERICAS

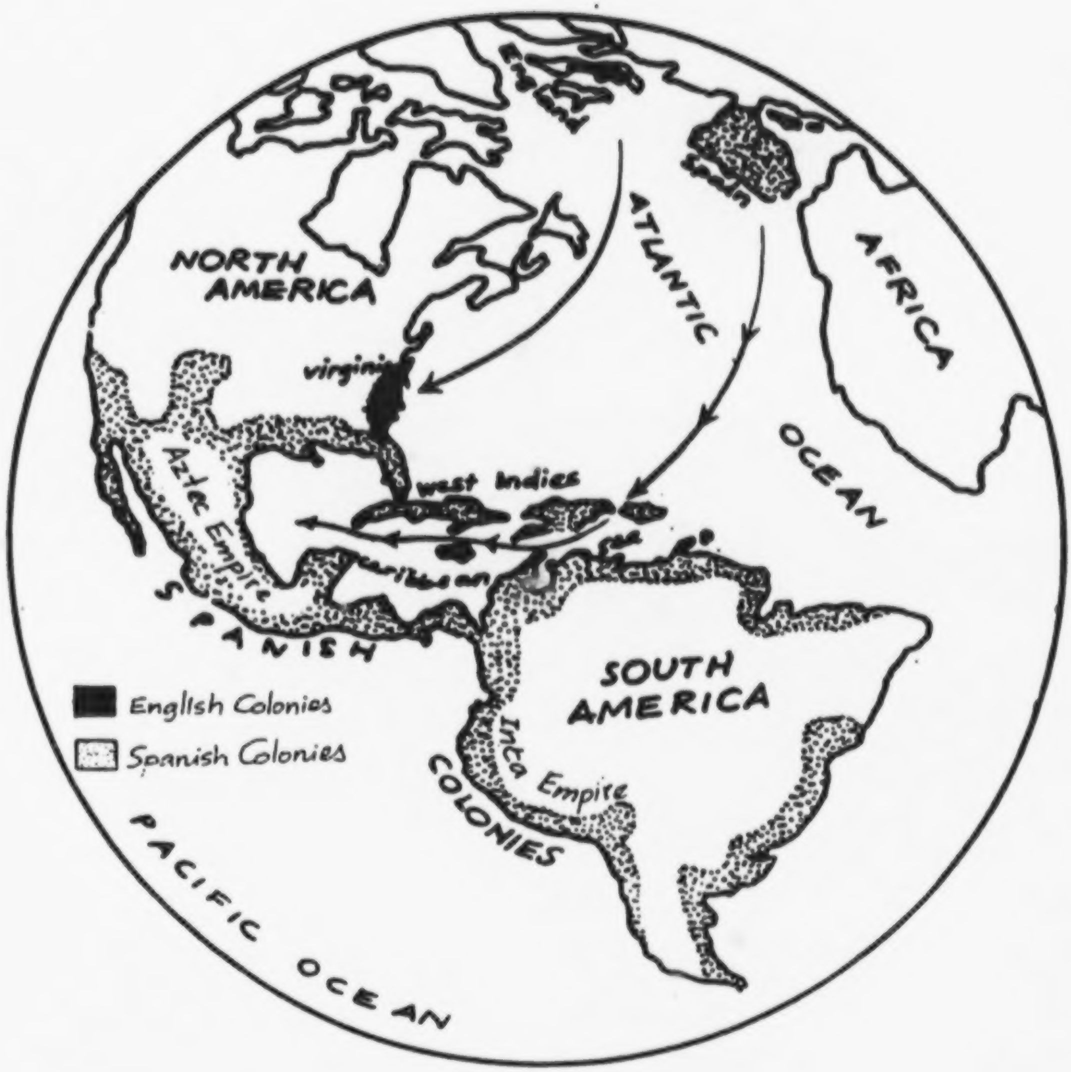
2.1.1. After Columbus' trip to the New World, many Europeans thought they had found not only a new and shorter **seaway** to Asia, but a new land full of riches. Spain, Portugal, England, and France began to send their **explorers** to the New World first, to chart the land and to find gold and silver and later, to establish **colonies**.

2.1.2. In 1497, England hired an Italian **navigator**, John Cabot, to find a new seaway to India. Cabot landed on the Labrador coast and claimed this land for England. Three years later, Pedro de Cabral of Portugal sailed west and landed in Brazil. He claimed this land for Portugal. At the end of the 15th century, there were many different explorations in both North and South America. However, it was not until after 1500 that Europeans began to come and live in the New World.

2.2. THE SPANIARDS IN THE AMERICAS

2.2.1. Spain and Portugal were the first two countries to establish their colonies in the Americas. In 1494 these two countries agreed that a **demarcation line** should divide the New World into two parts. Each country was to control one part.

2.2.2. The Spaniards established their colonies in Central America, South America, and California. The Spaniards were interested in these areas because they had found a lot of gold


England
Spain
NORTH AMERICA
ATLANTIC
AFRICA
OCEAN
virginia
west Indies
Aztec Empire
caribbean
SPANISH
SOUTH AMERICA
Inca Empire
COLONIES
English Colonies
Spanish Colonies
PACIFIC OCEAN

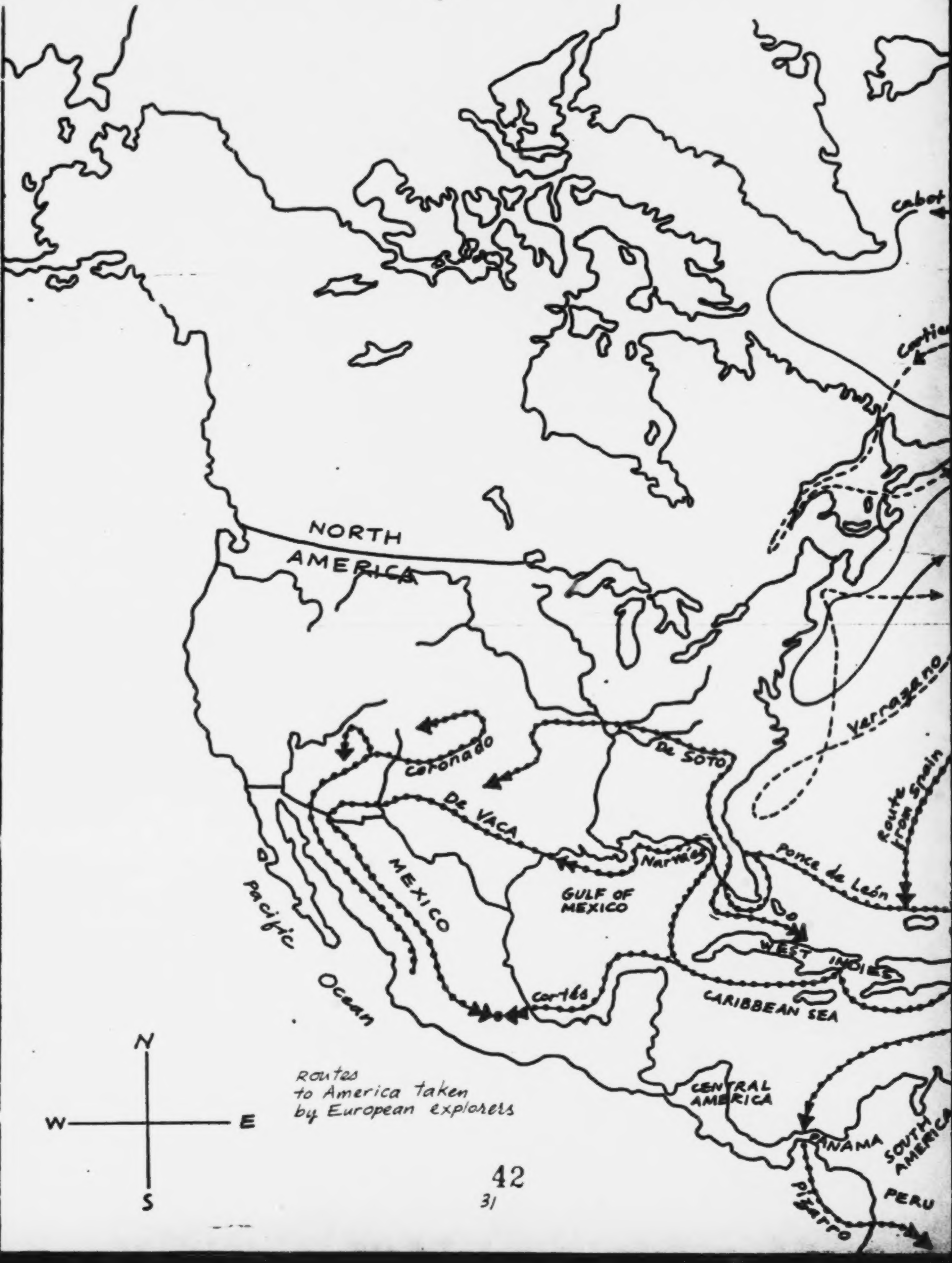
Spanish and English Colonies
in North America

and silver there. Juan Ponce de Leon, a Spanish explorer, had visited Florida in 1513. At the same time, another Spanish explorer, Hernando Cortes, with his 500 well armed men **conquered** the Aztec Empire. They seized the treasures of the Aztecs, destroyed the Aztec **civilization**, and shipped the gold and silver back to Spain.

2.2.3. In South America, ten years later, Francisco Pizarro, landed in Peru and discovered the Inca **Empire**. Here Pizarro found and seized a lot of gold and silver. He also arrested the leaders and killed many Indian people. After that he sent Spaniards to settle there. The newly arrived Spaniards used Indians as slaves to work in the gold mines. Many Indians were killed by **diseases** and hard work. Many people disagreed with the policies of the colonists. Among them were the **priests** in the Christian missions.

2.2.4. During this time of exploration, Christian missionaries arrived in the New World from Spain and Portugal. They wanted to teach the Christian faith to the Indians. They followed the explorers and did a great deal to stop their cruelty to the Indians.

2.2.5. Although the Spanish colonies **attracted** many explorers, they did not attract many colonists. The Spaniards were not interested in the New World as a place to live. Unlike the English, the Spaniards did not face any religious **discrimination** or **prejudice** at home. Unlike the English


cabot
Cartie
NORTH
AMERICA
Verrazano
Route from Spain
Coronado
De SOTO
De VACA
Narvaez
Ponce de León
GULF OF MEXICO
MEXICO
Pacific
Ocean
WEST INDIES
CARIBBEAN SEA
Cortés
CENTRAL AMERICA
PANAMA
SOUTH AMERICA
PERU
Pizarro
N
W
E
S

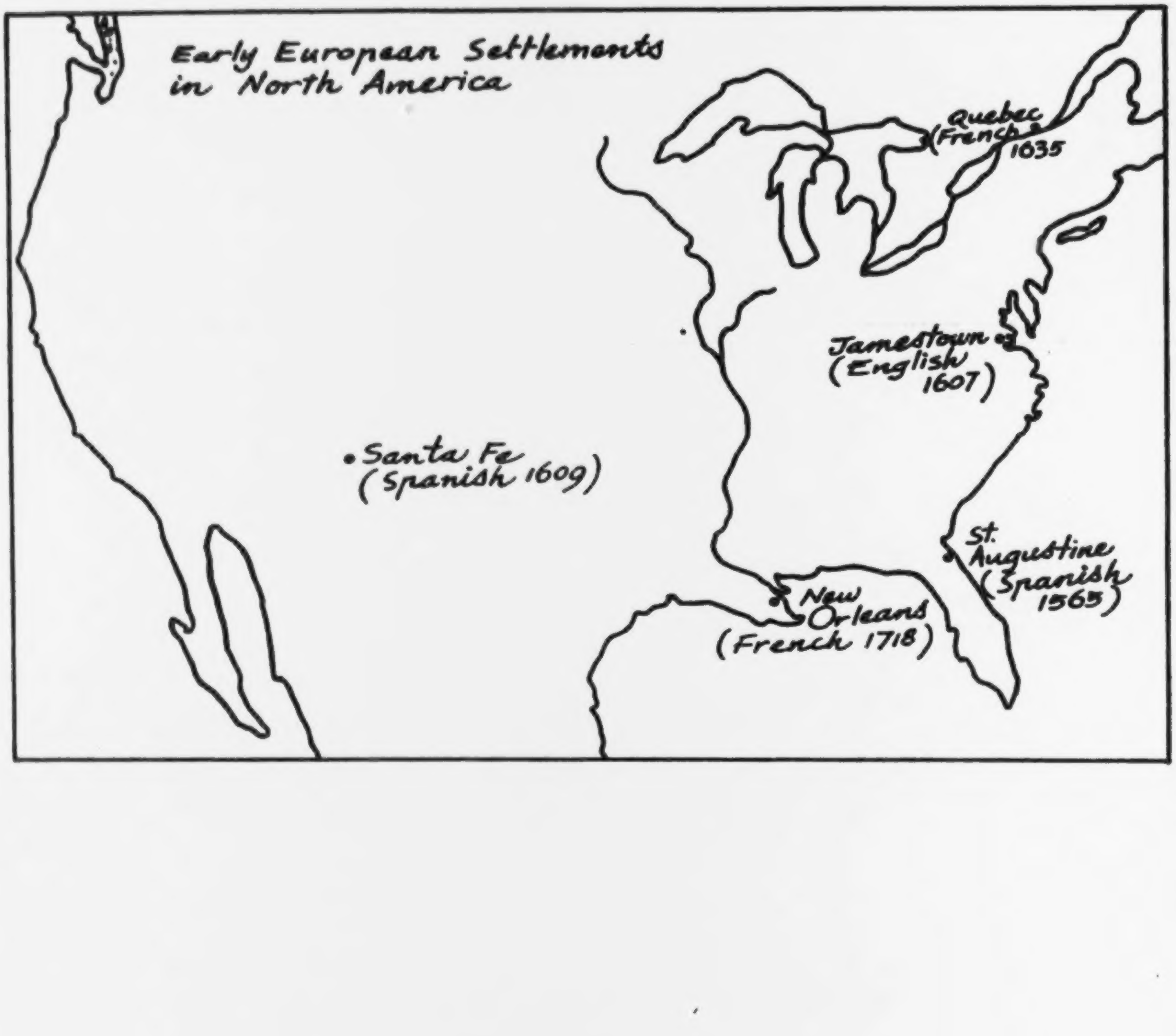
Routes
to America taken
by European explorers

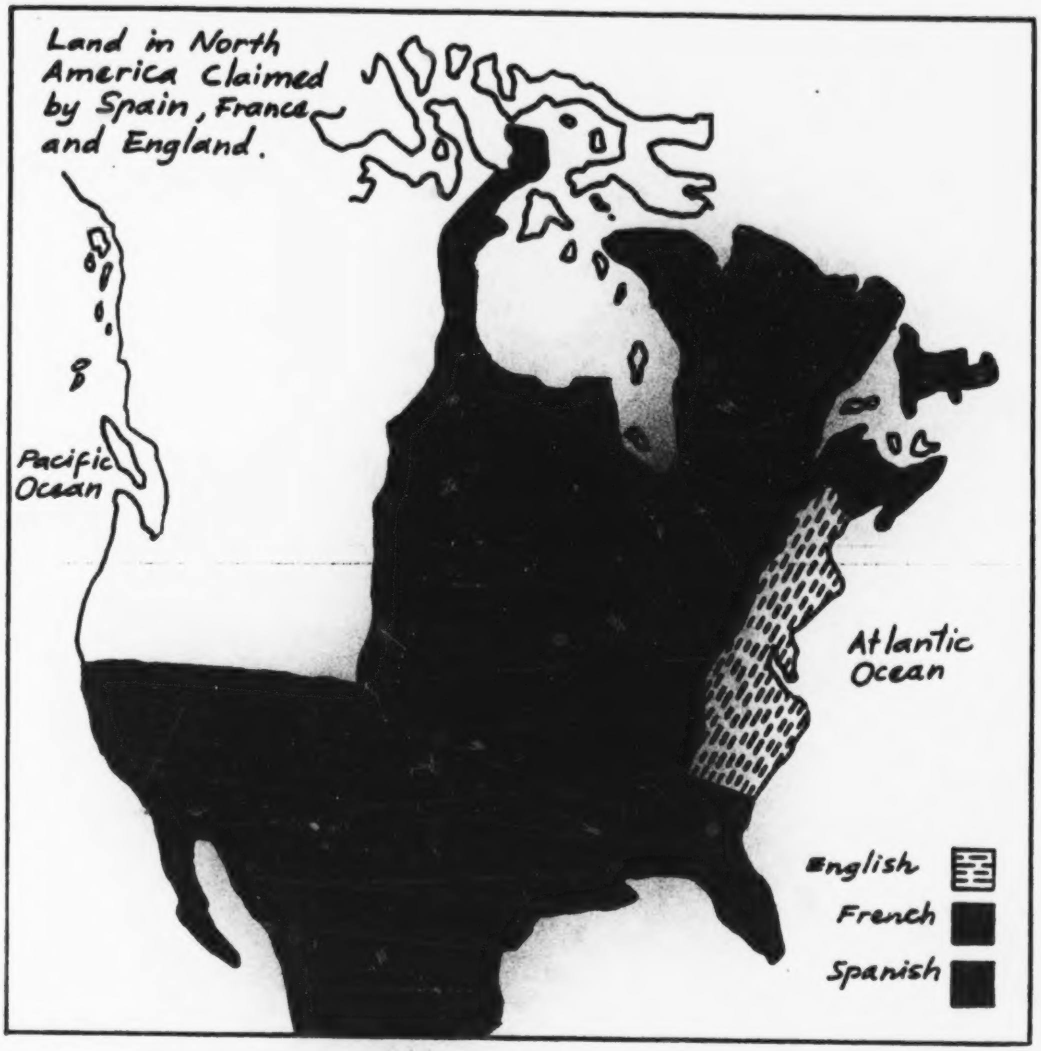
colonies, the Spanish colonies were not allowed to establish a form of self government. For these reasons, the population in the Spanish colonies was very low.

2.3. THE FRENCH IN THE AMERICAS

2.3.1. French explorations and settlements in the New World took place later than those of Spain, Portugal, and England. In 1524, France hired an Italian navigator, Giovanni da Verrazano, to find a seaway to Asia. He left Europe in 1524 and landed on the coast of North Carolina. From Carolina he sailed north along the seacoast of the Atlantic Ocean. He reached Newfoundland and then returned to France. He thought he had found the way to Asia. After this, many Frenchmen, such as Jacques Cartier and Samuel de Champlain, explored many different areas in North America. Jacques Cartier sailed the St. Lawrence River and made friends with the Indians in those areas. The Indians taught him how to trap wild animals to get furs. Samuel de Champlain explored the lands from Nova Scotia to Cape Cod. He also made treaties with the Hudson Indians and later, in 1608, he helped found the colony of Quebec.

2.3.2. Besides the colony at Quebec, France also obtained a large area west of the Mississippi River as a result of the explorations of Jacques Marquette, Louis Joliet and Robert de La Salle. These three adventurers explored the Great Lakes and the Mississippi River. In 1682, Robert de La Salle sailed


Early European Settlements in North America
Quebec (French 1635
Jamestown (English 1607)
Santa Fe (Spanish 1609)
St. Augustine (Spanish 1565)
New Orleans (French 1718)


Land in North America Claimed by Spain, France and England.
Pacific Ocean
Atlantic Ocean
English ▤
French ■
Spanish ■

south from the Illinois River to the Gulf of Mexico. He claimed this area for France and in honor of King Louis of France, he named it Louisiana.

2.3.3. Like the Spaniards, Frenchmen were not interested in settling in the New World. The French explorers only wanted to find treasures. They could not find any gold and silver but they had already found another treasure, furs. Exporting furs became one of the major economic activities of France in the colonies. The New World colonies did not attract many Frenchmen because the French government did not allow the colonists to set up a self government nor did it grant them freedom of religion. The population in the French colonies was small. In 1750, there were fewer than 100,000 settlers in the French colonies.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the words puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

SOUTH
GULF
EMPIRE
PRIEST
GRANT
FUR
SPAIN
LINE
COLONY
FAMOUS
SOIL

SEAWAY
COUNTRY
FRENCH
DISEASES
CRUELTY
GOVERN
NAVIGATOR
BRITISH
PREJUDICE
ATTACK
ARRESTED

INCA
AREA
GOLD
LAND
LIVE
AZTEC
BRAZIL
CLAIM
SAIL
DIVIDE
ASIA

SETTLE
PORTUGAL
CIVILIZATION
DISCRIMINATION
TAKE PLACE
EXPLORER
POPULATION
FREEDOM
DEMARCATION LINE
SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN

C	H	C	N	E	R	F	D	B	R	I	T	I	S	H	D	G	P	R
I	S	E	A	W	A	Y	E	X	P	L	O	R	E	R	I	R	O	O
V	O	N	V	F	U	R	M	A	Z	T	E	C	M	A	V	A	P	B
I	I	L	I	N	E	F	A	M	O	U	S	W	P	R	I	N	U	E
L	L	W	G	I	V	P	R	I	E	S	T	X	I	E	D	T	L	R
I	S	P	A	I	N	N	C	O	N	Q	U	E	R	A	E	O	A	T
Z	A	U	T	I	N	C	A	U	V	C	R	U	E	L	T	Y	T	D
A	T	S	O	U	T	H	T	A	K	E	P	L	A	C	E	F	I	E
T	T	O	R	P	G	D	I	S	E	A	S	E	S	O	C	R	O	L
I	A	S	I	A	O	C	O	L	O	N	Y	S	A	I	L	E	N	A
O	C	E	V	I	L	Q	N	P	O	R	T	U	G	A	L	E	H	S
N	K	L	A	N	D	R	L	C	O	U	N	T	R	Y	C	D	C	A
C	P	R	E	J	U	D	I	C	E	B	R	A	Z	I	L	O	I	L
O	C	L	A	I	M	S	N	S	E	T	T	L	E	C	C	M	B	L
N	A	R	R	E	S	T	E	D	G	O	V	E	R	N	M	E	N	E
D	I	S	C	R	I	M	I	N	A	T	I	O	N	G	U	L	F	O
S	A	M	U	E	L	D	E	C	H	A	M	P	L	A	I	N	O	N

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

	A	B
____	a. fur	1. a person who travels into a country for the purpose of learning about it.
____	b. seaway	2. country or territory settled by migrants from mother country.
____	c. explorer	3. ocean route.
____	d. colony	4. groups of countries under a single supreme authority.
____	e. navigator	5. soft thick hair covering certain animals.
____	f. demarcation line	6. a region of the earth's surface.
____	g. empire	7. land or money from a government.
____	h. area	8. agreement made and signed between nations.
____	i. grant	9. a line to mark the boundaries.
____	j. treaty	10. a sailor with skill and experience who has taken part in many voyages.

III. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put an F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. After Columbus's trip to the New York, the Europeans thought they had found a new and shorter seaway to Asia.

____ 2. In 1497, England hired an Italian navigator, John Cabot, to find a new seaway to India.

____ 3. Before 1500, many Europeans began to come and live in the New World.

____ 4. The Spaniards were interested in these two areas because they had found a lot of fish and furs in South America and Central America.

____ 5. The Spaniards preserved the Aztec civilization.

____ 6. Pizarro arrested the leaders and killed many Indian people.

____ 7. Following the time of exploration, the Christian missionaries came from Spain and Portugal.

____ 8. The priest did not want to teach the Christian faith to the Indians.

____ 9. Unlike the English, the Spaniards did not face any religious discrimination and prejudice at home.

____10. French exploration and settlements in the New World took place earlier than those of Spain, Portugal, and England.

IV. Fill in the blanks: Complete each statement by writing the correct word in the blank: colonies, attract, furs, obtained, explored, settle, navigator, explorers, disease, Empire.

1. The population in the French __________ was small.
2. The colonies did not __________ many Frenchmen because the French government did not allow the colonists to set up their own government.
3. The French did not find any gold and silver but they found

another treasure, ___________ .

4. Besides the colony at Quebec, France also _______________ a large area west of Mississippi River after the exploration of Jacques Marquette.
5. Samuel de Champlain ___________ the lands from Nova Scotia to Cape Cod.
6. Frenchmen did not like to ____________ in the New World.
7. In 1524, France hired an Italian _____________ , Giovani da Verrazano, to find a seaway to Asia.
8. The Spanish colonies attracted the Spanish and Portugese kings and also the ___________ .
9. Many Indians were killed by ____________ and hard work.
10. Francisco Pizarro landed in Peru and he found the Inca _______________ .

ບົດອ່ານ

໒.໑. ຊາວຢູໂຣບໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອແລະໃຕ້

໒.໑.໑. ພາຍຫຼັງການເດີນທາງໄປຍັງໂລກໃໝ່ຂອງທ່ານ Columbus ຊາວຢູໂຣບຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຄິດວ່າ ພວກຕົນບໍ່ໄດ້ພົບເຫັນພຽງແຕ່ທາງເດີນທະເລໃໝ່ແລະມີຣະຍະສັ້ນກວ່າເດີມເພື່ອໄປຍັງ ເອເຊັຍ ເທົ່ານັ້ນ ແຕ່ກໍ່ຍັງໄດ້ພົບເຫັນດິນແດນໃໝ່ທີ່ເຕັມໄປດ້ວຍຄວາມອຸດົມສົມບູນອີກດ້ວຍ. ປະເທດ ສະເປນ, ປອກຕຸຍການ, ອັງກິດ ແລະຝຣັ່ງເສດ ໄດ້ເລີ້ມສົ່ງນັກສຳຫຼວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າຂອງພວກຕົນໄປຍັງໂລກໃໝ່ ຊຶ່ງໃນທຳອິດນັ້ນເພື່ອສຳຫຼວດເຂດແດນທີ່ຂອງດິນແດນແລະເພື່ອຊອກຫາ ບໍ່ຄຳ ແລະ ບໍ່ເງິນ ແລະ ໃນຕໍ່ມາກໍ່ເພື່ອຕັ້ງຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນ.

໒.໑.໒. ໃນປີ ໑໔໙໗ ປະເທດອັງກິດໄດ້ຈ້າງນັກເດີນເຮືອຊາວອີຕາລີ ຊື່ວ່າ John Cabot ເພື່ອຊອກຫາທາງເດີນທະເລໄປສູ່ປະເທດອິນເດັຍສາຍໃໝ່. ນາຍ Cabot ໄດ້ເດີນທາງໄປເຖິງຝັ່ງ Labrador ແລະໄດ້ອ້າງສິດທິເອົາດິນແດນແຫ່ງນັ້ນເປັນຂອງປະເທດອັງກິດ. ສາມປີຕໍ່ມານາຍ Pedro de Cabral ຈາກປະເທດປອກຕຸຍການໄດ້ເດີນເຮືອໄປທາງທິດຕາເວັນຕົກແລະໄດ້ຂຶ້ນຝັ່ງປະເທດ ບະເຣຊິນ. ນາຍ Cabral ໄດ້ອ້າງສິດທິເອົາດິນແດນແຫ່ງນັ້ນເປັນຂອງປະເທດປອກຕຸຍການ. ໃນຕອນທ້າຍຂອງສັດຕະວັດທີ່ ໑໕ ໄດ້ມີການສຳຫຼວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າຫຼາຍຢ່າງທົ່ວໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອແລະໃຕ້. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍ່ດີ ຊາວຢູໂຣບບໍ່ໄດ້ເຂົ້າໄປຢູ່ໃນໂລກໃໝ່ນັ້ນຈົນເຖິງຕອນຫຼັງຂອງປີ ໑໕໐໐.

໒.໒. ຊາວສະເປນໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອແລະໃຕ້

໒.໒.໑. ປະເທດສະເປນແລະປອກຕຸຍການ ເປັນສອງປະເທດທຳອິດທີ່ໄດ້ຕັ້ງຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອແລະໃຕ້. ໃນປີ ໑໔໙໔ ສອງປະເທດດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຕົກລົງເຫັນດີວ່າ ຄວນມີເສັ້ນກັ້ນເຂດແດນເພື່ອແບ່ງໂລກໃໝ່ອອກເປັນສອງພາກ. ແຕ່ລະປະເທດຕ້ອງຄວບຄຸມແຕ່ລະພາກ.

໒.໒.໒. ພວກສະເປນໄດ້ຕັ້ງຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນຂອງຕົນໃນອະເມຣິກາກາງ, ອະເມຣິກາໃຕ້ ແລະ ໃນ

California ພວກສະເປນມີຄວາມສົນໃຈໃນຂົງເຂດເຫຼົ່ານີ້ກໍເພາະເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ພົບເຫັນບໍ່ຄຳແລະບໍ່ເງິນໃນແຫ່ງດັ່ງກ່າວຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ. ນາຍ Juan Ponce de Leon ນັກສຳຫຼວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າຊາວສະເປນໄດ້ໄປຢ້ຽມຢາມ Florida ໃນປີ ໑໕໑໓. ໃນເວລາດຽວກັນນັ້ນ ນັກສຳຫຼວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າຊາວສະເປນອີກຄົນໜຶ່ງຊື່ນາຍ Hernando Cortes ພ້ອມດ້ວຍກຳລັງຄົນທີ່ປະກອບອາວຸດຢ່າງດີຈຳນວນ ໕໐໐ ຄົນ ໄດ້ບຸກໂຈມຕີແລະຄອບຄອງອານາຈັກ Aztec . ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຍຶດເອົາສົມບັດຂອງພວກ Aztecs ທຳລາຍຄວາມສີວິໄລຂອງ Aztec ແລະ ບັນທຸກເອົາຄຳແລະເງິນກັບໄປຍັງປະເທດສະເປນ.

໖.໖.໓. ໃນອະເມຣິກາໃຕ້ ສິບປີຕໍ່ມາ ນາຍ Frances Pizzarro ໄດ້ຂຶ້ນຝັ່ງປະເທດ Peru ແລະ ໄດ້ຄົ້ນພົບອານາຈັກ Inca. ໃນແຫ່ງນັ້ນນາຍ Pizzaro ໄດ້ພົບແລະຍຶດເອົາຄຳແລະເງິນຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ. ນອກຈາກນີ້ລາວຍັງໄດ້ຈັບກຸມບັນດາຫົວໜ້າແລະຊາວອິນເດຍແດງຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຄົນ. ຫຼັງຈາກນັ້ນລາວກໍໄດ້ສົ່ງພວກສະເປນເຂົ້າໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນແຫ່ງນັ້ນ. ພວກສະເປນທີ່ເຂົ້າໄປຢູ່ໃໝ່ນັ້ນໄດ້ໃຊ້ພວກອິນເດຍແດງເປັນຂ້າທາດສຳຫຼັບຂຸດບໍ່ຄຳ. ພວກອິນເດຍແດງຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ເສັຍຊີວິດໄປຍ້ອນພະຍາດແລະວຽກໜັກ. ຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍບໍ່ເຫັນພ້ອມກັບນະໂຍບາຍຂອງພວກສະເປນທີ່ໄປຢູ່ໃໝ່ນັ້ນ. ໃນຈຳນວນພວກທີ່ຄັດຄ້ານນະໂຍບາຍດັ່ງກ່າວນັ້ນ ມີພວກພະສົງໃນຄະນະເຜີຍແຜ່ສາສນາຄຣິສ.

໖.໖.໔. ໃນລະຫວ່າງການສຳຫຼວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າໃນຄັ້ງນີ້ ຄະນະເຜີຍແຜ່ສາສນາຄຣິສໄດ້ເຂົ້າໄປໃນໂລກໃໝ່ຈາກປະເທດສະເປນແລະປອກຕຸຍການ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າມີຄວາມປະສົງສອນສາສນາຄຣິສໃຫ້ແກ່ພວກອິນເດຍແດງ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຕິດຕາມພວກນັກສຳຫຼວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າແລະເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຊ່ວຍປັບປຸງການກະທຳອັນໂຫດຮ້າຍທາລຸນຂອງພວກນັກສຳຫຼວດດັ່ງກ່າວທີ່ມີຕໍ່ຊາວອິນເດຍແດງນັ້ນຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ.

໖.໖.໕. ເຖິງແມ່ນວ່າຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນຂອງສະເປນຈະເປັນທີ່ດຶງດູດແກ່ບັນດານັກສຳຫຼວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າເປັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍກໍຕາມ ແຕ່ຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນເຫຼົ່ານີ້ບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນທີ່ດຶງດູດແກ່ພວກທີ່ໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນເມືອງຂຶ້ນນັ້ນແຕ່ປະການໃດ. ພວກສະເປນບໍ່ຕ້ອງການໄປອາໄສຢູ່ໃນໂລກໃໝ່. ພວກສະເປນບໍ່ຄືພວກອັງກິດ ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ໄດ້ປະເຊີນກັບບັນຫາກັ່ນແກ້ງຫຼືຄວາມກົດຂີ່ທາງສາສນາໃນປະເທດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ບໍ່ຄືເມືອງຂຶ້ນຂອງອັງກິດ ເມືອງຂຶ້ນຂອງສະເປນບໍ່ມີການອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ຕັ້ງຣັຖບານໃນຮູບຂອງຕົນເອງ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນັ້ນເອງ

ປະຊາຈີນໃນບັນດາເມືອງຂຶ້ນຂອງສະເປນຈຳນວນນ້ອຍທີ່ສຸດ.

໒.໓. ຊາວຝຣັ່ງເສດໃນອະເມລິກາເໜືອແລະໃຕ້

໒.໓.໑. ການສຳຫຼວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າແລະການຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນໂລກໃໝ່ຂອງຝຣັ່ງເສດນັ້ນ ເກີດຂຶ້ນພາຍຫຼັງພວກສະເປນ, ປອກຕຸຍການ ແລະ ອັງກິດ. ໃນປີ ໑໕໒໒ ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດໄດ້ຈ້າງນັກເດີນເຮືອອີຕາລີຜູ້ນຶ່ງຊື່ວ່າ Giovanida Verrazano ເພື່ອຊອກຫາທາງເດີນທະເລໄປສູ່ເອເຊັຍ. ນາຍ Verrazano ໄດ້ອອກຈາກຢູໂຣບໃນປີ ໑໕໒໒ ແລະ ໄດ້ຂຶ້ນຝັ່ງຂອງ North Carolina. ລາວໄດ້ເດີນເຮືອຈາກ Corolina ໄປທາງທິດເໜືອເລາະຕາມແຄມທະເລຂອງມະຫາສະມຸດ Atlantic . ລາວໄດ້ໄປເຖິງ Newfoundland ແລະຈາກນັ້ນກໍໄດ້ກັບຄືນສູ່ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ. ລາວເຂົ້າໃຈວ່າລາວໄດ້ພົບເສັ້ນທາງໄປສູ່ເອເຊັຍແລ້ວ. ຫຼັງຈາກນັ້ນຊາວຝຣັ່ງເສດຫຼາຍຄົນເຊັ່ນນາຍ Jacques Cartier, Samuel de Champlain ກໍໄດ້ສຳຫຼວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າຫຼາຍເຂດແຄວ້ນໃນອະເມລິກາເໜືອ. ນາຍ Jacques Cartier ໄດ້ລ່ອງເຮືອຕາມແມ່ນ້ຳ St Laurence River ແລະໄດ້ຜູກມິດກັບພວກອິນເດັຍແດງໃນເຂດແຄວ້ນຕ່າງໆເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນ. ພວກອິນເດັຍແດງໄດ້ສອນວິທີຈັບສັດເພື່ອເອົາຂົນສັດໃຫ້ແກ່ລາວ. ນາຍ Samuel de Champlain ໄດ້ສຳຫຼວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າດິນແດນຈາກ Nova Sotia to Cape Code . ນອກຈາກນັ້ນລາວຍັງໄດ້ທຳສົນທິສັນຍາກັບພວກອິນເດັຍແດງໃນເຂດ Hudson ແລະຕໍ່ມາໃນປີ ໑໖໐໘ ລາວໄດ້ຊ່ອຍຕັ້ງອານິຄົມ Quebec.

໒.໓.໒. ນອກຈາກຕົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນຢູ່ທີ່ Quebec ແລ້ວ ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດຍັງໄດ້ເຂດແດນອັນກວ້າງໃຫຍ່ອີກແຫ່ງນຶ່ງຢູ່ທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກຂອງແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi ຍ້ອນການສຳຫຼວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າຂອງນາຍ Jacques Marguette, Louis Joliet ແລະ Robert de la Salle. ນັກສະຈົນໄພສາມຄົນເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ທຳການສຳຫຼວດ Great Lakes ແລະແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi. ໃນ ໑໖໘໒ ນາຍ Robert de la Salle ໄດ້ເດີນເຮືອລົງໄປທາງທິດໃຕ້ຈາກແມ່ນ້ຳ Illinois ຫາອ່າວຂອງ Mexico . ລາວໄດ້ອ້າງເອົາເຂດດັ່ງກ່າວເປັນກັມມະສິດຂອງປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ ໂດຍໄດ້ຕັ້ງຊື່ເຂດນັ້ນວ່າ Louisiana ເພື່ອເປັນກຽດແກ່ພຣະເຈົ້າມະຫາຊີວິດ Louis ຂອງປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ.

໔.ຄ.ຄ. ສົນໃຈຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນໂລກໃໝ່. ບັນດານັກສຳຫຼວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າຝຣັ່ງເສດຕ້ອງການຊອກຫາແຮ່ງແຕ່ສົມບັດຕ່າງໆເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ສາມາດຄົ້ນຫາຄຳແລະເງິນແຕ່ຢ່າງໃດ ແຕ່ວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ພົບເຫັນສົມບັດຢ່າງອື່ນຄືຂົນສັດ. ການສົ່ງຂົນສັດອອກຂາຍໃນຕ່າງປະເທດເປັນທຸລະກິດທາງເສດຖະກິດອັນສຳຄັນຢ່າງໜຶ່ງຂອງປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດໃນຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນຕ່າງໆ. ເມືອງຂຶ້ນໃນໂລກໃໝ່ນັ້ນບໍ່ເປັນທີ່ດຶງດູດແກ່ຊາວຝຣັ່ງເສດ ເພາະວ່າຣັຖບານຝຣັ່ງເສດບໍ່ອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ພວກທີ່ໄປຢູ່ໃນຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນນັ້ນຖືຣັຖບານຂອງຕົນແລະມີອິດສະຫຼະພາບທາງສາສະໜາ. ປະຊາຊົນໃນຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນຂອງຝຣັ່ງເສດນັ້ນມີຈຳນວນໜ້ອຍ. ໃນປີ ໑໗໔໐ ຜູ້ຄົນທີ່ຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານຢູ່ໃນຫົວເມືອງຂອງຝຣັ່ງເສດມີນ້ອຍ ໑໐໐.໐໐໐ ຄົນ.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. Word search puzzle :

Directions: Find and circle the words in the words puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕາລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບເຫຼົ່ານີ້ຕາມ ທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນໄວ້ ພ້ອມກັບຂຽນຄຳອະທິບາຍກຳກັບໄວ້ພ້ອມ.

SOUTH
GULF
EMPIRE
PRIEST
GRANT
FUR
SPAIN
LINE
COLONY
FAMOUS
SOIL

SEAWAY
COUNTRY
FRENCH
DISEASES
CRUELTY
GOVERN
NAVIGATOR
BRITISH
PREJUDICE
ATTACK
ARRESTED

INCA
AREA
GOLD
LAND
LIVE
AZTEC
BRAZIL
CLAIM
SAIL
DIVIDE
ASIA

SETTLE
PORTUGAL
CIVILIZATION
DISCRIMINATION
TAKE PLACE
EXPLORER
POPULATION
FREEDOM
DEMARCATION LINE
SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN

C H C N E R F D B R I T I S H D G P R

I S E A W A Y E X P L O R E R I R O O

V O N V F U R M A Z T E C M A V A P B

I I L I N E F A M O U S W P R I N U E

L L W G I V P R I E S T X I E D T L R

I S P A I N N C O N Q U E R A E O A T

Z A U T I N C A U V C R U E L T Y T D

A T S O U T H T A K E P L A C E F I E

T T O R P G D I S E A S E S O C R O L

I A S I A O C O L O N Y S A I L E N A

O C E V I L Q N P O R T U G A L E H S

N K L A N D R L C O U N T R Y C D C A

C P R E J U D I C E B R A Z I L O I L

O C L A I M S N S E T T L E C C M B L

N A R R E S T E D G O V E R N M E N E

D I S C R I M I N A T I O N G U L F O

S A M U E L D E C H A M P L A I N O N

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

໒. ການປະກອບສັບແລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ: ຈົ່ງປະກອບສັບແຕ່ລະສັບທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃສ່ປະໂຍກໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ. ໃຫ້ໝາຍເລກໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງແຕ່ລະຄຳຕອບ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ກ. ຫົນສັດ	໑. ຜູ້ທີ່ເດີນທາງເຂົ້າໄປໃນປະເທດໃດປະເທດນຶ່ງໃນຈຸດປະສົງເພື່ອສຶກສາຮອບຮູ້ປະເທດນັ້ນ.
_____ ຂ. ທາງເດີນທະເລ	໒. ປະເທດຫຼືດິນແດນທີ່ມີຄົນຈາກປະເທດອື່ນມາຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານແລະອາໄສຢູ່.
_____ ຄ. ນັກສຳຣວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າ	໓. ເສັ້ນທາງສຳຄັນເດີນເຮືອໃນມະຫາສະມຸດ.
_____ ງ. ຕົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນ	໔. ກຸ່ມປະເທດທີ່ຢູ່ພາຍໃຕ້ອຳນາດສູງສຸດແຕ່ອຳນາດດຽວ.
_____ ຈ. ນັກເດີນເຮືອ	໕. ຫົນອ່ອນໜາຫຸ້ມຕົວສັດບາງປະເພດ.
_____ ສ. ເສັ້ນໝາຍເຂດແດນ	໖. ພາກພື້ນທີ່ຢູ່ບົນໜ້າໂລກ.
_____ ຊ. ອານາຈັກ	໗. ດິນແດນທີ່ເງິນຕຣາຈາກຣັຖບານ.
_____ ຍ. ເຂດແດນ	໘. ການຕົກລົງສັນຍາທີ່ຈັດຂຶ້ນແລະເຊັນຣະຫວ່າງປະເທດຕ່າງໆ.
_____ ດ. ທຶນ	໙. ເສັ້ນສຳຄັນໝາຍເຂດແດນ.
_____ ຕ. ສົນທິສັນຍາ	໑໐. ຜູ້ທີ່ມີຝີມືແລະຄວາມຊຳນານດ້ານການເດີນເຮືອ

໓. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ

ຈົ່ງອ່ານແຕ່ລະປະໂຫຍກແລ້ວໝາຍ T ໃສ່ໜ້າຫາກປະໂຫຍກນັ້ນຖືກ ແລະ ໃຫ້ໝາຍ F ໃສ່ໜ້າປະໂຫຍກນັ້ນຫາກຜິດ.

_____ ໑. ຫຼັງຈາກການເດີນທາງໄປສູ່ New York ຂອງ Columbus ຊາວຢູໂຣບທັງຫຼາຍຄິດວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ພົບທາງເດີນທະເລໄປສູ່ເອເຊັຍເສັ້ນໃໝ່ແລະໃກ້ກວ່າເດີມ.

_____ ໒. ໃນປີ ໑໔໙໗ ປະເທດອັງກິດໄດ້ຈ້າງນັກເດີນເຮືອອີຕາລີຜູ້ນຶ່ງຊື່ John Cabot ເພື່ອຊອກຫາທາງເດີນທະເລໄປສູ່ອິນເດັຍສາຍໃໝ່.

_____ ໓. ກ່ອນ ໑໕໐໐ ຊາວຢູໂຣບຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ເລີ້ມເຂົ້າໄປສູ່ໃນໂລກໃໝ່.

_____ ໔. ພວກສະເປນມີຄວາມສົນໃຈໃນເຂດແດນສອງແຫ່ງເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ເພາະວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ພົບເຕັນປາແລະອົບສັດໃນອະເມຣິກາໃຕ້ແລະອະເມຣິກາກາງຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ.

_____ ໕. ພວກສະເປນໄດ້ຮັກສາຄວາມສືໄລຂອງພວກ Aztec ເອົາໄວ້.

_____ ໖. ນາຍ Pizzarro ໄດ້ຈັບກຸມແລະໄດ້ຂ້າຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຄົນ.

_____ ໗. ພາຍຫຼັງຣະຍະເວລາຂອງການສຳຣວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າພວກນັກເຜີຍແຜ່ສາສນາຄຣິສ ໄດ້ມາຈາກສະເປນ ແລະ ປອກຕູການ.

_____ ໘. ພຣະສົງບໍ່ຕ້ອງການສອນສາສນາຄຣິສໃຫ້ແກ່ພວກອິນເດັຍແດງ.

_____ ໙. ບໍ່ເໝືອນພວກອັງກິດ ພວກສະເປນບໍ່ໄດ້ພົບກັບບັນຫາກັ່ນແກ້ງແລະກົດຈັ້ງດ້ານສາສນາໃນປະເທດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

_____ ໑໐. ການສຳຣວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າແລະການຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານຂອງຝຣັ່ງເສດໃນໂລກໃໝ່ໄດ້ມີຂຶ້ນກ່ອນພວກສະເປນ, ປອກຕູການ ແລະ ອັງກິດ.

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເຂົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ : ຈົ່ງຂຽນຄຳເວົ້າຫຼືໝວດຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ມີຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ ຕື່ມໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຫຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍອັນຖືກຕ້ອງ : ຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນ, ດຶງດູດ, ຂົນສັດ, ໄດ້, ສຳຣວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າ, ຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານ, ນັກເດີນເຮືອ, ນັກສຳຣວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າ, ພະຍາດ, ອານາຈັກ.

໑. ປະຊາຊົນໃນ ____________________ ຂອງຝຣັ່ງເສດມີຢູ່ນ້ອຍ.

໒. ໃນຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນຕ່າງໆນັ້ນບໍ່ມີການ __________________________ ຂອງຊາວຝຣັ່ງເສດ ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍເພາະວ່າຣັຖບານຝຣັ່ງເສດບໍ່ອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ພວກທີ່ອາໄສຢູ່ນັ້ນຕັ້ງຣັຖບານຂອງຕົນເອງ.

໓. ພວກຊາວຝຣັ່ງເສດບໍ່ໄດ້ພົບເຫັນຄຳແລະເງິນເລີຍ ແຕ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ພົບເຫັນສົມບັດຢ່າງອື່ນຄື

____________________ .

໔. ນອກຈາກຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນໃນ Quebec ແລ້ວ ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດຍັງ ________________ __________ ເຂດແດນອັນກວ້າງໃຫຍ່ໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກຂອງແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi ພາຍຫຼັງການສຳຣວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າຂອງນາຍ Jacques Marquette.

໕. ນາຍ Samuel de Champlain ໄດ້ __________________________ ດິນແດນແຕ່ Nova Scotia ຫາ Cape Cod.

໖. ຊາວຝຣັ່ງເສດບໍ່ມັກ __________________________ ໃນໂລກໃໝ່.

໗. ໃນປີ ໑໕໒໔ ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດໄດ້ຈ້າງ _______________________ ຄົນອີຕາລີຊື່ນາຍ Giovanida Verrazano ເພື່ອຊອກຫາທາງເດີນທະເລໄປສູ່ເອເຊັຍ.

໘. ຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນຂອງສະເປນໄດ້ເປັນທີ່ດຶງດູດແກ່ພວກເຈົ້າຈິດສະເປນແລະປອກຕຸຍການພ້ອມທັງ ____ ______________________ ເຊິ່ງກັນ.

໙. ພວກອິນເດັຍແດງຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ເສັຍຊີວິດຍ້ອນ ______________ ແລະວຽກງານອັນໜັກໜ່ວງ.

໑໐. Frances Pizzaro ໄດ້ຂຶ້ນຝັ່ງປະເທດ Peru ແລະ ໄດ້ພົບເຫັນ ______________ Inca.

ໝວດ ໑ : ການຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາ

ພາກ ໒ : ຊາວອັງກິດໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອ

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ

religious freedom: ອິສຣະພາບທາງສາສນາ

Many Englishmen came to America for religious freedom.

estuary: ປາກແມ່ນ້ຳ

Jamestown was set up on the estuary of the James River.

identure: ພວກທີ່ເຂົ້າໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານຕາມສັນຍາ

The first settlers in the Virginia colony were indentures.

free citizen: ພົນລະເມືອງທີ່ເປັນອິສຣະ

After completing their obligations to their bosses, the indentures would become free citizens.

Pilgrims: ພວກຖືສາສນາ ພິນກຣິມ

Puritans: ພວກຖືສາສນາ ພຣົວຣິຕັນ

Faith: ຄວາມເຊື່ອ

The Pilgrims and Puritans found America to be a safe country where they were free to pratice their own faith.

National religion: ສາສນາຂອງຊາດ

King George of England decreed that the Church of England was to be National religion of England.

custom: ປະເພນີ

While they lived in Holland, the English wanted to preserve their own customs and language.

Thanksgiving Day: ວັນຂອບຄຸນພຣະເຈົ້າ

One of the most important American holidays is Thankgiving Day.

lumbering: ການຕັດໄມ້

The colonists survived by farming, lumbering, and fishing.

Charter: ອະນຸຍາດຈາກເຈົ້າຊີວິດ

William Penn got a charter from the King of England to set up his own propriety colony.

plantation: ສວນ

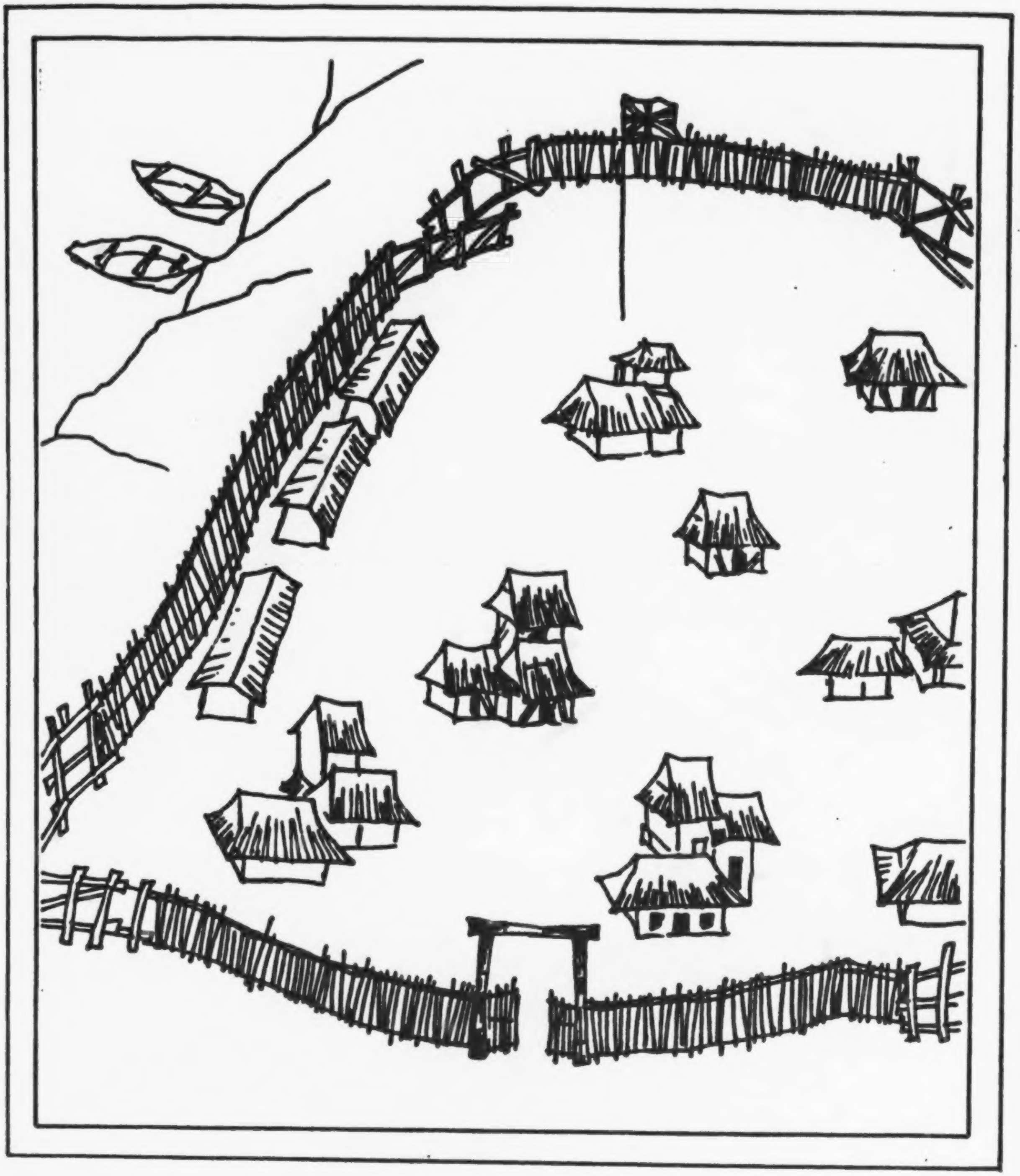
There are many tea plantations in China and India.

READING

3.1. THE ENGLISH ESTABLISHED THE COLONIES

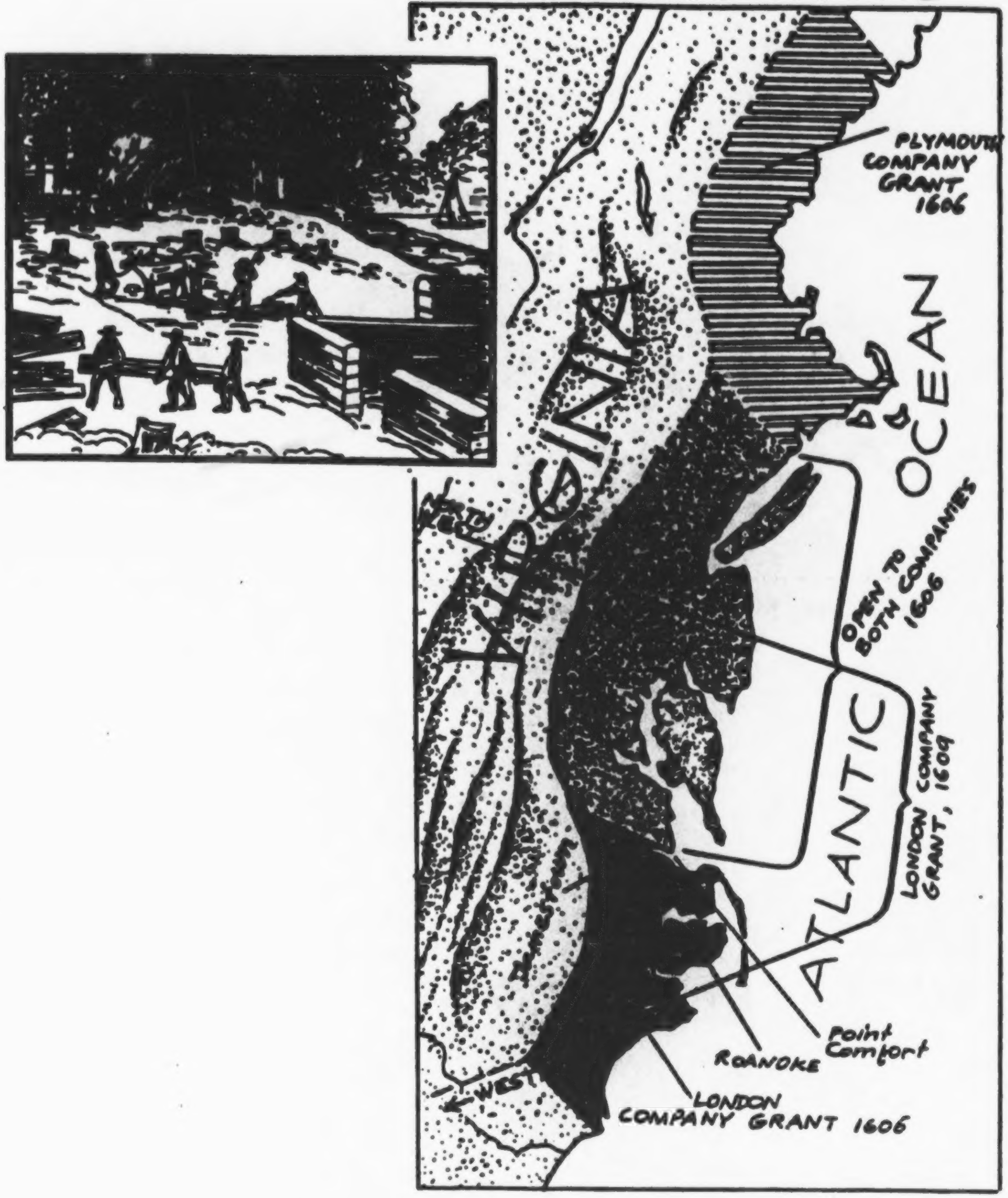
3.1.1. England began establishing colonies in America as early as 1585. Some English explorers, like the Spanish explorers, came to the New World to look for gold and silver. But most of the English colonists came to the New World for other reasons. Some came to America to seek religious or political freedom, while others hoped to find a better life. As more and more English colonists came to settle in America, the number of English colonies expanded radidly.

3.1.2. Over a period of about one hundred years, English colonies extended along the Atlantic Coast from the border of Florida to Canada. The first English colony was set up in



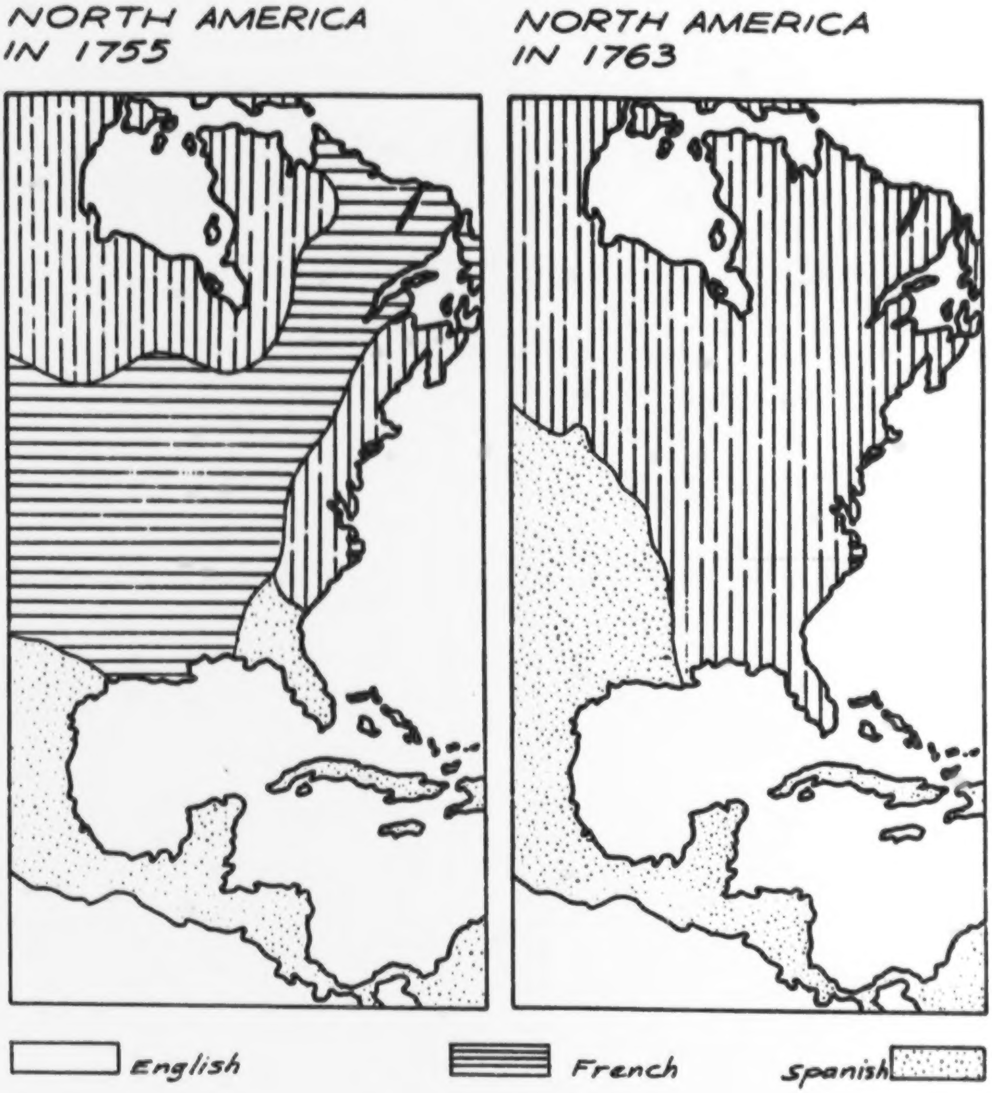
JAMESTOWN, VIRGINIA

VIRGINIA LAND GRANTS


PLYMOUTH COMPANY GRANT 1606
ATLANTIC OCEAN
VIRGINIA
OPEN TO BOTH COMPANIES 1606
LONDON COMPANY GRANT, 1609
NORTH
Point Comfort
ROANOKE
LONDON COMPANY GRANT 1606
WEST

1607 in Jamestown, Virginia, by the London Company. The first settlers of Jamestown built their colony on land at the **estuary** of the James River in the Chesapeake Bay. During the first year, many of the original settlers died. The winter was severe and the shelters constructed by the colonists did not protect them from the cold. Most of the colonists were not farmers and they did not plant sufficient food to have enough to eat. Others became sick by drinking bad water. However, the colony survived with the help of the friendly Indians nearby. Indians taught the settlers how to grow tobacco, a product that was in great demand in England. By 1627, the Virginia colony exported 500,000 pounds of tobacco to England. This helped the colony to survive and flourish. Many new colonists came to Jamestown to start a new life. These new settlers were **indentured.** Indentured servants agreed to work as laborers to pay for their passage from England to America. Their length of service varied from 2 to 7 years. After completing their obligation, the indentured servants were able to become **free citizens.** In addition to the indentured servants, many religious groups also wanted to settle in America where they would be able to worship freely. The two most famous religious groups were the Pilgrims and the Puritans.

3.1.3. When the King of England decided to separate from the Roman Catholic Church, he established the Church of England as the **national religion.** Many religious groups disagreed with this order of the King. They wanted to find a safe place


NORTH AMERICA IN 1755
NORTH AMERICA IN 1763
English
French
Spanish

where they would be free to follow their own **faith**. The **Pilgrims** left England and went to live in Holland, but here they faced another problem: their children forgot their own **customs** and language. Therefore, the Pilgrims left Holland and moved again to America in order to preserve their customs and language. They set up the colony of Plymouth in Massachusetts. The Indians in this area were friendly and taught them how to farm and fish. After one year, the Pilgrims had grown enough food to survive. They prepared a feast to thank God and the Indians who had helped them survive hardships. This feast was the first **Thanksgiving Day** celebrated in America.

3.1.4. Another religious group, the **Puritans**, also wanted to have a place to freely worship God. They asked King Charles I to give them a **charter** to settle in the New World. In 1629, the Puritans established the Massachusetts Bay Colony. In 1631, the Massuchusetts Bay and Plymouth Colonies joined together and became the colony of Massachusetts. The Puritans and Pilgrims were good farmers and hard workers. They survived by farming, **lumbering**, trading, and fishing.

3.2. OTHER COLONIES IN NORTH AMERICA

3.2.1. By 1733, England had already set up many other colonies along the eastern coast. From Holland, England obtained the colony of New Amsterdam. They called this colony New York. Another colony, Pennsylvania, was set up by William Penn in 1724. Pennsylvania prospered under the leadership of

Penn. He was friendly with the Indians in his area and allowed everybody, no matter what their religion, to settle in his colony. He wanted to build a special colony in the New World where all nationalities and religions could live together. Next to Pennsylvania was Maryland, which belonged to Lord Baltimore. He received the charter from the King of England to set up a refuge for the Catholics and other religious groups. Later, in the eighteen century, three more colonies were set up in the South. These were South Carolina, North Carolina, and Georgia.

3.2.2. South and North Carolina were established by groups of wealthy, noble Englishmen. They operated many large, prosperous plantations and their life was not unlike their life in England. Georgia, however, was different. It was a refuge for the prisoners from England. These prisoners could come to live in America instead of staying in English prisons. In the New World they would have many chances to get rich. As the years went by, the population in the British Colonies increased, and the colonists enjoyed a better life and more freedom than they had in England.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

P R T H A N K S G I V I N G D A Y
E E S T U A R Y L A B O R I O U S
N L S T A T E R E L I G I O N X J
N I N D E N T U R E C O L O N Y A
S G S K L U M B E R I N G C E C M
Y I I E C O N F C H A R T E R H E
L O L E C P L A N T A T I O N E S
V U V P P O L I T I C A L H I A T
A S E Q U R P H T O B A C C O S O
N F R E E C I T I Z E N S A F E W
I R F N X P L P U R I T A N S P N
A E L G P O G A M E R I C A N E W
N E O L A U R L A N G U A G E A I
E D R A N N I T R A D I N G M K N
W O I N D D M F A R M I N G W E T
O M D D O S S T F I S H I N G A E
R C A N A D A N E W Y E A R S Y R
L E A D E R S H I P N E W Y O R K
D B B O S D E B O U S C H A N C E

SAFE
POUND
EXPAND
CHANGE
CANADA
COLONY
TOBACCO
WINTER
ENGLAND
AMERICAN
NEW YORK
POLITICAL
FLORIDA
JAMESTOWN
PURITANS
LANGUAGE
TRADING
FARMING
FISHING
NEW YEAR
NEW WORLD
LEADERSHIP
SILVER
PENNSYLVANIA
THANKSGIVING DAY

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A	B
____ a. charter	1. people who signed a contract which stipulated that in return for transportation to America they would work without wages for periods ranging from two to seven years.
____ b. frontier	2. official document granting certain rights, powers, or priviledges to a specific person or group.
____ c. indentured servants	3. the unsettled wilderness land just beyond the settled area.
____ d. John Smith	4. the right to worship in one's own way.
____ e. royal colony	5. leader of the Jamestown settlement.
____ f. national religion	6. a colony ruled by a king and his ministers.
____ g. religious freedom	7. government which sanctioned church, supported by taxes.

III. True or False:

Read the statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put a F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. England began to set up colonies in America in 1600.

____ 2. As more and more English came to settle in America, the English Colonies expanded rapidly.

____ 3. The first English colony was set up in 1607, in Jamestown, Virginia, by the London Company.

____ 4. In the first year, the English faced a hard life because the winter was too cold and they did not have enough food to eat.

____ 5. The first settlers in Jamestown were slaves.

____ 6. When the King of England decided to separate from the Roman Catholic Church, he declared the Church of England to be the national religion.

____ 7. Many groups disagreed with the order of the King.

____ 8. The Pilgrims moved to Holland where they had a good life.

____ 9. The Puritans also wanted to have a place to practice their religion freely.

____10. The Puritans set up their colony in Massachusetts Bay in 1629.

IV. Fill in the blanks:

Complete each statements by writing the correct word or group or words in the blanks: to farm and fish, indentures, wealthy and noble, refuge, prisoners, eastern coast, religions, plantations, colonists, leadership.

1. South Carolina and North Carolina were established by a

group of ____________ Englishmen.

2. They operated many large __________ and their lives were the same as they had been in England.
3. Georgia was set up as a _____________ for the prisoners in England.
4. In the New World, the __________ would have many chances to get rich.
5. As the years went by, the population in the British Colonies increased, and the __________ had a better life and more freedom than they had enjoyed in England.
6. By 1733, England had already set up many colonies along the __________ .
7. William Penn established Pennsylvania in 1724 and Pennsylvania became prosperous under the ___________ of Penn.
8. Penn wanted to build a special colony in the New World that allowed all nationalities and _________ live together.
9. The Indians in this area taught them how __________ .
10. The ____________ agreed to work as laborers to pay their passage from England to America.

ບົດອ່ານ

ມ.໑. ການຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມຂອງຊາວອັງກິດ

ມ.໑.໑. ປະເທດອັງກິດໄດ້ເລີ່ມຕັ້ງຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນຕ່າງໆໃນອະເມຣິກາຕັ້ງແຕ່ປີ ໑໕໘໔. ພວກນັກສຳຣວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າຊາວອັງກິດ ເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນກັບພວກນັກສຳຣວດຊາວສະເປນ ເຂົ້າເຈົ້າໄດ້ເຂົ້າໄປໃນໂລກໃໝ່ ກໍເພື່ອຊອກຫາຄຳແລະເງິນ. ແຕ່ຊາວອັງກິດທີ່ເຂົ້າໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນໂລກໃໝ່ ສ່ວນຫຼາຍແລ້ວເຂົ້າເຈົ້າມີຈຸດມຸ້ງໝາຍຢ່າງອື່ນ. ບາງພວກກໍເຂົ້າໄປໃນອະເມຣິກາເພື່ອສະແວງຫາອິສລະພາບທາງສາສນາ ຫຼື ທາງການເມືອງ ແລະ ອີກບາງພວກກໍເຂົ້າໄປໃນຄວາມຫວັງທີ່ຈະມີຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ອັນດີກວ່າເດີມ. ເມື່ອຊາວອັງກິດເຂົ້າໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນອະເມຣິກາຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ດັ່ງນັ້ນຈຳນວນອານານິຄົມຂອງປະເທດອັງກິດຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຂະຫຍາຍຂຶ້ນຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວ.

ມ.໑.໒. ໃນຣະຍະເວລາປະມານນຶ່ງຮ້ອຍປີ ອານານິຄົມຂອງອັງກິດໄດ້ແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍໄປຕາມແຄມມະຫາສະມຸດ Atlantic ຈາກຊາຍແດນ Flora ຂຶ້ນໄປຫາປະເທດ Canada ອານານິຄົມແຫ່ງທຳອິດໃນເມືອງ Jamestown ຣັຖ Virginia ນັ້ນແມ່ນບໍຣິສັດ London Company ເປັນຜູ້ສ້າງໃນປີ ໑໖໐໗. ພວກຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນເມືອງ Jamestown ໄດ້ພາກັນຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມຂອງຕົນຂຶ້ນຕາມບໍຣິເວນປາກແມ່ນ້ຳ James River ໃນອ່າວ Cheasapeake Bay. ໃນລະຫວ່າງປີທຳອິດນັ້ນ ພວກທີ່ເຂົ້າໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານຊຸດທຳອິດ ໄດ້ພາກັນເສັຽຊີວິດໄປຍ້ອນຄວາມໜາວອັນຮ້າຍແຮງ ທັງເຮືອນຊານບ້ານຊ່ອງທີ່ປຸກໄວ້ກໍບໍ່ສາມາດປ້ອງກັນໄດ້. ອີກຢ່າງນຶ່ງ ພວກດັ່ງກ່າວບໍ່ແມ່ນຊາວກະສິກອນ ດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົ້າເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງບໍ່ສາມາດປູກເຄື່ອງຢູ່ຂອງກິນໄດ້ຢ່າງພຽງພໍ. ອີກບາງພວກກໍໄດ້ເກີດເຈັບປ່ວຍຍ້ອນດື່ມນ້ຳທີ່ບໍ່ສະອາດ. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍດີ ອານານິຄົມທີ່ວ່ານີ້ສາມາດຢູ່ລອດມາໄດ້ດ້ວຍການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຂອງພວກອິນເດັຽແດງທີ່ຢູ່ໃກ້ຄຽງ. ຊາວອິນເດັຽແດງໄດ້ສອນວິທີປູກຢາສູບໃຫ້ແກ່ພວກທີ່ຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃໝ່ ຊຶ່ງໃນເວລານັ້ນ ປະເທດອັງກິດມີຄວາມຕ້ອງການຢາສູບຫຼາຍທີ່ສຸດ. ໃນປີ ໑໖໒໗ ອານານິຄົມ Virginia ໄດ້ສົ່ງຢາສູບອອກໄປຂາຍໃນປະເທດອັງກິດຈຳນວນ ໕໐໐.໐໐໐ ປອນ. ການຂາຍຢາສູບໄດ້ຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ອານານິຄົມ Virginia ຢູ່ລອດແລະຈະເຣີນງອກງາມຂຶ້ນ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນຈຶ່ງໄດ້ມີຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍພາກັນເຂົ້າໄປອາໄສຢູ່ໃນເມືອງ Jamestown ເພື່ອຕັ້ງຊີວິດໃໝ່. ພວກຄົນເຫຼົ່ານີ້ເປັນ

ພວກທີ່ເຂົ້າມາຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໂດຍມີສັນຍາຜູກມັດ ໝາຍຄວາມວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກໃນຖານະຄົນງານ ເພື່ອທົດແທນຄ່າເດີນທາງຈາກປະເທດອັງກິດຫາອະເມຣິກາ. ສັນຍາໃນການເຮັດວຽກທົດແທນນີ້ ຕົກຢູ່ໃນລະຫວ່າງ ໔ ຫາ ໗ ປີ. ຫຼັງຈາກນັ້ນແລ້ວ ພວກຄົນດັ່ງກ່າວກໍ່ພົ້ນພາລະ ແລະ ກາຍເປັນພົນລະເມືອງທີ່ມີອິສຣະໄປ. ນອກຈາກພວກທີ່ເຂົ້າໄປໃນອະເມຣິກາແບບສັນຍາແລ້ວ ກໍຍັງມີກຸ່ມສາສນາທີ່ແສວງອິສຣະໃນການເຊື່ອຖືສາສນານຳອີກ. ກຸ່ມສາສນາສອງກຸ່ມທີ່ມີຊື່ສຽງທີ່ສຸດແມ່ນພວກ Pilgrims ແລະ ພວກ Puritans.

໓.໑.໓. ຫຼັງຈາກຕັດສິນໃຈແຍກອອກຈາກສາສນາ Roman Catholic Church ແລ້ວ ເຈົ້າຊີວິດອັງກິດກໍໄດ້ຕັ້ງສາສນາ Church of England ເປັນສາສນາຂອງຊາດຂຶ້ນ. ກຸ່ມສາສນາຈຳນວນຫຼາຍບໍ່ເຫັນດີກັບຄຳສັ່ງຂອງເຈົ້າຊີວິດ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງຕ້ອງການຊອກຫາບ່ອນທີ່ປອດພັຍເພື່ອດຳເນີນການເຊື່ອຖືຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າຢ່າງເສລີ. ພວກ Pilgrims ໄດ້ໜີອອກຈາກປະເທດອັງກິດແລະໄປອາໄສຢູ່ໃນປະເທດ Holland ແຕ່ວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າປະສົບກັບບັນຫາຢ່າງອື່ນອີກ ເຊັ່ນວ່າ ລູກເຕົ້າຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ພາກັນລືມຮີດຄອງປະເພນີ ແລະ ພາສາຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ພວກ Pilgrims ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ໜີອອກຈາກປະເທດ Holland ແລະພາກັນຍ້າຍເຂົ້າໄປຢູ່ໃນອະເມຣິກາ ເພື່ອຮັກສາຮີດຄອງປະເພນີແລະພາສາຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄວ້. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມ Plymouth ຂຶ້ນໃນ Massachusetts.. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຮັບການຕ້ອນຮັບຈາກຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງໃນເຂດນັ້ນເປັນຢ່າງດີ. ຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງໄດ້ສອນວິທີປູກຝັງແລະວິທີຫາປາໃຫ້ແກ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ຫຼັງຈາກນຶ່ງປີຜ່ານໄປ ພວກ Pilgrims ເຫຼົ່ານີ້ສາມາດປູກເຄື່ອງຢູ່ເຄື່ອງກິນໄດ້ຢ່າງພຽງພໍເພື່ອການຢູ່ລອດ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ພາກັນຈັດງານຂຶ້ນເພື່ອຂອບໃຈພຣະເຈົ້າແລະຂອບໃຈຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງທີ່ໄດ້ຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຊີວິດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ງານທີ່ວ່ານີ້ແມ່ນງານ Thanksgiving Day ຄັ້ງທຳອິດທີ່ໄດ້ສລອງກັນໃນອະເມຣິກາ.

໓.໑.໔. ກຸ່ມສາສນາອີກກຸ່ມນຶ່ງຄືພວກ Puritans ນີ້ກໍ່ຕ້ອງການຢາກໄດ້ບ່ອນເພື່ອດຳເນີນສາສນາຢ່າງເສລີເໝືອນກັນ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຮ້ອງຂໍໃຫ້ເຈົ້າຊີວິດ King Charles I ມອບອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ແກ່ເຈົ້າເພື່ອຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນໂລກໃໝ່. ໃນປີ ໑໖໒໙ ພວກ Puritans ໄດ້ຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມ Massachusetts Bay Colony ຂຶ້ນ. ໃນປີ ໑໖໙໑ ອານານິຄົມ Massachusetts Bay ແລະ Plymouth ໄດ້ໂຮມເຂົ້າກັນແລະໄດ້ກາຍເປັນອານານິຄົມ Massachusetts . ພວກ Puritans

ແລະ Pilgrims ເປັນຊາວນາທີ່ມີຝີມືແລະເປັນຜູ້ເຮັດວຽກຢ່າງຂຍັນຂັນແຂງ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າພາກັນຢູ່ລອດດ້ວຍການເຮັດໄຮ່ເຮັດສວນ, ຕັດໄມ້, ຄ້າຂາຍ ແລະ ລ່າສັດ.

ມ.໔. ອານານິຄົມອື່ນໃນອະເມຣິກາ

ມ.໔.໑. ໃນປີ ໑໗໓໓ ປະເທດອັງກິດໄດ້ມີອານານິຄົມອື່ນແລ້ວຫລາຍແຫ່ງຢູ່ເລາະຕາມແຄມຝັ່ງທະເລພາກຕາເວັນອອກ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ປະເທດອັງກິດຍັງໄດ້ຮັບອານານິຄົມ New Amsterdam ຈາກປະເທດ Holland ນຳອີກ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າເອີ້ນອານານິຄົມແຫ່ງນີ້ວ່າ New York. ອານານິຄົມອີກແຫ່ງນຶ່ງຊຶ່ງເອີ້ນວ່າ Pennsylvania ນັ້ນແມ່ນ William Penn ໄດ້ຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໗໔໔. ພາຍໃຕ້ການນຳພາຂອງທ່ານ Penn Pennsylvania ໄດ້ມີຄວາມຈເຣີນຮຸ່ງເຮືອງຂຶ້ນຢ່າງຫລວງຫລາຍ. ທ່ານ Penn ໄດ້ສ້າງຄວາມຮັກແພງກັບຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງໃນເຂດຂອງທ່ານແລະໄດ້ອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ທຸກຄົນບໍ່ວ່າຈະນັບຖືສາສນາໃດກໍ່ຕາມ ເຂົ້າໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນອານານິຄົມຂອງທ່ານ. ທ່ານຕ້ອງການສ້າງອານານິຄົມແບບພິເສດໃນໂລກໃໝ່ ຊຶ່ງເປັນບ່ອນທີ່ຄົນທຸກຊາດທຸກສາສນາສາມາດຢູ່ຮ່ວມກັນໄດ້. ຢູ່ຕິດກັບ Pennsylvania ແມ່ນແດນ Maryland ຊຶ່ງເປັນຂອງ Lord Baltimore. Lord Baltimore ໄດ້ຮັບອະນຸຍາດຈາກເຈົ້າຊີວິດຂອງປະເທດອັງກິດ ເພື່ອຕັ້ງບ່ອນເພິ່ງພາອາໃສຂອງພວກຄາໂຕລິກ ແລະ ພວກທີ່ນັບຖືສາສນາອື່ນ. ຕໍ່ມາໃນສັດຕະວັດທີສິບແປດກໍໄດ້ມີການຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມໃນພາກໃຕ້ຂຶ້ນອີກສາມແຫ່ງ ຊຶ່ງໄດ້ແກ່ South Carolina, North Carolina ແລະ Georgia.

ມ.໔.໔. South ແລະ North Carolinas ແມ່ນຊາວອັງກິດທີ່ຮັ່ງມີແລະມີຕະກູນສູງເປັນຜູ້ຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ສວນປູກຝັງທີ່ໃຫຍ່ໂຕຫລາຍແຫ່ງ ແລະ ຊີວິດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ ຄືກັນກັບໃນປະເທດອັງກິດ. ແຕ່ວ່າ Georgia ບໍ່ຄືແຫ່ງອື່ນ. ເພາະວ່າ Georgia ນັ້ນເປັນບ່ອນຊຸມຂອງພວກນັກໂທດທີ່ມາຈາກປະເທດອັງກິດ. ພວກນັກໂທດເຫລົ່ານີ້ ມີສິດເຂົ້າໄປຢູ່ໃນອະເມຣິກາ ແທນທີ່ຈະຢູ່ໃນຄຸກອັງກິດ. ໃນໂລກໃໝ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າມີໂອກາດທີ່ຈະຕັ້ງໂຕເປັນຄົນດີໄດ້. ຕໍ່ມາຫລາຍປີ ປະຊາຊົນໃນບັນດາອານານິຄົມອັງກິດໄດ້ມີຫລາຍຂຶ້ນ ແລະ ພວກທີ່ຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານຢູ່ໃນແຫ່ງນັ້ນກໍໄດ້ມີຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ດີຂຶ້ນ ແລະ ມີອິສຣະພາບຫລາຍກວ່າໃນປະເທດອັງກິດ.

EXERCISES:

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນກະດານສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ, ທາງນອນ, ແລະທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວ ໃຫ້ຂຽນສັບທີ່ຫາໄດ້ນັ້ນໄວ້ ພ້ອມທັງຂຽນຄວາມໝາຍຂອງສັບນັ້ນລົງໄປ.

P	R	T	H	A	N	K	S	G	I	V	I	N	G	D	A	Y
E	E	S	T	U	A	R	Y	L	A	B	O	R	I	O	U	S
N	L	S	T	A	T	E	R	E	L	I	G	I	O	N	X	J
N	I	N	D	E	N	T	U	R	E	C	O	L	O	N	Y	A
S	G	S	K	L	U	M	B	E	R	I	N	G	C	E	C	M
Y	I	I	E	C	O	N	F	C	H	A	R	T	E	R	H	E
L	O	L	E	C	P	L	A	N	T	A	T	I	O	N	E	S
V	U	V	P	P	O	L	I	T	I	C	A	L	H	I	A	T
A	S	E	Q	U	R	P	H	T	O	B	A	C	C	O	S	O
N	F	R	E	E	C	I	T	I	Z	E	N	S	A	F	E	W
I	R	F	N	X	P	L	P	U	R	I	T	A	N	S	P	N
A	E	L	G	P	O	G	A	M	E	R	I	C	A	N	E	W
N	E	O	L	A	U	R	L	A	N	G	U	A	G	E	A	I
E	D	R	A	N	N	I	T	R	A	D	I	N	G	M	K	N
W	O	I	N	D	D	M	F	A	R	M	I	N	G	W	E	T
O	M	D	D	O	S	S	T	F	I	S	H	I	N	G	A	E
R	C	A	N	A	D	A	N	E	W	Y	E	A	R	S	Y	R
L	E	A	D	E	R	S	H	I	P	N	E	W	Y	O	R	K
D	B	B	O	S	D	E	B	O	U	S	C	H	A	N	C	E

SAFE
POUND
EXPAND
CHANGE
CANADA

COLONY
TOBACCO
WINTER
ENGLAND
AMERICAN

NEW YORK
POLITICAL
FLORIDA
JAMESTOWN
PURITANS

LANGUAGE
TRADING
FARMING
FISHING
NEW YEAR

NEW WORLD
LEADERSHIP
SILVER
PENNSYLVANIA
THANKSGIVING DAY

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. **ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ** : (ເບິ່ງຕາມພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. **ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ** : ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາແຕ່ສັບຄຳເວົ້າໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ຂ). ຈົ່ງໝາຍຕົວເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງແໜ່ງຄຳຕອບ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
____ ກ. ອະນຸຍາດ	໑. ພວກທີ່ເຊັນສັນຍາຮັບເອົາວຽກທົດແທນຄ່າເດີນທາງເຂົ້າໄປໃນອະເມຣິກາ ໂດຍມີກຳໜົດຣະຫວ່າງສອງຫາເຈັດປີ.
____ ຂ. ເຂດບຸກເບີກ	໒. ເອກສານທາງການທີ່ໃຫ້ສິດທຳສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງນຶ່ງ
____ ຄ. ຄົນໃຊ້ຕາມສັນຍາ	໓. ດິນແດນທີ່ຍັງເປັນປ່າດົງ ຊຶ່ງຢູ່ຕິດກັບບ່ອນທີ່ຄົນຢູ່
____ ງ. John Smith	໔. ສິດທິໃນການບູຊາບັນຊີຕາມອຳເພີໃຈ
____ ຈ. ອານານິຄົມຂອງກະສັດ	໕. ຫົວໜ້າພວກທີ່ຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນເມືອງ Jamestown
____ ສ. ສາສນາຂອງຣັຖ	໖. ອານານິຄົມປົກຄອງໂດຍເຈົ້າຊີວິດ
____ ຊ. ອິສຣະພາບດ້ານສາສນາ	໗. ສາສນາທີ່ຣັຖບານອະນຸຍາດ ແລະ ໄດ້ຣັບການອຸ້ມຊູດ້ວຍພາສີ

ຄ. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ :

ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ໝາຍ T ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກເຫັນວ່າປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກ. ຖ້າຜິດໃຫ້ໝາຍ F .

_____ ໑. ປະເທດອັງກິດໄດ້ເລີ່ມຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມໃນອະເມຣິກາໃນປີ ໑໖໐໐.

_____ ໒. ເມື່ອພວກອັງກິດເຂົ້າໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນອະເມຣິກາຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ອານານິຄົມຂອງປະເທດອັງກິດ ໄດ້ແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍອອກຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວ.

_____ ໓. ອານານິຄົມອັງກິດແຫ່ງທຳອິດໄດ້ຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໖໐໗ ໃນ Jamestown, Virginia ໂດຍບໍລິສັດ London Company.

_____ ໔. ໃນປີທຳອິດ ພວກອັງກິດໄດ້ປະເຊີນກັບຊີວິດອັນຍາກລຳບາກ ຍ້ອນອາກາດໜາວເກີນໄປ ແລະ ຍ້ອນອາຫານການກິນພຽງພໍ.

_____ ໕. ພວກທີ່ຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນເມືອງ Jamestown ຊຸດທຳອິດນັ້ນແມ່ນພວກຂ້າທາດ.

_____ ໖. ໃນເວລາທີ່ເຈົ້າຊີວິດອັງກິດໄດ້ຕັດສິນໃຈແຍກອອກຈາກ Roman Catholic Church ພະອົງໄດ້ຈຶ່ງປະກາດໃຫ້ Church of Englandເປັນສາສນາຂອງຊາດ.

_____ ໗. ຜູ້ຄົນຫຼາຍກຸ່ມບໍ່ເຫັນພ້ອມກັບຄຳສັ່ງຂອງເຈົ້າຊີວິດ.

_____ ໘. ພວກ Pilgrims ໄດ້ພາກັນຍ້າຍໄປຢູ່ປະເທດ Holland ຊຶ່ງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ ມີຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຢ່າງສະດວກສະບາຍ.

_____ ໙. ພວກ Puritans ຕ້ອງການຢາກໄດ້ບ່ອນດຳເນີນສາສນາຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າຢ່າງເສຣີເຊັ່ນກັນ.

____ ໑໐. ພວກ Puritans ໄດ້ຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມໃນ Massachusetts Bay
ໃນປີ ໑໖໒໘.

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເຂົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ :

ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເຂົ້າທີ່ໝວດຄຳເຂົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຫຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍອັນຖືກຕ້ອງ: ປູກຝ້າຍແລະຕາຢາ, ພວກທີ່ເຂົ້າໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານຕາມສັນຍາ, ຊຶ່ງມີແລະມີຕະກຸນສູງ, ພ່ອນຫີນ, ຄົນໂທດ, ແຄມທະເລພາກຕາເວັນອອກ, ສາສນາ, ສອນ, ພວກທີ່ເຂົ້າໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານ, ການນຳພາ.

໑. Carolinas ໃຕ້ແລະເໜືອ ແມ່ນກຸ່ມຊາວອັງກິດທີ່ ________________
ເປັນຜູ້ຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນ.

໒. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ ________________ ທີ່ໃຫຍ່ໂຕຫຼາຍແຫ່ງ ແລະຊີວິດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າຄືກັນກັບ
ສະໄໝທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃນປະເທດອັງກິດ.

໓. Georgia ໄດ້ຖືກຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນເພື່ອເປັນ ________________ ສຳຫຼັບຄົນໂທດໃນ
ປະເທດອັງກິດ.

໔. ໃນໂລກໃໝ່ພວກ ________________ ມີໂອກາດທີ່ຈະຮັ່ງມີເປັນດີໄດ້ຫຼາຍ.

໕. ເມື່ອເວລາລ່ວງເລີຍໄປ ປະຊາຊົນໃນອານານິຄົມອັງກິດໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນ ແລະ ________________
________________ ໄດ້ມີຊີວິດດີກວ່າເກົ່າແລະມີອິສລະພາບຫຼາຍກວ່າໃນປະເທດອັງກິດ.

໖. ໃນປີ ໑໗໓໓ ປະເທດອັງກິດໄດ້ຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມຫຼາຍແຫ່ງໃນ ________________.

໗. ທ່ານ William Penn ໄດ້ຕັ້ງ Pennsylvania ໃນປີ ໑໗໒໔ ແລະ Pennsylvania
ໄດ້ເກີດມີຄວາມໝັ້ນຄົງສົມບູນຂຶ້ນພາຍໃຕ້ ________________ ຂອງທ່ານ Penn.

໘. ທ່ານ Penn ມີຄວາມຕ້ອງການຢາກສ້າງອານານິຄົມພິເສດຂຶ້ນໃນໂລກໃໝ່ ຈຶ່ງເປັນທີ່ອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ທຸກຊົນຊາດແລະ ______________ ຢູ່ຮ່ວມກັນ.

໙. ຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງໃນເຂດດັ່ງກ່າວສອນວິທີ ______________ ແລະຫາປາໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

໑໐. ______________________________ ຕົກລົງເຮັດວຽກໃນຖານະເປັນຄົນງານ ເພື່ອທົດແທນຄ່າເດີນທາງຈາກອັງກິດ ຫາ ອະເມຣິກາ.

ພາກ ໔ : ອານານິຄົມສິບແຫ່ງໃນອະເມລິກາ

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ

paster:	ພຣະ

Roger Williams was a paster in Salem, Massachusetts.

separation:	ການແບ່ງແຍກ

The idea known as "Separation of Churches and State" says that the government and religion must be separated.

pebble:	ກ້ອນຫີນ

Unfertile soil mixed with stone and pebbles made the work harder for the farmers in New England.

natural resource:	ຊັພຍາກອນທັມມະຊາດ

Forests and herbs were two important natural resources for the colonists.

industry:	ໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມ
textile:	ຜ້າແພ່ກາງງ
tools:	ເຄື່ອງມື

Textiles and tools were two important industries in New England.

assembly:	ສະພາ

The colonists elected their own representatives for the colonial assembly.

tax collection:	ການເກັບພາສີ

The assembly decided common policies such as tax collection and the education system.

governor: ການປົກຄອງຫລວງ

The King of England assigned a governor for each colony.

homogenous: ຄ້າຍຄືກັນ

The people in the Central Colonies were not homogenous because many different nationalities lived there.

descendant: ເຊື້ອສາຍ

The majority of New York's population were descendants of the Dutch colonists.

administrative: ການປົກຄອງ

The smallest administrative units in the Southern Colonies were counties.

tidewater: ນ້ຳຂຶ້ນທະເລ

The tidewater region is very near the ocean.

Backcountry: ຊົນນະບົດ

The areas on the highlands or near the mountains were called Backcountries.

slave: ຂ້າທາດ

The Southerners imported many slaves from Africa.

property: ຊັບສົມບັດ

Slaves were a part of a plantation owners's properties.

mansion: ເຮືອນໃຫຍ່

The plantation owners lived in their beatiful mansions.

tutor: ຄູສອນພິເສດ

The Southerners hired private teachers to tutor their children.

illiterate: ບໍ່ມີຄວາມຮູ້

The children of the poor whites and slaves were illiterate.

social class: ຊັ້ນສັງຄົມ

There were four different social classes in the Southern colonies.

sparsely: ກະຈັດກະຈາຍ

The people in the Southern Colonies lived in sparsely populated areas.

rough: ທົນທານ

The mountaineers were rough people.

wilderness: ທຳມະຊາດປ່າດົງ

The mountaineers worked hard to control the wilderness.

READING

4.1. THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

4.1.1. Right after the Plymouth Colony was established by the Pilgrims, a group of Puritans started a new colony called the Massachusetts Bay Colony. Later, Plymouth and Massachusetts Bay joined together as one colony called Massachusetts. The leaders of the Puritan Church were also the leaders of the colony's government. The Puritans did not accept the presence of any other religions except the Puritan church. For this reason, many people left the colony of Massachusetts and went to other places to establish their own churches. One of these people was Roger Williams who was a pastor in Salem, Massachusetts. He disagreed with the leaders of the Puritan Church. Therefore, in 1634 he bought an area of land that belonged to the Indians and established his own colony named

Rhode Island. In this colony, he gave all religions the right to exist. He also made a law saying that the state and religion must be separated. This idea was known as "Separation of Church and State". From that time on, this idea deeply influenced the colonists when they wanted to organize their government. In addition to the colonies of Massachusetts and Rhode Island, there were two other new colonies, called Connecticut and New Hampshire. These four colonies, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, and New Hampshire, were known as the New England Colonies.

4.1.2. In the New England Colonies, the colonists used to own small farms and they had to work very hard to have enough food. Unfertile soil mixed with stones and pebbles made the work difficult and cold weather made the growing season short. Fortunately, the colonists found two other natural resources. First, there were the forests with wood which was good for building ships. Second, there were many good harbors in this area. Therefore, the New England colonists were able to make much profit from shipbuilding and fishing. In addition to fishing and shipbuilding, there were many small industries, such as the textile and tool industries. Boston, Massachusetts became an important New England port.

4.1.3. In the colonies, the colonists organized their own governments. In small areas, there were town meetings where the people came and discussed their problems. People elected their own town leaders and representatives to serve in the colonial **assembly**. This assembly decided common policies such as **tax collection** and the education system. In America, the colonists discovered they had more freedom than when they had lived in England. The King of England was too far away to effectively control the colonies, so he assigned a **governor** to each colony. The governor was the head of the colonial government. He could veto any law passed by the colonial assembly.

4.2. THE CENTRAL COLONIES

4.2.1. The Central Colonies were between the New England Colonies and the Southern Colonies. The people in the Central Colonies were not **homogenous**; there were many different nationalities living in these areas. New York, known first as New Netherlands, was founded by the Dutch. When the English took it from the Dutch in 1664, they changed the name to New York. In this area, the majority of the population were **descendants** of the Dutch colonists who kept their own culture and style of building. Next to New York was Pennsylvania, founded by William Penn. He wanted to establish an ideal colony where colonists of all nationalities were welcome.

4.2.2. There were many long rivers and large fertile plains in the Central Colonies. Farming was prosperous. The climate in this area was not as cold as that of New England. Therefore, the growing season was longer. The two main crops in this area were wheat and corn. The farmers ground the corn and wheat into flour and exported them to other colonies and

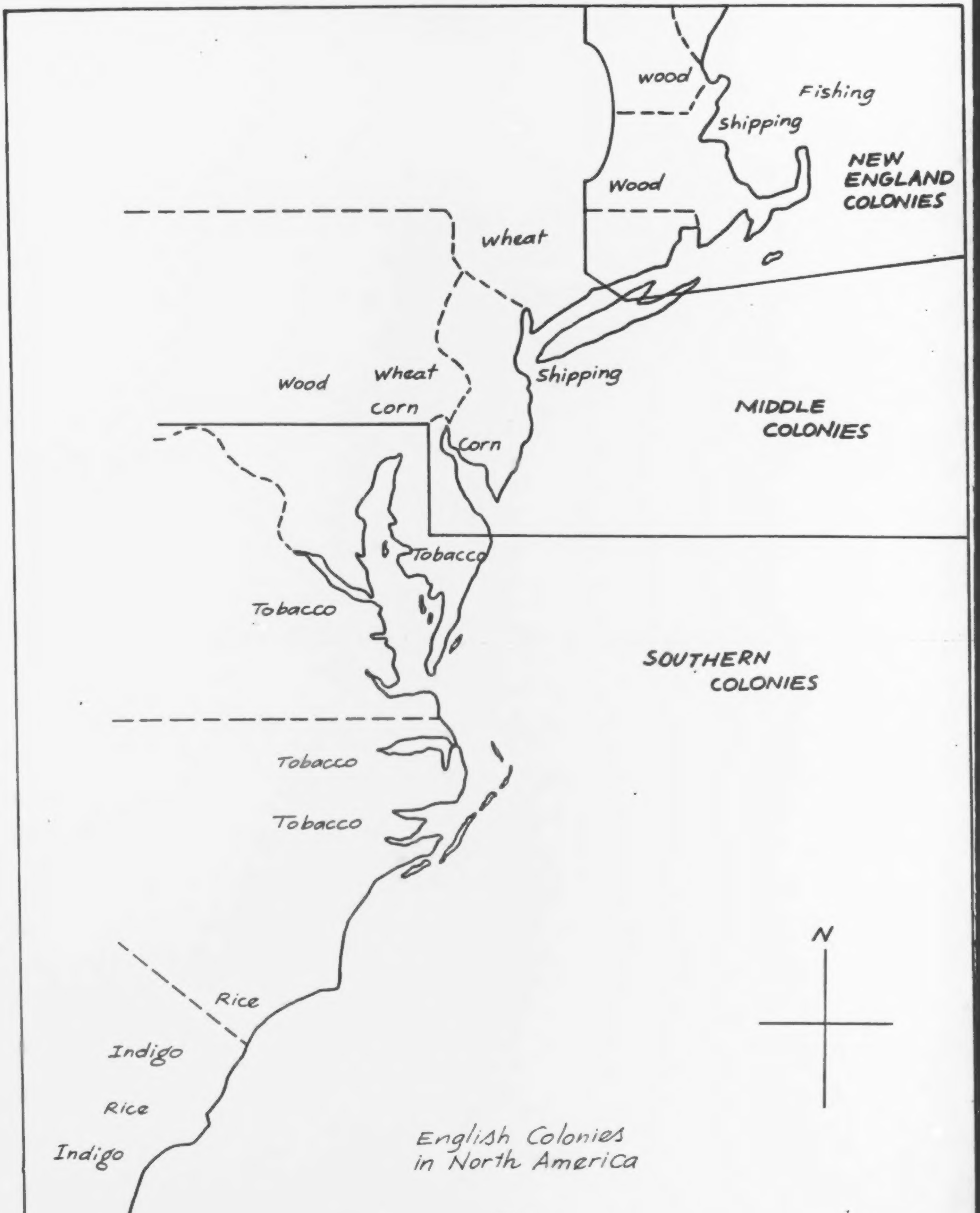
England. From the two largest ports, New York and Philadelphia, goods were shipped to Europe. Thanks to the prosperity of farming, the Central Colonies were known as the "bread basket" for all the colonies.

4.2.3. In the Central Colonies, local government meant county government. But in some areas, the counties were broken into townships. People who lived in the towns or counties elected their own leaders and their own representatives to the colonial assembly.

4.3. THE SOUTHERN COLONIES

4.3.1. The Southern Colonies had a very special geography. There were many large plains stretching from the western mountains to the east coast. In addition, there were many long rivers that helped to carry farm products to the seaside. Near the rivers, the soil was very fertile and the tides reached far inland. Thus, these areas were called **tidewater.** The western areas on the highlands and mountains were called **backcountry.** These areas were covered by thick forests and there were many wild animals. The mountaineers had to work hard to survive.

4.3.2. The economic system of tidewater was based on three main sources: rice, indigo, and tobacco. These three crops were called "cash crops" because they made much money. The European markets were good for these produces. The demand for these products increased day by day. The Southerners, who


wood
Fishing
Shipping
NEW ENGLAND COLONIES
Wood
wheat
Wood
Wheat
corn
Shipping
MIDDLE COLONIES
Corn
Tobacco
Tobacco
SOUTHERN COLONIES
Tobacco
Tobacco
Rice
Indigo
Rice
Indigo
N

English Colonies in North America

European markets were good for these produces. The demand for these products increased day by day. The Southerners, who wanted to produce more, began importing **slaves** from Africa. These slaves were bought to work on large farms or plantations.

4.3.3. There were many plantations in the Carolinas. To cultivate these plantations, the owners needed a large number of laborers. It was very hard to hire white labor, so, many blacks were bought to work in the rice and tobacco fields. In 1700 there were about 25,000 slaves in the colonies, but in 1760 the number of slaves had reached half a million. The slaves became a part of the owner's **properties.** The owners could sell them as well as the slave's children. The slaves were poor and had no freedom or rights.

4.3.4. The social system in the South was very different. The wealthy people established their own societies. They lived in their beautiful **mansions** and spent most of their time hunting and gambling like the rich people in England. They sent their children to England for higher education. William and Mary College, founded in 1693, was the only one in the South. There were not many public schools in the Southern colonies because the people lived in sparsely populated areas and the children could not go to school easily. Some families hired private teachers to **tutor** their children at home. The children of the poor whites and slaves were **illiterate.** There were four **social classes** in the Southern Colonies: The rich people who controlled all activities in the areas; the farmers who had a satisfactory life but did not have as many advantages as the rich; the tenant farmers who were poor and had few privileges; and the slaves who had no rights or privileges.

4.3.5. Because the Southerners lived in **sparsely** populated areas on large farms and plantations, the local government had to control a larger area than in New England. The officials in the local government were appointed by the governor or the colonial assembly. They had the right to collect taxes and to set up all affairs in the colony. The local government took care of road building and social welfare. Local government was organized in the tidewater area, but in the backcountry there was almost no government. The backcountry people had an independent life and there were no social classes. They were very poor and they were **rough** people. They spent most of their time working in the forests and trying to tame the **wilderness**. It took almost 50 years to change the life in the backcountry. The successful farmers began to build their houses instead of log cabins and they also owned slaves. They grew potatoes and fruit. They also raised livestock and at the time of the Revolutionary War there were many trading centers in the backcountry such as Winchester in Virginia and Augusta in Georgia.

EXERCISES:

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

BREAD
SOIL
ROUGH
TUTOR
SHIP
TOOLS
SLAVE
PASTOR

PEBBLE
SEASON
CULTURE
COLONY
HARBOR
LEADER
FOREST
CENTRAL

NEW YORK
NATIONAL
TEXTILE
INDUSTRY
INDIANS
FERTILE
MANSION
GOVERNOR

SEPARATION
HOMOGENOUS
DESCENDANT
SPARSELY
EDUCATION
TIDEWATER
PROPERTY
MAJORITY

NATURAL RESOURCE
RHODE ISLAND
NEW HAMPSHIRE
NETHERLAND
PENNSYLVANIA
SOCIAL CLASSES
ADMINISTRATION
MASSACHUSETTS

A M P R H O D E I S L A N D C E N T R A L B

S E P A R A T I O N C O N N E C T I C U T R

F O R E S T N O I T A C U D E C O L O N Y E

P H D U P T E X T I L E N C S E A S O N M A

R O N R E V O G T U T O R H A R B O R W N D

O M T S B B I R D A Y U Y M A J O R I T Y B

P O I P B S L A V E O R R O U G H B I C H O

E G D A L S N H A S T M A N S I O N N Y C N

R E E R E I M D E S C E N D A N T A Y E N L

T N W S C L E R U S O C I A L C L A S S E S

Y O A E C K L D I N D I A N S F E R T I L E

S U T L M A N S I O N N E T H E R L A N D R

H S E Y R I B A C K C O U N T R Y B C E L E

I B R U A D M I N I S T R A T I V E K O N D

P O T O O L S N E W H A M S P H I R E T B A

M A S S A C H U S E T T S N E W Y O R K N E

N P E N N S Y L V A N I A C U L T U R E A L

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

	A	B
____	a. assembly	1. a sparsely inhabited rural area in the Appalachian Mountains.
____	b. cash crop	2. an offspring, child, grandchild and greatgrandchild.
____	c. indigo	3. a crop grown to be sold rather than used by the farmer.
____	d. plantation	4. a blue dye obtained from indigo or other plants or produced synthetically.
____	e. tenant farmer	5. a big, beautiful house.
____	f. tidewater	6. a huge spread of land worked by laborers who lived on the estate.
____	g. tutor	7. a farmer who rented the land which he cultivated.
____	h. backcountry	8. low coastland along the Atlantic Ocean that was drained by tidal streams.
____	i. descendant	9. a private teacher.
____	j. mansion	10. a group of persons gathered together for a common purpose.

III. True or Fasle:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put an F in that space if if is false.

____ 1. Right after the Plymouth Colony was established by the Pilgrims, a group of Puritans started a new colony called Jamestown.

____ 2. The Puritans did not accept any other religion but the Puritan church.

____ 3. Roger Williams disagreed with the leaders of the Puritans; therefore, in 1634 he bought an area that belonged to the Indians and established his own colony, named Rhode Island.

____ 4. In the New England Colonies, the colonists used to own large farms and they had to work hard to have enough food.

____ 5. Boston, in Massachusetts, became an important port in New England.

____ 6. People in the colonies elected their leaders to become representatives in the English Parliament.

____ 7. New York was founded by the Dutch and it was first called New Netherlands.

____ 8. William Penn established an ideal colony for all nationalities.

____ 9. The main crops in the Central Colonies were tobacco, indigo, and rice.

____ 10. The Central Colonies were known as the "bread basket" for all colonies.

for all colonies.

IV. Fill in the blanks:

Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: "cash crop", county government, collect taxes, plantations, fertile, mountaineers, freedom and rights, backcountry, mansions, tobacco, indigo, and rice.

1. In the Central Colonies, local government meant __________ .
2. Near the rivers, the soil was very ___________ and the tides reached far inland. Thus, these areas were called tidewater.
3. The western areas on the highlands and mountains were called _________ .
4. The ________ had to work hard to survive.
5. Three crops helped the Southerners make much money; therefore, they were called __________ .
6. The Southerners wanted to produce more __________ and this led to the importation of slaves from Africa.
7. There were many __________ in the Carolinas.
8. The slaves were poor and had no _____________ .
9. The wealthy Southerners lived in the beautiful ___________ and spent most of their time hunting and gambling.
10. The colonial assembly had the right to __________ and set up all affairs in the colony.

ບົດອ່ານ

໔.໑. ອານານິຄົມ New England.

໔.໑.໑. ຫຼັງຈາກພວກ Pilgrims ໄດ້ຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມ Plymouth Colony ເສັດສິ້ນໄປພໍດີ ພວກ Puritans ກໍໄດ້ພາກັນເລີ້ມລົງມືຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມແຫ່ງໃໝ່ແຫ່ງນຶ່ງອີກເອີ້ນວ່າ Massachusetts Bay Colony. ຕໍ່ມາບໍ່ນານ ອານານິຄົມ Plymouth ແລະ Massachusetts Bay ກໍໄດ້ຮວມເຂົ້າເປັນອານານິຄົມດຽວ ເອີ້ນວ່າ Massachusetts. ບັນດາຜູ້ນຳຂອງສາສນາ Puritan Church ໄດ້ເປັນຜູ້ນຳຂອງຣັຖບານອານານິຄົມນຳອີກ. ນອກຈາກສາສນາຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງແລ້ວ ພວກ Puritans ບໍ່ຍອມໃຫ້ສາສນາອື່ນໃດເລີຍ ເຂົ້າມາຕັ້ງຢູ່ໃນເຂດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ເອງຈຶ່ງໄດ້ມີຈຳນວນຫຼາຍພາກັນໜີຈາກອານານິຄົມ Massachusetts ເພື່ອໄປຕັ້ງໂບດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງໃນແຫ່ງອື່ນ. ໃນຈຳນວນຂອງພວກທີ່ໄປນັ້ນ ມີທ່ານ Roger Williams ຊຶ່ງເປັນພຣະປະຈຳໃນເມືອງ Salem ເຂດ Massachusetts. ທ່ານບໍ່ເຫັນພ້ອມກັບບັນດາຜູ້ນຳຂອງສາສນາ Puritans Church. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ໃນປີ ໑໖໓໖ ທ່ານຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຊື້ເອົາທີ່ດິນແຫ່ງນຶ່ງຊຶ່ງເປັນຂອງພວກອິນເດັຍແດງ ແລະ ໄດ້ຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມຂອງຕົນເອງຂຶ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ Rhode Island. ພາຍໃນອານານິຄົມດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ທ່ານໄດ້ອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ສາສນາມີສິດເຂົ້າຢູ່ໄດ້. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນທ່ານຍັງໄດ້ອອກກົດໝາຍເພື່ອແຍກສາສນາອອກຈາກຣັຖ. ຄວາມຄິດດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ເປັນທີ່ຮູ້ກັນໃນນາມ "ການແຍກໂບດແລະຣັຖ". ນັບຕັ້ງແຕ່ເວລານັ້ນມາ ຄວາມທີ່ວ່ານີ້ເປັນສິ່ງທີ່ບັນດາຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃໝ່ທັງຫຼາຍໄດ້ນຳເອົາໄປເປັນແນວທາງໃນການຕັ້ງຣັຖບານຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ນອກຈາກອານານິຄົມ Massachusetts ແລະ Rhode Island ແລ້ວ ກໍຍັງມີອານານິຄົມໃໝ່ອີກສອງແຫ່ງເອີ້ນວ່າ Connecticut ແລະ New Hamsphire ອານານິຄົມທັງສີ່ເຫຼົ່ານີ້ Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut ແລະ New Hamsphire ຮ້ອງກັນວ່າ ອານານິຄົມ New England.

໔.໑.໒. ໃນອານານິຄົມ New England ພວກຊາວເມືອງເດີມເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງໄຮ່ນານ້ອຍໆ ແລະ ຕ້ອງໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກໜັກທີ່ສຸດ ເພື່ອໃຫ້ໄດ້ສະບຽງອາຫານພໍຢູ່ພໍກິນ. ການເຮັດໄຮ່ເຮັດສວນມີຄວາມລຳບາກ ຍ້ອນວ່າ ດິນບໍ່ອຸດົມສົມບູນ ແລະ ປະປົນດ້ວຍຫີນແລະກ້ອນຫີນ ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ອາກາດທີ່ໜາວກໍໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ຣະດູປູກຝັງສັ້ນລົງ. ໂຊກດີທີ່ພວກຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃໝ່ໄດ້ພົບເຫັນຊັບຍາກອນທັມມະຊາດອີກສອງຢ່າງ.

ທາອຶດແມ່ນປ່າໄມ້ ຈຶ່ງມີໄມ້ຊະນິດທີ່ດີສຳຫຼັບສ້າງເຮືອ. ສອງມາ ແມ່ນພວກທ່າເຮືອທີ່ດີຫຼາຍແຫ່ງ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ພວກຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນ New England ຈຶ່ງສາມາດຫາລາຍໄດ້ຈາກການສ້າງເຮືອ ແລະ ຈາກການຫາປາໄດ້ຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ. ນອກຈາກການສ້າງເຮືອ ແລະ ຫາປາແລ້ວ ກໍຍັງມີໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມຂະນາດນ້ອຍຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ ເຊັ່ນ ໂຮງງານຕ່ຳຫ້າ ແລະ ໂຮງງານເຮັດເຄື່ອງມື. ເມືອງ Boston ໃນ Massachusetts ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນທ່າເຮືອທີ່ສຳຄັນຂອງ New England.

໔.໑.໓. ຕາມອານານິຄົມຕ່າງໆ ຈາກເມືອງໄດ້ພາກັນຈັດຕັ້ງຣັຖບານຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ. ໃນເມືອງຕ່າງໆ ປະຊາຊົນກໍໄດ້ຈັດໃຫ້ມີກອງປະຊຸມຂຶ້ນ ເພື່ອປຶກສາຫາລືກ່ຽວກັບບັນຫາຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ປະຊາຊົນໄດ້ພາກັນເລືອກຕັ້ງເອົາຄະນະຜູ້ນຳແລະຜູ້ແທນເມືອງຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເພື່ອປະຈຳຢູ່ໃນສະພາຂອງອານານິຄົມ. ສະພາດັ່ງກ່າວມີໜ້າທີ່ວາງນະໂຍບາຍທົ່ວໄປ ເຊັ່ນ ການເກັບພາສີ ແລະ ການສຶກສາ. ພວກຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານທັງຫຼາຍໄດ້ພົບເຫັນວ່າ ເຂົາເຈົ້າມີເສຣີພາບຫຼາຍກວ່າເວລາທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າຍັງຢູ່ໃນປະເທດອັງກິດ. ເຈົ້າຊີວິດອັງກິດບໍ່ສາມາດຄວບຄຸມອານານິຄົມຕ່າງໆໄດ້ຢ່າງໄດ້ຜົນ ຍ້ອນຢູ່ຫ່າງໄກເກີນໄປ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ພຣະອົງຈຶ່ງໄດ້ແຕ່ງຕັ້ງຜູ້ປົກຄອງໃຫ້ໄປຢູ່ໃນແຕ່ລະອານານິຄົມ. ຜູ້ປົກຄອງ ເປັນຫົວໜ້າຂອງຣັຖບານອານານິຄົມ ແລະ ມີສິດຄັດຄ້ານການຜ່ານກົດໝາຍຂອງສະພາອານານິຄົມ.

໔.໒. ອານານິຄົມພາກກາງ

໔.໒.໑. ອານານິຄົມພາກກາງຕັ້ງຢູ່ລະຫວ່າງອານານິຄົມ New Englandແລະ ອານານິຄົມພາກໃຕ້. ປະຊາຊົນໃນອານານິຄົມພາກກາງບໍ່ຄ້າຍຄືກັນ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າປະກອບດ້ວຍຫຼາຍຊົນຊາດດ້ວຍກັນ. ຊື່ທຳອິດຂອງ New Yorkແມ່ນ New Netherlandsຊຶ່ງແມ່ນພວກ Dutch ເປັນຜູ້ຕັ້ງ. ໃນເວລາທີ່ພວກອັງກິດຍຶດເອົາດິນແດນດັ່ງກ່າວຈາກພວກ Dutch ໃນປີ ໑໖໖໔ ນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ປ່ຽນຊື່ເປັນ New York. ຄົນສ່ວນຫຼາຍໃນເວລານັ້ນ ເປັນເຊື້ອສາຍຂອງພວກ Dutch . ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຮັກສາວັດທະນະທັມ ແລະ ວິທີການສ້າງສາຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄວ້. ຖັດຈາກ New Yorkແມ່ນ Pennsylvania ຊຶ່ງແມ່ນທ່ານ William Penn ເປັນຜູ້ຕັ້ງ. ທ່ານ William Penn ຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມອັນເລີດຂອງທ່ານອັນເປັນບ່ອນທີ່ທຸກຊົນຊາດມີສິດເຂົ້າມາຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໄດ້.

໔.໒.໒. ໃນບັນດາອານານິຄົມພາກໃຕ້ທັງຫຼາຍນັ້ນ ມີແມ່ນ້ຳຍາວຫຼາຍສາຍ ແລະ ມີທົ່ງທີ່ອຸດົມສົມບູນຫຼາຍແຫ່ງ. ອາກາດໃນເຂດດັ່ງກ່າວບໍ່ໜາວເທົ່າກັບໃນເຂດ New England. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ລະດູປູກຝັງຈຶ່ງຍາວກວ່າ. ພືດທີ່ສຳຄັນໃນແຂວງນີ້ແມ່ນເຂົ້າບະເລ ແລະ ສາລີ. ຊາວກະສິກອນພາກັນປູກເຂົ້າບະເລ ແລະ ສາລີເຮັດແປ້ງແລ້ວສົ່ງອອກຂາຍໃນອານານິຄົມອື່ນ ແລະ ໃນ New England. New York ແລະ Philadelphia ເປັນທ່າເຮືອທີ່ໃຫຍ່ທີ່ສຸດ ຈຶ່ງມີການສົ່ງສິນຄ້າໄປຍັງຢູໂຣບ. ຍ້ອນຄວາມອຸດົມສົມບູນດ້ານການປູກຝັງ ອານານິຄົມພາກກາງຈຶ່ງເປັນທີ່ຮູ້ກັນວ່າເປັນ "ອູ່ເຂົ້າ" ຂອງອານານິຄົມທັງໝົດ.

໔.໒.໓. ລັດຖະບານທ້ອງຖິ່ນໃນອານານິຄົມພາກກາງນັ້ນ ຄ້າຍເຊິ່ງລັດຖະບານແຂວງ. ແຕ່ໃນບາງຂົງເຂດແຂວງນັ້ນແບ່ງອອກເປັນຫຼາຍຫົວເມືອງ. ຜູ້ຄົນທີ່ອາໃສຢູ່ຕາມຫົວເມືອງ ຫຼື ຕາມຫົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆໄດ້ເລືອກຫົວໜ້າແລະຜູ້ແທນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ ສຳຫຼັບປະຈຳໃນສະພາອານານິຄົມ.

໔.໓. ອານານິຄົມພາກໃຕ້

໔.໓.໑. ອານານິຄົມພາກໃຕ້ມີສະພາບພູມີປະເທດພິເສດທີ່ສຸດ. ຈາກພູເຂົາທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກໄປຫາແຄມທະເລທາງພາກຕາເວັນອອກ ກໍມີທົ່ງລາບທີ່ຍາວຢຽດຫຼາຍແຫ່ງ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ກໍຍັງມີແມ່ນ້ຳຍາວຫຼາຍສາຍຊຶ່ງໃຊ້ສຳຫຼັບຂົນເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງໄປສູ່ແຄມທະເລ. ຢູ່ໃກ້ແມ່ນ້ຳດິນອຸດົມສົມບູນທີ່ສຸດ ແລະ ຂຶ້ນທະເລໄດ້ໄຫຼເຂົ້າໄປທາງແຄມຝັ່ງໃກ້ທີ່ສຸດ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ເອງ ເຂດເຫຼົ່ານີ້ຈຶ່ງເອີ້ນວ່າ ເຂດນ້ຳຂຶ້ນທະເລ. ທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກເປັນເຂດພູສູງ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ເຂດຊົນນະບົດ. ເຂດດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ປົກຄຸມໄປດ້ວຍປ່າໄມ້ອັນດົກໜາ ແລະ ມີສັດປ່າຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ. ພວກທີ່ຢູ່ໃນພູຜາຕ້ອງໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກໜັກເພື່ອຄວາມຄົງຢູ່.

໔.໓.໒. ເສດຖະກິດໃນເຂດນ້ຳຂຶ້ນທະເລ ມີ ເຂົ້າ, ຕົ້ນຄາມ ແລະ ຢາສູບເປັນພື້ນຖານ. ພືດສາມຢ່າງເຫຼົ່ານີ້ເອີ້ນວ່າ "ພືດເງິນ" ເພາະວ່າພືດດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ຂາຍໄດ້ເງິນດີ ສ່ວນຫຼາຍແມ່ນຢູ່ໃນຢູໂຣບ. ຄວາມຕ້ອງການພືດຈຳພວກນີ້ໄດ້ມີຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນໃນແຕ່ລະປີ. ຍ້ອນມີຄວາມຕ້ອງການປູກຝັງຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ດັ່ງນັ້ນພວກຄົນທີ່ອາໃສຢູ່ທາງພາກໃຕ້ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ພາກັນຊື້ເອົາພວກຂ້າທາດມາຈາກ ອາຟຣິກາ ເພື່ອເຮັດວຽກຕາມທົ່ງນາ ຫຼື ຮົ້ວສວນທີ່ກວ້າງໃຫຍ່.

໔.໓.໓. ເຂດ Carolinas ມີສວນຢູ່ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ. ເພື່ອປູກຝັງສວນເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ພວກເຈົ້າຂອງມີຄວາມຕ້ອງການຄົນງານຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ. ຄົນງານຜິວຂາວຈ້າງໄດ້ລຳບາກທີ່ສຸດ ສະນັ້ນຈຶ່ງມີພວກຜິວດຳເຮັດວຽກໃນໄຮ່ນາແລະສວນຢາສູບເປັນສ່ວນຫຼາຍ. ໃນປີ ໑໗໐໐ ຈຳນວນຂ້າທາດໃນບັນດາອານານິຄົມມີຢູ່ປະມານ ໖໖.໐໐໐ ຄົນ. ໃນປີ ໑໗໖໐ ຈຳນວນຂອງຂ້າທາດໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນເຖິງເຄິ່ງລ້ານຄົນ. ພວກຂ້າທາດເປັນສົມບັດສ່ວນນຶ່ງຂອງເຈົ້າຂອງສວນ. ເຈົ້າຂອງສວນມີສິດຂາຍຂ້າທາດພ້ອມດ້ວຍລູກເຕົ້າຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້ານຳ. ພວກຂ້າທາດນັ້ນທຸກຍາກ ບໍ່ມີອິສຣະພາບແລະສິດທິຫຍັງເລີຍ.

໔.໓.໔. ລະບົບການສັງຄົມໃນພາກໃຕ້ນັ້ນ ມີຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງທີ່ສຸດ. ພວກທີ່ຮັ່ງມີໄດ້ພາກັນຕັ້ງສັງຄົມຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າຢູ່ເຮືອນໃຫຍ່ອັນງົດງາມ ແລະ ໃຊ້ເວລາໃສ່ເບົ້ອແລະຫຼິ້ນການພະນັນເປັນສ່ວນຫຼາຍ ເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນກັບພວກຮັ່ງມີໃນປະເທດອັງກິດ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າສົ່ງລູກຫຼານຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄປຮຽນຕໍ່ຊັ້ນສູງໃນປະເທດອັງກິດ. ມະຫາວິທະຍາລັຍ William ແລະ Mary College ເປັນມະຫາວິທະຍາລັຍແຫ່ງດຽວເທົ່ານັ້ນທີ່ໄດ້ຖືກສ້າງຂຶ້ນໃນພາກໃຕ້ໃນປີ ໑໖໙໓. ອານານິຄົມທາງພາກໃຕ້ມີໂຮງຮຽນໜ້ອຍຫຼາຍແຫ່ງດ້ອຍກັນ ເພາະວ່າປະຊາຊົນຢູ່ຫ່າງກັນ ແລະ ບໍ່ມີເງິນຫຼາຍ ແລະ ດິກຢ່າງນັ້ນບໍ່ສາມາດໄປໂຮງຮຽນໄດ້ຢ່າງສະບາຍ. ບາງຄອບຄົວກໍ່ໄດ້ຈ້າງນາຍຄູພິເສດມາສອນລູກຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າຢູ່ເຮືອນ. ລູກຂອງພວກທຸກຜິວຂາວແລະພວກຂ້າທາດເປັນພວກທີ່ບໍ່ມີການສຶກສາ. ໃນອານານິຄົມພາກໃຕ້ນັ້ນມີຊັ້ນສັງຄົມຢູ່ສີ່ຊັ້ນ ຄື : ພວກຮັ່ງມີ ຈຶ່ງຄວບຄຸມກິດຈະການຕ່າງໆ; ພວກຊາວນາ ຈຶ່ງມີຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ພໍປານກາງ ແຕ່ບໍ່ເທົ່າພວກຮັ່ງມີ; ພວກຊາວນາເຊົ່າດິນປູກຝັງ ຈຶ່ງເປັນພວກທຸກຍາກແລະມີສິດໃນຂອບເຂດຈຳກັດ; ແລະພວກຂ້າທາດ ທີ່ຂາດສິດທຸກຢ່າງ.

໔.໓.໕. ເນື່ອງຈາກພວກໄທໃຕ້ອາໄສຢູ່ໃນເຂດທີ່ມີຄົນຢູ່ກັນແບບກະຈັດກະຈາຍຕາມທົ່ງນາແລະສວນທີ່ກວ້າງໃຫຍ່ ດັ່ງນັ້ນລັດຖະບານທ້ອງຖິ່ນຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຄວບຄຸມເນື້ອທີ່ໃຫຍ່ກວ່າໃນ New England . ເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ໃນລັດຖະບານທ້ອງຖິ່ນແມ່ນຜູ້ປົກຄອງແຂວງ ຫຼື ສະພາຂອງອານານິຄົມເປັນຜູ້ແຕ່ງຕັ້ງ. ເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ດັ່ງກ່າວມີສິດເກັບພາສີແລະຈັດຕັ້ງວຽກການຕ່າງໆໃນອານານິຄົມ. ລັດຖະບານທ້ອງຖິ່ນກຳກັບດ້ານການສ້າງສາ ແລະ ສວັດດີການສັງຄົມ. ລັດຖະບານທ້ອງຖິ່ນມີແຕ່ໃນເຂດນ້ຳທະເລເປັນສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ ແຕ່ໃນທີ່ຍັງປ່າເຖື່ອນນັ້ນ ເກືອບຈະບໍ່ມີລັດຖະບານເລີຍ. ປະຊາຊົນໃນເຂດຊົນນະບົດມີຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ເປັນເອກະລາດ ແລະ ບໍ່ມີຊັ້ນສັງຄົມ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າເປັນພວກທີ່ທຸກທີ່ສຸດ ແລະ ເປັນພວກທີ່ມີຄວາມທົນທານ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໃຊ້ເວລາສ່ວນຫຼາຍຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ

ເຮັດວຽກໃນປ່າ ແລະ ພາກັນພະຍາຍາມຢູ່ກັບທັມມະຊາດ. ການປ່ຽນແປງຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ໃນເຂດຊົນນະບົດໄດ້ໃຊ້ເວລາເກືອບເຖິງ ໔໐ ປີ. ພວກຊາວນາທີ່ໄດ້ຮັບຜົນສໍາເຣັດນັ້ນ ໄດ້ພາກັນເລີ່ມສ້າງສາເຮືອນຊານແບບຖາວອນຂຶ້ນ ແທນທີ່ຈະຢູ່ໃນເຮືອນທ່ອນໄມ້ແລະໄດ້ພາກັນເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງຂ້າທາດເຊັ່ນກັນ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າປູກມັນຝລັ່ງ ແລະ ໝາກໄມ້ນາໆຊະນິດ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍໄດ້ລ້ຽງສັດ ແລະ ໃນຣະຫວ່າງສົງຄາມປະຕິວັດ ກໍໄດ້ມີສູນການຄ້າຫລາຍແຫ່ງຢູ່ໃນຊົນນະບົດ ເຊັ່ນ Winchester ໃນ Virginia ແລະ Augusta ໃນ Georgia.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. **ຄຳຫວຍຍອກສາລັບ** : (ເບິ່ງຕາມພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. **ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ** : ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາແຕ່ລະສັບຄຳເວົ້າໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ຂ). ຈົ່ງຂຽນຄຳຕອບຕາມຕົວເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີຢູ່ນັ້ນ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ກ. ສະພາ	໑. ເຂດທີ່ຍັງບໍ່ທັນມີຄວາມຈເຣີນແລະມີຄົນຢູ່ແບບກະຈັດກະຈາຍ ມີປ່າແລະພູເຂົາ.
_____ ຂ. ພືດເງິນ	໒. ຜູ້ເປັນລູກເປັນຫລານໃນກະກຸນ.
_____ ຄ. ຕົ້ນຄາມ	໓. ພືດປູກສຳລັບຂາຍ.
_____ ງ. ສວນ	໔. ພືດທີ່ສາມາດກັ່ນເອົາສີໄດ້ ສ່ວນມາກເປັນສີຟ້າ.
_____ ຈ. ຊາວນາເຊົ່າດິນປູກຝັງ	໕. ເຮືອນທີ່ມີຂນາດໃຫຍ່ແລະງົດງາມ.
_____ ສ. ນ້ຳລົ້ນທະເລ	໖. ບ່ອນທຳການປູກຝັງ.
_____ ຊ. ນາຍຄູພິເສດ	໗. ຜູ້ທີ່ເຊົ່າທີ່ດິນສຳລັບປູກພືດດັ່ງກ່າວ.
_____ ຍ. ຊົນນະບົດ	໘. ດິນຕາມແຄມທະເລທີ່ນ້ຳທະເລຂຶ້ນຖ້ວມເປັນບາງຄັ້ງ.
_____ ດ. ເຊື້ອສາຍ	໙. ນາຍຄູປະຈຳຕົວ.

_____ ດ. ເຮືອນໄຜ່ ໑໐. ກຸ່ມຄົນທີ່ຮ່ວມກັນໃນຈຸດປະສົງດຽວກັນ.

ຂ. ຖືກຜິດ

ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ໝາຍ T ໃສ່ໜ້າຫາກເຫັນວ່າປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກ. ຖ້າປະໂຍກນັ້ນຜິດໃຫ້ໝາຍ F .

____ ໑. ຫຼັງຈາກພວກ Pilgrims ໄດ້ຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມ Plymouth ແລ້ວ ພວກ Puritans ກໍ່ໄດ້ເລີ່ມຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມໃໝ່ອີກ ເອີ້ນວ່າ Jamestown.

____ ໒. ພວກ Puritans ບໍ່ຍອມຮັບສາສນາໃດນອກຈາກສາສນາເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ.

____ ໓. ທ່ານ Roger Williams ບໍ່ເຫັນພ້ອມກັບບັນດາຫົວໜ້າຂອງພວກ Puritans ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ໃນປີ ໑໖໓໖ ທ່ານຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຊື້ດິນຈາກພວກອິນເດັຍແດງແລະໄດ້ຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມຂອງທ່ານເອງ ໂດຍຕັ້ງຊື່ວ່າ Rhode Island.

____ ໔. ໃນອານານິຄົມ New England ພວກຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃໝ່ເຄີຍເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງໄຮ່ນາອັນກວ້າງຂວາງ ແລະ ຕ້ອງໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກໜັກເພື່ອໃຫ້ໄດ້ສະບຽງອາຫານເປັນທີ່ພຽງພໍ.

____ ໕. ເມືອງ Boston ໃນ Massachusetts ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນທ່າເຮືອທີ່ສຳຄັນໃນອານານິຄົມ New England.

____ ໖. ປະຊາຊົນໃນອານານິຄົມໄດ້ພາກັນເລືອກເອົາຫົວໜ້າຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເພື່ອເປັນຜູ້ແທນປະຈຳໃນສະພາອັງກິດ.

____ ໗. New York ແມ່ນພວກ Dutch ເປັນຜູ້ຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນ ໂດຍມີຊື່ທຳອິດວ່າ New Netherlands.

____ ໘. ທ່ານ William Penn ໄດ້ຕັ້ງອານານິຄົມພິເສດສຳຫຼັບເປີດໃຫ້ທຸກຈົນຈາກເຂົ້າມາຢູ່.

____ ໙. ພືດທີ່ສຳຄັນໃນອານານິຄົມພາກກາງແມ່ນ ຢາສູບ, ຕົ້ນຄາມ ແລະ ເຂົ້າ.

____ ໑໐. ອານານິຄົມພາກກາງເປັນທີ່ຮູ້ກັນໃນທົ່ວພວກອານານິຄົມວ່າເປັນ "ອູ່ເຂົ້າ".

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ບ່ອນວ່າງ : ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ໝວດຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ໃນບ່ອນວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຫຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍອັນຖືກຕ້ອງ : ພືດເງິນ, ຣັຖບານແຂວງ, ເກັບພາສີ, ສວນ, ອຸດົມສົມບູນ, ຊາວເຂົາ, ອິສຣະພາບແລະສິດທິ, ຊົນນະບົດ, ເຮືອນໃຫຍ່, ຢາສູບ, ຕົ້ນຄາມແລະເຂົ້າ.

໑. ໃນອານານິຄົມພາກກາງ ຣັຖບານທ້ອງຖິ່ນໝາຍເຖິງ ____________________ .

໒. ຢູ່ໃກ້ແມ່ນ້ຳ ດິນມີ ____________________ ທີ່ສຸດ ແລະ ຄື້ນທະເລໄດ້ຂຶ້ນເຖິງຝັ່ງໃນຣະຍະໄກ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ເຂດດັ່ງກ່າວຈຶ່ງເອີ້ນວ່າ ເຂດນ້ຳຄື້ນທະເລ.

໓. ເຂດທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກໃນພູຫານັ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ ____________________ .

໔. ພວກ ____________________ ຕ້ອງໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກໜັກເພື່ອຢູ່ລອດ.

໕. ພືດສາມຊະນິດໄດ້ຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ພວກພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ເງິນຫຼາຍດັ່ງນັ້ນ ພືດຈຳພວກດັ່ງກ່າວຈຶ່ງເອີ້ນວ່າ ______

____________________ .

໖. ພວກພາກໃຕ້ຕ້ອງການປູກ ____________________ ຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງເອົາພວກຂ້າທາດມາຈາກອາຟຣິກາ.

____ ໗. Carolinas ມີ ______________________ ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ.

____ ໘. ພວກຂ້າທາດເປັນພວກທຸກ ແລະ ບໍ່ມີ ______________________ .

____ ໙. ພວກພາກໃຕ້ທີ່ຮັ່ງມີຢູ່ໃນ ______________________ ທີ່ງົດງາມ ແລະ ໃຊ້ເວລາ ສ່ວນຫຼາຍເພື່ອທຳການໄລ່ເນື້ອ ແລະ ຫຼິ້ນການພະນັນ.

____ ໑໐. ສະພາອານານິຄົມມີສິດ ______________________ ແລະຈັດວຽກການທັງໝົດ ໃນອານານິຄົມ.

90

ພາກ ໔ : ການປະຕິວັດໃນອະເມຣິກາ

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ

constant: ບໍ່ລົດລະ

defeat: ທຳລາຍ

The French armies defeated the British armies in the Ohio Valley.

cede: ມອບ

France had to cede Canada to England.

affairs: ກິຈການ

The colonist wanted to take care of their own affairs.

raw materials: ວັດຖຸດິບ

All raw materials had to be shipped to England to be made into goods and then returned to the colonies to be sold.

decline: ຊຸດໂຊມ

British commercial policy caused business to decline in the colonies.

Navigation Act: ດຳຣັດກ່ຽວກັບຂົນສິນຄ້າ

The Navigation Act stated that only English and colonial had the right to carry goods.

repeal: ລົບລ້າງ, ຍົກເລີກ

The English gover ent repealed the Navigation Act and other acts because of the boycott of British products by the colonists.

runaway slave: ຂ້າທາດທີ່ໂຕນໜີ ຫຼື ລົບໜີ

Crispus Attuck was a runaway slave who was killed in the "Boston Massacre".

ammunition: ກະສຸນປືນ

patriot: ຜູ້ຮັກຊາດ

The patriots hid guns and ammunition in Lexington, Massachusetts.

commander: ຜູ້ບັງຄັບບັນຊາ

General Thomas Gage was commander of the British armies in Boston.

ambassador: ເອກອັກຄະຣາຊທູດ

Congress sent ambassadors to other countries to ask for help in fighting England.

Declaration of Independence: ຄຳປະກາດເອກຣາດ

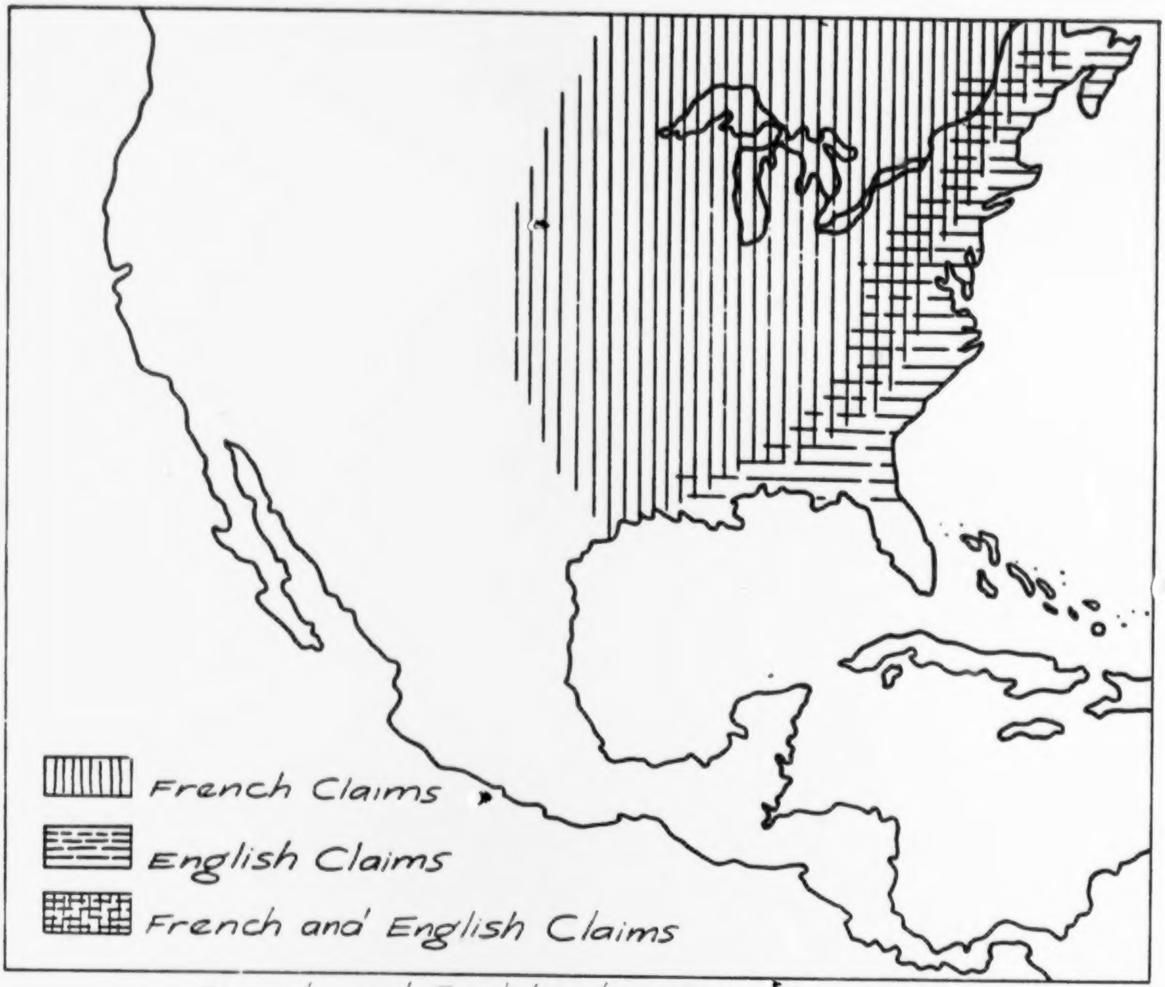
Thomas Jefferson helped to write the Declaration of Independence.

READING

5.1. THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR

5.1.1. From 1689 to 1763 England and France constantly struggled for world leadership. Wars between these two countries occurred in Europe, North America, and in some parts of Africa and Asia. In North America, the most important wars occurred in the Ohio Valley and in Canada from 1754 to 1763. These wars were referred to as the French and Indian War because the British army was fighting against both the French army and its allies, the Indians.

5.1.2. Both France and England claimed the lands in the Ohio Valley. In 1754, British forces and the Virginians, under the command of George Washington went, to the Ohio Valley to warn the French to leave this area. These forces were **defeated** by the French army. In 1755, General Braddock and George Washington came back with large forces, and once again, they were defeated badly by the French and the Indians. General Braddock was killed along with 1,000 British soldiers. In the same year, William Pitts was sent from England to the colonies to reorganize the armies and prepare for war with France. Pitts' forces attacked both Quebec and the Ohio Valley at the same time. The wars began in 1758 and ended in 1763. Finally, France was defeated and had to sign a peace treaty. According to this treaty, France had to **cede** Canada and the land east of the Mississippi River (except New Orleans) to England. The lands on the west of the Mississippi and New Orleans were ceded to Spain. And in exchange, Spain gave up Florida to Britain. After this war, France totally lost all of its influence in North America. The war with France also gave the colonists a feeling of


French Claims
English Claims
French and English Claims

French and Englsh claims in the
North America

independence. The colonial forces had also gained military experience after many years of fighting.

5.2. THE CAUSES OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTIONARY WAR

5.2.1. When the war with France and the Indians ended, the colonists felt secure. Because they did not have to concentrate on fighting a war, they had more time to devote to producing goods and making money. Up until the French and Indian War, England had not interfered in colonial affairs and the colonists were accustomed to handling their own **affairs** themselves. However, a conflict arose at the end of the war. England's treasury had been nearly depleted by the war. Because the British army had fought to protect the colonists, England felt that the colonies had to share a part of the expense. Therefore, the British Parliament passed many acts to collect taxes from the colonists and to control business in the colonies. They wanted the colonies to become a sure market for British products. All **raw materials** had to be shipped to England to be made into products; afterwards these products would be sold back to the colonies. This policy angered the colonists because it caused business **decline** in the colonies. Another law passed by the British Parliament was the **Navigation Act**. This act said that only British and colonial ships had the right to carry goods. The Navigation Act also listed many kinds of goods that had to be sold to England instead of to other countries.

5.2.2. In 1764, the British government added more taxes on

95

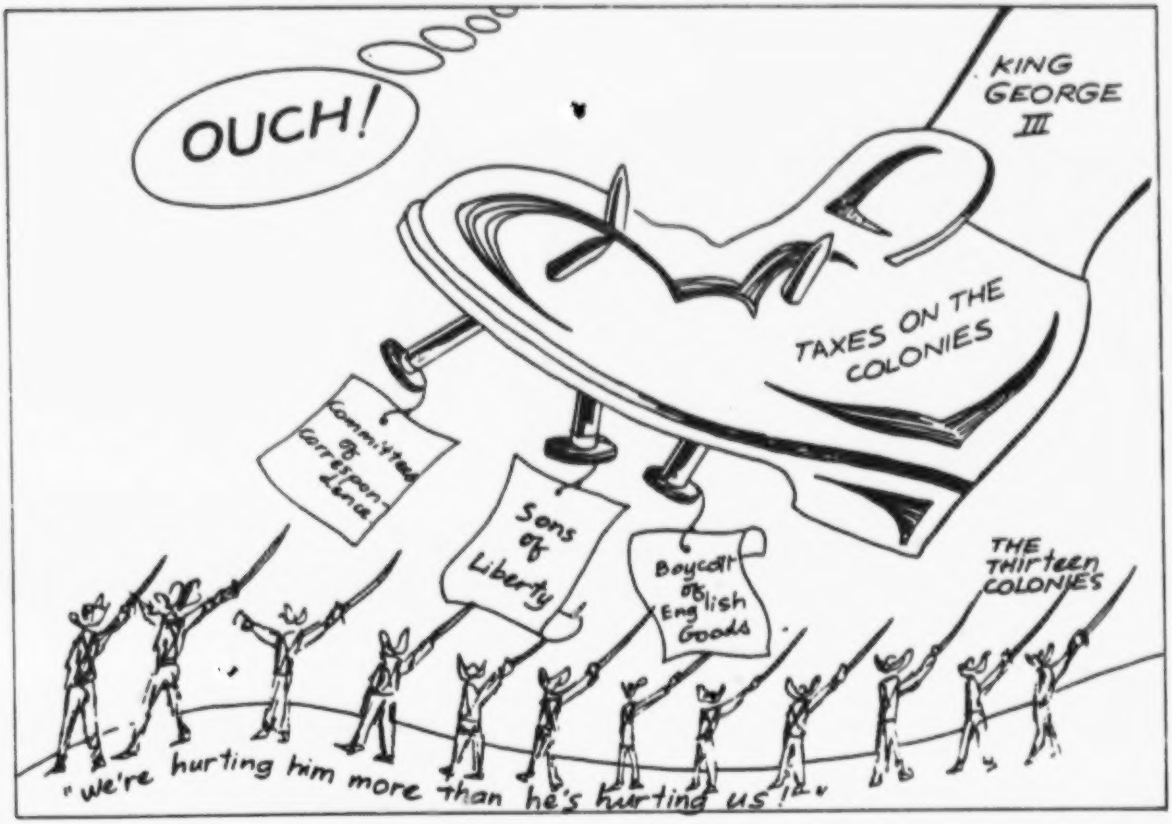
goods that were sold in the colonies. They were the Sugar Act, the Currency Act, the Stamp Act, and the Quartering Act. Colonial business and the colonists protested against all of these acts and after a year all of them had been **repealed**.

The British government replaced these acts by many other taxes because they needed money. Because all these new taxes were passed under the government of Townsend, these acts were called the Townsend Acts.

Again, the colonists protested. They decided to boycott English goods. They refused to buy English products in Boston, New York, Philadelphia and other cities. In addition to the boycotting, the colonists also attacked tax collectors everywhere. In an effort to stop these attacks, the British government sent soldiers to patrol colonial cities. In Boston, violence increased when the British armies were sent to keep order.

5.2.3. The colonists realized that the British government was right when they wanted the colonists to share a part of the expense by paying taxes as Englishmen. The colonists were not against paying taxes but they were against the laws because there were no colonial representatives to voice an opinion in the British Parliament. They said "no taxation without representation".

5.2.4. In 1770, the British armies shot at a mob in the streets of Boston because this mob teased the armies. Five


OUCH!
KING GEORGE III
TAXES ON THE COLONIES
Committee of Correspondence
Sons of Liberty
Boycott of English Goods
THE THIRTEEN COLONIES
"We're hurting him more than he's hurting us!"

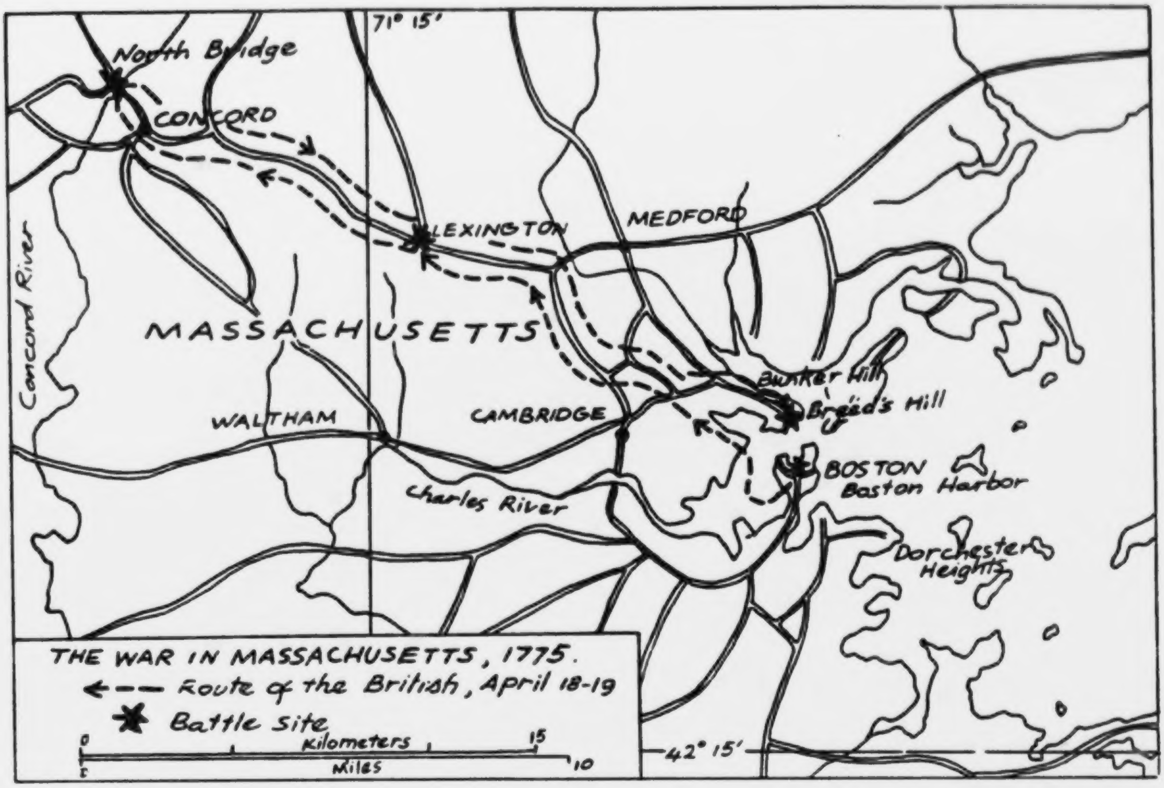
colonists were killed. One of the victims was a **runaway slave**, Crispus Attuck. This attack became known as the "Boston Massacre". News of the "massacre" spread to all colonies and further angered the colonists.

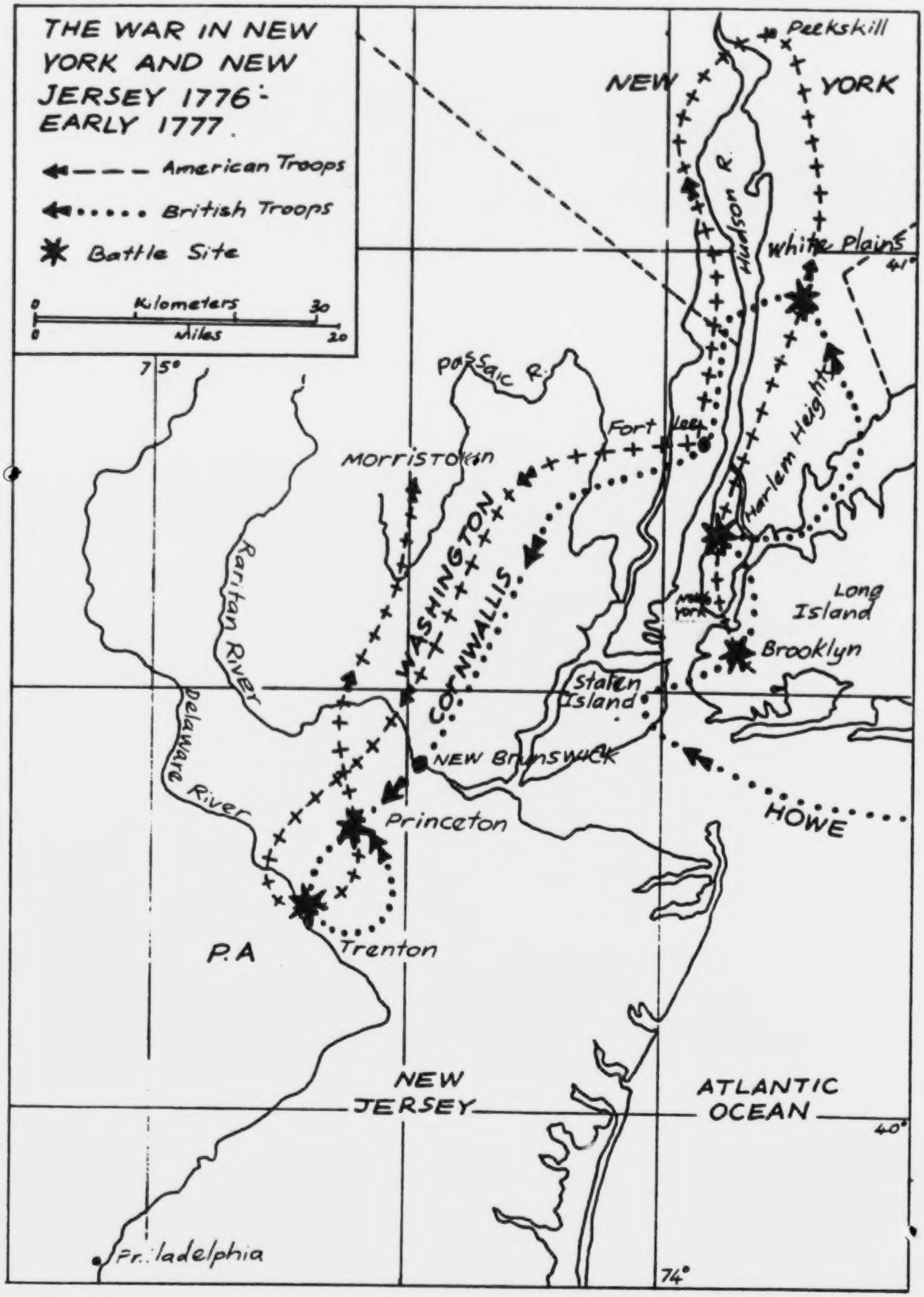
5.2.5. After the "Boston Massacre", the British Parliament repealed all the Townsend Acts except the Tea Act. This act allowed the British East India Company to sell tea directly to the colonies. Since the company did not have to pay an export tax, it could sell tea cheaper than that smuggled into the colonies. In spite of this, the Act was hated. In Boston, some people dressed in Indian clothing, seized the tea on a British ship and threw it into the water as a protest. This incident was called the **Boston Tea Party**. The Bristish government was so angered by the "tea party" that King George ordered Boston Harbor closed and took away many colonial rights.

5.2.6. The colonial leaders were upset. They met in Philadelphia and formed the First Continental Congress. The Congress sent a message to the King protesting against his severe punishment. The colonies also organized a group of fighting men. These men were called "minutemen" because they were ready to fight on a minute's notice. The minutemen had guns and **ammunition** at home and hidden elsewhere around Boston.

5.3. THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR

5.3.1. In April 1775, the leader of the British army in

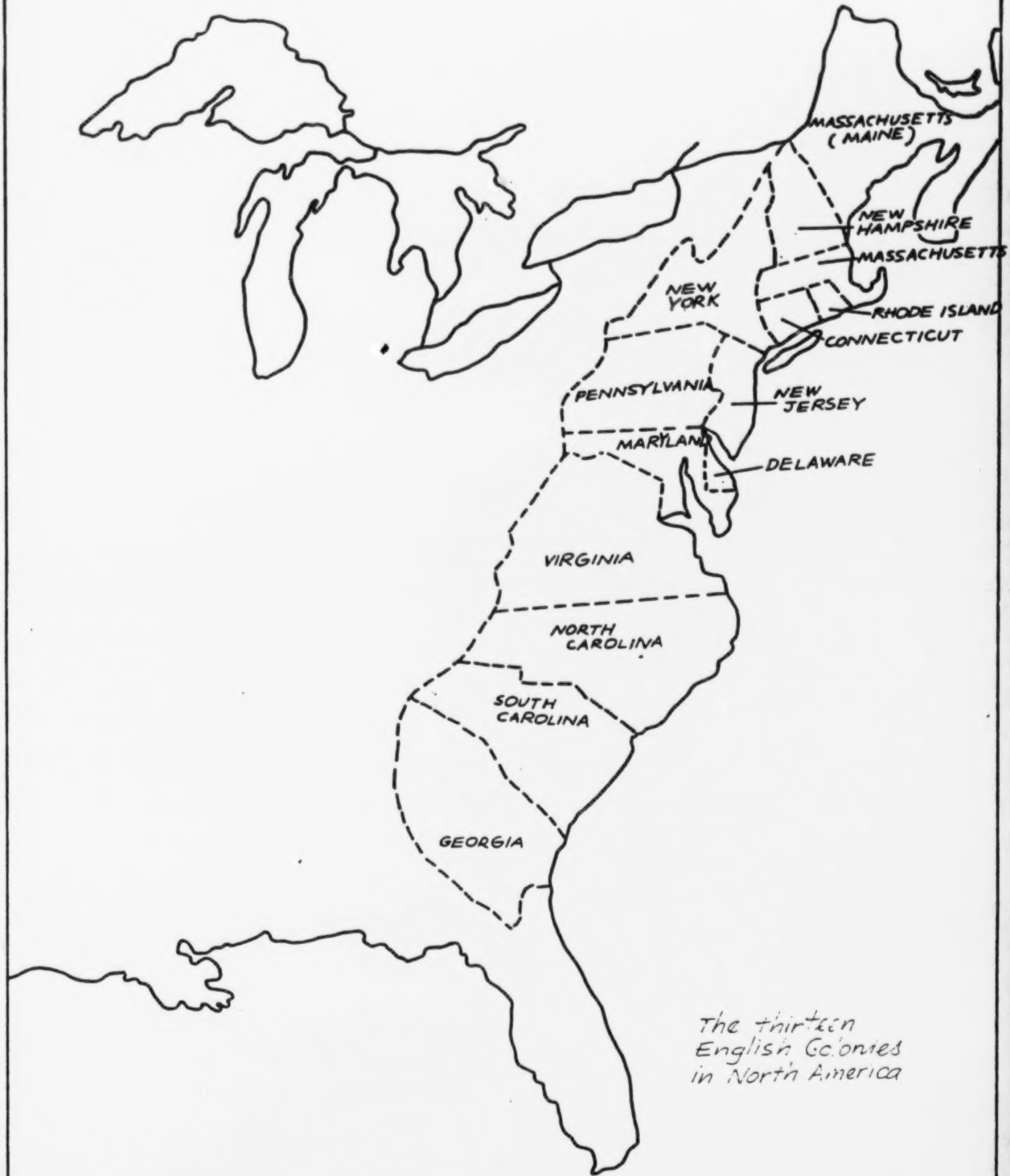

71° 15'
North Bridge
CONCORD
Concord River
LEXINGTON
MEDFORD
MASSACHUSETTS
Bunker Hill
Breed's Hill
WALTHAM
CAMBRIDGE
BOSTON
Boston Harbor
Charles River
Dorchester Heights
THE WAR IN MASSACHUSETTS, 1775.
Route of the British, April 18-19
Battle site
0
Kilometers
15
Miles
10
42° 15'


THE WAR IN NEW YORK AND NEW JERSEY 1776 - EARLY 1777.
American Troops
British Troops
Battle Site
0 Kilometers 30
0 Miles 20
75°
41°
40°
74°
Peekskill
NEW YORK
Hudson R.
White Plains
Passaic R.
Fort Lee
Harlem Heights
Morristown
WASHINGTON
CORNWALLIS
New York
Long Island
Brooklyn
Raritan River
Staten Island
Delaware River
NEW Brunswick
HOWE
Princeton
Trenton
P.A
NEW JERSEY
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Fr..ladelphia

Boston, General Gage, heard that the colonial soldiers had guns and ammunition hidden at Concord, Massachusetts. General Gage sent his soldiers to find the guns and ammunition. A **patriot**, Paul Revere, rode from Boston to warn the colonists that the English were coming. The minutemen were ready to fight. They met the British at a park in Lexington on the morning of April 19, 1775. Someone, no one knows who, fired a shot that started the fighting between the colonists and the English. Eight colonists died. This was the beginning of the American Revolution.

5.3.2. In May 1775, the colonial leaders met at the Second Continental Congress in Philadelphia. The members of the Congress elected George Washington to be the **commander** of the army. They also sent **ambassadors** to other countries to ask for help in fighting England. In June, 1776, Congress asked Thomas Jefferson from Virginia to write a paper that explained why the colonies wanted to be free from England. That paper was called **the Declaration of Independence**. The members of Congress signed the paper on July 4, 1776. That is the day Americans celebrate as their Independence Day. The Declaration stated that all people were created equal and they had certain rights which could not be taken away. This document was a very daring statement at that time. It also declared the colonies to be the "United States of America".

5.3.3. The Revolutionary War was not easy for the Americans because England was a wealthy country with a strong army and


MASSACHUSETTS
(MAINE)
NEW HAMPSHIRE
MASSACHUSETTS
NEW YORK
RHODE ISLAND
CONNECTICUT
PENNSYLVANIA
NEW JERSEY
MARYLAND
DELAWARE
VIRGINIA
NORTH CAROLINA
SOUTH CAROLINA
GEORGIA

The thirteen
English Colonies
in North America

navy. The American army was not strong and it did not have much money. However, there were many things that helped the Americans. They were fighting on their own land and for their independence. Freedom was important to them and the Americans fought with all their might. At first, the English won many battles; but they could not win the war. The Americans were able to win the last battle of the war because of the aid of France. In October 1781, France helped the Americans to defeat the English at Yorktown, Virginia. On October 19, 1781, General Cornwallis surrendered his armies to General Washington. At last, the Americans got their independence from England. A peace treaty was signed in Paris on January 20, 1783, between England and the United States of America. This treaty ended the war and gave independence to the colonists.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define.

CEDE
TEA
ARMY
LOUIS
PITTS
OHIO
SHIP
SPAIN
TEASE
MONEY

CONSTANT
DEFEAT
AFFAIRS
BRADDOCK
DECLINE
REPEAL
ENGLAND
SPIRIT
TREATY
FRANCE

COMMANDER
PATRIOT
AMBASSADOR
DECLARATION
INDEPENDENT
JEFFERSON
AMMUNITION
VALLEY
INDIANS
TREATY

GEORGE WASHINGTON
RUNAWAY SLAVE
BOSTON MASSACRE
REORGANIZE
NAVIGATION ACT
CONTINENTAL CONGRESS
NEW ORLEANS
EAST INDIES
REVOLUTIONARY WAR

O	C	E	D	E	C	L	I	N	E	J	E	F	F	E	R	S	O	N	T	A
N	N	O	R	U	N	A	W	A	Y	S	L	A	V	E	T	E	A	C	R	M
I	D	A	N	A	M	M	U	N	I	T	I	O	N	P	I	T	T	S	E	M
A	A	Y	L	S	C	O	M	M	A	N	D	E	R	T	E	A	S	E	A	U
P	T	B	N	E	T	R	E	P	E	A	L	E	N	G	L	A	N	D	T	N
S	R	I	A	F	F	A	M	B	A	S	S	A	D	O	R	N	L	E	Y	I
E	I	A	R	M	Y	C	N	A	V	I	G	A	T	I	O	N	A	C	T	T
A	O	F	R	A	N	C	E	T	T	N	E	D	N	E	P	E	D	N	I	I
S	T	D	E	C	L	A	R	A	T	I	O	N	I	N	D	I	A	N	S	O
T	G	E	O	R	G	E	W	A	S	H	I	N	G	T	O	N	A	Y	E	N
I	L	O	U	I	S	T	B	R	A	D	D	O	C	K	P	E	A	C	E	T
N	S	B	H	O	A	R	E	O	R	G	A	N	I	Z	E	O	H	I	O	I
D	H	I	N	E	W	O	R	L	E	A	N	S	V	A	L	L	E	Y	D	R
I	I	C	F	N	A	V	I	G	A	T	I	O	N	A	C	T	B	A	E	I
E	P	E	B	O	S	T	O	N	M	A	S	S	A	C	R	E	K	M	D	P
S	D	C	O	N	T	I	N	E	N	T	A	L	C	O	N	G	R	E	S	S
R	E	V	O	L	U	T	I	O	N	A	R	Y	W	A	R	M	O	N	E	Y

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

	A	B
____	a. boycott	1. a person who represents a government in a foreign nation.
____	b. navigation	2. a refusal to buy certain goods or products.
____	c. raw material	3. the document which declared the thirteen colonies free and independent.
____	d. ambassador	4. travel or traffic by vessels.
____	e. Declaration of Independence	5. a person who loves, supports, and defends his country.
____	f. Patriot	6. a person who runs away as a fugitive.
____	g. runaway	7. unprocessed natural products used in manufactures.

III. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put an F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. From 1689 to 1763, England and France struggled for world leadership.

____ 2. Both France and England claimed the lands in the Ohio Valley.

____ 3. General Braddock, George Washington, and their armies were defeated badly by the French and the Indians.

____ 4. France had to cede Canada and the land east of the Mississippi River (except New Orleans) to England.

____ 5. As a result of the war with France, the colonists had gained military experience after many years of fighting.

____ 6. The colonists wanted the British government to take care of their affairs.

____ 7. In 1764, the British government added more taxes on goods that were sold in the colonies.

____ 8. In 1770, British soldiers shot at a mob in the streets of Boston because this mob had teased them. Five colonists were killed.

____ 9. Since the company did not have to pay export tax on tea, it coud sell tea cheaper than the tea that was smuggled into the colonies.

____10. In Boston, many Indians seized the tea on a British ship and threw it into the water as a protest.

IV. Fill in the blanks:

Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: representatives, treaty, repeal, reorganize, Boston Tea Party, influence, Navigation Act, expense, Boston Massacre, First Continental Congress.

1. William Pitts was sent to the colonies to ____________ the armies and prepare for war with France.

2. In 1763, France was defeated and had to sign a peace ________ with England.

106

3. After this war, France totally lost all of its ____________ in North America.

4. England decided that the colonies had to share a part of this ____________ . As a result, they passed many acts to collect taxes and control business in the colonies.

5. The ____________ said that only English and colonial ships had the right to carry goods.

6. The colonists were against the tax laws because there were no colonial ____________ in the British Parliament.

7. In 1770, the British soldiers shot at a mob in the streets of Boston. This killing was called __________ .

8. After the "Boston Massacre", the Bristish Parliament began to ____________ all the Townsend Acts except the Tea Act.

9. Many people dressed in Indian clothing, seized the tea on the ship and threw it into the water. This incident was called the _____________ .

10. The colonial leaders were upset and they met in Philadelphia and formed the _____________ .

ບົດອ່ານ

໔.໑. ສົງຄາມລະຫວ່າງຝຣັ່ງເສດແລະອິນເດັຍແດງ

໔.໑.໑. ຈາກປີ ໑໖໘໙ ຫາປີ ໑໘໑໕ ປະເທດອັງກິດ ແລະ ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ ໄດ້ຕໍ່ສູ້ກັນຢ່າງບໍ່ລົດລະ ເພື່ອເປັນຫົວໜ້າຂອງໂລກ. ສົງຄາມລະຫວ່າງສອງປະເທດນີ້ ໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນຢູໂຣບ, ອະເມຣິກາເໜືອ, ແລະ ໃນບາງສ່ວນໃນອາຟຣິກາ ແລະ ເອເຊັຍ. ໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອ ທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດນັ້ນ ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນ Ohio Valley ແລະ ໃນ Canada ໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໗໕໔ ຫາ ໑໗໖໓. ສົງຄາມທີ່ວ່ານີ້ ເອີ້ນກັນວ່າ ສົງຄາມລະຫວ່າງພວກຝຣັ່ງເສດແລະອິນເດັຍແດງ ຍ້ອນວ່າ ກອງທັບອັງກິດ ໄດ້ຕໍ່ສູ້ກັບກອງທັບຝຣັ່ງເສດແລະພັນທະມິດຂອງຕົນ ຊຶ່ງແມ່ນພວກອິນເດັຍແດງ.

໔.໑.໒. ທັງປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ ແລະ ປະເທດອັງກິດ ອ້າງວ່າດິນແດນໃນ Ohio Valley ເປັນຂອງພວກຕົນ. ໃນປີ ໑໗໕໔ ກອງທະຫານອັງກິດແລະພວກ Virginia ພາຍໃຕ້ການບັງຄັບບັນຊາຂອງທ່ານ George Washington ໄດ້ພາກັນໄປຍັງ Ohio Valley ເພື່ອຂັບໄລ່ພວກຝຣັ່ງເສດອອກຈາກຂົງເຂດດັ່ງກ່າວ. ແຕ່ວ່າ ກຳລັງທະຫານດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຖືກກອງທັບຝຣັ່ງເສດທຳລາຍ. ໃນປີ ໑໗໕໕ ນາຍພົນ Braddock ແລະ ທ່ານ George Washington ໄດ້ນຳເອົາກຳລັງທະຫານຈຳນວນຫຼາຍກັບໄປ ແລະ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຖືກພວກຝຣັ່ງເສດແລະພວກອິນເດັຍແດງທຳລາຍຢ່າງໜັກໜ່ວງອີກເທື່ອໃໝ່. ນາຍພົນ Braddock ໄດ້ຖືກຂ້າຕາຍພ້ອມດ້ວຍທະຫານອັງກິດອີກພັນຄົນ. ໃນປີດຽວກັນນັ້ນ ປະເທດອັງກິດໄດ້ສົ່ງທ່ານ William Pitts ໄປຍັງອານານິຄົມເພື່ອປັບປຸງກອງທັບໃໝ່ ແລະ ເພື່ອດຳເນີນສົງຄາມກັບພວກຝຣັ່ງເສດ. ກຳລັງຂອງທ່ານ Pitts ໄດ້ໂຈມຕີ Quebec ແລະ Ohio Valley ໃນເວລາດຽວກັນ. ສົງຄາມໄດ້ເລີ່ມຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໗໕໘ ແລະ ສິ້ນສຸດລົງໃນປີ ໑໗໖໓. ໃນທີ່ສຸດພວກຝຣັ່ງເສດໄດ້ຖືກທຳລາຍແລະຕ້ອງໄດ້ເຊັນສົນທິສັນຍາສັນຕິພາບ. ຕາມສົນທິສັນຍາດັ່ງກ່າວ ພວກຝຣັ່ງເສດຕ້ອງມອບ Canada ແລະ ດິນແດນພາກຕາເວັນອອກຂອງແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi ໃຫ້ແກ່ພວກອັງກິດ ນອກຈາກ New Orleans . ດິນແດນໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກຂອງແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi ແລະ New Orleans ໄດ້ຖືກມອບໃຫ້ປະເທດ Spain ເພື່ອເປັນການແລກປ່ຽນ ປະເທດ Spain ໄດ້ມອບ Florida ໃຫ້ແກ່ປະເທດອັງກິດ. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມດັ່ງກ່າວ ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດໄດ້ສູນເສັຍອິດທິພົນຂອງຕົນໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອຢ່າງສິ້ນເຊີງ. ສົງຄາມກັບພວກ

ຝຣັ່ງເສດໄດ້ມາໃຫ້ພວກຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃໝ່ ມີຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກເປັນເອກຣາດ. ຫຼັງຈາກສຳການສູ້ຮົບເປັນເວລາຫຼາຍປີ ກຳລັງທະຫານຂອງອານານິຄົມໄດ້ມີປະສົບການຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ.

໔.໒. ສາເຫດຂອງສົງຄາມປະຕິວັດໃນອະເມຣິກາ.

໔.໒.໑. ໃນເວລາສົງຄາມກັບປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດແລະອິນເດັຍແດງ ຢຸດຕິລົງ ພວກຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານທັງຫຼາຍຮູ້ສຶກມີຄວາມປອດໄພຂຶ້ນ. ເນື່ອງຈາກເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ຕ້ອງໄດ້ທຸ້ມເທກຳລັງໃສ່ການຕໍ່ສູ້ສົງຄາມ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງມີເວລາສະລະໃສ່ການຜລິດສິນຄ້າ ແລະ ຫາເງິນຫາຄຳ. ປະເທດອັງກິດບໍ່ໄດ້ມົວພັນກັບກິຈະການຂອງອານານິຄົມ ຈົນເຖິງສົງຄາມຝຣັ່ງເສດແລະອິນເດັຍແດງ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ຊາວເມືອງໃນອານານິຄົມຈຶ່ງຄຸ້ນເຄີຍກັບການບໍຣິຫານກິຈການຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ. ແຕ່ວ່າບັນຫາການຂັດແຍ່ງໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນຕອນທ້າຍຂອງສົງຄາມ. ຊັບສິນຂອງປະເທດອັງກິດເກືອບໝົດໄປຍ້ອນສົງຄາມ. ຍ້ອນວ່າກອງທັບອັງກິດໄດ້ທຳການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອປົກປ້ອງປະຊາຊົນໃນອານານິຄົມ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ປະເທດອັງກິດຈຶ່ງຮູ້ສຶກວ່າ ພວກອານານິຄົມຕ້ອງໄດ້ຮັບພາລະໃນການໃຊ້ຈ່າຍບາງສ່ວນ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ ສະພາອັງກິດ ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ອອກດຳຣັດເພື່ອເກັບພາສີຈາກປະຊາຊົນ ແລະ ເພື່ອຄວບຄຸມທຸຣະກິດການຄ້າໃນອານານິຄົມ. ປະເທດອັງກິດ ຕ້ອງການຢາກໃຫ້ອານານິຄົມຕ່າງໆກາຍເປັນຕຼາດສຳຫຼັບສິນຄ້າຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ວັດຖຸດິບທຸກຢ່າງ ຕ້ອງໄດ້ສົ່ງໄປຍັງປະເທດອັງກິດສຳຫຼັບຜລິດເປັນສິນຄ້າ ຫຼັງຈາກນັ້ນ ສິນຄ້າເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນ ກໍຈະໄດ້ສົ່ງກັບຄືນໄປຂາຍໃນອານານິຄົມ. ພົນລະເມືອງໃນອານານິຄົມບໍ່ມີຄວາມພໍໃຈ ຍ້ອນວ່າ ນະໂຍບາຍດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ການຄ້າໃນອານານິຄົມຈຸດນ້ອຍລົງ. ກົດໝາຍອີກຢ່າງນຶ່ງທີ່ສະພາອັງກິດໄດ້ຈັດອອກມາ ແມ່ນດຳຣັດການເດີນເຮືອ. ດຳຣັດດັ່ງກ່າວບົ່ງໄວ້ວ່າ ກຳປັ່ນທີ່ມີສິດຂົນສິນຄ້າໄດ້ ມີພຽງກຳປັ່ນອັງກິດ ແລະ ຂອງອານານິຄົມເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ດຳຣັດການເດີນເຮືອ ຍັງໄດ້ບົ່ງຈະນົດສິນຄ້າທີ່ຈະຕ້ອງຂາຍໃຫ້ແກ່ປະເທດອັງກິດຫຼາຍຊະນິດ ແທນທີ່ຈະຂາຍໃຫ້ປະເທດອື່ນ.

໔.໒.໒. ໃນປີ ໑໗໖໔ ຣັຖບານອັງກິດໄດ້ເພີ່ມພາສີສິນຄ້າທີ່ຂາຍໃນອານານິຄົມຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ດ້ວຍການໃຊ້ດຳຣັດກ່ຽວກັບນ້ຳຕານ, ດຳຣັດກ່ຽວກັບເງິນຕາ, ດຳຣັດກ່ຽວກັບສະແຕມ ແລະ ດຳຣັດກ່ຽວກັບການຂາຍອາຫານ. ນັກການຄ້າ ແລະ ຊາວເມືອງໃນອານານິຄົມ ໄດ້ພາກັນຄັດຄ້ານດຳຣັດເຫຼົ່ານີ້ທັງໝົດ ແລະ ໃນນຶ່ງປີຕໍ່ມາ ດຳຣັດດັ່ງກ່າວທັງໝົດໄດ້ຖືກຍົກເລີກໄປ.

ຍ້ອນຄວາມຕ້ອງການເງິນ ຣັຖບານອັງກິດຈຶ່ງໄດ້ໃຊ້ກົດໝາຍພາສີຢ່າງອື່ນແທນ ແລະ ຍ້ອນວ່າກົດໝາຍພາສີ

ເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ແມ່ນຣັຖບານຂອງທ່ານ Townsend ເປັນຜູ້ຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນມາ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ດຳຣັດທັງຫຼາຍເຫຼົ່ານີ້ຈຶ່ງເອີ້ນວ່າ Townsend Acts.

ພວກປະຊາຊົນໃນອານານິຄົມຕ່າງໆໄດ້ປະທ້ວງອີກ ໂດຍພາກັນຕັດສິນໃຈບໍ່ຍອມຊື້ສິນຄ້າຂອງອັງກິດຕາມຫົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆເຊັ່ນ ໃນເມືອງ Boston, New York, Philadelphia . ນອກຈາກນັ້ນແລ້ວ ເຂົາເຈົ້າຍັງໄດ້ພາກັນໂຈມຕີພວກເກັບພາສີໃນທຸກແຫ່ງ. ເມື່ອຮູ້ດີການໂຈມຕີດັ່ງກ່າວ ຣັຖບານອັງກິດຈຶ່ງໄດ້ສົ່ງກອງທະຫານໄປກວດກາຕາມຫົວເມືອງໃນເຂດອານານິຄົມທັງຫຼາຍ. ໃນເມືອງ Boston ຄວາມຮຸນແຮງໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນ ເມື່ອທະຫານອັງກິດເຂົ້າໄປເພື່ອຮັກສາຄວາມເປັນລະບຽບ.

໔.໖.໓. ພວກປະຊາຊົນໃນອານານິຄົມສຳນຶກໄດ້ວ່າ ຣັຖບານອັງກິດເປັນຝ່າຍມີເດດທີ່ຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ພວກຕົນມີສ່ວນຮ່ວມໃນການຈັບຈ່າຍ ໂດຍການເສັຽພາສີໃນຖານະເປັນຄົນອັງກິດ ແຕ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ໄດ້ຄັດຄ້ານຕໍ່ການເສັຽພາສີ ແຕ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ເຫັນກັບກົດໝາຍ ເພາະວ່າຢູ່ໃນສະພາອັງກິດນັ້ນບໍ່ມີຜູ້ແທນຂອງຊາວອານານິຄົມເພື່ອສເນີຄວາມຄິດຄວາມເຫັນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ກ່າວວ່າ "ບໍ່ມີການເກັບພາສີ ໂດຍບໍ່ມີຜູ້ແທນໃນສະພາ."

໔.໖.໔. ໃນປີ ໑໗໗໐ ທະຫານອັງກິດໄດ້ຍິງໃສ່ຝູງຊົນໃນກາງຊຸມຊົນເມືອງ Boston ເພາະວ່າຝູງຊົນດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຢອກລໍ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ຜົນປາກົດວ່າ ໄດ້ມີຄົນເສັຽຊີວິດໄປຫ້າຄົນ. ຫນຶ່ງໃນຈຳນວນຂອງພວກທີ່ເສັຽຊີວິດນັ້ນ ແມ່ນຂ້າທາດທີ່ໂຕນໜີຊື່ວ່າ Crispus Attuck . ການໂຈມຕີດັ່ງກ່າວເປັນທີ່ຮູ້ກັນວ່າເປັນ "ການສັງຫານໝູ່ໃນ Boston ". ຂ່າວກ່ຽວກັບການສັງຫານໄດ້ແຜ່ໄປທົ່ວທຸກອານານິຄົມ ແລະພາໃຫ້ພວກປະຊາຊົນໃນອານານິຄົມເກີດມີຄວາມຄຽດແຄ້ນຍິ່ງຂຶ້ນ.

໔.໖.໔. ພາຍຫຼັງການ "ສັງຫານໝູ່ໃນ Boston " ສະພາອັງກິດໄດ້ທຳການເລີກລົ້ມດຳຣັດ Townsend Acts ທັງໝົດ ນອກຈາກດຳຣັດ Tea Act . ດຳຣັດດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ອະນຸຍາດໃນບໍຣິສັດ British East India Company ຂາຍຊາໂດຍກົງໃຫ້ແກ່ອານານິຄົມທັງຫຼາຍ. ເນື່ອງຈາກບໍ່ໄດ້ເສັຽພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາອອກດັ່ງນັ້ນ ບໍຣິສັດດັ່ງກ່າວຈຶ່ງສາມາດຂາຍຊາໃນຣາຄາຖືກກວ່າຊາທີ່ຖືກນຳລັກລອບເອົາເຂົ້າໄປອານານິຄົມ. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍຕາມ ພົລະເມືອງໃນອານານິຄົມກໍຍັງບໍ່ພໍໃຈກັບດຳຣັດດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ຢູ່. ໃນເມືອງ Boston ມີຄົນບາງຈຳພວກໄດ້ພາກັນປອມຕົວເປັນອິນເດັຽແດງ ແລະພາກັນ

ຍຶດເອົາຊາໃນກຳປັ່ນບັນທຸກຂອງອັງກິດ ແລ້ວໂຍນຖິ້ມລົງນ້ຳ ເພື່ອເປັນການປະທ້ວງ. ເຫດການດັ່ງກ່າວເອີ້ນວ່າ "ງານດື່ມຊາໃນ Boston ". ລັດຖະບານອັງກິດເກີດມີຄວາມຄຽດແຄ້ນຫຼາຍທີ່ສຸດ ດັ່ງນັ້ນເຈົ້າຊີວິດ King George ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ອອກຄຳສັ່ງໃຫ້ປິດທ່າເຮືອໃນເມືອງ Boston ແລະຖອນສິດຫຼາຍຢ່າງຈາກອານານິຄົມ.

໕.໔.໓. ບັນດາຜູ້ນຳໃນອານານິຄົມໄດ້ຮັບການກະທົບກະເທືອນຈິດໃຈເປັນທີ່ສຸດ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າ ໄດ້ເປີດປະຊຸມຂຶ້ນໃນເມືອງ Philadelphia ແລະໄດ້ຕັ້ງສະພາຂຶ້ນເປັນຄັ້ງທຳອິດເອີ້ນວ່າ First continental Congress . ສະພາໄດ້ສົ່ງສານຫາເຈົ້າຊີວິດເພື່ອປະທ້ວງການລົງໂທດອັນຮ້າຍແຮງຂອງພະອົງ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ອານານິຄົມກໍຍັງໄດ້ຕັ້ງກຸ່ມນັກຮົບຂຶ້ນນຳອີກ. ພວກນັກຮົບເຫຼົ່ານີ້ເອີ້ນວ່າ " minutemen " ຍ້ອນວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າຕຽມຕົວສູ້ຮົບໄດ້ທຸກນາທີ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າມີປືນແລະລູກກະສຸນປະຈຳເຮືອນ ແລະ ເຊື່ອງໄວ້ໃນແຫ່ງອື່ນອີກທີ່ອ້ອມແອ້ມເມືອງ Boston .

໕.໓. ສົງຄາມປະຕິວັດ

໕.໓.໑. ໃນເດືອນ ເມສາ ໑໗໗໕ ບັນດາຜູ້ນຳຂອງກອງທັບອັງກິດໃນເມືອງ Boston ເຊັ່ນນາຍພົນ Gage ຮູ້ຂ່າວວ່າທະຫານອານານິຄົມໄດ້ເຊື່ອງປືນແລະລູກກະສຸນໄວ້ໃນແຖວເມືອງ Concord, Massachusetts . ນາຍພົນ Gage ໄດ້ສົ່ງທະຫານຂອງຕົນອອກຄົ້ນຫາປືນແລະກະສຸນດັ່ງກ່າວ. ນາຍ Paul Revere ຜູ້ຮັກຊາດໄດ້ເດີນທາງຈາກ Boston ເພື່ອເຕືອນຊາວເມືອງໃນອານານິຄົມຊາບວ່າ ພວກອັງກິດກຳລັງເດີນທາງອອກມາ. ພວກທະຫານອານານິຄົມໄດ້ມາກັນຕຽມພ້ອມເພື່ອທຳການສູ້ຮົບ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ພົບພວກອັງກິດຢູ່ໃນສວນແຫ່ງນຶ່ງໃນເມືອງ Lexington ໃນຕອນເຊົ້າຂອງວັນທີ ໑໙ ເມສາ ໑໗໗໕. ໃນເວລານັ້ນ ມີໃຜຜູ້ນຶ່ງຊຶ່ງບໍ່ມີໃຜຮູ້ໄດ້ວ່າແມ່ນໃຜ ໄດ້ຍິງປືນຂຶ້ນ ຊຶ່ງພາໃຫ້ການສູ້ຮົບເລີ່ມຂຶ້ນລະຫວ່າງພວກອານານິຄົມແລະພວກອັງກິດ. ພວກອານານິຄົມເສຍຊີວິດໄປແປດຄົນ. ນີ້ຄືການເລີ່ມຕົ້ນຂອງການປະຕິວັດໃນອະເມຣິກາ.

໕.໓.໒. ສົງຄາມປະຕິວັດ ບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນຂອງງ່າຍສຳຫຼັບຊາວອະເມຣິກັນ ເພາະວ່າ ປະເທດອັງກິດເປັນປະເທດໜຶ່ງ ພ້ອມທັງມີກອງທັບບົກແລະກອງທັບເຮືອອັນເຂັ້ມແຂງອີກດ້ວຍ. ກອງທັບອະເມຣິກັນນັ້ນບໍ່ເຂັ້ມແຂງ ແລະບໍ່ມີທຶນຮອນພຽງພໍ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ທຳການສູ້ຮົບໃນດິນແດນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ ແລະ ເພື່ອເອກະລາດ

///

ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ. ອິສຣະພາບເປັນສິ່ງສຳຄັນສຳຫຼັບເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນ ໄດ້ສູ້ຮົບຈົນສຸດຄວາມສາມາດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ໃນຕອນທຳອິດ ພວກອັງກິດໄດ້ໄຊຊະນະໃນບັ້ນຮົບຫຼາຍແຫ່ງ ແຕ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ສາມາດທີ່ຈະຊະນະສົງຄາມ. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນ ສາມາດໄດ້ໄຊຊະນະບັ້ນຮົບສາກສຸດທ້າຍຂອງສົງຄາມ ຍ້ອນການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຈາກປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ. ໃນເດືອນ ຕຸລາ ໑໗໘໑ ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດຊ່ວຍຊາວອະເມຣິກັນທຳລາຍພວກອັງກິດໃນ Yorktown, Virginia . ໃນວັນທີ ໑໙ ຕຸລາ ໑໗໘໑ ນາຍພົນ Cornwallis ໄດ້ມອບກອງທັບຂອງທ່ານໃຫ້ແກ່ນາຍພົນ Washington . ໃນທີ່ສຸດຊາວອະເມຣິກັນ ກໍໄດ້ຮັບເອກຣາດຈາກປະເທດອັງກິດ. ປະເທດອັງກິດແລະສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ໄດ້ເຊັນສົນທິສັນຍາສັນຕິພາບໃນກຸງ Paris ໃນວັນທີ່ ໒໐ ມົກກະຣາ ໑໗໘໓. ສົນທິສັນຍາດັ່ງກ່າວ ໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ສົງຄາມຢຸດຕິລົງ ແລະ ໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ປະຊາຊົນພົນລະເມືອງໃນອານານິຄົມໄດ້ຮັບເອກຣາດ.

EXERCISES

I. WORD SEARCH PUZZLE:

Direction: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໃນຕາລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ພ້ອມຄວາມໝາຍແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍ.

CEDE
TEA
ARMY
LOUIS
PITTS
OHIO
SHIP
SPAIN
TEASE
MONEY

CONSTANT
DEFEAT
AFFAIRS
BRADDOCK
DECLINE
REPEAL
ENGLAND
SPIRIT
TREATY
FRANCE

COMMANDER
PATRIOT
AMBASSADOR
DECLARATION
INDEPENDENT
JEFFERSON
AMMUNITION
VALLEY
INDIANS
TREATY

GEORGE WASHINGTON
RUNAWAY SLAVE
BOSTON MASSACRE
REORGANIZE
NAVIGATION ACT
CONTINENTAL CONGRESS
NEW ORLEANS
EAST INDIES
REVOLUTIONARY WAR

O	C	E	D	E	C	L	I	N	E	J	E	F	F	E	R	S	O	N	T	A
N	N	O	R	U	N	A	W	A	Y	S	L	A	V	E	T	E	A	C	R	M
I	D	A	N	A	M	M	U	N	I	T	I	O	N	P	I	T	T	S	E	M
A	A	Y	L	S	C	O	M	M	A	N	D	E	R	T	E	A	S	E	A	U
P	T	B	N	E	T	R	E	P	E	A	L	E	N	G	L	A	N	D	T	N
S	R	I	A	F	F	A	M	B	A	S	S	A	D	O	R	N	L	E	Y	I
E	I	A	R	M	Y	C	N	A	V	I	G	A	T	I	O	N	A	C	T	T
A	O	F	R	A	N	C	E	T	T	N	E	D	N	E	P	E	D	N	I	I
S	T	D	E	C	L	A	R	A	T	I	O	N	I	N	D	I	A	N	S	O
T	G	E	O	R	G	E	W	A	S	H	I	N	G	T	O	N	A	Y	E	N
I	L	O	U	I	S	T	B	R	A	D	D	O	C	K	P	E	A	C	E	T
N	S	B	H	O	A	R	E	O	R	G	A	N	I	Z	E	O	H	I	O	I
D	H	I	N	E	W	O	R	L	E	A	N	S	V	A	L	L	E	Y	D	R
I	I	C	F	N	A	V	I	G	A	T	I	O	N	A	C	T	B	A	E	I
E	P	E	B	O	S	T	O	N	M	A	S	S	A	C	R	E	K	M	D	P
S	D	C	O	N	T	I	N	E	N	T	A	L	C	O	N	G	R	E	S	S
R	E	V	O	L	U	T	I	O	N	A	R	Y	W	A	R	M	O	N	E	Y

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. **ບົດທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ** : (ເບິ່ງພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. **ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັນ**: ຈົ່ງຈັດຄຳເວົ້າໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍໃນໝວດ (ຂ). ຈົ່ງໝາຍຕົວເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ປະໄວ້ນັ້ນ ແທນຄຳຕອບທຸກຄຳ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ກ. ປະທ້ວງ	໑. ຜູ້ແທນຣັຖບານຢູ່ໃນຕ່າງປະເທດ
_____ ຂ. ການເດີນເຮືອ	໒. ການບໍ່ຍອມຊື້ສິນຄ້າບາງຢ່າງ
_____ ຄ. ວັດຖຸດິບ	໓. ເອກສານຊຶ່ງປະກາດໃຫ້ອານານິຄົມທັງ ໑໓ ແຫ່ງ ມີອິສຣະພາບແລະເປັນເອກຣາດ
_____ ງ. ເອກອັກຄະຣາຊທູດ	໔. ການສັນຈອນຫຼືເດີນທາງເຮືອ
_____ ຈ. ຄຳປະກາດ	໕. ຜູ້ທີ່ຮັກ, ຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອ ແລະ ປ້ອງກັນປະເທດຂອງຕົນ
_____ ຊ. ຜູ້ຮັກຊາດ	໖. ຜູ້ທີ່ລອບຫຼີກໜີໄປ
_____ ຍ. ຜູ້ທີ່ໂຕນໜີ	໗. ຊັພຍາກອນທັມມະຊາດທີ່ຍັງບໍ່ໄດ້ຜ່ານໂຮງງານ

໓. **ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ**:
ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກ. ຖ້າເຫັນວ່າຖືກໃຫ້ໝາຍຕົວອັກສອນ T ໃສ່ ຖ້າຜິດໃຫ້ໝາຍ F ໃສ່.

_____ ໑. ຕັ້ງແຕ່ປີ ໑໖໘໙ ຫາ ໑໗໖໓ ປະເທດອັງກິດແລະປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດໄດ້ທຳການຕໍ່ສູ້ກັນ ເພື່ອເປັນຜູ້ນຳຂອງໂລກ.

_____ ໒. ທັງປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດແລະປະເທດອັງກິດ ໄດ້ອ້າງກັນວ່າ ດິນແດນໃນຮ່ອມພູ Ohio ນັ້ນເປັນຂອງຕົນ.

_____ ໓. ນາຍພົນ Braddock ແລະທ່ານ George Washington ພ້ອມດ້ວຍກອງທັບຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຖືກພວກຝຣັ່ງເສດແລະອິນເດັຽແດງທຳລາຍຢ່າງໜັກ.

_____ ໔. ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດຕ້ອງໄດ້ມອບ Canada ແລະ ດິນແດນທາງພາກຕາເວັນອອກຂອງແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi ໃຫ້ແກ່ປະເທດອັງກິດ (ນອກຈາກ New Orleans).

_____ ໕. ຍ້ອນການທຳສົງຄາມກັບພວກຝຣັ່ງເສດເປັນເວລາຫຼາຍປີ ປະຊາຊົນໃນອານານິຄົມຈຶ່ງໄດ້ມີປະສົບປະການດ້ານທະຫານ.

_____ ໖. ພວກປະຊາຊົນ ໃນອານານິຄົມຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ຣັຖບານອັງກິດ ເບິ່ງແຍງດູແລກິຈການຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

_____ ໗. ໃນປີ ໑໗໖໔ ຣັຖບານອັງກິດໄດ້ເພີ່ມການເກັບພາສີສິນຄ້າທີ່ຂາຍໃນອານານິຄົມຕ່າງໆ.

_____ ໘. ໃນປີ ໑໗໗໐ ພວກທະຫານອັງກິດໄດ້ຍິງປືນໃສ່ຝູງຊົນໃນກາງເມືອງ Boston ເພາະວ່າພວກດັ່ງກ່າວເຍາະເຍີ້ຍເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ພວກປະຊາຊົນໄດ້ເສັຍຊີວິດຫ້າຄົນ.

_____ ໙. ເນື່ອງຈາກບໍຣິສັດບໍ່ຕ້ອງໄດ້ເສັຍພາສີໃນການນຳເອົາຊາອອກໄປຂາຍໃນຕ່າງປະເທດ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ບໍຣິສັດດັ່ງກ່າວຈຶ່ງສາມາດຂາຍຊາຂອງຕົນໃນຣາຄາຖືກກວ່າຊາທີ່ຖືກລັກລອບເອົາໄປຂາຍໃນອານານິຄົມ.

_____ ໑໐. ໃນເມືອງ Boston ຊາວອິນເດັຽແດງຫຼາຍຄົນໄດ້ຍຶດເອົາຊາໃນກຳປັ່ນຂອງອັງກິດ ແລະໄດ້ໂຍນຊານັ້ນຖິ້ມລົງນ້ຳເພື່ອເປັນການປະທ້ວງ.

115

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ:
ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າ ຫລື ໝວດຄຳເວົ້າ ຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນ ແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກ ໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ:
ບັນດາຜູ້ແທນ, ສົນທິສັນຍາ, ເລີກລົ້ມ, ປັບປຸງ, ງານດື່ມນ້ຳຊາໃນ Boston, ອິດທິພົນ, ດຳລັດການເດີນເຮືອ, ການຈັບຈ່າຍ, ສະພາຄັ້ງທຳອິດ, ການສັງຫານໝູ່.

໑. ທ່ານ William Pitts ໄດ້ຖືກສົ່ງໄປຍັງອະນານິຄົມ ເພື່ອທຳການ ________ ກອງທັບໃໝ່ ແລະ ເພື່ອ ຕຽມທຳສົງຄາມກັບຝຣັ່ງເສດ.

໒. ໃນປີ 1763 ຝຣັ່ງເສດໄດ້ເສັຍໄຊ ແລະ ຕ້ອງໄດ້ເຊັນ ________ ກັບອັງກິດ.

໓. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມດັ່ງກ່າວ ຝຣັ່ງເສດໄດ້ສູນເສັຍ ________ ທັ້ງໝົດໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອ.

໔. ອັງກິດໄດ້ຕັດສິນໃຫ້ອະນານິຄົມຕ່າງໆ ຕ້ອງແບ່ງປັນເອົາ ສ່ວນນຶ່ງຂອງ ________ ດັ່ງກ່າວ.

໕. ________ ຖືໄວ້ວ່າ ກຳປັ່ນທີ່ມີສິດຂົນ ສິນຄ້າໄດ້ນັ້ນ ມີພຽງກຳປັ່ນຂອງອັງກິດ ແລະ ຂອງອະນາ ນິຄົມເທົ່ານັ້ນ.

໖. ພົນລະເມືອງໃນອະນານິຄົມ ບໍ່ເຫັນດີກັບກົດໝາຍເກັບພາສີ ຍ້ອນວ່າໃນສະພາອັງກິດນັ້ນ ບໍ່ມີ ____________________ ຂອງອະນານິຄົມ.

໗. ໃນປີ 1770 ທະຫານອັງກິດໄດ້ຍິງປືນໃສ່ຝູງຄົນຕາມຫົນທາງໃນເມືອງ Boston. ການຄາຕະກັມດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ____________________.

໘. ຫຼັງຈາກການສັງຫານໝູ່ໃນ Boston ແລ້ວ ສະພາອັງກິດກໍໄດ້ລົງມື ____________________ ດໍາຣັດຂອງທ່ານ Townsend. ທັງໝົດ ນອກຈາກດໍາຣັດ Tea Act

໙. ຫຼາຍຄົນໄດ້ປອມຕົວເປັນຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງ ເພື່ອທໍາການຢຶດເອົາຊາໃນກໍາປັ່ນໄປຖິ້ມລົງນໍ້າ. ເຫດການດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ____________________.

໑໐. ບັນດາຄະນະຜູ້ນໍາໃນອະນານິຄົມໄດ້ຮັບການກະທົບກະເທືອນທາງຈິດໃຈເປັນທີ່ສຸດ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເປີດກອງປະຊຸມຂຶ້ນໃນເມືອງ Philadelphia ແລະໄດ້ພາກັນຕັ້ງ ____________________ ຂຶ້ນ.

Section II
Establishing A New Nation

ພາກ ໖ : ການລຸກຮື້ນຂອງຊາດ

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ

The Articles of Confederation: ມາດຕາ ຫຼື ຂໍ້ບັງຄັບໃນການປົກຄອງ ຂອງສະຫະພັນສິບສາມຣັຖ.

The Articles of Confederation formed the foundation of the nation's political system.

document: ເອກສານ

This document provided a government in each state and a national government for the whole country.

execute: ປະຕິບັດ

The president execute the laws.

general convention: ກອງປະຊຸມຫຼວງ

The general convention wanted to revised the Articles of Confederation.

compromise: ການຜ່ອນສັ້ນຜ່ອນຍາວ

The delegates made many compromises concerning the Constitution.

balance: ຄວາມກ້ຳເກິ່ງ

The delegates wanted to have a balance of power between the central government and the state governments.

centralism: ລັດທິໃນການຈັດໃຫ້ມີຣັຖບານກາງ

Many persons in the convention favored centralism.

federalism: ລັດທິຮວມກັນເປັນສະຫະພັນ

Federalism is the idea of dividing up the power of government between local and central levels.

119

separation powers: ການແບ່ງອຳນາດ

The separation of powers keeps all branches of the government equal.

executive: ພະແນກປົກຄອງ

legislative: ພະແນກແຕ່ງກົດໝາຍ

judicial: ພະແນກຍຸດຕິທັມ

The three main branches in the U.S. government are the legislative, executive, and judicial branches.

interpret: ແປຄວາມໝາຍ

The Judicial branch judges and interprets the laws.

bitter: ຂົມຂື່ນ

There were bitter disagreements at the general convention.

political system: ຣະບົບການເມືອງ

They got the idea from the British political system.

ratify: ຮັບຮອງເອົາ

The Federalists worked hard to get the Constitution ratified.

Bill of Rights: ຂໍ້ຄວາມສະແດງເຖິງສິດທິແລະເສຣີພາບຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ

READING

6.1. PROBLEMS OF THE NEW NATION

6.1.1. After the Revolutionary War, the colonies received their independence from England. The leaders of all states realized that it was very important to unite all the thirteen states into one country. They wrote the **Articles of Confederation** that became the foundation of the nation's political system. This **document** provided a government in each state and a national government for the whole country. The national government had a Congress, and each state elected its own representatives to the Congress. The young nation had had many problems. The central government was very weak because there was not a president to execute the laws that were made by Congress. The central government could not collect taxes from states to pay the nation's debt. The most critical matter was that the central government did not have the power to settle arguments between the states.

6.1.2. In September 1786, delegates from five states met at Annapolis, Maryland, to discuss two problems that had occurred under the Articles of Confederation: the problem of commerce and the problem of traffic in the Chesapeake Bay. All the delegates argued that Congress needed to call a **general convention** to revise and strengthen the Articles of Confederation. On May 25, 1787, the Constitutional Convention began meeting in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, with 55 delegates from almost all the states. All of them were young and rich. They had many debates and made many **compromises**.

6.2. THE GREAT COMPROMISE

6.2.1. One of the most critical problems discussed in Philadelphia was the problem of **balancing** power between the central government and local governments while maintaining a balance between freedom and order. The most important decision was to create a government strong enough to govern and maintain order, yet not so strong as to threaten the liberty of the citizens. Instead of changing and modifying the **Articles of Confederation**, the delegates decided to write a new Constitution. The new Constitution would assure **centralism** and order. The delegates wanted the central government to have the power to tax so that it would no longer need to ask the states for money. They wanted the central government to have the power to regulate trade among the states to prevent quarrels among them. They wanted to give the central government the right to raise national armies and establish a court system. The delegates also agreed that the new Constitution must be superior to state laws.

6.2.2. Although the delegates all favored a strong central government, they also created three protections against a centralized government becoming too powerful. First, they created the idea of **federalism**, or dividing up the powers of government between local and central levels. Second, they set a clear limit on government power by spelling out in the Constitution certain things the central government could not do. Third, they provided for a **separation of powers** by creating three independent branches of government-- the

legislative, the **executive**, and the **judicial**. Congress, or the legislative branch, was to make the laws. The President, or head of the executive branch, was to carry out and enforce the laws. The federal courts, or judicial branch, were to judge and **interpret** the laws. The Constitution also provided ways in which each branch might check and balance the others.

6.2.3. Although the delegates agreed on the role of the central government, there were **bitter** disagreements on other issues. Delegates threatened many times to walk out of the convention, and it appeared as if the whole effort might fail. But, in the end, compromises saved the convention.

One major disagreement related to the isssue of representation in Congress. Two ideas were discussed. Virginia wanted to base representation in Congress on population. This means a state with twice as many people as another would have twice as many seats. The small states were against the Virginia Plan. They wanted all states to have the same voice in Congress. This issue almost destroyed the convention. Finally, Roger Sherman of Connecticut, proposed a plan that would please both large and small states. It was known as the Great Compromise. Under this plan, there would be two houses of Congress. In the upper house, or Senate, each state would have equal representation. In the lower house, or House of Representatives, representation would be based upon population. Such a lawmaking body made up of two houses is known as a bicameral legislature.

6.3. UNDERSTANDING THE CONSTITUTION

6.3.1. The delegates to the Constitutional Convention did an outstanding job. The Constitution set up a government which has served the United States well. The Constitution has been a model for constitutions in many other nations. Its framers did not write a whole new plan of government. They borrowed ideas from many places, from the British **political system**, from the colonial system, and from the experiences of the states.

6.3.2. The Constitution was written and sent to the Congress. Then it was sent to the states to **ratify**, or approve, it. In the meantime, the people started to talk about the good points and bad points of the Constitution. Those who favored the Constitution were called Federalists. The Anti-Federalists were against it. Most Americans were Anti-Federalists because they were afraid that the new government would have too much power. But the Federalists were well organized and worked hard to get the Constitution ratified. By January of 1788, five states had ratified it. By June, four more states had accepted the Constitution. Now it could go into effect. But two large states, New York and Virginia had not yet decided. Alexander Hamilton led the fight for the ratification in New York. He worked hard with John Jay and James Madison in writing newspaper articles explaining the meaning of the Constitution. The articles won votes in New York and in July of 1788, New York ratified the Constitution. In Virginia, Patrick Henry opposed the Constitution because it had no bill of rights. But George Washington strongly supported the Federalists, and Virginia voted to ratify the Constitution on the same day that New York did. The last two states, Rhode Island and North Carolina, did not ratify it until after the new government had started to operate. The only question remaining had to do with the lack of a bill of rights. Some states asked that a bill of rights be added to the Constitution, and the First Congress took care of this matter.

EXERCISE

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ARTICLES
BALANCE
DOCUMENT
FEDERALISM
EXECUTIVE
FEDERALIST
ARGUMENT
DELEGATE
REPRESENTATION

ROGER
IDEAL
ACCEPT
NATION
MODEL
BITTER
RATIFY
WEAK

COMPROMISE
CONFEDERATION
CENTRALISM
GENERAL CONVENTION
NATIONAL GOVERNMENT
CONSTITUTIONAL
BILL OF RIGHTS
POLITICAL SYSTEM

JUDICIAL
INTERPRET
LEGISLATIVE
COMMERCE
STATES
FRAMER
VIRGINIA
EXPERIENCE

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບຫລັກທີ່ກ່ຽວກັບບົດຮຽນທີ່ມີຢູ່ໃນຕາຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບ ຕົວກາງ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ພ້ອມຄວາມໝາຍແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍ.

A	G	E	N	E	R	A	L	C	O	N	V	E	N	T	I	O	N	C	V
E	R	C	O	M	P	R	O	M	I	S	E	B	I	T	T	E	R	O	I
X	W	T	B	A	L	A	N	C	E	J	U	D	I	C	I	A	L	N	R
E	E	L	I	C	E	N	T	R	A	L	I	S	M	B	U	A	A	S	G
C	A	C	E	C	O	N	F	E	D	E	R	A	T	I	O	N	R	T	I
U	K	D	C	B	L	F	E	D	E	R	A	L	I	S	M	Y	G	I	N
T	D	O	C	U	M	E	N	T	R	A	T	I	F	Y	L	B	U	T	I
I	N	A	T	I	O	N	S	I	N	T	E	R	P	R	E	T	M	U	A
V	P	O	L	I	T	I	C	A	L	S	Y	S	T	E	M	N	E	T	A
E	L	E	G	I	S	L	A	T	I	V	E	S	E	A	T	S	T	O	C
B	I	L	L	O	F	R	I	G	H	T	S	T	A	T	E	S	N	I	C
N	A	T	I	O	N	A	L	G	O	V	E	R	N	M	E	N	T	N	E
C	O	M	M	E	R	C	E	C	H	E	A	S	A	P	E	A	K	A	P
D	E	L	E	G	A	T	E	R	O	G	E	R	M	O	D	E	L	L	T
R	E	P	R	E	S	E	N	T	A	T	I	O	N	I	D	E	A	L	L
F	R	A	M	E	R	E	X	P	E	R	I	E	N	C	E	O	M	N	B
F	E	D	E	R	A	L	I	S	T	R	A	T	I	F	Y	B	O	A	Y

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A	B
____ a. Bicameral legislative	1. To approve or accept.
____ b. The Articles of Confederation	2. The First Ten Amendments to the Constitution which guarantee

the rights of individuals.

____ c. delegate

____ d. judicial department

____ e. centralism

____ f. executive department

____ g. federalism

____ h. compromise

____ i. ratify

____ j. Bill of Rights

3. A Congress that is composed of two legislative chambers.
4. The agreement of 1781 under which the thirteen original states formed a loose union.
5. The doctrine or system of federal government.
6. The branch of government that interprets and applies the laws through a system of courts.
7. The branch of government that carries out the laws.
8. a person authorized to act as representative for another.
9. The assignment of power and authority to a central leadership in an organization or in a political system.
10. A settlement of a dispute, reached by each party giving up part of its demands.

III. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put an F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. After the Revolutionary War, all states realized that it was very important to unite all the thirteen states into one country.

____ 2. The young nation did not have many problems.

____ 3. The central government could not collect taxes from states to pay the nation's debt.

____ 4. All representatives did not want to write a new Constitution.

____ 5. The three independent branches of government were the legislative, the executive, and the judicial.

____ 6. The Constitution did not provide ways in which each branch might check and balance the others.

____ 7. One major disagreement related to the issue of representation in Congress.

____ 8. The small states were not against the Virginia plan.

____ 9. In the upper house, or Senate, each state would have equal representation.

____10. Those who favored the Constitution were called Anti-Federalists.

IV. Fill in the blanks:

Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blank: interpret, ratification, bill of rights, regulate, the Articles of Confederation, Federalists, bicameral legislature, federalism, representation, execute.

1. Some states asked that a ____________ be added to the Constitution and the First Congress took care of this matter.

2. Alexander Hamilton led the fight for __________ in New

York.

3. Those who favored the Constitution were called the ___________ .

4. A Congress made up of two houses is known as a _________ .

5. Virginia wanted to base _______ in Congress on population.

6. The federal courts or the judicial branch were to judge and __________ the laws.

7. The first protection against too much centralism was the idea of ___________ ,or dividing up the power of government between the local and central levels.

8. They wanted the central government to have the power to __________ trade among the states to prevent quarrels among them.

9. Under _________ there was a government in each state and a national government for the whole country.

10. The central government under the Articles of Confederation was very weak because there was not a president to ________ the law.

ບົດອ່ານ

ພ.໑. ບັນຫາຂອງປະເທດຊາດໃໝ່

ພ.໑.໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມປະຕິວັດ ຜ່ານພົ້ນໄປ ບັນດາອານານິຄົມທັງຫຼາຍກໍໄດ້ຮັບເອກລາດຈາກປະເທດອັງກິດ. ບັນດາຜູ້ນຳຂອງຣັຖຕ່າງໆທັງໝົດສຳນຶກໄດ້ວ່າ ມັນເປັນສິ່ງສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດທີ່ຈະຕ້ອງທ້ອນໂຮມໝົດທັງສິບສາມຣັຖເຂົ້າເປັນປະເທດດຽວ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ພາກັນຂຽນທັມມະນູນຂອງສະຫະພັນອັນນີ້ ເອີ້ນວ່າ the Articles of Confederation ຊຶ່ງໄດ້ກາຍເປັນຮາກຖານຂອງລະບົບການເມືອງຂອງຊາດ. ເອກສານດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ໄດ້ຈັດໃຫ້ມີຣັຖບານປະຈຳໃນແຕ່ລະຣັຖ ແລະ ຣັຖບານສຳຫຼັບປະເທດທັງໝົດ. ຣັຖບານແຫ່ງຊາດນັ້ນມີສະພາ ແລະ ແຕ່ລະຣັຖໄດ້ເລືອກເອົາຜູ້ແທນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າສຳຫຼັບເຂົ້າຮ່ວມຢູ່ໃນສະພາ. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍດີ ປະເທດໃໝ່ນີ້ໄດ້ມີບັນຫາຫຼາຍຢ່າງ. ຣັຖບານກາງມີຄວາມອ່ອນແອທີ່ສຸດ ຍ້ອນບໍ່ມີປະທານາທິບໍດີ ສຳຫຼັບປະຕິບັດກົດໝາຍ ຊຶ່ງແມ່ນສະພາເປັນຜູ້ຣີດອອກມາ. ຣັຖບານກາງບໍ່ສາມາດເກັບພາສີຈາກຣັຖຕ່າງໆ ເພື່ອໃຊ້ໜີ້ຂອງປະເທດ. ບັນຫາທີ່ໜັກໜ່ວງທີ່ສຸດນັ້ນ ກໍຄືວ່າ ຣັຖບານກາງບໍ່ໄດ້ມີອຳນາດໃນການແກ້ໄຂການຜິດຖຽງກັນລະຫວ່າງຣັຖຕ່າງໆ.

ພ.໑.໒. ໃນເດືອນ ກັນຍາ ໑໗໘໖ ບັນດາຜູ້ແທນຈາກຫ້າຣັຖ ໄດ້ພົບປະກັນຢູ່ທີ່ເມືອງ Annapolis ຣັຖ Maryland ເພື່ອປຶກສາຫາລືກັນກ່ຽວກັບບັນຫາສອງຢ່າງທີ່ມີໃນມາດຕາຂອງທັມມະນູນສະຫະພັນ (the Articles of Confederation) ນັ້ນກໍຄື ບັນຫາກ່ຽວກັບການຄ້າແລະບັນຫາການສັນຈອນໄປມາໃນອ່າວ Cheasapeake Bay . ບັນດາຜູ້ແທນທັງໝົດໄດ້ພາກັນໃຫ້ເຫດຜົນວ່າ ສະພາມີຄວາມຈຳເປັນຮຽກປະຊຸມຫຼວງຂຶ້ນ ເພື່ອພິຈາລະນາແກ້ໄຂມາດຕາຂອງ the Articles of Confederation ໃໝ່ ພ້ອມທັງປັບປຸງໃຫ້ມາດຕາດັ່ງກ່າວມີຄວາມໜັກແໜ້ນຂຶ້ນ. ໃນວັນທີ ໒໕ ພຶສພາ ໑໗໘໗ ກອງປະຊຸມຮ່າງຣັຖທັມມະນູນ ໄດ້ເລີ່ມເປີດຂຶ້ນໃນເມືອງ Philadelphia ໃນຣັຖ Pennsylvania ໂດຍມີຄະນະຜູ້ແທນ ໕໕ ທ່ານທີ່ມາຈາກເກືອບທຸກຣັຖ. ພວກຜູ້ແທນທັງໝົດເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ເປັນພວກໜຸ່ມ ແລະ ຮັ່ງມີ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ມີການໂຕ້ວາທີກັນຫຼາຍຢ່າງ ແລະ ໄດ້ທຳການຜ່ອນສັ້ນຜ່ອນຍາວຫຼາຍຢ່າງດ້ວຍກັນ.

ພ.໔. ການຕ່ອນສັ້ນຕ່ອນຍາວທີ່ຍາວໄດ້

ພ.໔.໑. ບັນຫາທີ່ໜັກໜ່ວງທີ່ສຸດບັນຫາໜຶ່ງທີ່ໄດ້ສົນທະນາຫາລືກັນໃນເມືອງ Philadelphia ນັ້ນ ແມ່ນບັນຫາກ່ຽວກັບຄວາມກ້ຳເກິ່ງທາງອຳນາດລະຫວ່າງຣັຖບານກາງແລະຣັຖບານທ້ອງຖິ່ນ ໂດຍໃຫ້ມີຄວາມດຸ່ນດ່ຽງລະຫວ່າງອິສຣະພາບ ແລະ ຄວາມເປັນຣະບຽບຮຽບຮ້ອຍ. ການຕັດສິນໃຈທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດແມ່ນກ່ຽວກັບການຕັ້ງຣັຖບານທີ່ມີຄວາມເຂັ້ມແຂງພຽງພໍ ເພື່ອບັງຄັບແລະຮັກສາໃຫ້ມີຄວາມເປັນຣະບຽບຮຽບຮ້ອຍ ໂດຍບໍ່ໃຫ້ເຖິງຂັ້ນທີ່ຈະເປັນການຂົ່ມຂູ່ເສລີພາບຂອງພົນລະເມືອງທົ່ວໄປ. ແທນທີ່ຈະດັດແປງແກ້ໄຂມາດຕາຂອງ the Articles of Confederation ບັນດາຜູ້ແທນທັງຫຼາຍໄດ້ພາກັນຕັດສິນໃຈຮ່າງຣັຖທັມມະນູນອັນໃໝ່ຂຶ້ນ. ຣັຖທັມມະນູນໃໝ່ຈະປະກັນໃຫ້ມີຣັຖບານກາງແລະມີຄວາມເປັນຣະບຽບຮຽບຮ້ອຍພ້ອມກັນ. ຄະນະຜູ້ແທນຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ຣັຖບານກາງມີອຳນາດໃນການເກັບພາສີ ເພື່ອຣັຖບານກາງຈະບໍ່ຈຳເປັນຕ້ອງອີງເງິນຈາກຣັຖຕ່າງໆອີກຕໍ່ໄປ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ຣັຖບານກາງມີອຳນາດໃນການວາງຣະບຽບກ່ຽວກັບການຄ້າລະຫວ່າງຣັຖຕ່າງໆ ເພື່ອຫຼີກລ່ຽງບໍ່ໃຫ້ຣັຖຕ່າງໆເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນ ເກີດຜິດຖຽງກັນ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງການມອບສິດໃຫ້ຣັຖບານກາງສຳຫຼັບຕັ້ງກອງທັບແຫ່ງຊາດ ແລະ ຕັ້ງຣະບົບສານຍຸຕິທັມຂຶ້ນ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ບັນດາຜູ້ແທນຍັງໄດ້ເຫັນພ້ອມຮ່ວມກັນວ່າ ຣັຖທັມມະນູນໃໝ່ນັ້ນ ຈະຕ້ອງສູງກວ່າກົດໝາຍຂອງຣັຖ.

ພ.໔.໔. ເຖິງແມ່ນຄະນະຜູ້ແທນທັງຫຼາຍຈະເຫັນດີໃຫ້ມີຣັຖບານກາງທີ່ເຂັ້ມແຂງກໍຕາມ ແຕ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍຍັງໄດ້ຕ້ອງການປ້ອງກັນເພື່ອບໍ່ໃຫ້ຣັຖບານກາງມີອຳນາດຈົນເກີນໄປ ຢູ່ສາມຢ່າງຄື ໜຶ່ງ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ອອກຫົວຄິດກ່ຽວກັບລັດທິຮ່ວມກັນເປັນສະຫະພັນ ຫຼື ກ່ຽວກັບການແບ່ງປັນອຳນາດລະຫວ່າງຣັຖບານກາງ ແລະ ຣັຖບານທ້ອງຖິ່ນ. ສອງ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ວາງຂອບເຂດອຳນາດຂອງຣັຖບານຢ່າງແຈ່ມແຈ້ງ ໂດຍໄດ້ຂຽນໄວ້ໃນຣັຖທັມມະນູນ ເຖິງບາງສິ່ງບາງຢ່າງທີ່ຣັຖບານກາງບໍ່ມີສິດທີ່ຈະກະທຳໄດ້. ສາມ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ແບ່ງອຳນາດຕ່າງໆ ໂດຍຈັດໃຫ້ຣັຖບານມີສາມພະແນກທີ່ມີອຳນາດຂອງໃຜລາວ ຄື ພະແນກແຕ່ງກົດໝາຍ, ພະແນກປົກຄອງ ແລະ ພະແນກຍຸດຕິທັມ. ພະແນກດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ແກ່ ໜຶ່ງ ສະພາຊຶ່ງເປັນຜູ້ແຕ່ງກົດໝາຍ. ສອງ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ ຊຶ່ງເປັນຜູ້ປະຕິບັດແລະໃຊ້ກົດໝາຍ. ສາມ ສານຂອງຣັຖບານກາງ ຊຶ່ງເປັນຜູ້ຕັດສິນຄະດີ ແລະ ແປຕີບົດກົດໝາຍຕ່າງໆ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ຣັຖທັມມະນູນຍັງໄດ້ເປີດຊ່ອງທາງໃຫ້ແຕ່ລະພະແນກຕ່າງໆທີ່ກ່າວມານັ້ນ ມີສິດກວດຄ້ານຊຶ່ງກັນແລະກັນ ເພື່ອໃຫ້ມີຄວາມກ້ຳເກິ່ງກັນ.

໓.໒.໓. ເຖິງວ່າ ບັນດາຜູ້ແທນໄດ້ເຫັນດີຕໍ່ບົດບາດຂອງຣັຖບານກາງກໍຕາມ ແຕ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍຍັງມີຂໍ້ຂັດແຍ່ງກັນກ່ຽວກັບບັນຫາອື່ນໆຢູ່ຢ່າງຂົມຂື່ນ. ບາງຜູ້ແທນໄດ້ພາກັນຂົ່ມຂູ່ທີ່ຈະຍ່າງອອກຈາກກອງປະຊຸມຫຼາຍຄັ້ງ ແລະເປັນຕາຢ້ານກົວວ່າ ຄວາມພະຍາຍາມທັງໝົດນັ້ນຈະລົ້ມເຫຼວໄປ. ແຕ່ໃນທີ່ສຸດ ການຜ່ອນສັ້ນຜ່ອນຍາວໄດ້ຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ກອງປະຊຸມລອດພົ້ນໄປໄດ້. ການຂັດແຍ່ງທີ່ສຳຄັນຢ່າງໜຶ່ງ ແມ່ນ ກ່ຽວກັບບັນຫາການຕາງໜ້າໃນສະພາ. ກ່ຽວກັບບັນຫານີ້ ໄດ້ມີສອງຄວາມຄິດທີ່ຂັດກັນມາຫັກລ້າງກັນ ຄືວ່າ ຣັຖ Virginia ຕ້ອງການອີງການຕາງໜ້າໃນສະພາໃສ່ຈຳນວນປະຊາຊົນ ໝາຍຄວາມວ່າ ຣັຖທີ່ມີຈຳນວນພົນລະເມືອງຫຼາຍກວ່າຣັຖອື່ນສອງເທົ່າ ກໍຈະມີຕົວຫຼາຍກວ່າສອງເທົ່າ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ ບັນດາຣັຖນ້ອຍຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຄັດຄ້ານແຜນຂອງຣັຖ Virginia . ແລະເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ທຸກຣັຖມີສິດເທົ່າທຽມກັນຢູ່ໃນສະພາ. ບັນຫາເລື່ອງນີ້ ເກືອບພາໃຫ້ກອງປະຊຸມແຕກຍຸບໄປ. ໃນທີ່ສຸດທ່ານ Roger Sherman ຈາກຣັຖ Connecticut ຊຶ່ງເປັນຣັຖນ້ອຍ ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ສເນີແຜນອັນເປັນທີ່ພໍໃຈໃຫ້ແກ່ທັງຣັຖໃຫຍ່ແລະນ້ອຍ. ແຜນດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ເປັນທີ່ຮູ້ກັນວ່າ ເປັນການຜ່ອນສັ້ນຜ່ອນຍາວທີ່ຍິ່ງໃຫຍ່. ແຜນທີ່ວ່ານີ້ ໄດ້ສເນີໃຫ້ມີສອງສະພາ ຄື ສະພາສູງແລະສະພາຕ່ຳ. ໃນສະພາສູງ ແຕ່ລະຣັຖຈະມີຈຳນວນຜູ້ແທນເທົ່າທຽມກັນ. ສ່ວນໃນສະພາຕ່ຳນັ້ນ ຈຳນວນຂອງຜູ້ແທນຈະອີງຕາມຈຳນວນຂອງປະຊາຊົນ. ສະຖາບັນແຕ່ງກົດໝາຍ ຊຶ່ງປະກອບດ້ວຍສອງສະພາ ເຊັ່ນນີ້ເອີ້ນວ່າ bicameral legislature.

໓.໓. ການເຂົ້າໃຈຣັຖທັມມະນູນ

໓.໓.໑. ບັນດາຜູ້ແທນທີ່ເຂົ້າຮ່ວມໃນກອງປະຊຸມຮ່າງຣັຖທັມມະນູນ ໄດ້ປະຕິບັດວຽກງານອັນດີເລີດ. ຣັຖທັມມະນູນ ໄດ້ຕັ້ງຣັຖບານຊຶ່ງຮັບໃຊ້ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ເປັນຢ່າງດີ. ຣັຖທັມມະນູນດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ເປັນແບບຢ່າງໃຫ້ແກ່ຣັຖທັມມະນູນຂອງປະເທດອື່ນຫຼາຍປະເທດດ້ວຍກັນ. ຜູ້ທີ່ຮ່າງຣັຖທັມມະນູນທີ່ວ່ານີ້ໄດ້ວາງແຜນຈັດຕັ້ງຣັຖບານທັງໝົດ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຢືບຢືມເອົາຄວາມຄິດມາຈາກຫຼາຍແຫ່ງດ້ວຍກັນ ເຊັ່ນຈາກລະບົບການເມືອງຂອງປະເທດອັງກິດ ຈາກລະບົບການປົກຄອງອານານິຄົມ ແລະ ຈາກປະສົບປະການຈາກຣັຖຕ່າງໆ ດັ່ງນີ້ເປັນຕົ້ນ.

໓.໓.໒. ຫຼັງຈາກທີ່ຮ່າງຂຶ້ນມາຮຽບຮ້ອຍແລ້ວ ຣັຖທັມມະນູນກໍໄດ້ຖືກສົ່ງເຂົ້າສະພາ. ຫຼັງຈາກນັ້ນ ກໍຖືກສົ່ງໄປໃຫ້ແຕ່ລະຣັຖ ເພື່ອທຳການຮັບຮອງເອົາ. ໃນເວລານັ້ນ ປະຊາຊົນທົ່ວໄປໄດ້ເລີ່ມກ່າວເຖິງຈຸດດີ

ແລະຈຸດຮ້າຍຂອງຣັຖທັມມະນູນ. ພວກທີ່ສນັບສນູນຣັຖທັມມະນູນ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ພວກ Federalists ແລະພວກທີ່ຕໍ່ຕ້ານນັ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ Anti-Federalists . ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນສ່ວນຫຼາຍເປັນພວກຕໍ່ຕ້ານຣັຖທັມມະນູນ ເພາະເຂົາເຈົ້າຢ້ານວ່າ ຣັຖບານໃໝ່ນັ້ນ ຈະມີອຳນາດເກີນໄປ. ແຕ່ວ່າພວກທີ່ສນັບສນູນຣັຖທັມມະນູນ ໄດ້ມີການຈັດຕັ້ງອັນດີ ແລະພາກັນໃຊ້ຄວາມພະຍາຍາມຫຼາຍທີ່ສຸດ ເພື່ອເຮັດໃຫ້ຣັຖທັມມະນູນຖືກຮັບຮອງເອົາ. ໃນເດືອນ ມົກກະຣາ ໑໗໘໘ ໄດ້ມີຫ້າຣັຖທີ່ຮັບຮອງເອົາຣັຖທັມມະນູນນັ້ນ. ແລະໃນເດືອນມິຖຸນາ ກໍໄດ້ມີອີກສີ່ຣັຖ ແຕ່ໄດ້ມີສອງຣັຖໃຫຍ່ຄືຣັຖ New York ແລະຣັຖ Virginia ທີ່ຍັງບໍ່ໄດ້ເອົາການຕັດສິນໃຈເທື່ອ. ທ່ານ Alexander Hamilton ໄດ້ເປັນຫົວໜ້າພາການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອໃຫ້ມີການຮັບຮອງເອົາຣັຖທັມມະນູນໃນຣັຖ New York . ທ່ານໄດ້ທຳງານຢ່າງໜັກຮ່ວມກັບທ່ານ John Jay ແລະທ່ານ James Madison ໃນການຂຽນບົດຄວາມໃນໜັງສືພິມລາຍວັນ ເພື່ອອະທິບາຍຄວາມໝາຍຂອງຣັຖທັມມະນູນ. ບົດຄວາມດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຊະນະການລົງຄະແນນສຽງໃນຣັຖ New York ແລະໃນເດືອນ ກໍຣະກະດາ ປີ ໑໗໘໘ ຣັຖ New York ໄດ້ຮັບຮອງເອົາຣັຖທັມມະນູນ. ຢູ່ໃນຣັຖ Virginia ນາຍ Patrick Henry ໄດ້ຕໍ່ຕ້ານຣັຖທັມມະນູນເພາະວ່າຣັຖທັມມະນູນດັ່ງກ່າວບໍ່ມີຂໍ້ຄວາມສະແດງເຖິງສິດທິແລະເສຣີພາບຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ. ແຕ່ທ່ານ George Washington ໄດ້ສນັບສນູນຣັຖທັມມະນູນຢ່າງແຮງກ້າ ແລະໃນທີ່ສຸດຣັຖ Virginia ກໍໄດ້ຮັບຮອງເອົາຣັຖທັມມະນູນໃນວັນດຽວກັນກັບ New York . ສອງຣັຖສຸດທ້າຍຄືຣັຖ Rhode Island ແລະ North Carolina ໄດ້ຮັບຮອງເອົາຣັຖທັມມະນູນພາຍຫຼັງທີ່ຣັຖບານໃໝ່ໄດ້ເລີ່ມປະຕິບັດງານໄປແລ້ວ. ບັນຫາຂໍ້ຂ້ອງທີ່ຍັງຄ້າງຄາຢູ່ກໍຄືກ່ຽວກັບການຂາດຂໍ້ຄວາມສະແດງເຖິງສິດທິແລະເສຣີພາບຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ. ບາງຣັຖໄດ້ຮຽກຮ້ອງໃຫ້ມີການເພີ່ມຂໍ້ຄວາມກ່ຽວກັບສິດທິແລະເສຣີພາບຂອງພົນລະເມືອງເຂົ້າໃນຣັຖທັມມະນູນ ແລະ ການປະຊຸມຄັ້ງທຳອິດໄດ້ກຳກັບກ່ຽວກັບເຣື່ອງນີ້.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. **ຄຳທວຍຈອກສາສັບ** : (ເບິ່ງຕາມພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. **ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັນ**: ຈົ່ງຈັດຄຳເວົ້າໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍໃນໝວດ (ຂ). ຈົ່ງໝາຍຕົວເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ປະໄວ້ນັ້ນແທນຄຳຕອບທຸກຄຳ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ກ. Bicameral	໑. ການຮັບຮູ້ ຫຼື ຮັບເອົາ
_____ ຂ. ມາດຕາທັມມະນູນຂອງສະຫະພັນສິບສາມຣັຖ.	໒. ການແກ້ໄຂຣັຖທັມມະນູນສິບອັນທຳອິດ ເພື່ອຄ້ຳປະກັນສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ.
_____ ຄ. ຜູ້ແທນ	໓. ປະກອບດ້ວຍສະພາແຕ່ງກົດໝາຍສອງສະພາ
_____ ງ. ຜະແນກຍຸດຕິທັມ	໔. ການຕົກລົງຕັ້ງສິບສາມຣັຖທຳອິດເປັນປະເທດດຽວດາວ
_____ ຈ. ລັດທິທີ່ຈັດໃຫ້ມີຣັຖບານກາງ	໕. ລັດທິຈັດຕັ້ງຣັຖບານຂອງສະຫະຣັຖ
_____ ສ. ຜະແນກບໍລິຫານ	໖. ສາຂາຂອງຣັຖບານທີ່ຕີຄວາມໝາຍຂອງກົດໝາຍ ແລະໃຊ້ກົດໝາຍໂດຍຜ່ານສານຕັດສິນ
_____ ຊ. ການແບ່ງອຳນາດ	໗. ສາຂາຂອງຣັຖບານທີ່ປະຕິບັດກົດໝາຍ
_____ ຍ. ການຜ່ອນສັ້ນຜ່ອນຍາວ	໘. ຜູ້ທີ່ໄດ້ຮັບອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ເປັນຜູ້ຕາງໜ້າຜູ້ອື່ນ

______ ໗. ການຮັບຮອງເອົາ

໙. ການມອບສິດແລະອຳນາດແກ່ການນຳພາ
ສ່ວນກາງໃນການຈັດຕັ້ງຫຼືໃນຣະບົບການເມືອງ

______ ໘. ຂໍ້ຄວາມສະແດງສິດທິ ແລະ
ເສລີພາບຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ

໑໐. ການແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາໂດຍໄຊະຍານຮັບເອົາຂໍ້ຕົກ
ລົງຮ່ວມກັນ

ຄ. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ : ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ໝາຍ T ໃສ່ໜ້າເຫັນວ່າປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກ. ໃຫ້ໝາຍ F ໃສ່ໜ້າຖ້າຫາກຜິດ.

______ ໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມປະຕິວັດຜ່ານພົ້ນໄປຣັຖຕ່າງໆທັງໝົດໄດ້ສຳນຶກວ່າ ມັນເປັນການສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດ ທີ່ຈະຕ້ອງຫ້ອມໂຮມເອົາທັງສິບສາມຣັຖເຂົ້າເປັນປະເທດດຽວ.

______ ໒. ປະເທດໃໝ່ບໍ່ໄດ້ບັນຫາຫຼາຍ.

______ ໓. ຣັຖບານກາງ ບໍ່ມີສິດເກັບພາສີຈາກຣັຖຕ່າງໆເພື່ອຈ່າຍໜີ້ປະເທດ.

______ ໔. ບັນດາຜູ້ແທນທັງໝົດບໍ່ຕ້ອງການຮ່າງຣັຖທັມມະນູນໃໝ່ອີກ.

______ ໕. ສາຂາທັງສາມຂອງຣັຖບານໄດ້ແກ່ : ພະແນກແຕ່ງກົດໝາຍ, ພະແນກປົກຄອງ ແລະ ພະແນກພິຈາຣະນາ ແລະ ຕັດສິນກົດໝາຍ.

______ ໖. ຣັຖທັມມະນູນບໍ່ໄດ້ເປີດຊ່ອງທາງໃຫ້ສາຂາຕ່າງໆຂອງຣັຖບານກວດການປະຕິບັດຂອງກັນແລະກັນ.

______ ໗. ການຂັດແຍ່ງທີ່ສຳຄັນຢ່າງນຶ່ງແມ່ນກ່ຽວກັບບັນຫາການຕາງໜ້າໃນສະພາ.

_____ ໘. ລັຖນ້ອຍຕ່າງໆບໍ່ໄດ້ຄັດຄ້ານແຜນຂອງລັຖ Virginia.

_____ ໙. ໃນສະພາສູງ ແຕ່ລະລັຖຈະມີຈຳນວນຜູ້ແທນເທົ່າທຽມກັນ.

_____ ໑໐. ພວກທີ່ສນັບສນູນລັຖທັມມະນູນນີ້ ເອີ້ນວ່າ Anti-Federalists.

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ :

ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ພິມອດຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຫຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍອັນຖືກຕ້ອງ. ຕີຄວາມໝາຍ, ຮັບຮອງເອົາ, ຂໍ້ຄວາມສະແດງເຖິງສິດທິແລະເສລີພາບຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ,
ວາງຣະບຽບ, ມາດຕາຂອງທັມມະນູນສະຫະພັນສິບສາມລັຖ,
ລັຖທີ່ຮ່ວມກັນເປັນສະຫະພັນ, ການຕາງໜ້າ, ປະຕິບັດ.

໑. ບາງລັຖໄດ້ຂໍຮ້ອງໃຫ້ເພີ່ມ ______________________ ເຂົ້າ
ໃນລັຖທັມມະນູນ ຈຶ່ງແມ່ນກອງປະຊຸມສະພາຄັ້ງທຳອິດເປັນຜູ້ທຳກັບກ່ອນກັບເລື່ອງນີ້.

໒. ທ່ານ Alexander Hamilton ໄດ້ນຳພາການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອ ______________
______________ ໃນລັຖ New York.

໓. ພວກທີ່ສນັບສນູນລັຖທັມມະນູນ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ______________________ .

໔. ສະພາທີ່ປະກອບດ້ວຍສະຖາບັນແຕ່ງກົດໝາຍສອງແຫ່ງນັ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ ______________
______________ .

໕. ລັຖ Virginia ຕ້ອງການອີງການ ______________________
ໃນສະພາໃສ່ຈຳນວນປະຊາຊົນ.

໖. ສາຂາພິຈາລະນາກົດໝາຍມີໜ້າທີ່ຕັດສິນຄະດີ ແລະ ______________________________ ຂອງກົດໝາຍ.

໗. ການປ້ອງກັນບໍ່ໃຫ້ລັດຖະບານກາງມີອໍານາດເກີນໄປດັ້ງທໍາອິດ ແມ່ນຄວາມຄິດທີ່ຫົວ ____________ ________________ ຫຼື ການແບ່ງອໍານາດລະຫວ່າງລັດຖະບານກາງແລະລັດຖະບານທ້ອງຖິ່ນ.

໘. ເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ມີອໍານາດ ______________________________ ການຄ້າລະຫວ່າງລັດຕ່າງໆ ເພື່ອຫຼີກລ່ຽງການຜິດຖຽງກັນ.

໙. ໃນ ____________________________ ນັ້ນ ແຕ່ລະລັດມີລັດຖະບານຂອງຕົນ ພ້ອມທັງມີລັດຖະບານແຫ່ງຊາດສໍາຫຼັບປະເທດທັງໝົດ.

໑໐. ໃນມາດຕາຂອງ the Atrticles of Confederationນັ້ນ ລັດຖະບານກາງມີຄວາມອ່ອນແອທີ່ສຸດ ເພາະວ່າບໍ່ແມ່ນປະທານາທິບໍດີ ສໍາຫຼັບ ______________________________ ກົດໝາຍ.

ພາກ ກ : ປະເທດຊາດເປັນຮູບຂຶ້ນມາ

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ

constitution: ລັຖທັມມະນູນ

The U.S. Constitution is the supreme law of the land.

federal supremacy: ໝາຍເຖິງວ່າລັຖບໍ່ມີສິດແຕ່ງຕັ້ງກົດໝາຍທີ່ຂັດແຍ່ງກັບກົດໝາຍຂອງຊາດ

Federal supremacy means that a state can't make a law that conflicts with a national law.

state rights: ສິດທິຂອງລັຖ

State rights means that the national government many not act in a way that conflicts with the power of the states.

Congressman: ສະມາຊິກສະພາ

Senator: ສະມາຊິກສະພາສູງ

The members of Congress are called Congressmen, Congresswomen, and Senators.

ambassador: ເອກອັກຄະລາຊທູດ

The president chooses ambassadors with the approval of the Senate.

Supreme Court: ສານສູງສຸດ

The Supreme Court is the highest court in the country.

amendment: ການດັດແປງແກ້ໄຂລັຖທັມມະນູນ

The first ten amendments were called the Bill of Rights.

free speech: ເສລີພາບໃນການປາກເວົ້າ

free press: ເສລີພາບໃນການຂີດຂຽນ

free religion: ເສລີພາບໃນການຖືສາສນາ

free assembly: ເສລີພາບໃນການເຕົ້າໂຮມ

free from unreasonable searches: ສິດບໍ່ໃຫ້ກວດຄົ້ນໂດຍບໍ່ມີເຫດຜົນ

public trial: ຂຶ້ນສານຂອງຫຼວງ

The Bill of Rights gave the citizens many important rights such as the rights of free speech and free press, free religion, free assembly, free from unreasonable searches, and the right to have a public trial with a jury.

external problems: ບັນຫາພາຍນອກ

The new nation faced many external problems.

neutral policy: ນະໂຍບາຍເປັນກາງ

The United States wanted to pursue a neutral policy and stay out of international conflicts.

West Indies: ເກາະທີ່ຢູ່ໃນເຂດທະເລ Caribbean

France opened many ports in the West Indies.

impressment: ການເກນທະຫານໂດຍບັງຄັບ

Through a policy of impressment, the British seized American ships and forced their sailors into the British Navy.

frontiersman: ພວກທີ່ຢູ່ຕາມຊາຍແດນ

The treaty with Spain pleased the farmers and frontiersmen because it gaves them the right to use the Mississippi River to carry their farm products to New Orleans.

READING

7.1. THE NEW GOVERNMENT AND ITS THREE BRANCHES

7.1.1. The **Constitution** was nothing more than a plan for government. The actual government was considered formed only when the Constitution was put into practice in the 1790's. There are two very important ideas concerning the federal system described in the Constitution. One is called "**federal supremacy**". Federal supremacy means that a state cannot make a law that conflicts with a national law or the United States Constitution. The other important idea included in the federal system is called "**states' rights**". State rights mean that the national government may not act in a way that conflicts with the power of the states listed in the Constitution. These two important ideas require that the states and national government respect each other's power.

7.1.2. People who talk about the government of the United States frequently use the term federal government. In the federal system of government, there are two levels of government serving the same people.

7.1.3. The national government has the power to make laws for the whole country. After the laws are passed by the Congress, they are sent to the executive branch to be enforced. The Congress is also given the powers to make laws in order to collect taxes, control trade between the states and with other countries, declare war, and establish courts below the Supreme Court. The members in Congress are called **Congressmen**, Congresswomen, and **Senators**. Congressmen or Congresswomen are elected to the House of Representatives for a two-year term. Two senators are elected from each state for a six-year term. Today there are 436 representatives in the House of Representatives and 100 Senators in the Senate. The House of Representatives makes laws and the Senate approves the laws. The Senate also has the power to approve the treaties that the U.S. makes with other countries and approve the people whom the President chooses for special jobs, such as **ambassadors**, or high officials in the federal government.

7.1.4. The second branch in the federal government is the executive branch. This branch was created to enforce the laws. In the executive branch, power is in the hands of the President. He can veto or stop a law. The President serves a term of four years. The Vice-President and the cabinet help him run the government.

7.1.5. The third branch in the federal government is the judicial branch. The judicial branch includes the Supreme Court and many lower level courts. The main job of the court system is to explain the laws of the United States. The **Supreme Court** is the highest court in the federal system, and it can inform the Congress or the states, if they make laws in violation of the Constitution.

7.2. THE BILL OF RIGHTS

7.2.1. When the Constitution was ratified, many people in the states liked what the Constitution said, but many others thought the Constitution did not do enough to protect the people's rights. To make the citizens believe in the Constitution, the new Congress wrote ten **amendments** to the Constitution. The first ten amendments were called the "Bill of Rights". They gave people living in the United States very important rights, such as the right of **free speech** and **free press, free religion, free assembly, freedom from unreasonable searches**, and the right to have **public trial** with a jury.

7.2.2. It is important to remember that these rights are meant to help the people. A person many not use these rights if they go against the rights of other people. It is the job of the courts to decide if someone is using one of these rights to hurt other people 's rights.

7.3. THE NEW NATION FACED NEW EXTERNAL PROBLEMS

7.3.1. In the 1790's, the United States had European neighbors on the North American continent. The British Empire was in the North and Northwest areas. The Spanish Empire was in the South and the West. The new American government had its own policy that it was not to become involved in international problems. It was called the "**neutral policy**". This policy guided the United States in its external relations for almost 20 years.

7.3.2. After the Revolutionary War, there were bad feelings between Great Britain and the United States. They became worse in 1793 when France opened their ports in the **West Indies** to trade with neutral countries. American merchants quickly increased trading with the West Indies. Soon, they were doing a booming business. At that time, war was still going on between Britain and France; therefore, the British government ordered its navy to seize all ships carrying goods to or from France or French colonies. Hundreds of American ships and their cargoes were captured by the British. In many cases, American sailors were forced into the British navy. This practice was called **impressment**. The United States government tried to solve this problem by negotiation. John Jay was sent to England to settle the differences between the two countries. Jay signed a treaty with Britain. Under this treaty, Britain agreed to remove its troops from the Northwest region and Americans were allowed to trade with the British West Indies. In return, the United States was to pay the Revolutionary War debts not yet collected by Britain.

7.3.3. The Jay Treaty also led to a settlement of disagreements between Spain and the United States. Spain believed that the United States might cause trouble for the Spanish Empire in America, now that its conflict with England was over. So, late in 1795, Spain signed a treaty with the United States. This treaty settled the boundaries between the

U.S. and West Florida. It also gave Americans shipping rights on the Mississippi River and the right to use the port of New Orleans. The treaty pleased the farmers and the frontiersmen because they could use the Mississippi River to carry their farm products to the sea ports. Finally, after signing these treaties with Britain and Spain, the American people could live in peace and prepare for their future.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it down and define it.

CONGRESSMEN
CONGRESSWOMEN
SENATOR
TRADE
SUPREME COURT
FRONTIERSMAN
POWERS
VIOLATE
AMENDMENT
STATE RIGHTS
AMBASSADOR
FREE SPEECH
NEUTRAL POLICY
NAVY
BOOM
FREE PRESS
WEST INDIES
IMPRESSMENT
MISSISSIPPI RIVER
DECLARE WAR
MERCHANT
PUBLIC TRIAL
SUPREMACY
FREE ASSEMBLY

C	O	N	G	R	E	S	S	W	O	M	E	N	S	E	N	A	T	O	R
O	T	R	A	D	E	S	U	P	R	E	M	E	C	O	U	R	T	N	M
N	F	P	F	X	W	U	A	M	E	N	D	M	E	N	T	O	P	A	E
G	R	U	R	O	R	P	F	R	E	E	S	P	E	E	C	H	G	V	R
R	E	B	O	N	P	R	A	M	B	A	S	S	A	D	O	R	W	Y	C
E	E	L	N	F	R	E	E	A	S	S	E	M	B	L	Y	M	E	X	H
S	P	I	T	X	X	M	W	E	S	T	I	N	D	I	E	S	R	O	A
S	R	C	I	S	T	A	T	E	R	I	G	H	T	R	S	T	S	W	N
M	E	T	E	E	N	C	F	R	E	E	R	E	L	I	G	I	O	N	T
E	S	R	R	M	C	Y	I	M	P	R	E	S	S	M	E	N	T	O	O
N	S	I	M	N	E	U	T	R	A	L	P	O	L	I	C	Y	O	N	O
T	O	A	A	M	I	S	S	I	S	S	I	P	P	I	R	I	V	E	R
D	O	L	N	S	T	A	T	E	R	I	G	H	T	S	B	O	O	M	P
D	E	C	L	A	R	E	W	A	R	V	I	O	L	A	T	E	O	X	O

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A

____ a. boundary

____ b. frontiersman

B

1. a formal agreement between two or more states.

2. the highest federal court in the U.S. consisting of nine justices and having jurisdiction over all other courts in the nation.

____ c. jury

____ d. cabinet

____ e. impressment

____ f. neutrality

____ g. Constitution

____ h. Supreme Court

____ i. amendment

____ j. Treaty

3. a policy of favoring neither one side nor the other in a dispute, conflict, or war.
4. a body of persons sworn to judge and give a verdict on a given matter.
5. one who lived in the western edge of the settled territory.
6. the system of fundamental laws and principles that prescribes the nature, functions, and limits of a government.
7. a body of persons appointed by a chief of state or a prime minister to head the executive departments of the government.
8. something that indicates a border or limit.
9. a change, addition, or correction in a constitution.
10. a British practice exercised before the war of 1812, of taking men from American ships, forcing them to serve in the British Navy.

III. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put an F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. Federal supremacy means that a state cannot make a law that conflicts with a national law or the United States Constitution.

____ 2. The national government has the power to make laws for the whole country.

____ 3. The members in Congress are called Congressmen, Congresswomen, and Senators.

____ 4. The President of the United States serves a term of six years.

____ 5. The Supreme Court is the highest court in the state.

____ 6. After the Revolutionary War, there had been good feelings between Great Britain and the United States.

____ 7. The British government ordered its navy to seize all ships carrying goods to or from France.

____ 8. American sailors were forced into the French navy. This practice was called impressment.

____ 9. John Jay was sent to England to settle the differences between the two countries.

____10. In 1795, Spain signed a treaty with the U.S. This treaty settled the boundaries between the U.S. and West Florida.

IV. Fill in the blanks:

Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: trading, Bill of Rights, Supreme Court, international, supremacy, federal government, executive branch, captured, treaty, amendments.

1. Federal __________ means that a state cannot make laws that conflict with a national law.
2. People who talk about the government of the United States frequently use the term ______________ .
3. After the laws are passed by the Congress, they are sent to the __________ to be enforced.
4. The judicial branch in the federal government is the ____________ and many low level courts.
5. The new Congress wrote ten ____________ to the Constitution.
6. The first ten amendments were called the ___________ .
7. The new American government had their own policy that was not to get involved in ____________ problems.
8. American merchants quickly increased __________ with the West Indies.
9. Hundreds of American ships and a lot of cargoes were ___________ by the British.
10. The ___________ with Spain pleased the farmers and frontiersmen because they could use the Mississippi River to carry farm products to the sea ports.

ບົດອ່ານ

ກ.໑. ຣັຖບານໃໝ່ ແລະ ພະແນກທັງສາມຂອງຣັຖບານ.

ກ.໑.໑. ຣັຖທັມມະນູນບໍ່ແມ່ນຫຍັງອື່ນໄກໄປກ່ວາແຜນສຳຫຼັບຈັດຕັ້ງຣັຖບານ. ຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວ ຣັຖບານນັ້ນ ໄດ້ຖືກຖືວ່າເປັນຣັຖບານອັນສົມບູນ ກໍແຕ່ໃນຕອນທີ່ຣັຖທັມມະນູນໄດ້ຖືກນຳອອກມາໃຊ້ໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໗໘໐ ຫາ ໑໗໘໙ ເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ຄວາມຄິດທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດກ່ຽວກັບຣະບົບຂອງຣັຖບານກາງທີ່ໄດ້ຂຶ້ນໄວ້ໃນຣັຖທັມມະນູນນັ້ນ ມີຢູ່ສອງຢ່າງຄື ນຶ່ງ ສິ່ງທີ່ເອີ້ນວ່າ " federal supremacy". Federal supremacy ໝາຍເຖິງວ່າ ຣັຖບໍ່ມີສິດແຕ່ງກົດໝາຍທີ່ຂັດແຍ່ງກັບກົດໝາຍຂອງຊາດ ຫຼື ຂັດແຍ່ງກັບຣັຖທັມມະນູນຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ຄວາມຄິດທີ່ສຳຄັນອີກຢ່າງນຶ່ງນັ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ "state rights". State rights ໝາຍເຖິງວ່າ ຣັຖບານກາງບໍ່ມີສິດປະຕິບັດໃນສິ່ງທີ່ຈະເປັນການຂັດແຍ່ງກັບອຳນາດຂອງຣັຖຕ່າງໆທີ່ຂຶ້ນໄວ້ໃນຣັຖທັມມະນູນ. ຄວາມຄິດທີ່ສຳຄັນທັງສອງຢ່າງເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ບັງຄັບໃຫ້ຣັຖຕ່າງໆ ແລະ ຣັຖບານແຫ່ງຊາດນັບຖືອຳນາດຂອງກັນແລະກັນ.

ກ.໑.໒. ຜູ້ທີ່ກ່າວເຖິງຣັຖບານຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ມັກຈະໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ ຣັຖບານກາງ. ໃນຣະບົບຂອງຣັຖບານກາງນັ້ນ ມີຣັຖບານຢູ່ສອງຣະດັບ ຊຶ່ງຮັບໃຊ້ປະຊາຊົນອັນດຽວ.

ກ.໑.໓. ຣັຖບານແຫ່ງຊາດມີອຳນາດອອກກົດໝາຍສຳຫຼັບໃຊ້ທົ່ວທັງປະເທດ. ຫຼັງຈາກທີ່ກົດໝາຍໄດ້ຜ່ານຈາກສະພາແລ້ວ ກົດໝາຍນັ້ນກໍຈະຖືກສົ່ງໄປຫາພະແນກປົກຄອງ ເພື່ອທຳການປະຕິບັດຕໍ່ໄປ. ສະພາຍັງມີອຳນາດໃນການອອກກົດໝາຍສຳຫຼັບກັບພາສີ, ສຳຫຼັບຄວບຄຸມການຄ້າຣະຫວ່າງຣັຖຕ່າງໆ ແລະການຄ້າກັບປະເທດອື່ນໆ, ສຳຫຼັບປະກາດສົງຄາມ, ແລະ ສຳຫຼັບຈັດຕັ້ງສານທີ່ຢູ່ພາຍໃຕ້ສານສູງສຸດ. ບັນດາສະມາຊິກທີ່ປະຈຳຢູ່ໃນສະພານັ້ນ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ສະມາຊິກສະພາ ແລະ ສະມາຊິກສະພາສູງ. ສະມາຊິກສະພາຖືກເລືອກຕັ້ງເປັນຜູ້ແທນປະຈຳສະພາຕ່ຳ ໂດຍມີກຳນົດສອງປີ. ແຕ່ລະຣັຖເລືອກເອົາສະມາຊິກສະພາສູງສອງຄົນ ເພື່ອຮັບໃຊ້ໃນກຳນົດເວລາຫົກປີ. ໃນຍຸກນີ້ ຈຳນວນຂອງຜູ້ແທນໃນສະພາຕ່ຳ ມີຢູ່ ໔໓໕ ຄົນ ແລະ ໃນສະພາສູງນັ້ນ ມີຢູ່ ໑໐໐ ຄົນ. ຜູ້ແທນໃນສະພາຕ່ຳ ເປັນຜູ້ແຕ່ງກົດໝາຍ ແລະ ສະມາຊິກສະພາສູງເປັນຜູ້ຮັບຮອງເອົາກົດໝາຍນັ້ນ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ສະພາສູງຍັງມີອຳນາດຮັບຮອງເອົາສົນທິສັນຍາ

ທີ່ສະຫະຣັຖມີກັບປະເທດອື່ນ ພ້ອມທັງຮັບຮອງເອົາບຸກຄົນທີ່ປະທານາທິບໍດີເລືອກສຳຫຼັບຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງພິເສດບາງຢ່າງເຊັ່ນ ເອກອັກຄະຣາຊທູດ ຫຼື ເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ຊັ້ນສູງໃນຣັຖບານກາງ.

ກ.໑.໔. ພະແນກທີ່ສອງຂອງຣັຖບານກາງແມ່ນ ພະແນກປົກຄອງ ພະແນກນີ້ ຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນເພື່ອປະຕິບັດກົດໝາຍ. ໃນພະແນກປົກຄອງ ອຳນາດແມ່ນຢູ່ໃນກຳມືຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ ມີສິດຕ້ານກົດໝາຍໄດ້ ແລະ ມີອາຍຸການສີ່ປີ ໂດຍມີຮອງປະທານາທິບໍດີແລະຄະນະຣັຖບານເປັນຜູ້ຊ່ອຍໃນການບໍຣິຫານປະເທດ.

ກ.໑.໕. ພະແນກທີ່ສາມຂອງຣັຖບານ ໄດ້ແກ່ພະແນກຍຸດຕິທັມ ຊຶ່ງປະກອບດ້ວຍສານສູງສຸດ ແລະ ສານໃນຣະດັບຂອງລົງມາຫຼາຍສານ. ໜ້າທີ່ສຳຄັນຂອງສານທັງໝົດ ແມ່ນການແປແລະອະທິບາຍກ່ຽວກັບກົດໝາຍຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ສານສູງສຸດມີສິດເຕືອນສະພາຣັຖຕ່າງໆ ຖ້າຫາກເຂົາເຈົ້າອອກກົດໝາຍທີ່ເປັນການລະເມີດຕໍ່ຣັຖທັມມະນູນ.

ກ.໒. ຂໍ້ຄວາມສະແດງເຖິງສິດທິແລະເສຣີພາບຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ.

ກ.໒.໑. ໃນເວລາທີ່ຣັຖທັມມະນູນໄດ້ຖືກຮັບຮອງເອົາ ມີປະຊາຊົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍມັກສິ່ງທີ່ມີໃນຣັຖທັມມະນູນ ແຕ່ກໍຍັງມີປະຊາຊົນອີກຈຳນວນຫຼາຍທີ່ຄິດວ່າ ຣັຖທັມມະນູນຍັງບໍ່ເປັນພື້ນຖານສຳຫຼັບປົກຄອງສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງທົ່ວໄປ. ເພື່ອໃຫ້ພົນລະເມືອງມີຄວາມເຊື່ອໝັ້ນໃນຣັຖທັມມະນູນ ສະພາທີ່ຖືກແຕ່ງຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນໃໝ່ນັ້ນຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຮ່າງການດັດແປງແກ້ໄຂຣັຖທັມມະນູນຂຶ້ນສິບຂໍ້ ຊຶ່ງເອີ້ນວ່າ ຂໍ້ຄວາມສະແດງເຖິງສິດທິແລະເສຣີພາບຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ (The Bill of Rights). ການດັດແປງຣັຖທັມມະນູນດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ໃຫ້ສິດທິທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດແກ່ປະຊາຊົນທີ່ຢູ່ໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ເຊັ່ນ ເສຣີພາບໃນການປາກເວົ້າ, ເສຣີພາບໃນການຂີດຂຽນ, ເສຣີພາບໃນການຖືສາສນາ, ເສຣີພາບໃນການເຕົ້າໂຮມກັນ, ສິດບໍ່ໃຫ້ກວດຄົ້ນໂດຍບໍ່ມີເຫດຜົນ, ແລະ ສິດໃນການພິຈາຣະນາຄະດີ ໂດຍມີຊຸມສານ.

ກ.໒.໒. ມັນເປັນສິ່ງສຳຄັນ ທີ່ຈະຕ້ອງຈົດຈຳວ່າ ສິດທິເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ແມ່ນເພື່ອຊ່ວຍປະຊາຊົນ. ສິດດັ່ງກ່າວຈະຖືວ່າຖືກຕ້ອງຖ້າຫາກການໃຊ້ສິດທີ່ວ່ານີ້ໄປລ່ວງລ້ຳສິດທິຂອງຜູ້ອື່ນ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນຈຶ່ງເປັນໜ້າທີ່ຂອງສານ

ທີ່ຈະພິຈາຣະນາວ່າ ຜູ້ໃດຜູ້ນຶ່ງນັ້ນໃຊ້ສິດໄປໃນທາງທຳລາຍສິດທິຂອງຄົນອື່ນຫຼືບໍ່.

ກ.ມ. ປະເທດຊາດໃໝ່ປະສົບບັນຫາພາຍນອກໃໝ່.

ກ.ມ.໑. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໗໙໐ ຫາ ໑໗໙໙ ນັ້ນ ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ໄດ້ມີເພື່ອນບ້ານເປັນຊາວຢູໂຣບ ຊຶ່ງຢູ່ໃນທະວີບອະເມຣິກາຕອນເໜືອ. ພາກເໜືອ ແລະ ພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສ່ຽງເໜືອແມ່ນຣາຊອານາຈັກອັງກິດ. ພາກໃຕ້ແລະພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ ແມ່ນຣາຊະອານາຈັກຂອງສະເປນ. ຣັຖບານໃໝ່ຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ໄດ້ຖືນະໂຍບາຍແບບບໍ່ເຂົ້າໄປພົວພັນກັບບັນຫາຣະຫວ່າງປະເທດ ຊຶ່ງເອີ້ນວ່າ "ນະໂຍບາຍເປັນກາງ". ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ໄດ້ໃຊ້ນະໂຍບາຍດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ໃນການສັມພັນກັບຕ່າງປະເທດ ເກືອບເຖິງ ໔໐ ປີ.

ກ.ມ.໔. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມປະຕິວັດຜ່ານພົ້ນໄປແລ້ວ ປາກົດວ່າ ຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກຣະຫວ່າງປະເທດອັງກິດ ແລະ ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິການັ້ນ ບໍ່ຄ່ອຍດີ. ໃນປີ ໑໗໙໓ ຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກທີ່ວ່ານີ້ ຍິ່ງບໍ່ດີຂຶ້ນ ໃນເວລາທີ່ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດໄດ້ເປີດທ່າເຮືອໃນ West Indies ເພື່ອທຳການຄ້າກັບປະເທດເປັນກາງຕ່າງໆ. ພວກພໍ່ຄ້າອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ເພີ່ມການຄ້າກັບ West Indies ຂຶ້ນຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວ. ໃນບໍ່ນານການຄ້າຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍໄດ້ຈະເຣີນງອກງາມຂຶ້ນຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ. ໃນເວລານັ້ນ ສົງຄາມຣະຫວ່າງປະເທດອັງກິດແລະຝຣັ່ງເສດຍັງດຳເນີນກັນຢູ່ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ຣັຖບານອັງກິດຈຶ່ງໄດ້ອອກຄຳສັ່ງໃຫ້ກອງທັບເຮືອຂອງຕົນຍຶດເຮືອທັງໝົດທີ່ຂົນສິນຄ້າໄປມາຣະຫວ່າງປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດແລະປະເທດທີ່ເປັນເມືອງຂຶ້ນຂອງຝຣັ່ງເສດ. ກຳປັ່ນອະເມຣິກັນ ຫຼາຍຮ້ອຍລຳໄດ້ຖືກພວກອັງກິດຈັບໄວ້. ໃນບາງກໍຣະນີ ພວກຄົນເຮືອຊາວອະເມຣິກັນກໍໄດ້ຖືກບັງຄັບໃຫ້ເຂົ້າໃນກອງທັບເຮືອອັງກິດ. ການກະທຳດັ່ງກ່າວ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ການເກນທະຫານໂດຍບັງຄັບ. ຣັຖບານສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາດັ່ງກ່າວດ້ວຍການເຈຣະຈາ. ທ່ານ John Jay ໄດ້ຖືກສົ່ງໄປຍັງປະເທດອັງກິດເພື່ອແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາຂັດແຍ່ງຣະຫວ່າງສອງປະເທດ. ທ່ານ Jay ໄດ້ເຊັນສົນທິສັນຍາກັບປະເທດອັງກິດ, ຕາມສົນທິສັນຍາດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ປະເທດອັງກິດໄດ້ຕົກລົງຖອນທະຫານອອກຈາກພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສ່ຽງເໜືອ ແລະ ອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນທຳການຄ້າກັບ West Indies ຂອງອັງກິດ. ເພື່ອເປັນການຕອບແທນ ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາຕ້ອງໄດ້ຈ່າຍໜີ້ສົງຄາມປະຕິວັດ ຊຶ່ງປະເທດອັງກິດຍັງບໍ່ໄດ້ເກັບເອົານັ້ນ.

ກ.ມ.໔. ສົນທິສັນຍາຂອງທ່ານ Jay ໄດ້ມາໃຫ້ການແກ້ໄຂຂໍ້ຂັດແຍ່ງຣະຫວ່າງປະເທດສະເປນແລະສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາຕົກແຕກໄປ. ເພາະປະເທດສະເປນໄດ້ເຊື່ອວ່າ ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ອາດຈະສ້າງຄວາມຫຍຸ້ງຍາກໃຫ້ແກ່ຣາຊະອານາຈັກສະເປນ ໃນທະວີບອະເມຣິກາ ໃນເມື່ອການຂັດແຍ່ງຣະຫວ່າງສະຫະຣັຖກັບປະເທດອັງກິດໄດ້ຢຸດຕິໄປ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ໃນທ້າຍປີ ໑໗໙໕ ປະເທດສະເປນ ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ເຊັນສົນທິສັນຍາກັບສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ສົນທິສັນຍາດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ໄດ້ຣະບຸເຂດແດນຣະຫວ່າງສະຫະຣັຖແລະພາກຕາເວັນຕົກຂອງ Florida ພ້ອມທັງໄດ້ມອບສິດໃຫ້ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເດີນເຮືອຕາມແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi ແລະ ໃຊ້ທ່າເຮືອຂອງ New Orleans ໄດ້. ທ້ຳງແລ້ວ ສົນທິສັນຍາທີ່ວ່ານີ້ ເປັນທີ່ພໍໃຈແກ່ຊາວນາ ແລະ ພວກທີ່ຢູ່ຕາມຊາຍແດນ ເພາະວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າມີສິດໃຊ້ແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi ສຳລັບຂົນເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄປສູ່ທ່າເຮືອໃນທະເລໄດ້. ໃນທີ່ສຸດຫຼັງຈາກໄດ້ເຊັນສົນທິສັນຍາກັບປະເທດອັງກິດ ແລະ ສະເປນແລ້ວ ປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນສາມາດດຳເນີນຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ໃນຄວາມສະງົບ ແລະ ສາມາດຂົມການສຳລັບອານາຄົດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າອີກດ້ວຍ.

EXERCISES

I. WORD SEARCH PUZZLE:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ, ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ພ້ອມຄວາມໝາຍແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍ.

CONGRESSMEN
CONGRESSWOMEN
SENATOR
TRADE
SUPREME COURT
FRONTIERSMAN
POWERS
VIOLATE

AMENDMENT
STATE RIGHTS
AMBASSADOR
FREE SPEECH
NEUTRAL POLICY
NAVY
BOOM
FREE PRESS

WEST INDIES
IMPRESSMENT
MISSISSIPPI RIVER
DECLARE WAR
MERCHANT
PUBLIC TRIAL
SUPREMACY
FREE ASSEMBLY

C	O	N	G	R	E	S	S	W	O	M	E	N	S	E	N	A	T	O	R
O	T	R	A	D	E	S	U	P	R	E	M	E	C	O	U	R	T	N	M
N	F	P	F	X	W	U	A	M	E	N	D	M	E	N	T	O	P	A	E
G	R	U	R	O	R	P	F	R	E	E	S	P	E	E	C	H	O	V	R
R	E	B	O	N	P	R	A	M	B	A	S	S	A	D	O	R	W	Y	C
E	E	L	N	F	R	E	E	A	S	S	E	M	B	L	Y	M	E	X	H
S	P	I	T	X	X	M	W	E	S	T	I	N	D	I	E	S	R	O	A
S	R	C	I	S	T	A	T	E	R	I	G	H	T	R	S	T	S	W	N
M	E	T	E	E	N	C	F	R	E	E	R	E	L	I	G	I	O	N	T
E	S	R	R	M	C	Y	I	M	P	R	E	S	S	M	E	N	T	O	O
N	S	I	M	N	E	U	T	R	A	L	P	O	L	I	C	Y	O	N	O
T	O	A	A	M	I	S	S	I	S	S	I	P	P	I	R	I	V	E	R
D	O	L	N	S	T	A	T	E	R	I	G	H	T	S	B	O	O	M	P
D	E	C	L	A	R	E	W	A	R	V	I	O	L	A	T	E	O	X	O

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. **ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ :** (ເບິ່ງພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. **ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ:** ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາຄຳເວົ້າແຕ່ລະຄຳໃນຫມວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍທີ່ມີໃນຫມວດ (ຂ). ໂດຍໃຫ້ເລືອກເອົາເລກທີ່ມີໃນຫມວດ (ຂ) ໃສ່ຕາມຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນຫມວດ (ກ) ແທນຄຳຕອບ.

ຫມວດ (ກ)

_____ ກ. ຊາຍແດນ

_____ ຂ. ຜູ້ທີ່ຢູ່ຕາມຊາຍແດນ

_____ ຄ. ລູກຂຸນ

_____ ງ. ຄະນະຣັຖບານ

_____ ຈ. ການເກນທະຫານ ໂດຍບັງຄັບ.

_____ ສ. ເປັນກາງ

ຫມວດ (ຂ)

໑. ການຕົກລົງທາງການຣະຫວ່າງສອງຣັຖ ຫຼື ຫຼາຍກວ່ານັ້ນ.

໒. ສານສູງສຸດຂອງຣັຖບານກາງ ປະກອບດ້ວຍຫົວຫນ້າສານໃຫຍ່ ໙ ຄົນແລະມີການປົກຄອງກອມໄປເຖິງສານຕ່າງໆທົ່ວຫມົດປະເທດ.

໓. ນະໂຍບາຍທີ່ບໍ່ສນັບສນູນການຂັດແຍ່ງຫຼືສົງຄາມໃດໆ.

໔. ບຸກຄົນຄະນະນຶ່ງທີ່ປະຕິຍານເພື່ອຕັດສິນແລະວາງໂທດໃນຄະດີໃດຄະດີນຶ່ງ.

໕. ຜູ້ທີ່ຕັ້ງພູມລຳເນົາຢູ່ຕາມເຂດແດນ.

໖. ກົດຫມາຍວ່າດ້ວຍລັກສະນະ, ພາລະ, ແລະຂອບເຂດໃນການປະຕິບັດຂອງຣັຖບານ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ຈ. ຣັຖທັມມະນູນ	໗. ບຸກຄົນຄະນະນຶ່ງ ຊຶ່ງແມ່ນຫົວໜ້າປະເທດ ຫຼື ນາຍົກຣັຖມົນຕຣີເປັນຜູ້ແຕ່ງຕັ້ງ ສຳຫຼັບເປັນຫົວໜ້າກະຊວງຕ່າງໆຂອງຣັຖບານ.
_____ ຍ. ສານສູງສຸດ	໘. ສິ່ງທີ່ໝາຍເຂດແດນ.
_____ ດ. ການດັດແປງແກ້ໄຂ ຣັຖທັມມະນູນ.	໙. ການປ່ຽນ, ເພີ່ມເຕີມ ຫຼື ແກ້ໄຂຣັຖທັມມະນູນ.
_____ ຕ. ສົນທິສັນຍາ	໑໐. ການກະທຳຂອງພວກອັງກິດໃນສມັຍກ່ອນສົງຄາມ ປີ ໑໘໑໒ ໂດຍຈັບຄົນຈາກເຮືອອະເມຣິກັນ ເພື່ອເອົາໄປຮັບໃຊ້ໃນກອງທັບເຮືອອັງກິດ.

໓. **ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ** :

ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ໝາຍຕົວອັກສອນ T ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກເຫັນວ່າປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກ. ຖ້າເຫັນວ່າຜິດໃຫ້ໝາຍ F ໃສ່.

_____ ໑. Federal Supremacy ໝາຍເຖິງວ່າຣັຖບໍ່ມີສິດແຕ່ງກົດໝາຍທີ່ຂັດແຍ່ງກັບກົດໝາຍຂອງຊາດຫຼືຂອງຣັຖທັມມະນູນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

_____ ໒. ຣັຖບານແຫ່ງຊາດມີອຳນາດເຣັດກົດໝາຍສຳຫຼັບປະເທດທັງໝົດ.

_____ ໓. ສະມາຊິກທີ່ປະຈຳຢູ່ໃນສະພານັ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ ສະມາຊິກສະພາຕ່ຳ ແລະ ສະມາຊິກສະພາສູງ.

_____ ໔. ອາຍຸການຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາແມ່ນຫົກປີ.

_____ ໕. ສານສູງສຸດແມ່ນສານຂັ້ນສູງສຸດໃນຣັຖ.

_____ ໖. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມປະຕິວັດ ຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກຣະຫວ່າງປະເທດອັງກິດ ແລະ ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິການັ້ນ ແມ່ນຢູ່ໃນທຳນອງອັນດີ.

_____ ໗. ຣັຖບານອັງກິດໄດ້ອອກຄຳສັ່ງໃຫ້ກອງທັບເຮືອຂອງຕົນຍຶດເຮືອທັງໝົດທີ່ຂົນສິນຄ້າໄປມາຈາກ ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ.

_____ ໘. ນັກເດີນເຮືອອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ຖືກບັງຄັບໃຫ້ເຂົ້າຢູ່ໃນກອງທັບເຮືອຝຣັ່ງເສດ. ການກະທຳເຊັ່ນ ນີ້ເອີ້ນວ່າ ການເກນທະຫານໂດຍບັງຄັບ.

_____ ໙. ທ່ານ John Jay ໄດ້ຖືກສົ່ງໄປຍັງປະເທດອັງກິດ ເພື່ອແກ້ໄຂຂໍ້ຂັດແຍ່ງຣະຫວ່າງ ສອງປະເທດ.

_____ ໑໐. ໃນປີ ໑໗໙໕ ປະເທດສະເປນ ໄດ້ເຊັນສົນທິສັນຍາກັບສະຫະຣັຖ. ສົນທິສັນຍາດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ ຣະບຸຊາຍແດນຣະຫວ່າງສະຫະຣັຖແລະພາກຕາເວັນຕົກຂອງ Florida.

໕. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ :

ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າຫຼືໝວດຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ : ການຄ້າ, ຂໍ້ຄວາມສະແດງເຖິງສິດທິແລະເສຣີພາບຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ, ສານສູງສຸດ, ຣະຫວ່າງຊາດ, supremacy , ຣັຖບານກາງ, ພະແນກປົກຄອງ, ຈີນ, ສົນທິສັນຍາ, ການດັດແປງແກ້ໄຂຣັຖທັມມະນູນ.

໑. Federal ______________________ ຫມາຍເຖິງວ່າ ຣັຖບໍ່ມີສິດແຕ່ງກົດຫມາຍ ທີ່ຂັດແຍ່ງກັບກົດຫມາຍຂອງຊາດ.

໒. ຜູ້ຄົນທີ່ກ່າວເຖິງຣັຖບານຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາມັກຈະໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ ____________________.

໓. ຫຼັງຈາກກົດຫມາຍຜ່ານຈາກສະພາແລ້ວ ກົດຫມາຍນັ້ນກໍຈະຖືກສົ່ງໃຫ້ແກ່ ________________ ________________ ເພື່ອປະຕິບັດຕໍ່ໄປ.

໔. ພະແນກຍຸດຕິທັມໃນຣັຖບານກາງນັ້ນແມ່ນ ______________________________ ແລະບັນດາສານໃນຣະດັບຮອງລົງມາອີກຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ.

໕. ສະພາທີ່ຖືກຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນໃຫມ່ໄດ້ຮ່າງ ______________________________ ສິບຂໍ້.

໖. ຂໍ້ດັດແປງແກ້ໄຂຣັຖທັມມະນູນສິບຂໍ້ທຳອິດນັ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ ________________________ __________________ .

໗. ຣັຖບານໃຫມ່ຂອງສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ເອົານະໂຍບາຍແບບບໍ່ພົວພັນກັບບັນດາ __________________ ______________ .

໘. ພວກພໍ່ຄ້າຊາວອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ເພີ່ມ _______________________ ກັບ West Indies ຂຶ້ນຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວ.

໙. ເຮືອອະເມຣິກັນຫຼາຍຮ້ອຍລຳໄດ້ຖືກ _____________________ ໂດຍພວກອັງກິດ.

໑໐. _________________________ ກັບປະເທດສະເປນເປັນທີ່ພໍໃຈແກ່ຊາວນາ ແລະ ພວກທີ່ຢູ່ຕາມຊາຍແດນເພາະວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າມີສິດໃຊ້ແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi ເພື່ອບັນທຸກເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄປສູ່ທ່າເຮືອໃນທະເລ.

ພາກ ໑ : ຣັຖບານທຳອິດຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ

ສັບໃຫມ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ :

individual: ບຸກຄົນ

The Bill of Rights protects the rights of individuals as well as those of the states.

electoral college: ຄະນະຜູ້ເລືອກປະທານາທິບໍດີ

The electoral college chose George Washington as the first President of the United States.

judiciary act: ດຳຣັດກ່ຽວກັບດ້ານຍຸດຕິທັມ

Congress passed the first judiciary act in 1789 to set up the Supreme Court.

associate justice: ຜູ້ພິພາກສາຮ່ວມ

chief justice: ຫົວໜ້າຜູ້ພິພາກສາ

There are eight associate justices and on chief justice in the U.S. Supreme Court.

precedent: ແບບຢ່າງ

President Washington set up many precedents during his first term.

cabinet: ຄະນະຣັຖບານ

The heads of all the government departments formed a cabinet.

measure: ມາດຕະການ

Most Americans were against Hamilton's measures.

provision: ບົດບັນຍັດ

The Constitution did not make any provision for a cabinet.

READING

8.1. THE FIRST PRESIDENT: GEORGE WASHINGTON

8.1.1. The Constitution needed to be ratified by nine states in order to go into effect. As a result of the debates over ratification, ten amendments were added to the Constitution to protect both the rights of **individuals** and those of the states. Under this new Constitution, one of the first things to be done was the election of a president. The Constitution said that the voters were to choose members of the **electoral college** who then would select the president. The electoral college chose George Washington as the first President of the United States.

8.1.2. President Washington took office in April 1789, in the temporary capital, New York City. By that time, a Congress, made up of a Senate and a House, had also been elected. In 1789, the Congress passed the first **judiciary act** that provided for a Supreme Court of six judges and a system of lower federal courts. President Washington named five **associate justices** of the Supreme Court and appointed John Jay as **chief justice.** The new Senate approved the President's nomination. The country now had a legislative, an executive, and a judicial branch. The new government was ready to work.

8.2. THE PRESIDENT AND THE CONSTITUTION

8.2.1. President Washington served as President for two terms or eight years. During those eight years, he established many **precedents** for future presidents. As the head of the executive branch, he knew that he could not do his job alone; he set up different governmental departments and appointed people to head these departments. Together, these people were called the **cabinet**. To his first cabinet, Washington named Thomas Jefferson as Secretary of State, Henry Knox as Secretary of War, and Alexander Hamilton became as the Secretary of the Treasury. These cabinet members also served as advisors to the President. The Constitution did not make any **provision** for a cabinet, but President Washington set the precedent, and his actions became a political custom to be followed by future presidents.

8.2.2. The new nation and the new government faced many problems. One of the most serious problems related to money and finance. When President Washington took office, the United States had a debt of millions of dollars and the United States treasury was almost empty. There was no system of taxation to bring in the money to pay these debts and to cover government expenses. The Secretary of the Treasury, Alexander Hamilton, wanted to take strong actions to save the new government from debt and ruin. He proposed a program which included the following points:

1. The new government agreed to pay all debts.

2. The federal government took over the debts of the states. Many of these debts were the results of expenses that states had during the Revolution.
3. The government was to raise funds through taxes. Hamilton also wanted to levy a tax on liquor produced within the country and raise the tariffs on imported goods. These tariffs were also meant to encourage American manufacturing.
4. The government chartered a national bank. The Bank of the United States would provide credit to the new federal government. It would also help to provide a strong currency for the country.

Hamilton's program was met with strong opposition. Northern states with heavy unpaid debts favored the program but Southern states did not like it because they had already arranged to pay their debts. The Southerners did not want to be taxed to pay northern debts.

8.2.3. There was also disagreement over the establishment of Bank of the United States. Thomas Jefferson and his followers argued that the Constitution did not mention this kind of power. Hamilton said that the power went along with the financial powers the Constitution gave to Congress. People began to take sides on this and other issues. This dispute led to something new in this young nation ---the formation of political parties.

8.3. THE FORMATION OF POLITICAL PARTIES

8.3.1. The program of the new government had helped bring good times to the United States but many Americans were against Hamilton's program. Hamilton's **measures** had caused divisions in the nation. They had divided the North from the South and the rich from the poor people. Many people had loaned money to Congress during the Revolution and had received notes stating that the government promised to pay back the money. But as the time went on, people began to doubt that the government would ever pay these notes in full. Therefore, many people sold their notes for less than they were worth. The buyers of the notes were often rich people who had knowledge of Hamilton's program. The losers were soldiers, farmers, and shopkeepers. They were very angry with Hamilton's measures, and they grouped together to oppose it.

8.3.2. The group supporting Hamilton was called the Federalists. They wanted the Constitution to be the supreme law of the land and they also wanted a strong central government. The Federalists also favored a loose interpretation of the Constitution that would give much power to the federal government. The Federalists were the wealthier Americans, such as landowners, merchants, lawyers, and bankers. They lived in New England and in the Middle states. They believed that the upper class should run the government, and they hoped to keep political power out of the hands of the common people. The Federalists were opposed by the Republican Party.

8.3.3. The two political parties had their first chance to test their strength in the presidential election in 1796. John Adams was chosen as the Federalist candidate for President and Thomas Pinckney was to run as Vice-President. Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr were the Republicans' choices. The electoral college vote in the 1796 election showed a weakness in the Constitution. The Constitution did not allow for two parties, each choosing separate candidates for president and vice-president. The Constitution stated that each member of the electoral college would vote for two candidates. Members did not indicate a choice of president or vice-president. The person who received the most votes would be president, and the person who received the next highest number of votes would be vice-president. Under this system, Adams, a Federalist, was elected president. However, Jefferson, a Republican, was elected Vice-President. The Federalists also won most of the seats in Congress; therefore, the Federalists were in power. From that time, political parties and their activities deeply influenced the life of Americans.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

APRIL
LIQUOR
DEBT
CITY
WAR
TAX
RAISE

INDIVIDUAL
ELECTORAL COLLEGE
JUDICIARY ACT
ASSOCIATE JUSTICE
CHIEF JUSTICE
RATIFICATION
NOMINATION
CONSTITUTION

FUTURE
CABINET
SUPREME
MEASURE
JUDICIAL
APPOINT
PROBLEMS
PRODUCE

PRECEDENT
WASHINGTON
PROVISION
EXECUTIVE
LEGISLATIVE
DEPARTMENT
FUTURE

I	E	L	E	C	T	O	R	A	L	C	O	L	L	E	G	E	N	D
N	J	C	H	I	E	F	J	U	S	T	I	C	E	X	W	P	O	E
D	U	C	A	B	I	N	E	T	M	E	A	S	U	R	E	R	M	R
I	D	A	P	R	I	L	P	R	O	V	I	S	I	O	N	E	I	A
V	I	R	A	T	I	F	I	C	A	T	I	O	N	O	X	C	N	R
I	C	O	N	S	T	I	T	U	T	I	O	N	W	A	R	E	A	T
D	I	A	P	P	O	I	N	T	S	U	P	R	E	M	E	D	T	M
U	A	S	S	O	C	I	A	T	E	J	U	S	T	I	C	E	I	E
A	R	W	A	S	H	I	N	G	T	O	N	C	I	T	Y	N	O	N
L	Y	E	X	E	C	U	T	I	V	E	R	U	T	U	F	T	N	T
Y	A	V	O	L	E	G	I	S	L	A	T	I	V	E	T	A	X	O
E	C	B	I	C	H	O	J	U	D	I	C	I	A	L	D	E	B	T
U	T	A	P	P	O	I	N	T	P	R	O	B	L	E	M	S	O	X
L	I	Q	U	O	R	P	R	O	D	U	C	E	R	A	I	S	E	D

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A

____ a. tariff

____ b. candidate

____ c. Chief Justice

____ d. individual

____ e. precedent

____ f. treasury

____ g. electoral college

____ h. liquor

B

1. a person who seeks or is nominated for an office, prize, or honor.
2. a body of electors chosen to elect the President and Vice-President of the United States.
3. an alcoholic beverage made by distillation rather than by fermentation.
4. tax or duty imposed by a government on imported or exported goods.
5. a place where treasure is kept stored.
6. an act or instance that may be used as an example in dealing with subsequent similar cases.
7. relating to a single human being, by or for one person.
8. the presiding judge of a high court having several judges, especially the U.S. Supreme Court.

III. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put an F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. Under this new Constitution, one of the first things to be done was the election of a president.

____ 2. The electoral college chose George Washington as the first President of the United States.

____ 3. The Constitution had a provision for a cabinet.

____ 4. One of the most serious problems of the new government related to money and finance.

____ 5. There was no system of taxation to bring in the money to pay the national debts.

____ 6. Hamilton's program was met with strong opposition.

____ 7. There was also disagreement over the establishment of the Bank of the United States.

____ 8. Hamilton's measures had caused divisions in the nation.

____ 9. The Federalists were wealthier Americans.

____10. The political parties and their activities deeply influenced the life of Americans.

IV. Fill in the blanks:

Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: interpretation, temporary, advisors, Treasury, electoral college, political parties, precedents, associate judge, executive branch, terms.

1. The Constitution said that the voters were to choose

members of the _________ who then would elect the president.

2. President Washington took office in April, 1789 in the ___________ capital, New York City.
3. President Washington served as President for two _________, or eight years.
4. The two _________ had their first chance to test their strength in the presidential election of 1796.
5. The Federalists favored a loose _____________ of the Constitution that gave much power to the federal government.
6. President Washington set up many _____________ during his first term.
7. President Washington named five ____________ of the Supreme Court.
8. The U.S. ____________ was almost empty when President Washington took office.
9. The cabinet members also served as ____________ to the President.
10. As the head of the ____________ , President Washington knew that he could not do his job alone.

ບົດອ່ານ

໙.໑. ປະທານາທິບໍດີຄົນທຳອິດ : ທ່ານ GEORGE WASHINGTON.

໙.໑.໑. ກ່ອນຈະປະຕິບັດໄດ້ນັ້ນ ຣັຖທັມມະນູນຕ້ອງໄດ້ຖືກຮັບຮອງເອົາຈາກເກົ້າຣັຖ. ຜົນຂອງການໂຕ້ວາທີກັນກ່ຽວກັບການຮັບຮອງເອົາຣັຖທັມມະນູນ ໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ມີການເພີ້ມຂໍ້ດັດແປງແກ້ໄຂ ສິບຂໍ້ ເຂົ້າໃນຣັຖທັມມະນູນດັ່ງກ່າວ ເພື່ອປົກປ້ອງສິດທິສ່ວນຕົວຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ ແລະ ຂອງຣັຖຕ່າງໆ. ພາຍໃຕ້ຣັຖທັມມະນູນສະບັບໃຫມ່ນີ້ ສິ່ງທຳອິດທີ່ຈະຕ້ອງໄດ້ກະທຳກໍຄື ການເລືອກຕັ້ງເອົາປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ຣັຖທັມມະນູນໄດ້ແຈ້ງໄວ້ວ່າ ບັນດາຜູ້ປ່ອນບັດຈະຕ້ອງໄດ້ເລືອກເອົາສະມາຊິກຂອງຄະນະຜູ້ເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີປະຈຳຣັຖ (electoral college) ຊຶ່ງໃນຂັ້ນຕໍ່ໄປຈະເປັນຜູ້ເລືອກເອົາປະທານາທິບໍດີອີກເທື່ອນຶ່ງ. ຄະນະຜູ້ເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີໄດ້ເລືອກເອົາທ່ານ George Washington ເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີຄົນທຳອິດຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

໙.໑.໒. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Washington ໄດ້ເຂົ້າຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງໃນເດືອນ ເມສາ ໑໗໘໙ ໃນເມືອງຫຼວງຊົ່ວຄາວ ຄືນະຄອນ New York . ໃນເວລານັ້ນກໍໄດ້ມີການເລືອກຕັ້ງເອົາສະພາອັນປະກອບດ້ວຍສະພາສູງ ແລະ ສະພາຕ່ຳ. ໃນປີ ໑໗໘໙ ສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳຣັດວ່າດ້ວຍການພິພາກສາຄະດີຕາມກົດໝາຍດຳຣັດທຳອິດ ເອີ້ນວ່າ Judiciary Act ຊຶ່ງຈັດໃຫ້ມີສານສູງສຸດ ອັນປະກອບດ້ວຍຜູ້ພິພາກສາຫົກຄົນ ແລະ ບັນດາສານຂັ້ນຮອງລົງມາຂອງຣັຖບານກາງ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Washington ໄດ້ຕັ້ງຜູ້ພິພາກສາຮ່ວມຫ້າທ່ານ ແລະ ໄດ້ແຕ່ງຕັ້ງທ່ານ John Jay ເປັນຫົວໜ້າສານສູງສຸດ, ສະພາສູງ ຊຶ່ງເກີດຂຶ້ນໃຫມ່ນັ້ນ ໄດ້ຮັບຮອງເອົາການແຕ່ງຕັ້ງດັ່ງກ່າວຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ໃນຂະນະນັ້ນ ປະເທດໄດ້ມີພະແນກແຕ່ງກົດໝາຍ, ພະແນກປົກຄອງ ແລະ ພະແນກຍຸດຕິທັມ. ແລະ ຣັຖບານໄດ້ຄົບພ້ອມທີ່ຈະປະຕິບັດງານຕໍ່ໄປ.

໙.໒. ປະທານາທິບໍດີແລະຣັຖທັມມະນູນ

໙.໒.໑. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Washington ໄດ້ຄອງຕຳແໜ່ງປະທານາທິບໍດີຢູ່ສອງສະໄໝ ຄື ເປັນເວລາແປດປີ. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງແປດປີນັ້ນ ທ່ານໄດ້ສ້າງແບບຢ່າງໄວ້ໃຫ້ບັນດາປະທານາທິບໍດີໃນສະໄໝຕໍ່ມາຫຼາຍ

ຢ່າງດ້ວຍກັນ. ໃນຖານະເປັນຫົວຫນ້າຂອງພະແນກຝ່າຍປົກຄອງ ທ່ານໄດ້ຮູ້ວ່າທ່ານບໍ່ສາມາດປະຕິບັດໜ້າທີ່ໄດ້ແຕ່ພຽງຜູ້ດຽວ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ທ່ານຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຕັ້ງກະຊວງຕ່າງໆອື່ນ ພ້ອມກັບແຕ່ງຕັ້ງຫົວຫນ້າກະຊວງຕ່າງໆດັ່ງກ່າວ. ບັນດາຫົວຫນ້າກະຊວງທັງຫມົດນີ້ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ຄະນະຣັຖບານ. ໃນຄະນະຣັຖບານຊຸດທຳອິດຂອງທ່ານ ທ່ານ Washington ໄດ້ຕັ້ງໃຫ້ທ່ານ Thomas Jefferson ເປັນຣັຖມົນຕຣີກະຊວງການຕ່າງປະເທດ ຕັ້ງທ່ານ Henry Knox ເປັນຣັຖມົນຕຣີກະຊວງປ້ອງກັນປະເທດ ແລະ ຕັ້ງທ່ານ Alexander Hamilton ເປັນຣັຖມົນຕຣີຄັງ. ສະມາຊິກຄະນະຣັຖບານເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ຍັງມີຫນ້າທີ່ເປັນທີ່ປຶກສາຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີອີກດ້ວຍ. ຣັຖທັມມະນູນບໍ່ໄດ້ບັນຍັດໃຫ້ມີຄະນະຣັຖບານແຕ່ປະການໃດ ແຕ່ວ່າ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Washington ໄດ້ສ້າງຕົວຢ່າງໄວ້ ແລະ ການກະທຳຂອງທ່ານໄດ້ກາຍເປັນປະເພນີທາງການເມືອງ ຊຶ່ງບັນດາປະທານາທິບໍດີໃນຂັ້ນຕໍ່ມາໄດ້ພາກັນປະຕິບັດຕາມ.

໓.໒.໒. ປະເທດໃຫມ່ແລະຣັຖບານໃຫມ່ ໄດ້ປະສົບກັບບັນຫາຫຼາຍປະການ. ບັນຫານຶ່ງທີ່ຫນັກຫນ່ວງທີ່ສຸດ ແມ່ນບັນຫາທີ່ກ່ຽວກັບເງິນແລະການຄັງ. ໃນເວລາປະທານາທິບໍດີ washington ເຂົ້າຮັບຕຳແຫນ່ງນັ້ນ ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ມີຫນີ້ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍລ້ານໂດລາ ແລະ ຄັງຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາກໍເກືອບເປົ່າ. ຣະບົບໃນການກັບພາສີ ເພື່ອໃຫ້ໄດ້ເງິນສຳຫຼັບຈ່າຍຫນີ້ ແລະໃຊ້ໃນການຈັບຈ່າຍຂອງຣັຖບານບົກພ່ອງ. ຣັຖມົນຕຣີການຄັງ ທ່ານ Alexander Hamilton ຕ້ອງການລົງມືຢ່າງຫນັກແຫນ້ນ ເພື່ອຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ຣັຖບານພົ້ນຈາກຫນີ້ສິນແລະການພັງທະລາຍ. ທ່ານໄດ້ສເນີແຜນການ ຊຶ່ງປະກອບດ້ວຍຈຸດຕ່າງໆດັ່ງຕໍ່ໄປນີ້ :

໑. ຣັຖບານໃຫມ່ ເຕັມດີທີ່ຈະຈ່າຍຫນີ້ສິນທັງຫມົດ.

໒. ຣັຖບານກາງຮັບເອົາຫນີ້ສິນຂອງບັນດາຣັຖຕ່າງໆ. ຫນີ້ສິນເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ເປັນຫນີ້ສິນເນື່ອງມາຈາກການໃຊ້ຈ່າຍທີ່ຣັຖຕ່າງໆໄດ້ກະທຳໄປໃນສໄມປະຕິວັດ.

໓. ຣັຖບານຕ້ອງໄດ້ຫາເງິນ ໂດຍການເກັບພາສີ. ທ່ານ Hamilton ຍັງຕ້ອງການເກັບພາສີເຫຼົ້າຜລິດພາຍໃນປະເທດ ແລະ ຂຶ້ນພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າອີກດ້ວຍ. ການຂຶ້ນພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າດັ່ງກ່າວເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ກໍຍັງເປັນການສົ່ງເສີມໂຮງງານຫັດຖະກັມຂອງອະເມຣິກັນອີກດ້ວຍ.

໔. ຣັຖບານໄດ້ຕັ້ງທະນາຄານແຫ່ງຊາດຂຶ້ນ. ທະນາຄານສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ຈະໄດ້ຈັດເງິນກູ້ຢືມໃຫ້ແກ່ຣັຖບານໃຫມ່ ແລະ ຈະຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ເງິນຕາຂອງປະເທດມີຄ່າສູງອີກດ້ວຍ.

ແຜນການຂອງທ່ານ Hamilton ໄດ້ຖືກຄັດຄ້ານຢ່າງແຮງ. ບັນດາຣັຖຕ່າງໆທາງພາກເໜືອ ຊຶ່ງຍັງມີໜີ້ສິນຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍນັ້ນ ໄດ້ສນັບສນູນແຜນການດັ່ງກ່າວ ແຕ່ຣັຖຕ່າງໆທາງພາກໃຕ້ບໍ່ເຫັນດີນຳ ເພາະວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຊຳລະໃຊ້ໜີ້ສິນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄປແລ້ວ. ປະຊາຊົນທາງພາກໃຕ້ບໍ່ຕ້ອງການເສັຽພາສີເພື່ອຈ່າຍໜີ້ຂອງພວກທາງເໜືອ.

໕.໒.໓. ໃນການຕັ້ງທະນາຄານຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິການັ້ນກໍໄດ້ມີການບໍ່ລົງລອຍກັນເຊັ່ນກັນ. ທ່ານ Thomas Jefferson ແລະຄະນະຂອງທ່ານ ໄດ້ໂຕ້ແຍ້ງວ່າ ຣັຖທັມມະນູນບໍ່ໄດ້ກ່າວເຖິງອຳນາດປະເພດນີ້ເລີຍ. ທ່ານ Hamilton ໄດ້ກ່າວວ່າ ອຳນາດທີ່ວ່ານີ້ ໄດ້ເປັນໄປຕາມອຳນາດດ້ານການເງິນ ຊຶ່ງຣັຖທັມມະນູນໄດ້ມອບໃຫ້ແກ່ສະພາ. ປະຊາຊົນໄດ້ເລີ້ມເຂົ້າຂ້າງ ກໍຄືກັບຂັ້ນຕອນ ພ້ອມດ້ວຍຂັ້ນຕອນອື່ນໆອີກ. ການຖົກຖຽງດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ໄດ້ນຳປະເທດທີ່ເກີດໃໝ່ນີ້ໄປສູ່ສິ່ງທີ່ໃໝ່ນັ້ນ ກໍຄື ການຕັ້ງພັກການເມືອງ.

໕.໓. ການຕັ້ງພັກການເມືອງ

໕.໓.໑. ແຜນການຂອງຣັຖບານໃໝ່ ໄດ້ນຳຄວາມສະດວກສະບາຍມາສູ່ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ແຕ່ກໍຍັງມີຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ຄັດຄ້ານແຜນການຂອງທ່ານ Hamilton . ມາດຕະການຂອງທ່ານ Hamilton ໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ມີການແບ່ງແຍກເກີດຂຶ້ນພາຍໃນປະເທດ. ເຊັ່ນພາກເໜືອໄດ້ແຍກອອກຈາກພາກໃຕ້ ແລະ ພວກຮັ່ງແຍກຈາກພວກທຸກ. ໃນສໄມປະຕິວັດ ມີຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ເອົາເງິນໃຫ້ສະພາຢືມ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຮັບໜັງສື ຊຶ່ງແຈ້ງວ່າ ຣັຖບານສັນຍາຈະຈ່າຍເງິນຄືນໃຫ້. ເມື່ອວັນເວລາຜ່ານພົ້ນໄປ ປະຊາຊົນໄດ້ເລີ້ມເກີດມີຄວາມສົງໄສວ່າ ຣັຖບານບໍ່ສາມາດຈ່າຍເງິນຄືນໃຫ້ຢ່າງເຕັມສ່ວນໄດ້ຫຼອດໄປ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າ ໄດ້ຂາຍໜັງສືຢັ້ງຢືນຈາກສະພານັ້ນໃນຣາຄາຕ່ຳກວ່າຄ່າອັນແທ້ຈິງ. ພວກທີ່ຊື້ເອົາໜັງສືນັ້ນ ສ່ວນຫຼາຍແລ້ວເປັນພວກທີ່ຮັ່ງມີ ຊຶ່ງເຂົ້າໃຈແຜນຂອງທ່ານ Hamilton . ພວກທີ່ເສັຽປຽບໄດ້ແກ່ ພວກທະຫານ, ພວກຊາວນາ ແລະ ພວກຂາຍຂອງ. ພວກດັ່ງກ່າວມີຄວາມໃຈຮ້າຍຕໍ່ມາດຕະການຂອງທ່ານ Hamilton ແລະເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຈັບກຸ່ມກັນເພື່ອຕໍ່ຕ້ານມາດຕະການທີ່ວ່ານີ້.

໕.໓.໒. ກຸ່ມທີ່ສນັບສນູນທ່ານ Hamilton ເອີ້ນວ່າພວກ Federalists . ເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງ

ການໃຫ້ຣັຖທັມມະນູນເປັນກົດໝາຍສູງສຸດຂອງແຜ່ນດິນ ແລະເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ຣັຖບານກາງເຂັ້ມແຂງອີກດ້ວຍ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍຍັງຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ມີການແປຄວາມໝາຍຂອງຣັຖທັມມະນູນແບບກ້ວາງວຊຶ່ງຈະມອບອຳນາດອັນຫຼາຍໃຫ້ແກ່ຣັຖບານກາງ. ພວກ Federalists ນັ້ນເປັນຊາວອະເມຣິກັນທີ່ຮັ່ງມີ ເຊັ່ນ ເຈົ້າຂອງດິນ, ພໍ່ຄ້າ, ນັກກົດໝາຍ, ນັກທະນາຄານ ດັ່ງນີ້ເປັນຕົ້ນ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າ ອາໃສຢູ່ໃນຣັຖ New England ແລະ ໃນບັນດາຣັຖທາງພາກ ກາງ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າເຊື່ອວ່າ ພວກຊົນຊັ້ນຊັ້ນສູງຄວນເປັນຜູ້ບໍຣິຫານຣັຖບານ ແລະ ເຂົາເຈົ້າຫ້ວງວ່າຈະບໍ່ໃຫ້ອຳນາດຕົກ ຢູ່ໃນກຳມືຂອງປະຊາຊົນທັມມະດາສາມັນ.

ຂ.ມ.໔. ພັກການເມືອງທັງສອງໄດ້ມີໂອກາດເພື່ອທົດສອບຄວາມເຂັ້ມແຂງຂອງພວກຕົນໃນການເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີ ໃນປີ ໑໗໙໖. ທ່ານ John Adams ໄດ້ຖືກເລືອກເປັນຜູ້ແຂ່ງຂອງພວກ Federalists ສຳຄັນເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ ແລະ ທ່ານ Thomas Pinckney ໄດ້ຖືກເລືອກສຳຄັນແຂ່ງເປັນຮອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ທ່ານ Thomas Jefferson ແລະ ທ່ານ Aaron Burr ໄດ້ຖືກເລືອກເປັນຜູ້ແຂ່ງສຳຄັນພັກ Republican . ການປ່ອນບັດຂອງຄະນະຜູ້ເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີໃນປີ ໑໗໙໖ ນັ້ນໄດ້ມີຈຸດອ່ອນຕາມຣັຖທັມມະນູນ. ຣັຖທັມມະນູນບໍ່ໄດ້ອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ມີສອງພັກ ແລະ ບໍ່ໄດ້ອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ແຕ່ລະພັກເລືອກເອົາຜູ້ແຂ່ງເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີຕ່າງຫາກ ແລະ ເລືອກເອົາຜູ້ແຂ່ງເປັນຮອງປະທານາທິບໍດີອີກຕ່າງຫາກ. ຣັຖທັມມະນູນ ໄດ້ບົ່ງໄວ້ວ່າ ສະມາຊິກຂອງຄະນະຜູ້ເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີແຕ່ລະຄົນຈະຕ້ອງເລືອກເອົາຜູ້ສະໝັກສອງຄົນ. ຜູ້ທີ່ໄດ້ຮັບຄະແນນສຽງຫຼາຍທີ່ສຸດນັ້ນ ຈະໄດ້ເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ທ່ານ Adams ຊຶ່ງເປັນ Federalist ຫຼືເປັນຜູ້ສນັບສນຸນຣັຖທັມມະນູນນັ້ນ ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຖືກເລືອກໃຫ້ເປັນ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ນອກນັ້ນ ພວກFederalists ກໍຍັງໄດ້ບ່ອນນັ່ງໃນສະພາຫຼາຍທີ່ສຸດນຳອີກ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນັ້ນເອງພວກ Federalists ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຄອງອຳນາດ. ນັບຈາກເວລານັ້ນມາ ພັກການເມືອງແລະກິຈການຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ມີສ່ວນພົວພັນກັບຊີວິດຂອງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຢ່າງເລິກຊຶ້ງ.

EXERCISES

I. WORD SEARCH PUZZLE:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ, ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ພ້ອມຄວາມໝາຍແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍ.

APRIL
LIQUOR
DEBT
CITY
WAR
TAX
RAISE

INDIVIDUAL
ELECTORAL COLLEGE
JUDICIARY ACT
ASSOCIATE JUSTICE
CHIEF JUSTICE
RATIFICATION
NOMINATION
CONSTITUTION

FUTURE
CABINET
SUPREME
MEASURE
JUDICIAL
APPOINT
PROBLEMS
PRODUCE

PRECEDENT
WASHINGTON
PROVISION
EXECUTIVE
LEGISLATIVE
DEPARTMENT
FUTURE

I	E	L	E	C	T	O	R	A	L	C	O	L	L	E	G	E	N	D
N	J	C	H	I	E	F	J	U	S	T	I	C	E	X	W	P	O	E
D	U	C	A	B	I	N	E	T	M	E	A	S	U	R	E	R	M	R
I	D	A	P	R	I	L	P	R	O	V	I	S	I	O	N	E	I	A
V	I	R	A	T	I	F	I	C	A	T	I	O	N	O	X	C	N	R
I	C	O	N	S	T	I	T	U	T	I	O	N	W	A	R	E	A	T
D	I	A	P	P	O	I	N	T	S	U	P	R	E	M	E	D	T	M
U	A	S	S	O	C	I	A	T	E	J	U	S	T	I	C	E	I	E
A	R	W	A	S	H	I	N	G	T	O	N	C	I	T	Y	N	O	N
L	Y	E	X	E	C	U	T	I	V	E	R	U	T	U	F	T	N	T
Y	A	V	O	L	E	G	I	S	L	A	T	I	V	E	T	A	X	O
E	C	B	I	C	H	O	J	U	D	I	C	I	A	L	D	E	B	T
U	T	A	P	P	O	I	N	T	P	R	O	B	L	E	M	S	O	X
L	I	Q	U	O	R	P	R	O	D	U	C	E	R	A	I	S	E	D

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ : (ເບິ່ງພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ : ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາຄຳເວົ້າແຕ່ລະຄຳໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ຂ). ໂດຍໃຫ້ເລືອກເອົາເລກທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ນັ້ນໃສ່ຕາມຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ກ) ແທນຄຳຕອບ.

ໝວດ (ກ)

_____ ກ. ພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າ

_____ ຂ. ຜູ້ສມັກຫຼືຜູ້ແຂ່ງ

_____ ຄ. ຫົວໜ້າຜູ້ນຳພາກສາ

_____ ງ. ບຸກຄົນສ່ວນຕົວ

_____ ຈ. ແບບຢ່າງທີ່ທຳມາກ່ອນ

_____ ສ. ຄັງ

_____ ຊ. ຄະນະເລືອກຕັ້ງ

ໝວດ (ຂ)

໑. ຜູ້ທີ່ສແວງຫາຫຼືຖືກແຕ່ງຕັ້ງປະຈຳຕຳແໜ່ງສູງທີ ມີກຽດ.

໒. ຄະນະທີ່ຖືກເລືອກມາສຳຫຼັບເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີ ແລະ ຮອງປະທານາທິບໍດີຂອງສະຫະລັດອະເມລິກາ.

໓. ເຄື່ອງດື່ມທີ່ກັ່ນກອງອອກມາ ເມື່ອດື່ມແລ້ວພາໃຫ້ຮູ້ສຶກມຶນເມົາ.

໔. ພາສີທີ່ຣັຖບານເກັບຈາກສິນຄ້າທີ່ຈະສົ່ງຂາຍໃຫ້ຕ່າງປະເທດ.

໕. ບ່ອນເກັບຮັກສາຊັບສົມບັດ.

໖. ການກະທຳຊຶ່ງອາດຖືກນຳເອົາໃຊ້ເປັນຕົວຢ່າງ.

ກ. ທີ່ກ່ຽວກັບຄົນຜູ້ນຶ່ງຜູ້ດຽວ.

____ ຍ. ເຈົ້າ   ຮ. ຜູ້ພິພາກສາທີ່ເປັນປະທານໃນສານສູງສຸດ
ຂອງສະຫະຣັຖ.

໓. ຄຳສັ່ງ : ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ໝາຍຕົວອັກສອນ T ໃສ່ໜ້າ ຫາກເຫັນວ່າປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກ. ຖ້າຜິດໃຫ້ໝາຍ F ໃສ່.

____ ໑. ໃນຣັຖທັມມະນູນໃໝ່ນີ້ ສິ່ງທຳອິດທີ່ຈະຕ້ອງໄດ້ກະທຳນັ້ນ ແມ່ນການເລືອກຕັ້ງເອົາປະທານາທິບໍດີ.

____ ໒. ຄະນະກັມມະການເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີ ໄດ້ເລືອກເອົາທ່ານ George Washington ເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີຄົນທຳອິດຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

____ ໓. ຣັຖທັມມະນູນບໍ່ໄດ້ບົ່ງໃຫ້ມີການຕັ້ງຄະນະຣັຖບານ.

____ ໔. ບັນຫາທີ່ໜັກໜ່ວງທີ່ສຸດຂອງຣັຖບານໃໝ່ນັ້ນ ແມ່ນກ່ຽວກັບເງິນແລະການຄັງ.

____ ໕. ການເກັບພາສີ ເພື່ອນຳເອົາເງິນມາຈ່າຍໜີ້ສິນຂອງຊາດນັ້ນບໍ່ມີ.

____ ໖. ແຜນການຂອງທ່ານ Hamilton ໄດ້ຖືກຄັດຄ້ານຢ່າງໜັກ.

____ ໗. ໃນການຕັ້ງທະນາຄານຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິການັ້ນ ກໍໄດ້ມີການຂັດແຍ່ງເກີດຂຶ້ນເຊັ່ນກັນ.

____ ໘. ມາດຕະການຂອງທ່ານ Hamilton ໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ມີການແບ່ງແຍກໃນປະເທດເກີດຂຶ້ນ.

____ ໙. ພວກ Federalists ເປັນຊາວອະເມຣິກັນທີ່ຮັ່ງມີ.

____ ໑໐. ນັກການເມືອງແລະກິຈການຂອງນັກການເມືອງດັ່ງກ່າວ ໄດ້ມີສ່ວນພົວພັນກັບຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຂອງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຢ່າງເລິກຊຶ້ງ.

ຄ. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ : ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າ ຫຼື ໝວດຄຳເວົ້າດັ່ງຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຫຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ : ການແປຄວາມໝາຍ, ຊົ່ວຄາວ, ທີ່ປຶກສາ, ຣັຖ, ຄະນະຜູ້ເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີ, ນັກການເມືອງ, ແບບຢ່າງ, ຜູ້ມີພາກສາຣ່ວມ, ສະແນກຝ່າຍປົກຄອງ, ສໄມ.

໑. ຣັຖທັມມະນູນໄດ້ບົ່ງໄວ້ວ່າ ບັນດາຜູ້ປ່ອນບັດນັ້ນຕ້ອງໄດ້ເລືອກເອົາສະມາຊິກຂອງ ____________ ____________________ ຊຶ່ງຈະໄດ້ເລືອກເອົາປະທານາທິບໍດີໃນຂັ້ນຕໍ່ໄປ.

໒. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Washington ໄດ້ເຂົ້າຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງໃນເດືອນ ເມສາ ໑໗໘໙ ໃນເມືອງຫຼວງ ________________________ ທີ່ນະຄອນ New York.

໓. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Washington ໄດ້ຄອງຕຳແໜ່ງປະທານາທິບໍດີຢູ່ສອງ ____________ ຫຼືໃນກຳໜົດແປດປີ.

໔. ທັງສອງ ________________ ໄດ້ມີໂອກາດທົດສອບຄວາມເຂັ້ມແຂງຂອງພວກຕົນໃນການເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີໃນປີ ໑໗໙໖.

໕. ພວກ Federalists ໄດ້ສນັບສນູນໃຫ້ມີການ ____________________ ຂອງຣັຖທັມມະນູນແບບກວ້າງ ຊຶ່ງໄດ້ມອບອຳນາດອັນຫຼວງຫຼາຍໃຫ້ແກ່ຣັຖບານກາງ.

໖. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Washington ໄດ້ສ້າງ ________________ ໃນສໄມທີ່ທ່ານເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີຊຸດທຳອິດ.

໗. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ ໄດ້ຕັ້ງ ____________________ ທ້າຄົນສໍາຄັນປະຈໍາຢູ່ໃນສານສູງສຸດ.

໘. ໃນເວລາທີ່ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Washington ເຂົ້າຮັບຕໍາແໜ່ງນັ້ນ ____________________ ຂອງສະຫະລັດເກືອບເປົ່າ.

໙. ສະມາຊິກຄະນະລັດຖະບານກໍຍັງມີໜ້າທີ່ເປັນ ____________________ ຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີອີກດ້ວຍ.

໑໐. ໃນຖານະເປັນຫົວໜ້າຂອງ ____________________ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Washington ໄດ້ຮູ້ວ່າທ່ານບໍ່ສາມາດຈະປະຕິບັດໜ້າທີ່ທຸກອັນໄດ້.

Section III
Progress Of The New Nation

ໝວດ III : ຄວາມກ້າວໜ້າຂອງປະເທດໃໝ່

ພາກ ໒ : ຍຸກສໄມຂອງທ່ານ

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ :

political party: ພັກການເມືອງ

There are two major political parties in the U.S. today.

presidential candidate: ຜູ້ສມັກເລືອກຕັ້ງເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ

The Democratic Party chose Walter Mondale as its presidential candidate.

interpretation: ການແປຄວາມໝາຍ

Thomas Jefferson wanted a strict interpretation of the Constitution.

revolutionary: ການພິກປະວັດ

Jefferson believed that his victory in the 1800 election was revolutionary.

purchase: ການຊື້

The Louisiana purchase in 1803 doubled the size of the United States.

neutrality: ເປັນກາງ

The United States adopted a policy of neutrality with regard to European conflict.

invade: ບຸກລຸກ

An American unit invaded Canada but was defeated by the British army.

9.1. JEFFERSON IN POWER

9.1.1. During the terms of President Washington, a conflict developed between Thomas Jefferson and Alexander Hamilton. Hamilton favored a strong central government, but Jefferson wanted the states to have most of the power. Jefferson also favored more democracy than Hamilton. Disputes also arose between the followers of these two leaders. They formed two different **political parties.** Hamilton was the leader of the Federalist party and Jefferson was the leader of the Anti-Federalists or Democratic-Republican Party. These were the first American political parties. Each party chose its candidate for the presidential election. They were called **presidential candidates.**

9.1.2. In the presidential election of 1800, the Federalists chose John Adams and Charles C. Pinckney as their candidates, while the Democratic-Republicans nominated Jefferson with Aaron Burr as his running mate. John Adams got 65 electoral votes, Charles C. Pickney got 64, Jefferson and Aaron Burr both got 73 electoral votes. At that time, electors voted for two candidates without distinguishing between President and Vice-President. When Jefferson and Burr got the same number of electoral votes, the House of Representatives had to decide which candidate should become President. The House gave the majority of their votes to Jefferson, and he became President, while Burr became Vice-

President. To avoid this situation again, the Twelfth Amendment was added to the Constitution in 1804.

9.1.3. Jefferson had often said that a simple government was the best government. He favored states' rights and he wanted a strict interpretation of the Constitution. Some Federalists were afraid that the new administration, guided by Jefferson's political ideas would destroy many of the Federalists' programs. But as it turned out, the new administration built its program upon the foundations of government that had been set up by the Federalists.

9.1.4. President Jefferson's financial policies were much more popular than those of Hamilton. There was a national bank that funded the national debt, and the federal government took responsibility for paying the state debts. Other Republican policies also gave the Federal Government an important role in guiding the nation.

9.1.5. Jefferson believed that his victory in the 1800 election was **revolutionary**. There were many changes under his administration. He appointed a new Secretary of the Treasury, Albert Gallatin. Gallatin tried to reduce the amount of the federal debt. The size of the army became smaller under Republican rule, and a new Judiciary Act was passed. This act cut down the number of federal judges. The federal courts, thus, were made less important than the

Federalists had anticipated.

In other areas, Jefferson's policies were much less revolutionary. Many of his actions were in keeping with Federalist policy. One of these actions dealt with the Louisiana **Purchase**.

9.2. THE LOUISIANA PURCHASE

9.2.1. As the young nation was maturing in North America, the war between Britain and France still continued in Europe. Many Americans wanted the United States to side with Britain. Others wanted the United States to join in the war and help France. Three Presidents, Washington, Adams, and Jefferson, decided to keep the United States out of war under a policy of neutrality.

9.2.2. In the meantime, Napoleon succeeded in conquering much of Europe and only the British navy kept Napoleon from a final victory. The war in Europe was becoming a danger to the United States because both British and French warships began to seize American ships on the seas to prevent them from trading with the other side. To stay out of war, President Jefferson put an embargo on American goods being shipped to Europe. This nearly ruined the American merchants. It was a very hard time for the new American nation. However, one good thing came out of the war in Europe. By a secret treaty in 1800, Spain agreed to cede New Orleans and the Louisiana

Territory to France. President Jefferson found out about that treaty in 1801. He was afraid of the French influence in the west of his country, because if France could control the Mississippi River and close the port of New Orleans, it could ruin many American farmers in the West. Jefferson decided to buy New Orleans from France to keep the city open for use by ships from inlands.

9.2.3. The United States only asked to buy New Orleans, but France wanted to sell the whole Louisiana Territory along with New Orleans. The price was only 15 million dollars. At first, President Jefferson worried whether he had the right to make such a purchase. At last he decided to buy the land, and Congress approved the purchase in 1803. The Louisiana Purchase doubled the size of the United States.

9.3. THE WAR OF 1812 AND THE TREATY OF GHENT

9.3.1. The war between France and Britain in Europe affected politics in the United States. The Federalists usually favored Britain, but France was generally favored by Republicans. However, most Americans wanted to keep the United States out of wars in Europe. British and French warships often seized American ships on the sea, but most of the ships were seized by the British navy. They also took sailors off American ships and forced them to become British sailors. This action angered many Americans and they called openly for war against Britain. Britain tried to prevent war and ordered its navy to stop seizing American ships. But Britain's order came too late. It took weeks for the news to reach the United States. Before that time, on June 18, 1812, Congress had already declared war on Britain.

9.3.2. Americans were not united during the war. The New England states did not want war because New Englanders depended upon trade and shipping, and a war with Britain could ruin New England. The Southern and Western states favored the war. To them it was a "second war of independence" from Britain. They also hoped to seize Canada, defeat the Western Indians, and get more lands.

9.3.3. The War of 1812 went badly for the United States. An American unit invaded Canada and was defeated by British forces. In 1814, British forces captured Washington D.C. and burned the United States capital including the White House. The United States navy fought bravely. The most famous warship, the Constitution, won many victories over British ships.

9.3.4. In 1814, Napoleon was defeated in Europe. Britain decided to end the war with the United States. A peace treaty was signed in Ghent on Christmas Eve, 1814, but the news took two weeks to reach the United States. During these two weeks, the American and British soldiers continued to fight the battle of New Orleans. The United States won a decisive victory and General Andrew Jackson became a great American hero.

9.3.5. The war had few direct results. Almost everything returned to the way it had been before the war. The British no longer had reason to seize American ships and they stopped giving arms to the Indians in the West. There were no boundary changes and many Americans thought that the War of 1812 seemed to have been a "needless war".

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

POLITICAL
JOHN ADAMS
NEUTRALITY
INTERPRETATION
LOUISIANA
PURCHASE
INVADE
JEFFERSON
DEMOCRACY
DECISIVE

POWER
ELECT
PARTY
HOUSE
DECIDE
NATION
STRICT
IDEAS
RULE
RIGHT

AMENDMENT
ADMINISTRATION
FOUNDATION
STATE
FEDERALIST
DEBT
AREA
NAPOLEON
BRITAIN

VICTORY
NEW ORLEANS
INLANDS
SAILOR
INDEPENDENCE
BOUNDARY
NEEDLESS WAR
ARMS
WARSHIP

D E M O C R A C Y F E D E R A L I S T
J O H N A D A M S O Y N A T I O N O N
D E C I D E E M O T A M E N D M E N T
T S T A T E S R I G H T S D E B T O N
C S T R I C T L L P A R T Y R U L E M
E I D E A S A A F O U N D A T I O N C
L O V E B R C P U R C H A S E A R E A
E Y E U T I N T E R P R E T A T I O N
R X Y U T L C O I N A P O L E O N O N
E M E I A Y E H J E F F E R S O N E M
W N L E O I N V A D E B R I T A I N X
O O L O U I S I A N A V I C T O R Y S
P A D M I N I S T R A T I O N B C I H
H N E W O R L E A N S I N L A N D S X
O S A I L O R I N D E P E N D E N C E
U B O U N D A R Y W A R S H I P E M O
S N E E D L E S S W A R A R M S X M N
E D E C I S I V E V I C T O R Y W A N

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A	B
____ a. invade	1. kept within narrow and specific limits.
____ b. sailor	2. the activities of a

		sovereign state in the exercise of its powers or duties.
____	c. strict	3. a town or a city that is the official seat of government in a state or nation.
____	d. revolution	4. to enter by force in order to conquer.
____	e. purchase	5. the purchase by the U.S. from France in 1803 of an area lying between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains and between Canada and the Gulf of Mexico.
____	f. political	6. a number more than half of the total number of a given group.
____	g. majority	7. to obtain in exchange for money or its equivalent.
____	h. capital	8. a sudden political overthrow or seizure of power brought about from within a given system.
____	i. Louisiana Purchase	9. one who serves in a navy or works on a ship.

III. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T to each statement if it is true. Put an F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. During the terms of President Washington, a conflict developed between Thomas Jefferson and Alexander Hamilton.

____ 2. Hamilton was the leader of the Federalist party and Jefferson was the leader of the Anti-Federalists or Democratic-Republican party.

____ 3. The House gave a majority of votes to Burr, and he became President, Jefferson became Vice-President.

____ 4. Jefferson had often said that a simple government was the worst government.

____ 5. Three Presidents, Washington, Adams, and Jefferson, decided to keep the United States out of war under a policy of neutrality.

____ 6. The United States only asked to buy New Orleans, but France wanted to sell the whole Louisiana Territory along with New Orleans.

____ 7. Americans were united during the war of 1812.

____ 8. In 1814, British forces captured Washington D.C. and burned the United States capital including the White House.

____ 9. A peace treaty was signed in Ghent on Christmas Eve, 1814, but the news took two weeks to reach the United States.

____10. There were no boundary changes and many Americans thought that the War of 1812 seemed to have been a "needless war".

IV. Fill in the blanks:

Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: financial policies, neutrality, secret treaty, a purchase, invaded, boundary, political parties, electoral votes, strict interpretation, democracy.

1. Hamilton favored a strong central government, but Jefferson wanted the states to have most of the power. Jefferson also favored more _________ than Hamilton.
2. Hamilton was the leader of the Federalist Party and Jefferson was the leader of the Anti-Federalists or Democratic-Republican Party. These were the first American ____________ .
3. Jefferson and Burr got the same number of ____________ . The House of Representatives had to decide which candidate should become President.
4. Jefferson had often said that a simple government was the best government. He favored states' rights and he wanted a ____________ of the Constitution.
5. President Jefferson's __________________ were much more popular than those of Hamilton. There was a national bank that funded the national debt, and the federal government took responsibility for paying the state debts.
6. Three Presidents, Washington, Adams, and Jefferson, decided

to keep the United States out of war under a policy of ____________ .

7. By a ________________ in 1800, Spain agreed to cede New Orleans and the Louisiana Territory to France.
8. President Jefferson worried whether he had the right to make such ____________ .
9. The war of 1812 went badly for the United States. An American unit ________________ Canada and was defeated by British forces.
10. There were no _____________ changes and many Americans thought that the War of 1812 seemed to have been a "needless war".

ບົດອ່ານ

ພ.໑. ການຄອງອຳນາດຂອງທ່ານ Jefferson .

ພ.໑. ໃນສໄມທີ່ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Washington ປົກຄອງຢູ່ນັ້ນ ການຂັດແຍ່ງຣະຫວ່າງທ່ານ Thomas Jefferson ແລະ ທ່ານ Alexander Hamilton ໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນ. ທ່ານ Hamilton ໄດ້ຕັ້ງດີໃຫ້ມີຣັຖບານກາງມີອຳນາດຢ່າງເຂັ້ມແຂງ ແຕ່ທ່ານ Jefferson ນັ້ນຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ບັນດາຣັຖຕ່າງໆມີອຳນາດສ່ວນຫຼາຍ. ການຈີກຈອງໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນຣະຫວ່າງຄະນະຂອງຜູ້ນຳສອງທ່ານເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນເຊັ່ນກັນ. ທັງສອງຝ່າຍໄດ້ພາກັນຕັ້ງພັກການເມືອງທີ່ແຕກຕ່າງກັນຂຶ້ນ. ທ່ານ Hamilton ໄດ້ເປັນຜູ້ນຳຂອງພັກ Federalists ແລະ ທ່ານ Jefferson ເປັນຜູ້ນຳຂອງພວກ Anti-Federalists ຫຼືພັກ Democratic - Republican . ພັກເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນເປັນພັກການເມືອງຈຸດທຳອິດຂອງອະເມຣິກາ. ແຕ່ລະພັກໄດ້ເລືອກຜູ້ແຂ່ງຂອງຕົນເພື່ອສມັກເລືອກຕັ້ງເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ບັນດາຜູ້ສະມັກດັ່ງກ່າວເອີ້ນວ່າ ຜູ້ສະມັກເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ ຫຼື presidential candidates.

ພ.໑.໒. ໃນການເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີໃນປີ ໑໘໐໐ ພວກ Federalists ໄດ້ເລືອກເອົາທ່ານ John Adams ແລະ ທ່ານ Charles C.Pinckneyເປັນຜູ້ສມັກຂອງຝ່າຍຕົນ. ສ່ວນພວກ Democratic-Republicans ນັ້ນໄດ້ແຕ່ງຕັ້ງທ່ານ Jefferson ແລະ ທ່ານ Aaron Burr ເປັນຜູ້ແຂ່ງ. ທ່ານ John Adams ໄດ້ຮັບຄະແນນສຽງຈາກຄະນະເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີ ໖໕ ສຽງ ທ່ານ Charles C. Pinckney ໄດ້ຮັບ ໖໔ ສຽງ. ສ່ວນທ່ານ Jefferson ແລະທ່ານ Aaron Burr ໄດ້ຮັບ ໗໓ ສຽງທັງສອງ. ໃນເວລານັ້ນຄະນະຜູ້ເລືອກຕັ້ງໄດ້ປ່ອນບັດເລືອກເອົາຜູ້ສມັກສອງຄົນ ໂດຍບໍ່ໄດ້ຈຳແນກຣະຫວ່າງປະທານາທິບໍດີແລະຮອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ເມື່ອທ່ານ Jefferson ແລະທ່ານ Burr ໄດ້ຮັບຄະແນນສຽງເທົ່າກັນ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ສະມາຊິກສະພາຕ່ຳຈຶ່ງຕ້ອງໄດ້ທຳການຕັດສິນວ່າ ໃຜຈະຕ້ອງໄດ້ເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ສະພາຕ່ຳໄດ້ອອກສຽງສ່ວນຫຼາຍໃຫ້ແກ່ທ່ານ Jefferson . ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ທ່ານຈຶ່ງໄດ້ກາຍເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ ແລະ ທ່ານ Burr ເປັນຮອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ເພື່ອຫຼີກລ່ຽງບໍ່ໃຫ້ມີສະພາບການແບບນັ້ນເກີດຂຶ້ນອີກຕໍ່ໄປ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ມີການເພີ່ມຂໍ້ແກ້ໄຂຣັຖທັມມະນູນຂໍ້ທີສິບສອງເຂົ້າໃນຣັຖທັມມະນູນໃນປີ ໑໘໐໔.

ພ.໑.໓. ທ່ານ Jefferson ເຄີຍໄດ້ກ່າວຢູ່ເລື້ອຍໆວ່າ ຣັຖບານທີ່ບໍ່ສະລັບສັບຊ້ອນນັ້ນ ຄື ຣັຖບານທີ່ດີທີ່ສຸດ. ທ່ານໄດ້ສນັບສນູນສິດຂອງຣັຖຕ່າງໆ ແລະທ່ານຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ມີການແປຄວາມໝາຍຂອງຣັຖທັມມະນູນຢ່າງເຄັ່ງຄັດ. ພວກ Federalists ບາງຄົນຢ້ານກົວວ່າ ຣັຖບານໃໝ່ຈຶ່ງຊິຈ່ອງຄຶງໄປຕາມແນວຄິດທາງດ້ານການເມືອງຂອງທ່ານ Jefferson ນັ້ນ ຈະທຳລາຍແຜນການຫຼາຍຢ່າງຂອງພວກຕົນ. ແຕ່ບັງເອີນວ່າ ຣັຖບານໃໝ່ໄດ້ວາງແຜນການບົນພື້ນຖານຂອງຣັຖບານທີ່ພວກ Federalists ນັ້ນໄດ້ຕັ້ງໄວ້.

ພ.໑.໔. ນະໂຍບາຍດ້ານການເງິນຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Jefferson ໄດ້ຣັບຄວາມນິຍົມຫຼາຍກວ່າຂອງທ່ານ Hamilton . ທະນາຄານແຫ່ງຊາດໄດ້ຖືກຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນ ເພື່ອກຳກັບການຈ່າຍໜີ້ສິນຂອງຊາດ ແລະ ຣັຖບານກາງກໍໄດ້ເອົາຄວາມຮັບຜິດຊອບໃນການຈ່າຍໜີ້ສິນຂອງບັນດາຣັຖຕ່າງໆ. ນະໂຍບາຍຢ່າງອື່ນຂອງພວກ Republican ໄດ້ມອບບົດບາດອັນສຳຄັນໃຫ້ແກ່ຣັຖບານກາງໃນການນຳພາປະເທດຊາດ.

ພ.໑.໕. ທ່ານ Jefferson ໄດ້ເຊື່ອວ່າໄຊຊະນະຂອງທ່ານໃນການເລືອກຕັ້ງໃນປີ ໑໘໐໐ ນັ້ນເປັນການພິກປະວັດ. ພາຍໃຕ້ການປົກຄອງຂອງທ່ານ ໄດ້ມີການປ່ຽນແປງຫຼາຍຢ່າງເກີດຂຶ້ນ. ທ່ານໄດ້ແຕ່ງຕັ້ງຣັຖມົນຕຣີຄັງຄົນໃໝ່ ຄືທ່ານ Albert Gallatin . ທ່ານ Gallatin ໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມເຮັດໃຫ້ໜີ້ສິນຂອງປະເທດລຸດນ້ອຍລົງ. ກອງທັບກໍໄດ້ມີຂະໜາດນ້ອຍລົງ ແລະ ດຳຣັດໃໝ່ກ່ຽວດ້ານຍຸດຕິທັມກໍໄດ້ອອກມາ. ດຳຣັດດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ໄດ້ຕັດຈຳນວນຜູ້ພິພາກສາໃນວົງຣັຖບານກາງລົງ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນສານຕ່າງໆຂອງຣັຖບານກາງ ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ມີຄວາມສຳຄັນນ້ອຍກວ່າທີ່ພວກ Federalists ໄດ້ຄາດໝາຍລ່ວງໜ້າເອົາໄວ້. ສຳຫຼັບຂະແໜງອື່ນ ນະໂຍບາຍຂອງທ່ານ Jefferson ບໍ່ເຄັ່ງຄັດພໍເທົ່າໃດ. ການປະຕິບັດຂອງທ່ານຫຼາຍຢ່າງ ແມ່ນຢູ່ໃນນະໂຍບາຍຂອງພວກ Federalists ການປະຕິບັດຢ່າງໜຶ່ງນັ້ນ ແມ່ນກ່ຽວກັບການຊື້ເອົາຣັຖ LOUISIANA.

ພ.໒. ການຊື້ເອົາຣັຖ LOUISIANA .

ພ.໒.໑. ໃນຂະນະທີ່ປະເທດໜຸ່ມນ້ອຍໄດ້ແກ່ກ້າຂຶ້ນໃນອະເມຣິກາເໜືອນັ້ນ ສົງຄາມຣະຫວ່າງປະເທດ

ອັງກິດ ແລະ ຝຣັ່ງເສດ ຍັງໄດ້ດຳເນີນຢູ່ຕໍ່ໄປໃນຢູໂຣບ. ຈາວອະເມຣິກັນຫຼາຍຄົນຕ້ອງການຢາກໃຫ້ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາເຂົ້າຂ້າງປະເທດອັງກິດ. ພວກອື່ນອີກຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາເຂົ້າຮ່ວມໃນສົງຄາມເພື່ອຊ່ວຍປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີສາມທ່ານ ຄື ທ່ານ Washington , ທ່ານ Adams ແລະ ທ່ານ Jefferson ໄດ້ຕັດສິນໃຈໃຫ້ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາຢູ່ຕ່າງຈາກສົງຄາມ ໂດຍຖືນະໂຍບາຍເປັນກາງ.

ພ.໔.໔. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງນັ້ນ Napoleon ສາມາດຍຶດຄອງສ່ວນຫຼາຍຂອງຢູໂຣບ. ຍັງມີແຕ່ກອງທັບເຮືອອັງກິດເທົ່ານັ້ນ ທີ່ຕ້ານ Napoleon ໄວ້ເພື່ອບໍ່ໃຫ້ຍຶດຢູໂຣບທັງໝົດ. ສົງຄາມໃນຢູໂຣບໄດ້ກາຍເປັນພັຍໃຫ້ແກ່ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ເພາະວ່າ ທັງກຳປັ່ນຮົບຂອງອັງກິດແລະຂອງຝຣັ່ງເສດໄດ້ພາກັນເລີ້ມຍຶດກຳປັ່ນອະເມຣິກັນໃນກາງທະເລ ເພື່ອຫ້າມບໍ່ໃຫ້ທຳການຄ້າກັບຝ່າຍໃດຝ່າຍນຶ່ງ. ເພື່ອຫຼີກສົງຄາມ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Jefferson ໄດ້ອອກຄຳສັ່ງຫ້າມບໍ່ໃຫ້ສົ່ງສິນຄ້າອະເມຣິກັນໄປຍັງຢູໂຣບ ຊຶ່ງເປັນເຫດໃຫ້ບັນດາພໍ່ຄ້າຈາວອະເມຣິກັນເກືອບຫຼົ້ມຈົມ. ເຫດການດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ປະເທດໃໝ່ຕົກຢູ່ໃນພາວະທີ່ລຳບາກທີ່ສຸດ. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍດີ ສົງຄາມໃນຢູໂຣບໄດ້ມີສ່ວນດີຢູ່ຢ່າງນຶ່ງ. ໂດຍການທຳສົນທິສັນຍາລັບໃນປີ ໑໘໐໐ ປະເທດສະເປນໄດ້ມອບ New Orleans ແລະເຂດແດນ Louisiana ໃຫ້ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Jefferson ໄດ້ຮູ້ກ່ຽວກັບສົນທິສັນຍາດັ່ງກ່າວໃນປີ ໑໘໐໑. ທ່ານໄດ້ມີຄວາມຢ້ານກົວຕໍ່ອິດທິພົນຂອງຝຣັ່ງເສດໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກຂອງປະເທດຂອງທ່ານ ເພາະຖ້າຫາກປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດສາມາດຄວບຄຸມແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi ແລະປິດທ່າເຮືອຂອງ New Orleans ແລ້ວ ຈາວອະເມຣິກັນໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກອາດສາມາດຫຼົ້ມຈົມໄດ້. ດັ່ງນັ້ນທ່ານ Jefferson ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຕັດສິນໃຈຊື້ເອົາ New Orleans ຈາກປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ ເພື່ອໃຫ້ກຳປັ່ນທີ່ມາຈາກໃນປະເທດໃຊ້ຕົວເມືອງດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້.

ພ.໔.໕. ຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວ ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາຊື້ພຽງແຕ່ New Orleans ເທົ່ານັ້ນ ແຕ່ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດຕ້ອງການຂາຍເຂດແດນ Louisiana ທັງໝົດພ້ອມດ້ວຍ New Orleans ຊຶ່ງມີຣາຄາພຽງ ໑໕ ລ້ານໂດລາເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ໃນທຳອິດ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Jefferson ເປັນຫ່ວງວ່າທ່ານຈະມີສິດຊື້ຫຼືບໍ່. ໃນທີ່ສຸດທ່ານໄດ້ຕັດສິນໃຈຊື້ດິນດັ່ງກ່າວ ຊຶ່ງສະພາໄດ້ຮັບຮູ້ການຊື້ໃນປີ ໑໘໐໓. ການຊື້ Louisiana ໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາມີຂນາດໃຫຍ່ຂຶ້ນສອງເທົ່າ.

ພ.໓. ສົງຄາມປີ ໑໘໑໒ ແລະສົນທິສັນຍາ GHENT .

ພ.໓.໑. ສົງຄາມລະຫວ່າງປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດແລະປະເທດອັງກິດໃນຢູໂຣບ ໄດ້ກະທົບກະເທືອນການເມືອງໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ທັມມະດາແລ້ວ ພວກ Federalists ສນັບສນູນປະເທດອັງກິດ ແລະ ພວກ Republicans ສ່ວນໃຫ່ຍແລ້ວແມ່ນສນັບສນູນປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍດີ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນສ່ວນຫຼາຍຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາຫຼີກຈາກສົງຄາມໃນຢູໂຣບ. ກຳປັ່ນຣົບຂອງອັງກິດແລະຂອງຝຣັ່ງເສດມັກຍຶດກຳປັ່ນອະເມຣິກັນໃນທະເລ ແຕ່ກຳປັ່ນສ່ວນຫຼາຍນັ້ນຖືກຍຶດໂດຍກອງທັບເຮືອອັງກິດ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍຍັງໄດ້ຈັບນັກເດີນເຮືອຊາວອະເມຣິກັນ ແລ້ວບັງຄັບເຂົາເຈົ້າໃຫ້ເປັນລູກເດີນເຮືອອັງກິດນຳອີກ. ການກະທຳດັ່ງກ່າວ ໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍມີຄວາມຄຽດແຄ້ນ ແລະ ພາໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າປະກາດທຳສົງຄາມກັບປະເທດອັງກິດຢ່າງເປີດເຜີຍ. ປະເທດອັງກິດໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມປ້ອງກັນບໍ່ໃຫ້ເກີດສົງຄາມແລະໄດ້ອອກຄຳສັ່ງໃຫ້ກອງທັບເຮືອຂອງຕົນຢຸດຕິການຍຶດກຳປັ່ນອະເມຣິກັນ. ແຕ່ວ່າ ຄຳສັ່ງຈາກປະເທດອັງກິດໄປໄດ້ມາເຖິງຊ້າເກີນໄປ. ການສົ່ງຂ່າວຈາກປະເທດອັງກິດຫາສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ໃຊ້ເວລາຫຼາຍອາທິດ. ກ່ອນທີ່ຂ່າວຈະມາເຖິງນັ້ນ ສະພາໄດ້ປະກາດສົງຄາມກັບປະເທດອັງກິດໄປແລ້ວ ຄືໃນວັນທີ່ ໑໘ ມິຖຸນາ ໑໘໑໒.

ພ.໓.໒. ໃນສໄມສົງຄາມນັ້ນ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນບໍ່ໄດ້ມີຄວາມສາມັກຄີກັນ. ຣັຖຕ່າງໆໃນ New England ບໍ່ໄດ້ຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ມີສົງຄາມ ຍ້ອນເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ອາໃສ່ການຄ້າແລະການເດີນເຮືອ. ສະນັ້ນ ສົງຄາມອາດສາມາດພາໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຮັບຄວາມເສັຽຫາຍ. ບັນດາຣັຖໃນພາກໃຕ້ ແລະ ພາກຕາເວັນຕົກນັ້ນ ໄດ້ສນັບສນູນໃຫ້ມີສົງຄາມ. ສຳຫຼັບພວກດັ່ງກ່າວແລ້ວ ສົງຄາມທີ່ວ່ານີ້ເປັນ "ສົງຄາມຕໍ່ສູ້ເອກຣາດຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງ" ຈາກປະເທດອັງກິດ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າຍັງໄດ້ຫວັງອີກວ່າຈະຍຶດເອົາ Canada ແລະ ທຳລາຍພວກອິນເດັຽແດງໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ ແລະ ໄດ້ດິນຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນອີກ.

ພ.໓.໓. ສົງຄາມໃນປີ ໑໘໑໒ ໄດ້ເປັນໄປໃນທາງບໍ່ດີສຳຫຼັບສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ກອງທະຫານອະເມຣິກັນກອງນຶ່ງ ໄດ້ບຸກລຸກ Canada ແລະ ໄດ້ຖືກທຳລາຍໂດຍກຳລັງທະຫານອັງກິດ. ໃນປີ ໑໘໑໔ ກຳລັງທະຫານອັງກິດໄດ້ຍຶດເອົາ Washington D.C. ແລະໄດ້ທຳການຈູດເຜົາເມືອງຫຼວງຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ຮວມທັງທຳນຽບຂາວອີກດ້ວຍ. ກອງທັບເຮືອສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຕໍ່ສູ້ຢ່າງກ້າຫານ.

ກຳປັ່ນຮົບທີ່ມີຊື່ສຽງທີ່ສຸດ ຊຶ່ງມີຊື່ວ່າ Constitution ນັ້ນ ໄດ້ໄຊຊະນະກຳປັ່ນຂອງພວກອັງກິດ ຫຼາຍຄັ້ງດ້ວຍກັນ.

ຍ.ມ.໔. ໃນປີ ໑໘໑໔ Napoleon ໄດ້ຮັບຄວາມພ່າຍແພ້ສົງຄາມໃນຢູໂຣບ. ປະເທດອັງກິດ ໄດ້ຕັດສິນໃຈຢຸດຕິສົງຄາມກັບສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ໃນມື້ດນາກ່ອນວັນຄຣິສມາສຂອງປີ ໑໘໑໔ ໄດ້ມີການເຊັນສັນຍາສງົບເສິກຢູ່ທີ່ Ghent ແຕ່ຂ່າວກ່ຽວກັບເຣື່ອງນີ້ ໄດ້ໃຊ້ເວລາສອງອາທິດ ກ່ອນທີ່ຈະເຖິງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ແລະໃນຣະຫວ່າງສອງອາທິດດັ່ງກ່າວ ທະຫານອະເມຣິກັນແລະທະຫານອັງກິດໄດ້ດຳເນີນຕໍ່ສູ້ໄປໃນສະນາມຮົບຂອງເມືອງ New Orleans . ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ໄຊຊະນະຢ່າງເດັດຂາດ ແລະ ນາຍພົນ Andrew Jackson ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນວິຣະບຸຣຸດອະເມຣິກັນທີ່ຍິ່ງໃຫຍ່.

ພ.ມ.໔. ສົງຄາມໄດ້ຮັບຜົນທາງກົງບາງຢ່າງ. ເກືອບທຸກສິ່ງທຸກຢ່າງໄດ້ກັບສູ່ສະພາບທີ່ເຄີຍເປັນມາ ກ່ອນສໄນສົງຄາມ. ພວກອັງກິດໝົດຫວັງທີ່ຈະຍຶດກຳປັ່ນອະເມຣິກັນອີກຕໍ່ໄປ ແລະ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຢຸດຕິການສົ່ງອາວຸດໃຫ້ແກ່ພວກອິນເດັຍແດງໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ. ຊາຍແດນກໍ່ບໍ່ໄດ້ມີການປ່ຽນແປງຫຍັງ ແລະ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ພາກັນມີຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກວ່າ ສົງຄາມໃນປີ ໑໘໑໔ ນັ້ນ ເປັນ "ສົງຄາມທີ່ບໍ່ມີຄວາມຈຳເປັນ".

EXERCISES

I. WORD SEARCH PUZZLE :

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle belows. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໃນກະດານສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ, ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ພ້ອມຄວາມໝາຍແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍ.

POLITICAL
JOHN ADAMS
NEUTRALITY
INTERPRETATION
LOUISIANA
PURCHASE
INVADE
JEFFERSON
DEMOCRACY
DECISIVE

POWER
ELECT
PARTY
HOUSE
DECIDE
NATION
STRICT
IDEAS
RULE
RIGHT

AMENDMENT
ADMINISTRATION
FOUNDATION
STATE
FEDERALIST
DEBT
AREA
NAPOLEON
BRITAIN

VICTORY
NEW ORLEANS
INLANDS
SAILOR
INDEPENDENCE
BOUNDARY
NEEDLESS WAR
ARMS
WARSHIP

D	E	M	O	C	R	A	C	Y	F	E	D	E	R	A	L	I	S	T
J	O	H	N	A	D	A	M	S	O	Y	N	A	T	I	O	N	O	N
D	E	C	I	D	E	E	M	O	T	A	M	E	N	D	M	E	N	T
T	S	T	A	T	E	S	R	I	G	H	T	S	D	E	B	T	O	N
C	S	T	R	I	C	T	L	L	P	A	R	T	Y	R	U	L	E	M
E	I	D	E	A	S	A	A	F	O	U	N	D	A	T	I	O	N	C
L	O	V	E	B	R	C	P	U	R	C	H	A	S	E	A	R	E	A
E	Y	E	U	T	I	N	T	E	R	P	R	E	T	A	T	I	O	N
R	X	Y	U	T	L	C	O	I	N	A	P	O	L	E	O	N	O	N
E	M	E	I	A	Y	E	H	J	E	F	F	E	R	S	O	N	E	M
W	N	L	E	O	I	N	V	A	D	E	B	R	I	T	A	I	N	X
O	O	L	O	U	I	S	I	A	N	A	V	I	C	T	O	R	Y	S
P	A	D	M	I	N	I	S	T	R	A	T	I	O	N	B	C	I	H
H	N	E	W	O	R	L	E	A	N	S	I	N	L	A	N	D	S	X
O	S	A	I	L	O	R	I	N	D	E	P	E	N	D	E	N	C	E
U	B	O	U	N	D	A	R	Y	W	A	R	S	H	I	P	E	M	O
S	N	E	E	D	L	E	S	S	W	A	R	A	R	M	S	X	M	N
E	D	E	C	I	S	I	V	E	V	I	C	T	O	R	Y	W	A	N

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ : (ເບິ່ງພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ :
ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາຄວາມເວົ້າແຕ່ລະຄວາມໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ຂ). ໂດຍໃຫ້ເລືອກເອົາເລກທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໃສ່ຕາມຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ກ) ແທນຄຳຕອບ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ກ. ບຸກລຸກ	໑. ຢູ່ໃນຂອບເຂດຈຳກັດແລະໂດຍສະເພາະ.
_____ ຂ. ນັກເດີນເຮືອ	໒. ກິຈະກັມຕ່າງໆຂອງຣັຖທີ່ມີອະທິປະໄຕໃນການປະຕິບັດອຳນາດໜ້າທີ່.
_____ ຄ. ເຄັ່ງຄັດ	໓. ຫົວເມືອງທີ່ຄະນະຣັຖບານຂອງປະເທດປະຈຳຢູ່ເປັນທາງການ.
_____ ງ. ການປະຕິວັດ	໔. ການໃຊ້ກຳລັງທະຫານເຂົ້າໄປເພື່ອຍຶດຄອງ.
_____ ຈ. ການຊື້	໕. ການຊື້ເອົາເຂດແດນທີ່ຢູ່ຣະຫວ່າງແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi ແລະພູເຂົາ Rocky Mountains ແລະຣະຫວ່າງ Canada ແລະອ່າວທະເລ Mexico ຂອງສະຫະຣັຖ ຈາກປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ.
_____ ສ. ທາງການເມືອງ	໖. ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍກ່ວາເຄິ່ງຂອງຈຳນວນທັງໝົດ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ຊ. ຈຳນວນສ່ວນຫຼາຍ	ກ. ການໃຊ້ເງິນເພື່ອແລກປ່ຽນເອົາສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງນຶ່ງ.
_____ ຍ. ເມືອງເອກ	ຂ. ການໂຄ້ນລົ້ມຫຼືການຍຶດອຳນາດທາງການເມືອງຢ່າງກະທັນຫັນໃນປະເທດໃດປະເທດນຶ່ງ.
_____ ດ. ການຈູ້	ຜ. ພວກທີ່ຮັບໃຊ້ໃນກອງທັບເຮືອຫຼືເຮັດວຽກໃນກຳປັ່ນ.

ມ. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ : ຈົ່ງອ່ານແຕ່ລະປະໂຫຍກຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ໝາຍຕົວອັກສອນ T ໃສ່ໜ້າຫາກເຫັນວ່າປະໂຫຍກນັ້ນຖືກ. ແລະໃຫ້ໝາຍຕົວອັກສອນ F ໃສ່ໜ້າຫາກວ່າຜິດ.

_____ ໑. ໃນສໄໝທີ່ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Washington ປົກຄອງຢູ່ນັ້ນ ການຂັດແຍ່ງລະຫວ່າງ ທ່ານ Thomas Jefferson ແລະ ທ່ານ Alexander Hamilton ໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນ.

_____ ໒. ທ່ານ Hamilton ເປັນຜູ້ນຳຂອງພັກ Federalists ແລະທ່ານ Jefferson ເປັນຜູ້ນຳຂອງພວກ Anti - Federalist ຫຼືພັກ Democratic - Republican Party.

_____ ໓. ສະພາຕ່ຳໄດ້ລົງຄະແນນສຽງສ່ວນຫຼາຍໃຫ້ທ່ານ Burr ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ທ່ານຈຶ່ງໄດ້ກາຍເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ ແລະ ທ່ານ Jefferson ໄດ້ເປັນຮອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ.

_____ ໔. ທ່ານ Jefferson ໄດ້ກ່າວຢູ່ເລື້ອຍໆວ່າ ຣັຖບານທີ່ບໍ່ສລັບສັບຊ້ອນນັ້ນ ເປັນຣັຖບານທີ່ດີທີ່ສຸດ.

_____ ໕. ປະທານາທິບໍດີສາມທ່ານ ຄື ທ່ານ Washington, Adams , ແລະ Jefferson ໄດ້ພາກັນຕັດສິນໃຈໃຫ້ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໜີຈາກສົງຄາມ ໂດຍຖືນະໂຍບາຍເປັນກາງ.

_____ ໖. ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ຊື້ເອົາແຕ່ເມືອງ New Orleans ເທົ່ານັ້ນ ແຕ່ວ່າ ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດຕ້ອງການຂາຍເຂດແດນຂອງ Louisiana ທັງໝົດພ້ອມດ້ວຍ New Orleans.

_____ ໗. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງສົງຄາມໃນປີ ໑໘໑໒ ນັ້ນ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ມີຄວາມສາມັກຄີກັນ.

_____ ໘. ໃນປີ ໑໘໑໔ ກຳລັງທະຫານອັງກິດໄດ້ຍຶດ Washington D.C. ແລະໄດ້ຈູດເຜົາເມືອງເອກຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ຣວມທັງທຳນຽບຂາວ.

_____ ໙. ໄດ້ມີການເຊັນສັນຍາສງົບເສິກໃນມື້ກ່ອນວັນຄຣິສມາສປີ ໑໘໑໔ ແຕ່ວ່າ ຂ່າວກ່ຽວກັບເຣື່ອງນີ້ໄດ້ໃຊ້ເວລາສອງອາທິດກ່ອນຈະເຖິງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

_____ ໑໐. ການປ່ຽນແປງຊາຍແດນນັ້ນບໍ່ໄດ້ມີແຕ່ປະໂຫຍດໃດ ແລະ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ມີຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກວ່າ ສົງຄາມໃນປີ ໑໘໑໒ ນັ້ນ ເປັນ "ສົງຄາມທີ່ບໍ່ຈຳເປັນ".

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ : ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃນໝວດຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ ໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຫຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ : ນະໂຍບາຍດ້ານການເງິນ, ເປັນກາງ, ສັນຍາລັບ, ການຊື້, ໄດ້ບຸກລຸກ, ຊາຍແດນ, ພັກການເມືອງ, ລະແບບສອງ, ການແປຄວາມໝາຍທີ່ເຄັ່ງຄັດ, ປະຊາທິປະໄຕ.

໑. ທ່ານ Hamilton ໄດ້ສນັບສນູນໃຫ້ມີຣັຖບານກາງທີ່ເຂັ້ມແຂງ ແຕ່ທ່ານ Jefferson ຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ບັນດາຣັຖຕ່າງໆນັ້ນ ມີອຳນາດສ່ວນຫຼາຍ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ທ່ານ Jefferson ຍັງໄດ້ສນັບສນູນໃຫ້ມີ ______________________________ ຫຼາຍກວ່າທ່ານ Hamilton ນຳອີກ.

໒. ທ່ານ Hamilton ໄດ້ເປັນຫົວໜ້າຂອງພັກ Federalist Party ແລະ ທ່ານ Jefferson ໄດ້ເປັນຫົວໜ້າພວກ Anti-Federalists ຫຼືພັກ Democratic-Republican. ນີ້ເປັນ ______________________________ ອະເມຣິກັນທຳອິດ.

໓. ທ່ານ Jefferson ແລະ ທ່ານ Burr ໄດ້ຮັບ ____________________ ເທົ່າກັນ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ບັນດາສະມາຊິກສະພາຕ່ຳຈຶ່ງຕ້ອງໄດ້ຕັດສິນໃຈວ່າ ຜູ້ໃດຄວນເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ.

໔. ທ່ານ Jefferson ໄດ້ກ່າວເລື້ອຍວ່າ ຣັຖບານທີ່ບໍ່ສລັບສັບຊ້ອນເປັນຣັຖບານທີ່ດີທີ່ສຸດ. ທ່ານໄດ້ສນັບສນູນໃຫ້ບັນດາຣັຖຕ່າງໆມີສິດແລະຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ມີການ ________________ ________ ຣັຖທັມມະນູນຢ່າງເຄັ່ງຄັດ.

໕. ______________________________ ຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Jefferson ໄດ້ຮັບຄວາມນິຍົມຫຼາຍກວ່າຂອງທ່ານ Hamilton. ໄດ້ມີການຕັ້ງທະນາຄານແຫ່ງຊາດ ເພື່ອໃຊ້ໜີ້ສິນຂອງຊາດ ແລະ ຣັຖບານກາງໄດ້ເອົາຄວາມຮັບຜິດຊອບໃນການໃຊ້ໜີ້ສິນຂອງຣັຖຕ່າງໆ.

໖. ປະທານາທິບໍດີສາມທ່ານ ຄື ທ່ານ Washington, Adams ແລະ Jefferson ໄດ້ພາກັນຕັດສິນໃຈໃຫ້ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາຫຼີກຈາກສົງຄາມໂດຍຖືນະໂຍບາຍ __________ ________________ .

໗. ດ້ວຍ ____________________ ໃນປີ ໑໘໐໐ ປະເທດສະເປນໄດ້ຕົກລົງມອບ New Orleans ແລະເຂດແດນຂອງ Louisiana ໃຫ້ແກ່ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ.

໘. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Jefferson ໄດ້ເປັນຫ່ວງວ່າ ທ່ານຈະມີສິດທຳການ ____________ _______ ດັ່ງກ່າວຫຼືບໍ່.

໙. ສົງຄາມໃນປີ ໑໘໑໒ ໄດ້ເປັນໄປໃນທຳນອງບໍ່ດີ ສຳຫຼັບສະຫະຣັດອະເມຣິກາ. ກອງທະຫານອະເມຣິກັນ ________________________ Canada ແລະໄດ້ຖືກທຳລາຍໂດຍກຳລັງຂອງອັງກິດ.

໑໐. ການປ່ຽນແປງ ____________________ ບໍ່ໄດ້ມີແຕ່ປະການໃດ ແລະ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ມີຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກວ່າ ສົງຄາມໃນປີ ໑໘໑໒ ເປັນ "ສົງຄາມທີ່ບໍ່ຈຳເປັນ".

ພາກ ໑໐ : ການອົກຍ້າຍໄປທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ :

expedition: ການເດີນອອກສຳຫຼວດ

Lewis and Clark led the first expedition in the Louisiana Territory.

The Shoshone Chief gave Lewis and Clark horses and also helped them with directions.

mountain men: ຊາວເຂົາ

The mountain men love the peace and freedom of nature and hated the busy life of the cities.

natural resources: ຊັບພະຍາກອນທັມມະຊາດ

There were many natural resources in the Louisiana Territory.

ranch: ທົ່ງລ້ຽງງົວ

The Mexican government let Americans start cattle ranches in Texas and made that part of Mexico wealthy.

annex: ຮອມເອົາເຂົ້າ

In 1845, Congress agreed to annex Texas as a part of the United States.

10.1. THE LEWIS AND CLARK EXPEDITION

10.1.1. At the time that the United States purchased the Louisiana Territory, little was known about the area west of the Mississippi River. Since the United States now owned the territory, it seemed expedient to begin exploration of the vast region from the Mississippi River westward. President Jefferson arranged for federal funds to be set up to finance an expedition.

10.1.2. It was the first scientific expedition conducted in the United States. The expedition was led by Meriwether Lewis and William Clark. They left St. Louis in May, 1804, and began a difficult journey that was to last over two years. First, they sailed up the Missouri River to what is now Montana. They spent the first winter in what is now North Dakota. They lived among the Mandan Indians. While there, they met an Indian woman named Sacajawea and her husband, who was a French fur trapper. Both agreed to help Lewis and Clark. They went west and met the Shoshone Indians. The Shoshone chief gave Lewis and Clark horses and also helped them find a route along the Columbia River to the Pacific Ocean. After two years, Lewis and Clark returned to St. Louis. Their reports about the new lands spread quickly. Americans now knew that the Louisiana Territory was rich in furs and that the land was fertile. This knowledge encouraged many people to move west.

10.2. THE MOUNTAIN MEN AND THE WEST

10.2.1. The news of Lewis and Clark's expedition interested many people. The people who went west and lived in the Louisiana Territory were called **mountain men**. Mountain men were people who loved the peace and freedom of nature and hated the busy life in the cities. Many of them liked to live with the Indians in the west and they learned many things from the Indians' way of life.

10.2.2. The mountain men had an important impact on the growth of the United States. Because of their experiences, it was easier for people in the East to learn about ways to find the **natural resources** in the west, such as animal furs, gold and silver. The Indians showed the mountain men the best routes through the mountains. This knowledge was helpful to people who were moving from the East to California and to the Southwest areas.

10.3. TEXAS AND THE MEXICAN WAR

10.3.1. Next to the Southwest part of the Louisiana Territory was Texas. Texas was a part of Mexico. In 1821, Mexico won its independence from Spain and encouraged Americans to move into Texas to start cattle **ranches** and made that part of Mexico wealthy. Mexico also expected Americans in Texas to become Mexican citizens. However, the majority of them did not like the Mexican government and considered themselves American citizens. In 1835, the Texans revolted. Although they lost a major battle at the Alamo, they finally won the war, and, in 1836, Texas became an independent country.

10.3.2. After Texas won its independence, it asked Congress to accept it as a state. Since many people in Texas were slave-owners, the North was against the admission of Texas because it feared that making Texas a state would add to the political strength of the South. As a result, Congress delayed the annexation of Texas for nine years. In 1845, Congress finally voted to annex Texas. Soon, border disputes between the United States and Mexico led to war between the two countries in 1846. Battles were fought in Mexico as well as in California, a land belonging to Mexico. In June 1846, a small group of Americans seized control of part of California and set up a "Republic of California". Three weeks later, American warships conquered the land and California was declared part of the United States. American troops finally captured Mexico City in September, 1847. Mexico lost the war and had to sign a peace treaty with the United States in February 1848. Under this treaty, Mexico agreed to the following things:

1. The Rio Grande would be the border between the two countries.
2. The areas of California and New Mexico were ceded to the United States. The United States agreed to pay 15 million dollars for this land, known as the Mexican Cession. The Mexican Cession included large areas of

what is known today as New Mexico, Arizona, Utah, Nevada, and parts of Colorado and Wyoming.

After the Mexican war, the size of the United States was three times bigger than it had been during the Revolutionary War.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ANNEX
FUNDS
PATH
INDIAN
PEACE
CITIES
TROOPS
COMMAND
JOURNEY
FERTILE
FREEDOM
NATURAL
COUNTRY
MEXICO
EXPEDITION
DIRECTION
MONTANA
BOUNDARY
RANCHES
TERRITORY
LEWIS CLARK
NATURAL RESOURCE
NORTH DAKOTA
LOUISIANA TERRITORY
DETERMINATION
SLAVE OWNERS
MOUNTAIN MEN
MEXICAN CESSION
COLUMBIA
EXPERIENCE
ANNEXATION
CALIFORNIA
VERA CRUZ
MAJORITY
INDEPENDENCE

E X P E D I T I O N D I R E C T I O N N H
M R A N C H E S B O U N D A R Y P A T H G
O C O M M A N D A N N E X V E R A C R U Z
U D E T E R M I N A T I O N C I T I E S C
N A T U R A L R E S O U R C E F U N D S O
T E R R I T O R Y L E W I S C L A R K F L
A J O U R N E Y N O R T H D A K O T A E U
I L O U I S I A N A T E R R I T O R Y R M
N M O U N T A I N M E N I N D I A N T I B
M O N T A N A F R E E D O M P E A C E I I
E X P E R I E N C E N A T U R A L O O L A
N A N N E X A T I O N M E X I C O T N E R
C O U N T R Y A N E C N E D N E P E D N I
S L A V E O W N E R S T R O O P S S O B V
M A J O R I T Y C A L I F O R N I A I E E
M E X I C A N C E S S I O N N O N S C H R

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A	B
____ a. trapper	1. the river in the South of Texas that marks the boundary between the U.S. and Mexico.
____ b. annex	2. one who is highest in rank in an Indian tribe.

____ c. delay	3. to add or to join to a large area or a region.
____ d. chief	4. to postpone until a later time.
____ e. expedition	5. rich in material needed to sustain plant growth.
____ f. fertile	6. a sum of money or other resources set aside for a specific purpose.
____ g. fund	7. a journey undertaken by an organized group of people with a definite objective.
____ h. Mexican Cession	8. the western lands, including the territories of California and New Mexico, ceded to the U.S. by Mexico as a result of the Mexican War.
____ i. Rio Grande	9. one whose occupation is trapping animals for their furs
____ j. ranch	10. an extensive farm, especially in the Western region, on which large herds of cattle, sheep, or horse are raised.

III. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put a F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. At the time that the United States purchased the Louisiana Territory, little was known about the area west of the Mississippi River.

____ 2. Lewis and Clark spent the first summer in what is now North Dakota.

____ 3. The Shoshone chief gave Lewis and Clark horses and also helped them find a route along the Columbia River to the Pacific Ocean.

____ 4. The news of Lewis and Clark's expedition did not interest many people.

____ 5. The mountain men had an important impact on the growth of the United States.

____ 6. Next to the Southwest part of the Louisiana Territory was Florida.

____ 7. Mexico also expected Americans in Texas to become Mexican citizens.

____ 8. After Texas won its independence, it asked Congress to accept it as a state.

____ 9. The border dispute between the United States and Mexico led to war between the two countries in 1846.

____10. American troops did not win any battles and did not capture Mexico City in September 1847.

IV. Fill in the blanks:

Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: Shoshone chief, Louisiana Territory, trapper, natural resources, revolted, expedition, mountain men, admission, Mexican citizens.

1. President Jefferson arranged for federal funds to be set up to finance this ______________ .

2. Lewis and Clark met an Indian woman name Sacajawea and her husband, who was a French fur ____________ .

3. The _____________ gave Lewis and Clark horses and also helped them find a route along the Columbia River to the Pacific Ocean.

4. The people who went west and lived in the Louisiana Territory were called __________ .

5. The mountain men had an important impact on the growth of the United States. Because of their experiences, it was easier for people in the East to learn about ways to find the __________ in the west, such as animal furs, gold, and silver.

6. Next to the Southwest part of the ____________ was Texas.

7. In 1821, Mexico won its independence from Spain and encouraged Americans in Texas to become ___________ .

8. In 1835, the Texans ________________ . Although they lost a major battle at the Alamo, they finally won the war, and in 1836, Texas became an independent country.

9. Since many people in Texas were slave-owners, the North was against the ____________ of Texas because if feared that making Texas a state would add to the political strength of the South.

ບົດອ່ານ

໑໐.໑. ການເດີນທາງອອກສຳຣວດຂອງທ່ານ LEWIS ແລະທ່ານ CLARK .

໑໐.໑.໑. ໃນເວລາທີ່ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາຊື້ເອົາເຂດແດນ Louisiana ນັ້ນ ຍັງບໍ່ເປັນທີ່ຮູ້ກັນຫຼາຍກ່ຽວກັບດິນແດນໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກຂອງແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi . ເນື່ອງຈາກວ່າ ໃນປັດຈຸບັນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງເຂດແດນດັ່ງກ່າວ ສະນັ້ນ ຈຶ່ງເປັນທີ່ປາກົດວ່າ ການເລີ່ມທຳການສຳຣວດຄົ້ນຄວ້າດິນແດນອັນກວ້າງໃຫຍ່ໄພສານທີ່ແຜ່ໄປຈາກແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi ຫາທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກນັ້ນ ຈຶ່ງເປັນປະໂຍດ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Jeffersonໄດ້ຈັດຫາທຶນຈາກຣັຖບານກາງເພື່ອຊຸກຍູ້ການເດີນທາງອອກສຳຣວດດິນແດນດັ່ງກ່າວ.

໑໐.໑.໒. ການອອກເດີນທາງອອກສຳຣວດຄັ້ງນີ້ ເປັນການອອກສຳຣວດດ້ານວິທະຍາສາດຄັ້ງທຳອິດ ທີ່ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ຈັດຂຶ້ນ ໂດຍມີທ່ານ Meriwether Lewis ແລະທ່ານ William Clark ເປັນຜູ້ນຳພາ. ພວກເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ອອກຈາກ St. Louis ໃນເດືອນ ພຶສພາ ປີ ໑໘໐໔ ແລະໄດ້ເລີ່ມທຳການເດີນທາງອັນຍາກລຳບາກ ຊຶ່ງກິນເວລາຫຼາຍກວ່າສອງປີ. ໃນທຳອິດເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເດີນເຮືອຂຶ້ນຕາມແມ່ນ້ຳ Missouri River ໄປຫາບ່ອນທີ່ເອີ້ນກັນໃນປັດຈຸບັນນີ້ວ່າ Montana . ໃນຣະດູໜາວທຳອິດນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ພັກຢູ່ໃນເຂດທີ່ເອີ້ນກັນໃນທຸກມື້ນີ້ວ່າ North Montana. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຢູ່ປະປົນກັນກັບພວກອິນເດັຍແດງເຜົ່າ Mandan . ໃນຣະຫວ່າງພັກເຊົາຢູ່ໃນແຫ່ງນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ພົບຜູ້ຍິງອິນເດັຍແດງຄົນນຶ່ງຊື່ວ່າ Sacajawea ພ້ອມດ້ວຍຜົວຂອງນາງຊຶ່ງເປັນນັກຈັບສັດ ເພື່ອເອົາໄປເຮັດຂົນສັດ ຊຶ່ງເປັນຊາວຝຣັ່ງເສດ. ຄູ່ຜົວເມັຍດັ່ງກ່າວ ໄດ້ຕົກລົງໃຫ້ຄວາມຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອແກ່ທ່ານ Lewis ແລະທ່ານ Clark. ຕໍ່ຈາກນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍໄດ້ພາກັນມຸ່ງໜ້າໄປທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ ແລະ ໄດ້ພົບພວກອິນເດັຍແດງເຜົ່າ Shoshone . ຫົວໜ້າເຜົ່າ Shoshone ໄດ້ມອບມ້າໃຫ້ທ່ານ Lewis ແລະທ່ານ Clark ພ້ອມທັງໄດ້ຊ່ວຍພາເຂົາເຈົ້າໄປຫາເສັ້ນທາງທີ່ຢູ່ເລາະຕາມແມ່ນ້ຳ Columbia River ໄປຫາມະຫາສະມຸດ Pacific . ຫຼັງຈາກສອງປີ ທ່ານ Lewis ແລະທ່ານ Clark ໄດ້ພາກັນກັບຄືນຫາ St. Louis . ລາຍງານກ່ຽວກັບດິນແດນແຫ່ງໃໝ່ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້ານັ້ນ ໄດ້ແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍອອກໄປຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວ. ບັດນີ້ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ພາກັນຮູ້ວ່າເຂດແດນ Louisiana ເປັນດິນແດນທີ່ມັ່ງຄັ່ງໄປດ້ວຍຂົນສັດ ແລະ ເປັນດິນທີ່ດີແກ່ການປູກຝັງ. ຊາວ

210

ດັ່ງກ່າວ ໄດ້ມາໃຫ້ຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຍົກຍ້າຍອອກໄປທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ.

໑໐.໒. ຊາວເຂົາແລະພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ.

໑໐.໒.໑. ຂ່າວກ່ຽວກັບການເດີນທາງອອກສຳຣວດຂອງທ່ານ Lewis ແລະທ່ານ Clark ໄດ້ເປັນທີ່ສົນໃຈແກ່ຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ. ພວກທີ່ຍ້າຍອອກໄປທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກແລະຢູ່ໃນເຂດແດນ Louisiana ນັ້ນ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ພວກຊາວເຂົາ. ພວກຊາວເຂົາເປັນພວກທີ່ຮັກຄວາມສງົບແລະອິສຣະພາບໃນທັມມະຊາດ ແລະກຽດຊັງຊີວິດທີ່ວຸ້ນວາຍໃນຕົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆ. ມີຫຼາຍຄົນມັກຢູ່ກັບພວກອິນເດັຽແດງໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ ແລະເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຮຽນຮູ້ຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຂອງພວກອິນເດັຽແດງຫຼາຍຢ່າງ.

໑໐.໒.໒. ພວກຊາວເຂົາໄດ້ມີຄວາມສຳຄັນຕໍ່ຄວາມຈເຣີນກ້າວໜ້າຂອງສະຫະຣັດອະເມຣິກາ. ປະສົບການຂອງພວກເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຊ່ອຍໃຫ້ພວກປະຊາຊົນໃນພາກຕາເວັນອອກຮຽນຮູ້ກ່ຽວກັບວິທີຊອກຫາຊັບພະຍາກອນທັມມະຊາດໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກເຊັ່ນ ຂົນສັດ, ຄຳ ແລະ ເງິນ ສະດວກສະບາຍຂຶ້ນ. ພວກອິນເດັຽແດງ ໄດ້ບອກເສັ້ນທາງຜ່ານພູເຂົາທີ່ດີທີ່ສຸດ ໃຫ້ແກ່ພວກຊາວເຂົາ. ຄວາມຮູ້ກ່ຽວກັບເສັ້ນທາງດັ່ງກ່າວ ເປັນປະໂຍດແກ່ພວກທີ່ຍົກຍ້າຍຈາກພາກຕາເວັນອອກໄປສູ່ California ແລະສູ່ເຂດແດນໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສ່ຽງໃຕ້ເປັນຢ່າງຍິ່ງ.

໑໐.໓. ແດນ TEXAS ແລະສົງຄາມ ເມັກຊິກັນ.

໑໐.໓.໑. ຢູ່ຕິດກັບທາງພາກຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງໃຕ້ຂອງເຂດແດນ Louisiana ນັ້ນ ແມ່ນແດນ Texas ຊຶ່ງເປັນສ່ວນນຶ່ງຂອງປະເທດ Mexico . ໃນປີ ໑໘໒໑ ປະເທດ Mexico ໄດ້ຮັບເອກະຣາດຈາກປະເທດສະເປນ ແລະ ໃນເວລານັ້ນ ປະເທດດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຊຸກຍູ້ສົ່ງເສີມໃຫ້ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຍ້າຍໄປຢູ່ໃນເຂດ Texas ເພື່ອສ້າງທົ່ງລ້ຽງງົວ ແລະ ເຮັດໃຫ້ສ່ວນນັ້ນຂອງ Mexico ຮັ່ງມີຂຶ້ນ. Mexico ຍັງໄດ້ຫວັງອີກວ່າ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນໃນເຂດ Texas ນັ້ນຈະໄດ້ກາຍເປັນພົນລະເມືອງຂອງຕົນອີກ. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍດີ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນສ່ວນຫຼາຍໃນ Texas ບໍ່ມັກຣັຖບານເມັກຊິກັນ ແລະ ຖືວ່າພວກຕົນເປັນພົນລະເມືອງອະເມຣິກັນຢູ່. ໃນປີ ໑໘໓໖ ປະຊາຊົນໃນ Texas ໄດ້ພາກັນທຳການປະຕິວັດຂຶ້ນ. ເຖິງວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າຈະໄດ້ພ່າຍແພ້ບັນຣົບຄັ້ງໃຫຍ່ໃນ Alamo ກໍຕາມ ແຕ່ໃນທີ່ສຸດເຂົາເຈົ້າ

ກໍໄດ້ໄຊຊະນະສົງຄາມໄປ ແລະໃນປີ ໑໘໓໖ Texas ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນປະເທດເອກະຣາດນຶ່ງຕ່າງຫາກ.

໑໐.໓.໒. ຫຼັງຈາກໄດ້ຮັບເອກະຣາດແລ້ວ Texas ໄດ້ຂໍຮ້ອງໃຫ້ສະພາຮັບເອົາເປັນຣັຖນຶ່ງ. ເນື່ອງຈາກຄົນໃນ Texas ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງພວກຂ້າທາດ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ປະຊາຊົນໃນພາກເໜືອຈຶ່ງຄັດຄ້ານບໍ່ໃຫ້ຮັບເອົາ Texas ເຂົ້າເປັນຣັຖ ເພາະເຂົາເຈົ້າຢ້ານວ່າ ຖ້າຫາກ Texas ຖືກຮັບເອົາໃຫ້ເປັນຣັຖແລ້ວ ຄວາມເຂັ້ມແຂງທາງການເມືອງຂອງພາກໃຕ້ຈະມີເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ ສະພາຈຶ່ງໄດ້ເລື່ອນການຮັບເອົາ Texas ເຂົ້າເປັນຣັຖເປັນເວລາເກົ້າປີ. ໃນທີ່ສຸດ ໃນປີ ໑໘໔໕ ສະພາກໍໄດ້ລົງມະຕິຮັບເອົາ Texas ເຂົ້າເປັນຣັຖ. ຕໍ່ມາບໍ່ດົນ ໃນປີ ໑໘໔໖ ການຂັດແຍ້ງກ່ຽວກັບຊາຍແດນລະຫວ່າງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາແລະ Mexico ໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ມີສົງຄາມເກີດຂຶ້ນລະຫວ່າງສອງປະເທດດັ່ງກ່າວ. ການສູ້ຮົບໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນ Mexico ພ້ອມທັງໃນ California ຊຶ່ງເປັນດິນແດນຂອງ Mexico . ໃນເດືອນ ມິຖຸນາ ໑໘໔໖ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍກຸ່ມນຶ່ງ ໄດ້ຍຶດຄອງສ່ວນນຶ່ງຂອງ California ແລະ ໄດ້ຕັ້ງ "ສາທາຣະນະຣັຖ California " ຂຶ້ນ. ສາມອາທິດຕໍ່ມາ ກຳປັ່ນຮົບອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ຍຶດເອົາດິນແດນ California ແລະໄດ້ປະກາດໃຫ້ດິນແດນດັ່ງກ່າວເປັນສ່ວນນຶ່ງຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ໃນທີ່ສຸດທະຫານອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ຍຶດນະຄອນ Mexico City ໃນເດືອນ ທັນວາ ໑໘໔໗. ປະເທດ Mexico ໄດ້ເສັຽສົງຄາມແລະຕ້ອງໄດ້ເຊັນສັນຍາສງົບເສິກກັບສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໃນເດືອນ ກຸມພາ ໑໘໔໘. ໃນສັນຍາດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ Mexico ໄດ້ຕົກລົງກັບສິ່ງດັ່ງຕໍ່ໄປນີ້ :

໑. ຊາຍແດນລະຫວ່າງສອງປະເທດຈະແມ່ນແມ່ນ້ຳ Rio Grande.

໒. ເຂດແດນ California ແລະ New Mexico ໄດ້ຖືກມອບໃຫ້ແກ່ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ຊຶ່ງສະຫະຣັຖເອງໄດ້ຕົກລົງຈ່າຍຄ່າດິນດັ່ງກ່າວໃນຈຳນວນເງິນ ໑໕ ລ້ານໂດລາ ອັນເປັນທີ່ຮູ້ກັນໃນນາມເປັນການມອບໝາຍຂອງພວກເມັກຊິກັນ. ການມອບໝາຍຂອງພວກເມັກຊິກັນຮວມດ້ວຍດິນແດນອັນກວ້າງໃຫຍ່ໄພສານ ຊຶ່ງເອີ້ນກັນໃນທຸກມື້ນີ້ວ່າ New Mexico, Arizona, Utah, Nevada ແລະສ່ວນນຶ່ງຂອງ Colorado ແລະ Wyoming.

ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມເມັກຊິກັນແລ້ວ ເນື້ອທີ່ຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ໄດ້ໃຫຍ່ກວ່າສໃນສົງຄາມປະຕິວັດເຖິງສາມເທົ່າ.

EXERCISES

I. WORD SEARCH PUZZLE:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and them define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນໃນຕະລາງຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ, ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ພ້ອມ ຄວາມໝາຍແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍ.

ANNEX
FUNDS
PATH
INDIAN
PEACE
CITIES
TROOPS

COMMAND
JOURNEY
FERTILE
FREEDOM
NATURAL
COUNTRY
MEXICO

EXPEDITION
DIRECTION
MONTANA
BOUNDARY
RANCHES
TERRITORY
LEWIS CLARK

NATURAL RESOURCE
NORTH DAKOTA
LOUISIANA TERRITORY
DETERMINATION
SLAVE OWNERS
MOUNTAIN MEN
MEXICAN CESSION

COLUMBIA
EXPERIENCE
ANNEXATION
CALIFORNIA
VERA CRUZ
MAJORITY
INDEPENDENCE

E X P E D I T I O N D I R E C T I O N N H
M R A N C H E S B O U N D A R Y P A T H G
O C O M M A N D A N N E X V E R A C R U Z
U D E T E R M I N A T I O N C I T I E S C
N A T U R A L R E S O U R C E F U N D S O
T E R R I T O R Y L E W I S C L A R K F L
A J O U R N E Y N O R T H D A K O T A E U
I L O U I S I A N A T E R R I T O R Y R M
N M O U N T A I N M E N I N D I A N T I B
M O N T A N A F R E E D O M P E A C E I I
E X P E R I E N C E N A T U R A L O O L A
N A N N E X A T I O N M E X I C O T N E R
C O U N T R Y A N E C N E D N E P E D N I
S L A V E O W N E R S T R O O P S S O B V
M A J O R I T Y C A L I F O R N I A I E E
M E X I C A N C E S S I O N K O N S C H R

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. **ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ** : (ເບິ່ງພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. **ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ** : ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາຄຳເວົ້າແຕ່ລະຄຳເວົ້າໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໂດຍໃຫ້ເລືອກເອົາເລກທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໃສ່ຕາມຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ກ) ແທນຄຳຕອບ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ກ. ນັກຈັບສັດ	໑. ແມ່ນ້ຳໃນພາກໃຕ້ຂອງ Texas ຊຶ່ງເປັນເຂດຊາຍແດນຣະຫວ່າງສະຫະຣັຖແລະປະເທດ Mexico.
_____ ຂ. ຮວມເອົາ	໒. ຜູ້ທີ່ມີຕຳແໜ່ງສູງສຸດໃນເຜົ່າອິນດ້ຽນແດງ.
_____ ຄ. ເລື່ອນເວລາ	໓. ເພີ່ມຕື່ມເຂດແດນຕື່ມໃສ່ດິນແດນທາງໃຕ້.
_____ ງ. ຫົວໜ້າ	໔. ຍ້າຍໄປໃສ່ເວລາອື່ນ.
_____ ຈ. ການເດີນທາງອອກສຳຣວດ	໕. ດິນທີ່ດີສຳລັບການປູກຝັງ.
_____ ສ. ດິນທີ່ອຸດົມສົມບູນ	໖. ເງິນທີ່ເອົາໄວ້ໃຊ້ສຳລັບການດຳເນີນໂຄງການໂດຍສະເພາະ.
_____ ຊ. ທຶນ	໗. ການເດີນທາງຂອງຄະນະນຶ່ງຊຶ່ງຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນເພື່ອທຳການສຳຣວດສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງນຶ່ງ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ຍ. ການມອບຂອງພວກເມກຊິກັນ.	໘. ດິນແດນໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກຊຶ່ງຮວມດ້ວຍເຂດແດນຂອງ California ແລະ New Mexico ຊຶ່ງປະເທດ Mexico ໄດ້ມອບໃຫ້ແກ່ສະຫະລັດຍ້ອນສົງຄາມເມກຊິກັນ.
_____ ດ. Rio Grande	໙. ຜູ້ທີ່ຍຶດອາຊີບຈັບສັດເພື່ອເອົາຂົນ.
_____ ຕ. ທົ່ງລ້ຽງງົວ	໑໐. ທົ່ງຫຍ້າກວາງໃຫຍ່ທີ່ມີໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ ໂດຍສະເພາະໃຊ້ສຳລັບລ້ຽງງົວແລະສັດຢ່າງອື່ນ.

໓. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ :

ຈົ່ງອ່ານແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ໝາຍ T ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກ. ຖ້າຜິດໃຫ້ໝາຍ F ໃສ່.

_____ ໑. ໃນເວລາທີ່ສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ເອົາເຂດແດນ Louisiana ນັ້ນ ຍັງບໍ່ເປັນທີ່ຮູ້ກັນຫຼາຍກ່ຽວກັບດິນແດນໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກຂອງແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi .

_____ ໒. ໃນຣະດູຮ້ອນທຳອິດນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ພັກຢູ່ໃນບ່ອນທີ່ເອີ້ນກັນໃນປັດຈຸບັນນີ້ວ່າ North Dakota.

_____ ໓. ຫົວໜ້າອິນເດັຍແດງເຜົ່າ Shoshone ໄດ້ມອບມ້າໃຫ້ທ່ານ Lewis ແລະທ່ານ Clark ພ້ອມທັງໄດ້ຊ່ວຍພາເຂົາເຈົ້າໄປຕາມເສັ້ນທາງທີ່ຢູ່ເລາະຕາມແມ່ນ້ຳ Columbia ໄປຫາມະຫາສມຸດ Pacific.

_____ ໔. ຂ່າວກ່ຽວກັບການເດີນທາງອອກໄປສຳຣວດຂອງທ່ານ Lewis ແລະທ່ານ Clark ບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນທີ່ສົນໃຈແກ່ຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ.

_____ ໕. ຊາວເຂົາໄດ້ມີສ່ວນສຳຄັນໃນການຈະເລີນກ້າວໜ້າຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

_____ ໖. ຢູ່ຕິດກັບທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສ່ຽງໃຕ້ຂອງເຂດແດນ Louisiana ນັ້ນແມ່ນ Florida.

_____ ໗. ປະເທດ Mexico ຍັງໄດ້ຫວັງອີກວ່າຊາວອະເມຣິກັນໃນ Texas ນັ້ນ ຈະກາຍເປັນພົນລະເມືອງຂອງຕົນ.

_____ ໘. ຫຼັງຈາກໄດ້ຮັບເອກະຣາດແລ້ວ Texas ກໍໄດ້ຂໍຮ້ອງໃຫ້ສະຫາຮັບເອົາເປັນຣັຖນຶ່ງ.

_____ ໙. ໃນປີ ໑໘໔໖ ການຂັດແຍ່ງກ່ຽວກັບຊາຍແດນຣະຫວ່າງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ແລະ ໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ມີສົງຄາມເກີດຂຶ້ນ.

_____ ໑໐. ກອງທະຫານອະເມຣິກັນບໍ່ໄດ້ຮັບໄຊຊະນະໃນການຮົບໃດໆເລີຍ ແລະ ບໍ່ໄດ້ຍຶດນະຄອນ Mexico ໃນເດືອນ ທັນວາ ໑໘໔໗.

໕. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ : ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າຫຼືໝວດຄຳເວົ້າດັ່ງຕໍ່ໄປນີ້ໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກ ໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ : ຫົວໜ້າອິນເດັຍແດງເຜົ່າ Shoshone , ເຂດແດນ Louisiana , ນັກຈັບສັດ, ຊັບພະຍາກອນທັມມະຊາດ, ໄດ້ທຳການປະຕິວັດ, ການເດີນທາງອອກສຳຣວດ, ຊາວເຂົາ, ການຮັບເອົາ, ພົນລະເມືອງເມກຊິກັນ.

໑. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Jefferson ໄດ້ຈັດທຶນຂອງຣັຖບານກາງສຳຫຼັບຊຸນຊຸ ______________
__________ ດັ່ງກ່າວ.

ງ. ທ່ານ Lewis ແລະທ່ານ Clark ໄດ້ພົບຜູ້ຍິງອິນເດັຍແດງຜູ້ນຶ່ງຊື່ວ່າ Sacajawea ພ້ອມດ້ວຍຜົວຂອງລາວຊຶ່ງເປັນ ______________________ ເພື່ອເອົາໄປເຮັດຂົນສັດ, ຊຶ່ງແມ່ນຊາວຝຣັ່ງເສດ.

ຈ. ______________________ ໄດ້ມອບມ້າໃຫ້ທ່ານ Lewis ແລະທ່ານ Clark ພ້ອມທັງຊ່ວຍພາເຂົາເຈົ້າໄປຫາເສັ້ນທາງທີ່ເລາະຕາມແມ່ນ້ຳ Columbia ໄປຫາມະຫາສະມຸດ Pacific.

ສ. ພວກທີ່ຍົກຍ້າຍໄປທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກແລະໄດ້ຢູ່ໃນຂອດແດນ Louisiana ນັ້ນ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ______________________ .

ຊ. ພວກຊາວເຂົາໄດ້ມີສ່ວນສຳຄັນໃນຄວາມຈະເລີນກ້າວໜ້າຂອງສະຫະລັດອະເມລິກາ. ປະສົບປະການຂອງພວກເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ພວກປະຊາຊົນໃນພາກຕາເວັນອອກຮັບຮູ້ກ່ຽວກັບວັດຖຸອຸດົມ ______________________ ໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ ເຊັ່ນຂົນສັດ, ຄຳ ແລະ ເງິນ.

. ຢູ່ຕິດກັບທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສ່ວນໃຕ້ຂອງ ______________________ ນັ້ນແມ່ນ Texas.

ດ. ປະເທດ Mexico ໄດ້ຮັບເອກະລາດຈາກປະເທດສະເປນໃນປີ ໑໘໒໑ ແລະໄດ້ຊັກຊວນໃຫ້ຊາວອະເມລິກັນໄປຢູ່ໃນ Texas ເພື່ອເປັນ ______________________ .

ຕ. ໃນປີ ໑໘໓໕ ປະຊາຊົນໃນ Texas ______________________ ເຖິງວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ພ່າຍແພ້ການສູ້ຮົບຄັ້ງໃຫຍ່ໃນ Alamo ກໍຕາມ ແຕ່ໃນທີ່ສຸດເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍໄດ້ໄຊຊະນະສົງຄາມ ແລະ ໃນປີ ໑໘໓໖ Texas ກໍໄດ້ກາຍເປັນປະເທດເອກະລາດ.

ຖ. ເນື່ອງຈາກປະຊາຊົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໃນ Texas ນັ້ນ ເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງພວກຂ້າທາດ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ປະຊາຊົນໃນພາກເໜືອຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຄັດຄ້ານ ______________________ ເຂົ້າເປັນລັດ ເພາະເຂົາເຈົ້າຢ້ານວ່າ ຖ້າຫາກ Texas ຖືກຮັບເອົາໃຫ້ເປັນລັດແລ້ວ ຄວາມເຂັ້ມແຂງທາງການເມືອງຂອງພາກໃຕ້ຈະມີເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນ.

ພາກ ໑໑ : ຍຸກຂອງທ່ານ

ສັບໃຫມ່ແລະວິທີໃຊ້ສັບ :

Industrial Revolution: ການປະຕິວັດອຸດສະຫະກັມ

The Industrial Revolution began in England.

interchangeable ເຄື່ອງອະໄລ່ທີ່ສັບປ່ຽນກັນໄດ້

assemble: ປະກອບ

A machine was able to make parts exactly alike. They were interchangeable and easy to assemble.

mass production: ການຜລິດໃນຈຳນວນຫລາຍ

The invention of the machine enabled industry to use mass production.

industrial area: ເຂດອຸດສາຫະກັມ

The Northeast became the major industrial area of the country.

cotton gin: ເຄື່ອງອີ້ວຝ້າຍ

Eli Whitney invented the cotton gin in 1793.

sectionalism: ການເຫັນແກ່ຜົນປະໂຍດຂອງທ້ອງຖິ່ນຕົນເອງຈົນເກີນໄປ

Sectionalism was a problem that would eventually cause a war between the North and the South.

protective tariff: ພາສີປ້ອງກັນ

Congress passed a protective tariff to protect American factories.

secede: ແຍກອອກ

South Carolina threatened to secede from the United States.

READING

11.1. THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION

11.1.1. The United States grew stronger in the years after the War of 1812. American foreign policy kept the nation away from European problems. As a result, the American people were free to develop their own society. As the population increased, the cities grew larger. Manufacturing became a basic part of the nation's economy. All of these changes affected the way people lived.

11.1.2. In 1790, the population of the young nation was a little less than 4 million. But by 1860, it was over 31 million because the size of the American family had become larger and the number of immigrants had increased. During the 1860's, about 2,300,000 immigrants arrived in the United States. Most of these immigrants were Irish, Germans, or Scandinavians. They came to this country in search of a better life. Many of them had suffered from poverty and hunger in Europe. They made a major contribution to the growth of the United States as a labor force and as consumers.

11.1.3. Before the middle of the eighteenth century, most work in textile industries had been done by hand but in the 1760's, machines were used to make thread and yarn in England. Soon machines were used to replace human labor. These changes marked the beginning of the Industrial Revolution.

11.1.4. The Industrial Revolution did not appear in the United States until the early 1800's. It was greatly helped by Eli Whitney. In 1796, he started manufacturing guns in a new way. Before that time, they were made by hand and it took a long time to make a gun this way. But in Eli Whitney's factory, he used machines to make guns. Each gun had just ten parts and they were all made by machine. Because the machine made parts exactly alike they were **interchangeable** and easy to **assemble**. This was the beginning of **mass production**. Using mass production, things could be made cheaply and quickly.

11.1.5. The New England area was soon dotted with factories. The Northeastern economy was no longer dependent on agriculture. Eastern farmers found it hard to compete with the rich farmers in the Northwest. They turned to work in the factories. By 1840, the Northeast had become the major industrial area of the United States.

11.2. KING COTTON

11.2.1. While the Northeast became the major industrial section of the United States, the South developed differently. The Southern economy was based on cotton production. Cotton was a new crop for the South. During the colonial time, not much cotton had been raised because it was hard to separate the seeds from the cotton fibers. So, the South raised tobacco, rice, and indigo. Then in 1793, Eli Whitney invented the cotton gin -- a machine that helped the plantation workers to separate the cotton from the seed easily. After the cotton gin was invented, cotton became the chief crop of the South. In 1850, the South exported over 2,000,000 bales of cotton to England. Many people invested their money in cotton plantations and used many slaves to work for them.

11.2.2. Slavery grew rapidly in the South after the invention of the cotton gin. Many Southerners believed that the cotton gin made slavery profitable. As cotton became the chief crop of the Southern economy, the number and value of slaves also increased.

11.3. SECTIONALISM

11.3.1. As mentioned above, the Northern states and the Southern states were very different. The people in these two areas made their money in different ways. Each of these two areas of the country wanted the national government to do things that would help them. The people in each area felt their own needs were more important than the needs of the whole country. This was called **sectionalism**. Sectionalism was a problem that would eventually cause a war between the North and the South.

11.3.2. The Northern states' economy was based on manufacturing as well as trade with foreign countries. Because European factories could produce goods at lower prices than American factories, English goods were cheaper than American goods. The Northern states asked Congress to pass a tariff on products from Europe which would raise the cost of European products and thereby make American products less expensive than European. This tariff was called protective tariff because it protected American factories.

11.3.3. Southerners were against these tariffs because they made imported goods too expensive. The South Carolina legislature threatened to secede from the United States if the tariff was not stopped. John C. Calhoun from South Carolina argued that the tariff did not help most of the people in the country. He also said that any state had the right to nullify or reject any federal law that hurt the citizens of a state. In 1824, Congress was ready to pass the Tariff Act. The South was unified in its opposition to any further enactment of protective tariffs. The election of 1824 showed the nation that sectionalism was one of the main problems it faced.

11.4. THE AGE OF JACKSON

11.4.1. In the election of 1824, sectional differences broke into the open. Four Republican candidates were nominated to run for the presidency. John Quincy Adams represented the North; William H. Crawford represented the South; Henry Clay and Andrew Jackson both represented the West. In the election of 1824, Andrew Jackson received more popular votes than any other candidate. However, he did not win a majority of the electoral college. Therefore, the House of Representatives had to choose among the three leading contenders. Clay shifted his support to Adams and Adams was elected. This election split the Republican party. Adams and his followers formed the Whig party based on the principles of the old Federalists. Jackson and his followers formed the Democratic party based on the principles of the old Republican party.

11.4.2. In 1828, Jackson defeated Adams for the presidency. Andrew Jackson became known as a representative of the common people. His two terms in office are often called the era of Jacksonian Democracy. This name was based on the idea that Jackson served the interests of the average people. He made many changes during his two terms. The office of the president was made stronger; Jackson often opposed the Congress and the Supreme Court and won. The "spoils" system was used more often in politics. Jackson replaced many former federal officials by the party followers who were loyal to him. Many movements for reform grew up during the Jackson era, such as the development of labor unions and the struggle for women's rights. Efforts to end slavery also became stronger. There was greater democracy in politics. Many states ended the property requirement for voting.

The Age of Jackson did not always bring greater democracy and freedom to everybody. Jackson was a slaveowner and did not favor an end to slavery. Also, Jackson was not friendly to the Indians. During his two terms in office, the rights of Indians were greatly weakened.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

S	Y	E	M	L	A	M	M	S	E	C	T	I	O	N	A	D	A	M	N	P
C	M	A	C	H	I	N	E	A	N	U	L	L	I	F	Y	N	N	O	A	L
A	N	G	E	R	M	A	N	A	S	S	E	M	B	L	E	N	I	K	G	A
N	A	C	F	A	C	T	O	R	Y	S	E	E	D	A	R	T	N	W	R	N
D	I	O	G	I	D	N	I	C	O	M	P	E	T	E	U	C	V	A	I	T
I	M	N	Y	E	N	G	L	A	N	D	O	R	C	L	Y	E	E	N	C	A
N	M	T	T	S	L	A	V	E	R	Y	R	A	O	V	E	J	N	O	R	T
A	I	R	R	E	T	A	R	I	F	F	U	V	T	D	N	E	T	G	L	I
V	G	I	E	A	R	B	H	U	N	G	E	R	T	T	U	R	K	I	T	O
I	R	B	U	R	Y	C	E	R	A	R	L	E	O	R	Y	C	H	D	U	N
A	A	U	O	C	A	E	H	I	L	O	P	S	N	U	E	O	T	N	R	K
N	T	T	P	O	P	U	L	A	T	I	O	N	C	H	N	T	B	I	E	I
B	I	I	R	I	C	E	I	E	N	I	H	C	A	M	T	T	E	C	O	G
A	O	O	N	A	N	R	C	Y	K	G	C	R	O	P	I	O	T	T	T	N
M	N	N	N	I	T	H	R	E	A	D	E	W	A	N	H	N	A	C	A	I
H	B	U	A	S	S	E	M	B	L	E	Y	A	R	N	W	G	R	U	R	K
S	G	C	U	N	A	N	C	Y	K	W	A	N	B	O	I	I	A	D	A	I
I	H	D	E	V	E	L	O	P	S	P	O	I	L	L	L	N	P	O	P	C
R	N	P	R	O	T	E	C	T	I	V	E	S	E	C	E	D	E	R	E	B
I	N	D	U	S	T	R	I	A	L	S	E	C	T	I	O	N	S	P	S	H

THREAD
HURT
GUN
KING
CROP
RICE
YARN
IRISH
SPOIL
TRADE
SECEDE

PRODUCT
ENGLAND
TARIFF
EUROPE
REJECT
HUNGER
COTTON
INDIGO
INVENT
SECTION
POVERTY
MACHINE

SEPARATE
NULLIFY
SLAVERY
ASSEMBLE
FACTORY
COMPETE
GERMANS
POPULATION
SEPARATE
PROTECTIVE
DEVELOP

INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION
INDUSTRIAL SECTION
INTERCHANGEABLE
MASS PRODUCTION
COTTON GIN
IMMIGRATION
CONTRIBUTION
ELI WHITNEY
SCANDINAVIAN
AGRICULTURE
PLANTATION

II. Matching:

Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column A. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A	B
____ a. cotton gin	1. a building or group of buildings in which goods are manufactured.
____ b. yarn	2. a machine that separates the seeds, seed hulls, and other small objects from the fibers of cotton.
____ c. trade	3. a person from one country who settles in another.
____ d. sectionalism	4. the making of large numbers of goods by use of machinery.
____ e. secede	5. a continuous strand of twisted threads of natural or synthetic material such as

	wool or nylon, used in weaving or knitting.
____ f. nullify	6. the business of buying and selling commodities, commerce.
____ g. interchangeable	7. excessive devotion to local interests and customs.
____ h. mass production	8. to withdraw formally from membership in an organization, association or alliance.
____ i. immigrant	9. to make worthless in law; the act by which a state sets aside a federal law and prevents its enforcements within its boundaries.
____ j. factory	10. duplicates of the same part of a manufactured article.

III. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Pur an F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. The United States grew stronger in the years after the War of 1812.

____ 2. Before the middle of the eighteen century, most work in textile industries was done by hand, but in the 1760's, machines were used to make thread and yarn in England.

____ 3. The Industrial Revolution did not appear in the United States until the early 1900's.

____ 4. In Eli Whitney's factory, he used machines to make cars.

____ 5. The New England area was soon dotted with factories. The Northeastern economy was no longer dependent on agriculture.

____ 6. The Southern economy was based on cotton production.

____ 7. Then in 1793, Eli Whitney invented the cotton gin - a machine that helped plantation workers to separate the seed from the cotton easily.

____ 8. Slavery grew rapidly in the South before the invention of the cotton gin.

____ 9. The Northern states asked Congress to pass a tariff on products from Europe to protect the American products.

____10. Southerners favored these tariffs because they made imported goods too expensive.

IV. Fill in the blanks:

Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: poverty and hunger, interchangeable, invested, sectionalism, nation's economy, Industrial Revolution, immigrants, industrial section, nullify, profitable.

1. Manufacturing became a basic part of the ____________ . All of these changes affected the way people lived.
2. In 1860, the population of the United States was over 31

million because the size of the American family had become larger and the number of ____________ had increased.

3. Many of the immigrants had suffered from ___________ in Europe.
4. Soon machines were used to replace human labor. These changes marked the beginning of the ___________ .
5. Each gun had just ten parts and they were all made by machines. Because the machine made parts exactly alike they were ___________ and easy to assemble.
6. By 1840, the Northeast had become the ______________ of the United States.
7. Many people ____________ their money in cotton plantations and used many slaves to work for them.
8. Many Southerners believed that the cotton gin made slavery ______________ .
9. The people in each area felt their own needs were more important than the needs of the whole country. This was called _____________ .
10. John C. Calhoun from South Carolina argued that the tariff did not help most of the people in the country. He also said that any state had the right to ___________ , or reject, any federal law that hurt the citizens of a state.

ບົດອ່ານ

໑໑.໑. ການປະຕິວັດອຸດສາຫະກັມ.

໑໑.໑.໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໃນປີ ໑໘໑໒ ສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາ ໄດ້ມີຄວາມເຂັ້ມແຂງຂຶ້ນ. ນະໂຍບາຍຕ່າງປະເທດອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ປະເທດຊາດເວັ້ນຈາກບັນຫາໃນຢູໂຣບ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ ປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນຈຶ່ງໄດ້ມີອິສຣະພາບໃນການພັດທະນາສັງຄົມຂອງຕົນ. ເມື່ອຈຳນວນຂອງປະຊາຊົນໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນ ຫົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆກໍໄດ້ຂະຫຍາຍໃຫຍ່ຂຶ້ນ. ການຫັດຖະກັມໄດ້ກາຍເປັນພື້ນຖານເສດຖະກິດຂອງຊາດ. ການປ່ຽນແປງທັງໝົດເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ໄດ້ກະທົບກະເທືອນຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຂອງປະຊາຊົນ.

໑໑.໑.໒. ໃນປີ ໑໗໙໐ ປະຊາກອນຂອງປະເທດທີ່ເກີດໃໝ່ນີ້ ມີນ້ອຍກວ່າ ໔ ລ້ານຄົນ. ແຕ່ໃນປີ ໑໘໖໐ ຈຳນວນປະຊາຊົນໄດ້ມີຫຼາຍກວ່າ ໓໑ ລ້ານ. ເພາະວ່າຂະໜາດຂອງດອນດິນຊາວອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ໃຫຍ່ຂຶ້ນ ແລະ ຈຳນວນຄົນເຂົ້າເມືອງໄດ້ມີຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ. ໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໘໖໐ ຄົນເຂົ້າເມືອງທີ່ໄດ້ເຂົ້າໄປເຖິງສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາມີປະມານ ໒.໓໐໐.໐໐໐ ຄົນ ຊຶ່ງສ່ວນຫຼາຍແລ້ວແມ່ນພວກ ໄອຣິສ, ເຢຣະມັນ ຫຼື ພວກສະແກດີເນວຽນ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າເຂົ້າໄປໃນປະເທດນີ້ ເພື່ອສແວງຫາຊີວິດຄວາມເປັນຢູ່ອັນດີ. ພວກເຫຼົ່ານີ້ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຄົນ ເຄີຍໄດ້ຕົກທຸກໄດ້ຍາກແລະອຶດຫິວໃນຢູໂຣບ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ມີສ່ວນປະກອບໃນຄວາມຈເຣີນກ້າວໜ້າຂອງສະຫະລັດ ໃນຖານະເປັນແຮງງານແລະເປັນຜູ້ບໍຣິໂພກ.

໑໑.໑.໓. ກ່ອນສໄໝເຄິ່ງກາງຂອງສັດຕະວັດທີ່ ໑໘ ນັ້ນ ວຽກໃນໂຮງງານຕ່ຳຫູກສ່ວນຫຼາຍແມ່ນເຮັດດ້ວຍມື. ແຕ່ໃນປີ ໑໗໖໐ ໄດ້ມີການໃຊ້ເຄື່ອງຈັກເຮັດຝ້າຍແລະພົມ ໃນປະເທດອັງກິດ. ແລະບໍ່ດົນຕໍ່ມາ ກໍໄດ້ມີການໃຊ້ເຄື່ອງຈັກແທນແຮງຄົນ. ການປ່ຽນແປງເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ໄດ້ໝາຍເຖິງການເລີ້ມຕົ້ນຂອງການປະຕິວັດອຸດສາຫະກັມ.

໑໑.໑.໔. ການປະຕິວັດອຸດສາຫະກັມບໍ່ໄດ້ປາກົດຂຶ້ນໃນສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາຈົນເຖິງຕົ້ນປີ ໑໘໐໐. ກ່ຽວກັບດ້ານນີ້ ນາຍ Eli Whitney ໄດ້ມີສ່ວນຊ່ວຍຫຼາຍທີ່ສຸດ. ໃນປີ ໑໗໙໓ ນາຍ Whitney ໄດ້ເລີ້ມສ້າງປືນໃນວິທີໃໝ່. ກ່ອນໜ້ານັ້ນ ປືນໄດ້ເຮັດດ້ວຍມື ແລະ ເປັນການສິ້ນເປືອງເວລາຫຼາຍທີ່ສຸດ.

ແຕ່ວ່າໃນໂຮງງານຂອງນາຍ Whitney ໄດ້ມີການໃຊ້ເຄື່ອງຈັກເພື່ອເຮັດປືນ. ປືນແຕ່ລະກະບອກມີພຽງສິບສ່ວນສິບຢ່າງເທົ່ານັ້ນ ຊຶ່ງເຮັດດ້ວຍເຄື່ອງຈັກທັງໝົດ. ເນື່ອງຈາກເຄື່ອງຈັກສາມາດເຮັດສິ້ນສ່ວນຄືກັນທຸກຢ່າງ ດັ່ງນັ້ນສິ້ນສ່ວນດັ່ງກ່າວຈຶ່ງໃຊ້ສັບປ່ຽນກັນໄດ້ ແລະ ປະກອບເຂົ້າກັນໄດ້ຢ່າງສະດວກສະບາຍ. ນີ້ເປັນຈຸດເລີ່ມຕົ້ນຂອງການຜລິດຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ. ການໃຊ້ວິທີຜລິດໃນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍນີ້ ຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ຜລິດສິ່ງຂອງໄດ້ໃນຣາຄາຖືກ ແລະ ໄດ້ໄວອີກດ້ວຍ.

໑໑.໑.໔. ບໍ່ນານຕໍ່ມາ ເຂດ New England ກໍໄດ້ມີໂຮງງານຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນມາເປັນບາງແຫ່ງ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ເສດຖະກິດໃນພາກຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງເໜືອຈຶ່ງບໍ່ໄດ້ອາໃສ່ການປູກຝັງອີກຕໍ່ໄປ. ພວກຊາວນາໃນພາກຕາເວັນອອກໄດ້ຕົກຢູ່ໃນສະພາບທີ່ແຂ່ງຂັນກັບພວກຊາວນາທີ່ຮັ່ງມີກວ່າໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສ່ຽງເໜືອນັ້ນໄດ້ຍາກ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ພາກັນເຂົ້າທຳງານໃນໂຮງງານຕ່າງໆ. ຕົກເຖິງປີ ໑໘໔໐ ພາກຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງເໜືອໄດ້ກາຍເປັນເຂດອຸດສາຫະກັມສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

໑໑.໒. ເຈົ້າແຫ່ງການປູກຝ້າຍ.

໑໑.໒.໑. ໃນຂະນະທີ່ທາງພາກຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງເໜືອໄດ້ກາຍເປັນເຂດອຸດສາຫະກັມສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິການັ້ນ ທາງພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ມີການພັດທະນາໄປໃນທາງອື່ນ. ເສດຖະກິດຂອງພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ອີງໃສ່ການຜລິດຝ້າຍ. ຝ້າຍເປັນພືດຈະບົດໃໝ່ສຳຄັນພາກໃຕ້. ໃນສໄມລ່າເມືອງຂຶ້ນນັ້ນ ບໍ່ໄດ້ມີການປູກຝ້າຍຫຼາຍ ເພາະວ່າ ການແຍກເມັດອອກຈາກປຸຍຝ້າຍເປັນການລຳບາກ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ພາກໃຕ້ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ປູກຢາສູບ, ເຂົ້າ ແລະ ຕົ້ນຄາມ. ຕໍ່ມາໃນປີ ໑໗໙໓ ນາຍ Eli Whitney ໄດ້ປະດິດເຄື່ອງຈັກອິ້ວຝ້າຍ ຊຶ່ງເປັນເຄື່ອງຈັກຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ພວກຄົນງານໃນສວນຝ້າຍສາມາດແຍກເມັດອອກຈາກປຸຍຝ້າຍໄດ້ຢ່າງສະດວກສະບາຍ. ຫຼັງຈາກໄດ້ມີການປະດິດເຄື່ອງຈັກອິ້ວຝ້າຍແລ້ວ ຝ້າຍກໍໄດ້ກາຍເປັນພືດທີ່ສຳຄັນໃນພາກໃຕ້. ໃນປີ ໑໘໔໐ ພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ສົ່ງຝ້າຍໄປຂາຍໃນປະເທດອັງກິດຫຼາຍກວ່າ ໒.໐໐໐.໐໐໐ ຕໍ່. ຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ລົງທຶນໃນສວນປູກຝ້າຍ ແລະ ໄດ້ໃຊ້ພວກຂ້າທາດເຮັດໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

໑໑.໒.໒. ຫຼັງຈາກໄດ້ມີການປະດິດເຄື່ອງຈັກອິ້ວຝ້າຍແລ້ວ ການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດໄດ້ຂະຫຍາຍຕົວຂຶ້ນຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວ. ປະຊາຊົນໃນພາກໃຕ້ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ເຊື່ອກັນວ່າ ເຄື່ອງຈັກອິ້ວຝ້າຍໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດໄດ້ພົບກຳໄຣດີ. ສະນັ້ນ ເມື່ອຝ້າຍໄດ້ກາຍເປັນພືດທີ່ສຳຄັນຂອງເສດຖະກິດໃນພາກໃຕ້ ຈຳນວນພ້ອມທັງຣາຄາຂອງພວກ

ອ້າຕາດກໍ່ໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນເຊັ່ນກັນ.

໑໑.໓. ການເຫັນແກ່ປະໂຫຍດທ້ອງຖິ່ນຂອງຕົນເອງຈົນເກີນໄປ.

໑໑.໓.໑. ດັ່ງທີ່ໄດ້ກ່າວມາຂ້າງເທິງນີ້ ຣັຖຕ່າງໆໃນພາກເຫນືອແລະໃນພາກໃຕ້ນັ້ນ ມີຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງກັນທີ່ສຸດ. ປະຊາຊົນໃນສອງພາກດັ່ງກ່າວ ໄດ້ທຳການທາງເງິນດ້ວຍວິທີຕ່າງກັນ. ແຕ່ລະພາກຂອງປະເທດທັງສອງນີ້ ຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ຣັຖບານແຫ່ງຊາດກະທຳສິ່ງທີ່ຈະເປັນປະໂຫຍດໃຫ້ແກ່ຕົນ. ພວກປະຊາຊົນໃນແຕ່ລະເຂດ ໄດ້ມີຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກວ່າ ຄວາມຕ້ອງການຂອງພວກຕົນມີຄວາມສຳຄັນກວ່າຄວາມຕ້ອງການຂອງປະເທດທັງຫມົດ. ຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ການເຫັນແກ່ຕົນປະໂຫຍດທ້ອງຖິ່ນຂອງຕົນເອງຈົນເກີນໄປ (sectionalism). ເລື່ອງນີ້ໄດ້ເກີດເປັນບັນຫາຈິ່ງໃນທີ່ສຸດ ໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ເກີດມີສົງຄາມຣະຫວ່າງເຫນືອແລະໃຕ້ຂຶ້ນ.

໑໑.໓.໒. ເສດຖະກິດຂອງຣັຖທາງພາກເຫນືອຂຶ້ນກັບໂຮງງານຫັດຖະກັມແລະການຄ້າກັບຕ່າງປະເທດ. ເນື່ອງຈາກໂຮງງານໃນຢູໂຣບ ສາມາດຜລິດສິນຄ້າໃນຣາຄາຕ່ຳກວ່າສິນຄ້າອະເມຣິກັນ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ສິນຄ້າອັງກິດ ຈຶ່ງຖືກກວ່າສິນຄ້າອະເມຣິກັນ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ ຣັຖຕ່າງໆທາງພາກເຫນືອ ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຮ້ອງຂໍໃຫ້ສະພາອອກກົດຫມາຍຂຶ້ນພາສີ ສິນຄ້າທີ່ມາຈາກຢູໂຣບ. ພາສີດັ່ງກ່າວຈະເປັນການເພີ່ມຄ່າໃຊ້ຈ່າຍສຳຫຼັບສິນຄ້າຈາກຢູໂຣບ ແລະ ໃນທີ່ສຸດກໍຈະເຮັດໃຫ້ສິນຄ້າອະເມຣິກັນມີຣາຄາຖືກກວ່າ. ພາສີຫວ່ານີ້ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ພາສີປ້ອງກັນ (protective tariff) ເພາະວ່າ ພາສີດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ປ້ອງກັນຜົນປະໂຫຍດຂອງໂຮງງານອະເມຣິກັນ.

໑໑.໓.໓. ພວກປະຊາຊົນທາງພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ພາກັນຄັດຄ້ານ ເພາະວ່າພາສີດັ່ງກ່າວ ເຮັດໃຫ້ສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າແພງເກີນໄປ. ສະພາຣ່າງກົດຫມາຍຂອງ South Carolina ໄດ້ຂູ່ວ່າຈະແຍກອອກຈາກສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ຖ້າຫາກບໍ່ມີການຢຸດຕິໃຊ້ພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າ. ທ່ານ John C.Calhoun ຈາກ South Carolina ໄດ້ໃຫ້ເຫດຜົນວ່າ ພາສີດັ່ງກ່າວບໍ່ໄດ້ເກີດປະໂຫຍດແກ່ປະຊາຊົນສ່ວນຫຼາຍໃນປະເທດ. ທ່ານຍັງໄດ້ກ່າວອີກວ່າ ຣັຖແຕ່ລະຣັຖ ມີສິດປະຕິເສດກົດຫມາຍຂອງຣັຖບານກາງທີ່ທຳຄວາມເສັຍຫາຍໃຫ້ແກ່ພົນລະເມືອງໃນຣັຖນັ້ນໆ. ໃນປີ ໑໘໒໘ ສະພາໄດ້ຍິນຍອມທີ່ຈະອອກດຳລັດກ່ຽວກັບພາສີສິນຄ້າ Tariff Act . ພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ພາກັນທ້ອນໂຮມເພື່ອຕໍ່ຕ້ານການອອກດຳລັດພາສີປ້ອງກັນ (protective tariff) ຕໍ່ໄປ. ການເລືອກຕັ້ງໃນປີ ໑໘໒໔ ໄດ້ສະແດງໃຫ້ຮູ້ວ່າ ການເຫັນແກ່ຜົນປະໂຍດທ້ອງຖິ່ນຂອງຕົນເອງຈົນເກີນໄປນັ້ນ ໄດ້ເປັນບັນຫາສຳຄັນຂອງປະເທດ.

໑໑.໔. ຍຸກຂອງທ່ານ Jackson .

໑໑.໔.໑. ໃນການເລືອກຕັ້ງຂອງປີ ໑໘໒໔ ການຂັດແຍ່ງຍ້ອນເຫັນແກ່ຜົນປະໂຍດທ້ອງຖິ່ນຂອງຕົນເອງ ໄດ້ລະເບີດຂຶ້ນຢ່າງເປີດເຜີຍ. ພັກ Republican ໄດ້ແຕ່ງຕັ້ງຜູ້ສະໝັກສີ່ທ່ານ ເພື່ອເຂົ້າແຂ່ງຂັນ ສຳຫຼັບເລືອກຕັ້ງເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ທ່ານ John Quincy Adams ໄດ້ເປັນຜູ້ຕາງໜ້າຂອງພາກເໜືອ, ທ່ານ William H. Crawford ເປັນຜູ້ຕາງໜ້າພາກໃຕ້, ທ່ານ Henry Clay ແລະ Andrew Jackson ເປັນຜູ້ຕາງໜ້າພາກຕາເວັນຕົກທັງສອງທ່ານ. ໃນການເລືອກຕັ້ງໃນປີ ໑໘໒໔ ນັ້ນ ທ່ານ Andrew Jackson ໄດ້ຮັບຄະແນນສຽງຈາກປະຊາຊົນຫຼາຍກວ່າຜູ້ສະໝັກຄົນອື່ນທຸກຄົນ. ແຕ່ທ່ານບໍ່ໄດ້ຮັບສຽງສ່ວນຫຼາຍຈາກຄະນະຜູ້ເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ເອງ ສະມາຊິກສະພາຕ່ຳຈຶ່ງຕ້ອງໄດ້ເລືອກເອົາຜູ້ນຶ່ງໃນຈຳນວນຜູ້ແຂ່ງຂັນທີ່ໄດ້ຄະແນນສຽງຫຼາຍກວ່າໝູ່. ທ່ານ Clay ໄດ້ຫັນໄປສນັບສນູນທ່ານ Adams ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ທ່ານ Adams ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຖືກເລືອກຕັ້ງ. ການເລືອກຕັ້ງດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ພັກ Republican party ແຕກແຍກກັນ. ທ່ານ Adams ພ້ອມດ້ວຍຄະນະຂອງທ່ານໄດ້ມາກັນຕັ້ງພັກ Whig party ໂດຍອາໃສຫຼັກການຂອງພັກ Federalists ເກົ່າ. ທ່ານ Jackson ແລະຄະນະກໍ່ໄດ້ຕັ້ງພັກ Democratic party ຂຶ້ນໂດຍອີງຕາມຫຼັກການຂອງພັກ Republican ເກົ່າ.

໑໑.໔.໒. ໃນປີ ໑໘໒໘ ທ່ານ Jackson ໄດ້ຊະນະທ່ານ Adams ໃນການເລືອກຕັ້ງເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ທ່ານ Andrew Jackson ໄດ້ເປັນທີ່ຮູ້ຈັກກັນວ່າເປັນຜູ້ແທນຂອງປະຊາຊົນທັມມະດາ. ການປົກຄອງສອງສໄມຂອງທ່ານມັກຖືກເອີ້ນວ່າເປັນຍຸກປະຊາທິປະໄຕຂອງທ່ານ Jackson . ການຕັ້ງຊື່ດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ເກີດຈາກຄວາມຄິດທີ່ວ່າ ທ່ານ Jackson ໄດ້ຮັບໃຊ້ຜົນປະໂຍດຂອງປະຊາຊົນສາມັນທັມມະດາ. ໃນລະຫວ່າງການປົກຄອງສອງສໄມນັ້ນ ທ່ານໄດ້ທຳການປ່ຽນແປງຫຼາຍຢ່າງ. ຫ້ອງການປະທານາທິບໍດີ ໄດ້ຖືກປັບປຸງໃຫ້ເຂັ້ມແຂງຂຶ້ນ. ທ່ານ Jackson ມັກຄັດຄ້ານສະພາແລະສານສູງສຸດ ແລະ ໄດ້ໃຊ້ຊະນະຍູດຄນາ. ໃນດ້ານການເມືອງ ມັກຈະມີການໃຊ້ລະບົບ "ເໜົ່າເໝັນ". ທ່ານ Jackson ໄດ້ເອົາຄະນະພັກພວກທີ່ສັງກັດຢູ່ໃນພັກແລະຜູ້ທີ່ມີຄວາມຈົງຮັກພັກດີຕໍ່ທ່ານເຂົ້າມາແທນເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ໃນຣັຖບານກາງ

ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຄົນ. ໃນຍຸກຂອງທ່ານ Jackson ການປະຕິຮູບໄດ້ເພີ່ມຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນເຊັ່ນການຂະຫຍາຍສະຫະພັນແຮງງານແລະການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອສິດທິຂອງບັນດາຜູ້ຍິງດັ່ງນີ້ເປັນຕົ້ນ. ຄວາມພະຍາຍາມໃນການຫາທາງຍຸດຕິການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດກໍ່ມີແຜ່ຫຼາຍເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ. ໃນດ້ານການເມືອງກໍ່ໄດ້ມີປະຊາທິປະໄຕຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ. ຫຼາຍລັດໄດ້ພາກັນຍຸດຕິການບັງຄັບໃຫ້ຜູ້ຄົນສຳລະສັບສິນກ່ອນຈະມີສິດປ່ອນບັດ.

ຍຸກຂອງທ່ານ Jackson ບໍ່ໄດ້ນຳເອົາປະຊາທິປະໄຕແລະເສລີພາບມາສູ່ທຸກຄົນສເມີໄປ. ທ່ານ Jackson ເປັນຜູ້ນຶ່ງທີ່ເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງຂ້າທາດ ແລະ ບໍ່ສນັບສນູນໃຫ້ມີການຍຸດຕິການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນທ່ານ Jackson ບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນມິດກັບຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງ. ໃນສໄມການປົກຄອງຂອງທ່ານນັ້ນ ສິດທິຂອງພວກອິນເດັຍແດງໄດ້ອ່ອນເພັຍລົງຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ.

EXERCISES

I. WORD SEARCH PUZZLE:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ, ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນສັບທີ່ຫາໄດ້ນັ້ນໄວ້ພ້ອມຂຽນຄວາມໝາຍແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍດ້ວຍ.

THREAD
HURT
GUN
KING
CROP
RICE
YARN
IRISH
SPOIL
TRADE
SECEDE

PRODUCT
ENGLAND
TARIFF
EUROPE
REJECT
HUNGER
COTTON
INDIGO
INVENT
SECTION
POVERTY
MACHINE

SEPARATE
NULLIFY
SLAVERY
ASSEMBLE
FACTORY
COMPETE
GERMANS
POPULATION
SEPARATE
PROTECTIVE
DEVELOP

INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION
INDUSTRIAL SECTION
INTERCHANGEABLE
MASS PRODUCTION
COTTON GIN
IMMIGRATION
CONTRIBUTION
ELI WHITNEY
SCANDINAVIAN
AGRICULTURE
PLANTATION

S Y E M L A M M S E C T I O N A D A M N P
C M A C H I N E A N U L L I F Y N N O A L
A N G E R M A N A S S E M B L E N I K G A
N A C F A C T O R Y S E E D A R T N W R N
D I O G I D N I C O M P E T E U C V A I T
I M N Y E N G L A N D O R C L Y E E N C A
N M T T S L A V E R Y R A O V E J N O R T
A I R R E T A R I F F U V T D N E T G L I
V G I E A R B H U N G E R T T U R K I T O
I R B U R Y C E R A R L E O R Y C H D U N
A A U O C A E H I L O P S N U E O T N R K
N T T P O P U L A T I O N C H N T B I E I
B I I R I C E I E N I H C A M T T E C O G
A O O N A N R C Y K G C R O P I O T T T N
M N N N I T H R E A D E W A N H N A C A I
H B U A S S E M B L E Y A R N W G R U R K
S G C U N A N C Y K W A N B O I I A D A I
I H D E V E L O P S P O I L L L N P O P C
R N P R O T E C T I V E S E C E D E R E B
I N D U S T R I A L S E C T I O N S P S H

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳທວຍຈອກຕາສັບ : (ເບິ່ງພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ :

ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາແຕ່ລະສັບຄຳເວົ້າໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໂດຍໃຫ້ເລືອກເອົາເລກທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ນັ້ນໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ກ) ແທນຄຳຕອບ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ກ. ເຄື່ອງຈັກອີ໋ວຝ້າຍ	໑. ຕຶກຫຼືສະຖານທີ່ສຳຫຼັບປະດິດແລະຜລິດສິນຄ້າຕ່າງໆ.
_____ ຂ. ພິມ	໒. ເຄື່ອງຈັກໃຊ້ສຳຫຼັບແຍກເມັດຝ້າຍອອກຈາກບອນຝ້າຍ.
_____ ຄ. ການຄ້າ	໓. ຜູ້ທີ່ຍ້າຍອອກຈາກປະເທດນຶ່ງເພື່ອໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານແລະທຳມາຫາກິນໃນອີກປະເທດນຶ່ງ.
_____ ງ. Sectionalism	໔. ການຜລິດສິນຄ້າຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໂດຍໃຊ້ເຄື່ອງຈັກ.
_____ ຈ. ແຍກອອກ	໕. ເສັ້ນທີ່ທຳດ້ວຍອຸປະກອນທັມມະຊາດ ຫຼື ອຸປະກອນທຽມເຊັ່ນ ຂົນສັດຫຼືໄນລ້ອນໃຊ້ສຳຫຼັບຕ່ຳຫຼືຖັກເສື້ອຜ້າ.
_____ ສ. ປະຕິເສດ	໖. ກິດຈະການກ່ຽວກັບການຊື້ການຂາຍສິນຄ້າ.
_____ ຊ. ສັບປ່ຽນກັນໄດ້	໗. ການເຫັນແກ່ຜົນປະໂຍດຂອງທ້ອງຖິ່ນຕົນເອງຈົນເກີນໄປ.

_____ ຍ.	ການຜລິດຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ	໘.	ການຖອນຕົວອອກຈາກການເປັນສະມາຊິກຂອງການຈັດຕັ້ງ.
_____ ດ.	ຄົນເຂົ້າເມືອງ	໙.	ບໍ່ຍອມໃຊ້ກົດໝາຍຂອງລັດຖະບານກາງໃນລັດໃດລັດໜຶ່ງ.
_____ ຕ.	ໂຮງງານ	໑໐.	ເຄື່ອງອະໄຫຼ່ທີ່ຜລິດດ້ວຍເຄື່ອງຈັກໃນຂະໜາດດຽວກັນແລະໃຊ້ແທນກັນໄດ້.

໓. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ.

ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ໝາຍຕົວອັກສອນ T ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກເຫັນວ່າປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກ. ຖ້າຫາກເຫັນວ່າຜິດໃຫ້ໝາຍ F ໃສ່.

_____ ໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໃນປີ ໑໘໑໒ ສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ມີຄວາມເຂັ້ມແຂງຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ.

_____ ໒. ກ່ອນສໄມກາງສັດຕະວັດທີ່ສິບແປດນັ້ນ ວຽກສ່ວນຫຼາຍໃນໂຮງງານຕຳຫູກແມ່ນເຮັດດ້ວຍມື ແຕ່ໃນປີ ໑໗໙໐ ປະເທດອັງກິດໄດ້ໃຊ້ເຄື່ອງຈັກສຳຫຼັບເຮັດຝ້າຍແລະຂົນ.

_____ ໓. ການປະຕິວັດອຸດສາຫະກັມບໍ່ໄດ້ປາກົດຂຶ້ນໃນສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາຈົນເຖິງຕົ້ນປີ ໑໙໐໐.

_____ ໔. ທ່ານ Eli Whitney ໄດ້ໃຊ້ເຄື່ອງຈັກສຳຫຼັບເຮັດລົດໃນໂຮງງານຂອງທ່ານ.

_____ ໕. ໃນບໍ່ດົນໃນເຂດ New England ກໍໄດ້ມີໂຮງງານຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍແຫ່ງ. ເສດຖະກິດໃນພາກຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງເໜືອບໍ່ໄດ້ອາໃສ່ການປູກຝັງອີກຕໍ່ໄປ.

______ ໖. ເສດຖະກິດໃນພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ອີງໃສ່ການປູກຝ້າຍ.

______ ໗. ຕໍ່ມາໃນປີ ໑໗໙໓ ທ່ານ Eli Whitney ໄດ້ປະດິດເຄື່ອງຈັກອິ້ວຝ້າຍຂຶ້ນ ຊຶ່ງເປັນເຄື່ອງຈັກຊ່ວຍພວກຄົນງານໃນສວນຝ້າຍໃຫ້ສາມາດແຍກເມັດອອກຈາກບວນຝ້າຍໄດ້ຢ່າງສະດວກສະບາຍ.

______ ໘. ກ່ອນການປະດິດເຄື່ອງຈັກອິ້ວຝ້າຍນັ້ນ ການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດໃນພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ຂະຫຍາຍຕົວຂຶ້ນຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວ.

______ ໙. ບັນດາລັດຕ່າງໆໃນພາກເໜືອໄດ້ຮ້ອງໃຫ້ສະພາອອກກົດໝາຍເກັບພາສີສິນຄ້າທີ່ມາຈາກຢູໂຣບ ເພື່ອເປັນການປ້ອງກັນສິນຄ້າອະເມຣິກັນ.

______ ໑໐. ປະຊາຊົນໃນພາກໃຕ້ ໄດ້ສນັບສນູນການເກັບພາສີສິນຄ້າເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ຍ້ອນວ່າ ພາສີດັ່ງກ່າວເຮັດໃຫ້ສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າມີລາຄາແພງຈົນເກີນໄປ.

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ບ່ອນວ່າງ .

ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າຫຼືໝວດຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ ໃສ່ໃນບ່ອນວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍອັນຖືກຕ້ອງ : ຄວາມທຸກຍາກແລະອຶດຫິວ, ສັບປ່ຽນກັນໄດ້, ລົງທຶນ, ການເຫັນແກ່ຜົນປະໂຍດຂອງທ້ອງຖິ່ນຕົນເອງຈົນເກີນໄປ, ເສດຖະກິດຂອງທາດ, ການປະຕິວັດອຸດສາຫະກັມ, ຄົນເຂົ້າເມືອງ, ເຂດອຸດສາຫະກັມ, ລົບລ້າງ, ເປັນຜົນກຳໄລ.

໕. ການຫັດຖະກັມໄດ້ກາຍເປັນພື້ນຖານຂອງ ________________________ . ການປ່ຽນແປງທັງໝົດເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ກະທົບກະເທືອນຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຂອງປະຊາຊົນ.

໒. ໃນປີ ໑໘໖໐ ປະຊາກອນຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ໄດ້ມີຫຼາຍກວ່າ ໓໑ ລ້ານຄົນ ຍ້ອນວ່າຂະໜາດຂອງຄອບຄົວຊາວອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ໃຫຍ່ຂຶ້ນ ແລະ ຈຳນວນຂອງ ______________ ໄດ້ເພີ່ມຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ.

໓. ພວກຄົນເຂົ້າເມືອງຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄປປະສົບກັບ ______________ ໃນຢູໂຣບ.

໔. ບໍ່ດົນຕໍ່ມາ ໄດ້ມີການໃຊ້ເຄື່ອງຈັກແທນແຮງຄົນ. ການປ່ຽນແປງເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ໄດ້ໝາຍເຖິງການເລີ່ມຕົ້ນຂອງ ______________ .

໕. ປືນແຕ່ລະກະບອກໄດ້ມີພຽງສິບສ່ວນເທົ່ານັ້ນ ແລະ ທຸກສ່ວນເຫຼົ່ານີ້ເຮັດດ້ວຍເຄື່ອງຈັກ. ຍ້ອນວ່າເຄື່ອງຈັກໄດ້ຜລິດສ່ວນຕ່າງໆຂອງປືນໃນຂະໜາດດຽວກັນ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ສ່ວນຕ່າງໆເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ຈຶ່ງ ______________ ______________ ແລະປະກອບໄດ້ຢ່າງສະດວກສະບາຍ.

໖. ຕົກເຖິງປີ ໑໘໔໐ ພາກຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງເໜືອໄດ້ກາຍເປັນ ______________ ຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

໗. ຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ ______________ ໃນສວນປູກຝ້າຍແລະໄດ້ໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດເພື່ອເຮັດວຽກໃຫ້ພວກຕົນ.

໘. ປະຊາຊົນໃນພາກໃຕ້ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ເຊື່ອກັນວ່າ ເຄື່ອງຈັກອີ້ວຝ້າຍໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດ ______________ .

໙. ປະຊາຊົນໃນແຕ່ລະເຂດນັ້ນ ມີຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກວ່າຄວາມຕ້ອງການຂອງພວກຕົນສຳຄັນກວ່າຄວາມຕ້ອງການຂອງປະເທດທັງໝົດ. ຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ເອີ້ນວ່າ ______________.

໑໐. ທ່ານ John C.Calhoun ຈາກ South Carolina ໄດ້ໃຫ້ເຫດຜົນວ່າ ການເກັບພາສີສິນຄ້ານັ້ນ ບໍ່ໄດ້ສ້າງປະໂຍດໃຫ້ແກ່ດິນສ່ວນຫຼາຍໃນປະເທດ. ທ່ານຍັງໄດ້ກ່າວອີກວ່າ ຣັຖທຸກຣັຖມີສິດທີ່ຈະ ______________________ ຫຼື ປະຕິເສດການໃຊ້ກົດໝາຍຂອງຣັຖບານກາງທີ່ທຳຄວາມເສັຍຫາຍໃຫ້ແກ່ພົນລະເມືອງຂອງຣັຖນັ້ນໆ.

ພາກ ໑໖ : ການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດແລະຂະບວນການຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ທາດ

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະວິທີໃຊ້ສັບ :

slaver: ການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດ

Slavery existed in America in colonial times.

servant: ຄົນໃຊ້

Some slaves worked hard in the cotton fields but others worked as house servants.

master: ນາຍ

The lives of the slaves depended upon their masters.

punishment: ການລົງໂທດ

Whipping was a common form of punishment.

Abolitionist Movement: ຂະບວນການຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດ

Many Americans joined the Abolitionist Movement.

secret organization: ອົງການຈັດຕັ້ງທາງລັບ

Underground Railroad: ອົງການຈັດຕັ້ງຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດທາງລັບ

"Underground Railroad" was a secret organization that helped slaves to run away, and escape to the North.

revolt: ການລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້

There were many slave revolts in the history of the United States.

arsenal: ສາງອາວຸດ

John Brown and his followers attacked a federal arsenal in Harpers Ferry.

READING

12.1. SLAVERY IN THE UNITED STATES

12.1.1. Slavery had existed in America in colonial times. Black people were seized in Africa and brought to America as slaves. Most black slaves worked in the fields in the South. However, there were slaves in nearly all the colonies. Many merchants in the North got rich on profits from the slave trade. At first, most slaves worked in the tobacco and rice fields. Before 1800, tobacco and rice were the main crops of the South. Cotton was also grown, but the cotton seed had to be separated from the cotton fibers by hand. This made it expensive to produce cotton. In 1793, Eli Whitney invented the cotton gin to separate the cotton seeds from the cotton fibers. After the invention of the cotton gin, cotton became cheaper to produce.

12.1.2. With the invention of the cotton gin, the raising of cotton spread rapidly throughout the South and by 1815, cotton had become the main crop of the Southern states. In order to grow cotton, the South needed a supply a cheap labor to work in the cotton fields. Black slaves were the source of cheap labor. As cotton became more widespread, slavery grew in importance.

12.1.3. In 1790 there were about 700,000 black slaves in the United States, but in 1860 there were about 4 million. Nearly all the slaves lived in the South. Land and money were the sources of wealth in the North and West. Land and slaves were the sources of wealth in the South.

12.2. LIFE AS A SLAVE

12.2.1. In general, slaves worked long hours in the fields. But they also worked in factories and mines and as house servants. Whether they were treated well or poorly depended upon their masters. In many cases, slaves received poor food and poor housing. Slaves owners were allowed to punish slaves. Whipping was a common form of punishment. Slaves were not treated as people, but as property. They could not testify in court. They were not allowed to learn to read and write, and they could be bought and sold. Husband, wife, and children could be sold to different owners. Families might be separated and would never see each other again. This terrible situation angered many Americans who wanted to end slavery.

12.3. THE ABOLITIONIST MOVEMENT

12.3.1. Many people were against slavery. The people who worked against slavery were called abolitionists. They wanted to abolish slavery, or stop it completely in the United States. There were many abolitionist groups. One of the most important groups was a religious group called the Society of Friends, or the Quakers. Abolitionists did many things to try to stop slavery. Some people printed newspapers and booklets against slavery. For 35 years, a man named William Lloyd

Garrison published a newspaper called the **Liberator**. The main purpose of the **Liberator** was to print stories that told about the evils of slavery. A former slave named Frederick Douglas also printed an abolitionist newspaper called the **North Star**, and he was also an excellent speaker and gave many speeches against slavery.

12.3.2. Another important way of showing opposition to slavery was the work of a **secret organization** of people who helped slaves escape to freedom. This organization was called the "**Underground Railroad**". It was not really a railroad, but was a group of people who helped slaves run away. The most famous person in the Underground Railroad was Harriet Tubman. Between the years of 1850 and 1860, about 10,000 slaves who escaped through this system to the North and Canada.

12.4. SLAVE REBELLIONS

12.4.1. Abolitionists fought against slavery with books, newspapers, and speeches. Many slaves fought against slavery by running away on their own or through the Underground Railroad. However, some slaves and abolitionists did not think that these methods were effective enough. They believed that slaves would only be free if they fought for their freedom.

12.4.2. There were many slave **revolts** in the history of the United States, but three stood out as the most important. In 1782, a former slave name Denmark Vesey organized a slave revolt in Charleston, South Carolina. His plans were discovered just before the revolt was to start. Vesey and his followers were arrested and put to death. The second revolt, which actually began and lasted for several months in 1831, was led by Nat Turner, a slave on a farm in Virginia. In this revolt 60 whites were killed, but once again the leaders were arrested and put to death. The third revolt was led by a white abolitionist named John Brown. His group attacked and captured a federal arsenal in Harpers Ferry, Virginia, in 1859. Their plan was to take the guns from the arsenal and give them to the slaves to start a rebellion. Most of his group were killed. The rest were captured and put to death.

12.4.3. The people who led slave revolts tried to help slaves get their freedom. Instead of helping the slaves, though, the revolts usually hurt the slaves. They made southern support of slavery even stronger and made Southerners work harder to deter anyone who was trying to end slavery in the United States.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

D	E	N	M	A	R	K	V	E	S	E	Y	A	R	S	E	N	A	L
C	O	T	T	O	N	S	E	E	D	S	E	R	V	A	N	T	H	R
O	P	U	N	I	S	H	M	E	N	T	L	E	V	I	L	S	A	E
T	S	E	C	R	E	T	A	W	A	Y	I	V	O	M	F	V	R	B
T	E	S	O	S	H	P	S	T	R	P	B	O	P	D	R	I	P	E
O	P	L	L	O	U	A	T	R	S	U	E	L	P	O	E	R	E	L
N	R	A	O	U	S	P	E	E	E	R	R	T	O	R	E	G	R	L
F	A	V	N	R	B	E	R	A	N	P	A	E	S	T	D	I	S	I
I	T	E	I	C	A	R	S	T	A	O	T	S	I	A	O	N	F	O
B	E	R	E	E	N	S	E	E	L	S	O	C	T	N	M	I	E	N
E	X	Y	S	S	D	O	E	N	O	E	R	A	I	T	O	A	R	H
R	A	I	L	R	O	A	D	D	X	W	V	P	O	N	O	N	R	E
A	B	O	L	I	T	I	O	N	I	S	T	E	N	H	U	R	Y	L
F	O	L	L	O	W	E	R	C	H	A	R	L	E	S	T	O	N	P
S	O	U	T	H	E	R	N	E	R	S	B	L	O	C	K	Y	E	S

HURT
HELP
TREAT
BLOCK
SEE
REVOLT
MASTER
SECRET
EVILS

END
SERVANT
SEPARATE
RAILROAD
SLAVERY
SOURCES
HUSBAND
ARSENAL
PAPERS

AWAY
COLONIES
COTTON SEED
COTTON FIBER
LIBERATOR
PURPOSE
OPPOSTION
IMPORTANT
FREEDOM

ABOLITIONIST
FOLLOWER
CHARLESTON
HARPERS FERRY
DENMARK VESEY
PUNISHMENT
SOUTHERNER
VIRGINIA

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A

____ a. master

____ b. mine

____ c. property

____ d. revolt

____ e. servant

____ f. Underground Railroad

____ g. booklet

____ h. arsenal

____ i. abolition

B

1. the ending of something, often of slavery.
2. a place where military equipments is made and stored.
3. a small bound book or pamphlet, usually with paper covers.
4. a person having control over the action of another or others.
5. an excavation in the earth from which ore or minerals can be extracted.
6. a possession, ownership.
7. an attempt to overthrow the authority of the state; rebel.
8. one who is privately employed to perform domestic services.
9. a system which helped runaway slaves escape from the South into the North or into Canada.

III. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put an F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. Slavery existed in America in colonial times.

____ 2. With the invention of the cotton gin, the raising of cotton spread rapidly throughout the South and by 1815, cotton had become the main crop of the Southern states.

____ 3. In 1790, there were about 700,000 black slaves in the United States, but by 1860 there were about 4 million. Nearly all the slaves lived in the North.

____ 4. In general, slaves worked long hours in the field. But they also worked in factories and mines and as house servants.

____ 5. Slaveowners were not allowed to punish slaves.

____ 6. The slaves were allowed to learn to read and write, and they could not be bought and sold.

____ 7. Many people were against slavery. The people who worked against slavery were called abolitionists.

____ 8. The most famous person in the Underground Railroad was Harriet Tubman.

____ 9. Abolitionists fought against slavery with television, radio, and speeches.

____10. There were many slave revolts in the history of the United States.

IV. Fill in the blanks:

Complete each statement by writing the correct work or group of words in the blanks: sources of wealth, Underground

Railroad, abolitionists, cotton seeds, revolt, slaves, running away, whipping, cotton gin, arsenal.

1. Black people were seized in Africa and brought to America as ____________ .
2. Cotton was also grown but the ____________ had to be separated from the cotton fibers by hand.
3. In 1793, Eli Whitney invented the ___________ to separate the cotton seeds from the cotton fibers.
4. Land and money were the ____________ in the North and West.
5. Slaveowners were allowed to punish slaves. ____________ was a common form of punishment.
6. Many people were against slavery. The people who worked against slavery were called ____________ .
7. Another important way of showing opposition to slavery was the work of a secret organization of people who helped slaves escape to freedom. This organization was called the ___________ .
8. Many slaves fought against slavery by ___________ on their own or through the Underground Railroad.
9. In 1782, a former slave named Denmark Vesey organized a slave _____________ in Charleston, South Carolina.
10. The third slave revolt was led by a white abolitionist named John Brown. His group attack and captured a federal ___________ in Harpers Ferry, Virginia, in 1859.

ບົດອ່ານ

໑໒.໑. ການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

໑໒.໑.໑. ການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດໃນອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ເກີດມີຂຶ້ນໃນສໄມລ່າຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນ. ຊາວຜິວດຳໄດ້ຖືກຈັບກຸມໃນອາຟຣິກາ ແລະ ຖືກນຳເອົາເຂົ້າໄປເປັນທາດໃນອະເມຣິກາ. ພວກຂ້າທາດຊາວຜິວດຳ ສ່ວນຫຼາຍເຮັດວຽກໃນໄຮ່ນາຫຼືສວນໃນພາກໃຕ້. ພວກຂ້າທາດດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ມີຢູ່ໃນເກືອບທຸກອານານິຄົມ. ພວກພໍ່ຄ້າຫຼາຍຄົນໃນພາກເໜືອໄດ້ຮັ່ງມີຍ້ອນເງິນກຳໄລທີ່ໄດ້ມາຈາກການຄ້າທາດ. ທຳອິດນັ້ນ ພວກຂ້າທາດສ່ວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກການສວນປູກຝ້າຍ ແລະ ການໄຮ່ປູກເຂົ້າ. ກ່ອນປີ ໑໘໐໐ ຢາສູບແລະເຂົ້າເປັນພືດທີ່ສຳຄັນຂອງພາກໃຕ້. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ກໍໄດ້ມີການປູກຝ້າຍເຊັ່ນກັນ ແຕ່ຕ້ອງໄດ້ໃຊ້ມືສຳຫຼັບແຍກເມັດອອກຈາກນວນຝ້າຍ. ວິທີນີ້ ໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ການຜລິດຝ້າຍມີຣາຄາແພງ. ໃນປີ ໑໗໙໓ ນາຍ Eli Whitney ໄດ້ປະດິດເຄື່ອງຈັກອິ້ວຝ້າຍຂຶ້ນ ສຳຫຼັບແຍກເມັດຝ້າຍອອກຈາກນວນຝ້າຍ. ຫຼັງຈາກມີການປະດິດເຄື່ອງຈັກອິ້ວຝ້າຍແລ້ວ ການຜລິດຝ້າຍກໍໄດ້ຖືກລົງ.

໑໒.໑.໒. ຍ້ອນການປະດິດເຄື່ອງຈັກອິ້ວຝ້າຍ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ການປູກຝ້າຍຈຶ່ງໄດ້ແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍໄປທົ່ວທັງພາກໃຕ້ ຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວ ແລະ ພໍຕົກເຖິງປີ ໑໘໑໔ ຝ້າຍກໍໄດ້ກາຍເປັນພືດທີ່ສຳຄັນຂອງຣັຖຕ່າງໆໃນພາກໃຕ້. ເມື່ອທຳການປູກຝ້າຍ ພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ມີຄວາມຕ້ອງການແຮງງານຖືກ ເພື່ອເຮັດວຽກໃນສວນຝ້າຍ. ພວກຂ້າທາດຊາວຜິວດຳໄດ້ເປັນແຫຼ່ງຂອງແຮງງານທີ່ຖືກ. ເມື່ອການປູກຝ້າຍໄດ້ຂະຫຍາຍຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດກໍມີຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ.

໑໒.໑໓. ໃນປີ ໑໗໙໐ ຈຳນວນຂອງພວກຂ້າທາດໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ໄດ້ມີປະມານ ໗໐໐.໐໐໐ ຄົນ ແລະ ໃນປີ ໑໘໖໐ ຈຳນວນຂອງພວກຂ້າທາດໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນເຖິງ ໔ ລ້ານຄົນ. ພວກຂ້າທາດເກືອບທັງໝົດນັ້ນໄດ້ອາໄສຢູ່ທາງພາກໃຕ້. ບໍ່ເກີດຂອງຄວາມຮັ່ງມີໃນພາກເໜືອແລະພາກຕາເວັນຕົກນັ້ນແມ່ນທີ່ດິນແລະພວກຂ້າທາດ.

໑໒.໒. ຊີວິດໃນການເປັນຂ້າທາດ.

໑໒.໒.໑. ໂດຍທົ່ວໄປແລ້ວ ພວກຂ້າທາດນັ້ນ ໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກໃນສວນເປັນເວລາດົນໃນມື້ໜຶ່ງ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກໃນໂຮງງານ, ໃນບໍ່ແຮ່ ແລະ ເຮັດວຽກເປັນຄົນໃຊ້ໃນເຮືອນອີກດ້ວຍ. ການເບິ່ງແຍງເຂົາເຈົ້າຈະດີຫຼືຮ້າຍເທົ່າໃດນັ້ນ ຂຶ້ນກັບນາຍຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ. ພວກທີ່ບໍ່ໄດ້ກິນດີແລະຢູ່ດີກໍມີຫຼາຍ. ບັນດາເຈົ້າຂອງຂ້າທາດມີສິດລົງໂທດພວກຂ້າທາດ. ການຂ້ຽນຕີ ເປັນວິທີທົ່ວໄປຂອງການລົງໂທດ. ພວກຂ້າທາດບໍ່ໄດ້ຖືກຖືວ່າເປັນມະນຸດ ແຕ່ຖືກຖືວ່າເປັນຊັບສິນ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ມີສິດໃຫ້ການໃນສານ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ມີສິດຮຽນອ່ານຮຽນຂຽນ ແລະ ອາດຖືກຊື້ ແລະ ຂາຍໄດ້. ຜົວເມັຍ ແລະ ລູກ ອາດຖືກຂາຍໃຫ້ເຈົ້າຂອງຕ່າງກັນ. ຄອບຄົວຂອງຂ້າທາດຖືກແຍກກັນ ແລະ ບໍ່ມີໂອກາດໄດ້ພົບພໍ້ກັນອີກຕໍ່ໄປ. ສະພາບອັນຮ້າຍກາດນີ້ ໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຜູ້ທີ່ຕ້ອງການຢຸດຕິການໃຊ້ທາດນັ້ນໂກດເຄືອງທີ່ສຸດ.

໑໒.໓. ພວກຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ທາດ.

໑໒.໓.໑. ຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ທຳການຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດ. ພວກທີ່ທຳການຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດນັ້ນ ເອີ້ນວ່າ abolitionists . ເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງການລົບລ້າງການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດ ຫຼື ຢຸດຕິການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດຢ່າງສິ້ນເຊີງໃນສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາ. ກຸ່ມຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດນັ້ນ ມີຫຼາຍກຸ່ມດ້ວຍກັນ. ກຸ່ມທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດນັ້ນ ແມ່ນກຸ່ມສາສນາ ຊຶ່ງມີຊື່ວ່າ ສະມາຄົມເພື່ອນມິດຫຼືພວກ Quakers ພວກຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດໄດ້ກະທຳຫຼາຍຢ່າງເພື່ອພະຍາຍາມຫາທາງຢຸດຕິການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດ. ຄົນບາງຈຳພວກກໍໄດ້ພາກັນພິມໜັງສືພິມແລະປຶ້ມຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດອອກມາ. ຄົນໜຶ່ງຊື່ວ່າ William Lloyd Garrison ໄດ້ພິມໜັງສືພິມທີ່ເອີ້ນວ່າ ຜູ້ປົດປ່ອຍ ຫຼື The liberator ເປັນເວລາ ໓໔ ປີ. ຈຸດປະສົງອັນສຳຄັນຂອງໜັງສືພິມ Liberator ນັ້ນ ກໍຄືພິມເລື່ອງທີ່ກ່າວເຖິງຄວາມຊົ່ວຮ້າຍຂອງການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດ. ອະດີດຂ້າທາດທີ່ມີຊື່ວ່າ Frederick Douglasກໍໄດ້ພິມໜັງສືພິມຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ ເອີ້ນວ່າ the North Star . ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ນາຍ Douglas ກໍຍັງເປັນນັກປາຖະກະຖາທີ່ເກັ່ງທີ່ສຸດ ແລະ ໄດ້ກ່າວຄຳປາໄສຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດຫຼາຍຄັ້ງດ້ວຍກັນ.

໑໒.໓.໒. ວິທີທາງ ທີ່ສຳຄັນອີກຢ່າງໜຶ່ງ ທີ່ໄດ້ສະແດງເຖິງການຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດນັ້ນ ກໍຄື ການເຄື່ອນໄຫວຂອງອົງການຈັດຕັ້ງລັບອົງການໜຶ່ງ ຊຶ່ງໄດ້ຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ພວກຂ້າທາດໂຕນໜີໄປຢູ່ອິສຣະພາບ. ອົງການດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ອົງການທາງຣົດໄຟໃຕ້ດິນ ຫຼື the "Underground Railroad". ນັ້ນບໍ່ແມ່ນທາງຣົດໄຟທີ່ແທ້ຈິງ ມັນແມ່ນກຸ່ມຄົນທີ່ໄດ້ຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ພວກຂ້າທາດໂຕນໜີຕ່າງຫາກ. ບຸກຄົນທີ່ມີຊື່ສຽງທີ່ສຸດ

ຂອງອົງການທາງຣົດໄຟໃຕ້ດິນ ແມ່ນຍາຍ Harriet Tubman . ໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໘໔໐ ຫາ ໑໘໖໐ ພວກຂ້າທາດທີ່ໄດ້ໂຕນໜີໄປທາງພາກເໜືອ ແລະ ປະເທດ Canada ໂດຍຜ່ານອົງການທີ່ວ່ານີ້ ມີປະມານ ໑໐.໐໐໐ ຄົນ.

໑໒.໔. ການລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້ຂອງພວກຂ້າທາດ.

໑໒.໔.໑. ພວກຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດ ໄດ້ທຳການຕໍ່ສູ້ດ້ວຍປື້ມ, ໜັງສື ແລະ ຄຳເວົ້າ. ພວກຂ້າທາດຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ ໄດ້ຕໍ່ສູ້ດ້ວຍການໂຕນໜີໂດຍຕົນເອງ ຫຼື ໂດຍຜ່ານອົງການທາງຣົດໄຟໃຕ້ດິນ. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍດີ ພວກຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດ ບໍ່ໄດ້ຄິດວ່າ ວິທີດັ່ງກ່າວເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນ ເປັນທີ່ໄດ້ຜົນພຽງພໍ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເຊື່ອກັນວ່າ ພວກຂ້າທາດທັງຫຼາຍ ຈະເປັນອິສຣະໄດ້ ກໍແຕ່ໃນເມື່ອຫາກເຂົາເຈົ້າຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອອິສຣະພາບຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເທົ່ານັ້ນ.

໑໒.໔.໒. ໃນປະວັດສາດຂອງສະຫະຣັດອະເມຣິການັ້ນ ໄດ້ມີການລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້ຂອງພວກຂ້າທາດຫຼາຍຄັ້ງດ້ວຍກັນ ແຕ່ມີສາມຄັ້ງເທົ່ານັ້ນ ທີ່ມີຄວາມສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດ. ໃນປີ ໑໘໒໒ ອະດີດຂ້າທາດ ຊື່ວ່າ Denmark Vesey ໄດ້ຈັດການລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້ຂອງພວກຂ້າທາດຂຶ້ນໃນເມືອງ Charleston ໃນ South Carolina. ແຜນຂອງລາວໄດ້ຖືກຄົ້ນພົບໃນເວລາທີ່ການລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້ກຳລັງເລີ່ມຂຶ້ນພໍດີ. ນາຍ Vesey ພ້ອມດ້ວຍຄະນະ ໄດ້ຖືກຈັບແລະຖືກປະຫານຊີວິດ. ການລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້ຄັ້ງທີສອງ ຊຶ່ງຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວໄດ້ເລີ່ມຂຶ້ນ ແລະ ໄດ້ຍືດເຍື້ອໄປເປັນເວລາຫຼາຍເດືອນ ໃນປີ ໑໘໓໑ ນັ້ນ ແມ່ນນາຍ Nat Turner ຂ້າທາດປະຈຳໄຮ່ນາໃນ Virginia ເປັນຫົວໜ້າ. ໃນການລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້ຄັ້ງນີ້ ໄດ້ມີຄົນຊາວຜິວຂາວຖືກຂ້າຕາຍຈຳນວນ ໖໐ ຄົນ. ແຕ່ໃນຄັ້ງນີ້ກໍ່ເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ ພວກບັນດາຫົວໜ້າໄດ້ຖືກຈັບແລະໄດ້ຖືກຂ້າຕາຍ. ການລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້ຄັ້ງທີສາມ ແມ່ນນັກຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດ ຄົນຂາວຊື່ນາຍ John Brown ເປັນຫົວໜ້າ. ກຸ່ມຂອງລາວໄດ້ບຸກໂຈມຕີ ແລະໄດ້ຍຶດສາງອາວຸດຂອງຣັຖບານກາງໃນ Houpers Ferry, Virginia ໃນປີ ໑໘໕໙. ແຜນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ ແມ່ນຍຶດເອົາປືນຈາກສາງອາວຸດ ແລ້ວເອົາໄປໃຫ້ພວກຂ້າທາດເພື່ອເລີ່ມດຳເນີນການປະຕິວັດ. ຄົນສ່ວນຫຼາຍໃນກຸ່ມຂອງລາວໄດ້ຖືກຂ້າຕາຍ. ສ່ວນເຫຼືອນັ້ນກໍໄດ້ຖືກຈັບແລະຖືກປະຫານຊີວິດ.

໑໒.໔.໓. ຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວ ພວກທີ່ນຳພາການລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້ນັ້ນ ໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ພວກຂ້າທາດໄດ້ຮັບອິສຣະພາບ. ແຕ່ແທນທີ່ຈະເປັນການຊ່ວຍການລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້ດັ່ງກ່າວ ໄດ້ນຳຄວາມເສັຽຫາຍມາສູ່ພວກຂ້າທາດເປັນສ່ວນຫຼາຍ.

ພ້ອມທັງເຮັດໃຫ້ພວກຄົນໃນພາກໃຕ້ສນັບສນູນການໃຊ້ທາດຫລາຍຍິ່ງຂຶ້ນ ໂດຍທີ່ທາງຈຳກັດຜູ້ທີ່ພະຍາຍາມຢັບ ຢັ້ງການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດໃນສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາ.

EXERCISES

I. WORD SEARCH PUZZLE:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາ ສັບດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ, ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນສັບທີ່ຫາໄດ້ນັ້ນໄວ້ ພ້ອມຂຽນຄວາມໝາຍແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍດ້ວຍ.

HURT
HELP
TREAT
BLOCK
SEE
REVOLT
MASTER
SECRET
EVILS

END
SERVANT
SEPARATE
RAILROAD
SLAVERY
SOURCES
HUSBAND
ARSENAL
PAPERS

AWAY
COLONIES
COTTON SEED
COTTON FIBER
LIBERATOR
PURPOSE
OPPOSTION
IMPORTANT
FREEDOM

ABOLITIONIST
FOLLOWER
CHARLESTON
HARPERS FERRY
DENMARK VESEY
PUNISHMENT
SOUTHERNER
VIRGINIA

D	E	N	M	A	R	K	V	E	S	E	Y	A	R	S	E	N	A	L
C	O	T	T	O	N	S	E	E	D	S	E	R	V	A	N	T	H	R
O	P	U	N	I	S	H	M	E	N	T	L	E	V	I	L	S	A	E
T	S	E	C	R	E	T	A	W	A	Y	I	V	O	M	F	V	R	B
T	E	S	O	S	H	P	S	T	R	P	B	O	P	D	R	I	P	E
O	P	L	L	O	U	A	T	R	S	U	E	L	P	O	E	R	E	L
N	R	A	O	U	S	P	E	E	E	R	R	T	O	R	E	G	R	L
F	A	V	N	R	B	E	R	A	N	P	A	E	S	T	D	I	S	I
I	T	E	I	C	A	R	S	T	A	O	T	S	I	A	O	N	F	O
B	E	R	E	E	N	S	E	E	L	S	O	C	T	N	M	I	E	N
E	X	Y	S	S	D	O	E	N	O	E	R	A	I	T	O	A	R	H
R	A	I	L	R	O	A	D	D	X	W	V	P	O	N	O	N	R	E
A	B	O	L	I	T	I	O	N	I	S	T	E	N	H	U	R	Y	L
F	O	L	L	O	W	E	R	C	H	A	R	L	E	S	T	O	N	P
S	O	U	T	H	E	R	N	E	R	S	B	L	O	C	K	Y	E	S

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ. (ເບິ່ງພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ.

ຈົ່ງຈັດຄຳເວົ້າໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໂດຍໃຫ້ເລືອກເອົາຕົວເລກທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ກ) ແທນຄຳຕອບ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
______ ກ. ນາຍ	໑. ການຢຸດຕິສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງນຶ່ງ ໂດຍມາກແລ້ວແມ່ນການຢຸດຕິການໃຊ້ອາຫານ.
______ ຂ. ບໍ່ແຮ່	໒. ສະຖານທີ່ສ້າງແລະເກັບມ້ຽນອາວຸດທະຫານ.
______ ຄ. ຊັບສິນ	໓. ແຈ້ຍທີ່ປະກອບດ້ວຍເຮື່ອງງຈ່ງມິນອອກມາແລ້ວຈັດໃຫ້ເປັນຕົວ.
______ ງ. ລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້	໔. ຜູ້ທີ່ຄວບຄຸມການກະທຳຂອງຄົນອື່ນ.
______ ຈ. ຄົນໃຊ້	໕. ບ່ອນທີ່ໃຊ້ສຳຫຼັບຂຸດເອົາແຮ່ທາດຕ່າງໆ.
______ ສ. ທາງລົດໄຟໃຕ້ດິນ	໖. ສິ່ງທີ່ເຮົາມີຢູ່ຫຼືເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງ.
______ ຊ. ປົ້ນ	໗. ການພະຍາຍາມທີ່ຈະໂຄ່ນລົ້ມອຳນາດ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ຍ. ສາງອາວຸດ	ຊ. ຜູ້ທີ່ຮັບໃຊ້ໂດຍເຮັດວຽກໃນເຮືອນຊານ.
_____ ດ. ການລົບລ້າງ	ຜ. ອົງການຈັດຕັ້ງທີ່ຊ່ວຍພວກຂ້າທາດໃຫ້ໂຕນໜີຈາກພາກໃຕ້ໄປຍັງພາກເໜືອຫຼືໄປຍັງປະເທດ

ມ. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ.

ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ໝາຍຕົວອັກສອນ T ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກ. ຖ້າຜິດໃຫ້ໝາຍ F ໃສ່.

_____ ໑. ໃນອະເມລິກາ ການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນສໄມລ່າຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນ.

_____ ໒. ຍ້ອນການປະດິດເຄື່ອງຈັກອີ້ວຝ້າຍ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ການປູກຝ້າຍຈຶ່ງໄດ້ແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍໄປທົ່ວທັງພາກໃຕ້ຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວ ແລະ ໃນປີ ໑໘໑໔ ຝ້າຍກໍໄດ້ກາຍເປັນພືດທີ່ສຳຄັນຂອງຣັຖຕ່າງໆໃນພາກໃຕ້.

_____ ໓. ໃນປີ ໑໗໙໐ ພວກຂ້າທາດ ໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມລິກາ ມີປະມານ ໗໐໐.໐໐໐ ຄົນ ແລະ ຕົກເຖິງປີ ໑໘໖໐ ຈຳນວນຂ້າທາດໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນເຖິງ ໔ ລ້ານຄົນ. ພວກຂ້າທາດເກືອບທັງໝົດໄດ້ອາໄສຢູ່ທາງພາກເໜືອ.

_____ ໔. ໂດຍທົ່ວໄປແລ້ວ ພວກຂ້າທາດໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກໃນໄຮ່ນາເປັນເວລາດົນໃນແຕ່ລະມື້. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າຍັງໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກໃນໂຮງງານແລະໃນບໍ່ແຮ່ ພ້ອມທັງເປັນຄົນໃຊ້ອີກດ້ວຍ.

_____ ໕. ພວກເຈົ້າຂອງຂ້າທາດບໍ່ມີສິດລົງໂທດພວກຂ້າທາດ.

_____ ໖. ພວກຂ້າທາດໄດ້ຮັບອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ຮຽນອ່ານແລະຮຽນຂຽນ ແລະ ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ໄດ້ຖືກຊື້ແລະຂາຍ.

_____ ໗. ຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ພາກັນຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດ. ພວກທີ່ທຳການຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດນັ້ນ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ພວກຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດຫຼືພວກ abolitionists.

_____ ໘. ຜູ້ຄົນທີ່ມີຊື່ສຽງທີ່ສຸດໃນອົງການທາງຣົດໄຟໃຕ້ດິນນັ້ນແມ່ນນາຍ Harriet Tubman.

_____ ໙. ພວກຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດໄດ້ທຳການຕໍ່ສູ້ດ້ວຍການໃຊ້ໂທຣະທັດ, ວິທະຍຸ ແລະ ຄວາມເວົ້າ.

_____ ໑໐. ໃນປະວັດສາດຂອງສະຫະຣັຖ ໄດ້ມີການລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້ຂອງພວກຂ້າທາດຫຼາຍຄັ້ງ.

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ :

ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າຫຼືພວກຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍອັນຖືກຕ້ອງ : ບໍ່ເກີດຂອງຄວາມຮັ່ງມີ, ອົງການທາງຣົດໄຟໃຕ້ດິນ, ພວກຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດ, ເມັດຝ້າຍ, ການລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້, ຂ້າທາດ, ການໂຕນໜີ, ການຂ້ຽນຕີ, ເຄື່ອງຈັກອິ້ວຝ້າຍ, ສາງອາວຸດ.

໑. ພວກຄົນຜິວດຳໄດ້ຖືກຈັບໃນອາຟຣິກາ ແລ້ວ ຖືກນຳເອົາເຂົ້າໄປໃນອະເມຣິກາເພື່ອເປັນ ______

____________________ .

໒. ຝ້າຍກໍ່ໄດ້ມີການປູກຂຶ້ນກັນ ແຕ່ຕ້ອງໄດ້ແຍກ ________________________ ອອກຈາກບວນຝ້າຍດ້ວຍມື.

໓. ໃນປີ ໑໗໙໓ ນາຍ Eli Whitney ໄດ້ປະດິດ ______________________ ເພື່ອແຍກເມັດອອກຈາກບວນຝ້າຍ.

໔. ທີ່ດິນແລະເງິນຕາເປັນ ____________________ ໃນພາກເໜືອແລະພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ.

໕. ພວກເຈົ້າຂອງຂ້າທາດໄດ້ມີສິດລົງໂທດພວກຂ້າທາດ ____________________ ແມ່ນວິທີທົ່ວໄປຂອງການລົງໂທດ.

໖. ຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດ. ພວກທີ່ກະທຳການຕໍ່ຕ້ານນັ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ __________ __________ .

໗. ອີກທາງນຶ່ງທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສະແດງເຖິງການຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດນັ້ນ ກໍຄືການຈັດຕັ້ງອົງການລັບ ເພື່ອຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ພວກຂ້າທາດໂຕນໜີໄປສູ່ອິສລະພາບ. ອົງການຈັດຕັ້ງດັ່ງກ່າວນັ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ ____________ ____________________ .

໘. ພວກຂ້າທາດຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ຕໍ່ສູ້ການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດດ້ວຍ ____________________ ໂດຍຕົນເອງ ແລະ ໂດຍຜ່ານອົງການທາງລົດໄຟໃຕ້ດິນ.

໙. ໃນປີ ໑໘໒໒ ອະດີດຂ້າທາດ ຊື່ວ່າ Denmark Vesey ໄດ້ຈັດຕັ້ງ ______________ ຂອງພວກຂ້າທາດຂຶ້ນໃນ Charleston, South Carolina.

໑໐. ການລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້ຂອງພວກຂ້າທາດຄັ້ງທີ່ສາມນັ້ນ ແມ່ນນັກຕໍ່ຕ້ານການໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດຄົນຜິວຂາວຊື່ວ່ານາຍ John Brown ເປັນຜູ້ນຳພາ. ກຸ່ມຂອງລາວໄດ້ບຸກໂຈມຕີແລະໄດ້ຍຶດ __________ ______________ ຂອງລັດຖະບານກາງໃນ Harpers Ferry, Virginia ໃນປີ ໑໘໕໙.

256

Section IV
Conflict And Reunion

ໝວດ ໔ : ການຂັດແຍ້ງແລະການທ້ອນໂຮມ

ພາກ ໑໓ : ຈາກບັນຫາຂັດແຍ້ງດ້ານຂ້າທາດເຖິງເສິກກາງເມືອງ

ສັບໃໝ່ :

compromise: ການຕົກລົງແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາ

Henry Clay suggested a compromise.

petition: ຄຳຮຽກຮ້ອງ

Missouri petitioned Congress for admission.

admission: ການອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ເຂົ້າ

amendment: ການດັດແປງແກ້ໄຂ

Representative Tallmadge introduced an amendment to the bill for admission of Missouri.

economic conditions: ສະພາບທາງເສດຖະກິດ

The South said that Congress could not add economic conditions to a bill.

the Northwest Ordinance: ດຳລັດຈາກສະພາຖືກົດໝາຍກ່ຽວກັບດິນດອນແລະປະຊາຊົນທີ່ຢູ່ໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສຽງເໜືອ

The Northwest Ordinance had forbidden slavery in the territories.

forbid: ຫ້າມ

balance: ຄວາມທຸ່ມທ່ຽງ

The balance of free and slave states ended when California entered the Union.

solution: ມະຕິ

Henry Clay found a solution that satisfied everyone.

258

fugitive: ຜູ້ລົບໜີ

A new Fugitive Slave Act was passed that would lead to the reduction of the numbers of runaway slaves.

repeal: ເລີກລົ້ມ ຫຼື ລົບລ້າງ

The Kansas-Nebraska Act repealed part of the Missouri compromise.

parallel: ຂະໜານ

The 36°30' parallele divided the free and slave states.

secede: ແຍກອອກ

Secessionists urged the Southern states to secede from the Union and form their own country.

READING

13.1. THE MISSOURI COMPROMISE

13.1.1. In 1820 there were 11 slave states in the South and 11 free states in the North of the United States. This meant that the North and the South had an equal number of votes in the Senate. (North 22; South 22). But, because more people lived in the North, it had more votes in the House of Representatives than the South. (North 105; South 81). At this time 2 states petitioned Congress for admission. These requests would make the North and South fight over the balance of political power.

13.1.2. Maine asked to join the Union as a free state. This made the South angry. If Maine was added to the free states the North would have more votes than the South in the Senate as well as the House of Representatives. When Missouri, a part of the Northwest Territory, asked to join the Union as a slave state, the South was happy but the North was angry. The **Northwest Ordinance** had **forbidden** slavery in the territories and the North was afraid that other slave states would be formed out of the Northwest Territory and it would lose some of its power. To try to limit the power of the slave states, a northern representative, Representative Tallmadge, introduced an **amendment** to the bill for the admission of Missouri. The Tallmadge Amendment said 2 things:

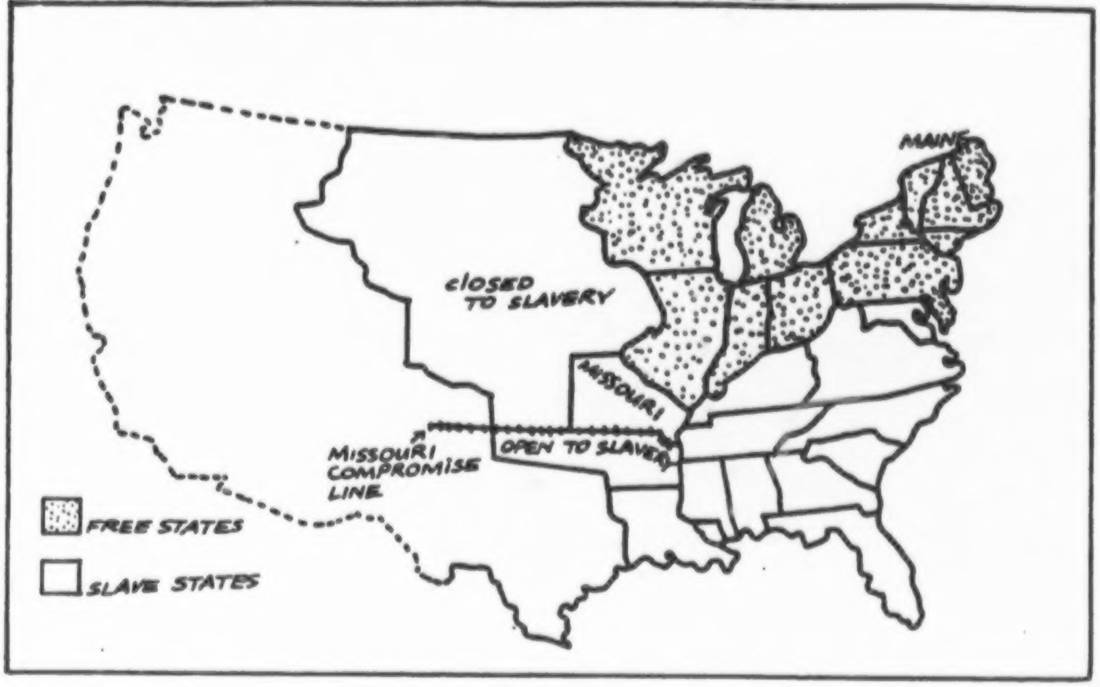
1. No more slaves could enter Missouri.
2. Any slave who had been born in Missouri would become free on his 25th birthday.

The South said that Congress had the right to accept or refuse admission to a state, but it could not add social and **economic conditions**.

13.1.3. Finally a Congressman from Kentucky named Henry Clay suggested a compromise to the argument. He suggested that Maine enter the Union as a free state and Missouri enter the Union as a slave state. This would keep the number of free and slave states equal. He also suggested that a line be drawn across the Louisiana Territory (36° 30' parallel). North of the line slavery would not be allowed, except for Missouri. South of the line, slavery would be allowed.

Congress accepted this compromise. It is called the Missouri Compromise of 1820. Look at the map to see how the Missouri Compromise affected the United States.

MISSOURI COMPROMISE - 1820


MAINE
CLOSED TO SLAVERY
MISSOURI
OPEN TO SLAVERY
MISSOURI COMPROMISE LINE
FREE STATES
SLAVE STATES

13.2. THE COMPROMISE OF 1850

13.2.1. Slavery became an issue again after the Mexican War. The Mexican Cession, which was added because of the war, gave the United States a lot of new land. Deciding if this land should be slave or free added new problems for the United States in 1850.

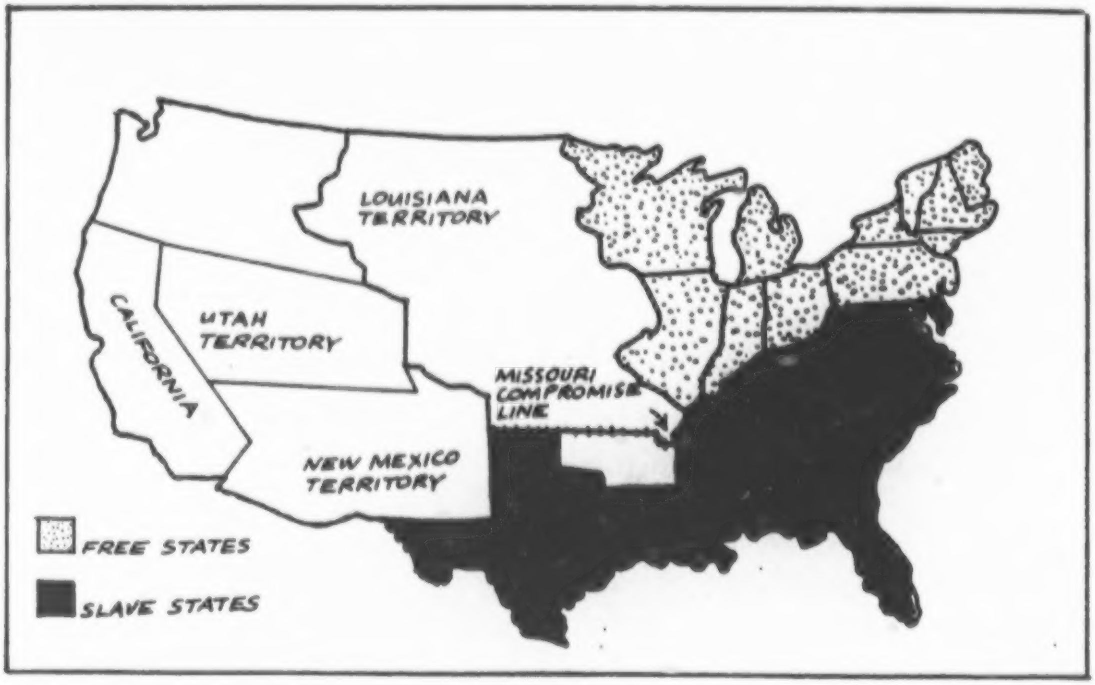
13.2.2. In 1850 California wanted to join the Union as a free state. Southerners were against this because the free states would have controlled the Senate.

Once again, Henry Clay, found a solution that satisfied everyone. There was no way to avoid giving the North additional Senate votes. So he proposed that other favors be given to the South in his Compromise of 1850:

1. California would be admitted as a free state.

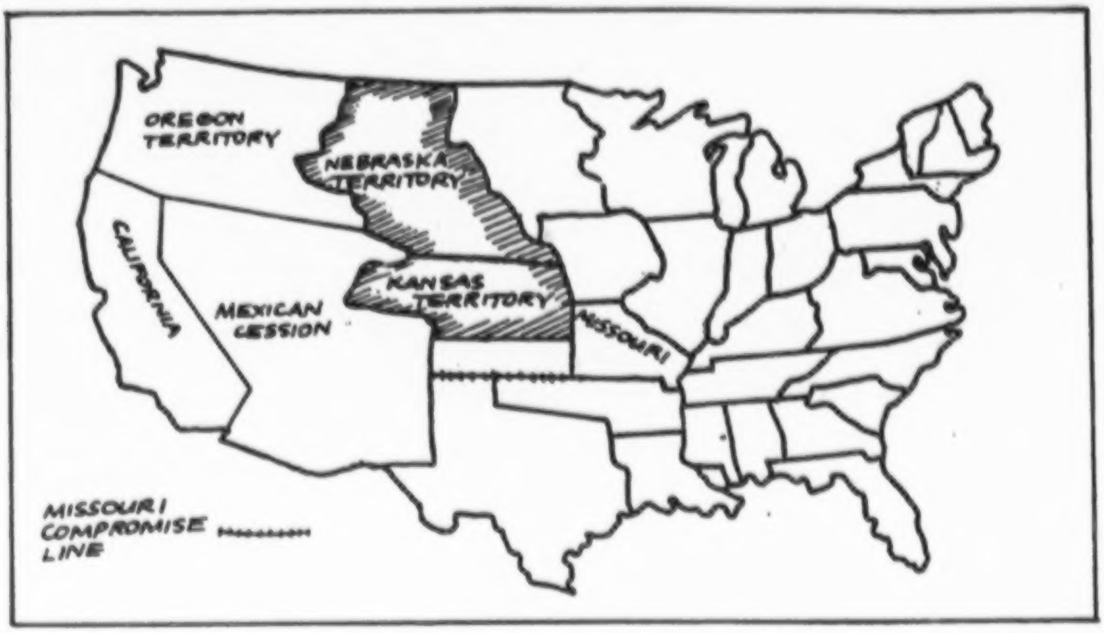
2. The new lands of the Southwest would be divided into the territories of New Mexico and Utah. The settlers of these territories would decide the issue of slavery for themselves. This idea is called "popular sovereignty".
3. Buying and selling of slaves in the nation's capital, Washington, D.C., must stop, but people could still own slaves there.
4. A new Fugitive Slave Law gave slave owners greater power to get runaway slaves.

13.2.3. The Compromise of 1850 did not decrease the tension between the sections. The South was upset because the balance of free and slave states had been broken by adding a free state and no slave state. The North was upset by the stricter Fugitive Slave Law.


LOUISIANA TERRITORY
UTAH TERRITORY
CALIFORNIA
NEW MEXICO TERRITORY
MISSOURI COMPROMISE LINE
▨ FREE STATES
■ SLAVE STATES

13.3. THE KANSAS-NEBRASKA ACT OF 1854

13.3.1. Many people in Congress liked the idea of popular sovereignty. Stephen Douglas, a Senator from Illinois, suggested it should be used for all the territories the United States owned. When Congress started to organise the parts of the Louisiana Territory called Kansas and Nebraska, they debated this idea.


OREGON TERRITORY
NEBRASKA TERRITORY
CALIFORNIA
MEXICAN CESSION
KANSAS TERRITORY
MISSOURI
MISSOURI COMPROMISE LINE

13.3.2. In 1854 Congress approved the idea of popular sovereignty and passed the Kansas-Nebraska Act. This law repealed part of the Missouri Compromise. It said that there was no longer a line at 36° 30' paralled between slave and free areas in the Louisiana Territory. Also, the people in Kansas and Nebraska could decide for themselves if they wanted slavery. Congress no longer had to keep a balance between slave and free states.

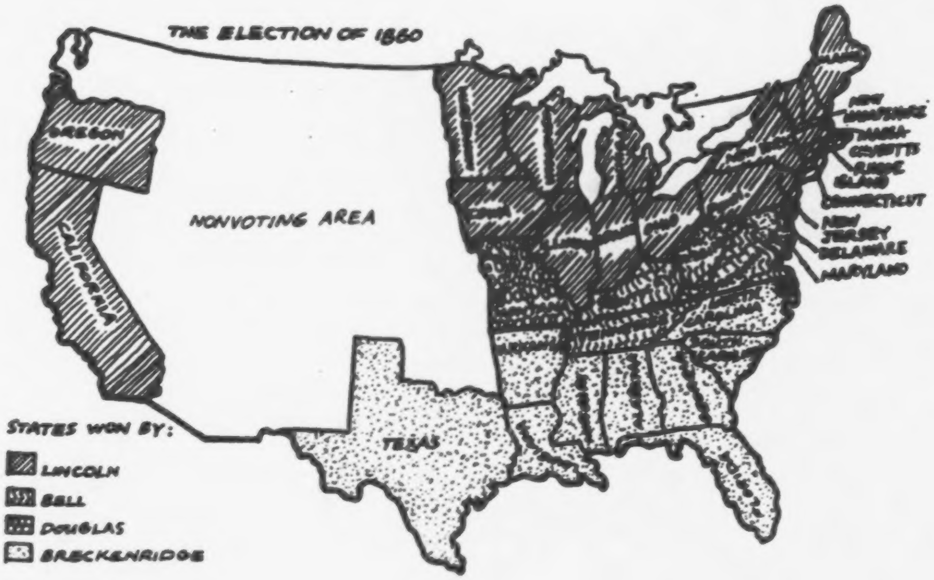
13.3.3. As soon as the Kansas-Nebraska Act was passed, people rushed into Kansas to settle the territory. Slave owners and abolitionists began fighting to get control of the area. The fighting was a small civil war and Kansas became known as "bleeding Kansas". Peaceful compromise now seemed impossible.

13.4. THE ELECTION OF 1860

13.4.1. In 1860 the nation had to elect a new president. For that election there were four political parties. Each had a different opinion about slavery. The Republican Party nominated Abraham Lincoln who was against the spread of slavery into the territories. The Democrats split between the Northern and Southern Democrats. Stephen Douglas was the candidate of the Northern Democrats. The Southern Democrats chose John Breckenridge. They were not against any new slave states if the people in those states wanted slavery. A fourth candidate, John Bell, represented a new political party that avoided saying anything about slavery. The split in the Democratic Party could help Lincoln. But some Southerners threatened secession if Lincoln were elected.

13.4.2. In November, 1860, Abraham Lincoln was elected President of the United States. He did not win the majority of popular votes. But he received 60% of the electoral vote by winning in 18 free states which had large populations and many electoral votes.

13.4.3. Lincoln's victory was bad news for the Southerners. People who were against slavery were now in charge of the national government. On December 20, 1860, South Carolina seceded from the Union. Within the next six weeks, six other Southern states left the Union. Later, four other states joined them. In all these states there were people who were against leaving the Union, but moderates in the North and South failed to prevent secession.


THE ELECTION OF 1860
OREGON
CALIFORNIA
NONVOTING AREA
TEXAS
NEW HAMPSHIRE
MASSACHUSETTS
RHODE ISLAND
CONNECTICUT
NEW JERSEY
DELAWARE
MARYLAND
STATES WON BY:
▨ LINCOLN
BELL
DOUGLAS
BRECKENRIDGE

EXERCISES

I. **Word search puzzle:**

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ECONOMIC
FUGITIVE
REPEAL
SECEDE
SOUTH
POPULAR
ELECTION
PETITION
ACT
UNION
CRISIS
LINCOLN
BLEEDING
CONGRESS
BALANCE
SLAVE
NUMBER
MISSOURI
VOTE
BELL
KANSAS
SOLUTION
ORDINANCE
PARALLEL
DEBATE
FREE
PARTY
TENSION
COMPROMISE (twice)
AMENDMENT
FORBIDDEN
SOVEREIGNTY
LOUISIANA
NEBRASKA
ILLINOIS

N U M B E R U N I O N D P B C S N

E V A L S F F O T E M E O L O O E

C O M P R O M I S E I B P E M V B

O R E E S R O T U V S A U E P E R

N D N T E B O U M I S T L D R R A

O I D I C I R L O T O E A I O E S

M N M T E D D O L I U S R N M I K

I A E I D D I S A G R O O G I G A

C N N O E E N O E U I U F B S N T

A C T N O N A O P F Q T R E E T E

C E B A L A N C E S R H E L O Y N

T S I S I R C O R V O T E L P C S

P A R A L L E L L I N C O L N O I

E L E C T I O N P A R T Y L O N O

I L L I N O I S S S E R G N O C N

L O U I S I A N A K A N S A S O X

II. True or False:

In the blank write T if the statement is true or F if the statement is false.

_____ 1. Lincoln was against slavery.

_____ 2. In 1861, South Carolina withdrew from the Union.

_____ 3. California would be admitted as a free state.

_____ 4. Northern states, which had no slavery, welcomed free blacks and allowed them the full rights of citizens.

_____ 5. Black people did not support the abolition movement.

_____ 6. A new Fugitive Slave Law gave slave owners greater power to get runaway slaves.

_____ 7. The admission of California as a state would tip the balance in Congress in favor of the South.

_____ 8. Until 1850, slaves had been bought and sold in Washington D.C.

_____ 9. The Kansas-Nebraska Act was strongly supported in both the North and the West.

_____ 10. Kansas finally entered the Union as a slave state.

III. Multiple choice:

Select the letter preceding the word or expression that best completes each statement or answers each questions.

1. The Compromise of 1850: (a) outlawed slavery in the South (b) provided for two Presidents (c) slavery would remain legal in Washington D.C., but the trading of slaves would be prohibited (d) ended the question of slavery once and for all.

2. The Republican party in 1860: (a) was the party of the North (b) encouraged railroad building and high tariffs on

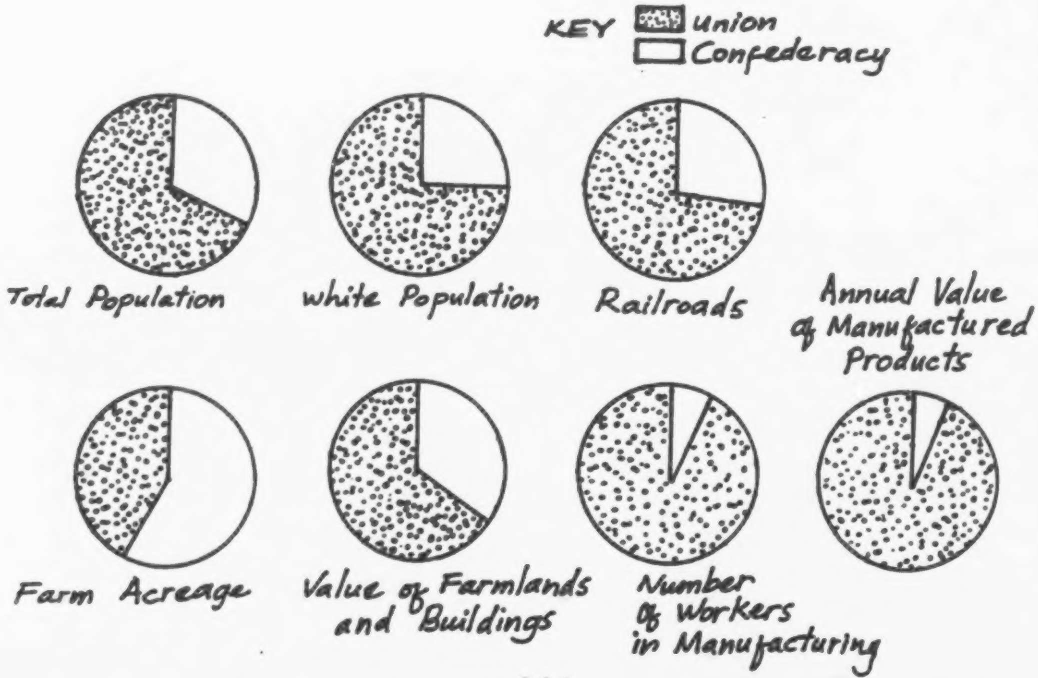
imports (c) nominated Abraham Lincoln to be President (d) ended the question of slavery once and for all.

3. The Democratic party in 1860: (a) represented the interests of people in the North (b) had split into two parties with two candidates for President (c) ignored the issue of slavery (d) all of the above.

4. If the territory had popular sovereignty: (a) the government did not allow slavery (b) the government allowed slavery (c) the people could decide whether or not to allow slavery (d) all of the above.

5. One of the provisions of the Compromise of 1850 was that (a) California could enter the Union as a slave state (b) a more fugitive slave law could be passed. (c) the slave trade would be abolished in the District of Columbia.

IV. Reading the Pie Chart



Directions: When South Carolina seceded from the Union and brought with it other states to form the Confederacy, there were several differences in the resources that each side had. These differences would make a big difference in the Civil War. Use the pie chart to answer these questions:

1. What color is used to represent the Confederacy in these pie chart?
2. About what percentage of the white population lived in the Union?
3. About what percentage of the value of manufactured products was produced in the North?
4. Which side had the largest amount of farmland?
5. Whose farmland was worth the most?
6. Which side had the most extensive railroads?
7. Which side had the advantage?

V. Map work: On the map below, color the state of South Carolina and Virginia. Color two Pacific Coast States.

໑໓.໒. ຂໍ້ຕົກລົງແກ້ໄຂປັນຫາ Missouri :

໑໓.໒.໑. ເມື່ອປີ ໑໘໒໐ ຢູ່ໃນສະຫະລັດ ລັດທີ່ມີຂ້າທາດມີຢູ່ ໑໑ ລັດ ແລະລັດອິສະລະຫມາຍເຖິງລັດທີ່ບໍ່ມີຂ້າທາດນັ້ນມີ ໑໑ ລັດເທົ່າກັນ. ເນື່ອງຈາກຈຳນວນລັດອິສະລະດັ່ງກ່າວຊຶ່ງຕັ້ງຢູ່ໃນພາກເໜືອມີຈຳນວນພົນລະເມືອງຫລາຍກວ່າລັດທີ່ມີຂ້າທາດທີ່ຢູ່ທາງພາກໃຕ້ ສະນັ້ນລັດອິສະລະຈຶ່ງມີບ່ອນນັ່ງໃນສະພາຕ່ຳເຖິງ ໑໐໕ ບ່ອນນັ່ງ ສ່ວນລັດທີ່ມີຂ້າທາດມີພຽງ ໘໑ ບ່ອນນັ່ງເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ຢ່າງໃດກໍດີລັດໃນພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມທຸກຢ່າງເພື່ອໃຫ້ມີອຳນາດໃນການລົງຄະແນນສຽງໃນສະພາສູງຢ່າງເທົ່າທຽມກັນກັບລັດພາກເໜືອ. ປະຊາຊົນໃນ Maine ໄດ້ພາກັນຍື່ນຄຳຮ້ອງຂໍໃຫ້ສະພາອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ເຂດແດນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້ານັ້ນເປັນລັດຢ່າງເປັນທາງການ. ປະຊາຊົນໃນ Massachusetts ໄດ້ສະໜັບສະໜູນຄຳຮ້ອງດັ່ງກ່າວ. ຄົນ Missouri ກໍໄດ້ຂໍຕໍ່ສະພາໃນທຳນອງດຽວກັນ. ຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວການຮ້ອງຂໍໃຫ້ສະພາຮັບເອົາເຂດທີ່ມີທາດກໍດີ ເຂດອິສະລະກໍດີໃຫ້ເປັນລັດນັ້ນ ອາດຈະບໍ່ຈຳເປັນຕ້ອງໃຊ້ວິທີຮຸນແຮງທາງການເມືອງກໍເປັນໄດ້ ຖ້າຫາກສະມາຊິກສະພາຕ່ຳຈາກ New York ຊື່ທ່ານ Tallmadge ບໍ່ໄດ້ສະເໜີແກ້ໄຂກົດໝາຍກ່ຽວກັບການອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ Missouri ເປັນລັດ.

໑໓.໒.໒. ກ່ຽວກັບການແກ້ໄຂກົດໝາຍທີ່ກ່າວມານີ້ທ່ານ Tallmadge ໄດ້ສະເໜີຫ້າມບໍ່ໃຫ້ເອົາທາດຜິວດຳເຂົ້າໄປອາໃສໃນ Missouri ເພີ່ມຕື່ມອີກ ແລະພວກຂ້າທາດທີ່ເກີດໃນ Missouri ນັ້ນຈະເປັນຜູ້ມີອິສະລະພາບໄດ້ເມື່ອອາຍຸໄດ້ ໒໕ ປີ ນັບຈາກເວລາທີ່ Missouri ຖືກຮັບເອົາເປັນລັດເປັນຕົ້ນໄປ. ຄຳສະເໜີດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຜ່ານສະພາຕ່ຳດ້ວຍຄະແນນສຽງສູງສຸດີກັນແຕ່ຖືກຍຸບຕົກໄປໃນສະພາສູງ ຈຶ່ງເປັນເຫດໃຫ້ເກີດມີການປະທະທາງການເມືອງຢ່າງຮ້າຍແຮງຂຶ້ນ. ຈຳນວນລັດທີ່ມີຂ້າທາດຖືວ່າສະພາບໍ່ມີສິດທີ່ຈະວາງຂໍ້ຜູກມັດແກ່ລັດທີ່ຍື່ນຄຳຮ້ອງຂໍການຮັບຮູ້ທາງການແຕ່ຢ່າງໃດ. ສະພາມີສິດທີ່ຈະຮັບຫຼືປະຕິເສດຄຳຮ້ອງໄດ້ ແຕ່ສະພາບໍ່ມີສິດທີ່ຈະໃຊ້ຂໍ້ບັງຄັບກ່ຽວກັບສະພາບດ້ານສັງຄົມແລະເສດຖະກິດ. ສ່ວນຈຳນວນລັດອິສະລະໄດ້ປ້ອງກັນການຖົກຖຽງໂດຍອ້າງອີງໃສ່ດຳລັດຂອງສະພາກ່ຽວກັບດິນດອນແລະປະຊາຊົນໃນເຂດຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງເໜືອຊຶ່ງຫ້າມບໍ່ໃຫ້ມີຂ້າທາດໃນເຂດແດນທົ່ວໄປແລະໃນເຂດແດນທີ່ຈະກາຍເປັນລັດໃນອານາຄົດຕໍ່ໄປ ພ້ອມກັບຄຳປະກັນໃຫ້ລັດໃໝ່ແລະເກົ່າໄດ້ຮັບຄວາມສະເໝີພາບເທົ່າທຽມກັນ. ເປັນທີ່ສັງເກດໄດ້ວ່ານີ້ເປັນການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອອຳນາດທາງການເມືອງລະຫວ່າງກຸ່ມລັດອິສະລະ ແລະກຸ່ມລັດທີ່ມີຂ້າທາດນັ້ນເອງ.

໑໓.໑.໓. ຂໍ້ຕົກລົງທີ່ເກີດຂຶ້ນມີຄືວ່າ Maine ຈະຕ້ອງຖືກຮັບເຂົ້າໃນສະຫະລັດໃນຖານະເປັນລັດອິສະລະ ແລະ Missouri ເປັນລັດມີຂ້າທາດ. ຂໍ້ຕົກລົງອີກຢ່າງນຶ່ງກໍຄືວ່ານັບຈາກປີ ໑໘໒໐ ເປັນຕົ້ນໄປ ຈຳນວນລັດແລະເຂດແດນທັງໝົດທີ່ຕັ້ງຢູ່ເໜືອເສັ້ນຂະໜານ ໓໖ ໓໐ ນັ້ນແມ່ນລັດອິສະລະ. ໃນທີ່ສຸດຄວາມດຸ່ນດ່ຽງທາງການເມືອງໃນສະພາສູງຍັງຄົງເດີມ.

໑໓.໒. ຂໍ້ຕົກລົງແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາໃນປີ ໑໘໕໐ :

໑໓.໒.໑. ເສິກ Mexican ພາໃຫ້ປະເທດໄດ້ດິນແດນເພີ້ມຂຶ້ນ. ໃນຂະນະນັ້ນ California ແລະ ພາກຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງໃຕ້ໄດ້ເກີດເປັນຈຸດສົນໃຈ. ມະຕິ Wilmot Proviso ຂອງປີ ໑໘໔໖ ໄດ້ສເນີ ຫ້າມບໍ່ໃຫ້ມີຂ້າທາດໃນດິນແດນດັ່ງກ່າວ ແຕ່ຄຳສເນີທີ່ວ່ານີ້ຖືກຮັບຜ່ານແຕ່ສະເພາະໃນສະພາຕ່ຳເທົ່ານັ້ນແລະ ຖືກປະຕິເສດໃນສະພາສູງ.

໑໓.໒.໒. ໃນປີ ໑໘໕໐ ໃນຂະນະທີ່ California ໄດ້ຍື່ນຄຳຮ້ອງຂໍເປັນລັດອິສະຣະນັ້ນ ບັນຫາຂ້າທາດໄດ້ເຂົ້າເຖິງຂັ້ນຮ້ອນແຮງເຕັມທີ່. ພວກປະຊາຊົນທີ່ຢູ່ໃນລັດດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ໃຊ້ຣັຖທັມມະນູນຊຶ່ງຖືເຣື່ອງຂ້າທາດເປັນການຜິດກົດໝາຍຢູ່ແລ້ວ. ການຮັບເອົາ California ໃຫ້ເປັນລັດນັ້ນຈະເປັນການເພີ້ມນ້ຳໜັກໃຫ້ແກ່ພາກເໜືອໃນສະພາສູງ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ພາກໃຕ້ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຄັດຄ້ານ.

໑໓.໒.໓. ເນື່ອງຈາກວ່າການຄັດຄ້ານບໍ່ໃຫ້ພາກເໜືອມີສຽງເພີ້ມຂຶ້ນນັ້ນບໍ່ເກີດຜົນ ທ່ານ Henry Clay ຜູ້ເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງແຜນການຕົກລົງແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາ Missouri ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ສເນີຂໍ້ຕົກລົງໃໝ່ໃນປີ ໑໘໕໐ ດັ່ງນີ້:

ກ. ໃຫ້ຮັບເອົາ California ເປັນລັດອິສະຣະ.

ຂ. ຕ້ອງແບ່ງດິນດອນທີ່ເຫລືອໃນພາກຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງໃຕ້ອອກເປັນອານາເຂດຂອງ New Mexico ແລະ Utah . ປະຊາຊົນໃນອານາເຂດດັ່ງກ່າວຈະຕ້ອງເປັນຜູ້ພິຈາຣະນາລົງຄວາມເຫັນກ່ອນກັນກໍຣະນີຂ້າທາດສຳຫລັບເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ. ຄວາມຄິດເຫັນນີ້ເອີ້ນວ່າ " ອະທິປະໄຕຂອງປະຊາຊົນ ".

ຄ. ການເປັນຂ້າທາດໃນ Washington, D.C. ຈະຍັງຖືວ່າເປັນການຖືກຕ້ອງຕາມກົດໝາຍຢູ່ ແຕ່ວ່າການຄ້າຂາຍຂ້າທາດນັ້ນຈະຕ້ອງຖືກຫ້າມ.

ງ. ກົດໝາຍບັງຄັບໃຫ້ເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ຊ່ວຍຈັບກຸມຂ້າທາດທີ່ຫລົບໜີນັ້ນຈະຕ້ອງໃຊ້ເຄັ່ງຄັດຂຶ້ນກວ່າເດີມ. ກົດໝາຍທີ່ວ່ານີ້ເປັນທີ່ພໍໃຈແກ່ພາກໃຕ້ ແຕ່ເປັນການໜັກໃຈໃຫ້ແກ່ພາກເໜືອ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນການຕົກລົງແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາໃນປີ ໑໘໕໐ ບໍ່ໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ຄວາມເຄັ່ງຄຽດລະຫວ່າງພາກເໜືອແລະພາກໃຕ້ທີ່ມີຢູ່ນັ້ນຜ່ອນຄາຍລົງແຕ່ປະການໃດ.

໑໓.໓. ດຳລັດ Kansas-Nebraska :

໑໓.໓.໑. ໃນເດືອນມົກກະຣາ ປີ ໑໘໕໔ ທ່ານ Stephen A. Douglas ສະມາຊິກສະພາສູງຈາກ

Illinois ໄດ້ຍົກເອົາບັນຫາຂ້າທາດຂຶ້ນມາເພື່ອໂຕ້ໂດຍການສເນີດຳຣັດ Kansas-Nebraska ຕາມດຳຣັດດັ່ງກ່າວດິນແດນທັງສອງນີ້ຈະຖືກຈັດໃຫ້ເປັນສອງອານາເຂດດ້ວຍກັນ. ຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວ Kansas ແລະ Nebraska ຕັ້ງຢູ່ທາງເໜືອຂອງເສັ້ນຂນານທີ່ ໓໖ ໓໐ ຊຶ່ງຈັດຂຶ້ນເພື່ອໃຫ້ເປັນເຂດແດນຂອງການເປັນຂ້າທາດໃນຂໍ້ຕົກລົງແກ້ໄຂປັນຫາ Missouri ແຕ່ວ່າທ່ານ Douglas ໄດ້ສເນີວ່າໃນອານາເຂດນອກນີ້ບັນຫາຂ້າທາດຈະຕ້ອງແມ່ນປະຊາຊົນເອົງເປັນຜູ້ພິຈາຣະນາລົງຄວາມເຫັນ. ສະນັ້ນດຳຣັດດັ່ງກ່າວຈຶ່ງເປັນການລົບລ້າງຂໍ້ຕົກລົງແກ້ໄຂປັນຫາ Missouri ໄປໃນຕົວແລະຖືກຮັບໃຫ້ຜ່ານໃນສະພາເຖິງວ່າຈະມີການຄັດຄ້ານຈາກຣັດພາກເໜືອຈຳນວນຫຼາຍກໍຕາມ.

໑໓.໓.໒. ສຳຫຼັບ Nebraska ແລ້ວພວກຂ້າທາດຈະບໍ່ມາໃຊ້ໄດ້ປະໂຍດແຕ່ຢ່າງໃດ. ແຕ່ໃນ Kansas ຂ້າທາດມີປະໂຍດຫຼາຍສຳຫຼັບວຽກການທີ່ງໄຮ່ທົ່ງນາ. ສະນັ້ນທັງພາກເໜືອແລະພາກໃຕ້ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ໃຊ້ກຳລັງເພື່ອຕໍ່ສູ້ຍາດຊິງເອົາດິນດອນຕອນນີ້. ປັນຫາຂ້າທາດເປັນປັນຫາທີ່ພາໃຫ້ເກີດການນອງເລືອດ. ການຕົກລົງແບບສັນຕິວິທີນັ້ນເຫັນວ່າບໍ່ມີທາງເປັນໄປໄດ້.

໑໓.໔. ການເລືອກຕັ້ງໃນປີ ໑໘໕໖ :

໑໓.໔.໑. ນັບຕັ້ງແຕ່ປີ ໑໘໕໐ ເປັນຕົ້ນມາ ພັກການເມືອງທີ່ສຳຄັນໃນອະເມຣິກາແມ່ນພັກ ເດໂມກຣັດ ແລະ ພັກ Whig . ສະມາຊິກຂອງພັກເດໂມກຣັດແຕກແຍກກັນຍ້ອນບັນຫາຂ້າທາດແລະບໍ່ໄດ້ເອົາທ່າທີຫຍັງເລີຍ. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນທີ່ຕໍ່ຕ້ານການເປັນຂ້າທາດບໍ່ມີພັກການເມືອງທີ່ມີຄວາມສຳຄັນເພື່ອເປັນກະບອກສຽງໃຫ້ແກ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ໄດ້ມີພັກເລັກໆນ້ອຍໆຫຼາຍພັກເຊັ່ນພັກ Free-Soil ແລະພັກ Liberty ຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນເພື່ອຕໍ່ຕ້ານການເປັນຂ້າທາດແຕ່ພັກການເມືອງເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນບໍ່ເຄີຍມີອຳນາດພຽງພໍແຕ່ປະການໃດ.

໑໓.໔.໒. ໃນປີ ໑໘໕໔ ຄວາມບໍ່ພໍໃຈຂອງພວກຊາວເໜືອທີ່ມີຕໍ່ດຳຣັດ Kansas-Nebraska ໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ພັກ Whig ຕ້ອງອ່ອນແອລົງ. ພວກທີ່ເຄີຍເປັນສະມາຊິກພັກ Whig ແລະພັກFree-Soilໄດ້ຮ່ວມກັບຄະນະຕໍ່ຕ້ານການເປັນຂ້າທາດເພື່ອຈັດຕັ້ງພັກໃໝ່ຂຶ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ ພັກ ຣີພັບບລີກັນ.

໑໓.໔.໓. ທາງພາກໃຕ້ຄັດຄ້ານພັກ ຣີພັບບລີກັນເປັນຢ່າງໜັກກ່ຽວກັບບັນຫາຂ້າທາດ. ແຕ່ພ້ອມດຽວກັນນັ້ນທາງພາກເໜືອໄດ້ໃຫ້ການສນັບສນູນແກ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າເປັນຢ່າງດີ. ການແບ່ງແຍກຣະຫວ່າງເໜືອແລະໃຕ້ໄດ້ມີໜັກຂຶ້ນໃນຣະຫວ່າງການເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີໃນປີ ໑໘໕໖.

໑໖.໔.໔. ພັກ ຣີພັບບລີກັນໄດ້ເລືອກຕັ້ງທ່ານ Abaham Lincolnເປັນຜູ້ສມັກຮັບເລືອກຕັ້ງເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ ສ່ວນພັກເດໂມກຣັດທາງພາກເໜືອໄດ້ເລືອກຕັ້ງທ່ານStephen A.Douglas ແລະ ພັກເດໂມກຣັດທາງພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ເລືອກຕັ້ງທ່ານ John C.Breckinridge ຊຶ່ງເປັນຄົນມາຈາກ Kentucky . ການແຕກແຍກໃນພັກ ເດໂມກຣັດນັ້ນອາດສາມາດຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ທ່ານAbraham Lincoln ໄດ້ປຽບໃນການແຂ່ງຂັນ. ແຕ່ພວກທາງໃຕ້ບາງກຸ່ມໄດ້ຂູ່ວ່າຈະແຍກຣັຖຂອງຕົນອອກຈາກສະຫະຣັຖ ຖ້າທ່ານ Lincoln ຫາກຖືກເລືອກຕັ້ງເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ.

໑໖.໔.໕. ໃນການເລືອກຕັ້ງຂອງເດືອນພຶສຈິກາ ທ່ານLincoln ບໍ່ໄດ້ສຽງຈາກປະຊາຊົນສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ ແຕ່ທ່ານໄດ້ສຽງມາຈາກ ໑໘ ຣັຖທີ່ເປັນອິສຣະ. ທ່ານໄດ້ຄະແນນສຽງເກືອບເຄິ່ງ ຄື ໔໐ ເປີເຊັນຂອງຈຳນວນຜູ້ທີ່ໄປປ່ອນບັດເລືອກຕັ້ງໂດຍສະເພາະແມ່ນໄດ້ມາຈາກຣັຖທີ່ມີພົລເມືອງໜາແໜ້ນ. ສະຫຼຸບແລ້ວ ທ່ານ Lincoln ເປັນຜູ້ຖືກເລືອກຕັ້ງໃຫ້ເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ແຕ່ທ່ານຈຳເປັນຕ້ອງໄດ້ລໍຖ້າຈົນເຖິງເດືອນ ມີນາ ໑໘໖໑ ທ່ານຈຶ່ງໄດ້ເຂົ້າຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງເປັນທາງການ.

໑໖.໔.໖. ພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ລົງມືກາບຖູ້ໃນວັນທີ ໒໐ ເດືອນທັນວາປີ ໑໘໖໐ South Carolina ໄດ້ແຍກອອກຈາກສະຫະຣັຖ. ຕໍ່ມາ ໖ ອາທິດ ກໍໄດ້ມີ ໖ ຣັຖທາງພາກໃຕ້ແຍກຕົວອອກອີກ ແລະຕໍ່ມາອີກບໍ່ນານກໍມີເພີ່ມອີກ ໔ ຣັຖທີ່ປະຕິບັດໃນທຳນອງດຽວກັນ. ປະຊາຊົນບາງຈຳພວກໃນຣັຖທີ່ເຫຼືອມານັ້ນບໍ່ເຫັນດີໃນການກະທຳດັ່ງກ່າວ ແຕ່ກໍບໍ່ສາມາດປ້ອງກັນການແຍກນັ້ນໄດ້.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳທວຍຂອງຄຳສັບ :

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຄຳສັບຈຳນວນ ໓໕ ຄຳໃນຕາຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມໃສ່. ໃຫ້ຊອກຄຳສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນແລະຕາມທາງຂວາງໝາຍຄວາມວ່າຕາມເສັ້ນທີ່ອອກຈາກແຈໜຶ່ງຫາອີກແຈໜຶ່ງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບນັ້ນແລ້ວ ຈົ່ງຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນຄວາມໝາຍຂອງສັບນັ້ນລົງໄປ.

ECONOMIC
FUGITIVE
REPEAL
SECEDE
SOUTH
POPULAR
ELECTION
PETITION
ACT
UNION
CRISIS
LINCOLN
BLEEDING
CONGRESS
BALANCE
SLAVE
NUMBER
MISSOURI
VOTE
BELL
KANSAS
SOLUTION
ORDINANCE
PARALLEL
DEBATE
FREE
PARTY
TENSION
COMPROMISE (twice)
AMENDMENT
FORBIDDEN
SOVEREIGNTY
LOUISIANA
NEBRASKA
ILLINOIS

N	U	M	B	E	R	U	N	I	O	N	D	P	B	C	S	N
E	V	A	L	S	F	F	O	T	E	M	E	O	L	O	O	E
C	O	M	P	R	O	M	I	S	E	I	B	P	E	M	V	B
O	R	E	E	S	R	O	T	U	V	S	A	U	E	P	E	R
N	D	N	T	E	B	O	U	M	I	S	T	L	D	R	R	A
O	I	D	I	C	I	R	L	O	T	O	E	A	I	O	E	S
M	N	M	T	E	D	D	O	L	I	U	S	R	N	M	I	K
I	A	E	I	D	D	I	S	A	G	R	O	O	G	I	G	A
C	N	N	O	E	E	N	O	E	U	I	U	F	B	S	N	T
A	C	T	N	O	N	A	O	P	F	Q	T	R	E	E	T	E
C	E	B	A	L	A	N	C	E	S	R	H	E	L	O	Y	N
T	S	I	S	I	R	C	O	R	V	O	T	E	L	P	C	S
P	A	R	A	L	L	E	L	L	I	N	C	O	L	N	O	I
E	L	E	C	T	I	O	N	P	A	R	T	Y	L	O	N	O
I	L	L	I	N	O	I	S	S	S	E	R	G	N	O	C	N
L	O	U	I	S	I	A	N	A	K	A	N	S	A	S	O	X

໒. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ :

ຕາມບ່ອນວ່າງຕໍ່ໜ້າປະໂຫຍກໃຫ້ຂຽນຕົວອັກສອນ T ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກປະໂຫຍກນັ້ນຖືກ ຫຼື ຂຽນຕົວອັກສອນ F ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກຜິດ.

__________໑. ທ່ານLincoln ເປັນຜູ້ຕໍ່ຕ້ານການເປັນທາດ.

__________໒. ໃນປີ ໑໘໖໐ South Carolinaໄດ້ແຍກອອກຈາກສະຫະລັດ.

__________໓. California ຈະຖືກຮັບໃຫ້ເປັນລັດອິສະລະ.

__________໔. ຈຳນວນລັດທາງເໜືອທີ່ບໍ່ມີຂ້າທາດໄດ້ໃຫ້ການຕ້ອນຮັບແກ່ຊາວຜິວດຳທີ່ເປັນອິສະລະແລະ ໄດ້ອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າມີສິດຂອງພົນລະເມືອງທຸກຢ່າງ.

__________໕. ຊາວຜິວດຳບໍ່ໄດ້ສະໜັບສະໜູນຂະບວນການລົບລ້າງການເປັນທາດ.

__________໖. ຢູ່ທາງພາກໃຕ້ ພວກເຈົ້າຂອງໄຮ່ສວນທີ່ກວ້າງຂວາງເປັນຜູ້ຢູ່ໃນຊັ້ນສູງຂອງສັງຄົມ.

__________໗. ການຮັບເອົາ California ເຂົ້າເປັນລັດອິສະລະຈະເປັນການເພີ່ມນ້ຳໜັກໃຫ້ແກ່ພາກໃຕ້ໃນສະພາ.

__________ ໘. ພວກຂ້າທາດໃນWashington D.C. ໄດ້ຖືກຊື້ຂາຍມາຈົນເຖິງປີ ໑໘໕໐.

__________ ໙. ດຳລັດ Kansas-Nebraska ໄດ້ຮັບການສນັບສນູນຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍຈາກພາກເໜືອແລະພາກຕາເວັນຕົກທັງສອງພາກ.

__________໑໐. ໃນທີ່ສຸດ Kansas ໄດ້ເຂົ້າຮ່ວມໃນສະຫະຣັຖໃນຖານະຣັຖທີ່ມີຂ້າທາດ.

໓. ເລືອກຄຳຕອບ

ຈົ່ງເລືອກເອົາຕົວອັກສອນທີ່ຢູ່ໜ້າສັບຫຼືຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ມີຄວາມເໝາະສົມທີ່ສຸດສຳລັບປະໂຍກແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກ ຫຼື ເປັນຄຳຕອບທີ່ຖືກຕ້ອງທີ່ສຸດສຳລັບຄຳຖາມແຕ່ລະຄຳຖາມ.

໑. ຂໍ້ຕົກລົງແກ້ໄຂປັນຫາໃນປີ ໑໘໕໐:

(ກ) ຖືວ່າການເປັນຂ້າທາດໃນພາກໃຕ້ເປັນການຜິດຕໍ່ກົດໝາຍ.

(ຂ) ສເນີໃຫ້ມີປະທານາທິບໍດີສອງທ່ານ.

(ຄ) ການເປັນຂ້າທາດໃນ Washington D.C.ຈະຍັງເປັນການຖືກຕ້ອງຕາມກົດໝາຍຢູ່ ແຕ່ການຄ້າຂາຍຂ້າທາດນັ້ນຈະຖືກຫ້າມ.

(ງ) ເຮັດໃຫ້ບັນຫາຂ້າທາດສິ້ນສຸດລົງໃນທັນດ່ວນນັ້ນໂລດ.

໒. ພັກຣີພັບບລິກັນໃນປີ ໑໘໕໐:

(ກ) ເປັນພັກການເມືອງຂອງພາກເໜືອ

(ຂ) ສົ່ງເສີມການສ້າງສາທາງຣົດໄຟແລະການຂຶ້ນຄ່າພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າ.

(ຄ) ແຕ່ງຕັ້ງໃຫ້ທ່ານ Abraham Lincoln ເພື່ອສະໝັກເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ.

(ງ) ເຮັດໃຫ້ບັນຫາຂ້າທາດສິ້ນສຸດລົງໃນທັນດ່ວນນັ້ນໂລດ.

໓. ພັກເດໂມກຣັດໃນປີ ໑໘໕໐:

(ກ) ເປັນພັກການເມືອງທີ່ປ້ອງກັນຜົນປະໂຍດປະຊາຊົນໃນພາກເໜືອ.

(ຂ) ໄດ້ແຕກອອກເປັນສອງພັກໂດຍມີຜູ້ສະໝັກເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີຈຳນວນສອງທ່ານ.

(ຄ) ບໍ່ໄດ້ຄຳນຶງເຖິງບັນຫາຂ້າທາດແຕ່ປະການໃດ.

(ງ) ທຸກຢ່າງທີ່ກ່າວມາຂ້າງເທິງ.

໔. ຖ້າຫາກອານາເຂດນັ້ນມີອະທິປະໄຕຂອງປະຊາຊົນ:

(ກ) ຣັຖບານບໍ່ອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ມີຂ້າທາດ

(ຂ) ຣັຖບານອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ມີຂ້າທາດ.

(ຄ) ປະຊາຊົນມີສິດລົງຄວາມເຫັນວ່າຈະອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ມີຂ້າທາດຫຼືບໍ່.

(ງ) ທຸກຢ່າງທີ່ກ່າວມາຂ້າງເທິງນີ້.

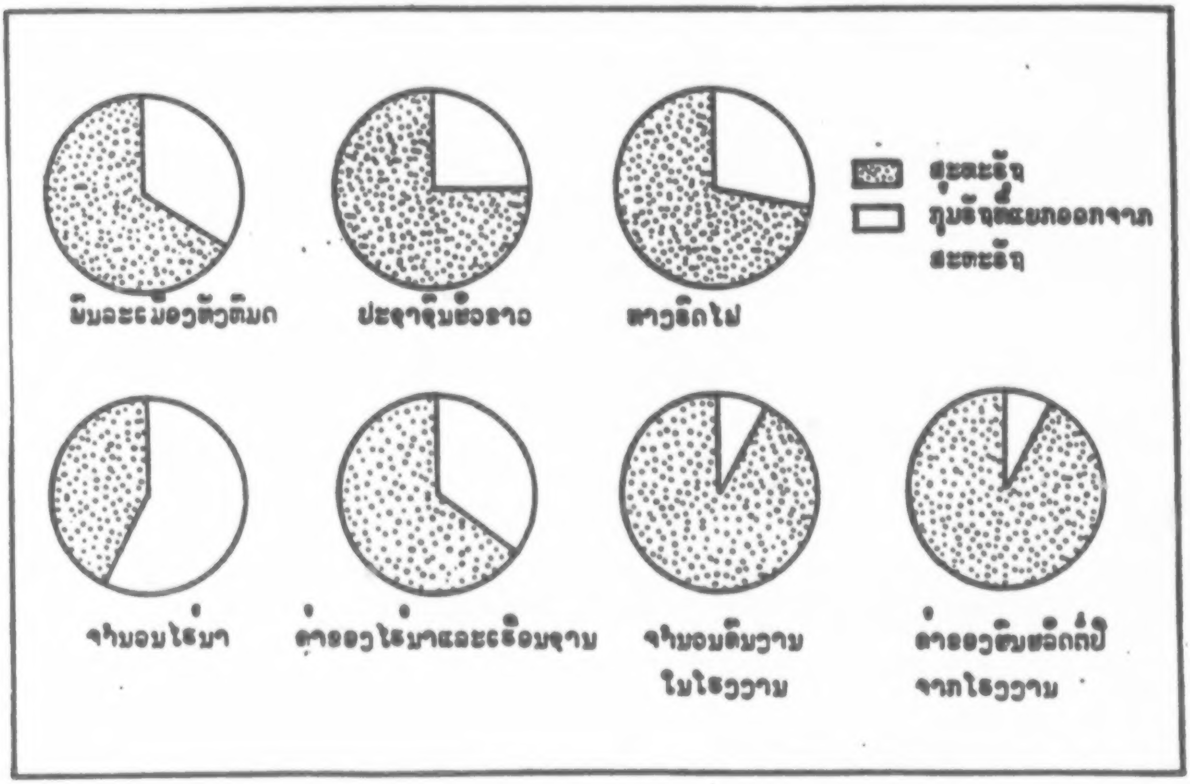
໕. ຂໍ້ນຶ່ງໃນຂໍ້ຕົກລົງແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາໃນປີ ໑໘໕໐ ມີຢູ່ວ່າ:

(ກ) California ມີສິດເຂົ້າຮ່ວມໃນສະຫະລັຖໃນຖານະລັຖທີ່ມີຂ້າທາດ.

(ຂ) ສະພາອາດອອກກົດໝາຍອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ຈອບຈັບກຸມຂ້າທາດ
ທີ່ຫຼົບໜີຫາຍອ້ນ.

(ຄ) ການຄ້າຂາຍຂ້າທາດໃນDistrict of Columbia ຈະໄດ້ຖືກລົບລ້າງ.

໖. ຕົກອ່ານຈາກກົນສະຖິຕິ



ຄຳແນະນຳ: ໃນຂະນະທີ່ South Corolina ໄດ້ແຍກອອກຈາກສະຫະລັຖແລະໄດ້ດຶງເອົາລັຖອື່ນເພື່ອຈັດຕັ້ງກຸ່ມອັນໃໝ່ ແຕ່ລະຝ່າຍມີຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງກັນຫຼາຍຢ່າງດ້ານຊັບພະຍາກອນຕ່າງໆ. ຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງເຫຼົ່ານີ້ຈະມີຄວາມສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດໃນເມື່ອເສິກກາງເມືອງເກີດຂຶ້ນ. ໃຫ້ເບິ່ງອີງກົນສະຖິຕິເພື່ອຕອບຄຳຖາມຕໍ່ໄປນີ້.

ຄ. ສີໃດໃນອົງກົມເຄື່ອງບິນທີ່ໃຊ້ເປັນເຄື່ອງໝາຍຂອງກຸ່ມທີ່ແຍກອອກຈາກສະຫະຣັຖ?

ງ. ປະຊາຊົນຄົນຜິວຂາວທີ່ມີໃນສະຫະຣັຖມີປະມານຈັກເປີເຊັນ?

ຈ. ຄ່າຂອງຜົນຜລິດຈາກໂຮງງານທີ່ຜລິດໃນພາກເໜືອມີປະມານຈັກເປີເຊັນ?

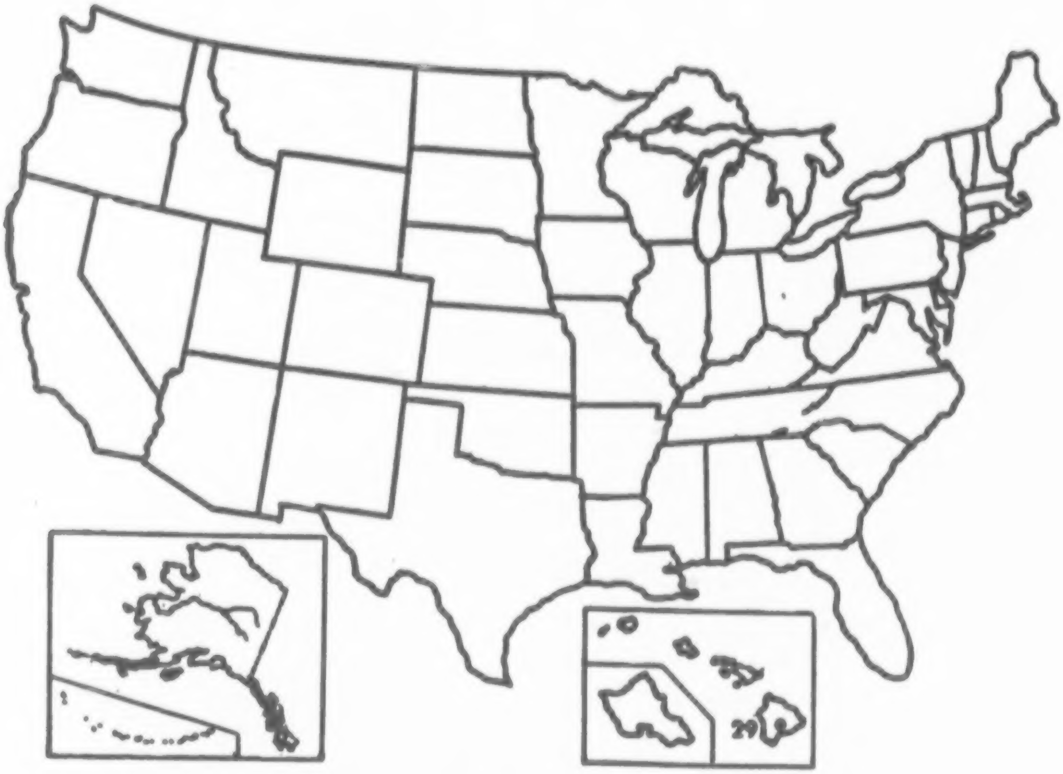
ສ. ຝ່າຍໃດມີດິນໄຮ່ດິນນາຫລາຍກວ່າກັນ?

ຊ. ດິນໄຮ່ດິນນາຂອງຝ່າຍໃດມີຄຸນຄ່າທີ່ສຸດ?

ຍ. ຝ່າຍໃດມີທາງຣົດໄຟຍາວທີ່ສຸດ?

ດ. ຝ່າຍໃດໄດ້ປຽບ?

໔. ຫັດໃສ່ສີແຜນທີ່: ຈົ່ງໃສ່ສີຣັຖ South Carolina ແລະຣັຖVirginia . ຈົ່ງໃສ່ສີຣັຖ ສອງຣັຖທີ່ຢູ່ແຄມມະຫາສະມຸດ Pacific.



ໝວດ ໔ : ການຂັດແຍ້ງແລະການທ້ອນໂຮມ

ພາກ ໑໔ : ຕົ້ນເຫດຂອງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງ

ສັບໃໝ່ :

political:	ທາງການເມືອງ
economic:	ທາງເສດຖະກິດ
social:	ທາງສັງຄົມ

Political, economic and social differences between the North and the South helped cause the Civil War.

develop: ພັດທະນາ

People in the North and the South developed different ways of life.

agriculture: ກະສິກັມ

The South made a living from agriculture.

industry: ໂຮງງານ

The North made a living from industry.

railroad: ທາງລົດໄຟ

The railroads were built in the North to transport its products.

tariff: ຄ່າພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າ

The North wanted tariffs to protect its manufactured goods.

product: ຜົນຜລິດ

interpretation: ການຕີຄວາມໝາຍ

The North and the South wanted different interpretations of the Constitution.

inaugurate: ເປີດທາງການ

Abraham Lincoln was inaugurated in March, 1861.

Confederate States

of America: ກຸ່ມລັດທີ່ແຍກອອກຈາກສະຫະລັດໃນປີ ໑໘໖໑

The Southern States which seceded formed the Confederate States of America.

War Department: ກະຊວງປ້ອງກັນປະເທດ

The U.S. War Department sent a steamer full of supplies to help Ft. Sumter.

steamer: ກຳປັ່ນ

retreat: ອ່າຖອຍ

The steamer retreat.

surrender: ຍອມຈຳນົນ

After 34 hours of fighting, soldiers at Ft. Sumter surrendered.

READING

14.1. THE CAUSES OF THE CIVIL WAR

14.1.1. Differences between the North and the South had existed since colonial times. With different land conditions and climate, people in each section developed different economies and ways of life. Different political views developed to protect economic and social needs. The people in each part of the country felt their own needs were more important than the needs of the whole country. This is called sectionalism. Sectionalism was a problem that would eventually cause a war between the North and the South.

14.1.2. Economic differences were a major cause of sectionalism. The Industrial Revolution brought many changes to the North. People were building many factories there. The

North needed roads, railroads and ships to transport raw materials to the factories and products away from the factories. The Industrial Revolution caused the Northern cities to become very large. The South did not have an Industrial Revolution. It had good soil, a long growing season, and many rivers to transport its products. The people from the South continued to make their living from farming. There were very few cities in the South.

14.1.3. Social differences also contributed to sectionalism. Because of the Industrial Revolution, many Northern farmers left their farms to live in the city and to become wage earners in the many factories there. Southern plantation owners continued to grow cotton, sugar, rice, tobacco and indigo. Because the care of these crops required many workers, southerners continued to use free slave labor.

14.1.4. Political differences further divided the North and the South. The North favored high tariffs to protect its manufactured goods. The South opposed them. Tariffs made imported goods more expensive for plantation owners. With low tariffs, the South could trade its cotton for cheaper foreign goods. The free labor system of the North was opposed to the slave economy of the South. The North needed many wage earners to buy its products. If the slaves were freed, there would be many more people to buy northern goods. Interpretation of the constitution also differed. Most Northerners favored a loose interpretation which would permit strong ties between government and business. Southerners favored a strict interpretation which would prevent the federal government from controlling slavery.

All of these economic, social and political issues helped to create sectional differences between the North and the South. This sectionalism led to the secession of the southern states.

14.2. THE SECESSION FROM THE UNION

14.2.1. Abraham Lincoln was elected president in November, 1860. He was not inaugurated until March, 1861. There were four months between Lincoln's election and his inauguration. During that time, Southern states moved toward secession.

14.2.2. South Carolina was the first state to secede. Six other states followed. In February 1861, leaders of the seceding states met in Alabama and formed the Confederate States of America. They elected Jefferson Davis, a former Senator from Mississippi, President of the Confederacy.

14.3. THE CIVIL WAR BEGINS

14.3.1. Soon after the Confederacy was formed, the Confederate Army began to take over Union forts. By the Spring of 1861 there was only one fort which remained under control of the United States government. This fort, called Fort Sumter, was located on an island near Charleston, South Carolina. Fort Sumter became the center of dispute between the North and the South.

14.3.2. The commander of the fort, Major Robert Anderson, hoped to avoid a Confederate attack. But by the end of 1860, Fort Sumter needed more food and supplies. The U.S. War Department sent a steamer loaded with men and supplies to help Anderson's army. Southern troops fired on the steamer when it neared the fort. The steamer retreated.

14.3.3. Soon after President Lincoln was inaugurated, he made plans to send more supply ships south to help Ft. Sumter. The Southern leaders learned about Lincoln's plans. They decided to act. At 4:30 in the morning of April 2, 1861, General Pierre Beauregard, the commander of the Confederate Army in Charleston, gave orders to attack the fort. After 34 hours of fighting, the federal forces surrendered. This attack started the Civil War.

EXERCISES

I. Building Vocabulary

Use the words listed below to complete the following statements: control, Jefferson Davis, steamer, Confederacy, supply ship.

1. Fort Sumter was the only fort remaining under the __________ of the U.S. Government.
2. In February, 1861, seven southern states formed the ______________ .

3. The President of the Confederacy was ____________ .

4. The U.S. government sent a __________ loaded with men and supplies to help its armies in the South.

5. President Lincoln made a plan to send _________ South to help the fort.

II. True or False.

_____ 1. Both the North and the Northwest were interested in building roads and railroads.

_____ 2. With low tariffs, the South could trade its cotton for cheaper foreign goods.

_____ 3. Abraham Lincoln was elected president in March, 1861.

_____ 4. South Carolina was the third state to secede.

_____ 5. In February, 1861, secessionist leaders met in Alabama and formed the Confederate States of America.

_____ 6. The President of the Confederate States of America was Jefferson Davis.

_____ 7. After a week, the federal forces in Fort Sumter surrendered.

III. Map work

Color the map below with four different colors.

a. Red for the Union

b. Yellow for the Confederate States

c. Green for the Border States

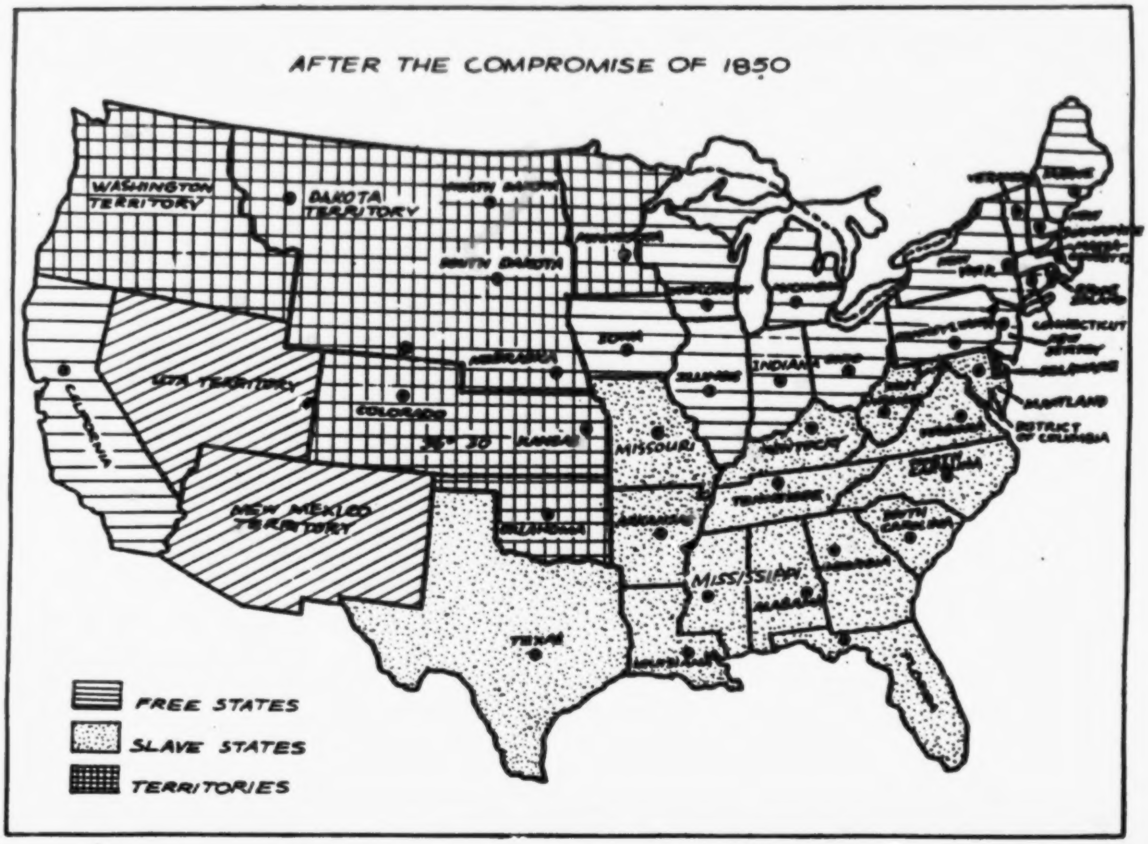
d. Blue for the territories.

Union: California, Oregon, Kansas, Minnesota, Iowa, Wisconsin, Illinois, Indiana, Michigan, Ohio, Pennsyvania, New York, Vermont, New Hampshire, Maine, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New Jersey.

Border States: Delaware, Maryland, West Virginia, Kentucky, Missouri.

Confederate States: Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, Arkansas, Texas, Louisiana, Missouri, Alabama, Georgia, Florida, South Carolina.

Territories: Washington Territory, Dakota Territory, Utah Territory, Nevada Territory, New Mexico Territory, Colorado Territory, Nebraska Territory, Indian Territory.


AFTER THE COMPROMISE OF 1850
WASHINGTON TERRITORY
DAKOTA TERRITORY
SOUTH DAKOTA
UTAH TERRITORY
CALIFORNIA
COLORADO
NEBRASKA
36° 30'
KANSAS
IOWA
ILLINOIS
INDIANA
MISSOURI
NEW MEXICO TERRITORY
MISSISSIPPI
TEXAS
CONNECTICUT
NEW JERSEY
MARYLAND
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA
FREE STATES
SLAVE STATES
TERRITORIES

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

IV. Word Search.

Directions: Find and circle 14 words in the word search puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word, write it and then define it.

ROAD

COMMANDER

LINCOLN

RAILROAD

ECONOMICS

SECESSION

COURT

RURAL

TARIFF

INDUSTRY

POLITICS

ORDERS

INVENT

CONVICTION

A B C D E F G H E K F N L S C O P O R S

B C O N V I C T I O N S E C E S S I O N

P O L I T I C S F N F I C O U R T R A S

A M I S I N O O K F U S O M O R D E R S

H M N O C D O I I L L R L M I U D O R S

U A C W T U I R N A L Q E S O C I A L R

M N O A A S A P G R S R V S M O N V I S

C D L M C T H U I U N O E O I N V E N T

O E N E S R A I L R O A D S C A N S W S

P R O A D Y O R L V N S O U S B T O U R

O R S E C O N O M I C S T U V N M N P O

ບົດອ່ານ:

໑໔.໔. ຕົ້ນເຫດຂອງເສິກການເມືອງ.

໑໔.໔.໑. ການແຕກຕ່າງທາງດ້ານການເມືອງ ການເສດຖະກິດ ແລະການສັງຄົມເປັນຕົ້ນເຫດພາໃຫ້ເກີດເສິກການເມືອງ. ທັງຄວາມຂັດແຍກແຕກຕ່າງລະຫວ່າງພາກສ່ວນຕ່າງໆໃນປະເທດໄດ້ເກີດມີມາຕັ້ງແຕ່ສໄໝລາຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນ. ຍ້ອນສະພາບດິນຟ້າອາກາດແລະພູມີຕ່າງກັນ ພາກເຫນືອແລະພາກໃຕ້ຈຶ່ງປະກອບຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ໄປຄົນລະແບບ. ການພັດທະນາເສດຖະກິດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍບໍ່ເຫມືອນກັນ. ຄວາມນຶກຄິດແລະຄວາມເຫັນທາງການເມືອງຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າຂຶ້ນກັບຄວາມຈຳເປັນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງທາງດ້ານເສດຖະກິດ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນັ້ນ ໃນຫຼາຍພາກຂອງອະເມຣິກາຈຶ່ງໄດ້ມີການຊອກສແວງສ້າງຜົນປະໂຍດໃຫ້ແກ່ທ້ອງຖິ່ນຂອງຕົນຈົນເກີນສ່ວນທຳນອງນັ້ນເກີດຂຶ້ນ.

໑໔.໔.໒. ພາກຕາເວັນຕົກແລະພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ພັດທະນາກະສິກັມສ່ວນພາກເຫນືອນັ້ນພັດທະນາອຸດສາຫະກັມ ແລະການຄ້າ. ພາກເຫນືອແລະພາກຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງເຫນືອໄດ້ສົນໃຈໃນການສ້າງຖນົນຫົນທາງແລະທາງຣົດໄຟ ຊຶ່ງພາກໃຕ້ບໍ່ເຫັນເປັນສິ່ງຈຳເປັນໃນຂະນະນັ້ນ. ພາກເຫນືອຕ້ອງການຂຶ້ນພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າເພື່ອເປັນການປ້ອງກັນອຸດສາຫະກັມຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ ທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກເຫັນພ້ອມກັບພາກເຫນືອໃນເຣື່ອງຂຶ້ນພາສີ ແຕ່ທາງພາກໃຕ້ຄັດຄ້ານຢ່າງຫນັກຫນ່ວງເພາະວ່າພາສີດັ່ງກ່າວຈະເປັນການເພີ່ມລາຍຈ່າຍສຳຫຼັບເຈົ້າຂອງໄຮ່ນາ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ພາກໃຕ້ເຫັນວ່າການຂຶ້ນພາສີເຮັດໃຫ້ສິນຄ້າໃນທ້ອງຕລາດແພງຂຶ້ນ. ສະນັ້ນຖ້າຫາກພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າຕ່ຳລົງ ພາກໃຕ້ກໍຈະໄດ້ຂາຍຝ້າຍໄດ້ດີ ແລະຊື້ສິນຄ້າຈາກຕ່າງປະເທດໃນຣາຄາຖືກອີກດ້ວຍ.

໑໔.໔.໓. ເສດຖະກິດລະຫວ່າງພາກເຫນືອແລະພາກໃຕ້ແຕກຕ່າງກັນໃນຂໍ້ທີ່ວ່າທາງພາກເຫນືອໃຊ້ແຮງງານມີອິສະຣະ ສ່ວນທາງພາກໃຕ້ນັ້ນໃຊ້ຂ້າທາດເປັນແຮງງານສ່ວນໃຫຍ່. ພາກເຫນືອຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ມີຊາດທີ່ປະກອບດ້ວຍປະຊາກອນທີ່ມີລາຍໄດ້ເພື່ອຊື້ຜລິດຈາກໂຮງງານ. ຖ້າຫາກຂ້າທາດເປັນຈຳນວນລ້ານໆໃນພາກໃຕ້ຖືກປົດປ່ອຍໃຫ້ເປັນອິສະຣະ ພາກໃຕ້ຈະກາຍເປັນຕລາດສຳຣັບແກ່ສິນຄ້າທີ່ມາຈາກພາກເຫນືອ.

໑໔.໔.໔. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນກໍຍັງມີການແຕກຕ່າງທາງດ້ານການເມືອງລະຫວ່າງພາກຕ່າງໆເຊັ່ນວ່າ ພາກໃຕ້ຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ມີການຄືຄວາມຫມາຍ ກົດຫມາຍໃນຣັຖທັມມະນູນອັນເຄັ່ງຄັດຊຶ່ງຈະເປັນຫົນທາງຫຼີກລ່ຽງໃຫ້ຣັຖບານກາງຄວບຄຸມການເປັນຂ້າທາດ. ກົງກັນຂ້າມພາກເຫນືອເຫັນດີໃຫ້ມີການຄືຄວາມຫມາຍກົດຫມາຍໃນຣັຖທັມມະນູນຢ່າງກວ້າງຂວາງທົ່ວໄປເພື່ອໃຫ້ຄວາມສຳພັນລະຫວ່າງຣັຖບານແລະການຄ້າມີຄວາມຫນາແຫນ້ນ. ຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງທັງຫມົດເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ສ້າງສະພາບອັນກັບດານທີ່ສຸດຊຶ່ງພາໃຫ້ຈຳພວກຣັຖທາງໃຕ້ແຍກຕົວອອກຈາກສະຫະຣັຖ.

໑໕.໒. ການແຍກຈາກສະຫະຣັຖ

໑໕.໒.໑. ທ່ານ Abraham Lincoln ໄດ້ຖືກເລືອກເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ ໃນເດືອນພະຈິກ ປີ ໑໘໖໐. ທ່ານໄດ້ເຂົ້າຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງເປັນທາງການໃນເດືອນ ມີນາ ໑໘໖໑. ຖ້າຈະໄລ່ແລ້ວເປັນເວລາ ໕ ເດືອນເຕັມ ນັບຈາກເວລາທີ່ທ່ານ Lincoln ຖືກເລືອກຫາເວລາທີ່ທ່ານເຂົ້າຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງ. ໃນລະຫວ່າງນັ້ນເອງ ພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ພາກັນແຍກຕົວອອກຈາກສະຫະຣັຖເປັນລຳດັບມາ.

໑໕.໒.໒. South Carolina ເປັນຣັຖທຳອິດທີ່ແຍກອອກ ຕິດຕາມດ້ວຍອີກ ໖ ຣັຖ. ໃນເດືອນ ກຸມພາ ໑໘໖໑ ຜູ້ນຳຂອງຣັຖທີ່ຕັດສຳພັນກັບສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ພົບປະກັນທີ່ Alabama ແລະໄດ້ພາກັນຈັດຕັ້ງກຸ່ມໃໝ່ຂຶ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ Conferate States of America ທ່ານ Jefferson Davi (ສະມາຊິກສະພາສູງຂອງສະຫະຣັຖຈາກ Mississippi) ຖືກເລືອກເປັນປະທານຂອງກຸ່ມຣັຖທີ່ຈັດຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນໃໝ່ (Confederacy).

໑໕.໓. Fort Sumter ຖືກຍິງຖະລົ່ມ. ເສິກກາງເມືອງໄດ້ເລີ່ມຂຶ້ນ.

໑໕.໓.໑. Fort Sumter ເປັນປ້ອມສ້າງດ້ວຍດິນຈີ່ຕັ້ງຢູ່ໃນເກາະແຫ່ງນຶ່ງທີ່ເມືອງ Charleston, South Carolina. ໃນລະດູໃບໄມ້ປົ່ງຂອງປີ ໑໘໖໑ Fort Sumter ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນແຫຼ່ງຂັດແຍ່ງລະຫວ່າງພາກເໜືອແລະພາກໃຕ້ເຣື່ອງປ້ອມທະຫານແຫ່ງນຶ່ງໃນພາກໃຕ້. ກອງທັບຂອງ Confederacy ໄດ້ຍຶດເອົາປ້ອມທະຫານຂອງສະຫະຣັຖມາເລື້ອຍໆເທື່ອລະປ້ອມ. Fort Sumter ເປັນປ້ອມດຽວເທົ່ານັ້ນທີ່ຍັງເຫຼືອຢູ່ໃນການຄວບຄຸມຂອງຣັຖບານສະຫະຣັຖ.

໑໕.໓.໒. Fort Sumter ຢູ່ພາຍໃຕ້ການບັງຄັບບັນຊາຂອງພັນຕີ Robert Anderson ທ່ານໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມຫຼີກລ່ຽງການກະທຳທຸກສິ່ງທີ່ຈະພາໃຫ້ທະຫານຂອງ Confederacy ເຂົ້າມາໂຈມຕີ. ໃນທ້າຍປີ ໑໘໖໐ ອາຫານແລະການລຳລຽງໃນປ້ອມໄດ້ເລີ້ມຂາດເຂີນລົງ. ກະຊວງປ້ອງກັນປະເທດຂອງສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ສົ່ງທະຫານແລະເຄື່ອງລຳລຽງໄປທາງກຳປັ່ນເພື່ອຊ່ວຍກອງທັບໃນພາກໃຕ້. ໃນເວລາທີ່ກຳປັ່ນລຳດັ່ງກ່າວເຂົ້າປ້ອມທະຫານຂອງຝ່າຍພາກໃຕ້ກໍໄດ້ຣະດົມຍິງ ຈຶ່ງພາໃຫ້ກຳປັ່ນລຳນັ້ນຖອຍກັບຄືນສູ່ New York ຢ່າງຮີບດ່ວນ.

໑໔.໓.໓ ໃນບໍ່ນານຫຼັງຈາກ ທ່ານປະທານາທິບໍດີ Lincoln ໄດ້ເຂົ້າຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງ ທ່ານໄດ້ວາງແຜນສົ່ງເຮືອລຳລຽງເພື່ອໄປຊ່ວຍ Fort Sumter ເມື່ອພວກຫົວໜ້າແຂວງພາກໃຕ້ຮູ້ແຜນເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍ່ໄດ້ພ້ອມກັນຕັດສິນໃຈເລີ່ມການລົງມື. ໃນເວລາ ໔ ໂມງ ໓໐ ຕອນເຊົ້າຂອງວັນທີ ໒ ເດືອນ ເມສາ ປີ ໑໘໖໑ ນາຍພົນ Pierre Beauregard ຜູ້ບັງຄັບບັນຊາກອງທັບຂອງ Confederacy ປະຈຳເມືອງ Chaleston ໄດ້ອອກຄຳສັ່ງໃຫ້ລະດົມຍິງປ້ອມ. ໓໔ ຊົ່ວໂມງຫຼັງຈາກນັ້ນ ທະຫານຂອງລັດຖະບານກາງຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຍອມຈຳນົນ. ເຫດການດັ່ງກ່າວສະແດງເຖິງການເລີ່ມຕົ້ນຂອງເສິກການເມືອງ.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຫັດຂຽນຄຳສັບ

ຈົ່ງໃຊ້ສັບຕ່າງໆຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ເພື່ອຕື່ມໃສ່ປະໂຫຍກດັ່ງຕໍ່ໄປນີ້.

ການຄວບຄຸມ Jefferson Davis ກຳປັ່ນ Confederacy ເຮືອລຳລຽງ

໑. Fort Sumter ເປັນປ້ອມກອງທະຫານທີ່ເຫຼືອຢູ່ພາຍໃຕ້ ____________ ຂອງລັດຖະບານສະຫະລັດ.

໒. ໃນເດືອນກຸມພາ ໑໘໖໑ ກ ລັດພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ຈັດຕັ້ງ ____________

໓. ປະທານຂອງ Confederacy ແມ່ນ ____________

໔. ລັດຖະບານສະຫະລັດໄດ້ສົ່ງ ____________ ບັນທຸກທະຫານແລະເຄື່ອງລຳລຽງເພື່ອໄປຊ່ວຍກອງທັບຢູ່ທາງພາກໃຕ້.

໕. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Lincoln ໄດ້ວາງແຜນສົ່ງ ____________ ລົງໄປໃຕ້ເພື່ອຊ່ວຍປ້ອມ.

໒. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ

____________ ໑. ພາກເໜືອແລະພາກຕາເວັນຕົກໄດ້ຮ່ວມໃຈໃນການສ້າງທາງຖະໜົນແລະທາງລົດໄຟທັງສອງພາກ.

____________ ໒. ຖ້າວ່າພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າຕ່ຳພາກໃຕ້ຈະໄດ້ຂາຍຝ້າຍສະດວກແລະຊື້ສິນຄ້າຈາກຕ່າງປະເທດດ້ວຍລາຄາຖືກ.

____________ ໓. Abraham Lincoln ໄດ້ຖືກເລືອກເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີໃນເດືອນມີນາ ປີ ໑໘໖໑.

__________ ໔. South Carolina ເປັນລັດທີ່ສາມທີ່ແຍກອອກຈາກສະຫະລັດ.

__________ ໕. ຜູ້ນຳຂອງລັດທີ່ແຍກອອກຈາກສະຫະລັດໄດ້ພົບປະກັນທີ່
ແລະໄດ້ຈັດຕັ້ງConfederate States of America ໃນເດືອນກຸມພາ ໑໘໖໑

__________ ໖. ປະທານຂອງConfederate States of Americaແມ່ນທ່ານ Jefferson Davis.

__________ ໗. ທະຫານຂອງລັດຖະບານກາງໃນ Fort Sumter ໄດ້ຍອມ
ຈຳນົນພາຍໃນນຶ່ງອາທິດຫຼັງຈາກຖືກຖລົ່ມ.

ງ. ຫັດໃສ່ສີແຜນທີ່

ຈົ່ງໃສ່ສີແຜນທີ່ຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ດ້ວຍ ໔ ສີຕ່າງກັນ.

ກ. ສີແດງສຳລັບສະຫະລັດ

ຂ. ສີເຫຼືອງສຳລັບ

ຄ. ສີຂຽວສຳລັບລັດຊາຍແດນ

ງ. ສີຟ້າສຳລັບອານາເຂດ

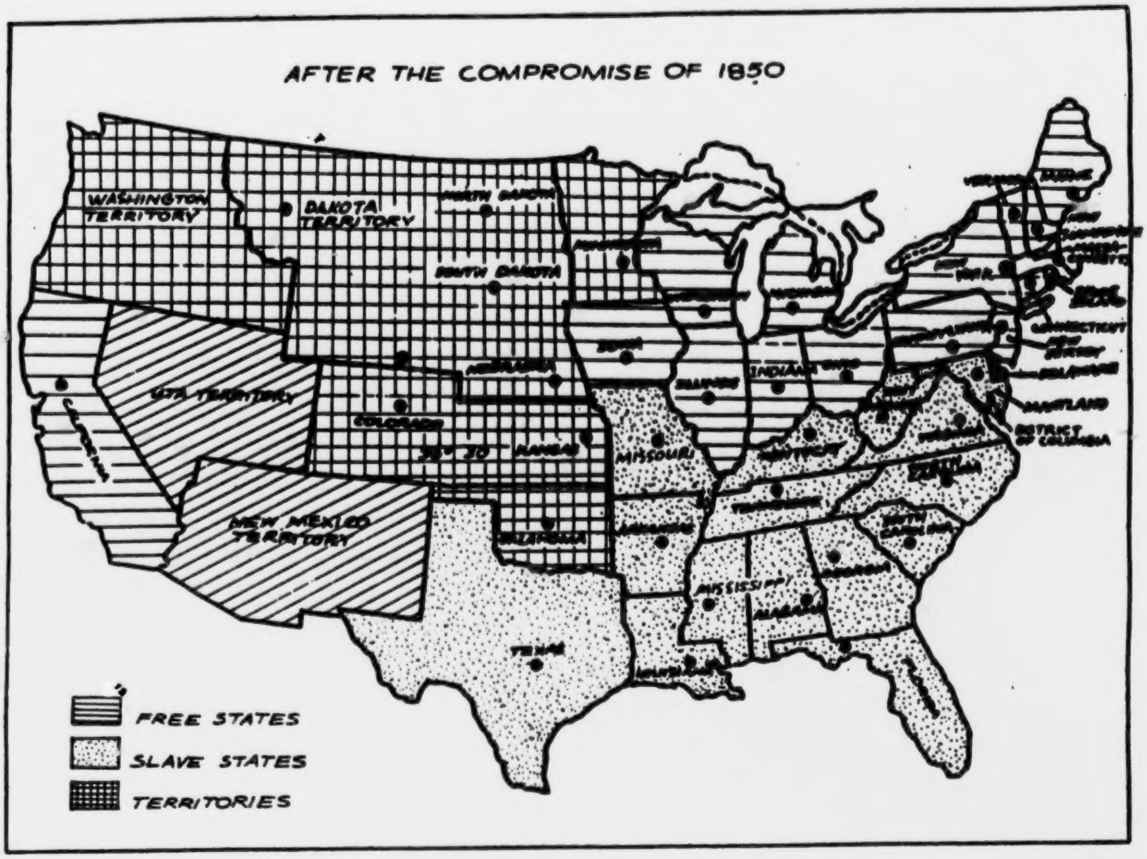
ສະຫະລັດ : California, Oregon, Kansas, Minnesota, Iowa, Wisconsin, Illinois, Indiana, Michigan, Ohio, Pennsylvania, New York, Vermont, New Hampshire, Maine, Massachusetts, Rhodes Island, Connecticut, New Jersey.

ລັດຊາຍແດນ : Delaware, Maryland, West Virginia, Kentucky, Missouri.

Confederate States: Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, Arkansas, Texas, Louisiana, Missouri, Alabama, Georgia, Florida, South Carolina.

ອານາເຂດ : Washington Territory, Dakota Territory, Utah Territory, Nevada Teeritory, New Mexico Territory, Colorado Territory, Nebraska Territory, Indiana Territory.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE


AFTER THE COMPROMISE OF 1850
WASHINGTON TERRITORY
DAKOTA TERRITORY
NORTH DAKOTA
SOUTH DAKOTA
UTAH TERRITORY
CALIFORNIA
COLORADO
KANSAS
NEBRASKA
MISSOURI
NEW MEXICO TERRITORY
OKLAHOMA
TEXAS
MISSISSIPPI
INDIANA
NEW YORK
CONNECTICUT
NEW JERSEY
DELAWARE
MARYLAND
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA
FREE STATES
SLAVE STATES
TERRITORIES

໔. <u>ຊອກຫາສັບ</u>

<u>ຄຳແນະນຳ</u> : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຈຳນວນ ໑໔ ສັບທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະຕາມທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບນັ້ນແລ້ວຈົ່ງຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນຄວາມໝາຍຂອງສັບນັ້ນລົງໄປ.

```
A B C D E F G H E K F N L S C O P O R S
B C O N V I C T I O N S E C E S S I O N
P O L I T I C S F N F I C O U R T R A S
A M I S I N O O K F U S O M O R D E R S
H M N O C D O I I L L R L M I U D O R S
U A C W T U I R N A L Q E S O C I A L R
M N O A A S A P G R S R V S M O N V I S
C D L M C T H U I U N O E O I N V E N T
O E N E S R A I L R O A D S C A N S W S
P R O A D Y O R L V N S O U S B T O U R
O R S E C O N O M I C S T U V N M N P O
```

SECESSION
COURT
RURAL
TARIFF
INDUSTRY
POLITICS
ORDERS
INVENT
CONVICTION
ROAD
COMMANDER
LINCOLN
RAILROAD
ECONOMICS

ໝວດ ໔ : ການຂັດແຍ້ງແລະການຕ້ອນໂຮມ

ພາກ ໑໕ : ການຕ້ອນໂຮມຂອງຊາດ

ສັບໃໝ່ :

Emancipation Proclamation: ຄຳປະກາດປົດປ່ອຍຂ້າທາດໃຫ້ເປັນອິສລະ

Lincoln's Emancipation Proclamation freed the slaves in Confederate States.

restore: ສ້ອມແປງໃໝ່

The North was fifting to restore the Union.

address: ຖແລງ

Lincoln's Gettusburg address is considered to be one of the best speeches of all time.

forces: ກຳລັງທະຫານ ຫຼື ກອງທັບ

There were many battles between Union and Confederate forces.

battle: ການສູ້ຮົບ

advance: ການບຸກໜ້າ

Sherman's army advanced across Georgia.

turning point: ຈຸດອັນຕະລາຍ

1863 was the turning point in the Civil War.

honor: ໃຫ້ກຽດ

People gathered in Gettusburg to honor the soldiers who had died there.

reaffirm: ຢືນຢັນອີກເທື່ອໃໝ່

At the conclusion of the Gettysburg address, Lincoln reaffirmed the American committment to freedom for all people.

goal: ຈຸດໝາຍ

One of Lincoln's goals was to save the Union.

dare: ກ້າ

Because of all his victories, General Lee dared to invade the Union State of Pennsylvania.

blockde: ການໃຊ້ເຮືອລົບປິດລ້ອມ

The Union Navy controlled the ocean with a blockade.

pursuit: ໄລ່ສັດຕູ

Lee's escape routes were blocked by Grant who was in pursuit.

ratify: ການຮັບຮອງເອົາໂດຍສະພາ

The 13th Amendment was ratified by 3/4 of the States.

reconstruction: ການຟື້ນຟູສ້າງສາໃໝ່

The rebuilding of the South after the Civil War is known as Reconstruction.

loyalty: ຄວາມຈົງຮັກພັກດີ

States would be readmitted to the Union after a certain percentage of voters had signed a loyalty oath.

oath: ຄວາມປະຕິຍານສາບານ

eligible: ມີສິດ

At the end of 1865, President Johnson said that all States were eligible for raedmission.

READING

15.1. THE EMANCIPATION PROCLAMATION

15.1.1. Between April 1861 and April 1865, the United States was divided and torn apart by the Civil War. The Confederacy was fighting to keep slavery and to win its independence from the North. At first, the Union was fighting only to reunite the country. Later, the North also sought to free the slaves. President Lincoln wanted to change the war policies to shorten the war. He hoped to save lives both in the North and the South. The Emancipation Proclamation was one of many factors that helped the North to win.

15.1.2. On January 1, 1863, President Lincoln signed the Emancipation Proclamation. It was an order that would declare free most of the slaves in the Confederate States. (It did not free the slaves in five border states - Delaware, Maryland, Kentucky, Missouri, and West Virginia). Many of the free slaves joined the Union Army and fought against the Confederacy.

15.2. THE GETTYSBURG ADDRESS

15.2.1. Early in the Civil War, the Confederacy seemed to be winning. Southern forces won many battles during the first two years. However, in 1862, Union forces stopped the Confederate advance at Antietam, Maryland, and killed many soldiers from the South. 1863 was the turning point of the war. Confederate General Robert E. Lee's advancing army was stopped at Gettysburg, Pennsylvania. In only three days of fighting, both sides had lost over 50,000 brave soldiers. This was the bloodiest battle in the Civil War. After the battle, Confederate forces retreated to Virginia.

15.2.2. On November 19, 1863, a little over four months after the horrible Battle of Gettysburg, people gathered at this site to honor the soldiers who had died there and to dedicate a national cemetery. President Lincoln gave a short speech, but this speech is considered to be one of the greatest speeches of all time. At the conclusion of the speech, President Lincoln reaffirmed that "this nation, under God, shall have a new birth of freedom, and that government of the people, by the people, for the people, shall not perish from the earth." President Lincoln's goal was to save the Union and free the American people.

15.3. VICTORY AND DEFEAT

15.3.1. Until the battle of Gettysburg, it had seemed as though no Union general could defeat General Lee. In fact, Lee's many victories helped to explain why he dared to invade the Union state of Pennsylvania. He was trying to get a victory in the North that would offset the expected Union victory at Vicksburg, Mississippi.

15.3.2. After the Confederate armies had withdrawn to the South, Union forces began invading the South from the West and by sea. The Union had control of the Missisppi River from St. Louis to New Orleans. In February, 1862 General Grant won two more victories by seizing Fort Henry on the Tennessee River and Fort Donelson on the Cumberland River. Another Union General, General Sherman, began a long march through Georgia to Savannah on the seacoast, destroying everything along the way. Then, his army pushed northward. At the same time, General Grant was driving southward toward Richmond, Confederate forces were now caught between these two armies. Also, the sea blockade by the Union Navy was causing serious problems for the South.

15.3.3. The darkest day of all for the Confededacy came in April, 1865. After nine months of siege by Grant, Petersburg, twenty miles from Richmond, fell to the Union Army. Lee's forces moved out of Richmond and some of Grant's forces moved in. Two Generals, Grant and Sheridan, pursued Lee from different directions. With his escape routes blocked, Lee surrendered on April 9, 1865, at a farmhouse in the village of Appomatox Court House.

15.4. THIRTEENTH AMENDEMENT

15.4.1. With the Civil War over, there were many tasks to be accomplished by the Union as well as by President Lincoln. One of these tasks was the liberation of the slaves in the South.

15.4.2. When President Lincoln issued his Emancipation Proclamation in 1863 he only wanted to free slaves in the rebellious states. When the Civil War ended in 1865, Congress wanted to settle the slavery question once and for all. In this year, the U.S. Congress approved an amendment to the Constitution, freeing slaves everywhere in the United States and its Territories. This, the Thirteen Amendment, was finally ratified by the necessary three fourths of the states eight months after the war ended.

15.5. THE RECONSTRUCTION IN THE SOUTH AND THE STATUS OF THE BLACKS

15.5.1. The Civil War brought economic changes in both the North and the South. While the North became more industrialized and prospered, the South was ruined. Farms, cities, industries, and transportation had been seriously damaged. Reconstruction, or rebuilding the South, was discussed even while the Civil War was being fought. President Lincoln proposed a lenient plan for readmitting the Southern states to the Union. His plan suggested that when 10% of a state's voters had signed a loyalty oath to the Union, the state would be readmitted. The Radical Republicans, who considered the South a conquered territory, wanted to punish and reorganize it. They passed the Wade-Davis Bill in 1864. This bill required loyalty oath from a majority of a state's voters before readmission. President Lincoln vetoed this bill.

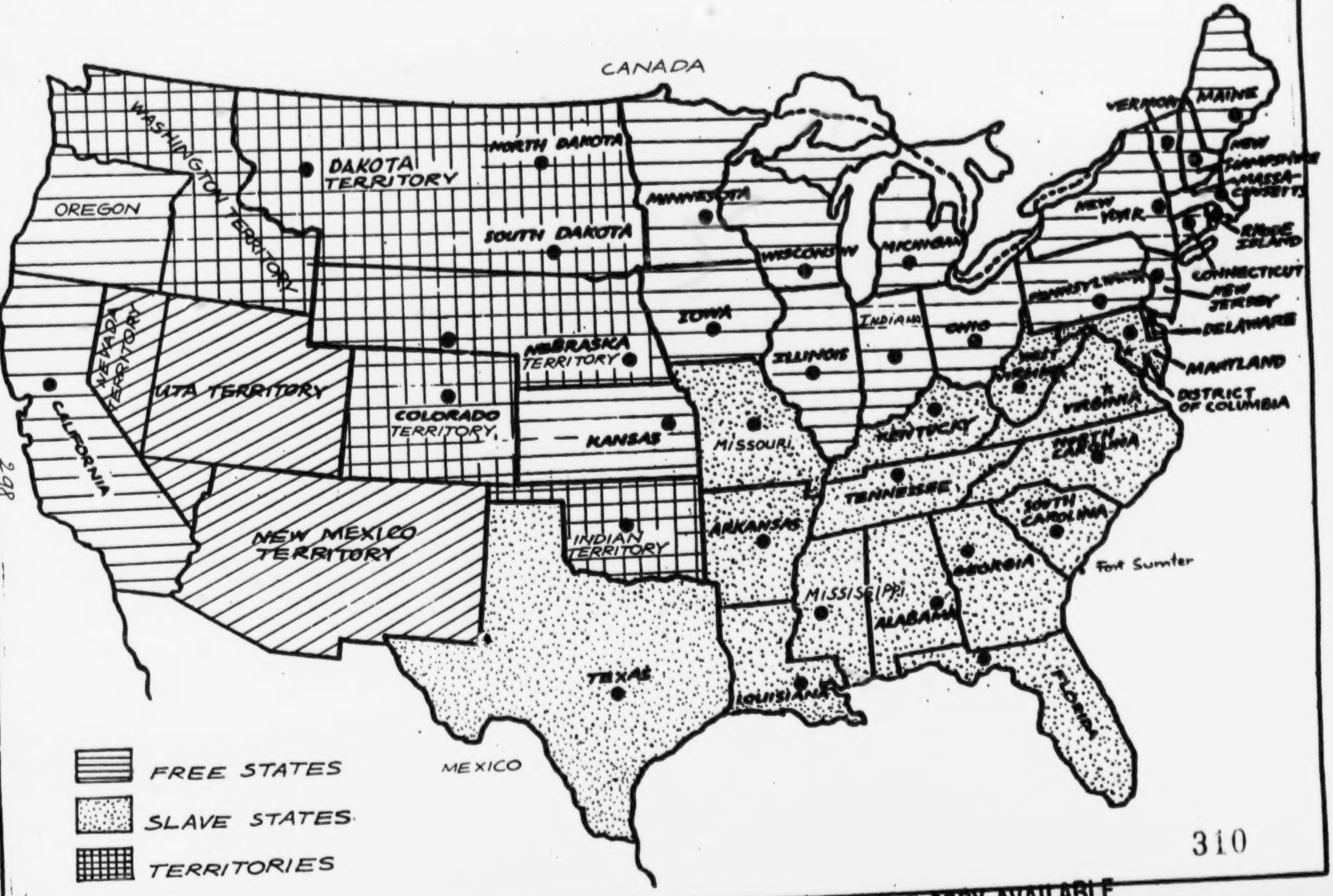
15.5.2. In April 1865, President Lincoln was assassinated. The new President, Andrew Johnson, at first favored the Radicals' approach. But he soon accepted Lincoln's ideas. By the end of 1865, he announced that all Southern States were eligible for readmission. The Radicals immediately attacked President Johnson. In 1866 the Radical Republicans gained control of Congress and passed a series of Reconstruction Acts. These acts set two conditions for readmission of the Southern States:

a. Each Southern State was to hold a constitutional convention. Election to this convention was to be open to black as well as white voters.

b. Each Southern State was to ratify the Fourteenth Amendment. The purpose of the 14th Amendment was to give citizenship to blacks. It also punished certain ex-Confederates by barring them from voting and holding office in the Federal Government or state governments.

15.5.3. Reconstruction under these acts began in 1867. The entire Confederate area was divided into five military districts. Federal troops were kept in the South until 1877 to protect the blacks and to enforce federal laws.

15.5.4. The Thirteenth and Fourteenth Amendments and the Reconstruction Acts gave the blacks political power in the South. Black voters were important to the Reconstruction Plans. Since most whites were not allowed to vote, black voters were the majority in many areas. For the first time, black people voted and held offices. Hundreds of ex-slaves were elected to the House of Representatives and Senate of the United States.


CANADA
WASHINGTON TERRITORY
OREGON
DAKOTA TERRITORY
NORTH DAKOTA
SOUTH DAKOTA
MINNESOTA
WISCONSIN
MICHIGAN
VERMONT
MAINE
NEW HAMPSHIRE
MASSACHUSETTS
NEW YORK
RHODE ISLAND
CONNECTICUT
NEW JERSEY
PENNSYLVANIA
DELAWARE
MARYLAND
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA
NEVADA TERRITORY
UTA TERRITORY
CALIFORNIA
NEBRASKA TERRITORY
IOWA
ILLINOIS
INDIANA
OHIO
WEST VIRGINIA
VIRGINIA
COLORADO TERRITORY
KANSAS
MISSOURI
KENTUCKY
NORTH CAROLINA
TENNESSEE
SOUTH CAROLINA
NEW MEXICO TERRITORY
INDIAN TERRITORY
ARKANSAS
GEORGIA
Fort Sumter
MISSISSIPPI
ALABAMA
TEXAS
LOUISIANA
FLORIDA
MEXICO
▤ FREE STATES
▨ SLAVE STATES
▦ TERRITORIES

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

EXERCISES

I. **Word search puzzle.**
Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

P	T	U	R	N	I	N	G	P	O	I	N	T	H	O	N	O	R
R	E	A	F	F	I	R	M	B	L	O	C	K	A	D	E	B	C
O	R	E	C	O	N	S	T	R	U	C	T	I	O	N	H	I	O
C	O	N	C	L	U	S	I	O	N	R	A	T	I	F	Y	C	N
L	P	U	R	S	U	I	T	W	O	C	N	S	L	A	V	E	C
A	D	D	R	E	S	S	L	A	A	O	A	T	H	P	R	U	L
M	B	A	T	T	L	E	O	R	I	N	C	S	A	P	I	N	U
A	F	O	R	C	E	S	Y	T	E	T	O	H	M	O	C	I	S
T	I	N	V	A	D	E	A	E	L	R	N	E	E	M	H	O	I
I	G	O	A	L	O	P	L	Y	I	O	F	R	N	A	M	N	O
O	D	A	R	E	I	Y	T	M	G	L	E	M	D	T	O	A	N
N	E	A	H	C	A	B	Y	R	I	T	D	A	M	O	N	R	L
M	W	C	N	E	L	T	T	A	B	N	E	N	E	X	D	M	G
K	I	A	P	A	R	T	C	B	L	A	R	O	N	A	B	I	N
B	M	A	R	Y	L	A	N	D	E	R	A	O	T	Y	O	E	U
E	G	E	T	T	Y	S	B	U	R	G	T	B	B	E	A	S	H
S	H	E	R	I	D	A	N	V	A	N	E	L	A	N	N	H	I

WAR
LEE
OATH
GOAL
DARE
SLAVE
ARMY

FORCES
PART
BATTLE
HONOR
INVADE
RATIFY
GRANT

ADDRESS
REAFFIRM
ELIGIBLE
CONTROL
SHERIDAN
PURSUIT
RICHMOND

CONCLUSION
AMENDMENT
LOYALTY
BLOCKADE
MARYLAND
CONFEDERATE
SHERMAN

EMANCIPATION
RECONSTRUCTION
PROCLAMATION
GETTYSBURG
TURNING POINT
APPOMATOX
UNION ARMIES

II. Scrambled Words.

Direction: Complete the sentences by unscrambling the letters to spell out the appropriated words.

1. **offernjes sivda** was president of the Confederacy.
2. **collnin** was president of the United States during the Civil War and issued the Emancipation Proclamation freeing the slaves.
3. **oretrb ele** was the commander of Confederate forces.
4. **beturystgg** was the place where President Lincoln gave a speech calling for the preservation of the Union.
5. **anhesmer** was a Union general who led the long march to the sea through the South.
6. **onemitanciap** was issued by President Lincoln and it freed all the slaves in the Confederate States.
7. **xppmaatoo uestchorou** was the place in Virginia where General Lee surrendered to General Grant, ending the Civil War.

III. Multiple Choice

Select the letter preceding the word or expression that best completes each statement or answer each question.

_____ 1. The immediate cause of the Civil War was the (a) attack on Fort Sumter (b) the assassination of President Lincoln (c) the Thirteenth Amendment (d) the Gettysburg Battle.

______ 2. The major purpose of the blockade during the Civil War was to prevent (a) English volunteers from going to the South (b) exporting of cotton to Europe (c) the Russian fleet from visiting the South.

______ 3. The Emancipation Proclamation was (a) a law passed by Congress (b) an amendment to the Constitution (c) a Presidential Order (d) a joint resolution of Congress.

______ 4. The purpose of General Sherman's famous march to the sea was to (a) trap General Lee (b) come to Grant's aid (c) split the Confederacy (d) capture valuable cotton land for the North.

______ 5. An important result of the Civil War was it (a) ended the states' rights issue (b) strengthened our tie with Great Britain (c) helped to make industry rather than agriculture the basis of our economy (d) established equality for the Negro in the South.

ບົດອ່ານ

໑໕.໑. ຄຳປະກາດປົດປ່ອຍຂ້າທາດໃຫ້ເປັນອິສລະ

໑໕.໑.໑. ໃນລະຫວ່າງເດືອນເມສາ ປີ ໑໘໖໑ ຫາເດືອນເມສາ ປີ ໑໘໖໕ ສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາຈຶ່ງແຕກແຍກດ້ວຍສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງ. ກຸ່ມລັດຕ່າງໆທີ່ແຍກອອກຈາກ Union ຊຶ່ງກຸ່ມທີ່ເອີ້ນວ່າ Confederacy ນັ້ນໄດ້ຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອຮັກສາໃຫ້ມີຂ້າທາດຕໍ່ໄປແລະຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອໃຫ້ໄດ້ເອກະລາດຈາກພາກເໜືອຢ່າງສົມບູນ. ໃນອີກແງ່ ພວກ Union ຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອຫາທາງຈັດຕັ້ງ Federal Union ຂຶ້ນເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ຕໍ່ມາພວກເຂົາກໍໄດ້ຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອປົດປ່ອຍຂ້າທາດໃຫ້ເປັນອິສລະ. ສຳລັບປະທານາທິບໍດີ Lincoln ທ່ານມີຄວາມປະສົງປ່ຽນນະໂຍບາຍສົງຄາມທັງນີ້ກໍເພື່ອເຮັດສົງຄາມຈຸດນ້ອຍຖອຍລົງແລະເພື່ອຫຼຸດການນອງເລືອດທັງໃນພາກເໜືອແລະພາກໃຕ້ດ້ວຍກັນ. ຄຳປະກາດປົດປ່ອຍຂ້າທາດໃຫ້ເປັນອິສລະນັ້ນເປັນສິ່ງນຶ່ງທີ່ນຳໄຊຊະນະມາສູ່ພາກເໜືອ.

໑໕.໑.໒. ໃນວັນທີ ໑ ເດືອນມົກກະຣາ ໑໘໖໓ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Lincoln ໄດ້ລົງນາມໃນຄຳປະກາດປົດປ່ອຍຂ້າທາດໃຫ້ເປັນອິສລະຊຶ່ງໃຊ້ເປັນຄຳສັ່ງປົດປ່ອຍພວກຂ້າທາດສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ທີ່ອາໄສຢູ່ໃນລັດຂອງ Confederacy ເທົ່ານັ້ນແລະບໍ່ໄດ້ກວມເອົາພວກຂ້າທາດທັງຫຼາຍທີ່ອາໄສຢູ່ຕາມລັດຊາຍແດນຕ່າງໆເຊັ່ນ Delaware, Maryland, Kentucky, Missouri ແລະ West Virginia ຊຶ່ງຂຶ້ນກັບ Union.

໑໕.໒. ຄຳຖແລງທີ່ Gettysburg.

໑໕.໒.໑. ໃນຕອນຕົ້ນຂອງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງນັ້ນເປັນທີ່ປາກົດວ່າພວກ Confederacy ຈະເປັນຜູ້ໄດ້ໄຊຊະນະເພາະວ່າໃນລະຫວ່າງສອງປີທຳອິດກອງທັບຂອງພາກໃຕ້ຊະນະການສູ້ລົບຫຼາຍຄັ້ງດ້ວຍກັນ. ແຕ່ປີ ໑໘໖໒ ກຳລັງຂອງ Union ໄດ້ສະກັດກັ້ນການເຄື່ອນທີ່ຂອງກອງທັບພາກໃຕ້ຢູ່ທີ່ Antictam, Maryland ພ້ອມກັບສັງຫານຂ້າເສິກເປັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ. ປີ ໑໘໖໓ ເປັນປີທີ່ສົງຄາມໄດ້ເຂົ້າສູ່ພາວະທີ່ກັບດານທີ່ສຸດ. ກຳລັງຂອງພາກໃຕ້ຊຶ່ງແມ່ນນາຍພົນ Robert E. Lee ເປັນຜູ້ບັງຄັບບັນຊາກໍໄດ້ຖືກສະກັດຢູ່ທີ່ Gettysburg, Pennsylvania. ໃນເວລາພຽງສາມວັນເທົ່ານັ້ນທະຫານກ້າຂອງທັງສອງຝ່າຍໄດ້ເສັຍຊີວິດໄປກວ່າ ໕໐.໐໐໐ ຄົນ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນການລົບຄັ້ງນີ້ຈຶ່ງເປັນການລົບທີ່ນອງເລືອດທີ່ສຸດຂອງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງ. ຫຼັງຈາກການສູ້ລົບດັ່ງກ່າວກຳລັງທະຫານຂອງ Confederacy ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ພາກັນຖອຍເຂົ້າຈັ້ງຢູ່ Virginia.

໑໘.໒.໒. ປະມານສີ່ເດືອນປາຍຫຼັງຈາກການສູ້ລົບອັນຮ້າຍກາດທີ່ Gettysburg ຄືໃນວັນທີ ໑໙ ພຶສຈິກາ ໑໘໖໓ ປະຊາຊົນໄດ້ພາກັນໄປເຕົ້າໂຮມຢູ່ບໍລິເວນສູ້ລົບດັ່ງກ່າວເພື່ອໃຫ້ກຽດແລະອຸທິດບ່ອນຝັງສົບແຫ່ງຊາດໃຫ້ແກ່ທະຫານທີ່ເສັຽຊີວິດໃນແຫ່ງນັ້ນ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີໄດ້ກ່າວຄຳປາໄສອັນສັ້ນໆແຕ່ເປັນຄຳປາໄສທີ່ມີຄວາມໝາຍຍິ່ງໃຫຍ່ທີ່ສຸດໃນປະວັດສາດ. ໃນຕອນທ້າຍຂອງຄຳປາໄສນັ້ນປະທານາທິບໍດີ Lincoln ໄດ້ປະກາດຢ່າງໜັກແໜ້ນວ່າ "ປະເທດນີ້ ພາຍໃຕ້ການຄຸ້ມຄອງຂອງພຣະຜູ້ເປັນເຈົ້າຈະຕ້ອງມີອິສຣະພາບອັນໃໝ່ແລະຣັຖບານຂອງປະຊາຊົນເລືອກຕັ້ງໂດຍປະຊາຊົນແລະເພື່ອປະຊາຊົນນັ້ນຈະບໍ່ມີວັນສລາຍໄປຈາກພື້ນໂລກ" ຈຸດໝາຍຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Lincoln ຄືຮັກສາເອົາ Union ໄວ້ແລະປົດປ່ອຍໃຫ້ປະຊາຊົນຄົນອະເມຣິກັນໃຫ້ເປັນອິສຣະ.

໑໘.໓. ໄຊຊະນະແລະການພ່າຍແພ້

໑໘.໓.໑. ໃນການສູ້ລົບແຕ່ລະຄັ້ງຈົນເຖິງບັ້ນລົບ Gettysburg ຄ້າຍກັບວ່າບໍ່ມີນາຍພົນຜູ້ໃດໃນ Union ຈະສາມາດເອົາຊະນະນາຍພົນ Lee ໄດ້. ການທີ່ນາຍພົນ Lee ກ້າບຸກລຸກ Pennsylvania ຊຶ່ງເປັນຣັຖຂອງ Union ແລະພະຍາຍາມຍຶດຄອງພາກເໜືອນັ້ນຄົງຈະເປັນເພາະທ່ານເຄີຍໄດ້ໄຊຊະນະມາຫຼາຍເທື່ອນັ້ນແລ້ວ.

໑໘.໓.໒. ຫຼັງຈາກກອງທັບຂອງ Confederacy ຖອຍກຳລັງຂອງ Union ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ເລີ່ມບຸກໂຈມຕີພາກໃຕ້ຈາກທາງດ້ານຕາເວັນຕົກແລະຈາກທາງທະເລ. ທະຫານຂອງ Union ໄດ້ຄວບຄຸມແມ່ນ້ຳ Mississippi ຕັ້ງແຕ່ເມືອງ St.Louis ຫາເມືອງ New Orleans ໃນເດືອນກຸມພາ ໑໘໖໒ ນາຍພົນ Grant ໄດ້ໄຊຊະນະຕື່ມອີກສອງຄັ້ງດ້ວຍການຍຶດເອົາປ້ອມ Fort Henry ແລະປ້ອມ Fort Donelson ຊຶ່ງຕັ້ງຢູ່ແຄມແມ່ນ້ຳ Tennessee ແລະແມ່ນ້ຳ Cumberland ຕາມເສັ້ນທາງລົງສູ່ພາກໃຕ້ນາຍພົນ Grant ໄດ້ຈຶດຕັດສະກັດແລະຈີກດ້ານປີນຈາກກອງທັບຂອງ Confederacy ເປັນຢ່າງໜັກ. ໃນຂະນະນັ້ນນາຍພົນ Sherman ໄດ້ເລີ່ມຍົກກຳລັງອອກເດີນທາງອັນຍືດຍາວຈາກ Chattanooga, Tennessee ຜ່ານ Georgia ຫາ Savannah ຊຶ່ງຢູ່ແຄມທະເລແລ້ວບຸກຂຶ້ນໄປທາງພາກເໜືອໂດຍທຳລາຍທຸກຢ່າງຕາມເສັ້ນທາງ. ການປິດລ້ອມຈາກກອງທັບເຮືອຂອງ Union ທາງທະເລກໍເປັນບັນຫາອັນໜັກໜ່ວງສຳຫຼັບພາກໃຕ້ເຊັ່ນກັນ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນນາຍພົນ Grant ໄດ້ເຄື່ອນກຳລັງອອກຈາກພາກເໜືອລົງທາງດ້ານໃຕ້ໄປສູ່ Richmond. ດ້ວຍເຫດນັ້ນກຳລັງທະຫານຂອງ Confederacy ຈຶ່ງຕົກຢູ່ໃນວົງລ້ອມຂອງນາຍພົນທັງສອງທີ່ກ່າວມາ.

໑໔.໓.໓. ວັນແຫ່ງຄວາມພ່າຍແພ້ໄດ້ມາເຖິງ Confederacy ໃນເດືອນເມສາ ໑໘໖໕. ເມືອງ Petersburg ຊຶ່ງຢູ່ຫ່າງປະມານຊາວໄມສ໌ ແລະເປັນດ່ານປ້ອງກັນເມືອງ Richmond ໄດ້ຍອມພ່າຍແພ້ຫຼັງຈາກຖືກປິດລ້ອມດ້ວຍກຳລັງຂອງນາຍພົນ Grant ເປັນເວລາເກົ້າເດືອນເຕັມ. ກຳລັງຂອງນາຍພົນ Lee ໄດ້ເຄື່ອນໜີອອກຈາກ Richmond ໂດຍແມ່ນກຳລັງບາງສ່ວນຂອງນາຍພົນ Grant ເຂົ້າມາແທນທີ່. ຫຼັງຈາກຖືກໄລ່ຕິດຕາມຢ່າງຕິດແທບຈາກນາຍພົນ Grant ແລະນາຍພົນ Sheridan ແລະເມື່ອບໍ່ມີຊ່ອງທາງຫຼົບໜີໄດ້ ໃນທີ່ສຸດນາຍພົນ Lee ກໍໄດ້ຍອມມອບຕົວໃນວັນທີ ໙ ເມສາ ໑໘໖໕ ຢູ່ທົ່ງນາແຫ່ງນຶ່ງໃນບ້ານ Appomatox Court House.

໑໔.໔. ການດັດແປງຣັຖທັມມະນູນຄັ້ງທີສິບສາມ

໑໔.໔.໑. ເມື່ອສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງສິ້ນສຸດລົງ Union ພ້ອມດ້ວຍປະທານາທິບໍດີ Lincoln ມີພາລະທີ່ຈະຕ້ອງສຳລະສະສາງຢູ່ຫຼາຍຢ່າງ. ພາລະປະການນຶ່ງກໍຄືການປົດປ່ອຍຂ້າທາດໃຫ້ເປັນອິສຣະ.

໑໔.໔.໒. ໃນເວລາທີ່ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Lincoln ເຊັນປະກາດປົດປ່ອຍຂ້າທາດໃຫ້ເປັນອິສຣະອອກມານັ້ນ ທ່ານຕ້ອງການປົດປ່ອຍຂ້າທາດທີ່ຢູ່ໃນຣັຖທີ່ເປັນກະບົດເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ແຕ່ໃນເວລາທີ່ສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງໄດ້ຢຸດຕິລົງຄືໃນປີ ໑໘໖໕ ສະພາຕ້ອງການແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາຂ້າທາດໃຫ້ເສັດສິ້ນເດັດຂາດໂດຍເຫັນດີຮັບຮອງເອົາການດັດແປງຣັຖທັມມະນູນເພື່ອປົດປ່ອຍໃຫ້ພວກຂ້າທາດທົ່ວໄປໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາແລະໃນອານາເຂດຕ່າງໆນັ້ນເປັນອິສຣະຫມົດທຸກຄົນ. ການດັດແປງຣັຖທັມມະນູນດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຖືກຮັບຮອງເອົາເປັນທາງການດ້ວຍຄະແນນສຽງສາມສ່ວນສີ່ຂອງຈຳນວນຣັຖທັງຫມົດໃນກຳໜົດເວລາແປດເດືອນຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໄດ້ຢຸດຕິລົງ.

໑໔.໕. ການບູຣະນະສ້າງສາໃຫມ່ໃນພາກໃຕ້ແລະຖານະຂອງຊາວຜິວດຳ

໑໔.໕.໑. ສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ພາກເໜືອແລະພາກໃຕ້ມີການປ່ຽນແປງທາງດ້ານເສຖກິດຫຼາຍປະການ. ພາກໃຕ້ນັ້ນໄດ້ຮັບຄວາມເສັຽຫາຍອັນໃຫຍ່ຫຼວງ ທັງໄຮ່ທົ່ງນາ ບ້ານເມືອງ ອຸດສາຫະກັມ ແລະຖນົນຫົນທາງຕ່າງໆ ຖືກເພພັງຢ່າງໜັກ. ຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວເຣື່ອງຂອງການບູຣະນະສ້າງສາພາກໃຕ້ຄືນໃຫມ່ເຄີຍໄດ້ຖືກຍົກຂຶ້ນມາພິຈາຣະນາຕັ້ງແຕ່ໃນສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງນັ້ນຍັງດຳເນີນຢູ່. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Lincoln ໄດ້ສເນີແຜນຮັບເອົາຣັຖພາກໃຕ້ເຂົ້າໃນ Union ຕາມຫຼັກການດັ່ງນີ້ ຖ້າຫາກຣັຖດັ່ງກ່າວມີຈຳນວນຜູ້ມີສິດປ່ອນບັດເລືອກຕັ້ງປະຕິຍານຕໍ່

ຈົງຮັກພັກດີຕໍ່ Union ເຖິງ ໑໐% ຣັຖນັ້ນກໍຈະຖືກຮັບເອົາທັນທີ. ແຕ່ວ່າຄະນະທີ່ມີຄວາມເຫັນຣຸນແຮງຂອງພັກ Republican ນັ້ນຕ້ອງການລົງໂທດພ້ອມກັບຕ້ອງການປັບປຸງພາກໃຕ້ໃໝ່ໃນຖານະເປັນເຂດແດນທີ່ຖືກຍຶດຄອງ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຮັບຮອງເອົາຮ່າງສເນີສະພາຊຶ່ງເອີ້ນວ່າ Wade-Davis Bill ໃນປີ ໑໘໖໔. ຮ່າງສເນີດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ມີຈຳນວນປະຊາຊົນຜູ້ມີສິດປ່ອນບັດເລືອກຕັ້ງປະຕິຍານຕໍ່ຄວາມຈົງຮັກພັກດີຕໍ່ Union ເປັນສ່ວນຫຼາຍຈຶ່ງຈະຮັບເອົາຣັຖທີ່ສມັກເຂົ້າໃນ Union ນັ້ນໄດ້. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Lincoln ໄດ້ຄັດຄ້ານຕໍ່ຮ່າງສເນີດັ່ງກ່າວ.

໑໔.໔.໒. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Lincoln ຖືກຄາດຕະກຳໃນເດືອນເມສາ ໑໘໖໕. ໃນຕອນທຳອິດທ່ານ Andrew Johnson ປະທານາທິບໍດີຄົນໃໝ່ສນັບສນູນຄວາມນຶກຄິດຂອງຄະນະທີ່ມີຄວາມເຫັນຣຸນແຮງແຕ່ບໍ່ນານຕໍ່ມາທ່ານຈຶ່ງເຫັນດີກັບຄວາມຄິດຂອງທ່ານ Lincoln ດ້ວຍເຫດນັ້ນໃນທ້າຍປີ ໑໘໖໕ ທ່ານຈຶ່ງໄດ້ປະກາດໃຫ້ຣັຖພາກໃຕ້ທັງຫຼາຍມີສິດເຂົ້າສັງກັດໃນ Union ໝົດທຸກຣັຖອັນເປັນເຫດໃຫ້ຄະນະທີ່ມີຄວາມເຫັນຣຸນແຮງໂຈມຕີປະທານາທິບໍດີ Johnson ຢ່າງທັນທີ. ຕໍ່ມາໃນປີ ໑໘໖໖ ພວກທີ່ມີຄວາມເຫັນຣຸນແຮງຂອງພັກ Republican ໄດ້ອຳນາດສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ໃນສະພາດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ອອກດຳລັດກ່ຽວກັບການບູຣະນະສ້າງສາຫຼາຍດຳລັດດ້ວຍກັນ. ໃນດຳລັດດັ່ງກ່າວມີເງື່ອນໄຂຢູ່ສອງປະການກ່ຽວກັບການເຂົ້າເປັນສມາຊິກຂອງ Union ຄືວ່າ :

ກ. ຣັຖພາກໃຕ້ແຕ່ລະຣັຖຕ້ອງການດຳເນີນການທັມມະນູນຂອງພັກ Republican ທຸກຢ່າງ. ການເລືອກຕັ້ງຜູ້ແທນເຂົ້າຮ່ວມໃນພວກດັ່ງກ່າວຈະຕ້ອງແມ່ນຜູ້ມີສິດປ່ອນບັດເລືອກຕັ້ງທັງຊາວຜິວດຳແລະຊາວຜິວຂາວເປັນຜູ້ລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກເອົາ.

ຂ. ຣັຖພາກໃຕ້ແຕ່ລະຣັຖເຫັນດີກັບການດັດແປງຣັຖທັມມະນູນຄັ້ງທີສິບສີ່ຊຶ່ງມີຈຸດປະສົງມອບສັນຊາດໃຫ້ແກ່ຊາວຜິວດຳທັງຫຼາຍພ້ອມກັບແຈ້ງໃຫ້ຮູ້ວ່າບຸກຄົນບາງຈຳພວກທີ່ມາຈາກຣັຖຂອງ Confederacy ນັ້ນບໍ່ມີສິດລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງແລະຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງປະຈຳຣັຖບານກາງຫຼືປະຈຳຣັຖບານຂອງຣັຖຕ່າງໆ.

໑໔.໔.໓. ການບູຣະນະສ້າງສາພາກໃຕ້ຕາມດຳລັດດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ໄດ້ເລີ່ມຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໘໖໗. ເນື້ອທີ່ທັງໝົດຂອງ Confederacy ຖືກແບ່ງອອກເປັນເຂດທະຫານຫ້າເຂດດ້ວຍກັນ. ກອງທະຫານຂອງຣັຖບານກາງໄດ້ລົງໄປປະຈຳຢູ່ທາງພາກໃຕ້ເພື່ອປົກປັກຮັກສາຊາວຜິວດຳແລະເພື່ອປະຕິບັດກົດໝາຍຂອງຣັຖບານກາງຈົນເຖິງປີ ໑໘໗໗.

໑໔.໔.໔. ຖານະຂອງພວກຊາວຜິວດຳ. ການດັດແປງແກ້ໄຂຣັຖທັມມະນູນຄັ້ງທີສິບສາມແລະສິບສີ່ ພ້ອມດ້ວຍການອອກດຳລັດກ່ຽວກັບການບູຣະນະສ້າງສານັ້ນເຮັດໃຫ້ຊາວຜິວດຳຢູ່ໃນພາກໃຕ້ມີອຳນາດທາງການເມືອງ.

ຊາວຫົວດຳເຕັມສິດລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງນັ້ນມີຄວາມສຳຄັນຕໍ່ໂຄງການບູຣະນະສ້າງສາເປັນຢ່າງຍິ່ງ. ເນື່ອງຈາກວ່າພວກຊາວຫົວຂາວສ່ວນຫຼາຍບໍ່ມີສິດລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງໄດ້ ສະນັ້ນຈຳນວນຜູ້ມີສິດລົງຄະແນນສຽງສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ຈຶ່ງແມ່ນຊາວຫົວດຳ. ນີ້ເປັນຄັ້ງທຳອິດທີ່ປະຊາຊົນຜິວດຳໄດ້ລົງຄະແນນສຽງແລະຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງການເມືອງ. ພວກທີ່ເຄີຍເປັນຂ້າທາດມາກ່ອນເປັນຈຳນວນຮ້ອຍໆໄດ້ຖືກເລືອກເປັນສະມາຊິກສະພາຕ່ຳແລະສະພາສູງຂອງຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. **ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ** :

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວ ໃຫ້ຂຽນສັບທີ່ຫາໄດ້ນັ້ນໄວ້ ພ້ອມທັງບອກຄວາມໝາຍຂອງສັບນັ້ນລົງໄປ.

P T U R N I N G P O I N T H O N O R
R E A F F I R M B L O C K A D E B C
O R E C O N S T R U C T I O N H I O
C O N C L U S I O N R A T I F Y C N
L P U R S U I T W O C N S L A V E C
A D D R E S S L A A O A T H P R U L
M B A T T L E O R I N C S A P I N U
A F O R C E S Y T E T O H M O C I S
T I N V A D E A E L R N E E M H O I
I G O A L O P L Y I O F R N A M N O
O D A R E I Y T M G L E M D T O A N
N E A H C A B Y R I T D A M O N R L
M W C N E L T T A B N E N E X D M G
K I A P A R T C B L A R O N A B I N
B M A R Y L A N D E R A O T Y O E U
E G E T T Y S B U R G T B B E A S H
S H E R I D A N V A N E L A N N H I

17

WAR
LEE
OATH
GOAL
DARE
SLAVE
ARMY
FORCES
PART
BATTLE
HONOR
INVADE
RATIFY
GRANT
ADDRESS
REAFFIRM
ELIGIBLE
CONTROL
SHERIDAN
PURSUIT
RICHMOND
CONCLUSION
AMENDMENT
LOYALTY
BLOCKADE
MARYLAND
CONFEDERATE
SHERMAN
EMANCIPATION
RECONSTRUCTION
PROCLAMATION
GETTYSBURG
TURNING POINT
APPOMATOX
UNION ARMIES

໖. ການລຽງຕົວອັກສອນໃຫ້ເປັນສັບທີ່ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍ (Scrambled Words)

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງດັດແປງປະໂຫຍກຕ່າງໆຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຢ່າງສົມບູນໂດຍລຽງຕົວອັກສອນທີ່ປະປົນກັນໃນສັບນັ້ນໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ.

1. offernjes sivda was president of the Confederacy.
2. collnin was president of the United States during the Civil War and issued the Emancipation Proclamation freeing the slaves.
3. oretrb ele was the commander of Confederate forces.
4. beturytgg was the place where President Lincoln gave a speech calling for the preservation of the Union.
5. anhesmer was a Union general who led the long march to the sea through the South.
6. onemitanciap was issued by President Lincoln and it freed all the slaves in the Confederate States.
7. xppmaatoo uestchorou was the place in Virginia where General Lee surrendered to General Grant, ending the Civil War.

໗. ເລືອກຄຳຕອບ

ຈົ່ງເລືອກເອົາຕົວອັກສອນທີ່ຢູ່ນຳໜ້າສັບຫຼືຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ມີຄວາມເໝາະສົມທີ່ສຸດສຳລັບປະໂຫຍກແຕ່ລະປະໂຫຍກຫຼືເປັນຄຳຕອບທີ່ຖືກຕ້ອງທີ່ສຸດສຳລັບຄຳຖາມແຕ່ລະຄຳຖາມ.

໑. ສາເຫດອັນສຳຄັນຂອງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງນັ້ນແມ່ນ :

(ກ) ການໂຈມຕີປ້ອມ Fort Sumter
(ຂ) ການຕາດຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Lincoln
(ຄ) ການດັດແປງລັດຖະທຳມະນູນຄັ້ງທີສິບສາມ
(ງ) ການສູ້ລົບທີ່ Gettysburg.

໔. ເປົ້າໝາຍອັນສຳຄັນໃນການໃຊ້ເຮືອລົບປິດລ້ອມໃນຣະຫວ່າງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງກໍເພື່ອ ປ້ອງກັນ :

(ກ) ພວກອາສາສມັກຈາກອັງກິດບໍ່ໃຫ້ລົງໄປສູ່ພາກໃຕ້

(ຂ) ການສົ່ງຝ້າຍໄປຂາຍທີ່ຢູໂຣບ

(ຄ) ກຳປັ່ນຣັດເຊັຍບໍ່ໃຫ້ຢ້ຽມພາກໃຕ້

໕. ຄຳປະກາດປົດປ່ອຍຂ້າທາດໃຫ້ເປັນອິສຣະແມ່ນ :

(ກ) ກົດໝາຍທີ່ຜ່ານໂດຍສະພາ

(ຂ) ຂໍ້ດັດແປງແກ້ໄຂຣັຖທັມມະນູນ

(ຄ) ຄຳສັ່ງຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ

(ງ) ຄວາມເຫັນຮ່ວມຂອງສະພາ

໖. ຈຸດປະສົງໃນການຍົກກຳລັງເດີນໄປສູ່ທະເລຂອງນາຍພົນ Sherman ນັ້ນກໍເພື່ອ :

(ກ) ຈັບນາຍພົນ Lee

(ຂ) ໄປຊ່ວຍນາຍພົນ Grant

(ຄ) ແຍກຣັຖພາກໃຕ້ຫຼື Confederacy

(ງ) ຍຶດເອົາດິນປູກຝ້າຍທີ່ມີຄຸນຄ່າສຳຄັນພາກເໜືອ

໗. ຜົນສະທ້ອນອັນສຳຄັນຂອງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງກໍຄືວ່າ :

(ກ) ສົງຄາມດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ບັນຫາກ່ຽວກັບສິດທິຂອງຣັຖຕ່າງໆຢຸດຕິລົງ

(ຂ) ສົງຄາມດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ຄວາມສຳພັນຣະຫວ່າງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ແລະປະເທດອັງກິດແໜ້ນແຟ້ນຂຶ້ນ

(ຄ) ສົງຄາມດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ອຸດສາຫະກັມເປັນພື້ນຖານເສຖກິດຂອງຊາດ ແທນທີ່ຈະແມ່ນກະສິກັມ

(ງ) ສົງຄາມດັ່ງກ່າວເຮັດໃຫ້ຊາວຜິວດຳໃນພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ຮັບຄວາມສເມີພາບ.

ໝວດ ໔ : ການຂັດແຍ້ງແລະການຕ້ອນໂຮມ
ພາກ ໑໘ : ການເລືອກຕັ້ງໃນປີ ໑໘໖໘

ສັບໃໝ່ :

remove: ປົດອາຣາຊຸການ

Congress tried to remove Johnson from the Presidency.

unconstitutional: ບໍ່ຖືກຕ້ອງຕາມຣັຖທັມມະນູນ

Johnson thought the Tenure of Office Act was unconstitutional.

approval: ການເຫັນດີ

Johnson did not get the approval of Congress when he removed Stanton from office.

charge: ຂໍ້ກ່າວຫາ ຫຼື ກະໂທງ

The House of Representatives tried to impeach Johnson with 11 charges.

Scalawag: ຄົນພື້ນຖານໃນພາກໃຕ້ທີ່ສນັບສນູນແລະຮ່ວມມືກັບຣັຖບານພັກໂລງການປັ້ນປູການສ້າງສາເພື່ອຫາປະໂຍດສ່ວນຕົວ.

Many Scalawags were considered to be traitors by the Southerners.

Carpetbagger: ຄົນພາກເໜືອທີ່ລົງໄປຢູ່ພາກໃຕ້ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງເພື່ອສແວງຫາຜົນປະໂຍດທາງການເມືອງແລະຊູ່ລອຍ.

Southerners also thought the Carpetbaggers were intruders and the blacks were collaborators.

corruption: ການສໍ້ລາດບັງຫຼວງ

There was a lot of corruption during the Reconstruction years.

READING

16.1. RECONSTRUCTION AND THE ELECTION OF 1876

16.1.1. The Civil War ended in 1865. The years between 1865 and 1876 are known as the Reconstruction years. During this time American Presidents and the United States Congress attempted to rebuild and reunite the country which had been damaged and divided by the Civil War. However, there were many problems which occurred during the Reconstruction years.

16.1.2. The first problem was the conflict between the Presidents and the United States Congress. After Abraham Lincoln was assassinated, Vice President Johnson became the President of the United States. He became President at a time when the Congress was determined to limit the power of the President. In an effort to limit the President's power, Congress passed the Tenure of Office Act. This law said that the President could not remove a federal official without the approval of the Congress. Johnson thought that the law was unconstitutional and ignored it when he dismissed Edwin M. Stanton, the Secretary of War, without the consent of Congress. The Congress tried to "**impeach**" Johnson. They tried to stop him from being President. The effort failed, but Republicans no longer trusted Johnson. They did not want him to be the President again in 1868. The Republicans chose Ulysses S. Grant, the former Civil War General, to run for President in 1868. He won the election and was President for two terms. But Grant, like Johnson, was not able to control Congress.

16.1.3. Because neither Johnson nor Grant could control Congress' Reconstruction Plan, a second problem occurred. Many different groups of people appeared in the South. Instead of helping the South become part of the nation again, these groups continued to anger the Southerners. Congress sent many soldiers to the South to try to restore order and to protect the newly-won rights of the blacks. The Southerners did not like having the soldiers on their land. Also,many Northerners came to the South to get rich. The Southerners called these intruders "**Carpetbaggers**". The newly-freed blacks now had a new life. Many of them took jobs that were once held by whites in the federal and state governments. This angered whites so much that many of them organized secret hate societies against the blacks. Two of the groups, the Ku Klux Klan and the Knights of the White Magnolia, killed or terrorized many blacks. They also terrorized white Southerners known as "Scalawags." Scalawags were ex-Confederates who cooperated with the Reconstruction government. All the different groups -- the soldiers, the Carpetbaggers, the ex-slaves, the Scalawags, the Ku Klux Klan, and the Knights of the White Magnolia -- helped keep Southern anger against the North alive. They did not help to reunite the two sections.

16.1.4. The third problem which occurred during Reconstruction years related to money. There were two types of money problems: corruption and depression. Boss Tweed in New York City and the "Whiskey Ring" in St. Louis were just two examples of corruption that could be found throughout the nation. The economy was not stable. Railroads were developing so fast that the country's credit was weakened. World demand for American farm products had grown smaller. In 1873 one of the country's biggest banks -- Jay Cook and Company-- failed. Hundreds of businesses had to close; many people lost their jobs. The panic of 1873 started a terrible depression which President Grant could not lessen or change.

16.2. THE ELECTION OF 1876: A COMPROMISE BETWEEN REPUBLICANS AND DEMOCRATS

16.2.1. The problems of the Reconstruction years -- the conflict between the President and Congress, the appearance of different groups in the South which further divided the nation and the problems of corruption and depression -- were all issues in the election of 1876 between the Republican, Rutherford Hayes, and the Democrat, Samuel Tilden. Although Tilden won the popular vote, neither candidate received the clear majority of electoral votes (185) needed to win the Presidency. Tilden had received 184 electoral votes and Hayes had received 165. A dispute centered around four Southern states which had sent in two different sets of 20 votes. Whoever won these 20 votes would have the required 185 and would become the winner. Both Republicans and Democrats said they had won these votes. The House of Representatives created a special Commission of 15 members to decide these votes. The Commission voted 8-7 that Hayes had won the votes. Rutherford Hayes became the new President. However, to avoid making the Southerners angry, the Commission forced Hayes to accept two conditions that would please the South:

1. Federal troops must be withdrawn from the South and
2. White Southerners were allowed to organize their own civil governments.

16.2.2. President Hayes began his job by removing the federal troops from Louisiana and South Carolina. After federal troops left, white southerners quickly got back their former positions. Soon the whites controlled all political and social activities in the South. By compromising with the Southern Democrats, Northern Republicans had given up their efforts to protect the rights of the blacks. After 10 years, the Reconstruction Plan had failed to changed the social relationship between the whites and the blacks.

EXERCISES

I. Word Search Puzzle.

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word search puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word, write it and then define it.

O R S T V Y S U P R E M E T O N S C
A S O N T P R E M O V E P S T O R O
B T U L R S T R A I T O R M N O Q R
C S I N O Q C R I N T E R N A L M R
D U N C O N S T I T U T I O N A L U
G P O H A T B E T R A Y N O J P P P
E E T A S R O E R U I N O O K P Q T
F M U R T O P P S D O O R M T R R I
G E U G C T N S O E O I O B O O K O
I M P E A C H E D R T I L I K U S N
H E R S R O P S O Y P R Q U T E T S
O C S R N O C O L L A B O R A T O R
S Y W I T H D R A W I N G N O T Q R

GUILTY
REMOVE
TRAITOR
CORRUPTION
WITHDRAWING
COLLABORATOR
IMPEACH
SUPREME
UNCONSTITUTIONAL
MAJORITY
BOOK
BETRAY
INTRUDER
CHARGES
INTERNAL

II. Matching

Match the term in the left column with a description in the right column.

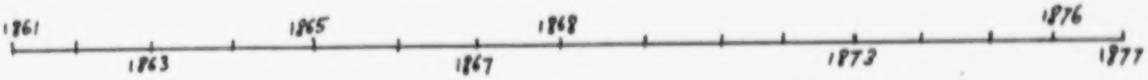
	A	B
____	a. remove	1. the act of approving.
____	b. impeach	2. the offering and accepting bribes.
____	c. scalawag	3. to move from a position occupied.
____	d. corruption	4. to charge with malfeasance in office before a proper tribunal.
____	e. approval	5. to bring back into existence or use.
____	f. intruder	6. to coerce by intimidation or fear.
____	g. majority	7. a sudden terror, often affecting many people at once.
____	h. panic	8. one who enters as an improper or unwanted element.
____	i. terrorize	9. number of votes for one side which exceed those for the other side.
____	h. restore	10. a southerner who worked with the Reconstruction government.

III. Time-line study

Put each event at the appropriate time on the time-line below

1. The Civil War started.
2. Ulyssess Grant was nominated as the Republican Presidential candidate.
3. The Emancipation Proclamation was declared by President Lincoln.
4. The end of the Civil War.
5. The last federal troops withdrew from the South.
6. The presidential election between Samuel Tilden and Rutherford Hayes.
7. The first economic depression occurred in the U.S.A.

8. The Congress adopted the Tenure of Office Act.



IV. Multiple Choice.

Select the number preceding the word or expression that best completes each statement.

1. Hayes' opponent in the Presidential election of 1876 was (a)General Sherman (b)Samuel Tilden (c)William Richardson.

2. During President Grant's administration a notorious and corrupt local political machine was (a) the Knights of the White Camelia (b) Tweed Ring (c) Ku Klux Klan.

3. In order to carry out their programs, the Radical Republicans tried to (a) reduce the power of the President (b) enlarge the size of the army (c) keep blacks from voting.

4. Carpetbaggers were generally (a) welcomed in the South (b) regarded by Southerners as intruders (c) opposed to the Reconstruction Plan of the Government.

5. President Johnson and Congress argued about (a) freeing the slaves (b) who had the power to plan and to carry out Reconstruction policies (c) the presidential election in 1868.

ບົດອ່ານ

໑໕.໑. ປັນຫາຍຸ້ງຍາກໃນຣະຫວ່າງສໄໝຟື້ນຟູການສ້າງສາ

໑໕.໑.໑. ປັນຫາໃນການຟື້ນຟູການສ້າງສາປະເທດເປັນເຫດໃຫ້ມີການຂັດແຍ່ງຣະຫວ່າງສະພາແລະປະທານາທິບໍດີເກີດຂຶ້ນ. ສະພານັ້ນຕ້ອງການຄວບຄຸມໂຄງການການສ້າງສາທັງໝົດ ແລະໃນຂະນະດຽວກັນສະພາຍັງຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ປະທານາທິບໍດີມີອຳນາດຢູ່ໃນຂອບເຂດຈຳກັດເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນພວກທີ່ມີຄວາມຄິດເຫັນອັນຮຸນແຮງຊຶ່ງໃນເວລານັ້ນມີອິດທິພົນທີ່ສຸດໃນສະພາຈຶ່ງໄດ້ອອກຄຳສັ່ງເອີ້ນວ່າ Tenure of Office Act ຄຳສັ່ງສະບັບດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ໄດ້ບົ່ງໄວ້ວ່າ ປະທານາທິບໍດີບໍ່ມີສິດປົດປ່ອຍຂ້າຣາຊການຜູ້ໃດຜູ້ນຶ່ງອອກຈາກຣັຖບານຖ້າຫາກບໍ່ໄດ້ຮັບການຮັບຮູ້ແລະເຫັນດີຈາກສະພາ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Johnson ເຫັນວ່າຄຳສັ່ງ Tenure of Office Act ບໍ່ຖືກຕ້ອງຕາມຣັຖທັມມະນູນດັ່ງນັ້ນທ່ານຈຶ່ງຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ສານສູງສຸດເປັນຜູ້ພິຈາຣະນາຕີຄວາມໝາຍຂອງຄຳສັ່ງດັ່ງກ່າວໃຫ້ແກ່ທ່ານ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໒໖ ເຖິງວ່າສານສູງສຸດສນັບສນູນຄວາມຄິດຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີກໍຕາມ ແຕ່ທາງສານເອງບໍ່ສາມາດທີ່ຈະກະທຳສິ່ງໃດຊ່ອຍໄດ້. ການຂັດແຍ່ງໄດ້ລະເບີດຂຶ້ນເມື່ອປະທານາທິບໍດີ Johnson ປົດຣັຖມົນຕີປ້ອງກັນປະເທດຄືທ່ານ Edwin M. Stanton ອອກຈາກໜ້າທີ່ໂດຍບໍ່ໄດ້ຮັບຄວາມເຫັນຈາກສະພາສູງ. ສະພາຜູ້ແທນຣາສດອນກ່າວວ່າປະທານາທິບໍດີມີຄວາມຜິດຢູ່ສິບເອັດກະໂທງ. ໃນທີ່ສຸດສະພາສູງເຫັນວ່າປະທານາທິບໍດີ Johnson ນັ້ນບໍ່ມີຄວາມຜິດແຕ່ປະການໃດ. ນັບຈາກນັ້ນເປັນຕົ້ນມາພວກ Republican ຂາດຄວາມເຊື່ອຖືແລະບໍ່ຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ທ່ານ Johnson ສມັກເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີອີກຕໍ່ໄປ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ນາຍພົນ Ulysses S. Grant ວິຣະບຸລຸດຂອງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຖືກແຕ່ງຕັ້ງຈາກພັກ Republican ໃຫ້ເປັນຜູ້ສມັກໃນການເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີໃນປີ ໑໘໖໘.

໑໕.໑.໒. ນາຍພົນ Grant ຖືກເລືອກເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີໂດຍໄດ້ຮັບຄະແນນສຽງສ່ວນຫຼາຍຈາກຊາວຜິວຂາວໃນພາກເໜືອແລະໄດ້ຮັບຄະແນນສຽງເຕັມຮ້ອຍເປີເຊັນຈາກພວກຜິວດຳໃນພາກໃຕ້. ນາຍພົນ Grant ປະຈຳຢູ່ທຳນຽບຂາວສອງສໄໝແລະໃນຣະຫວ່າງຄອງຕຳແໜ່ງຢູ່ນັ້ນເປັນເວລາແປດປີ ທ່ານບໍ່ສາມາດທີ່ຈະຄວບຄຸມໂຄງການຟື້ນຟູການສ້າງສາໄດ້. ຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວໂຄງການຟື້ນຟູການສ້າງສານັ້ນໄດ້ຢູ່ໃນກຳມືຂອງພວກທີ່ມີຄວາມເຫັນອັນຮຸນແຮງໃນສະພາຕ່າງຫາກ ແລະພວກດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຍຶດເອົາຣັຖຕ່າງໆທີ່ເຄີຍສັງກັດຢູ່ໃນ Confederacy ໃນສໄໝກ່ອນນັ້ນໃຫ້ຢູ່ກ້ອງອຳນາດຂອງທະຫານ. ປະຊາຊົນທາງພາກໃຕ້ບໍ່ມັກຣັຖບານທີ່ມີໂຄງການຟື້ນຟູການສ້າງສາກໍເພາະວ່າມີກຳມະກອນຈຳພວກໃໝ່ສອງຈຳພວກທີ່ເຂົ້າເຈົ້າຕ້ອງໄດ້ຮັບຮູ້ : ພວກ Scalawags ແລະພວກ Carpetbaggers. ພວກ Scalawags ແມ່ນພວກ

ຈາວພາກໃຕ້ທີ່ໄດ້ການຮ່ວມມືກັບຣັຖບານທີ່ຈີ້ນະໂຍບາຍຟື້ນຟູການສ້າງສາ. ສ່ວນພວກ Carpetbaggers ນັ້ນແມ່ນພວກຈາວພາກເໜືອທີ່ຫຼັ່ງໄຫຼລົງໄປທາງພາກໃຕ້ເພື່ອສ້າງຄວາມລ້ຳລວຍ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນກໍຍັງມີພວກຜິວດຳທີ່ໄດ້ຮັບອິສຣະພາບແລະໄດ້ຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງໃນວົງຣັຖບານຣະດັບຣັຖແລະໃນຣັຖບານສ່ວນກາງພ້ອມກັບມີສະມາຊິກສະພາທີ່ເປັນຄົນດຳທີ່ມາຈາກພາກໃຕ້ອີກດ້ວຍ ຊຶ່ງທັງໝົດນີ້ໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ພວກຈາວຜິວຂາວໃນພາກໃຕ້ເກີດບໍ່ພໍໃຈເປັນທີ່ສຸດ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຈັດຕັ້ງສະມາຄົມລັບຫຼາຍສະມາຄົມເພື່ອຕໍ່ຕ້ານກັມມະກອນຈຳພວກໃໝ່ນັ້ນແລະຕໍ່ຕ້ານພວກຄົນດຳ. ກຸ່ມຕໍ່ຕ້ານທີ່ມີຊື່ສຽງສອງກຸ່ມກໍຄືພວກ the Ku Klux Kla ພວກ the Knights of the White Camelia ພວກກຸ່ມເຫຼົ່ານີ້ຖືພວກ Scalawags ເປັນພວກທໍຣະຍົດຕໍ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າ ຖືພວກ Carpetbaggers ເປັນພວກບຸກລຸກແລະຖືພວກດຳເປັນພວກທີ່ເຮົ້າຮ້າວຣັຖບານໃໝ່. ພວກທີ່ຖືກຖືເປັນພວກ "ທໍຣະຍົດ" ພວກ "ບຸກລຸກ" ແລະພວກ "ເຮົ້າຮ້າວ" ຫຼາຍຄົນໄດ້ຖືກຂ້າຈາກພວກ the Ku Klux Klan ແລະພວກ the Knights of the White Camelia.

໑໖.໑.໓. ໃນສໄໝຟື້ນຟູການສ້າງສານັ້ນ ຣັຖບານກາງໄດ້ສິ້ນເປືອງເງິນງົບປະມານອັນຫຼວງຫຼາຍທີ່ສຸດຈຶ່ງເຮັດໃຫ້ມີການສໍ້ຣາດບັງຫຼວງເກີດຂຶ້ນ. ທີ່ຈິງແລ້ວການສໍ້ຣາດບັງຫຼວງນັ້ນໄດ້ເກີດມີຂຶ້ນໃນຕອນທີ່ສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງໄດ້ສິ້ນສຸດລົງພໍດີ (ໃນພາກເໜືອສະມາຊິກຂອງພັກ Democratic Party ຄືທ່ານ William Tweed ໄດ້ກອດເອົາເງິນກ່ວາພັນລ້ານໃນຄັງເງິນຂອງເມືອງ New York City). ຢູ່ເມືອງ St. Louis ຣັຖບານໄດ້ເສັຽເງິນເປັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍລ້ານໂດລາຈາກເກັບພາສີຂອງ "Whisky Ring". ປະເທດຊາດໄດ້ຮັບຄວາມລຳບາກຍ້ອນການສໍ້ຣາດບັງຫຼວງດັ່ງກ່າວ. ເນື່ອງຈາກການສ້າງທາງຣົດໄຟໄດ້ຂຍາຍຕົວໄວເກີນຄວນດັ່ງນັ້ນເງິນຕຣາແລະຊື່ສຽງຂອງປະເທດຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຮັບການກະທົບກະເທືອນ. ໃນເວລານັ້ນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ສູນເສັຽຕລາດສຳຫຼັບຂາຍພືດປູກຫຼາຍແຫ່ງໃນໂລກ. ໃນເດືອນກັນຍາ ປີ ໑໘໗໓ ທະນາຄານນຶ່ງທີ່ໃຫຍ່ທີ່ສຸດໃນປະເທດຄືທະນາຄານ Jay Cook and Company ໄດ້ລົ້ມຈົມໄປ. ບໍຣິສັດການຄ້າຫຼາຍຮ້ອຍບໍຣິສັດຈຳເປັນຕ້ອງຍຸດຕິກິຈການແລະປະຊາຊົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຂາດວຽກເຮັດງານທຳ. ຄວາມຫຍຸ້ງຍາກສັບສົນໃນປີ ໑໘໗໓ ໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ເກີດມີການປັ່ນປ່ວນດ້ານເສຖກິດອັນຮ້າຍກາດຊຶ່ງບໍ່ເຄີຍມີມາກ່ອນໃນປະເທດ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Grant ບໍ່ສາມາດທີ່ຈະແກ້ໄຂສະພາບການດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້.

໑໖.໑.໔. ຫຼັງຈາກປະເທດຊາດໄດ້ຫອບໂຮມກັບຄືນບໍ່ເທົ່າໃດປີ ພວກຈາວເໜືອກໍໄດ້ປະຖິ້ມໂຄງການຟື້ນຟູການສ້າງສານັ້ນໄປ. ຈາວພາກເໜືອບາງຈຳພວກເຫັນວ່າໂຄງການດັ່ງກ່າວເປັນການຜິດພາດອັນໃຫຍ່ຫຼວງທັງນີ້ກໍເພາະວ່າໂຄງການທີ່ປະຕິບັດມານັ້ນເປັນການສ້າງສັງຄົມໃໝ່ຂຶ້ນໃນພາກໃຕ້ ຊຶ່ງເຮັດໃຫ້ພວກທີ່ເຄີຍຢູ່ໃນ

ຣັຖທີ່ສັງກັດໃນ Confederacy ໄດ້ອຳນາດຄືນແລະດຳເນີນວິທີການໃໝ່ສຳຫຼັບປະໂຍດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອັງໃນພາກໃຕ້. ວິທີການໃໝ່ (ຫຼື home rule) ໝາຍເຖິງພວກ Democrats ກຳເອົາອຳນາດຈາກພວກ Republicans ໄປແລະໝາຍເຖິງການໃຊ້ອຳນາດຍິ່ງໃຫຍ່ຂອງຄົນຜິວຂາວຄືນ. ນັບປີກ່ອນທີ່ຣະຍະຂອງການຟື້ນຟູການສ້າງສາຈົບລົງຄວາມວຸ້ນວາຍທາງການເມືອງໄດ້ສັ່ນສະເທືອນທົ່ວປະເທດ. ຄວາມວຸ້ນວາຍດັ່ງກ່າວເກີດຈາກການແຂ່ງຂັນສມັກເລືອກຕັ້ງເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີຣະຫວ່າງຕົວແທນຂອງພັກ Republican ຄືທ່ານ Governor Rutherford Hayes ແລະທ່ານ Samuel Tilden ຊຶ່ງເປັນຕົວແທນຂອງພັກ Democratic Party ໃນປີ ໑໘໗໖ ນັ້ນເອັງ.

໑໖.໒. ຂໍ້ຕົກລົງຣະຫວ່າງພວກ Democrats ແລະ Republicans.

໑໖.໒.໑. ເມື່ອເຫັນວ່າຄວາມຕ້ອງການຂອງປະຊາຊົນທົ່ວໄປຢາກໃຫ້ມີການປັບປຸງສະພາບການຕະລົ້ນເລື້ອຍສະນັ້ນພວກ Democrats ຈຶ່ງພະຍາຍາມຫາທາງເອົາໄຊຊະນະໃນການເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີ ໂດຍສົ່ງທ່ານ Samuel Tilden ເຂົ້າແຂ່ງຂັນ. ທ່ານ Samuel Tilden ນັ້ນມີຊື່ສຽງຍ້ອນວ່າທ່ານສາມາດທັບມ້າງອົງການຂອງທ່ານ Tweed ໃນ New York ໄດ້. ພັກ Republican Party ກໍ່ມີຕົວແທນທີ່ມີຊື່ສຽງເຊັ່ນກັນຄືທ່ານ Governor Rutherford Hayes ນັກປະຕິຮູບຈາກ Onio.

໑໖.໒.໒. ຜົນຂອງການລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງຈາກປະຊາຊົນທົ່ວໄປປາກົດວ່າທ່ານ Tilden ໄດ້ສຽງຫຼາຍກວ່າທ່ານ Hayes ໒໕໐,໐໐໐ ສຽງ ແລະຜົນຂອງການລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງຈາກຄະນະຜູ້ແທນຈາກຣັຖຕ່າງໆກໍ່ປາກົດວ່າທ່ານ Tilden ໄດ້ສຽງຫຼາຍກວ່າທ່ານ Hayes ເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນຄື ໑໘໔ ສຽງ ຕໍ່ ໑໖໕ ສຽງ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ໜັງສືພິມສ່ວນຫຼາຍຈຶ່ງເຂົ້າໃຈວ່າທ່ານ Tilden ໄດ້ໄຊຊະນະ. ຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວພວກໜັງສືພິມເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນເຂົ້າໃຈຜິດເພາະວ່າທ່ານ Tilden ຕ້ອງໄດ້ສຽງເພີ່ມຕື່ມອີກສຽງນຶ່ງເພື່ອໃຫ້ຄົບ ໑໘໕ ສຽງຈຶ່ງຖືວ່າຊະນະໄດ້.

໑໖.໒.໓. ຕາມທັມມະດາໃນເມື່ອບໍ່ມີຜູ້ສະໝັກຮັບເລືອກຕັ້ງເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີຜູ້ໃດໄດ້ຄະແນນສຽງສ່ວນຫຼາຍຢ່າງແຈ້ງຂາວແລະຄົບຖ້ວນຈາກການລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງຂອງຄະນະຜູ້ແທນຈາກຣັຖຕ່າງໆແລ້ວກໍ່ຈະແມ່ນສະພາຜູ້ແທນຣາສດອນເອັງເປັນຜູ້ເລືອກເອົາປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ແຕ່ວ່າສຳຫຼັບການເລືອກຕັ້ງໃນປີ ໑໘໗໖ ນັ້ນເນື່ອງຈາກສີ່ຣັຖໃນພາກໃຕ້ໄດ້ສົ່ງບັດຄະແນນສຽງເປັນສອງຊຸດຕ່າງກັນສະນັ້ນຈຶ່ງເກີດມີການຜິດຖຽງກັນຂຶ້ນ.

ພວກ Democrats ແລະພວກ Republicans ຕ່າງຝ່າຍຕ່າງກໍອ້າງວ່າບັດລະແນນສຽງເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນເປັນຂອງພວກຕົນ. ສະເພາະກໍລະນີເຊັ່ນນີ້ ຣັຖທັມມະນູນເອງກໍບໍ່ໄດ້ບົ່ງວິທີແກ້ໄຂອັນແຈ່ມແຈ້ງໄວ້ແຕ່ຢ່າງໃດ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນສະພາຜູ້ແທນຣາສດອນຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຕັ້ງຄະນະກັມມະການຂຶ້ນເພື່ອຕິດສືບເຣື່ອງນີ້. ຄະນະກັມມະການໄດ້ລົງຄະແນນສຽງ ໘ ຕໍ່ ໗ ໃຫ້ບັດລົງຄະແນນຈາກສີ່ຣັຖໃນພາກໃຕ້ເປັນຂອງທ່ານ Hayes. ໃນທີ່ສຸດທ່ານ Hayes ກໍໄດ້ຮັບການເລືອກຕັ້ງເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີໄປໂດຍມີຂໍ້ຜູກມັດບາງປະການທີ່ທ່ານຈະຕ້ອງປະຕິບັດເພື່ອໃຫ້ຖືກໃຈປະຊາຊົນໃນພາກໃຕ້. ຂໍ້ຜູກມັດຢ່າງນຶ່ງນັ້ນກໍຄືວ່າປະທານາທິບໍດີ Hayes ຕ້ອງຖອນກອງທະຫານຂອງຣັຖບານກາງກອງສຸດທ້າຍອອກຈາກພາກໃຕ້ພ້ອມກັບອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ພວກຜິວຂາວໃນພາກໃຕ້ນັ້ນຕັ້ງຣັຖບານພົລເຣືອນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

໑໓.໒.໔. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Hayes ໄດ້ຖອນກອງທະຫານຣັຖບານກາງອອກຈາກ Louisiana ແລະ South Carolina ໃນຕອນທ່ານເລີ່ມຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງຂຶ້ນທຳອິດ. ຫຼັງຈາກກອງທະຫານດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຖອນຕົວໄປແລ້ວ ພວກຊາວຜິວຂາວໃນພາກໃຕ້ກໍກັບເອົາອຳນາດເດີມແລະສ້າງການຄວບຄຸມກິຈການທາງສັງຄົມແລະການເມືອງທັງໝົດໃນພາກໃຕ້ຢ່າງທັນທີ. ເພື່ອມອບອຳນາດຄວາມຍິ່ງໃຫຍ່ຄືນໃຫ້ແກ່ພວກຜິວຂາວໃນພາກໃຕ້ແລ້ວ ປະຊາຊົນພາກເໜືອກໍໄດ້ຢຸດຕິຄວາມພະຍາຍາມທາງດ້ານປ້ອງກັນສິດທິຂອງພວກຊາວຜິວດຳ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ພວກຜິວດຳໃນພາກໃຕ້ສຸດທ້າຍໄດ້ຢູ່ໃນສັງຄົມທີ່ພວກຜິວຂາວມີອຳນາດຄວາມຍິ່ງໃຫຍ່ໃໝ່ອີກ. ເປັນເວລາສິບປີທີ່ໂຄງການຟື້ນຟູການສ້າງສາໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມດັດແປງປັບປຸງຄວາມສຳພັນລະຫວ່າງພວກຜິວດຳແລະພວກຜິວຂາວ ແຕ່ໃນທີ່ສຸດກໍພົບກັບຄວາມລົ້ມເຫລວ.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຊອກຫາສັບ :

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບນັ້ນແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ພ້ອມຄວາມໝາຍຫຼືຄຳອະທິບາຍ.

```
O R S T V Y S U P R E M E T O N S C
A S O N T P R E M O V E P S T O R O
B T U L R S T R A I T O R M N O Q R
C S I N O Q C R I N T E R N A L M R
D U N C O N S T I T U T I O N A L U
G P O H A T B E T R A Y N O J P P P
E E T A S R O E R U I N O O K P Q T
F M U R T O P P S D O O R M T R R I
G E U G C T N S O E O I O B O O K O
I M P E A C H E D R T I L I K U S N
H E R S R O P S O Y P R Q U T E T S
O C S R N O C O L L A B O R A T O R
S Y W I T H D R A W I N G N O T Q R
```

GUILTY
REMOVE
TRAITOR
CORRUPTION
WITHDRAWING
COLLABORATOR
IMPEACH
SUPREME
UNCONSTITUTIONAL
MAJORITY
BOOK
BETRAY
INTRUDER
CHARGES
INTERNAL

໒. ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັນ : ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາຄຳເວົ້າແຕ່ລະຄຳໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໂດຍຂຽນຄຳຕອບຊຶ່ງເປັນຕົວເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ປະໄວ້ບົນສຳລັບຄຳຕອບທຸກຄຳ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
______(ກ) ມີຄວາມຜິດ	(໑) ໄດ້ປຽບ ຫຼື ໂອກາດ
______(ຂ) ກ່າວຫາວ່າມີຄວາມຜິດ	(໒) ພາຍໃນ, ເລື່ອງຂອງພາຍໃນປະເທດ.
______(ຄ) ສ່ວນຫຼາຍ	(໓) ບໍ່ສາມາດຕົກລົງກັນໄດ້
______(ງ) ຄົນຜິວຂາວໃນພາກໃຕ້ທີ່ສະໜັບສະໜູນ ແລະຮ່ວມມືກັບລັດຖະບານທີ່ມີໂຄງການຟື້ນຟູ ການສ້າງສາເພື່ອຜົນປະໂຍດສ່ວນຕົວ.	(໔) ມີຄວາມຜິດ

321

______(ຈ) ຜູ້ທໍລະຍົດ	(໔) ການໃຕ້ ຫຼື ການຮັບສິນບົນ
______(ສ) ການສໍ້ລາດບັງຫຼວງ	(໕) ການກ່າວຫາວ່າມີຄວາມຜິດ
______(ຊ) ອຳນາດຄວາມຍິ່ງໃຫຍ່	(໖) ຈຳນວນບັດລົງຄະແນນສຽງຂອງຝ່າຍນຶ່ງທີ່ຫຼາຍກວ່າອີກຝ່າຍນຶ່ງ.
______(ຍ) ໄດ້ປຽບ ຫຼື ໂອກາດ	(໗) ຄົນໃນພາກໃຕ້ທີ່ເຮັດວຽກຮ່ວມຣັຖບານທີ່ມີໂຄງການຟື້ນຟູການສ້າງສາ.
______(ດ) ຕົກລົງກັນບໍ່ໄດ້	(໘) ຜູ້ທີ່ທໍລະຍົດຕໍ່ເພື່ອນຝູງ
______(ຕ) ນາຍໃນ	(໑໐) ມີອຳນາດສູງສຸດ.

໓. ໝາຍກຳນົດປີ : ຈົ່ງໝາຍປີຂອງເຫດການໃນປະໂຍກຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ.

໑. ສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງໄດ້ເລີ້ມ

໒. Ulysses Grant ຖືກແຕ່ງຕັ້ງໃຫ້ເປັນຜູ້ສະໝັກຮັບເລືອກຕັ້ງຂອງພັກ Republican.

໓. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Lincoln ໄດ້ປະກາດປົດປ່ອຍຂ້າທາດໃຫ້ເປັນອິສຣະ

໔. ການຢຸດຕິສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງ

໕. ກອງທະຫານຣັຖບານກາງກອງສຸດທ້າຍຖອນອອກຈາກພາກໃຕ້

໖. ການເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີຣະຫວ່າງ Samuel Tilden ແລະ Rutherford Hayes.

໗. ການປັ່ນປ່ວນດ້ານເສຖກິດເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາຄັ້ງທຳອິດ

໘. ສະພາອອກດຳຣັດ The Tenure of Office Act.

໔. ເລືອກຄຳຕອບ : ຈົ່ງເລືອກເອົາຕົວອັກສອນທີ່ຢູ່ໜ້າສັບຫຼືຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ມີຄວາມເໝາະສົມທີ່ສຸດສຳຫຼັບປະໂຍກແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກ.

໑. ຄູ່ແຂ່ງຂອງທ່ານ Hayes ໃນການເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີໃນປີ ໑໘໗໖ ແມ່ນ :
   - (ກ) ນາຍພົນ Sherman
   - (ຂ) Samuel Tilden
   - (ຄ) William Richardson.

໖. ໃນລະຫວ່າງທີ່ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Grant ຄອງຕຳແໜ່ງຢູ່ນັ້ນກຸ່ມທີ່ສໍ້ໂກງທີ່ນອງນັ້ນແມ່ນ :

(ກ) The Knights of the White Camelia

(ຂ) Tweed Ring

(ຄ) Ku Klux Klan

໗. ເມື່ອປະຕິບັດຕາມໂຄງການຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ ພວກທີ່ມີຄວາມເຫັນຮຸນແຮງໃນພັກ Republican. ໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມ :

(ກ) ຕັດອຳນາດຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີລົງ

(ຂ) ເພີ່ມກຳລັງກອງທັບ

(ຄ) ຫ້າມພວກຜິວດຳຢ່ອນບັດລົງຄະແນນສຽງ

໘. ພວກ Carpetbaggers ໂດຍທົ່ວໄປ :

(ກ) ຖືກຕ້ອນຮັບຢ່າງດີໃນພາກໃຕ້

(ຂ) ຄົນພາກໃຕ້ຖືວ່າເປັນພວກບຸກລຸກ

(ຄ) ຄັດຄ້ານໂຄງການຟື້ນຟູການສ້າງສາຂອງຣັຖບານ

໙. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Johnson ແລະສະພາຖົກຖຽງກັນກ່ຽວກັບ :

(ກ) ການປ່ອຍຂ້າທາດເປັນອິສລະ

(ຂ) ເຣື່ອງວ່າໃຜມີອຳນາດໃນການວາງໂຄງການແລະປະຕິບັດ
ນະໂຍບາຍຂອງການຟື້ນຟູສ້າງສາປະເທດ.

(ຄ) ການເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີໃນປີ ໑໘໖໘

Section V
The Transformation Of A Nation

ໝວດ ໕ : ການປ່ຽນແປງຂອງຊາດ

ພາກ ໑໗ : ລະຍະການພັດທະນາດ້ານອຸດສາຫະກັມ

ສັບໃໝ່ :

cattle raising: ການລ້ຽງສັດ

The industries of mining and cattle raising developed in the West.

gold rush: ການຍົກຍ້າຍຂອງພວກຂຸດແຮ່ເປັນຈຳນວນຫລາຍເຂົ້າໄປສູ່ California, Colorado ແລະ Arizona ໃນປີ ໑໘໔໐, ໑໘໖໐, ໑໘໗໐ ເນື່ອງຈາກມີການຄົ້ນພົບຄຳໃນແຂວງນັ້ນ.

During the gold rush, many miners moved to California.

ghost town: ເປັນເມືອງທີ່ປະປ່ອຍຖິ້ມໄວ້ຈາກພວກຂຸດແຮ່ຫລັງຈາກທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຍ້າຍໄປແຫ່ງອື່ນເພື່ອຊອກຫາຄຳຫລືໂລຫະທີ່ມີຄຸນຄ່າຢ່າງອື່ນ.

When the miners moved to new area, the towns they left behind were ghost town.

railroad terminal: ບ່ອນຢຸດຈຸດສຸດທ້າຍຂອງທາງລົດໄຟ

Ranchers moved their cattle to the railroad terminals in the Mid-West.

long drive: ໝາຍເຖິງການນຳເອົາຝູງສັດຈາກ Texas ໄປສູ່ທາງລົດໄຟທີ່ Kansas
ແລະ Nebraska ໃນປີພາຍຫລັງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງ.

Walking the cattle from Texas to market was called the drive.

irrigation: ຊົລະປະທານ

crop rotation: ວິທີ່ໃຊ້ປູກແບບຫມູນວຽນ

New inventions, such as barbed wire, irrigation and crop rotation helped farmers become richer.

bonanza farmer: ພວກຊາວນາທີ່ໄດ້ຮັບຜົນການເພາະປູກດີທີ່ສຸດໃນເຂດດິນແດນໃໝ່.
ພວກຊາວນາຈຳພວກນີ້ຢູ່ທາງພາກເໜືອແລະໃນລັດ South Dakota.

The farmers who became wealthy were called bonanza farmers.

crop-lien farmer: ຊາວນາທີ່ຢືມເງິນຈາກພໍ່ຄ້າແລະເຈົ້າຂອງດິນເພື່ອຊື້ເອົາດິນແລະເຄື່ອງໃຊ້
ເຄື່ອງມືຕ່າງໆ. ເວລາເກັບກ່ຽວເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງໃຊ້ເງິນທີ່ຢືມນັ້ນຄືນ
ດ້ວຍເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງປົວຂອງຕົນ.

transcontinental lines: ເສັ້ນທາງລົດໄຟຜ່ານປະເທດ

The railroad companies built four transcontinental lines across the United States.

vertical organization: ໂຄງການທີ່ບໍລິສັດຄອບຄຸມທຸກຢ່າງທີ່ຈຳເປັນແກ່ການດຳເນີນງານ.

Andrew Carnegie used the vertical organization method of development to increase the size of his industry.

meat packing: ການຫຸ້ມຊີ້ນ

The meat packing industry grew in the Chicago, Illinois area.

union: ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ

The labor unions were organized by workers in an effort to get better working conditions.

trust: ສະມາຄົມບໍລິສັດການຄ້າ

Wealthy industrialists such as Rockefeller and Carnegie used trusts to create a monopoly in the oil and steel industries.

monopoly: ການຜູກຂາດໃນດ້ານການຄ້າ

lockout: ການປະຕິເສດບໍ່ຮັບຈ້າງພະນັກງານຈາກນາຍຈ້າງ. ວິທີການນີ້ເຄີຍຖືກໃຊ້ເພື່ອທຳລາຍຫຼືເຮັດ
ການຈັດຕັ້ງຂອງສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນອ່ອນລົງ.

blacklist: ບັນຊີຊື່ຂອງສະມາຊິກສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນຊຶ່ງນອກຕໍ່ຕ້ານສະມາຄົມດັ່ງກ່າວຈັດໄວ້ເພື່ອໃຫ້ສະມາຊິກໄດ້ອ່ານ

The labor bosses tried to stop worker' strikes in three ways: the lockout, the blacklist, and the yellow dog contract.

the yellow dog contract: ຄຳສັນຍາລະຫວ່າງນາຍຈ້າງແລະລູກຈ້າງ. ໃນຄຳສັນຍານັ້ນ
ຜູ້ເປັນລູກຈ້າງແຈ້ງວ່າຈະບໍ່ເຂົ້າຮ່ວມກັບສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ.

violence: ຄວາມຮຸນແຮງ

There was often violence between striking workers and the maangement.

concern: ຄວາມເປັນຫ່ວງ

The Meat Inspection Act was created after consumers indicated concern over the quality of meat being sold at the markets.

consumer: ຜູ້ບໍລິໂພກ

READING

17.1. NEW ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENTS

17.1.1. The years between 1875 and 1900 were a time of great growth for American industry. The New England and Northern states, already industrial areas, continued to attract new factories and businesses. In addition, industry began to develop in the primarily rural areas of the South and the West.

17.1.2. The mining, cattle raising and farming industries which had dominated the West for almost a hundred years began to develop rapidly. Because of the California gold rush in 1849, many miners had moved to the West. The rich miners formed mining companies, which bought equipment, hired workers and helped establish many small towns. When the mining companies and the miners moved West, businessmen followed them in pursuit of trade. Many new roads and railroads were built in the Far West to transport raw materials and goods to both the miners and the businessmen.

17.1.3. The cattle raising industry began to develop during the Civil War when beef from Texas was used to feed the Southern Armies. After the war, the industry flourished when the ranchers found that cattle could be raised cheaply in Texas and sold for high prices in the North and the East. Since the railroads reached only to Omaha, Nebraska, the ranchers had to move the herds from Texas to the railroad terminals in the Midwest. This moving of the herds was called the long drive.

17.1.4. In addition to mining and cattle raising, farming also became a vital industry on the Great Plains. At first, farming in the West was not as easy as cattle raising. The soil was poor and dry. But farmers invented new methods, such as scientific machinery, irrigation and crop rotation, to cultivate this land. Some farmers, most particulary those who grew wheat in North and South Dakota, became successful and rich. They became known as the "bonanza farmers".

17.1.5. While mining, cattle raising and farming industries were developing in the West, the textile, steel and petroleum industries were begining to flourish in the South. Before the Civil War the South was a rural area which produced tobacco, rice, cotton and indigo. The South did not have an Industrial Revolution like the North. But the Civil War destroyed almost everything in the South. So, from 1870 to 1900, many things changed. The South, rich in resources such as coal and iron ore, began to develop these resources. The poor whites and the freed blacks made up a large labor force to work in the newly constructed textile, steel and petroleum factories. Birmingham, Alabama became the second largest steel city in the United States.

17.2. THE ORGANIZATION OF INDUSTRY AND LABOR

17.2.1. American industry grew very fast after the Civil War. In 1859 industrial profits were 2 million dollars, but by 1900 industry had made about 13 billion dollars, and American factories were producing more goods than factories in any other country in the world.

17.2.2. Rich natural resources, large work forces, and high tariffs helped American industries to grow. Rapid transportation was needed to transport new materials and goods to and from the factories. As a result, the railroad industry became one of the most rapidly growing industries. Four transcontinental lines crossed the country. The Federal

Government gave the railroad companies public land for the tracks. Steel was badly needed to make the rails.

17.2.3. As factories were built and industries grew, many industrial leaders became very wealthy. Andrew Carnegie, the founder of the U.S. Steel Corporation, became very rich. Carnegie used the **vertical organization** method to expand his corporation. By 1900 his company was producing one-fourth of the total world steel product. Another wealthy industrialist was John D. Rockefeller, the king of the oil industry. He was the leader of the Standard Oil Company. Like Carnegie, he used the vertical organizaton method to build up his industry. The Standard Oil Company grossed over two million dollars by selling oil in 1900. The same vertical growth was found in the food industry. The expanding cattle industry helped the **meat packing** industry to grow. Chicago and Kansas City became important **meat-packing** centers.

17.2.4. These industries continued to grow and their leaders continued to become wealthier because they formed the **trusts** to protect their businesses. Industrialists like Carnergie and Rockefeller bought up all the small companies which could not compete with their bigger ones. Buying up the small companies allowed the industries to create **monopolies**. A monopoly meant that a product was controlled by just one company or group. Standard Oil Company was one of these monopolies. It controlled the prices of oil and became so powerful that it could make demands in the U.S. Congress.

17.2.5. All of these industries needed large work forces to grow. But leaders took advantage of workers and did not treat them fairly. Workers worked long hours in poor conditions for little pay. In an effort to improve their situation, workers organized **unions**. The unions helped the workers to get better working conditions, shorter working hours, and better pay. From 1866 to 1890 there were three famous unions -- the National Labor Union (NLU), the Knights of Labor, and the American Federation of Labor (AFL). All of these unions helped the workers and their families improve their lives.

17.3. THE RESPONSE TO UNIONIZATION

17.3.1. When the unions were organized, the leaders of the industries wanted to stop them. They used **lockouts**, the **blacklist**, and **yellow-dog contracts** (see glossary) to break up the unions. These methods angered union workers so much that they often fought with factory guards or policemen. This violence, which caused so much bloodshed and so many deaths, attracted the attention of the government. In 1913 Congress set up the Department of Labor, which passed many laws to help the workers and to protect children who worked in factories.

17.3.2. The federal government also passed laws to protect the **consumer**. In 1887 the Interstate Commerce Commission Act was adopted. The Commission stopped all unfair railroad practices. The U.S. Congress passed the Meat Inspection Act and Pure Food and Drug Act. These two acts controlled the quality and the purity of the food and drugs that were produced by the factories.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word search puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word, write it and then define it.

```
I N D U S T R I A L I Z A T I O N
R B X G O L D R U S H P M T V R A
R O X H U X X X M X R A O E E G B
I N L O N G D R I V E C N R R A C
G A X S I O X X N M M K O M T N D
A N P T O L X X I E R I P I I I E
T Z O T N D X X N A A N O N C Z F
I A R O T A T E G T F G L A A E G
O X C W O R L D W I D E Y L L X H
N X X N U T R I T I O N O S X X J
```

GOLDRUSH
GHOSTTOWN
LONG DRIVE
NUTRITION
MINING
WORLDWIDE
TERMINALS
IRRIGATION
VERTICAL
INDUSTRIALIZATION

ROTATE
GOLD
FARMER
UNION
CROP
MONOPOLY
PACKING
MEAT
ORGANIZE

II. Matching:

Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A

a. gold rush
b. long drive
c. bonanza farmers
d. lockout

B

1. the founder of the Standard Oil Company.
2. an agreement between employer and employee in which the worker states that he will not join the union.
3. the founder of the U.S. Steel Company.

____ e. blacklist

____ f. yellow-dog contract

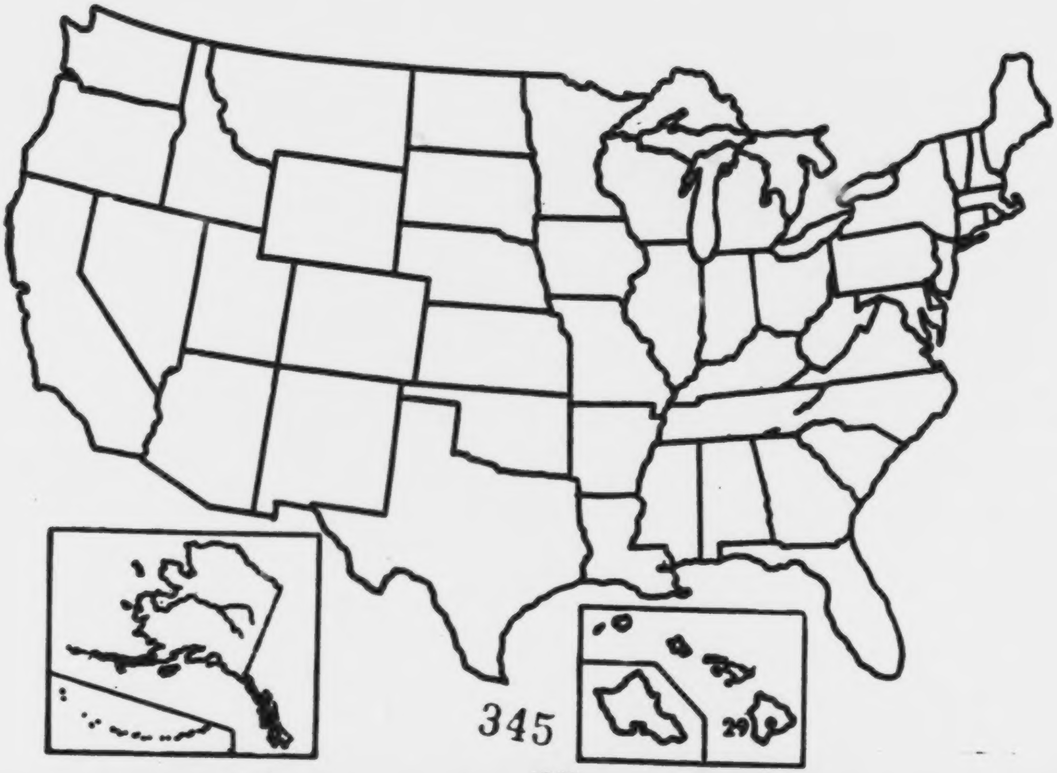
____ g. Andrew Carnegie

____ h. John D. Rockefeller

4. the most successful farmer on the frontier.
5. the large movement of the miners into California, Colorado, and Arizona to get rich.
6. a term used to refer to the moving of herds from Texas to the railroad terminals in the North.
7. the refusal of an employer to give jobs to workers.
8. a list of known union members which is used by anti-union businessmen.

III. Map work

Color the map below and put the name of the Southern states, New England, the Great Plains, and the Dakotas.



IV. True or False

_____ 1. Mining, farming, and cattle raising were in New England.

_____ 2. The Gold Rush was in the Appalachian Mountains.

_____ 3. A bonanza farmer is one who works with the long drive.

_____ 4. Wheat was the most profitable crop in the Dakotas.

_____ 5. Barbed wire helped to protect the land.

_____ 6. Birmingham is a steel city in Alabama.

_____ 7. There were 4 transcontinental lines which across the country at the end of the 19th century.

_____ 8. The workers organized unions to protect the employers.

_____ 9. The employers used the blacklist, the lockout, and the yellow-dog contract to help the workers.

ບົດອ່ານ

໑໗.໑. ການພັດທະນາເສຖກິດອັນໃໝ່

໑໗.໑.໑. ສະຫະລັດອະເມລິກາໄດ້ກາຍເປັນປະເທດອຸດສາຫະກັມໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໘໗໕ ຫາ ໑໙໐໐. ໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນລັດ New England ແລະໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສ່ວນເໜືອເປັນຕົ້ນທຳອິດ. ພາກຕາເວັນຕົກແລະໃຕ້ກໍໄດ້ມີການພັດທະນາອັນວ່ອງໄວເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ. ການຂຸດບໍ່ແຮ່ ການປູກຝັງແລະການລ້ຽງສັດມີຢູ່ທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ. ສ່ວນທາງພາກໃຕ້ນັ້ນ ມີໂຮງງານຕ່ຳຜ້າ ໂຮງງານຫຼໍ່ເຫຼັກ ແລະໂຮງງານກັ່ນນ້ຳມັນເປັນສຳຄັນ.

໑໗.໑.໒. ການຂຸດບໍ່ແຮ່ແລະການລ້ຽງສັດເປັນກິຈການອັນສຳຄັນຊຶ່ງຄົງຄືຢູ່ໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກເປັນເວລາເກືອບຮ້ອຍປີ. ນັບຕັ້ງແຕ່ເວລາມີການຄົ້ນພົບແຮ່ຄຳໃນ California ພວກຂຸດບໍ່ແຮ່ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ຍ້າຍໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ. ພວກຂຸດບໍ່ແຮ່ທີ່ຮ່ຳລວຍກໍໄດ້ຕັ້ງບໍຣິສັດຂຸດບໍ່ແຮ່ຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍບໍຣິສັດ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າມີທຶນພຽງພໍເພື່ອຊື້ເຄື່ອງອຸປກອນຕ່າງໆພ້ອມກັບຈ້າງພວກຄົນງານທັງຫຼາຍ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າເປັນຜູ້ຄວບຄຸມການຂຸດບໍ່ແຮ່ຕໍ່ໄປໃນແຖບນັ້ນ ແລະໄດ້ສ້າງຕັ້ງເມືອງນ້ອຍໆຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍແຫ່ງດ້ວຍກັນ. ເມື່ອເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ສາມາດຄົ້ນຫາຄຳໄດ້ຕື່ມອີກ ເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍຍົກຍ້າຍໄປແຫ່ງອື່ນ. ເມືອງຕ່າງໆທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າປະຖິ້ມໄວ້ນັ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ ghost towns. ຕົວຢ່າງ Denver ເປັນເມືອງນຶ່ງທີ່ພວກຂຸດບໍ່ແຮ່ໄດ້ປະຖິ້ມໄວ້ຊຶ່ງພາຍລຸນມາກໍເລີຍກາຍເປັນເມືອງໃຫຍ່ເມືອງນຶ່ງຂອງລັດ Colorado ໃນເວລາທີ່ບໍຣິສັດຂຸດແຮ່ທັງຫຼາຍຍ້າຍໄປທາງຕາເວັນຕົກນັ້ນພວກນັກທຸຣະກິດກໍໄດ້ຕິດຕາມໄປເພື່ອເຮັດການຄ້າ. ເຫດດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ມີການສ້າງສາຖະໜົນຫົນທາງແລະທາງລົດໄຟຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍສາຍໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກໄກເພື່ອຄວາມເໝາະສົມແກ່ສະພາບການ.

໑໗.໑.໓. ໃນລະຫວ່າງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງອາຫານສຳຫຼັບລ້ຽງກອງທັບຂອງພາກໃຕ້ນັ້ນໄດ້ແກ່ຊີ້ນທີ່ໄດ້ມາຈາກລັດ Texas ເປັນສ່ວນໃຫຍ່. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມ ພວກເຈົ້າຂອງທົ່ງນາທັງຫຼາຍຈຶ່ງເຫັນວ່າການລ້ຽງສັດໃນລັດ Texas ເປັນການລົງທຶນນ້ອຍແລະສາມາດສົ່ງຂາຍທາງພາກເໜືອແລະພາກຕາເວັນອອກດ້ວຍລາຄາສູງ. ເມື່ອທາງລົດໄຟຮອດແຕ່ພຽງເມືອງ Omaha ລັດ Nebraska ເທົ່ານັ້ນ ສັນພວກເຈົ້າຂອງທົ່ງນາຈຶ່ງຕ້ອງໄດ້ນຳເອົາຝູງສັດຈາກ Texas ໄປຂຶ້ນລົດໄຟຊຶ່ງຢູ່ທາງພາກເໜືອ. ການນຳເອົາຝູງສັດດັ່ງກ່າວໄປສູ່ສະຖານີລົດໄຟເອີ້ນວ່າ Long drive. ການເຄື່ອນເອົາຝູງສັດໃນຈຳນວນໄດ້ຢຸດຕິລົງຕອນທີ່ທາງລົດໄຟໄດ້ໄປເຖິງບໍຣິເວນລ້ຽງສັດດັ່ງກ່າວ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ຈຶ່ງມີການປະດິດລວດໜາມໝາກຈັບຂຶ້ນ

ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນຊື້ສວນແລະຕັ້ງໄຮ່ຕັ້ງນາໃນທ້ອງທົ່ງທີ່ເອີ້ນວ່າ Great Plains. ການລ້ຽງສັດເປັນອຸດສະຫະກັມປະເພດນຶ່ງທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສ່ວນກາງ (Mid-West).

໑໗.໑.໔. ນອກຈາກການຂຸດບໍ່ແຮ່ແລະການລ້ຽງສັດແລ້ວ ການປູກຝັງກໍເປັນກິຈການທີ່ມີຄວາມສຳຄັນຕໍ່ຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ໃນ Great Plainsເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ. ໃນຂັ້ນຕົ້ນການປູກຝັງໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກບໍ່ສະດວກເໝືອນກັບກັບການລ້ຽງສັດ ເນື່ອງຈາກດິນບໍ່ດີແລະຂາດແຄນນ້ຳ. ສະນັ້ນພວກຊາວນາຈຶ່ງຈຳເປັນຕ້ອງປະດິດວິທີປູກຝັງສຳລັບທ້ອງຖິ່ນນັ້ນຂຶ້ນເຊັ່ນການຂຸດຊົລປະທານແລະໃຊ້ພືດປູກແບບຊຸມນອຣນ. ຊາວນາບາງຕົນກໍໄດ້ຮັບຜົນດີແລະລ້ຳລວຍ. ພວກທີ່ລ້ຳລວຍນີ້ເອີ້ນວ່າ bonanza farmers. ພືດທີ່ມີຄຸນຄ່າແລະນຳຜົນກຳໄຮໄດ້ດີໃນພາກເໜືອແລະໃນ South Dakota ນັ້ນແມ່ນເຂົ້າບະເລ.

໑໗.໑.໕. ຈາກປີ ໑໘໗໗ ຫາ ໑໙໐໐ ຝ້າຍແລະຢາສູບເປັນພືດຜົນທີ່ສຳຄັນໃນພາກໃຕ້. ພວກຊາວນາທີ່ຮັ່ງມີໄດ້ພາກັນຊື້ເອົາສວນປູກຝັງທັງໝົດແລະໄດ້ຕັ້ງຣະບົບການເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງດິນອັນໃໝ່. ພວກຊາວຜິວຂາວແລະຜິວດຳທີ່ທຸກຈົນແລະບໍ່ສາມາດຊື້ດິນໄດ້ກໍຕ້ອງເຮັດວຽກໃຫ້ແກ່ພວກລ້ຳລວຍໃນປະເພດ Share-crop farmers ຫຼື Crop-lien farmersພວກ Share-crop farnmers ນີ້ເຊົ່າທີ່ດິນແລະຈ່າຍຄ່າເຊົ່າດ້ວຍເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງທີ່ເກັບກ່ຽວໄດ້ໃນແຕ່ລະປີ. ສຳລັບພວກ VCrop-lien farmers ນັ້ນຢືມເງິນມາຈາກພໍ່ຄ້າຊາວຂາວ ຫຼື ຈາກເຈົ້າຂອງທີ່ດິນເພື່ອເອົາມາຊື້ດິນ ເຄື່ອງມື ແລະແນວເຄື່ອງປູກຕ່າງໆ. ຫຼັງຈາກການເກັບກ່ຽວພວກ Crop-lien farmers ຕ້ອງມອບເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງຂອງຕົນເກືອບທັງໝົດໃຫ້ແກ່ເຈົ້າຂອງເງິນແທນເງິນທີ່ຢືມມາ.

໑໗.໑.໖. ສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງໄດ້ທຳລາຍທຸກຢ່າງໃນພາກໃຕ້. ໃນລະຫວ່າງສົງຄາມນັ້ນ ໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມບໍ່ມີຄວາມສຳຄັນເລີຍ. ແຕ່ວ່າຈາກປີ ໑໘໗໐ ຫາ ໑໙໐໐ ນັ້ນໄດ້ມີຫຼາຍຢ່າງປ່ຽນແປງ. ພາກໃຕ້ມັ່ງຄັ່ງສົມບູນໄປດ້ວຍຊັພຍາກອນຕ່າງໆເຊັ່ນ ຖ່ານຫີນ ແລະ ທາດເຫຼັກດັ່ງນີ້ເປັນຕົ້ນ. ຄົນງານຕາມໂຮງງານຫັຕຖກັມຕ່າງໆແມ່ນພວກຄົນຜິວຂາວທີ່ທຸກຍາກແລະພວກຜິວດຳທີ່ຖືກປົດປ່ອຍເປັນອິສຣະເປັນສ່ວນໃຫຍ່. ເມືອງ Birmingham ໃນຣັຖ Alabama ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນສູນກາງຂອງໂຮງງານຫຼໍ່ເຫຼັກທີ່ໃຫຍ່ທີ່ສຸດອັນດັບສອງໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

໑໗.໒. ການຈັດຕັ້ງໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມ ແລະ ກັມມະກອນ

໑໗.໒.໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງ ໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ຈເຣີນເຕີບໂຕຂຶ້ນໄວທີ່ສຸດ. ໃນປີ ໑໘໕໙ ໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມດັ່ງກ່າວທຳເງິນໄດ້ ໒ ພັນລ້ານໂດລາ. ຕໍ່ມາໃນປີ ໑໙໐໐ ທຳເງິນໄດ້ ໑໓ ພັນລ້ານໂດລາ ແລະໄດ້ກາຍເປັນໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມອັນດັບນຶ່ງໃນໂລກ.

໑໗.໒.໒. ສິ່ງທີ່ພາໃຫ້ອຸດສາຫະກັມໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາຈເຣີນເຕີບໂຕກໍ່ຄື ຄວາມອຸດົມສົມບູນຂອງຊັພຍາກອນທັມຊາດ ຈຳນວນກັມມະກອນອັນມະຫາສານ ແລະພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າອັນສູງນັ້ນເອງ. ການສ້າງສາທາງລົດໄຟເປັນອຸດສາຫະກັມຢ່າງນຶ່ງທີ່ຂຍາຍຕົວໄວທີ່ສຸດ. ທາງລົດໄຟທີ່ຕັດຜ່ານປະເທດມີຢູ່ສີ່ສາຍດ້ວຍກັນ. ຣັຖບານກາງໄດ້ມອບທີ່ດິນຫຼວງໃຫ້ແກ່ບໍຣິສັດລົດໄຟເພື່ອສ້າງທາງ. ໃນເວລານັ້ນເຫຼັກໄດ້ຂາດເຂີນທີ່ສຸດສຳຫຼັບການສ້າງສາລາງລົດໄຟ.

໑໗.໒.໓. ຜູ້ກໍ່ຕັ້ງບໍຣິສັດຫຼໍ່ເຫຼັກຄັ້ງທຳອິດໃນສາຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາແມ່ນທ່ານ Andrew Carnegie. ທ່ານ Carnegie ໄດ້ໃຊ້ວິທີ Vertical organizationໃນການຕັ້ງບໍຣິສັດຂອງທ່ານ. ບໍຣິສັດໄດ້ຜລິດ ນຶ່ງສ່ວນສີ່ຂອງຈຳນວນການຜລິດເຫຼັກທັງໝົດໃນໂລກ. ທ່ານ John D. Rockefeller ແມ່ນຣາຊາແຫ່ງບໍຣິສັດຜລິດນ້ຳມັນ. ທ່ານເປັນຫົວໜ້າຂອງບໍຣິສັດ Standard Oil Company. ທ່ານເອງກໍ່ມັກໃຊ້ວິທີ Vertical organizationເໝືອນກັນ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໐໐ ບໍຣິສັດ Standard Oil Company ຂາຍນ້ຳມັນໄດ້ກ່ວາ ສອງລ້ານໂດລາ. ໂຮງງານຜລິດອາຫານກໍ່ມີຄວາມກ້າວໜ້າໄປໃນທຳນອງດຽວກັນ. ທຸຣະກິດການຂ້າສັດໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ໂຮງງານທີ່ຈຸນຈເຣີນງອກງາມຂຶ້ນ. ສູນກາງຂອງໂຮງງານທີ່ຈຸນທີ່ສຳຄັນມີສອງແຫ່ງຄືເມືອງ Chicago ແລະເມືອງ Kansas City. ເມື່ອຄວາມຈເຣີນກ້າວໜ້າໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມຕ່າງໆເຫຼົ່ານີ້ມີຄວາມຕ້ອງການໃຊ້ຄົນງານເປັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍທີ່ສຸດ. ພວກຄົນທັງຫຼາຍບໍ່ໄດ້ຮັບການດູແລເບິ່ງແຍງ ຢ່າງເປັນທັມເພາະວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງໄດ້ຢູ່ເຮັດວຽກດົນແລະໄດ້ຮັບຄ່າຈ້າງຕ່ຳ.

໑໗.໒.໔. ພວກບໍຣິສັດໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມຕ່າງໆໄດ້ຕັ້ງສະມາຄົມຂຶ້ນ (trusts)ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນທຸຣະກິດການຄ້າຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຊື້ເອົາບໍຣິສັດເລັກນ້ອຍທີ່ບໍ່ສາມາດແຂ່ງຂັນກັບບໍຣິສັດທີ່ໃຫຍ່ກວ່ານັ້ນທັງໝົດເພື່ອເຂົາເຈົ້າຈະໄດ້ການຜູກຂາດໃນການຄ້າຕ່າງໆ. ບໍຣິສັດທີ່ໄດ້ການຜູກຂາດເຊັ່ນບໍຣິສັດບວງກັບບໍຣິສັດ

Standard Oil Companyທີ່ຄວບຄຸມລາຄາຂອງນ້ຳມັນແລະນອກຈາກນັ້ນກໍຍັງຄອບຄຸມສະພາຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາອີກດ້ວຍ.

໑໗.໒.໕. ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນວິທີການຂອງເຈົ້າຈ້າງ ພວກພະນັກງານກັມມະກອນກໍໄດ້ຈັດຕັ້ງສະມາຄົມຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເໝືອນກັນ. ສະມາຄົມດັ່ງກ່າວຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ພວກກັມມະກອນໄດ້ຮັບການເບິ່ງແຍງກ່ຽວກັບສະພາບການເຮັດວຽກດີຂຶ້ນ ເວລາເຮັດວຽກສັ້ນລົງ ແລະໄດ້ຄ່າຈ້າງຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ. ຈາກປີ ໑໘໖໖ ຫາ ໑໘໙໐ ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນທີ່ມີຊື່ສຽງມີຢູ່ສາມສະມາຄົມດ້ວຍກັນຄື The National Labor Union (NLU), the knights of labor ແລະ The American Federation of Labor (AFL) ສະມາຄົມເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ພວກກັມມະກອນທັງຄອບຄົວຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຮັບຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ອັນດີ.

໑໗.໓. ຜົນສະທ້ອນຂອງອຸດສາຫະກັມ

໑໗.໓.໑. ໃນເວລາທີ່ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນຈັດຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນມາ ພວກຫົວໜ້າຂອງໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມຫຼາຍບໍ່ເຫັນດີນຳ ດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໃຊ້ວິທີການຕ່າງໆເຊັ່ນ ປະຕິເສດບໍ່ຮັບເອົາພະນັກງານ (Lockout) ເຮັດບັນຊີດຳ (blacklist) ແລະໃຫ້ພະນັກງານສັນຍາວ່າຈະບໍ່ເຂົ້າຮ່ວມສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ (The yellow dog contract) ດັ່ງນີ້ເປັນຕົ້ນ ເພື່ອທັບມ້າງສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນ ຈຶ່ງເປັນເຫດໃຫ້ພວກພະນັກງານທີ່ຢູ່ໃນສະມາຄົມດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຮັບການກະທົບກະເທືອນໃຈເປັນທີ່ສຸດ. ໃນບາງຄັ້ງພວກພະນັກງານກໍໄດ້ຕໍ່ສູ້ກັນກັບເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ຮັກສາໂຮງງານ ແລະໃນບາງຄັ້ງກໍ່ຕໍ່ສູ້ກັບຕຳຣວດ. ການປະທະກັນລົງໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ມີການເລືອດຕົກຢາງອອກ ຫຼື ມີການຕາຍ ແລະກໍ່ເດືອດຮ້ອນໄປເຖິງຣັຖບານ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໓ ສະພາໄດ້ຕັ້ງກະຊວງແຮງງານຂຶ້ນ (The Department of labor) ພ້ອມກັບໄດ້ອອກກົດໝາຍຫຼາຍຢ່າງເພື່ອຊ່ວຍພວກຄົນງານກັມມະກອນ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນຣັຖບານເອງກໍໄດ້ອອກກົດໝາຍເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນຄົນງານທີ່ຢູ່ໃນວັຍເດັກນ້ອຍອີກ.

໑໗.໓.໒. ສຳຫຼັບຜູ້ບໍຣິໂພກຫຼືຜູ້ຈັບຈ່າຍຊື້ເຄື່ອງຂອງທີ່ຜລິດຈາກໂຮງງານນັ້ນ ຣັຖບານກໍໄດ້ອອກກົດໝາຍເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນເຂົາເຈົ້າເໝືອນກັນ. ໃນປີ ໑໘໘໗ ໄດ້ມີດຳຣັດກ່ຽວກັບຄະນະກັມມະການການຄ້າລະຫວ່າງຣັຖອອກມາ (The Interstate Commerce Commission Act) ຄະນະກັມມະການດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຢັບຢັ້ງສິ່ງທີ່ບໍ່ເປັນທັມທຸກຢ່າງຂອງບໍຣິສັດຣົດໄຟທີ່ໄດ້ກະທຳລົງໄປ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Theodore Roosevelt ໄດ້ຊື່ເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີຄົນຫົວກ້າວໜ້າ. ທ່ານຕ້ອງການຈັດໃຫ້ກິຈການຄ້າທັງໝົດເຂົ້າຢູ່ໃນຣະບຽບ.

ໃນລະຫວ່າງທີ່ທ່ານຍັງດຳລົງຕຳແໜ່ງເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີຢູ່ນັ້ນ ສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳລັດກ່ຽວກັບການກວດຊີ້ນ (Meat Inspection Act) ແລະດຳລັດກ່ຽວກັບອາຫານບໍລິສຸດແລະຢາປົວພະຍາດ (Pure Food and Drug Act) ດຳລັດທັງສອງນີ້ໃຊ້ສຳລັບຄວບຄຸມ ຄຸນພາບແລະຄວາມບໍລິສຸດຂອງອາຫານແລະຢາປົວພະຍາດທີ່ຜະລິດຈາກໂຮງງານຕ່າງໆ. ຜູ້ບໍລິໂພກທັງຫຼາຍມີຄວາມພໍໃຈກັບດຳລັດທັງສອງນີ້ເປັນທີ່ສຸດ ດັ່ງນັ້ນບໍລິສັດການຄ້າໃນທຸກມື້ນີ້ຈຶ່ງປະຕິບັດໃຫ້ສອດຄ່ອງກັບດຳລັດທີ່ກ່າວມານັ້ນແລ້ວ.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຊອກຫາສັບ :

I N D U S T R I A L I Z A T I O N
R B X G O L D R U S H P M T V R A
R O X H U X X X M X R A O E E G B
I N L O N G D R I V E C N R R A C
G A X S I O X X N M M K O M T N D
A N P T O L X X I E R I P I I I E
T Z O T N D X X N A A N O N C Z F
I A R O T A T E G T F G L A A E G
O X C W O R L D W I D E Y L L X H
N X X N U T R I T I O N O S X X J

GOLDRUSH
GHOSTTOWN
LONG DRIVE
NUTRITION
MINING
WORLDWIDE
TERMINALS
IRRIGATION
VERTICAL
INDUSTRIALIZATION

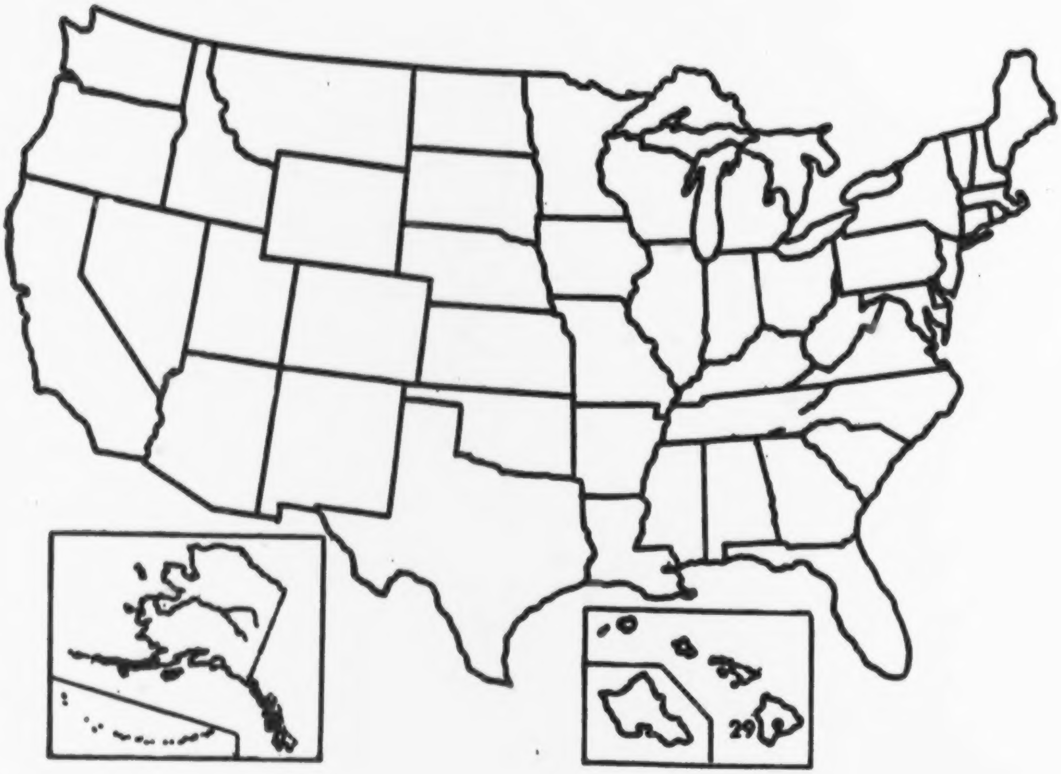
ROTATE
GOLD
FARMER
UNION
CROP
MONOPOLY
PACKING
MEAT
ORGANIZE

໔. ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັນ : ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາແຕ່ລະສັບຄຳເວົ້າໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ຂ). ຈົ່ງຂຽນຄຳຕອບຈົ່ງເປັນຕົວເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ປະໄວ້ນັ້ນ ສຳລັບຄຳຕອບທຸກຄຳ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
(ກ) gold rush	(໑) ຜູ້ກໍ່ຕັ້ງບໍລິສັດ
(ຂ) ghost town	(໔) ຄຳສັນຍາລະຫວ່າງນາຍຈ້າງແລະລູກຈ້າງ. ໃນຄຳສັນຍານັ້ນຜູ້ເປັນລູກຈ້າງແຈ້ງວ່າຈະບໍ່ເຂົ້າຮ່ວມກັບສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ.
(ຄ) long drive	(໓) ຜູ້ກໍ່ຕັ້ງບໍລິສັດຫຼໍ່ເຫຼັກ
(ງ) bonanza farmers	(໘) ຊາວນາຜູ້ທີ່ໄດ້ຮັບຜົນທີ່ສຸດຈາກການປູກຝັງໃນພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ.
(ຈ) lockout	(໕) ເມືອງທີ່ພວກຂຸດບໍ່ແຮ່ປະຖິ້ມໄວ້
(ສ) black list	(໖) ການຍົກຍ້າຍຂອງພວກຂຸດບໍ່ແຮ່ເປັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ ເຂົ້າສູ່ ເພື່ອສ້າງຄວາມຮ່ຳລວຍ.
(ຊ) yellow dog contract	(໗) ໝາຍເຖິງການນຳເອົາຝູງສັດຈາກໄປຫາທາງລົດໄຟໃນພາກເໜືອ.
(ຍ) Andrew Carnegie	(໒) ຊາວນາຜູ້ທີ່ມອບເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງບາງສ່ວນໃຫ້ແກ່ເຈົ້າຂອງດິນແທນຄ່າຈ່າຍ.
(ດ) John D.Rockefeller	(໙) ການປະຕິເສດບໍ່ຮັບຈ້າງພະນັກງານຈາກນາຍຈ້າງ
(ຕ) share-crop farmer	(໑໐) ບັນຊີລາຍຊື່ຂອງສະມາຊິກສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນໃຊ້ໂດຍພວກນັກການຄ້າທີ່ຕ້ານສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ.

ຄ. ຫັດໃສ່ແຜນທີ່ :

ຈົ່ງໃສ່ສີແຜນທີ່ຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ ຫລັງໃຫ້ໃສ່ຊື່ພາກໃຕ້, New England, the Great Palains ແລະ the Dakotas.



________໑. ການຂຸດບໍ່ແຮ່ ການປູກຝັງ ແລະການລ້ຽງສັດນັ້ນຢູ່ໃນລັດ New England.

________໒. The Gold Rush ເກີດຂຶ້ນທີ່ Appalachians Mountains.

________໓. The ghost town ແມ່ນເມືອງນ້ອຍຊຶ່ງມີຮ້ານຄ້າຈຳນວນຫລາຍແລະພວກຂຸດບໍ່ແຮ່ຢູ່ກັນພວກທີ.

________໔. ຊາວນາທີ່ໄດ້ຮັບຜົນຈາກການປູກຝັງຫລາຍທີ່ສຸດຊື່ພວກ bonanza farmers ນັ້ນ ປະກອບອາຊີບດ້ວຍການນຳເອົາງົວສັດຈາກ Texas ໄປສູ່ທາງທິດໄປໃນພາກເໜືອ.

________໕. ເຂົ້າບະເລເປັນພືດທີ່ໃຫ້ຜົນກຳໄລໃນລັດ Dakota ທັງເໜືອແລະໃຕ້.

__________໖. ລອດສມານສມາກຈັບຊ່ອຍປ້ອງກັນທີ່ດິນ.

__________໗. Birmingham ເປັນເມືອງໂຮງງານຫຼໍ່ເຫຼັກໃນຣັຖ Alabama

__________໘. ໃນທ້າຍຂອງສັດຕວັດທີ ໑໙ ໄດ້ມີເສັ້ນທາງລົດໄຟຜ່ານປະເທດດ້ວຍກັນສີ່ເສັ້ນ.

__________໙. ພວກພະນັກງານຈັດຕັ້ງສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນຂຶ້ນເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນນາຍຈ້າງ.

__________໑໐. ພວກນາຍຈ້າງໃຊ້ Blacklist, lockout ແລະ yellow dog contract ເພື່ອຊ່ອຍພວກຄົນງານ.

ຫມວດ ໔ : ການປ່ຽນແປງຂອງຊາດ

ພາກ ໑໗ : ການເລີ່ມຕົ້ນຂອງສະຫະລັດອະເມລິກາທັນສະໄໝ

ສັບໃໝ່ :

competition: ການແຂ່ງຂັນ

There was increasing competition between the Republican and Democratic parties.

industrialist: ເຈົ້າຂອງໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມ

The Republican Party was an alliance of industrialists from the Northeast and wealthy farmers from the Mid-West.

integrity: ຄວາມຊື່ສັດ

Republicans were concerned about the integrity of the Union.

spoils system: ລະບົບການປົກຄອງທີ່ເຊື່ອມໂຊມ

The spoils system appeared during Grant's administration.

irresponsible: ບໍ່ເອົາຄວາມຮັບຜິດຊອບ

merit system: ລະບົບຂຶ້ນເງິນເດືອນຫຼືເລື່ອນຊັ້ນໂດຍອີງໃສ່ຄຸນງາມຄວາມດີຂອງພະນັກງານ.

scholar; ນັກສຶກສາ

The journalist and scholars became reformers and worked to replace the spoils system with a merit system.

regardless: ບໍ່ຫ່ວງກັນ

The merit system said a civil servant should selected because of his ability, regardless of his political views.

reformer: ນັກປະຕິຮູບ

monetary standard: ມາດຕະຖານຂອງເງິນຕຣາ

The major issue of the 1890's was the battle over the monetary standard.

unemployment: ການວ່າງງານ

High tariff would help ease unemployment.

manipulate: ການຊັກຈູງ

Rich bankers used their money and power to manipulate Congressmen.

banker: ຫົວໜ້າທະນາຄານ

currency circulation: ການໝູນວຽນຂອງເງິນຕຣາ

Workers favored great currency circulation.

debtor: ຜູ້ຕິດໜີ້ ຫຼື ລູກໜີ້

Debtors wanted cheap money to pay their debts.

gold standard: ມາດຕະຖານຂອງຄຳ

Industrialists and businessmen favored the gold standard.

world power: ອຳນາດຣະດັບໂລກ

By 1900 the U.S. had become a world power.

target: ເປົ້າໝາຍ

The Hawaiian Islands became a target of the U.S. Navy in order to open a seaway to China and the Far East.

expansionists: ຜູ້ລຸກລາມ

Expansionist favored an open door policy for trade with China.

READING

18.1. THE PERIOD OF POLITICAL COMPETITION AND CORRUPTION

18.1.1. Between the Civil War and 1900, the United States of America changed from an agricultural into an industrial nation. As the economy grew and prospered, competition increased between the two major political parties: the Republican Party and the Democratic Party.

18.1.2. The Republican Party was basically an alliance between two groups: the industrialists in the Northeast and the wealthy farmers in the Midwest. Because the Republicans were concerned about the integrity of the Union and the freedom of the slaves, they had the support of many Northerners and the freedmen in the South.

18.1.3. Like the Republican Party, the Democratic Party was an alliance of two diverse groups: the wealthy Southerners who were against the abolition of slavery and the poor factory workers and immigrants who lived in the Northeast. The large number of workers received no benefits from the Republican Party which favored the wealthy industrialists, so they looked to the Democratic Party and organized labor unions for help.

18.1.4. After the Civil War, the Republicans controlled the U.S. Congress and the presidency while the Democrats controlled the governments of many states. Under President Grant's administration, corruption spread nationwide and a spoils system appeared. Many unqualified persons who had been faithful party supporters were placed in government jobs. This resulted in a government that was quickly becoming **inefficient, irresponsible,** and corrupt.

18.1.5. However, there were many honest Democrats and Republicans who opposed the spoils system and wanted to replace it with a **merit system.** In a merit system, officials selected for government jobs must be the best qualified people, regardless of their political views or party services. Of all the people who favored the merit system, the journalists and **scholars** were the most outspoken. They became the **reformers** and used newspapers and magazines to criticize the evils of the spoils system and to obtain support from honest people. They demanded action from Congress. In 1883, Congress passed the Pendleton Act. This act set up a Civil Service Commission which organized an examination to test the fitness of applicants for public service. Under this act only 14,000 of the 100,000 government workers were given civil service positions.

18.2. THE PROGRESSIVE MOVEMENTS

18.2.1. Besides working to eliminate the spoils system, these two parties also addressed many economic issues. The most important issues were the tariff, business regulation, and the **monetary standard.**

18.2.2. The Democrats and the Republicans took opposite stands on the tariff issue. Most of the active Democrats lived in the South and were farmers. They favored low tariffs which would enable them to buy cheaper goods and tools from foreign countries for their farms and plantations. The Republicans, many of whom were industrialists, wanted to levy high tariffs on imported goods. A high tariff was the most effective means to stop foreign goods from flooding the country, to ease **unemployment**, and to keep the economy growing.

18.2.3. Members of both parties were becoming increasingly concerned about the issue of business regulation. The Constitution had given Congress the power to regulate commerce among states. However, it was a very difficult task to regulate many of the interstate business activities. The railroad companies, for example,were owned and run by the strongest and wealthiest groups in the country. These powerful groups were able to **manipulate** Senators and, thereby, gain support in Congress. The small businessmen became worried that trusts and monopolies would never be eliminated. They urged the reformers in Congress to pass laws to regulate commerce between the states. In 1877, Congress responded by passing the Interstate Commerce Act (ICA). This act set up an Interstate Commerce Commission (ICC) to regulate business operations, services and rates of interstate carriers. In the beginning, the commission was not very powerful and people still felt that the government was not doing enough to stop the growth of trusts and monopolies. So, in 1890, Congress passed the Sherman Antitrust Act. Although the act was designed to stop the rise of monopolies, it was so unclear that it had little effect and the monopolies continued to grow.

18.2.4. Another issue in the 1890's was the battle over the monetary standard. Every group had its own idea of what the monetary standard should be. The industrialists, bankers, and businessmen favored the gold system. They wanted to limit currency circulation and thereby protect the prices of their products and the interests of their loans. The workers favored both gold and silver as the monetary standard. They demanded that the government increase the amount of currency circulation based on silver and gold. The farmers and the other debtors wanted "cheap money" with which to pay their debts. By cheap money, they meant paper money that was not backed by gold and silver. Industrialists, bankers and businessmen used their money and power to defeat the supporters of the poor farmers and debtors in Congress and in the 1896 presidential election, William McKinley, who was regarded as the leader of those groups who favored the gold standard, was elected President, and in 1897 gold was officially adopted as the standard of currency.

18.3. THE NATION BECOMES A WORLD POWER

18.3.1. As American industry continued to grow, the United States found that it needed foreign markets in which to sell its products. Both businessmen and military leaders supported territorial expansion by seeking new markets and looking for places to build new naval bases. America quickly began to gain new lands. In 1878, the U.S. built a naval base in Pago Pago, Samoa Islands. The British and German governments protested. They sent battle ships to the area, but Great Britain soon withdrew. The United States and Germany divided the islands between them.

18.3.2. The Hawaiian Islands were another target of the U.S. Navy Department and American businessmen. If the U.S. Navy controlled these islands, it could easily open a new seaway to China and the Far East. In addition, American businessmen had invested heavily in the sugar plantations in Hawaii during 1880's. In 1890, Queen LiLiuokalani became ruler of the islands. She wanted to decrease the power of Americans in the islands. To protect their interests, American residents planned a revolution. In 1898, the Hawaiian Islands were annexed to the U.S. after a successful revolution against the Queen was carried out by American residents with the support of the U.S. minister to Hawaii.

18.3.3. The next target was China. For years, China had been forced to sign treaties with European nations to give them trading rights in China. American businessmen also wanted to have a share of the Chinese market. The U.S. government proposed the "open door policy". This policy provided equal trading rights in China to all nations.

18.3.4. The American expansionists were worried about the presence of Spain in Cuba and in the Caribbean Islands. For many years, the Cubans had been fighting against Spain for their independence. President McKinley did not want to interfere in Cuban affairs but there were many Americans living in Havana at that time and, to protect their lives, the U.S. Government sent the battleship, Maine, to Havana. The ship was blown up in the harbor and 260 American sailors were killed. President McKinley was under heavy public pressure to act. He asked Congress to declare war on Spain and Congress agreed. The war between the U.S. and Spain did not take place only in the Caribbean Sea but also in the Philippine Islands. The war lasted only a few months. Spain lost the war and had to cede Puerto Rico, Guam Island, and the Philippine Islands to the United States. Cuba became an independent nation. By 1900 the United States had become a major world power. The growth of industry and the expansion of commerce had caused the nation, which had previously favored a policy of isolation and neutrality, to seek the acquisition of overseas land and territories as markets for its manufactured products.

EXERCISES

I. **Word search puzzle:**

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

COMPETITION
CORRUPT
EXPANSIONIST
ROAD
SEAWAY
WORLD POWER
MERIT SYSTEM
STANDARD
JOURNALIST
MONETARY
EXPLOIT
CONGRESS
OPEN DOOR
INTEGRITY
BANKER
FACTORY
FARMER
DEMOCRATS
REFORMER
EVIL
CURRENCY
SCHOLAR
GOLD
TARGET

C O M P E T I T I O N T A R G E T W

J D O S X M O T C F A R M E R O W O

O E N T P C O R R U P T O F C P O R

U M E A A C O N G R E S S O O E R L

R O T N N F A C T O R Y N R N N O D

N C A D S E X P L O I T I M G D W P

A R R A I R O A D E V I L E R O O O

L A Y R O L S E A W A Y U R E O R W

I T O D N C U R R E N C Y O S R T E

S S N B I N T E G R I T Y R S U H R

T E O M S C H O L A R T G O L D S A

M E R I T S Y S T E M B A N K E R T

II. Matching Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

	A	B
_____	a. monopoly	1. a policy first suggested by U.S. in 1889 which declared that all nations should have equal trading rights in China.
_____	b. civil service	2. the practice of giving government jobs in return for political support.
_____	c. reformer	3. having to do with improvement, moving forward.
_____	d. immigrant	4. public jobs in federal, state, and local governments awarded on the basis of merit.
_____	e. open door policy	5. a person from one country who enters another country to become a permanent resident.
_____	f. spoils system	6. one who wants to improve conditions.
_____	g. progressive	7. control of an industry or the supply of an item by one group or company.

III. True or False

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put a F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. The two main U.S. political parties are the Republican Party and the Democratic Party.

____ 2. The Democratic Party was very strong in the South and in certain areas in the Northeast.

____ 3. Under President Grant's administration, corruption did not spread.

____ 4. The reformers were the people who favored the spoils system.

____ 5. The Democrats favored high tariffs to protect their farms and plantation products.

____ 6. There was a big fight between the U.S. Navy and the British Navy in the Samoa Islands.

____ 7. In 1890, Queen LiLiuokalani became an industrialist in Hawaii.

____ 8. The open door policy limits Chinese immigration to the U.S. each year.

____ 9. Cuba was annexed to the U.S. at a meeting between the U.S. Congress and the President of Cuba.

____ 10. Puerto Rico was colony of Japan during 1889.

IV. Fill in the blanks. Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: political life, economic life, integrity, spoils system, merit system, eliminate, manipulate, monopolies, currency circulation, cheap money, the open door policy.

1. There were many changes in the ________ as well as __________ of the nation.

2. The Republicans were concerned about the _________ of the Union and the freedom of the slaves.

3. Under President Grant's administration a corrupt system expanded nationwide and a ______________ appeared.

4. Many honest Democrats and Republicans opposed the spoils system and wanted to replace it with a ___________ .

5. Besides working to ___________ the spoils system, these two parties also had many economic plans.

6. These groups could ___________________ Senators and get

support from Congress.

7. In 1890, Congress passed the Sherman Antitrust Act to stop the rise of __________ .

8. The industrialists and the bankers wanted to limit the __________ and protect the prices of their products.

9. The farmers and the other debtors wanted __________ with which to pay their debts.

10. The U.S. government proposed __________ to provide equal rights to all nations to trade with China.

ບົດອ່ານ

໑໘.໑. ລະຍະແຫ່ງການແຕ່ງຕັ້ງທາງການເມືອງແລະການສໍ້ລາດບັງຫລວງ

໑໘.໑.໑. ສະຫະລັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ປ່ຽນອອກຈາກສະພາບປະເທດກະສິກັມເປັນປະເທດອຸດສາຫະກັມໃນລະຫວ່າງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງຫາປີ ໑໘໖໕. ໃນລະຫວ່າງນັ້ນຈຶ່ງວິຖີທາງການເມືອງແລະເສຖກິດຂອງຊາດໄດ້ມີການປ່ຽນແປງຫລາຍຢ່າງ. ດ້ານການເມືອງໄດ້ມີການແຂ່ງຂັນລະຫວ່າງສອງພັກທີ່ສຳຄັນຄືພັກ Republican Party ແລະພັກ Democratic Party.

໑໘.໑.໒. ຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວພັກ Republican Party ເປັນພັກການເມືອງທີ່ມີສາຍສັມພັນລະຫວ່າງສອງກຸ່ມດ້ວຍກັນຄື : ພວກເຈົ້າຂອງໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມທີ່ຢູ່ທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສ່ຽງເໜືອ ແລະຊາວນາທີ່ຮັ່ງມີຊຶ່ງຢູ່ທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກກາງ (Middle West). ສະມາຊິກຂອງພັກ Republican Party ສົນໃຈກ່ຽວກັບຄວາມຊື່ສັດຂອງສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນແລະອິສລະພາບຂອງພວກຂ້າທາດ. ພັກນີ້ໄດ້ຮັບການສນັບສນູນຈາກຊາວເໜືອຈຳນວນຫລາຍຄົນແລະຈາກພວກທີ່ຖືກປົດປ່ອຍໃຫ້ເປັນອິສລະໃນພາກໃຕ້.

໑໘.໑.໓. ພັກ Democratic Party ເປັນພັກທີ່ມີຄວາມເຂັ້ມແຂງທີ່ສຸດຢູ່ໃນທ້ອງຖິ່ນທີ່ມີຄົນງານປະຈຳໂຮງງານຫັຖກັມແລະອົພຍົພເປັນຈຳນວນຫລາຍເຊັ່ນທາງພາກໃຕ້ແລະບາງແຫ່ງໃນພາກຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງເໜືອ. ພວກຄົນເຫລົ່ານີ້ເປັນພວກທຸກແລະມັກຈະຖືກຂູດຮີດຈາກພວກຮັ່ງມີ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງການຊ່ວຍເຫລືອຈາກພັກການເມືອງແລະຈາກສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນຕ່າງໆ.

໑໘.໑.໔. ຫລັງຈາກສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງພັກ Republican ມີອຳນາດໃນສພາແລະໃນການເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ ສ່ວນພັກ Democrat ມີອຳນາດໃນຣັຖບານປະຈຳຣັຖຕ່າງໆຫລາຍແຫ່ງ. ໃນລະຫວ່າງທີ່ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Grant ດຳຣົງຕຳແໜ່ງຢູ່ນັ້ນ ການສໍ້ລາດບັງຫລວງໄດ້ແຜ່ຂຍາຍທົ່ວປະເທດແລະການເສື່ອມໂຊມຂອງການປົກຄອງປະເທດໄດ້ປາກົດຕົວຂຶ້ນ. ຜູ້ທີ່ຂາດຄວາມຮູ້ຄວາມສາມາດຈຳນວນຫລາຍໄດ້ຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງໃນວົງຣັຖບານຍ້ອນເຄີຍເປັນຜູ້ສນັບສນູນພັກການເມືອງຂອງຕົນຢ່າງຊື່ສັດ. ສະພາບການດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ຣັຖບານຂາດປະສິດທິພາບ ຂາດຄວາມຮັບຜິດຊອບ ແລະເກີດມີການສໍ້ລາດບັງຫລວງຂຶ້ນ.

໑໘.໑.໔. ເມື່ອເຖິງເວລາຈາກລົບສູ່ສະໄໝປົກກະຕິສົມບູນ ສະມາຊິກຜູ້ທີ່ມີຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກສຸດຈະອິດຕົວໃນພັກ Democratic ແລະໃນພັກ Republican ຫຼາຍຄົນຈຶ່ງຄັດຄ້ານຕໍ່ລະບົບການປົກຄອງທີ່ເຈື່ອນໄຊ (Spoils system) ແລະໄດ້ສະແດງຄວາມປະສົງທີ່ຈະໃຊ້ລະບົບທີ່ອີງໃສ່ຄຸນງາມຄວາມດີແລະຄວາມສາມາດ (Merrit system) ຂອງຄົນແທນລະບົບທີ່ເປັນຢູ່ໃນຂະນະນັ້ນ. ຄວາມໝາຍຂອງລະບົບ Merrit system ນີ້ຢູ່ວ່າ ຜູ້ທີ່ຈະໄດ້ຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງໜ້າທີ່ໃນວົງການຂອງລັດຖະບານນັ້ນຈະຕ້ອງເປັນຜູ້ທີ່ມີຄວາມຮູ້ຄວາມສາມາດອັນເໝາະສົມແກ່ຕຳແໜ່ງໜ້າທີ່ທີ່ສຸດ ໂດຍບໍ່ອີງໃສ່ຄວາມຄິດຄວາມເຫັນທາງການເມືອງຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ ຫຼືອີງໃສ່ການຮັບໃຊ້ພັກການເມືອງແຕ່ປະການໃດ. ພວກຄົນເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນໄດ້ແກ່ພວກນັກຂ່າວໜັງສືພິມ ຫຼື ຜູ້ທີ່ມີຄວາມຮູ້. ຄົນພວກນີ້ເປັນນັກປະຕິຮູບຈຶ່ງໃຊ້ໜັງສືພິມແລະວາລະສານໂຈມຕີຄວາມຊົ່ວຮ້າຍຂອງລະບົບເຈື່ອນໄຊຢູ່ໃນເວລານັ້ນ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຮັບການສະໜັບສະໜູນຈາກປະຊາຊົນຜູ້ທີ່ມີຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກຕົວຫຼາຍ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຮ້ອງຂໍໃຫ້ສະພາສະສາງບັນຫາຄວາມເຈື່ອນໄຊໃນວົງລັດຖະບານ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນໃນປີ ໑໘໘໓ ສະພາຈຶ່ງໄດ້ອອກດຳລັດທີ່ມີຊື່ວ່າ The Pendleton Act. ດຳລັດນີ້ໄດ້ບົ່ງໃຫ້ຕັ້ງຄະນະກຳມະການກ່ຽວກັບໜ້າທີ່ຣາຊການ (Civil service commission) ຂຶ້ນເພື່ອຢັ່ງເບິ່ງຄວາມເໝາະສົມຂອງຜູ້ສະໝັກເຂົ້າຮັບໃຊ້ໃນຣາຊການຫຼວງໃນຮູບຂອງການສອບເສັງ. ຍ້ອນດຳລັດດັ່ງກ່າວຈຶ່ງມີພຽງ ໑໔.໐໐໐ ຄົນເທົ່ານັ້ນໃນຈຳນວນ ໑໐໐.໐໐໐ ຄົນຖືກຮັບເອົາເຂົ້າເຮັດວຽກໃຫ້ລັດຖະບານ.

໑໘.໒. ການເໜັງຕີງທີ່ກ້າວໜ້າ

໑໘.໒.໑. ນອກຈາກທຳການລົບລ້າງລະບົບເຈື່ອນໄຊນັ້ນແລ້ວ ພັກດັ່ງກ່າວທັງສອງຍັງໄດ້ວາງແຜນເສດຖະກິດຫຼາຍຢ່າງໄວ້ອີກ. ແຜນເສດຖະກິດທີ່ສຳຄັນຄື ບັງຄັບລາຄາສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າລົງ ສອງການວາງໂຄງການເພື່ອຄວບຄຸມການຄ້າ ສາມວາງມາດຖານຂອງເງິນຕາ.

໑໘.໒.໒. ພວກທີ່ຂັນອັນແຂງໃນພັກ Democratic ນັ້ນເອົາໃຈໃສ່ໃນພາກໃຕ້ເປັນສ່ວນໃຫຍ່. ເຂົາເຈົ້າເປັນຊາວນາແລະເປັນຄົນງານປະຈຳໃນໂຮງງານຫັດຖະກຳ. ພວກນີ້ເຫັນດີກັບການຫຼຸດລາຄາສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າ ເພາະວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າຈະໄດ້ຊື້ເຄື່ອງໃຊ້ຂອງສອຍແລະອຸປະກອນເຄື່ອງມືສຳຄັນໃຊ້ໃນໄຮ່ໃນສວນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າທີ່ມາຈາກຕ່າງປະເທດໃນລາຄາຖືກຂຶ້ນກວ່າເດີມ.

໑໘.໒.໓. ກົງກັນຂ້າມພວກເຈົ້າຂອງໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມແລະພວກຊາວນາທີ່ຍັງມີທີ່ສັງກັດໃນພັກ Republican ນັ້ນຕ້ອງການເກັບພາສີສິນຄ້າເຂົ້າປະເທດໃນອັດຕາອັນສູງ. ການເກັບພາສີປະເພດນີ້ເປັນວິທີທີ່ໄດ້ຜົນທີ່ສຸດເພື່ອຫ້າມບໍ່ໃຫ້ສິນຄ້າຕ່າງປະເທດເຂົ້າມາຕີຕລາດພາຍໃນປະເທດແລະເປັນວິທີແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາວ່າງງານ ພ້ອມກັບເປັນວິທີ ທີ່ພາໃຫ້ເສດຖະກິດຈະເຣີນກ້າວໜ້າອີກດ້ວຍ.

໑໘.໒.໔. ຕາມຣັຖທັມມະນູນແລ້ວ ສະພາມີສິດອຳນາດຄວບຄຸມການຄ້າຣະຫວ່າງຣັຖ. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍດີການຄວບຄຸມກິຈການການຄ້າຣະຫວ່າງຣັຖຕ່າງໆນັ້ນເປັນການຍາກທີ່ສຸດ ເພາະວ່າບໍຣິສັດຣົດໄຟທຸກບໍຣິສັດຢູ່ໃນກຳມືຂອງພວກທີ່ມີອິດທິພົນແລະຮັ່ງມີທີ່ສຸດໃນປະເທດ. ກຸ່ມເຫຼົ່ານີ້ສາມາດຈັດຈູງພວກສະມາຊິກສະພາສູງແລະສາມາດດຶງເອົາການສນັບສນູນຈາກສະພາໄດ້. ຕາບໃດຣັຖບານຫາກໄກ່ເກ່ຍກັບບໍຣິສັດຣົດໄຟທັງຫລາຍນັ້ນບໍ່ໄດ້ຜົນ ຕາບນັ້ນການລົບລ້າງການຜູກຂາດໃນການຄ້າຈຶ່ງເປັນໄປບໍ່ໄດ້. ພວກເຈົ້າຂອງບໍຣິສັດການຄ້າເລັກນ້ອຍທັງຫລາຍມີຄວາມວິຕົກກ່ຽວກັບສະມາຄົມການຄ້າ (trust) ແລະວິທີການຜູກຂາດເປັນອັນມາກ ດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງຈູງຍູ້ຂະບວນປະຕິຮູບໃນສະພາໃຫ້ອອກກົດໝາຍເພື່ອຄວບຄຸມການຄ້າຣະຫວ່າງຣັຖຂຶ້ນ. ສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳລັດກ່ຽວກັບການຄ້າຣະຫວ່າງຣັຖ The Interstate Commerce Act (ICA)ໃນປີ ໑໘໘໗ ແລະໄດ້ຈັດຕັ້ງຄະນະກັມມະການກ່ຽວກັບການຄ້າຣະຫວ່າງຣັຖຂຶ້ນ Interstate Commerce Commission (ICC) ເພື່ອທຳການຄວບຄຸມການຄ້າ ຄວບຄຸມການບໍຣິການ ແລະ ອັດຕາຄ່າຣົບຈ້າງຣະຫວ່າງຣັຖ. ຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວຄະນະກັມມະການດັ່ງກ່າວມີອຳນາດນ້ອຍທີ່ສຸດ ແລະ ດຳລັດກ່ຽວກັບການຄ້າຣະຫວ່າງຣັຖນັ້ນເຮັດອອກມາເພື່ອບໍ່ໃຫ້ປະຊາຊົນຮ້ອງໄຮເທົ່ານັ້ນແທນທີ່ຈະເກີດປະໂຍດອັນແທ້ຈິງ.

໑໘.໒.໕. ປະຊາຊົນທົ່ວປະເທດບໍ່ພໍໃຈກັບດຳລັດ ICA ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຮ້ອງຂໍໃຫ້ຣັຖບານຫາທາງລະງັບສະມາຄົມການຄ້າ trusts ຕື່ມອີກ. ຕໍ່ມາໃນປີ ໑໘໙໐ ສະພາຈຶ່ງໄດ້ອອກດຳລັດເພື່ອຕ້ານການຜູກຂາດໃນການຄ້າເອີ້ນວ່າ The Sherman Antitrust Act. ເນື່ອງຈາກດຳລັດທີ່ກ່າວມານັ້ນບໍ່ແຈ້ງຂາວ ພວກນາຍທຶນໄດ້ຮັບຈ້າງນ້ອຍແລະກຸ່ມຜູກຂາດຈຶ່ງແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍອອກເລື້ອຍໆ.

໑໘.໒.໖. ບັນຫາອີກຢ່າງນຶ່ງທີ່ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໘໙໐ ແມ່ນການຕໍ່ສູ້ຖົກຖຽງກັນເຣື່ອງມາດຕະຖານຂອງເງິນຕາ. ພວກເຈົ້າຂອງໂຮງງານ ເຈົ້າຂອງທະນາຄານ ແລະພວກນັກການຄ້າສນັບສນູນການໃຊ້ຄຳເປັນມາດຕະຖານ. ພວກກຸ່ມເຫຼົ່ານີ້ຕ້ອງການວາງຂອບເຂດການໝູນວຽນຂອງທະນາບັດແລະຕ້ອງການປ້ອງກັນຣາຄາສິນຄ້າຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າພ້ອມກັບປ້ອງກັນອັດຕາຄ່າດອກເບ້ຍຂອງເງິນທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າໃຫ້ຄົນອື່ນຢືມ. ພວກຊາວນາແລະພວກຄົນງານທົ່ວ

ໄປສນັບສນູນໃຫ້ໃຊ້ຕົວຄຳແລະເງິນແທ່ງເປັນມາດຕະຖານ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຮ້ອງໃຫ້ລັຖບານເພີ້ມຈຳນວນທະນະບັດທີ່ໝູນວຽນຢູ່ນັ້ນໂດຍອີງໃສ່ເງິນແລະຄຳ. ພວກຊາວນາແລະພວກທີ່ຕິດໜີ້ ກໍ ລຸກຂື້ນຕ້ອງການເງິນທີ່ມີຄ່າຕ່ຳ (Cheap money) ເພື່ອໃຊ້ໃນການຈ່າຍໜີ້ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ພວກເຈົ້າຂອງໂຮງງານແລະເຈົ້າຂອງທະນາຄານທີ່ໃຫຍ່ໆບໍ່ເຕັມໃຈໃຫ້ໃຊ້ເງິນແລະຄຳເປັນມາດຕະຖານ ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າຈື່ງໃຊ້ກຳລັງຊັບແລະອຳນາດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເພື່ອທຳລາຍພວກທີ່ສນັບສນູນນະໂຍບາຍຂອງພວກຊາວນາທີ່ທຸກຍາກແລະພວກລູກໜີ້ໃນສະພາແລະໃນການເລືອກຕັ້ງປະທານາທິບໍດີ ໑໘໙໖. ຜົນປາກົດວ່າທ່ານ William Mckinley ຊຶ່ງເປັນຜູ້ນຳຂອງພວກທີ່ສນັບສນູນການໃຊ້ຄຳເປັນມາດຕະຖານນັ້ນໄດ້ຖືກເລືອກເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ ແລະໃນປີ ໑໘໙໗ ທາງການໄດ້ປະກາດໃຊ້ຄຳເປັນມາດຕະຖານຂອງເງິນຕາ.

໑໘.໓. ປະເທດຊາດກາຍເປັນມະຫາອຳນາດໃນໂລກ

໑໘.໓.໑. ຄວາມຈະເລີນດ້ານອຸດສາຫະກັມເຮັດໃຫ້ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາເກີດມີຄວາມຕ້ອງການຕະຫຼາດໃນຕ່າງປະເທດເພື່ອຂາຍສິນຄ້າຕ່າງໆ. ພວກນັກການຄ້າແລະພວກຜູ້ນຳທະຫານໄດ້ສນັບສນູນການຄອບຄອງດິນແດນໃນຕ່າງປະເທດເພື່ອໃຫ້ໄດ້ທ່າເຮືອແລະຕະຫຼາດຫຼາຍຂື້ນ. ໃນປີ ໑໘໗໘ ສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ສ້າງທ່າເຮືອຢູ່ Pago Pago ໃນເກາະ Samoa Islands ອັນເປັນເຫດໃຫ້ລັຖບານປະເທດອັງກິດແລະເຢຍຣະມັນປະທ້ວງຕໍ່ຕ້ານ ໂດຍສົ່ງເຮືອຮົບເຂົ້າໄປໃນບໍຣິເວນເກາະດັ່ງກ່າວ ແຕ່ບໍ່ນານພວກອັງກິດໄດ້ຖອຍໜີ. ສັນສະຫະຣັຖແລະປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນຈື່ງໄດ້ແບ່ງປັນດອນນັ້ນໃນລະຫວ່າງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ.

໑໘.໓.໒. ເກາະ Hawaii ເປັນອີກຈຸດນຶ່ງທີ່ກອງທັບເຮືອຂອງສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຕັ້ງເປົ້າໝາຍໄວ້. ຖ້າຫາກກອງທັບເຮືອຂອງສະຫະຣັຖຍຶດຄອງເອົາເກາະແຫ່ງນີ້ໄດ້ ການເປີດທາງເດີນທະເລເສັ້ນໃໝ່ໄປສູ່ປະເທດຈີນແລະພາກຕາເວັນອອກໄກນັ້ນກໍ່ຈະສະດວກຂື້ນ. ໃນປີ ໑໘໘໐ ພວກນັກທຸລະກິດຊາວອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ລົງທຶນຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍໃສ່ການປູກອ້ອຍໃນເກາະ Hawaii ໃນປີ ໑໘໙໐ ລາຊີນີ Liliuokalani ໄດ້ເປັນຜູ້ປົກຄອງເກາະແລະນາງຕ້ອງການຕັດອິດທິພົນຂອງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນນັ້ນລົງ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນຜົນປະໂຍດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າພວກອະເມຣິກັນຢູ່ໃນເກາະນັ້ນຈື່ງໄດ້ວາງແຜນເຮັດປະຕິວັດຂື້ນ. ຫຼັງຈາກການປະຕິວັດຕໍ່ຕ້ານລາຊີນີທ່ານໄປຢ່າງສຳເຣັດຜົນໃນປີ ໑໘໙໓ ເກາະ Hawaii ກໍໄດ້ຖືກຈັດເຂົ້າເປັນສ່ວນນຶ່ງຂອງສະຫະຣັຖ. ການປະຕິວັດດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ແມ່ນພວກອະເມຣິກັນທີ່ອາໄສຢູ່ໃນເກາະ Hawaii ນັ້ນເອງເປັນຜູ້ເຮັດຂື້ນໂດຍການສນັບສນູນຈາກນະສິງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນປະຈຳ Hawaii.

໑໘.໓.໓. ເປົ້າໝາຍຕໍ່ໄປແມ່ນປະເທດຈີນ. ຄວາມຈິງຫລັງປະເທດຕ່າງໆໃນຢູໂຣບເຄີຍບັງຄັບໃຫ້ປະເທດຈີນເຊັນສົນທິສັນຍາມາເປັນເວລາຫລາຍປີ ເພື່ອໃຫ້ປະເທດເຫລົ່ານັ້ນມີສິດຄ້າຂາຍໃນປະເທດຈີນ. ສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາກໍຕ້ອງການໄດ້ສິດນັ້ນເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນສະຫະລັດຈຶ່ງໄດ້ສເນີນະໂຍບາຍແບບເປີດກວ້າງ (Open door policy) ໝາຍຄວາມວ່າປະເທດຕ່າງໆທັງໝົດມີສິດຄ້າຂາຍກັບປະເທດຈີນຢ່າງເທົ່າທຽມກັນ.

໑໘.໓.໔. ພວກອະເມຣິກັນທີ່ຢາກຂຍາຍອິດທິພົນໃນຕ່າງປະເທດມີຄວາມກັງວົນໃນການທີ່ປະເທດສະເປນເຂົ້າໄປໃນ Cuba ແລະໃນເກາະ Caribeen. ພວກ Cubansໄດ້ຕໍ່ສູ້ເອົາເອກຣາດມາເປັນເວລາຫລາຍປີດ້ວຍກັນ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Mckinley ບໍ່ມີຄວາມປະສົງແຊກແຊງໃນບັນຫາຂອງ Cuba. ແຕ່ໃນເວລານັ້ນໄດ້ມີຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫລາຍຄົນອາໃສຢູ່ໃນເມືອງ Havana. ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນຊີວິດຄົນເຫລົ່ານີ້ ຣັຖບານສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາຈຶ່ງໄດ້ສົ່ງເຮືອລົບທີ່ຊື່ວ່າ Maine ລົງໄປສູ່ Havana. ເຮືອລົບດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຖືກລະເບີດໃນທ່າເຮືອແລະມີຜູ້ເສັຽຊີວິດ ໒໖໐ ຄົນ. ເນື່ອງຈາກເຫດການເຊັ່ນນີ້ປະຊາຊົນຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຂຶ້ນໃຫ້ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Mckinley ເອົາທ່າທີ. ທ່ານໄດ້ຮ້ອງໃຫ້ສະພາປະກາດສົງຄາມກັບ Spain ຊຶ່ງສະພາໄດ້ຕົກລົງເຫັນດີ. ສົງຄາມລະຫວ່າງສະຫະລັດແລະ Spain ນັ້ນບໍ່ໄດ້ເກີດແຕ່ສະເພາະໃນບໍຣິເວນທະເລ Caribean ເທົ່ານັ້ນ ຢູ່ໃນເກາະ Philippines ກໍມີການສູ້ລົບເໝືອນກັນ. ເສິກໄດ້ມີຂຶ້ນພຽງເທົ່າໃດເດືອນເທົ່ານັ້ນ ສະຫະລັດກໍໄດ້ຍຶດເອົາເກາະຫລາຍແຫ່ງຕື່ມອີກໃນໂລກ.
ໄດ້ເສັຽສົງຄາມແລະໄດ້ມອບເກາະ Cuba, Puerto Rico ແລະ Guam ໃຫ້ແກ່ສະຫະລັດ.

໑໘.໓.໕. ນັບຈາກເວລາທີ່ສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາຍັງເປັນປະເທດທີ່ໜຸ່ມແລະອ່ອນແອຢູ່ນັ້ນຈົນເຖິງເວລາທີ່ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນປະເທດມະຫາອຳນາດໃນໂລກເປັນເວລາຢູ່ປະມານຮ້ອຍປີ. ໃນຂັ້ນທຳອິດສະຫະລັດເປັນປະເທດອ່ອນແອທີ່ສຸດ ໂດດດ່ຽວແລະມີນະໂຍບາຍເປັນກາງ. ຍ້ອນຄວາມຈເຣີນດ້ານເສດຖະກິດແລະດ້ານການຄ້າ ສະຫະລັດໄດ້ກາຍເປັນປະເທດທີ່ມີອຳນາດອັນດັບໂລກ ແລະໄດ້ຍຶດຄອງເອົາດິນແດນຕ່າງໆໃນຕ່າງປະເທດເພື່ອເປັນຕລາດສຳລັບສິນຄ້າທີ່ຜລິດໄດ້.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. **ຊອກຫາສັບ**. :

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດກ້ອງສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບທັ້ງທາງຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະຕາມທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນຄວາມໝາຍຂອງສັບນັ້ນລົງໄປ.

COMPETITION
CORRUPT
EXPANSIONIST
ROAD
SEAWAY
WORLD POWER
MERIT SYSTEM
STANDARD

JOURNALIST
MONETARY
EXPLOIT
CONGRESS
OPEN DOOR
INTEGRITY
BANKER
FACTORY

FARMER
DEMOCRATS
REFORMER
EVIL
CURRENCY
SCHOLAR
GOLD
TARGET

C O M P E T I T I O N T A R G E T W

J D O S X M O T C F A R M E R O W O

O E N T P C O R R U P T O F C P O R

U M E A A C O N G R E S S O O E R L

R O T N N F A C T O R Y N R N N O D

N C A D S E X P L O I T I M G D W P

A R R A I R O A D E V I L E R O O O

L A Y R O L S E A W A Y U R E O R W

I T O D N C U R R E N C Y O S R T E

S S N B I N T E G R I T Y R S U H R

T E O M S C H O L A R T G O L D S A

M E R I T S Y S T E M B A N K E R T

360

໒. ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັນ : ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາສັບຄຳເຂົ້າແຕ່ລະຄຳໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໂດຍຂຽນຄຳຕອບຊຶ່ງເປັນຕົວເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ປະໄວ້ນັ້ນສຳຫຼັບຄຳຕອບທຸກຄຳ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
________(ກ) ການຜູກຂາດໃນການຄ້າ	(໑) ແມ່ນນະໂຍບາຍຊຶ່ງແມ່ນສະຫະຣັຖເປັນຜູ້ລິເລີ ເປັນຄັ້ງທຳອິດເພື່ອໃຫ້ທຸກຊາດມີສິດໃນການຄ້າຂາຍກັບປະເທດຈີນຢ່າງເທົ່າທຽມກັນ.
________(ຂ) ຂ້າຣາຊການພົນລະເຮືອນ	(໒) ການມອບຕຳແໜ່ງໃນອົງລັຖບານເປັນການຕອບແທນການສນັບສນູນທາງການເມືອງ.
________(ຄ) ນັກປະຕິຮູບ	(໓) ກ່ຽວກັບການປັບປຸງໃຫ້ດີຂຶ້ນເພື່ອຄວາມກ້າວໜ້າ.
________(ງ) ຄົນຕ່າງດ້າວ	(໔) ຕຳແໜ່ງວຽກໃນຣະດັບລັຖບານກາງ ລັຖບານປະຈຳຣັຖ ແລະລັຖບານທ້ອງຖິ່ນອີງຕາມຄຸນງາມຄວາມດີແລະຄວາມສາມາດ.
________(ຈ) ນະໂຍບາຍແບບເປີດກວ້າງ	(໕) ຄົນຜູ້ທີ່ອອກຈາກປະເທດຂອງຕົນເພື່ອໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນປະເທດອື່ນ.
________(ສ) ຣະບົບການປົກຄອງທີ່ເຊື່ອມໂຊມ	(໖) ຜູ້ທີ່ມີຄວາມຕ້ອງການປັບປຸງສະພາບການຕ່າງໆໃຫ້ດີຂຶ້ນ.
________(ຊ) ຫົວກ້າວໜ້າ	(໗) ການຄວບຄຸມໂຮງງານຫຼືຄວບຄຸມການຄ້າຂອງສິນຄ້າຢ່າງໃດຢ່າງນຶ່ງໂດຍກຸ່ມຫຼືບໍຣິສັດດຽວເທົ່ານັ້ນ.

໓. ຖືກ ຫຼື ຜິດ :

ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກແລ້ວໝາຍອັກສອນ T ໃສ່ໜ້າປະໂຍກທີ່ທ່ານເຫັນວ່າຖືກ ແລະ ໝາຍອັກສອນ F ໃສ່ໜ້າຫາກປະໂຍກນັ້ນຜິດ.

_____ ໑. ພັກການເມືອງທີ່ສຳຄັນສອງພັກຄື Republican Party ແລະພັກ Democratic Party

_____ ໒. ພັກ Democratic Party ເປັນພັກທີ່ມີພະລັງທີ່ສຸດໃນພາກໃຕ້ແລະໃນບາງທ້ອງຖິ່ນໃນພາກຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງເໜືອ.

_____ ໓. ໃນລະຫວ່າງທີ່ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Grant ຄອງຕຳແໜ່ງຢູ່ນັ້ນການປົກຄອງອັນດີທີ່ສຸດໄດ້ແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍທົ່ວປະເທດ.

_____ ໔. ພວກຄະນະປະຕິຮູບເປັນພວກທີ່ສະໜັບສະໜູນລະບົບການປົກຄອງທີ່ເສື່ອມໂຊມ.

_____ ໕. ພວກ Democrats ເຫັນດີໃຫ້ມີການຂຶ້ນຄ່າພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນຜົນປູກຈາກນາແລະສວນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

_____ ໖. ໃນເກາະ Samao Islands ໄດ້ມີການຕໍ່ສູ້ລະຫວ່າງກອງທັບເຮືອຂອງສະຫະລັດແລະກອງທັບອັງກິດເປັນຢ່າງໜັກ.

_____ ໗. ໃນປີ ໑໘໙໐ ຣາຊິນີ Liliuokalani ເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງໂຮງງານໃນ Hawaii

_____ ໘. ນະໂຍບາຍເປີດກວ້າງເປັນນະໂຍບາຍຈຳກັດຈຳນວນຄົນຈີນເຂົ້າໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນສະຫະລັດໃນແຕ່ລະປີ.

_____ ໙. Cuba ຖືກຈັດເຂົ້າເປັນດິນແດນຂອງສະຫະລັດຈາກການພົບປະລະຫວ່າງສະພາຂອງສະຫະລັດແລະປະທານາທິບໍດີ Cuba.

_____໑໐. Puerto Rico ເປັນຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນຂອງປະເທດຍີ່ປຸ່ນໃນປີ ໑໘໙໘.

໔. ການຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ : ຈົ່ງຂຽນຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ພວກຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ໄປນີ້ໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍອັນຖືກຕ້ອງ : ທາງດ້ານການເມືອງ, ທາງດ້ານເສດຖະກິດ, ຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກ, ລະບົບການປົກຄອງທີ່ເສື່ອມໂຊມ, ລະບົບຂັ້ນເງິນເດືອນຫຼືເລື່ອນຂັ້ນໂດຍອີງໃສ່ຜົນງານຄວາມດີຂອງພະນັກງານ, ລົບລ້າງ, ຈັກງູ, ການຜູກຂາດໃນການຄ້າ, ການໝູນວຽນຂອງເງິນຕາ, ເງິນຕາທີ່ມີຄ່າຖືກ, ນະໂຍບາຍເປີດກວ້າງ.

໑. ປະເທດໄດ້ມີການປ່ຽນແປງທາງດ້ານ ____________________ ແລະທາງດ້ານ ____________________ ຫຼາຍຢ່າງ.

໒. ພວກ Republicans ມີຄວາມກັງວົນກ່ຽວກັບ ____________________ ຂອງສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ ແລະອິສລະພາບຂອງຂ້າທາດ.

໓. ໃນລະຫວ່າງທີ່ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Grant ຄອງຕຳແໜ່ງຢູ່ນັ້ນການສໍ້ລາດບັງຫຼວງໄດ້ລະບາດທົ່ວປະເທດ ແລະ ____ ໄດ້ປາກົດຕົວຂຶ້ນ.

໔. ພວກ Democrats ແລະ Republicans ທີ່ມີຄວາມຊື່ສັດສຸດຈະລິດໄດ້ຕໍ່ຕ້ານລະບົບການປົກຄອງທີ່ເຊື່ອມໂຊມແລະຕ້ອງການໃຊ້ ____ ແທນ.

໕. ນອກຈາກທຳການ __________________ ລະບົບການປົກຄອງທີ່ເຊື່ອມໂຊມແລ້ວ ພັກການເມືອງທັງສອງກໍໄດ້ວາງແຜນເສດຖະກິດໄວ້ຫຼາຍແຜນດ້ວຍກັນ.

໖. ກຸ່ມເຫຼົ່ານີ້ສາມາດ __________________________ ພວກສະມາຊິກສະພາສູງແລະສາມາດດຶງເອົາການສນັບສນູນຈາກສະພາໄດ້.

໗. ໃນປີ ໑໘໙໐ ສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳລັດ Sherman Antitrust Act ເພື່ອຢັບຢັ້ງ ________ ____.

໘. ພວກເຈົ້າຂອງໂຮງງານແລະເຈົ້າຂອງທະນາຄານຕ້ອງການຈຳກັດການ ______________________ ແລະຕ້ອງການປ້ອງກັນລາຄາສິນຄ້າຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

໙. ພວກຊາວນາແລະພວກລູກໜີ້ຕ່າງໆຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ມີ ____________________________________ ເພື່ອໃຊ້ໃນການຈ່າຍໜີ້ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

໑໐. ລັດຖະບານສະຫະລັດໄດ້ສເນີ ________________________________ ເພື່ອໃຫ້ທຸກປະເທດມີສິດໃນການຄ້າກັບປະເທດຈີນຢ່າງເທົ່າທຽມກັນ.

ໝວດ ໔ : ການປ່ຽນແປງຂອງຊາດ

ພາກ ໑໗ : ການປ່ຽນແປງທາງດ້ານສັງຄົມ

ສັບໃໝ່ :

rural: ຊົນນະບົດ

In 1900, 60% of all Americans lived in rural areas.

urban: ໃນເມືອງ

Between 1860-1900, urban population increased six times.

industrialization: ການພັດທະນາດ້ານອຸດສາຫະກັມ

The growth of industrialization led to the growth of cities in the United States.

contrast: ຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງ

There was a contrast in the way of life for the rich people and the poor people in the cities.

mansion: ເຮືອນໃຫຍ່

Many rich people lived in big mansions.

slum: ບໍລິເວນທີ່ພວກທຸກຈົນຢູ່ກັນຢ່າງໜາແໜ້ນ

Poor immigrants lived in the slums.

resentment: ຄວາມຄຽດແຄ້ນ

The poor people began to feel resentment against the rich.

sincere: ຄວາມຈິງໃຈ

Some politicians were sincere about wanting to improve city life.

electric-powered trolley: ລົດລາງແລ່ນດ້ວຍໄຟຟ້າ

The electric-powered trolleys and elevated cars improved transportation in the cities.

elevated car: ຣົດທີ່ແລ່ນຕາມສະພານລອຍ

waste-disposal system: ການລະບາຍສິ່ງສົກກະປົກໃສໄຕກ

Another improvement in the city life is a waste-disposal system.

settlement house: ສູນການພັກຜ່ອນຍ່ອນໃຈແລະການສຶກສາໃນຍ່ານພວກທຸກຂອງເມືອງ

Settlement houses provided social and recreational activities to residents in poor sections of the city.

coolie: ກູລີ

The Chinese unskilled workers who helped build the railroads were called coolies.

sweatshop: ໂຮງງານທີ່ພວກຄົນງານເຮັດວຽກໃນສະພາບອັນບໍ່ດີບໍ່ຈີບແລະໄດ້ເງິນຄ່າຈ້າງຕ່ຳ

Many immigrants worked in sweatshops doing handwork.

quota system: ການອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ຄົນຈາກຕ່າງປະເທດເຂົ້າມາອາໃສໃນສະຫະຣັຖໃນຈຳນວນຈຳກັດແຕ່ລະປີ

A quota system was established to limit immigrants to the U.S.

reservation: ດິນຈັດໄວ້ສຳຫຼັບພວກອິນເດັຍແດງ

Indians were forced to live on reservations.

literacy test: ການທົດສອບກ່ຽວກັບຄວາມສາມາດດ້ານອ່ານອອກຂຽນໄດ້

Southern States forced blacks to pass a literacy test to be able to vote.

advertisement: ຄຳປະກາດ

Businessmen placed advertisements for their products in newspapers and magazines.

skyscraper: ຕຶກສູງ ຫຼື ດາດຟ້າ

As cities grow in size, skyscrapers and suspension bridges were built newly created materials, like steel.

suspension bridge: ຂົວທີ່ມີສາຍເຫຼັກຫ້ອຍໄວ້ທາງເທິງແລະບໍ່ມີເສົາຄ້ຳທາງລຸ່ມ

READING

19.1. THE RISE OF THE CITY

19.1.1. After the Civil War, the growth of the cities was one of the most important developments in the United States. From 1860 to 1890, the urban population increased six times. In 1860 about 19% of the population lived in the cities; in 1900 about 40% Americans lived in the cities and towns. Three important developments contributed to the increase of the urban population and the growth of the cities: the increased number of new factories, the movement of rural people to the cities, and the large number of immigrants entering the United States.

19.1.2. During the Age of Industrialisation, many new factories had been built in the cities. These factories provided many jobs and thousands of people came to the cities seeking work. Among those who came looking for jobs were many farmers. Life in the rural areas had become very difficult.

Farmers worked long hours for little pay. Others who came to find jobs were immigrants from the poor countries in Europe, Asia, and Latin America. They came to the cities hoping to find work and a better way of life.

19.1.3. As the cities grew in size and as the urban population increased, two new problems appeared. First, city life presented a **contrast** between the way of life for the rich and the poor. The rich lived in many beautiful **mansions** in one area while the poor workers and immigrants lived in **slums** or run-down buildings in another area. This contrast in the life style of the rich and the poor caused **resentment** and created new problems for urban dwellers.

19.1.4. Second, people new to the urban areas knew little about how to govern a city. An unorganized city could hardly cope with the problems caused by thousands of people moving into the area. In the 1870's, many cities were governed by corrupt and inefficient leaders. Many problems occurred and officials of the city government sat idle.

However, many Americans tried to solve these new problems. **Sincere** politicians, from both parties, fought against the corruption and disorganization. These leaders won the support of the people and were gradually elected to replace the inefficient city officials.

19.1.5. The new city leaders worked hard to provide services and to make the city livable. City transportation was improved by **electric-powered trolleys** and **elevated cars.** In the early 1890's, most city streets were lighted by electric lamps. There was also clean water to drink. A **waste-disposal system** was developed to keep the city clean. The police and fire departments grew in size and helped to prevent many crimes and fires in the big cities.

19.1.6. City reformers further attempted to fight crime by setting up centers called **settlement houses**. In these centers, people could find recreation facilities. A famous reformer named Jane Addams established a Settlement House in Chicago called the Hull House. The Hull House provided many social and cultural activities and served as a model for other settlements in the United States.

19.2. PATTERNS OF PREJUDICE AND DISCRIMINATION

19.2.1. Between 1877 and 1914, hundreds of thousands of immigrants came to this country seeking jobs, a better life, and a more promising future. Most of the immigrants who had arrived before the end of the 1870's had come from Western and Northern Europe. Their culture, languages, and customs related easily to American customs and these early immigrants were quickly assimilated. However, after the 1880's, most of the immigrants were coming from different areas such as Eastern, Southern, and Central Europe. These new immigrants brought cultures, religions, and social customs that were very different from those found in America. For this reason the newer immigrants experienced prejudice and discrimination in the new land.

19.2.2. Immigrants also came from other parts of the world. Thousands of Mexicans came to the U.S. to search for jobs and a better way of life. When we built the transcontinental railroads, thousands of Chinese --unskilled workers called "coolies" --were brought to the western coast states to work.

19.2.3. As well as experiencing prejudice and discrimination, immigrants faced many other problems. It was not easy for most immigrants to find jobs because they were unskilled workers. They were forced to work long hours for low wages in the **sweatshops** (the sweatshop was a small business where people did handwork. Many Americans blamed immigrants when too many people entered this country and cities became crowded. The American workers feared that the immigrants would take their jobs for lower wages. The businessmen claimed the immigrants caused violence; thus, they formed the American Protective Association. The association asked Congress to set up a **quota system** which would limit the number of immigrants allowed to enter the country each year. In 1882, the Chinese Exclusion Act was passed and this law stopped all Chinese immigration for ten years.

19.3. THE INDIANS AND THE BLACKS

19.3.1. Two other groups, the Indians and the Blacks, were also victims of prejudice and unfair treatment. After the Civil War, many Americans moved to the West. As they moved West they pushed the Indians out of their lands. The Indians wanted to stay on their lands, so they fought back for almost 30 years. In an effort to end the fighting, the government set aside land for them called **reservations** and forced the Indians to live on the reservations under military guard. Here, the Indians had to depend on the government and they gradually gave up their tribal way of life. Finally, in 1887, Congress passed the Dawes Act which began breaking up Indian reservations and tribes.

19.3.2. The black Americans were also treated as second class citizens. Although the blacks had been protected by the Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth Amendments, in reality, they were not regarded as equal to the whites. Several measures were adopted to prevent the blacks from voting. Some states, especially in the South, passed a Poll Tax Law where person had to pay a tax to vote. The poor and uneducated blacks had to pass a literacy test. The grandfather law stated that an individual could not vote unless his grandfather had voted prior to 1865. In 1865, most of the blacks had been slaves and only a few of them had the right to vote.

19.3.3. Among the black people, there were some famous leaders who fought for equal rights and equal opportunities for black citizens. One of the most famous leaders in the early times was Booker T. Washington. Washington tried to give blacks equal rights through educational opportunities. He founded Tuskegee College for blacks in Tuskegee, Alabama. In 1914, nearly 3,000 blacks earned college degrees and about one million black children were in schools.

19.4. THE CULTURE OF A DYNAMIC NATION

19.4.1. As industrialization increased and cities grew, American culture was also developing rapidly. By 1900, there were many public schools in the United States. Between 1870 and 1900, the number of students rose from 6 million to 15 million. John Dewey, a leader of educational reform, proposed the idea of pragmatism. The goal of Dewey's pragmatism was to prepare students to live in a modern society. Wealthy businessmen helped the growth of education by donating the money to build schools, libraries, and laboratories.

19.4.2. As more Americans were becoming educated large numbers of people read newspapers and magazines for enjoyment. By 1900, there were more than 2,500 newspapers and magazines in the United States. The popularity of newspapers led to the rise of the **advertisement** industry. Businessmen placed advertisements in newspapers to promote their products.

19.4.3. As urban areas increased in size many improvements and inventions were introduced. The architecture in the big cities was remarkable. Architects used many new materials in construction. They used steel to make the framework to supported very tall buildings and bridges. In 1883, the first **suspension bridge** was built in New York City. Many **skyscrapers** replaced the old buildings in Chicago and New York. Electric elevators helped to take people to the top of the tall buildings.

EXERCISES

I. **Word search puzzle:**

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

RURAL AREA
POLITICS
ASPECT
CULTURE
LANGUAGE
INDUSTRY
PREJUDICE
LIVABLE

CONTRAST
MANSION
MAN
CRIME
WASTE
QUOTA
STRANGE

DISCRIMINATE
URBAN, CUSTOM
SLUM
ELECTRIC
TRANSCONTINENTAL
RESENTMENT
FRAMEWORK STEEL

A R U R A L A R E A C D E W R I P A

B D R C O N T R A S T F G A E N R D

B I B H I P O L I T I C S S S D E C

C S A M A N S I O N M N O T E U J B

E C N A K L L V P Q R S S E N S U A

A R C N T U U A S P E C T Q T T D S

D I U V X Y M B C D E F R U M R I O

E M S A B C U L T U R E A O E Y C U

A I T C R I M E G H I K N T M M E T

R N O E L E C T R I C L G A T N O H

A A M V X L A N G U A G E P O R S E

R T R A N S C O N T I N E N T A L R

M E F R A M W O R K S T E E L T U N

II. Matching Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

	A	B
_____	a. architecture	1. a factory or business in which employees have bad working conditions and low wages.
_____	b. Jane Addams	2. provided that each head of an Indian family could claim 160 acres of lands.
_____	c. settlement house	3. thickly populated areas of a city, inhabited by the poorest people.
_____	d. slums	4. art and science of design and construction of buildings.
_____	e. Dawes Act of 1887	5. a tax required to be paid before a person could vote; now illegal.
_____	f. sweat shop	6. the doctrine that defines truth as anything that works or produces good results.
_____	g. pragmatism	7. opened the Hull House in the Chicago Slums in 1889.
_____	h. rural	8. recreational and educational center in poor section of a city.
_____	i. coolies	9. unskilled Chinese workers
_____	j. poll tax	10. related to the country or to an agriculturgal area which is thinly populated.

III. True or False

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put a F in that space if it is false.

_____ 1. During the Age of Industrialization, many new plantations and farms had been established in the cities.

_____ 2. Immigrants entered the U.S. to find jobs and a better life.

_____ 3. Sincere members of both political parties fought corruption and achieved some results.

_____ 4. Settlement houses are buildings for rent.

_____ 5. Jane Addams built sweatshops in Chicago and New York City to hire immigrants.

_____ 6. Many Chinese coolies came to the U.S. when the transcontinental railroads were being built.

_____ 7. The Indians lived very happily in the reservations because the government gave them everything.

_____ 8. In the Southern states, the blacks could vote and had the same right to vote as the whites.

_____ 9. Businessmen and industrialists used magazines and newspapers to promote their products.

_____ 10. Urbanization was a sign of progress in the Industrial Era.

IV. Fill in the blanks Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: contrast, sincere, settlement houses, sweatshops, quota system, reservations, literacy test, suspension bridge.

1. City life represented a ____________ between the rich and the poor.

2. The ____________ members of both political parties fought corruption and achieved some results.

3. City reformers tried to set up neighborhood centers called ____________ .

4. Immigrants were forced to work long hours for low wages in the ____________ .

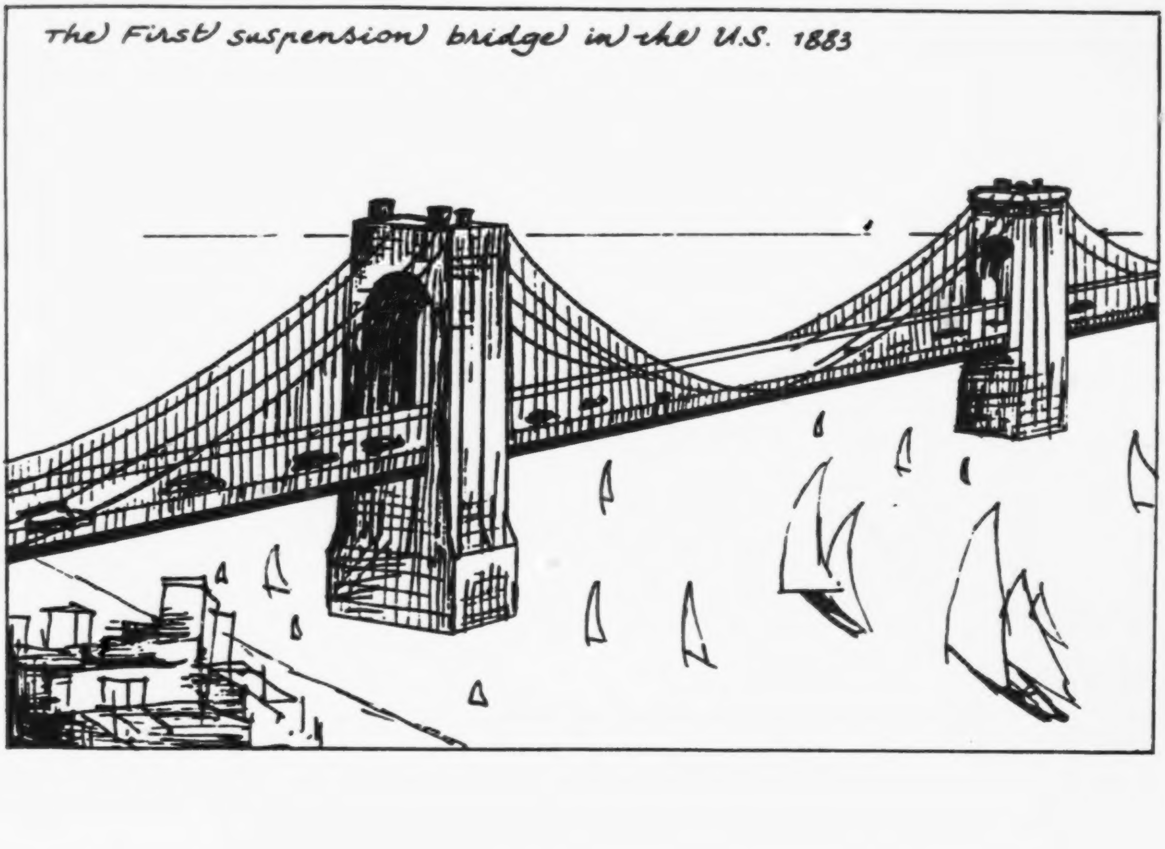
5. The American Protective Association asked Congress to set up a ____________ .

6. The government set aside land for the Indians called ___________ and they forced them to live in those places under military guard.

7. The poor and uneducated black who wanted to vote had to pass a ____________ .

8. In 1883, the first _______________ was built in New York City.

The First suspension bridge in the U.S. 1883



ບົດອ່ານ

໑໙.໑. ການເລີ່ມກໍ່ຕັ້ງເມືອງ

໑໙.໑.໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງ ການຈະເລີນເຕີບໂຕຂອງເມືອງຕ່າງໆເປັນການພັດທະນາທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດປະເພດນຶ່ງຢູ່ໃນສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາ. ການຂະຫຍາຍຕົວຂອງເມືອງສືບເນື່ອງມາຈາກໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມ ພວກອົບພະຍົບແລະການຍົກຍ້າຍຂອງຊາວຊົນນະບົດເຂົ້າໃນຕົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆ. ຈາກປີ ໑໘໖໐ ຫາ ໑໘໙໐ ປະຊາຊົນໃນເມືອງໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍເທົ່າ. ໃນປີ ໑໘໖໐ ຄົນທີ່ຢູ່ໃນເມືອງມີປະມານ ໑໙% ຂອງປະຊາຊົນທັງໝົດ ແລະໃນປີ ໑໙໐໐ ຕົວເລກໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນປະມານ ໔໐% . ການເພີ່ມຈຳນວນຂອງປະຊາຊົນໃນເມືອງຕ່າງໆນັ້ນ ມີຜົນກະທົບຢູ່ຫຼາຍປະການ.

໑໙.໑.໒. ໃນສະໄໝທີ່ມີການພັດທະນາອຸດສາຫະກັມຢູ່ນັ້ນ ໄດ້ມີໂຮງງານໃໝ່ຫຼາຍໂຮງງານຖືກສ້າງຂຶ້ນໃນຕົວເມືອງແລະໃນສະໄໝນັ້ນຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ໃນຊົນນະບົດມີຄວາມລຳບາກຢູ່ບໍ່ນ້ອຍອັນເປັນເຫດໃຫ້ຜູ້ຄົນຍົກຍ້າຍເຂົ້າໄປຊອກຫາວຽກເຮັດງານທຳຢູ່ໃນຕົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນກໍມີພວກອົບພະຍົບທີ່ມາຈາກປະເທດທຸກຍາກໃນຢູໂຣປ ເອເຊັຍ ແລະລາຕິນອະເມຣິກາຕື່ມອີກ. ພວກນີ້ໄດ້ກອງກັນຢູ່ໃນຍ່ານທີ່ທຸກຈົນໃນຕົວເມືອງໃຫຍ່ຫຼາຍຕົວເມືອງ.

໑໙.໑.໓. ໃນເມືອງນັ້ນຊີວິດລະຫວ່າງພວກຮັ່ງມີແລະພວກທຸກມີຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງກັນຫຼາຍ. ບາງແຫ່ງໃນເມືອງມີເຮືອນຊານອັນໃຫຍ່ແລະງົດງາມ ແລະໃນບາງແຫ່ງກໍ່ເປັນຄຸບເປັນຫານ. ພວກອົບພະຍົບທັງຫຼາຍອາໄສຢູ່ຕາມຕູບຫຼືເຮືອນທີ່ຫັກເພແລະມີຊີວິດລຳບາກຂັດສົນ. ຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງລະຫວ່າງຄົນຮັ່ງແລະຄົນທຸກໄດ້ກໍ່ໃຫ້ເກີດມີຄວາມຂັດແຄ້ນແລະບັນຫາໃໝ່ຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍຢ່າງ.

໑໙.໑.໔. ໃນສະໄໝເລີ່ມມີເມືອງໃໝ່ໆ ຊາວເມືອງທັງຫຼາຍມີຄວາມຮູ້ດ້ານການປົກຄອງນ້ອຍທີ່ສຸດ. ສະນັ້ນການຈັດຕັ້ງອັນບໍ່ເປັນລະບຽບຈຶ່ງບໍ່ສາມາດທີ່ຈະແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາທີ່ເກີດຈາກການຍ້າຍເຂົ້າມາຢູ່ໃນເມືອງຂອງຄົນຈຳນວນເປັນພັນໆໄດ້. ໃນປີ ໑໘໗໐ ຄະນະປົກຄອງໃນຕົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆນັ້ນເປັນພວກສໍ້ໂກງແລະຂາດຄວາມສາມາດ. ພວກສະມາຊິກທີ່ມີຈິດໃຈເຫັນແກ່ຕົວທີ່ສັງກັດຢູ່ໃນພັກການເມືອງທັງສອງພັກໄດ້ດຳເນີນການສໍ້ລາດບັງຫຼວງແລະ

ໄດ້ຮັບຜົນບາງປະການ. ສ່ວນຫຼາຍແມ່ນພວກນີ້ເປັນຜູ້ຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອປະຊາຊົນ ສ່ວນພວກທີ່ປະຈຳໃນຣາຊການເມືອງນັ້ນບໍ່ຄ່ອຍຈະໄດ້ເຮັດຫຍັງເລີຍ. ຍ້ອນການເລືອກຕັ້ງແລະຍ້ອນການສນັບສນູນຂອງປະຊາຊົນສະມາຊິກຂອງພັກການເມືອງຈຶ່ງມີໂອກາດໄດ້ຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງແທນພວກທີ່ບໍ່ມີຄວາມສາມາດນັ້ນເປັນລຳດັບໄປ.

໑໓.໑.໔. ເມື່ອຄະນະພັກການເມືອງເຂົ້າກຳຕຳແໜ່ງ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ສະສາງເຮັດໃຫ້ຊີວິດໃນເມືອງໜ້າຢູ່ໜ້າອາໄສຂຶ້ນ. ການຂົນສົ່ງຄົນໂດຍສານໄດ້ປັບປຸງດ້ວຍການໃຊ້ລົດລາງແລ່ນດ້ວຍໄຟຟ້າແລະລົດທີ່ແລ່ນຕາມສະພານລອຍ. ໃນຕົ້ນປີ ໑໙໐໐ ໄດ້ມີໂຄມໄຟຟ້າຕິດຕາມແຄມຖະໜົນຫົນທາງສ່ວນຫຼາຍ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນກໍມີນ້ຳດື່ມທີ່ສະອາດແລະມີການລະບາຍນ້ຳໂສໂຄກເພື່ອຮັກສາຄວາມສະອາດຂອງຕົວເມືອງ. ກົມຕຳຣວດແລະສະຖານີດັບເພີງໄດ້ຊ່ວຍປ້ອງກັນການອາຕະກັມແລະປ້ອງກັນໄຟໄໝ້ບໍ່ໃຫ້ເກີດຢູ່ໃນເມືອງຫຼາຍກໍຣະນີດ້ວຍກັນ.

໑໓.໑.໕. ຄະນະປັບປຸງບ້ານເມືອງໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມຈັດຕັ້ງສູນກາງພັກຜ່ອນຢ່ອນໃຈແລະການສຶກສາອັນເອີ້ນວ່າ settlement house. Jane Addams ໄດ້ສ້າງສູນກາງ Hull House ໄວ້ໃນ Chicago ສຳຫຼັບໃຊ້ເປັນບ່ອນຈັດກິຈກັມດ້ານສັງຄົມແລະວັດທະນະທັມຕ່າງໆ. ສູນກາງນີ້ໄດ້ສ້າງຊື່ສຽງໃຫ້ແກ່ Jane Addams ຫຼາຍທີ່ສຸດ ແລະທົ່ວໄປໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ການສ້າງສູນຕ່າງໆໄດ້ເອົາສູນກາງ Hull House ນີ້ເປັນຕົວຢ່າງ.

໑໓.໒. ການກຽດຊັງແລະການກີດກັນ

໑໓.໒.໑. ລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໘໘໐ ແລະ ໑໙໑໔ ໄດ້ມີອົບພະຍົບຫຼາຍຮ້ອຍພັນຄົນເຂົ້າມາໃນປະເທດນີ້ເພື່ອສແວງຫາຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ທີ່ດີກວ່າເດີມ ແລະເພື່ອສແວງຫາອານາຄົດອັນແຈ່ມໃສ. ໃນເວລາເຂົາເຈົ້າມາເຖິງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ພົບກັບບັນຫາທີ່ເກີດຈາກການກຽດຊັງດູໝິ່ນຂອງຄົນໃນດິນແດນອັນໃໝ່ນີ້. ຈົນເຖິງທ້າຍປີ ໑໘໘໐ ພວກອົບພະຍົບສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ມາຈາກພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສ່ຽງເໜືອແລະຈາກພາກເໜືອຂອງຢູໂຣບ. ວັດທະນະທັມ ພາສາ ແລະປະເພນີຂອງຄົນພວກນີ້ເຂົ້າກັບປະເພນີຂອງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ຢ່າງງ່າຍແລະສະດວກ. ແຕ່ວ່າຫຼັງຈາກປີ ໑໘໙໐ ພວກອົບພະຍົບສ່ວນຫຼາຍນັ້ນມາຈາກຫຼາຍແຫ່ງຕ່າງກັນເຊັ່ນ ມາຈາກທາງພາກຕະເວັນອອກ ພາກໃຕ້ ແລະພາກກາງຂອງຢູໂຣບ. ອົບພະຍົບພວກນີ້ໄດ້ນຳເອົາວັດທະນະທັມ ສາສນາ ແລະປະເພນີ ທີ່ແຕກຕ່າງທີ່ສຸດເຂົ້າມາໃນປະເທດ.

໑໓.໒.໒. ອົບພະຍົບທີ່ມາຈາກສ່ວນອື່ນຂອງໂລກກໍມີເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ. ເຊັ່ນຕົວຢ່າງພວກ Mexicans ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍພັນຄົນໄດ້ເຂົ້າມາຊອກວຽກເຮັດງານທຳແລະຄວາມຢູ່ດີກິນດີ. ໃນເວລາທີ່ມີການສ້າງທາງຣົດໄຟຜ່ານປະເທດ

ຢູ່ນັ້ນ ພວກຊາວຈີນກັມມະກອນຫຼາຍພັນຄົນໄດ້ຖືກສົ່ງໄປເຮັດວຽກໃນຣັຖຕາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ.

໑໗.໔.ຂ. ຄວາມຈິງ ພວກອົບພະຍົບສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ທີ່ເຂົ້າມາໃນປະເທດນີ້ເພື່ອມຸ່ງຫວັງຫາຄວາມຢູ່ດີກິນດີເກີດຂຶ້ນທັງໝົດ. ເນື່ອງຈາກຄົນພວກນີ້ເປັນພວກທີ່ບໍ່ມີອາຊີບສີມື ການຊອກວຽກທຳການຈຶ່ງເປັນການລຳບາກ. ພວກເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຳເປັນຕ້ອງໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກເປັນເວລາຫຼາຍຊົ່ວໂມງ ແລະໄດ້ຮັບຄ່າຈ້າງຕ່ຳຕາມບໍຣິສັດທີ່ຕັ້ງຮ້ານເລັກນ້ອຍຊຶ່ງເອີ້ນວ່າ Sweatshops. ໃນຕອນທຳອິດພວກອົບພະຍົບທັງຫຼາຍໄດ້ຮັບການຕ້ອນຮັບອັນດີເວລາເຂົາເຈົ້າເຂົ້າມາໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ຕໍ່ມາເມື່ອມີຈຳນວນຫຼາຍເຂົ້າມາເພີ່ມ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ປ່ຽນຄວາມນຶກຄິດແລະທ່າທີໂດຍຕໍ່ຕ້ານພວກອົບພະຍົບທົ່ວໄປ ເພາະວ່າພວກຄົນງານຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເກີດມີຄວາມຢ້ານກົວວ່າພວກອົບພະຍົບຈະຍາດເອົາວຽກຂອງເຂົາໄປໂດຍຮັບເອົາຄ່າຈ້າງຕ່ຳ. ພວກເຈົ້າຂອງບໍຣິສັດການຄ້າອ້າງວ່າພວກອົບພະຍົບເປັນພວກທີ່ສ້າງຄວາມວຸ້ນວາຍດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງພາກັນຕັ້ງສະມາຄົມ (The American Protective Association ຂຶ້ນເພື່ອຫາທາງປ້ອງກັນ. ສະມາຄົມທີ່ກ່າວມານີ້ໄດ້ຮ້ອງໃຫ້ສະພາວາງລະບົບ quota system ຂຶ້ນເພື່ອອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ອົບພະຍົບເຂົ້າມາໃນສະຫະຣັຖແຕ່ລະປີຕາມຈຳນວນຈຳກັດ. ໃນປີ ໑໘໘໒ ໄດ້ມີດຳຣັດChinese Exclusion Act ອອກມາຊຶ່ງເຮັດໃຫ້ພວກຊາວຈີນບໍ່ໄດ້ເຂົ້າມາໃນປະເທດນີ້ເປັນເວລາສິບປີເຕັມ.

໑໗.ຂ. ຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງ ແລະ ຊາວຜິວດຳ

໑໗.ຂ.໑. ພາຍຫຼັງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງ ພວກຄົນອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ພາກັນຍ້າຍໄປຢູ່ທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກແລະໄດ້ຂັບໄລ່ພວກອິນເດັຍແດງອອກໜີຈາກດິນແດນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄປ. ດ້ວຍວ່າພວກອິນເດັຍແດງຕ້ອງການຢາກຢູ່ໃນດິນແດນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ ດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຕໍ່ສູ້ກັນເປັນເວລາເກືອບເຖິງສາມສິບປີ. ຣັຖບານໄດ້ຈັດທີ່ດິນໄວ້ຕ່າງຫາກເອີ້ນວ່າ reservations ສຳລັບໃຫ້ພວກອິນເດັຍແດງນັ້ນຢູ່ພາຍໃຕ້ການດູແລຂອງທະຫານ. ໃນ reservations ນັ້ນພວກອິນເດັຍແດງຕ້ອງອາໃສຣັຖບານທຸກຢ່າງແລະໄດ້ປະລະຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຕາມປະເພນີຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ໃນທີ່ສຸດສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳຣັດ Dawes Act ໃນປີ ໑໘໘໗. ດຳຣັດດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ແຍກreservations ແລະເຜົ່າຕ່າງໆຂອງຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງອອກເປັນສ່ວນຍ່ອຍລົງ.

໑໗.ຂ.໒. ອະເມຣິກັນຊາວຜິວດຳເຄີຍຖືກຖືວ່າເປັນປະຊາຊົນຊັ້ນສອງ. ເຖິງວ່າຈະມີການດັດແປງແກ້ໄຂຣັຖທັມມະນູນຄັ້ງທີ່ສິບສີ່ແລະສິບຫ້າເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນເຂົາເຈົ້າຢູ່ກໍຕາມ ແຕ່ພວກຊາວຜິວດຳກໍຍັງບໍ່ຖືກຮັບຮູ້ວ່າເທົ່າທຽມກັນ

ພວກຜິວຂາວຢູ່. ພວກຜິວດຳຖືກຂັດຂວາງໃນການລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງຫຼາຍປະການ ໂດຍສະເພາະໃນທາງພາກໃຕ້ມີກົດໝາຍທີ່ເອີ້ນວ່າ Poll Tax Law ຊຶ່ງບັງຄັບໃຫ້ຄົນຕ້ອງເສຍພາສີເສຍກ່ອນ ກ່ອນທີ່ຈະມີສິດລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງໄດ້. ຊາວຜິວດຳທີ່ທຸກຍາກແລະຂາດການສຶກສານັ້ນກໍຕ້ອງໄດ້ຜ່ານການທົດສອບການຮູ້ໜັງສື. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນກໍຍັງມີກົດໝາຍທີ່ເອີ້ນວ່າ grandfather Law ຊຶ່ງມີເນື້ອໃນໃຈຄວາມວ່າ ຖ້າຜູ້ໃດບໍ່ມີພໍ່ເຖົ້າເຄີຍປ່ອນບັດເລືອກຕັ້ງກ່ອນປີ ໑໘໖໔ ຜູ້ນັ້ນກໍຈະບໍ່ມີສິດປ່ອນບັດເລືອກຕັ້ງ ມີພຽງບໍ່ເທົ່າໃດຄົນເທົ່ານັ້ນ.

໑໙.໓.໓. ຜູ້ນຳຊາວຜິວດຳທີ່ມີຊື່ສຽງທີ່ສຸດໃນສໄມນັ້ນແມ່ນທ່ານ Booker T. Washington. ທ່ານເປັນຫົວໜ້າຂອງມະຫາວິທະຍາໄລ Tuskergee College ຊຶ່ງເປັນມະຫາວິທະຍາໄລສຳຫຼັບຄົນດຳໃນເມືອງ Tuskergee ຣັຖ Alabama. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໔ ມີຄົນດຳເກືອບ ໓.໐໐໐ ຄົນຈົບຈາກມະຫາວິທະຍາໄລແລະມີນັກຮຽນຄົນດຳປະມານນຶ່ງລ້ານຄົນຕາມໂຮງຮຽນຕ່າງໆ.

໑໙.໔. ວັດທະນະທັມຂອງຊາດທີ່ມີພະລັງເຂັ້ມແຂງ

໑໙.໔.໑. ໃນປີ ໑໙໐໐ ໂຮງຮຽນຫຼວງໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາມີຢູ່ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ. ບໍຣິສັດທີ່ລ່ຳລວຍທັງຫຼາຍໄດ້ອອກທຶນສ້າງສາ ໂຮງຮຽນ ຫໍສມຸດ ແລະ ສະຖານທີ່ບັນຄອຫຼາຍແຫ່ງດ້ວຍກັນ. ຈາກປີ ໑໘໗໐ ຫາປີ ໑໙໐໐ ຈຳນວນຂອງນັກຮຽນ ນັກສຶກສາ ໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນຈາກ ໖ ລ້ານຄົນເປັນ ໑໔ ລ້ານຄົນ. ທ່ານ John Dewey ຊຶ່ງເປັນຜູ້ນຳໃນດ້ານການພັດທະນາປັບປຸງການສຶກສາໄດ້ສເນີຄວາມຄິດກ່ຽວກັບການປະຕິບັດໃນສິ່ງທີ່ເກີດຂຶ້ນຈິງແທ້ໆ ຄວາມຄິດນີ້ເອີ້ນວ່າ pragmatism. ຈຸດມຸ່ງໝາຍຂອງທ່ານ Dewey ກໍເພື່ອຕຽມພວກນັກຮຽນທັງຫຼາຍໃຫ້ເຂົ້າກັບສະພາບຂອງສັງຄົມໃໝ່ທີ່ທັນສໄໝ.

໑໙.໔.໒. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໘໗໐ ຫາ ໑໙໑໐ ຄົນອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຫາຄວາມມ່ວນຊື່ນໃນການອ່ານໜັງສືພິມແລະວາຣະສານ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໐໐ ໜັງສືພິມແລະວາຣະສານໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາມີກ່ວາ ໒,໔໐໐ ສະບັບຊຶ່ງອຳນວຍຜົນປະໂຍດໃຫ້ແກ່ຜູ້ອ່ານຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ. ຄວາມນິຍົມຂອງໜັງສືພິມໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ມີໂຮງງານດ້ານໂຄສະນາເກີດຂຶ້ນ. ບໍຣິສັດຫ້າງຮ້ານທັງຫຼາຍອາໃສໜ້າໜັງສືພິມເພື່ອໂຄສະນາສິນຄ້າຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

໑໙.໔.໓. ການຂະຫຍາຍຕົວເມືອງເປັນສັນຍາລັກແຫ່ງຄວາມກ້າວໜ້າໃນຍຸກອຸດສາຫະກັມ. ຊີວິດການເປັນ

ຢູ່ໃນຕົວເມືອງມີການປ່ຽນແປງແລະດີຂຶ້ນ ພ້ອມດຽວກັນການປະດິດຄົ້ນຄິດກໍມີຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ. ວິທີການສ້າງສາ ຕຶກໂຮງ ເຮືອນຊານໃນເມືອງຕ່າງໆກໍເປັນໜ້າປະຫຼາດອັນການໃຊ້ອຸປະກອນໃໝ່ໆຫຼາຍແນວ. ເຊັ່ນການສ້າງຕຶກແລະຂົວກໍມີການໃຊ້ເຫຼັກເປັນໂຄງຮ່າງ. ໃນປີ ໑໘໘໓ ໄດ້ມີການສ້າງຂົວທີ່ມີສາຍເຫຼັກຫ້ອຍໄວ້ທາງເທິງ ແລະບໍ່ມີເສົາຄ້ຳທາງລຸ່ມອັນເປັນຂົວທຳອິດໃນເມືອງ New York ນອກຈາກນັ້ນກໍມີການສ້າງຕຶກດາດຟ້າສູງ ລິບໃຊ້ໄຟຟ້າສຳຫຼັບພາຄົນຂຶ້ນຈອມຕຶກຢູ່ທີ່ເມືອງ Chicago ແລະເມືອງ New York.

<u>ບົດຝຶກຫັດ</u>

໑. <u>ຊອກຫາສັບ</u> :

<u>ຄຳແນະນຳ</u> : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບຫຼືຄຳທີ່ກົງກັບອ້ອມສັບເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໃນຕາຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບທັງທາງຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ແລ້ວຊອກຫາຄວາມໝາຍຂອງສັບນັ້ນອີກໄປ.

RURAL AREA
POLITICS
ASPECT
CULTURE
LANGUAGE
INDUSTRY
PREJUDICE
LIVABLE
CONTRAST
MANSION
MAN
CRIME
WASTE
QUOTA
STRANGE
DISCRIMINATE
URBAN, CUSTOM
SLUM
ELECTRIC
TRANSCONTINENTAL
RESENTMENT
FRAMEWORK STEEL

```
A R U R A L A R E A C D E W R I P A

B D R C O N T R A S T F G A E N R D

B I B H I P O L I T I C S S S D E C

C S A M A N S I O N M N O T E U J B

E C N A K L L V P Q R S S E N S U A

A R C N T U U A S P E C T Q T T D S

D I U V X Y M B C D E F R U M R I O

E M S A B C U L T U R E A O E Y C U

A I T C R I M E G H I K N T M M E T

R N O E L E C T R I C L G A T N O H

A A M V X L A N G U A G E P O R S E

R T R A N S C O N T I N E N T A L R

M E F R A M W O R K S T E E L T U N
```

໒. ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັນ : ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາຄຳສັບເວົ້າແຕ່ລະຄຳໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໂດຍຂຽນຄຳຕອບຊຶ່ງເປັນຕົວເລກໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ປະໄວ້ນັ້ນສຳຫຼັບຄຳຕອບທຸກຄຳ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ (ກ) ສະຖາປັດ	(໑) ໂຮງງານຫຼືບໍລິສັດການຄ້າທີ່ມີຄົນງານເຮັດວຽກໃນສະພາບອັນບໍ່ດີແລະໄດ້ຮັບຄ່າຈ້າງຕ່ຳ
_____ (ຂ) Jane Addams	(໒) ອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ຫົວໜ້າອິນເດັຍແຄວນມີສິດຮ້ອງຮັບເອົາດິນທີ່ມີເນື້ອທີ່ ໑໖໐ ໄຮ່ໄດ້.
_____ (ຄ) ສູນກາງພັກຜ່ອນຢ່ອນໃຈແລະການສຶກສາໃນຍ່ານພວກທຸກຂອງເມືອງ.	(໓) ສະຖານທີ່ບໍລິເວນໃນເມືອງທີ່ມີຄົນທຸກຢູ່ຫຼາຍຢ່າງໜາແໜ້ນ.
_____ (ງ) ບໍລິເວນທີ່ພວກທຸກຢູ່ກັນຢ່າງໜາແໜ້ນ.	(໔) ສິລປະແລະວິທະຍາສາດດ້ານການອອກແບບແລະສ້າງສາ ຕຶກໂຮງ ເຮືອນຊານ.
_____ (ຈ) Dawes Act of 1887	(໕) ການເສັຍພາສີກ່ອນທີ່ຈະມີສິດປ່ອນບັດເລືອກຕັ້ງໄດ້ຊຶ່ງໃນປັດຈຸບັນເປັນການຜິດກົດໝາຍ.
_____ (ສ) ໂຮງງານທີ່ພວກຄົນງານເຮັດວຽກໃນສະພາບບໍ່ດີແລະໄດ້ເງິນນ້ອຍ	(໖) ຄວາມຄິດທີ່ວ່າຄວາມຈິງແມ່ນທຸກສິ່ງທີ່ຈະນຳຜົນມາໃຫ້ຢ່າງແທ້ຈິງ.
_____ (ຊ) Pragmatism	(໗) ເປັນຜູ້ຕັ້ງສູນກາງ Hull House ໃນເມືອງ Chicago ໃນປີ ໑໘໘໙.
_____ (ຍ) ຈິນນະນິດ	(໘) ສູນກາງພັກຜ່ອນຢ່ອນໃຈແລະການສຶກສາຕັ້ງຢູ່ໃນຍ່ານທີ່ມີຄົນທຸກຈົນຂອງຕົວເມືອງ.

_____ (ດ) ກູລີ

_____ (ຕ) poll tax

(໙) ພວກກັມມະກອນຄົນຈີນທີ່ບໍ່ມີວິຊາອາຊີບຕິດຕົວ

(໑໐) ໝາຍເຖິງຈຳນວນພາສີທີ່ຕ້ອງຈ່າຍກະສີກັບຈຳນວນຄົນຢູ່ເປັນກະຈັກກະຈາຍ.

ງ. ຖືກ ຫຼື ຜິດ

ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກແລ້ວໝາຍອັກສອນ T ໃສ່ໜ້າປະໂຍກທີ່ທ່ານເຫັນວ່າຖືກ ແລະ ໝາຍອັກສອນ F ໃສ່ໜ້າປະໂຍກນັ້ນຜິດ.

_____ ໑. ໃນສໄມທີ່ມີການພັດທະນາດ້ານອຸດສະຫະກັມຢູ່ນັ້ນໄດ້ມີການສ້າງຫໍສ້າງຮ້ານໃໝ່ຫຼາຍແຫ່ງຂຶ້ນໃນຫົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆ.

_____ ໒. ພວກອົພຍົບເຂົ້າມາສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາເພື່ອຊອກຫາການແລະຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ອັນດີ.

_____ ໓. ພວກສະມາຊິກທີ່ຊື່ສັດຂອງພັກການເມືອງທັງສອງພັກໄດ້ຕ້ານການສໍ້ຣາດບັງຫຼວງແລະໄດ້ຮັບທຶນບາງສ່ວນ.

_____ ໔. ສູນການພັກຜ່ອນຢ່ອນໃຈສ້າງຂຶ້ນເພື່ອສຳຫຼັບໃຫ້ຄົນເຈົ້າ.

_____ ໕. Jane Addams ສ້າງ Sweatshop ໃນ Chicago ແລະ New York ເພື່ອຈ້າງພວກອົພຍົບ.

_____ ໖. ພວກກັມມະກອນຄົນຈີນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ເຂົ້າມາໃນສະຫະຣັຖໃນເວລາທີ່ມີການສ້າງສາທາງຣົດໄຟຂ້າມປະເທດ.

_____ ໗. ພວກອິນເດັຍແດງຢູ່ໃນ reservations ນັ້ນມີຄວາມສຸຂທີ່ສຸດເພາະວ່າຣັຖບານໄດ້ຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອເຂົາເຈົ້າທຸກຢ່າງ.

_____ ໙. ຢູ່ໃນຣັຖພາກໃຕ້ ພວກຊາວຜິວດຳມີສິດປ່ອນບັດເລືອກຕັ້ງພ້ອມກັບສິດທິອອກຄະແນນສຽງເທົ່າທຽມກັນກັບພວກຜິວຂາວ.

_____ ໘. ພວກນັກການຄ້າແລະເຈົ້າຂອງໂຮງງານຕ່າງໆໃຊ້ວາຣະສານແລະໜັງສືພິມສຳຄັນໂຄສະນາສິນຄ້າຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

_____ ໑໐. ການຂັບຂະຫຍາຍຕົວເມືອງເປັນສັນຍາລັກແຫ່ງຄວາມກ້າວໜ້າໃນຍຸກອຸດສາຫະກັມ.

໔. ຕື່ມຄວາມເຂົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ : ຈົ່ງຂຽນຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ພວກຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍອັນຖືກຕ້ອງ : ຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງ, ຈູ້ສົດ, ສູນກາງພັກຜ່ອນຢ່ອນໃຈ, ໂຮງງານທີ່ພວກກັມມະກອນເຮັດວຽກໃນສະພາບອັນບໍ່ດີແລະໄດ້ຄ່າຈ້າງຕ່ຳ, ການອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ຄົນຈາກຕ່າງປະເທດເຂົ້າມາຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນສະຫະຣັຖຕາມຈຳນວນຈຳກັດໃນແຕ່ລະປີ, ທີ່ດິນຈັດໄວ້ສຳລັບພວກອິນເດັຍແດງ, ການທົດສອບການຮູ້ໜັງສື, ຣົດທີ່ມີສາຍເຊືອກຕ້ອຍໄວ້ທາງເທິງແລະບໍ່ມີເສົາຄ້ຳທາງລຸ່ມ.

໑. ຢູ່ໃນເມືອງຈີ່ອິດການເປັນຢູ່ລະຫວ່າງພວກຮັ່ງມີແລະພວກທຸກຍາກນັ້ນມີຄວາມ ____________________.

໒. ພວກສະມາຊິກ ____________________ ທີ່ສັງກັດຢູ່ໃນພັກການເມືອງທັງສອງພັກໄດ້ຕ້ານການສໍ້ຣາດບັງຫຼວງ ແລະໄດ້ຮັບທຶນບາງສ່ວນ.

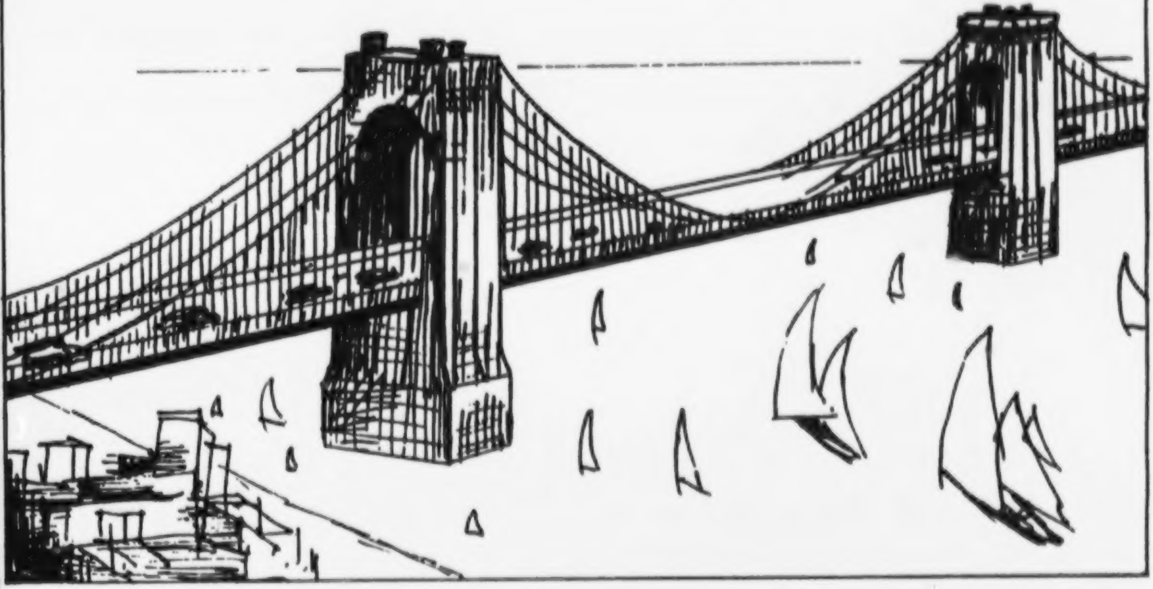
໓. ພວກຄະນະປັບປຸງຕົວເມືອງໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມຈັດຕັ້ງສູນກາງຊຶ່ງເອີ້ນວ່າ ____________________.

໔. ສະມາຄົມ The American Protective Association ໄດ້ຮ້ອງໃຫ້ສະພາ ______ ____.

໕. ຣັຖບານໄດ້ຈັດທີ່ດິນໄວ້ໃຫ້ພວກອິນເດັຍແດງຊຶ່ງເອີ້ນວ່າ ______________________________ ແລະບັງຄັບເຂົາເຈົ້າໃຫ້ຢູ່ໃນບ່ອນທີ່ມີທະຫານຄວບຄຸມຢູ່.

໖. ພວກຜິວດຳທີ່ທຸກຍາກແລະຂາດການສຶກສາທີ່ປະສົງປ່ອນບັດເລືອກຕັ້ງຕ້ອງຜ່ານ ____________________.

໗. ໃນປີ ໑໘໘໓ ໄດ້ສ້າງ ______________________________ ເປັນຄັ້ງທຳອິດຢູ່ໃນເມືອງ New York City.



The First suspension bridge in the U.S. 1883

ໝວດ ໕ : ການປ່ຽນແປງຂອງຊາດ

ພາກ ໒໐ : ການຕໍ່ສູ້ຂອງພວກ POPULISTS

ສັບໃໝ່ :

rake: ຄາດ

Colonial farmers used rakes, hoes, and scythes to work in fields.

hoe: ສຽມ

scythe: ເຫຼັກຕັດຫຍ້າ

wooden plow: ໄຖໄມ້

Plows improved as new materials were developed. The cast iron plow was an improvement over the wooden plow. The rolled steel plow was an even greater improvement.

cast iron plow: ໄຖເຫຼັກ

rolled steel plow: ໄຖຫລໍ້ເຫຼັກ

harvest time: ຣະດູເກັບກ່ຽວ

Three more machines - the thresher, the harvester, and the tractor aided the farmer at harvest-time.

reaper: ເຄື່ອງຈັກກ່ຽວເຂົ້າ

The mechanical reaper could cut grain stalks ten times faster than a man could.

grain stalk: ຕົ້ນເຂົ້າ

thresher: ເຄື່ອງຈັກກ່ຽວແລະມັດຮວງເຂົ້າ

harvester: ກ່ຽວເຂົ້າ

tractor: ຣົດຖູດ

soil fertility: ຄວາມອຸດົມສົມບູນຂອງດິນ

Soil fertility was improved by rotation of crops and the use of fertilizer.

rotation of crops: ການປູກພືດແບບໝູນວຽນ

fertilizer: ປູຍ

prosperity: ຄວາມມັ່ງຄັ່ງສົມບູນ

During the Civil War, farmers enjoyed prosperity.

foodstuff: ອາຫານການກິນ

As the demand for foodstuff increased, other industries, like the meat packing industry, grew.

meat packing industry: ໂຮງງານຫໍ່ຊີ້ນ

decline: ລຸດລົງ

The demand for food products declined tremendously after the Civil War.

tremendously: ຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ

grain elevator: ເຄື່ອງຍົກເມັດພືດ

Grain elevators were used to store grain.

granger: ສະມາຊິກຂອງກຸ່ມການຈັດຕັ້ງປະຈຳທ້ອງຖິ່ນຂອງພວກຊາວນາ

The farmers joined together to form a group called a grange

cooperative: ສະຫະກອນ

The granger movement created cooperatives for the farmers where they could buy seed and tools more cheaply.

greenback money: ເງິນທີ່ຣັຖບານພິມອອກມາໂດຍບໍ່ມີຄຳຫຼືເງິນແທ່ງຄ້ຳປະກັນ

Farmers preferred greenback money that was not backed by gold or silver.

populist: ສະມາຊິກນັກການເມືອງຂ່ວງຊາວນາ

The farmers formed their own political party called the Populist Party.

oppenent: ຄູ່ແຂ່ງຂັນ

In 1896 the Populist Party nominated William Jennings Bryan to run for president. His opponent was William Mckenley.

READING

20.1. FARMERS' PROBLEMS

20.1.1. During the colonial period, 90% of the colonists earned a living from agriculture. Colonial farmers used very simple tools, such as **rakes, hoes, scythes,** and **wooden plows,** to work in the fields. In the first half of the nineteenth century, many remarkable changes took place in the methods of farming. These changes were brought about by the introduction of machines and science to agriculture.

20.1.2. Many new machines were invented which would help the farmer produce more food with less labor. Charles Newbold made a **cast iron plow** in 1797. Forty years later, John Deere invented a **rolled steel plow.** Cyrus McCormick introduced a **reaper** which would make a farmer's work easier at **harvest time.** This machine could cut **grain stalks** ten times faster than a man could. There were other new machines, such as the **thresher,** the **harvester,** and the **tractor,** which also helped to make the farmer's work easier and to increase his productivity. Farmers also got help from agricultural science. They learned how to maintain **soil fertility** by the rotation of crops and the use of fertilizers.

20.1.3. During the Civil War, farmers in the U.S. enjoyed a period of **prosperity**. Large quantities of food were needed to supply the military forces. The increased demands for foodstuffs helped other industries to grow. In the city, many industries related to farm products were established. The **meat packing industry** was one of these very important industries which developed during wartime. However, this prosperity ceased when the war ended.

20.1.4. After the Civil War, the demand for farm products **declined** both at home and abroad while widespread use of machinery and scientific methods caused the production of agricultural products to increase **tremendously**. Farmers could no longer find markets for their products, yet they still had to pay high production costs. In addition, they also had to face many other problems, such as inadequate credit, high middleman costs,and increasing industrial prices. The decline in consumers' demands prompted banks to stop making loans to the farmers. The railroad companies charged high rates for transportation. The prices of **grain elevators** used to store grains rose. Furthermore, the high tariff set up by the government to protect American products drove up the price of foreign tools and machines that farmers had to import.

20.2. THE PARTY OF FARMERS: THE POPULISTS

20.2.1. Farmers could not get help from the federal government, so they sought political solutions for their economic problems. They organized local groups called

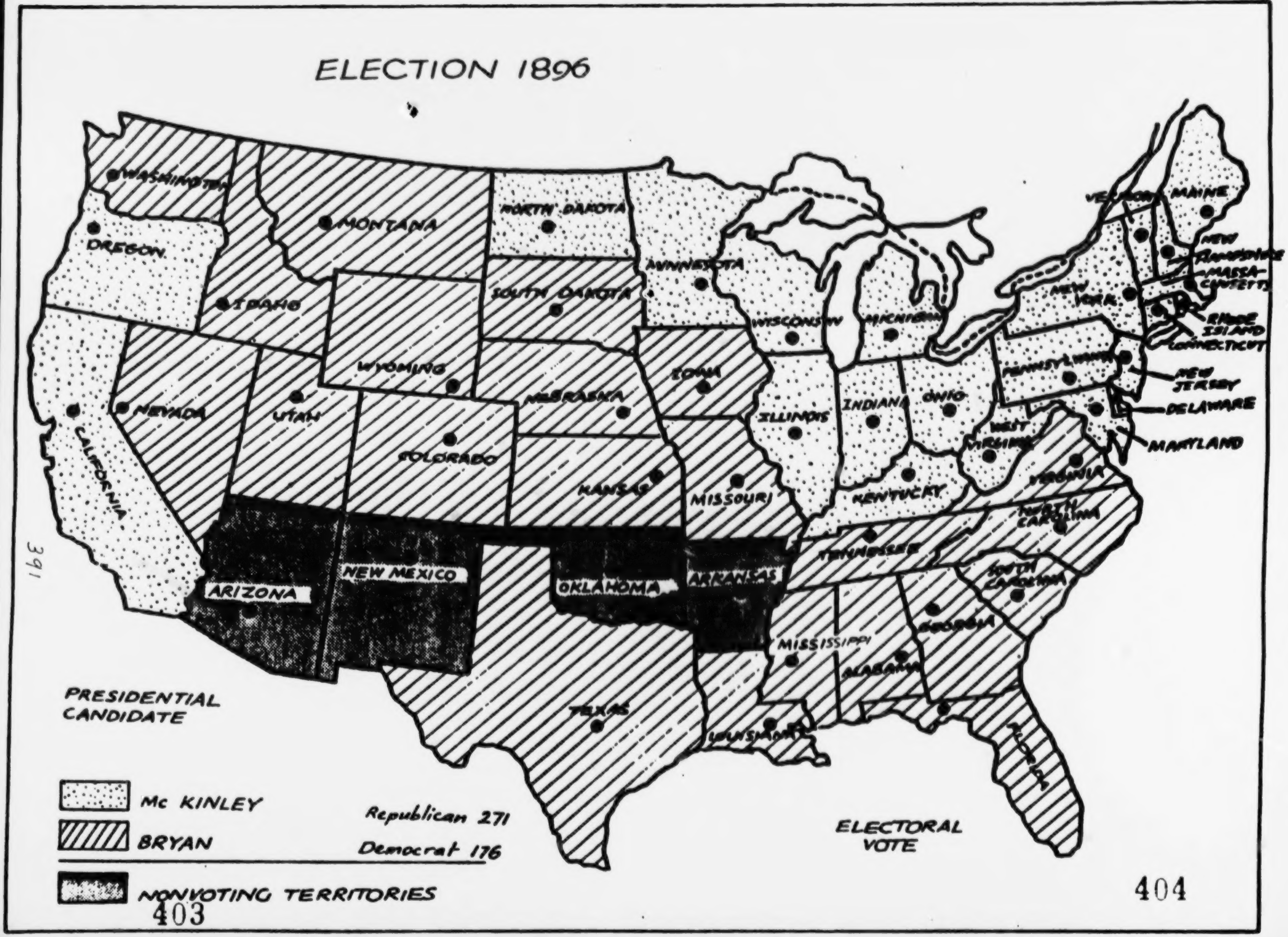
Granges. One of the accomplishments of the Grange movement was the establishment of agricultural cooperatives to help farmers. Through the **cooperatives**, farmers could buy seeds, fertilizers, and other items directly from the manufacturers. They saved money because they did not have to pay extra money to the middlemen who got their profits from both the manufacturers and the farmers. After 1886, the Granges gradually lost their importance and disappeared.

20.2.2 Besides the Granger movement, the farmers also created the Greenback movement to demand an increase in the amount of money in circulation. In response to their pressure, the government printed 450 million dollars of **greenback money.** This paper money was printed without gold or silver to guarantee its value. It could not be exchanged for gold, but it helped the farmers and debtors to have enough money to pay their debts. The Greenback movement began to die out in the middle 1880's.

20.2.3. Still, the farmers were not completely pleased with these two movements. They organized a party of farmers called the **Populist Party.** This political party represented the interests of the farmers. It demanded:

1) an increase in the amount of money in circulation to help raise the prices of farm products;

2) the establishment of a gradual income tax system to make persons with higher incomes pay a higher percentage of tax;


ELECTION 1896
WASHINGTON
OREGON
CALIFORNIA
NEVADA
IDAHO
MONTANA
WYOMING
UTAH
COLORADO
ARIZONA
NEW MEXICO
NORTH DAKOTA
SOUTH DAKOTA
NEBRASKA
KANSAS
OKLAHOMA
TEXAS
MINNESOTA
IOWA
MISSOURI
ARKANSAS
LOUISIANA
WISCONSIN
ILLINOIS
MICHIGAN
INDIANA
OHIO
KENTUCKY
TENNESSEE
MISSISSIPPI
ALABAMA
GEORGIA
FLORIDA
SOUTH CAROLINA
NORTH CAROLINA
VIRGINIA
WEST VIRGINIA
MARYLAND
DELAWARE
NEW JERSEY
PENNSYLVANIA
NEW YORK
CONNECTICUT
RHODE ISLAND
MASSACHUSETTS
NEW HAMPSHIRE
VERMONT
MAINE
PRESIDENTIAL CANDIDATE
Mc KINLEY
BRYAN
NONVOTING TERRITORIES
Republican 271
Democrat 176
ELECTORAL VOTE

3) and government ownership of railroads, telephone and telegraph companies in order to do away with the unreasonable rates charged by the private companies.

20.2.4. In 1892, the **Populists** nominated their own presidential candidate, but he lost that election. In 1896 the Populists and the Democrats worked together to back William Jennings Bryan. Both parties gave Bryan strong support but they did not have much money for his campaign. Bryan went to, 27 states and gave about 600 speeches, but he could not get the support of the wealthy people.

20.2.5. Bryan's **opponent** was William McKinley. He was selected by the Republicans and had strong support of the wealthiest people. William McKinley supported the gold standard and higher protective tariffs. These measures would help the wealthy people keep their wealth and would raise the prices of domestic products. Therefore, they contributed almost 15 million dollars to his campaign. On election day, McKinley got 271 electoral votes and Bryan got 176 electoral votes. After the election, the Populist Party became weaker and weaker, and eventually disappeared.

EXERCISES

I. Word Search Puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

W H P O P U L I S T S C C O R N

O A A B C H E A P M O N E Y D E

O R A F G O H I F A R M E R J K

D V R A K E L M N C O O P O P Q

E E E G R S T U G N P R I C E V

N S A R E A P E R I S P O W E R

P T A I B C D E A N U S F G H I

L E K C F O O D I E C O N O M Y

O R L U M N O P N Q C L R B R W

W O R L W I D E S S E U T R U H

U S A T D E B T T V S X Y Y R E

Z J C U L T U R A L S L M A A A

A B C R G H S I L V E R N N L T

D E F E I K M C K I N L E Y O D

G R A N G E R S B U L L I O N S

ECONOMY
MACHINE
PRICE
POPULISTS
DEBT
GRANGERS
SILVER
BRYAN
AREA
RURAL
HOE
RAKE
WOODEN PLOW
AGRICULTURE
REAPER
GRAIN STALK
FOOD
CULTURAL
HARVESTER
WORLDWIDE
USA
CHEAP MONEY
COOP
FARMER

II. True or False:

____ 1. During the Colonial period, 90% of the colonists earned a living from agriculture.

____ 2. The colonists used rakes, hoes, scythes, and wooden plows to work on the farms.

____ 3. During the Civil War, farmers in the U.S. had a period of prosperity.

____ 4. The farm machines were very slow and inefficient.

____ 5. The Populists agreed with the gold standard.

____ 6. Gold was used to back U.S. currency.

____ 7. People could exchange cheap money for gold.

____ 8. The Republicans gave William Jennings Bryan strong support.

____ 9. The Populists spent a lot of money for the Bryan's campaign.

____ 10. After the election in 1896, the Populist party lost its necessary support and disappeared.

III. Fill in the blanks: Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: rolled steel plow, fertilizer, foodstuffs, reaper, middleman costs, cheap money, Populists, cooperatives, grain elevator, protective tariffs.

1. The main issues of William McKinley's campaign were the gold standard and high ______________ .
2. The government issued over 400 million dollars of _______ in circulation.
3. The farmers organized another Party called the _________ or the Party of the Farmers.
4. Cyrus McCormick introduced a _______________ .
5. The farmers knew how to maintain soil fertility by the rotation of crops and the use of ______________ .
6. The increasing demand for ___________ helped other industries to grow.

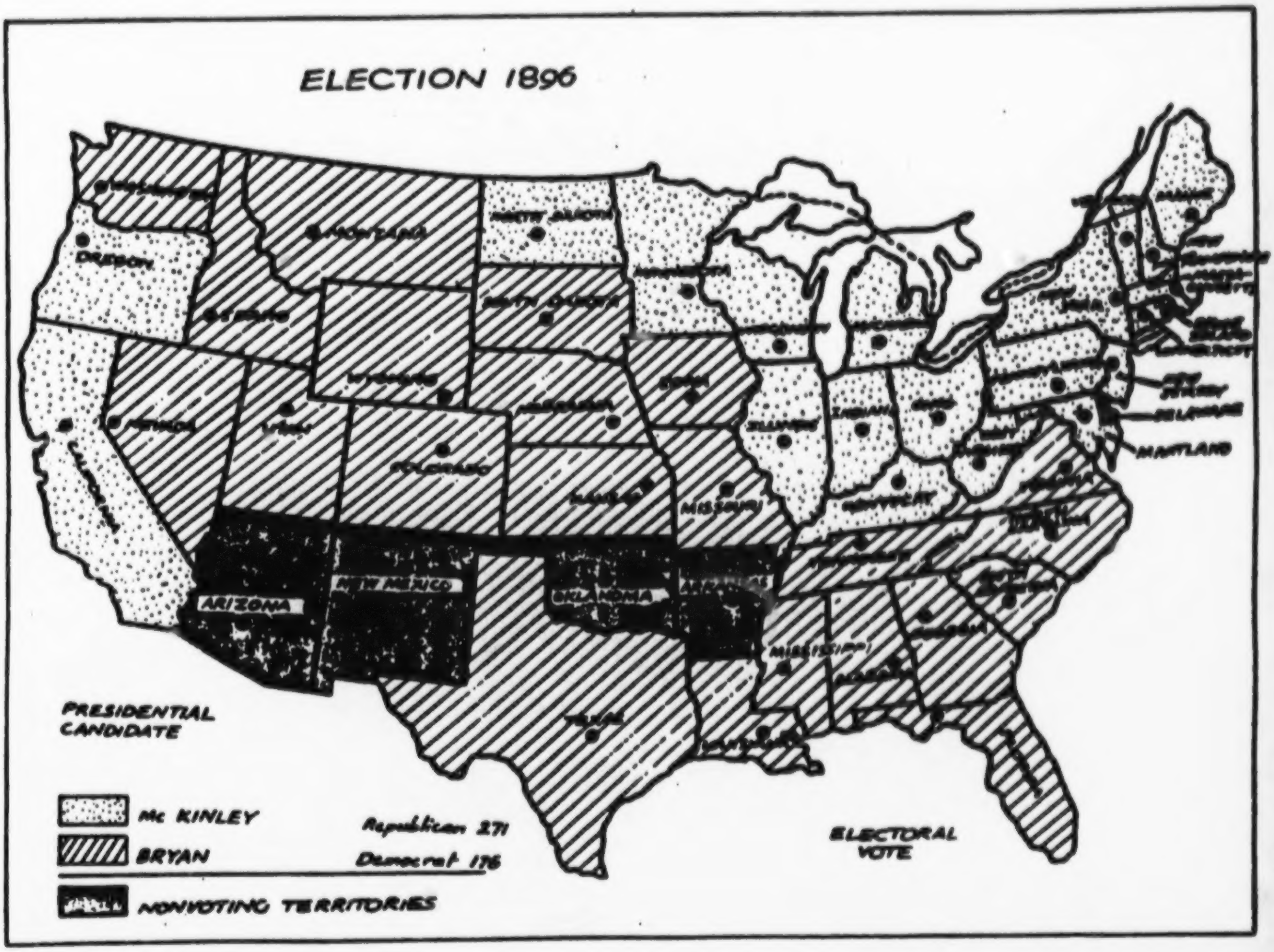
7. John Deere invented a __________ .

8. The farmers also had many problems such as inadequate credits, high _____________ , and high industrial costs.

9. The farmers also paid high costs for the __________ .

10. The Grangers established _____________ to help each other.

IV. Map Study: Color all the states that supported Jennings Bryan in the election of 1896.


ELECTION 1896
OREGON
MONTANA
NEVADA
COLORADO
KANSAS
MISSOURI
ARIZONA
NEW MEXICO
OKLAHOMA
TEXAS
MISSISSIPPI
NEW JERSEY
DELAWARE
MARYLAND
PRESIDENTIAL CANDIDATE
Mc KINLEY
BRYAN
NONVOTING TERRITORIES
Republican 271
Democrat 176
ELECTORAL VOTE

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

ບົດອ່ານ

໒໐.໑. ປັນຫາຂອງຊາວນາ

໒໐.໑.໑. ໃນສໄໝລ່າຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນ ພວກ ຂອງພົລເມືອງທຳມາຫາກິນດ້ວຍການປູກຝັງ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໃຊ້ອຸປກອນເຄື່ອງມືແບບງ່າຍໆທີ່ສຸດ ເຊັ່ນ ຄາດ ສອມ ມີດຕັດຫຍ້າ ແລະ ໄຖໄມ້ ດັ່ງນີ້ເປັນຕົ້ນ. ໃນຕອນຕົ້ນຂອງສັດຕະວັດທີສິບເກົ້າ ວິທີເຮັດໄຮ່ເຮັດນາມີການປ່ຽນແປງຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ. ການປ່ຽນແປງດັ່ງກ່າວເກີດຂຶ້ນກໍຍ້ອນການນຳເອົາເຄື່ອງຈັກແລະວິທະຍາສາດເຂົ້າໃຊ້ໃນການປູກຝັງນັ້ນເອງ.

໒໐.໑.໒. ທ່ານ Charles Newbold ປະດິດໄຖເຫຼັກໃນປີ ໑໗໙໗. ສີ່ປີຕໍ່ມາທ່ານ John Deere ສຳເລັດການສ້າງຫົວໄຖເຫຼັກ. ເພື່ອໃຫ້ສະດວກໃນການເກັບກ່ຽວ ທ່ານ Cyrus McCormick ໄດ້ປະດິດເຄື່ອງຈັກກ່ຽວເຂົ້າຂຶ້ນ. ເຄື່ອງຈັກປະເພດນີ້ສາມາດຕັດຕົ້ນເຂົ້າໄວກວ່າຄົນສິບເທົ່າ. ເຄື່ອງຈັກໃໝ່ໆອອກມາເພື່ອຊ່ວຍວຽກຂອງຊາວນາໃນເວລານັ້ນມີ ເຄື່ອງຈັກຫວ່ານເຂົ້າ ເຄື່ອງຈັກກ່ຽວແລະມັດຮວງເຂົ້າ ແລະ ຣົດດຸດ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນພວກຊາວນາທັງຫຼາຍຍັງໄດ້ຮັບປະໂຍດຈາກວິທະຍາສາດດ້ານປູກຝັງນຳອີກເຊັ່ນ ຄວາມຮູ້ກ່ຽວກັບວິທີຮັກສາຄວາມອຸດົມສົມບູນຂອງດິນດ້ວຍການໃຊ້ພືດແບບໝູນວຽນແລະການໃຊ້ປຸ໋ຍຕ່າງໆ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ເອງ ພວກຊາວນາຈຶ່ງສາມາດຜລິດເຂົ້າປາອາຫານຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນໂດຍໃຊ້ແຮງງານນ້ອຍລົງ.

໒໐.໑.໓. ຣະຍະສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງເປັນຣະຍະເວລາທີ່ພວກຊາວນາໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາພົບກັບຄວາມມັ່ງຄັ່ງສົມບູນ ເພາະວ່າກອງທັບທະຫານມີຄວາມຕ້ອງການເຂົ້າປາອາຫານຈຳນວນຫຼວງຫຼາຍ. ຄວາມຕ້ອງການເຂົ້າປາອາຫານພາໃຫ້ໂຮງງານປະເພດອື່ນໆເຈີນຂຶ້ນ. ໃນຫົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆໄດ້ມີການຕັ້ງໂຮງງານທີ່ມີຄວາມພົວພັນກັບເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງຕ່າງໆນາໆ. ໂຮງງານປະເພດນີ້ທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດຊຶ່ງຈເຣີນກ້າວໜ້າໃນຣະຫວ່າງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງນັ້ນແມ່ນ ໂຮງງານຕີ່ຊຸບ. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍດີຄວາມອຸດົມສົມບູນທີ່ກ່າວມານັ້ນໄດ້ໝົດໄປເມື່ອສົງຄາມຢຸດຕິລົງ.

໒໐.໑.໔. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງ ຄວາມຕ້ອງການດ້ານເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງໃນປະເທດແລະນອກປະເທດໄດ້ລຸດນ້ອຍລົງ ແຕ່ວ່າຜລິດຕະພັນທີ່ໄດ້ຈາກການປູກຝັງນັ້ນໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນຢ່າງມະຫາສານ ຍ້ອນວ່າຊາວນາໃຊ້ເຄື່ອງຈັກແລະວິທີທາງວິທະຍາສາດຕ່າງໆຢ່າງແຜ່ຫຼາຍ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ຊາວນາຈຶ່ງບໍ່ສາມາດຫາຕລາດເພື່ອຂາຍເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງ

ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ ພ້ອມດຽວກັນເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງໄດ້ລົງທຶນສູງໃນການຜລິດເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຍັງມີບັນຫາຢ່າງອື່ນອີກເຊັ່ນ ຂາດເຂີນເງິນຄ່າປະກັນທະນາຄານ ຈ້າງພວກນາຍໜ້າໃນເງິນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍກ່ວາເດີມ ແລະຊື້ເຄື່ອງຂອງຈາກໂຮງງານໃນຣາຄາແພງ. ການຂາຍເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງບໍ່ອອກເຮັດໃຫ້ທະນະຄານປິດການໃຫ້ຢືມເງິນແກ່ພວກຊາວນາ. ບໍຣິສັດຣົຖໄຟຕ່າງໆໄດ້ພາກັນຂຶ້ນຄ່າຂົນສົ່ງ. ຣາຄາຂອງເຄື່ອງຈັກກົນເມັດພືດກໍ່ແພງຂຶ້ນເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ. ຍິ່ງໄປກວ່ານັ້ນ ການຂຶ້ນພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າທີ່ຣັຖບານໄດ້ວາງໄວ້ນັ້ນເຮັດໃຫ້ຣາຄາເຄື່ອງອຸປກອນຫຼືເຄື່ອງຈັກຕ່າງໆທີ່ຊາວນາສັ່ງເຂົ້າມາແພງຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍເທົ່າ.

໔໐.໔. ພັກການເມືອງຂອງຊາວນາ : Tne POPULISTS

໔໐.໔.໑. ເນື່ອບໍ່ໄດ້ຮັບການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຈາກຣັຖບານກາງ ພວກຊາວນາຈຶ່ງພາກັນຫັນໜ້າຕາຫາງອອກດ້ານການເມືອງເພື່ອແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາເສຖກິດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ ໂດຍຈັດຕັ້ງກຸ່ມປະຈຳທ້ອງຖິ່ນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອີ້ນວ່າ Grangers. ພວກ Grangers ໄດ້ຕັ້ງສະຫະກອນກະສິກັມຂຶ້ນເພື່ອຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອພວກຊາວນາຕໍ່ໄປ. ໃນນາມສະຫະກອນຊາວນາມີສິດຊື້ແນວເຄື່ອງປູກປຸ໋ຍ ແລະອຸປກອນຢ່າງອື່ນໂດຍກົງຈາກໂຮງງານ ຈຶ່ງເປັນການປະຢັດເງິນເພາະເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ຈຳເປັນຕ້ອງໄດ້ຈ່າຍເງິນເພີ່ມໃຫ້ພວກພໍ່ຄ້າທີ່ຊັກເອົາກຳໄຣຈາກຊາວນາເອງແລະຈາກໂຮງງານ. ຫຼັງຈາກປີ ໑໘໘໕ ພວກ Grangers ໝົດຄວາມສຳຄັນໄປເທື່ອລະເລັກລະນ້ອຍແລະໃນທີ່ສຸດກໍໄດ້ຫາຍສາບສູນໄປ.

໔໐.໔.໒. ນອກຈາກຂະບວນການ Grangers ແລ້ວພວກຊາວນາຍັງໄດ້ຕັ້ງຂະບວນການ Greenback ຂຶ້ນອີກເພື່ອຮຽກຮ້ອງໃຫ້ມີການເພີ່ມຈຳນວນເງິນຕຣາທີ່ໝູນວຽນຢູ່. ຍ້ອນຄວາມກົດດັນຈາກຂະບວນການດັ່ງກ່າວ ຣັຖບານຈຶ່ງໄດ້ພິມເງິນຈຳນວນ ໔໕໐ ລ້ານໂດລາອອກມາ ເອີ້ນວ່າ greenback money . ແຕ່ເງິນທີ່ພິມອອກມານັ້ນບໍ່ໄດ້ຫັກຄ້ຳປະກັນຈາກຄຳຫຼືເງິນແທ່ງແຕ່ປະການໃດເລີຍໝາຍຄວາມວ່າເງິນພິມໃໝ່ນັ້ນແລກປ່ຽນກັບຄຳບໍ່ໄດ້ແຕ່ເປັນການຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ພວກຊາວນາແລະພວກຕິດໜີ້ທັງຫຼາຍມີເງິນສຳຫຼັບໃຊ້ໜີ້ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ຂະບວນການ Greenback ໄດ້ສລາຍຕົວໄປໃນກາງປີ ໑໘໘໐.

໔໐.໔.໓. ພວກຊາວນາບໍ່ໄດ້ຮັບຄວາມພໍໃຈຈາກຂະບວນການທັງສອງທີ່ກ່າວມານັ້ນຢ່າງເຕັມສ່ວນ. ສະນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຕັ້ງພັກການເມືອງຂອງຊາວນາຂຶ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ Populist Party ເພື່ອຮັບໃຊ້ຜົນປະໂຍດຂອງຊາວນາເອງ. ພັກການເມືອງພັກນີ້ໄດ້ຮ້ອງຂໍ :

໑.) ໃຫ້ມີການເພີ່ມຈຳນວນເງິນທີ່ໝູນວຽນຢູ່ເພື່ອເປັນການຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ຣາຄາເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງສູງຂຶ້ນ.

໒.) ໃຫ້ມີການວາງຣະບົບເກັບພາສີລາຍໄດ້ຕາມຂັ້ນເພື່ອໃຫ້ຜູ້ທີ່ມີລາຍໄດ້ສູງເສັຍພາສີໃນຈຳນວນສູງຕາມລຳດັບລາຍໄດ້.

໓.) ໃຫ້ຣັຖບານລົບລ້າງຄ່າຣົດໄຟ ຄ່າໂທຣະສັບ ແລະຄ່າໂທຣະເລກທີ່ບໍຣິສັດເອກກະຊົນເກັບໃນອັດຕຣາສູງເກີນຄວນ.

໒໐.໒.໔. ໃນປີ ໑໘໙໒ ພັກ Populist Party ໄດ້ແຕ່ງຕັ້ງຜູ້ຕາງໜ້າເຂົ້າແຂ່ງຂັນເລືອກຕັ້ງເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີແຕ່ພາດໄປ. ຕໍ່ມາໃນປີ ໑໘໙໖ ພວກ Populists ແລະພວກ Democrats ໄດ້ຮ່ວມກັນສນັບສນູນທ່ານ William Jennings Bryan ແຕ່ຂາດເຂີນເງິນໃນການໂຄສະນາຫາສຽງ. ທ່ານ Bryan ໄດ້ອອກໄປ ໒໗ ຣັຖແລະໄດ້ເຮັດຄຳປາໄສປະມານ ໖໐໐ ຄັ້ງແຕ່ທ່ານກໍບໍ່ສາມາດຈະໄດ້ຮັບການສນັບສນູນຈາກພວກທີ່ຮັ່ງມີ.

໒໐.໒.໕. ຄູ່ແຂ່ງຂອງທ່ານ Bryan ແມ່ນທ່ານ William McKinley ຊຶ່ງຖືກຄັດເລືອກຂຶ້ນມາໂດຍພັກ Republican ແລະໄດ້ຮັບການສນັບສນູນຈາກພວກຮັ່ງມີຢ່າງເຕັມທີ່. ທ່ານ William McKinley ສນັບສນູນການໃຊ້ຄຳເປັນມາດຖານເງິນຕຣາ ແລະ ການຂຶ້ນພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າ. ໂດຍການທັງສອງຢ່າງນີ້ເປັນທີ່ພໍໃຈແກ່ພວກຮັ່ງມີເປັນທີ່ສຸດ ເພາະວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າຈະມີໂອກາດຄອງຄວາມຮັ່ງມີຕໍ່ໄປ ນອກຈາກນັ້ນຣາຄາຂອງສິນຄ້າພາຍໃນປະເທດກໍຈະສູງຂຶ້ນ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ອອກເງິນຊ່ວຍໃນການໂຄສະນາຫາສຽງຂອງທ່ານ McKinley ເປັນຈຳນວນເກືອບເຖິງ ໑໕ ລ້ານໂດລາ. ໃນວັນຂອງການເລືອກຕັ້ງທ່ານ McKinley ໄດ້ ໒໗໑ ຄະແນນຈາກການປ່ອນບັດຂອງຄະນະຜູ້ແທນ ສ່ວນທ່ານ Bryan ໄດ້ພຽງ ໑໗໖ ຄະແນນເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ຫຼັງຈາກການເລືອກຕັ້ງ ພັກ Populist Party ເກີດທໍ້ຖອຍລົງເລື້ອຍໆ ແລະໃນທີ່ສຸດກໍຕາຍສາບສູນໄປ.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຊອກຫາສັບ :

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບນັ້ນແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນຄວາມໝາຍຂອງສັບນັ້ນເອົາໄວ້.

W H P O P U L I S T S C C O R N
O A A B C H E A P M O N E Y D E
O R A F G O H I F A R M E R J K
D V R A K E L M N C O O P O P Q
E E E G R S T U G N P R I C E V
N S A R E A P E R I S P O W E R
P T A I B C D E A N U S F G H I
L E K C F O O D I E C O N O M Y
O R L U M N O P N Q C L R B R W
W O R L W I D E S S E U T R U H
U S A T D E B T T V S X Y Y R E
Z J C U L T U R A L S L M A A A
A B C R G H S I L V E R N N L T
D E F E I K M C K I N L E Y O D
G R A N G E R S B U L L I O N S

ECONOMY
MACHINE
PRICE
POPULISTS
DEBT
GRANGERS
SILVER
BRYAN
AREA
RURAL
HOE
RAKE
WOODEN PLOW
AGRICULTURE
REAPER
GRAIN STALK
FOOD
CULTURAL
HARVESTER
WORLDWIDE
USA
CHEAP MONEY
COOP
FARMER

໒. ຖືກ ຫຼື ຜິດ :

_____ ໑. ໃນສໄມລ່າຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນ ພວກ ຂອງພົລເມືອງທຳນາຫາກິນດ້ວຍການປູກຝັງ.
_____ ໒. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໃຊ້ ຄາດ ສອມ ເຫຼັກຕັດຫຍ້າ ແລະໄຖໄມ້ເພື່ອເຮັດວຽກໄຮ່ການາ.
_____ ໓. ຣະຍະສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງເປັນຣະຍະທີ່ພວກຊາວນາໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ມີຄວາມມັ່ງຄັ່ງ
ສົມບູນດີ.
_____ ໔. ເຄື່ອງຈັກທີ່ໃຊ້ໃນທົ່ງໄຮ່ທົ່ງນານັ້ນຈັດຊ້າທີ່ສຸດແລະບໍ່ໄດ້ຮັບເຄັນສ່ວນ.
_____ ໕. ພວກ Populists ເຫັນດີໃນການໃຊ້ຄຳເປັນມາດຕະຖານ.
_____ ໖. ທະນາບັດຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໃຊ້ຄຳເປັນສິ່ງຄ້ຳປະກັນ.
_____ ໗. ປະຊາຊົນໃຊ້ເງິນທີ່ມີຄ່າຕ່ຳແລກປ່ຽນກັບຄຳໄດ້.

______ ໘. ພວກ Republicans ໄດ້ສນັບສນູນທ່ານWilliam Jenning Byan ຢ່າງເຕັມທີ່.

______ ໙. ພວກ Populists ໄດ້ຈ່າຍເງິນໃນການໂຄສະນາຫາສຽງຂອງທ່ານ Bryan ຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍທີ່ສຸດ.

______ ໑໐. ຫຼັງຈາກການເລືອກຕັ້ງພັກ Populist Party ບໍ່ໄດ້ຮັບການສນັບສນູນເທົ່າທີ່ຄວນແລະ ໄດ້ຫາຍສາບສູນໄປ.

ຂ. ຕື່ມຄວາມເຂົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ : ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄວາມເຂົ້າ ຫຼື ໝວດຄຳເຂົ້າທີ່ລົງໄປນັ້ນໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍດໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍອັນຖືກຕ້ອງ : ຫຼໍ້ໄຖເຫຼັກ, ປຸຍ, ອາຫານການກິນ, ເຄື່ອງຈັກກ່ຽວເຂົ້າ, ຈ້າງນາຍໜ້າແພງ, ເງິນທີ່ມີຄ່າຕ່ຳ, populits , ສະຫະກອນ, ເຄື່ອງຈັກຍົກເມັດພືດ, ພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າ.

໑. ເຄື່ອງສຳຄັນທີ່ທ່ານ William McKinley ໄດ້ສນັບສນູນແມ່ນການໃຊ້ຄຳເປັນມາດຖານແລະ ຂົ້ນ ______ .

໒. ຣັຖບານໄດ້ພິມເງິນທີ່ ______ ອອກໃຊ້ຈຳນວນກວ່າ ໔໐໐ ລ້ານໂດລາ.

໓. ພວກຊາວນາໄດ້ຈັດຕັ້ງພັກການເມືອງເອີ້ນວ່າພວກ ______ ຫຼື ພັກຂອງພວກຊາວນາ.

໔. Cyrus McCormick ໄດ້ປະດິດ ______ .

໕. ພວກຊາວນາຮູ້ຈັກວິທີຮັກສາຄວາມອຸດົມສົມບູນຂອງດິນໂດຍໃຊ້ພືດແບບໝູນວຽນແລະໃຊ້ ______ ______ .

໖. ຄວາມຕ້ອງການຂອງ ______ ເຮັດໃຫ້ໂຮງງານປະເພດອື່ນໆຈເຣີນກ້າວໜ້າຂຶ້ນ.

໗. John Deere ເປັນຜູ້ສ້າງ ______ .

໘. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນພວກຊາວນາຍັງມີປັນຫາຢ່າງອື່ນອີກເຊັ່ນ ຂາດເຂີນເງິນຄ້ຳປະກັນທະນາຄານ ຈ້າງ
__________________________ ແລະລົງທຶນສູງໃນການຜລິດເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງພັງ.

໙. ພວກ Grangers ໄດ້ຕັ້ງ ______________________ ເພື່ອຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຊຶ່ງກັນແລະກັນ.

໑໐. ຊາວນາຍັງໄດ້ຊື້ __________________________ ໃນຣາຄາແພງ.

Section VI
The Challenge Of Power And Prosperity

ໝວດ ໕ : ບັນຫາໃນການມີອຳນາດແລະຄວາມມັ່ງຄັ່ງສົມບູນ.

ພາກ ໔໑ : ການສົ່ງທະຫານອອກຣົບຄັ້ງຍິ່ງໃຫຍ່.

ສັບໃໝ່ :

Triple Alliance: ພັນທະມິດຣະຫວ່າງເຢຣະມັນ, ອອສເຕຣຍ, ຮັງກາລີ, ແລະ ອິຕາລີ.

The alliance of Germany, Austria-Hungary and Italy was called the Triple Alliance.

Triple Entente: ພັນທະມິດຣະຫວ່າງ ອັງກິດ, ຝຣັ່ງເສດ ແລະ ຣັດເຊັຍ.

The alliance of Great Britain, France and Russia was called the Triple Entente.

conflict: ການຂັດແຍ່ງ.

There was a lot of conflict in Europe during the years before World War I.

empire: ຈັກກະພັດ.

Each country wanted to expand its empire.

nationalist: ພວກຮັກຊາດ.

A Serbian nationalist planned the assassination of Archduke Ferdinand.

heir: ຜູ້ສືບມໍຣະດົກ.

Archduke Francis Ferdinand, the heir to the Austro-Hungarian throne, was shot at the capital of Bosnia.

assassination: ການຄາດຕະກັມ.

Austria-Hungry saw the assassination of Archduke Ferdinand as opportunity to invade Serbia.

tank: ຣົຖຖັງ.

machine gun: ປືນກົນ.

submarine: ກຳປັ່ນດຳນ້ຳ.

trench-war: ສົງຄາມທີ່ມີການສູ້ຮົບປະຈຳທີ່ໂດຍບໍ່ມີການເຄື່ອນທະຫານເພື່ອຍຸດທະວິທີ.

Many new weapons and methods of warfare were introduced in World War I - tanks, machine guns, submarine and trench-war.

military tactics: ຍຸດທະວິທີທາງທະຫານ.

These new military tactics caused millions of soldiers to lose their lives.

submarine warfare: ສົງຄາມໂດຍໃຊ້ກຳປັ່ນດຳນ້ຳ.

outraged: ເກີດມີຄວາມໂກດຮ້າຍ.

Americans were outraged when they learned about Germany's note to Mexico.

Selective Service Act: ດຳຣັດເກນທະຫານ.

The Congress passed the Selective Service Act in 1900.

offensive line: ກອງທະຫານບຸກໃນແນວໜ້າ.

At Meuse-Argone, American forces broke the German offensive line.

League of Nations: ສະຫະພັນນາໆຊາດ.

world peace: ສັນຕິພາບຂອງໂລກ.

President Wilson hoped the League of Nations would help preserve world peace.

cede: ມອບ.

Germany had to pay reparations and cede part of its lands to France when it lost the war.

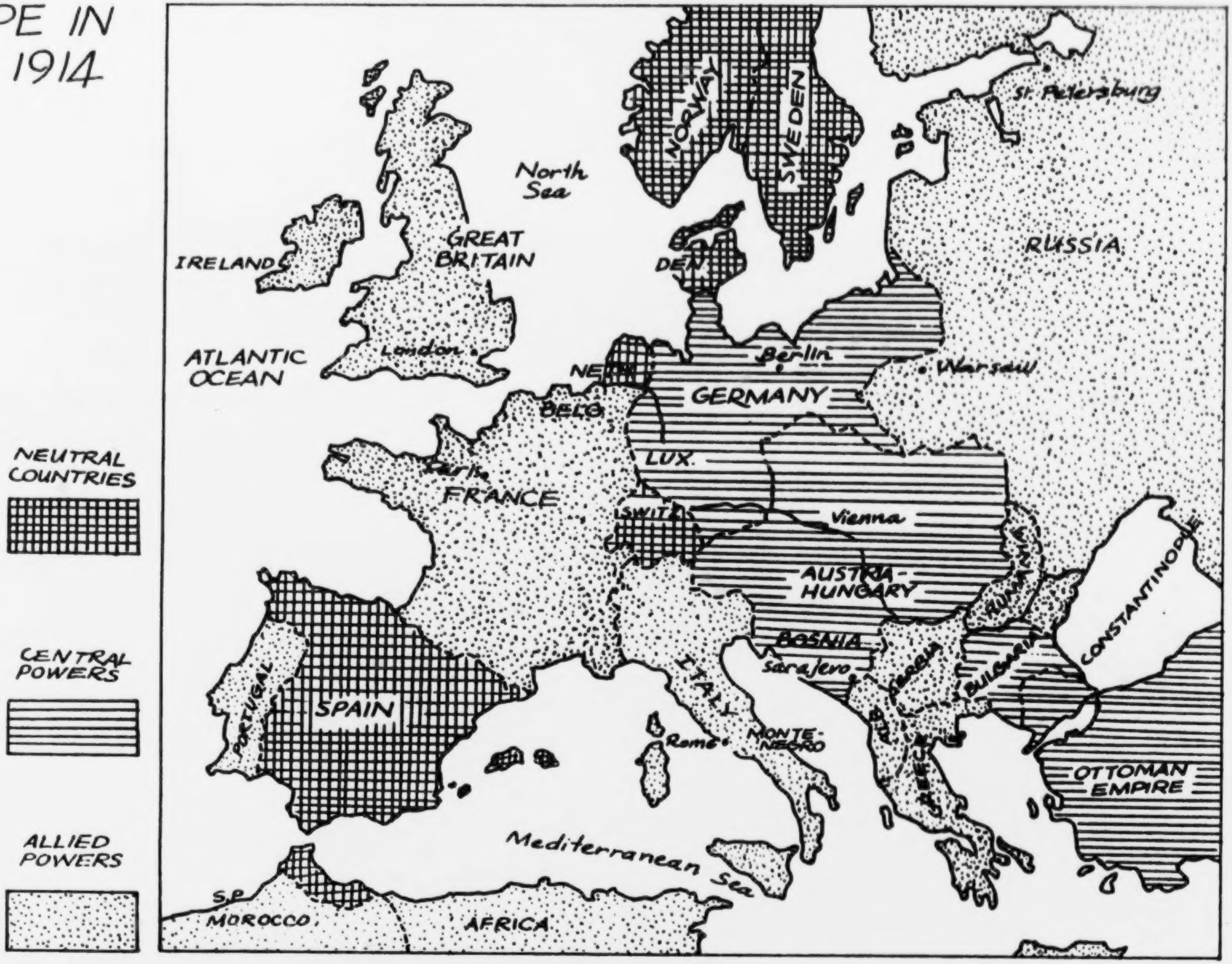
READING

21.1. THE CAUSES OF THE FIRST WORLD WAR

21.1.1. In the years before the outbreak of World War I, in 1914 the big European nations were divided into two groups: The **Triple Alliance** and the **Triple Entente**. Bismark, the German leader, formed the Triple Alliance between Germany, Austria-Hungary and Italy. This alliance was formed to protect each other in case one of these three nations was to be attacked by another great nation. France, Great Britain, and Russia responded by becoming Allies and forming the Triple Entente. The rivalries between these two groups caused a power struggle and **conflict** in many parts of Europe. These alliances also made it inevitable that if a war began, all the countries would be drawn in.

21.1.2. During the time of alliances, the big countries built up their military power and bolstered their economic position by acquiring new colonies. France and Great Britain had already expanded and had established their colonies in Asia and Africa. Austria- Hungary annexed some small lands in the Balkans and made them parts of its **empire**. One of these lands was Bosnia. Most of the people who lived in this land were Slavic people and Serbians. Both the Serbian and Slavic people believed Bosnia should have been made part of Serbia, a small nation next to Bosnia. They wanted to get their independence from the Austria- Hungarian Empire.

EUROPE IN 1914


NEUTRAL COUNTRIES
CENTRAL POWERS
ALLIED POWERS
NORWAY
SWEDEN
St. Petersburg
North Sea
GREAT BRITAIN
IRELAND
DEN
RUSSIA
ATLANTIC OCEAN
London
NETH
Berlin
Warsaw
GERMANY
BELG
LUX.
Paris
FRANCE
SWITZ
Vienna
AUSTRIA-HUNGARY
RUMANIA
CONSTANTINOPLE
BOSNIA
Sarajero
SERBIA
BULGARIA
SPAIN
PORTUGAL
ITALY
Rome
MONTENEGRO
ALB.
GREECE
OTTOMAN EMPIRE
Mediterranean Sea
SP. MOROCCO
AFRICA

21.1.3. The situation worsened when, on June 28,1914, the **heir** to the Austro-Hungarian throne, Archduke Francis Ferdinand,and his wife visited Sarajevo, the capital of Bosnia. A member of a group of Serbian **nationalists** shot and killed both the Archduke and his wife. The Austrian government had reason to believe that the **assassination** was a plot by a nationalist organization from Serbia. The Austrians used this as an excuse to crush Serbia and extend Austrian control into the Balkans.

21.1.4. Russia was Serbia's ally at that time. Therefore, when Austria attacked Serbia, the Russian Emperor prepared his country for war on the same day. Gradually, all the allied nations became involved. Hungary declared war against Russia on August 1,1914, and 3 days later Germany,an ally of Austria-Hungary, declared war on France. Great Britain, who was an ally of France in the Triple Entente, also became involved in the war. It soon seemed as if the whole world was at war. For this reason the conflict came to be called a "world war". World War I, which would last from 1914 to 1918, had begun.

21.2. THE FIRST WORLD WAR

21.2.1. The fighting took place on three fronts - in Europe, in the Middle East, and in Africa. Many new dangerous weapons, such as **tanks**, **machine guns**, and **submarines**, were introduced. The **trench war**, a new **military tactic**, was also introduced for the first time. Millions of soldiers on both sides died. The war destroyed many cities and towns in Europe. Both sides needed supplies and weapons from the United States and other neutral countries.

21.2.2. Between 1914 and 1917, the United States was not directly involved in the war, and American ships carried supplies to both sides. Many of these ships were stopped and searched by the British Navy which had set up a naval blockade. The British also seized the American ships that carried foods to neutral European nations because they believed these foods would eventually reach the Germans. This naval blockade caused a great deal of trouble for Germany, who was awaiting supplies.

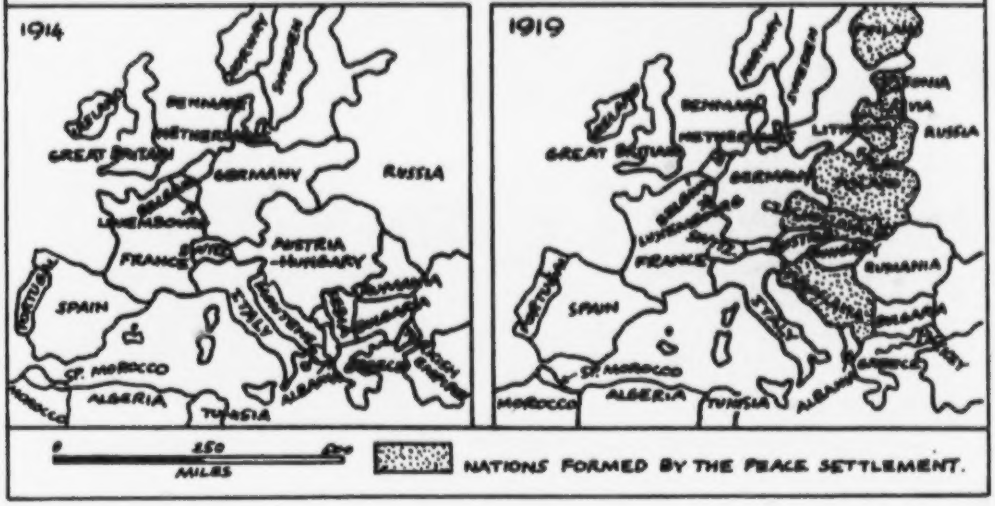
21.2.3. Germany wanted to break the British blockade, so the German Navy used their deadly new weapon --the submarine. In March,1915, a German submarine sank the British passenger line Lusitania and killed 1,200 people, including 128 Americans. President Wilson sent a strong protest to Germany calling for an end to **submarine warfare.**

21.2.4. Germany ignored Wilson 's protest. Furthermore, in 1917 the British discovered a note from the German Foreign Minister Arthur Zimmerman to the Mexican Government. The note suggested that Mexico become Germany's ally in the event of a war with the United States. In return, Germany would help Mexico to take back the lands it had lost to the United States during the Mexican War.

21.3. THE UNITED STATES AND THE WAR

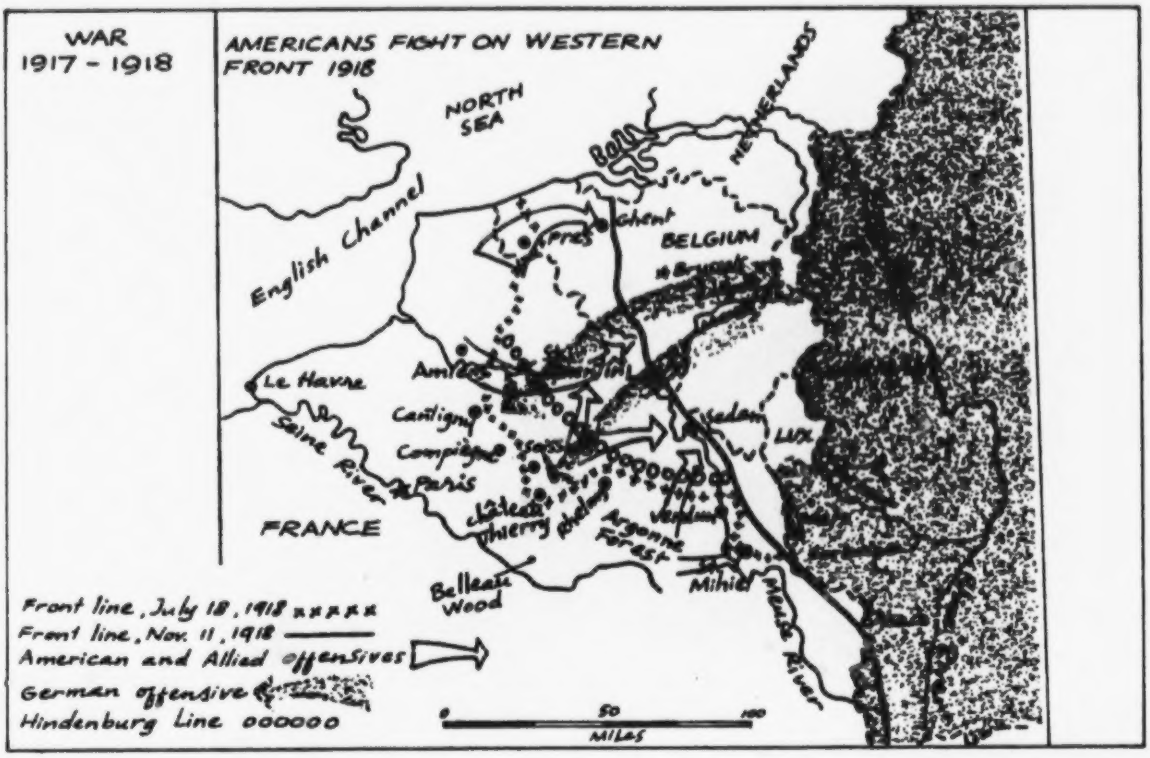
21.3.1. The Americans were **outraged** by this note and the plot. On the night of April 2, 1917, President Wilson asked

HOW WORLD WAR I CHANGED THE MAP OF EUROPE.


1914
1919
DENMARK
NETHERLANDS
GREAT BRITAIN
GERMANY
RUSSIA
LUXEMBOURG
AUSTRIA-HUNGARY
FRANCE
SWITZ.
SPAIN
PORTUGAL
ITALY
RUMANIA
BULGARIA
GREECE
ALBANIA
SP. MOROCCO
MOROCCO
ALGERIA
TUNISIA
LITH.
RUSSIA
ESTONIA
0
250
500
MILES
NATIONS FORMED BY THE PEACE SETTLEMENT.

WAR 1917 - 1918

AMERICANS FIGHT ON WESTERN FRONT 1918


NORTH SEA
NETHERLANDS
English Channel
Ghent
Ypres
BELGIUM
Brussels
Amiens
Le Havre
Cantigny
Compiègne
Soissons
Seine River
Paris
Sedan
LUX
Château Thierry
Argonne Forest
Verdun
St. Mihiel
Belleau Wood
Meuse River
FRANCE
Front line, July 18, 1918 xxxxx
Front line, Nov. 11, 1918
American and Allied offensives
German offensive
Hindenburg Line 000000
0
50
100
MILES

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Congress for a declaration of war, and the Congress declared war against Germany four days later.

21.3.2. When the U.S. entered the war, the nation's army had about 200,000 soldiers. This army was not big enough to fight on the European battlefields. In May 1917, Congress passed a draft law called the **Selective Service Act** to recruit more soldiers. Many training camps were established and regular industries were turned into the war industries.

21.3.3. In the late summer 1917 a large number of American sailors and soldiers were shipped to France. On the sea, the U.S. Navy played a very important role. They protected the merchant ships and the troop transport ships to Europe. On land, many American units joined with allied forces to crush the German troops on the battlefields. The most famous battle was Meuse-Argone. The American forces broke this German **offensive line** and forced Germany and its allies to surrender. An armistice - or agreement to stop fighting -was signed on November 11, 1918. The armistice was called the Treaty of Versailles. Germany had to give up all its colonies and cede other land to France.

21.4. THE SEARCH FOR A LASTING PEACE

21.4.1. During the war, President Wilson had made a plan for **world peace**. His plan was called the Fourteen Points. He wanted freedom on the seas, and a reduction in the production of weapons. But for Wilson, the fourteenth point was the most important of all. This point called for the establishment of the League of Nations. The League would work to solve problems that might cause future wars.

21.4.2. President Wilson returned to the U.S. from the signing of the Treaty of Versailles to ask the U.S. Congress to approve his peace plan. However, the Congress turned against President Wilson. The country was returning to its belief in isolationism. This meant that the U.S. wanted to limit its relations with foreign countries. Unable to get the support from the Congress, President Wilson brought his case to the American people. He traveled over 8,000 miles and made 40 speeches in an effort to win their support for the League of Nations. He became sick during his trip and had to return to Washington D.C.. At the same time, the Senate rejected totally the peace plan and did not allow the U.S. to become a member of the League of Nations. This greatly weakened the League and kept it from being a success.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define.

ASSASSINATION
EMPIRE
OUTRAGED
TRIPLE
MACHINE GUN
ENTENTE
LINE
HUNGARY

SELECTIVE
OPPORTUNITY
HEIR
SUBMARINE
CEDE
GUN
TANK
NOTE

ACT
NATIONALIST
ALLIANCES
TRENCH
OFFENSIVE
MILITARY
SERBIAN
GREAT BRITAIN

O M O P P O R T U N I T Y O M A

O A U O N O O R O O O O O F I U

E C T O A L L I A N C E S F L S

N H R O T O O P O O O O O E I T

T I A O I O O L T A N K O N T R

E N G C O N F E I C T O H S A A

N E E O N O O E M P I R E I R L

T G D O A G U N C E D E I V Y I

E U U O L T R E N C H O R E L A

O N E N I R A M B U S O O T I O

N O T E S E L E C T I V E C N O

O N O I T A N I S S A S S A E O

S E R B I A N H U N G A R Y O O

G R E A T B R I T A I N O O O O

II. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put a F in that space if it is false.

_____ 1. During the war, President Wilson had not made a plan for world peace.

_____ 2. When the U.S. entered the war, the nation's army had about 2 million soldiers.

3. On the sea, the U.S. Navy played a very important role.
4. The American forces broke the German offensive line and forced Germany and its allies to surrender.
5. Wilson's plan was not supported by many people in the United States and in Europe.
6. A peace conference was held in Washington D.C. to sign the treaty.
7. According to the Versailles Treaty, Germany had to give up all of its colonies and cede other land to France.
8. The U.S. Senate wanted to keep all points in the Treaty and signed it.
9. At the same time, the Senate rejected totally the peace plan and did not allow the U.S. to become a member of the League of Nations.

III. Fill in the blanks:

Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: Triple Alliance, Triple Entente, conflict, nationalists, excuse, tanks, machine guns, submarines, trench war, military tactics, blockade, outraged, League of Nations.

1. Bismark, the German hero, formed the ______________, between Germany, Austria-Hungary, and Italy.
2. To prevent the attack of the Triple Alliance, France, Great Britain, and Russia formed the ______________.

3. The rivalries between these two alliances caused ________ in many parts of Europe.

4. Serbian ____________ were also strong in Bosnia.

5. The Austrians used this assassination of the heir as an ___________ to crush Serbia and extend Austrian control into the Balkans.

6. Many new weapons such as _____________, ________________, and ______________ were introduced.

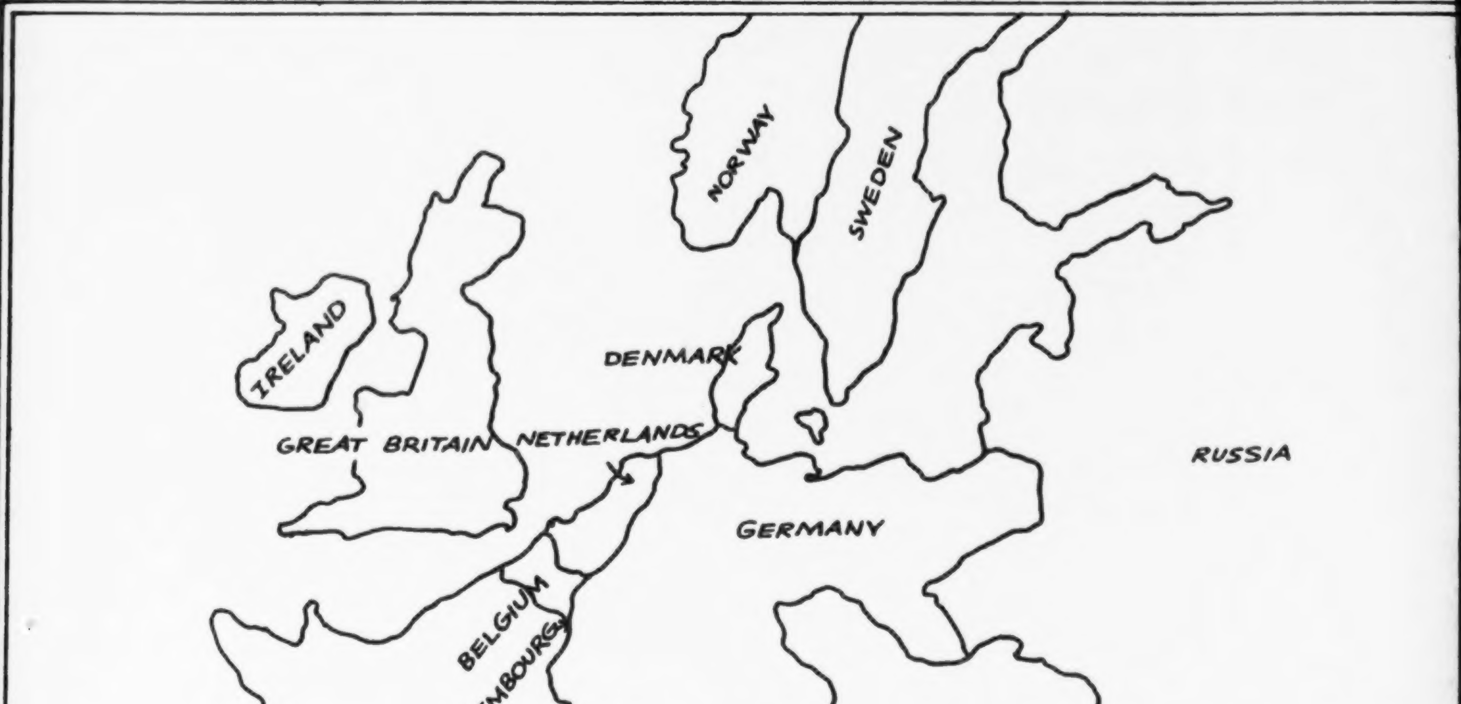
7. The _____________ was a new __________________.

8. Germany wanted to break the British ____________, so they used their new weapon - the submarine.

9. The Americans were ____________ at the note.

10. The Fourteenth point was the most important of all. This point called for the establishement of the ______________.

IV. Study about the map.
Color the nations belonging to the Triple Entente and the nations belonging to the Triple Alliance.


NORWAY
SWEDEN
IRELAND
DENMARK
GREAT BRITAIN
NETHERLANDS
RUSSIA
GERMANY
BELGIUM
LUXEMBOURG
SWITZ.
FRANCE
AUSTRIA-HUNGARY
PORTUGAL
SPAIN
ITALY
MONTENEGRO
RUMANIA
SERBIA
BULGARIA
TURKISH EMPRE
GREECE
ALBANIA
SP. MOROCCO
MOROCCO
ALGERIA
TUNISIA

ໝວດ ທີ : ບັນຫາໃນການມີອຳນາດແລະຄວາມມັ່ງຄັ່ງສົມບູນ.

ພາກ ໒໑ : ການສູ້ລົບຄັ້ງໃຫຍ່.

໒໑.໑. ຕົ້ນເຫດຂອງສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງຫນຶ່ງ

໒໑.໑.໑. ໃນປີກ່ອນສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງຫນຶ່ງ ປະເທດໃຫຍ່ໆໃນຢູໂຣປແບ່ງກັນອອກເປັນສອງກຸ່ມດ້ວຍກັນຄື : The Triple Alliance ແລະ the Triple Entente. ພວກ the Triple Alliance ຊຶ່ງປະກອບດ້ວຍປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນ ປະເທດອອສເຕຣັຍ - ຮັງກາເຣັຍ ແລະ ປະເທດອິຕາລີ ນັ້ນແມ່ນອັຄຣະບຸຣຸດ ຊາວເຢຍຣະມັນຊື່ວ່າ Bismark . ກຸ່ມນີ້ຈັດຂຶ້ນເພື່ອໃຫ້ຄວາມຊຸ່ມກັນແກ່ປະເທດໃດປະເທດນຶ່ງໃນສາມປະເທດທີ່ກ່າວມານັ້ນເມື່ອມີປະເທດອື່ນເຂົ້າມາໂຈມຕີ. ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນການໂຈມຕີຂອງພວກ the Triple Alliance ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ ປະເທດອັງກິດ ແລະປະເທດຣັດເຊັຍ ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ພາກັນຕັ້ງກຸ່ມກັນຂຶ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ the Triple Entente . ການຊ່ວງຊີງຣະຫວ່າງສອງກຸ່ມດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ພາໃຫ້ເກີດມີການຕໍ່ສູ້ກັນຂຶ້ນຢູ່ຫຼາຍແຫ່ງໃນຢູໂຣປ.

໒໑.໑.໒. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງທີ່ມີການຈັດກຸ່ມກັນຂຶ້ນຢູ່ນັ້ນ ປະເທດໃຫຍ່ທັງຫຼາຍພາກັນສ້າງພະລັງດ້ານທະຫານແລະດ້ານເສດຖະກິດ ດ້ວຍການລ່າຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນ. ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດແລະອັງກິດໄດ້ມີຫົວເມືອງຂຶ້ນຢູ່ຫຼາຍແຫ່ງໃນເອເຊັຍແລະໃນອາຟຣິກາ. ປະເທດອອສເຕຣັຍ - ຮັງກາເຣັຍຕ້ອງການກວມເອົາດິນແດນນ້ອຍໆບາງແຫ່ງໃນເຂດ Balkans ເຂົ້າເປັນສ່ວນໃນຣາຊອານາຈັກຂອງຕົນ. ນຶ່ງໃນດິນແດນດັ່ງກ່າວແມ່ນ Bosnia ຊຶ່ງມີຄົນສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ເປັນຊາວ Slavic ແລະຊາວ Serbian. ພວກຊາວ Serbian ແລະຊາວ Slavic ເຫັນວ່າ Bosnia ຈະຕ້ອງຂຶ້ນກັບປະເທດ Serbia ຊຶ່ງຢູ່ຕິດກັບ Bosnia ເອງ.

໒໑.໑.໓. ນັກຫົວຊາດນິຍົມຊາວ Serbian ໃນ Bosnia ເປັນພວກທີ່ແຂງແຮງເຊັ່ນກັນ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງການໄດ້ເອກກະຣາດຈາກຣາຊອານາຈັກ ອອສເຕຣັຍ - ຮັງກາເຣັຍ.

໒໑.໑.໔. ໃນວັນທີ ໒໘ ເດືອນ ມິຖຸນາ ໑໙໑໔ ຜູ້ສືບຣາຊບັນລັງຂອງອອສເຕຣັຍ - ຮັງກາເຣັຍ Archduke Francis Ferdinand ພ້ອມດ້ວຍມະເຫສີ ໄປຢ້ຽມຢາມ Sarajevo ເມືອງຫຼວງຂອງ Bosnia. ສະມາຊິກຂອງກຸ່ມນັກຫົວຊາດນິຍົມຊາວ Serbian ຜູ້ນຶ່ງໄດ້ຍິງເຈົ້າ Archduke ແລະມະເຫສີ

ເຮັດໃຫ້ທັງສອງເຖິງສິ້ນພະຊົນໄປ. ຣັຖບານອອສເຕີຍເຫັນວ່າການຄາດຕະກັມເປັນແຜນຂອງກຸ່ມນັກຊາດນິຍົມຈາກ Serbia ດັ່ງນັ້ນອອສເຕີຍຈຶ່ງໄດ້ໂອກາດຖິ່ມ Serbia ແລະຂຍາຍການຄຸ້ມຄອງຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເຂົ້າໄປເຖິງ Balkans.

໒໑.໑.໕. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງນັ້ນປະເທດຣັດເຊັຍເປັນປະເທດພັນທະມິດກັບ Serbia. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ ໃນເວລາອອສເຕີຍໂຈມຕີ Serbia ຈັກກະພັດຣັດເຊັຍຈຶ່ງນຳປະເທດເຂົ້າສົງຄາມໃນວັນດຽວກັນ. ປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນຈຶ່ງເຂົ້າຂ້າງກັບອອສເຕີຍ - ຮັງກາຣີ ໄດ້ປະກາດສົງຄາມກັບຣັດເຊັຍໃນວັນທີ ໑ ເດືອນ ສິງຫາ ໑໙໑໔ ແລະສາມມື້ຕໍ່ມາກໍໄດ້ປະກາດສົງຄາມກັບຝຣັ່ງເສດຕື່ມອີກ. ປະເທດອັງກິດ ໃນຖານະເປັນພັນທະມິດກັບຝຣັ່ງເສດໃນກຸ່ມ the Triple Entente ກໍໄດ້ມີສ່ວນໃນສົງຄາມເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ. ໃນທີ່ສຸດສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ນຶ່ງກໍມາເຖິງ.

໒໑.໒. ສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ນຶ່ງ

໒໑.໒.໑. ກອງທັບຂອງປະເທດຕ່າງໆເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ສູ້ຮົບກັນໃນຢູໂຣບ ໃນຕາເວັນອອກກາງ ແລະໃນ ອາຟຣິກາ. ອາວຸດໃໝ່ໆຫຼາຍຢ່າງເຊັ່ນ ຣົດຖັງ ປືນກົນ ແລະ ເຮືອດຳນ້ຳໄດ້ຖືກນຳອອກມາໃຊ້ກັນ. ການຮົບປະຈຳທີ່ຈຶ່ງບໍ່ມີການເຄື່ອນຍ້າຍທະຫານເປັນຍຸດທະວິທີແບບໃໝ່ທາງທະຫານ. ທະຫານທັງສອງຝ່າຍຫຼາຍລ້ານຄົນຖືກເສັຍຊີວິດ. ສົງຄາມໄດ້ທຳລາຍບ້ານເມືອງໃນຢູໂຣບເກືອບທັງໝົດ. ທັງສອງຝ່າຍຕ້ອງການສະບຽງເຄື່ອງໃຊ້ແລະອາວຸດຕ່າງໆຈາກສະຫະຣັດອະເມຣິກາ ແລະ ຈາກປະເທດເປັນກາງອື່ນໆ.

໒໑.໒.໒. ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາບໍ່ໄດ້ພົວພັນກັບສົງຄາມໂດຍກົງ ສະນັ້ນສະຫະຣັຖຈຶ່ງໄດ້ສົ່ງກຳປັ່ນຂົນສະບຽງໃຫ້ແກ່ພວກສູ້ຮົບໃນສົງຄາມທັງສອງຝ່າຍ. ກອງທັບເຮືອປະເທດອັງກິດ ໄດ້ທຳການປິດປາກນ້ຳຂອງຢູໂຣບໄວ້ ແລະໄດ້ຢຸດພ້ອມກັບກວດຄົ້ນກຳປັ່ນອະເມຣິກາຫຼາຍລຳ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ພວກອັງກິດໄດ້ຍຶດກຳປັ່ນອະເມຣິກັນທີ່ບັນທຸກອາຫານເພື່ອລຳລຽງໃຫ້ແກ່ກຸ່ມປະເທດເປັນກາງໃນຢູໂຣບ. ທັງນີ້ກໍເພາະເຂົາເຈົ້າຢ້ານວ່າອາຫານເຫຼົ່ານີ້ຈະຕົກເຖິງມືຂອງພວກເຢຍຣະມັນໃນຂັ້ນຕໍ່ໄປ. ການປິດລ້ອມຂອງກອງທັບເຮືອອັງກິດພາໃຫ້ປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນໄດ້ຮັບຄວາມຫຍຸ້ງຍາກຫຼາຍທີ່ສຸດ.

໒໑.໒.໓. ປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນຕ້ອງການທຳລາຍການປິດລ້ອມຂອງອັງກິດດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ໃຊ້ອາວຸດແບບໃໝ່ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າຄືກຳປັ່ນດຳນ້ຳ. ໃນເດືອນ ມີນາ ປີ ໑໙໑໔ ກຳປັ່ນດຳນ້ຳເຢຍຣະມັນລຳນຶ່ງໄດ້ທຳລາຍເຮືອ

ຂອງອັງກິດຊຶ່ງມີຄົນເສັຍຊີວິດກ່ວາ ໑໐໐ ຄົນ ຮວມດ້ວຍຄົນອະເມຣິກັນບາງຄົນ. ຕໍ່ມາໃນວັນທີ ໑໕ ພຶສພາ ໑໙໑໕ ກຳປັ່ນດຳນ້ຳເຢຍຣະມັນໄດ້ທຳລາຍເຮືອບັນທຸກຄົນໂດຍສານຂອງອັງກິດຊື່ວ່າ Lusitania ແລະ ໄດ້ສັງຕາຍ ໑໒໐໐ ຄົນຮວມດ້ວຍຄົນອະເມຣິກັນ ໑໒໘ ຄົນ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson ໄດ້ສົ່ງສານປະທ້ວງປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນຢ່າງຮ້າຍແຮງພ້ອມກັບຂໍຮ້ອງໃຫ້ເຢຍຣະມັນຢຸດຕິການໃຊ້ກຳປັ່ນດຳນ້ຳໃນສົງຄາມ.

໒໑.໒.໕. ປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນເມີນເສີຍຕໍ່ຄຳປະທ້ວງຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໗ ພວກອັງກິດຄົ້ນພົບສານຈາກ ທ່ານ Arthur Zimmerman ຣັຖມົນຕີການຕ່າງປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນ ເຖິງຣັຖບານຂອງປະເທດ ເມັກຊິກໂກ ໃນສານນັ້ນທ່ານ Zimmerman ສເນີໃຫ້ ເມັກຊິກໂກ ຮ່ວມກັບປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນເພື່ອຕໍ່ສູ້ກັບສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ແລ້ວປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນຈະຊ່ວຍເມັກຊິກໂກ ກອບກູ້ເອົາດິນແດນທີ່ເສັຍໃຫ້ສະຫະຣັຖໃນຣະຫວ່າງສົງຄາມເມັກຊິກກັນນັ້ນຄືນ.

໒໑.໓. ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາກັບສົງຄາມ

໒໑.໓.໑. ເມື່ອເຫັນສານດັ່ງກ່າວ ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ເກີດແຄດແຄ້ນຢ່າງໜັກ. ໃນຄືນຂອງວັນທີ ໒ ເມສາ ປີ ໑໙໑໗ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson ໄດ້ຂໍອະນຸຍາດປະກາດສົງຄາມກັບສະພາ ຊຶ່ງສະພາຕົກລົງປະກາດສົງຄາມກັບປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນໃນສີ່ມື້ຕໍ່ມາ.

໒໑.໓.໒. ໃນເວລາເລີ່ມສົງຄາມ ສະຫະຣັຖມີທະຫານຢູ່ປະມານ ໒໐໐.໐໐໐ ຄົນ ຊຶ່ງບໍ່ເປັນການພຽງພໍສຳຫຼັບເຂົ້າສນາມຮົບໃນຢູໂຣບ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນໃນເດືອນ ພຶສພາ ປີ ໑໙໑໗ ສະພາຈຶ່ງໄດ້ອອກກົດໝາຍເພື່ອເກນເອົາພົນທະຫານເພີ່ມຕື່ມ ກົດໝາຍດັ່ງກ່າວເອີ້ນວ່າ The Selective Service Act. ຄ້າຍຝຶກທະຫານຖືກຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍແຫ່ງດ້ວຍກັນ. ພວກໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມທັມມະດາໄດ້ກາຍເປັນໂຮງງານສຳຫຼັບສົງຄາມໄປ.

໒໑.໓.໓. ທ້າຍຣະດູຮ້ອນຂອງປີ ໑໙໑໗ ທະຫານອະເມຣິກັນ ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຖືກສົ່ງໄປຍັງປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ. ໃນທະເລກອງທັບເຮືອສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຮັບບົດບາດອັນສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດຄື ທຳການຄຸ້ມກັນເຮືອສິນຄ້າແລະເຮືອຂົນທະຫານໄປຢູໂຣບ. ພາຍໃນຢູໂຣບເອັງກອງທະຫານອະເມຣິກັນ ແລະ ກຳລັງຂອງພັນທະມິດໄດ້ຖະລົ່ມກອງທະຫານເຢຍຣະມັນໃນສະນາມຮົບຫຼາຍແຫ່ງ. ບັ້ນຮົບທີ່ຍືນນານທີ່ສຸດແມ່ນບັ້ນຮົບ Mense Argone. ໃນການສູ້ຮົບນັ້ນທະຫານສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຕີກຳລັງແນວໜ້າຂອງເຢຍຣະມັນແຕກໄປແລະສາມາດບັງຄັບໃຫ້ປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນພ້ອມດ້ວຍປະເທດພັນທະມິດຂອງເຢຍຣະມັນເອັງຍອມຈຳນົນ. ການເຊັນສັນຍາສງົບເສິກໄດ້ມີຂຶ້ນໃນວັນທີ ໑໑ ເດືອນ

ພຶສຈິກາ ປີ ໑໙໑໘.

໒໑.໔. ສານສແດງຕາສັນຕິພາບອັນຍືນຍົງ

໒໑.໔.໑. ໃນຕອນສົງຄາມປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson ໄດ້ວາງໂຄງການສ້າງສັນຕິພາບຂອງໂລກໄວ້ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ໂຄງການສິບສີ່ຂໍ້. ໃນໂຄງການນັ້ນ ທ່ານ ໄດ້ຮຽກຮ້ອງໃຫ້ມີເສຣີພາບໃນທະເລ ແລະ ໃຫ້ມີການຕັດການສ້າງສາອາວຸດລົງ. ຂໍ້ທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດກວ່າຫມູ່ແມ່ນຂໍ້ທີ່ສີ່ຊຶ່ງມີການຮຽກຮ້ອງໃຫ້ຕັ້ງສະຫະພັນນານາຊາດຂຶ້ນ (The League of Nations).

໒໑.໔.໒. ໂຄງການຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson ໄດ້ຮັບການສນັບສນູນຈາກປະຊາຊົນຈຳນວນຫລາຍທັງຢູ່ໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາແລະຢູ່ໃນຢູໂຣບ. ແຕ່ວ່າຜູ້ນຳຂອງຝຣັ່ງເສດຄັດຄ້ານຕໍ່ໂຄງການດັ່ງກ່າວເພາະເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງການລົງໂທດປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນໃນຖານະເປັນປະເທດທີ່ເສັຍສົງຄາມ ແລະອີກຢ່າງນຶ່ງເຂົາເຈົ້າເຫັນວ່າໂຄງການຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson ເປັນການໃຫ້ທ້າຍແກ່ປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນຈຶ່ງໄດ້ມີກອງປະຊຸມເພື່ອສັນຕິພາບຂຶ້ນຢູ່ທີ່ເມືອງ Versailles ຊຶ່ງຢູ່ໃກ້ກັບກຸງ Paris ເອງ. ເພື່ອໃຫ້ມີການຕົກລົງກັນໄດ້ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຫາຍານໄປຍະຍານຫລາຍຂໍ້ດ້ວຍກັນ.

໒໑.໔.໓. ຕາມສົນທິສັນຍາ Versailles ແລ້ວ ປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນຕ້ອງສະລະປະເທດທີ່ເປັນເມືອງຂຶ້ນຂອງຕົນທຸກປະເທດແລະຕ້ອງຈ່າຍຄ່າສ້ອມແປງໃຫ້ແກ່ປະເທດພັນທະມິດທັງຫລາຍພ້ອມກັບມອບດິນແດນຕ່າງໆ ໃຫ້ແກ່ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດອີກດ້ວຍ.

໒໑.໔.໔. ຫລັງຈາກກອງປະຊຸມທີ່ Versailles ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson ໄດ້ກັບຄືນສະຫະຣັຖເພື່ອໃຫ້ສະພາເຈັນຮັບຮູ້ສົນທິສັນຍາ. ແຕ່ວ່າກ່ອນທີ່ຈະເຈັນສະພາສູງຕ້ອງການດັດແປງສົນທິສັນຍາດັ່ງກ່າວບາງຂໍ້. ເມື່ອບໍ່ໄດ້ຮັບການສນັບສນູນຈາກສະພາສູງແລ້ວ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ນຳເອົາບັນຫາຂອງທ່ານໄປຖແລງຕໍ່ປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນ. ທ່ານໄດ້ເດີນທາງກວ່າ ໘໐໐໐ ໄມລ ແລະໄດ້ຮັດປາໄສ ໔໐ ຄັ້ງ ເພື່ອຂໍການສນັບສນູນຈາກປະຊາຊົນ. ທ່ານເກີດບໍ່ສະບາຍໃນຣະຫວ່າງການເດີນທາງ ໃນທີ່ສຸດທ່ານຈຳເປັນຕ້ອງກັບຄືນສູ່ ກຸງວໍຊິງຕັນ. ໃນຣະຍະນັ້ນ ສະພາສູງບໍ່ຍອມຮັບພິຈາຣະນາສົນທິສັນຍາອີກຕໍ່ໄປ ແລະບໍ່ອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາເຂົ້າເປັນສະມາຊິກຂອງສະຫະພັນນານາຊາດແຕ່ປະການໃດເລີຍ.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ:

ຄຳແນະນຳ: ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບ ແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມໃສ່ສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບນັ້ນແລ້ວ ໃຫ້ຂຽນສັບນັ້ນໄວ້ ພ້ອມດ້ວຍຄວາມໝາຍ.

ASSASSINATION
EMPIRE
OUTRAGED
TRIPLE
MACHINE GUN
ENTENTE
LINE
HUNGARY
SELECTIVE
OPPORTUNITY
HEIR
SUBMARINE
CEDE
GUN
TANK
NOTE
ACT
NATIONALIST
ALLIANCES
TRENCH
OFFENSIVE
MILITARY
SERBIAN

O M O P P O R T U N I T Y O M A

O A U O N O O R O O O O O F I U

E C T O A L L I A N C E S F L S

N H R O T O O P O O O O O E I T

T I A O I O O L T A N K O N T R

E N G C O N F E I C T O H S A A

N E E O N O O E M P I R E I R L

T G D O A G U N C E D E I V Y I

E U U O L T R E N C H O R E L A

O N E N I R A M B U S O O T I O

N O T E S E L E C T I V E C N O

O N O I T A N I S S A S S A E O

S E R B I A N H U N G A R Y O O

G R E A T . B R I T A I N O O O O

໖. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ :

ຈົ່ງອ່ານແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ໝາຍ T ໃສ່ ຖ້າເຫັນວ່າປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກຕ້ອງ. ຖ້າຜິດໃຫ້ໝາຍ F.

_______ 1. ໃນສໄມສົງຄາມ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson ບໍ່ໄດ້ວາງໂຄງການສ້າງສັນຕິພາບໃນໂລກໄວ້.

_______ 2. ໃນຕອນເຂົ້າຮ່ວມທຳສົງຄາມນັ້ນ ກອງທັບສະຫະຣັຖມີ ຈຳນວນທະຫານປະມານ ໒ ລ້ານຄົນ.

_______ 3. ກອງທັບເຮືອສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ມີບົດບາດອັນສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດໃນນ່ານທະເລ.

_______ 4. ກຳລັງທະຫານສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຕີກຳລັງແນວໜ້າເຢຣະມັນແຕກໄປ ແລະໄດ້ບັງຄັບໃຫ້ເຢຣະມັນ ພ້ອມດ້ວຍ ພັນທະມິດຍອມຈຳນົນ.

_______ 5. ແຜນການຂອງທ່ານ Wilson ບໍ່ໄດ້ຮັບການສນັບສນຸນ ຈາກຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໃນສະຫະຣັຖ ແລະ ໃນຢູໂຣບ.

_______ 6. ກອງປະຊຸມເພື່ອສັນຕິພາບໄດ້ຖືກຈັດຂຶ້ນໃນກຸງວໍ່ຊິງຕັນ ເພື່ອທຳການເຊັນສົນທິສັນຍາ.

__________ 7. ຕາມສົນທິສັນຍາ Versailles ' ແລ້ວ ປະເທດເຢັຍຣະມັນ ຕ້ອງ ປະປ່ອຍ ອະນານິຄົມ ທັງໝົດ ຂອງຕົນ ແລະ ຕ້ອງມອບດິນແດນ ແຫ່ງອື່ນ ໃຫ້ ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ.

__________ 8. ສະພາສູງສະຫະຣັດ ຕ້ອງການ ຮັກສາເອົາ ຫຼັກຂໍ້ ໃນສົນທິສັນຍາໄວ້ ແລະ ໄດ້ ເຊັນສົນທິສັນຍາ ດັ່ງກ່າວ.

__________ 9. ພ້ອມດຽວກັນ ສະພາສູງສະຫະຣັດ ບໍ່ຍອມຮັບ ເອົາ ໂຄງການສ້າງ ສັນຕິພາບທັງໝົດ ແລະ ບໍ່ອະນຸຍາດ ໃຫ້ສະຫະຣັດ ເປັນສະມາຊິກ ຂອງ ສະຫະພັນນາໆຊາດ.

ມ. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ :

ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າ ຫຼື ໝວດຄຳເວົ້າ ຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງ ທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ ຄວາມໝາຍ ຖືກຕ້ອງ :
Triple Alliance , Triple Entente , ການຕໍ່ສູ້ກັນ, ນັກຊາດນິຍົມ, ຂໍ້ອ້າງ, ຣົດຖັງ, ປືນກົນ, ເຮືອດຳນ້ຳ, ການຮົບປະຈຳທີ່, ຍຸດທະວິທີທາງທະຫານ, ການປິດລ້ອມ, ໂກດເຄືອງ,

1. ທ່ານ Bismark ວິຣະບຸຣຸດຊາວເຢຍຣະມັນ ເປັນຜູ້ຕັ້ງ ________________ ຊຶ່ງປະກອບດ້ວຍ ເຢຍຣະມັນ, ອອສເຕຣັຍ-ຮັງກາຣີ ແລະ ອີຕາລີ.

2. ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນການບຸກໂຈມຕີໂດຍພວກ Triple Alliance ຝຣັ່ງເສດ, ອັງກິດ, ແລະ ຣັສເຊັຽ ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຕັ້ງ ________________ ຂຶ້ນມາ.

3. ການຕັດແບ່ງ ລະຫວ່າງ ພັນທະມິດທັງສອງນີ້ ໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ເກີດມີ ______________ ໃນຫລາຍພາກ ຂອງ ຢູໂຣບ.

4. ________________ Serbian ກໍມີພະລັງອັນເຂັ້ມແຂງໃນ Bosnia ເຊັ່ນກັນ.

5. ຊາວອອສເຕຣັຍ ໄດ້ໃຊ້ການຄາດຕະກັມ ຂອງຜູ້ສືບຣາຊບັນລັງ ເປັນ ______________ ເພື່ອທຳການຖລົ່ມ Serbia ແລະເພື່ອຂຍາຍການຄອບຄອງຂອງຕົນເຂົ້າໄປໃນເຂດ Balkans

6. ໄດ້ມີການໃຊ້ອາວຸດໃໝ່ໆຫລາຍຢ່າງເຊັ່ນ ____________, ___________ ແລະ ___________.

7. ການ ______________ ເປັນ ______________ ແນວໃໝ່.

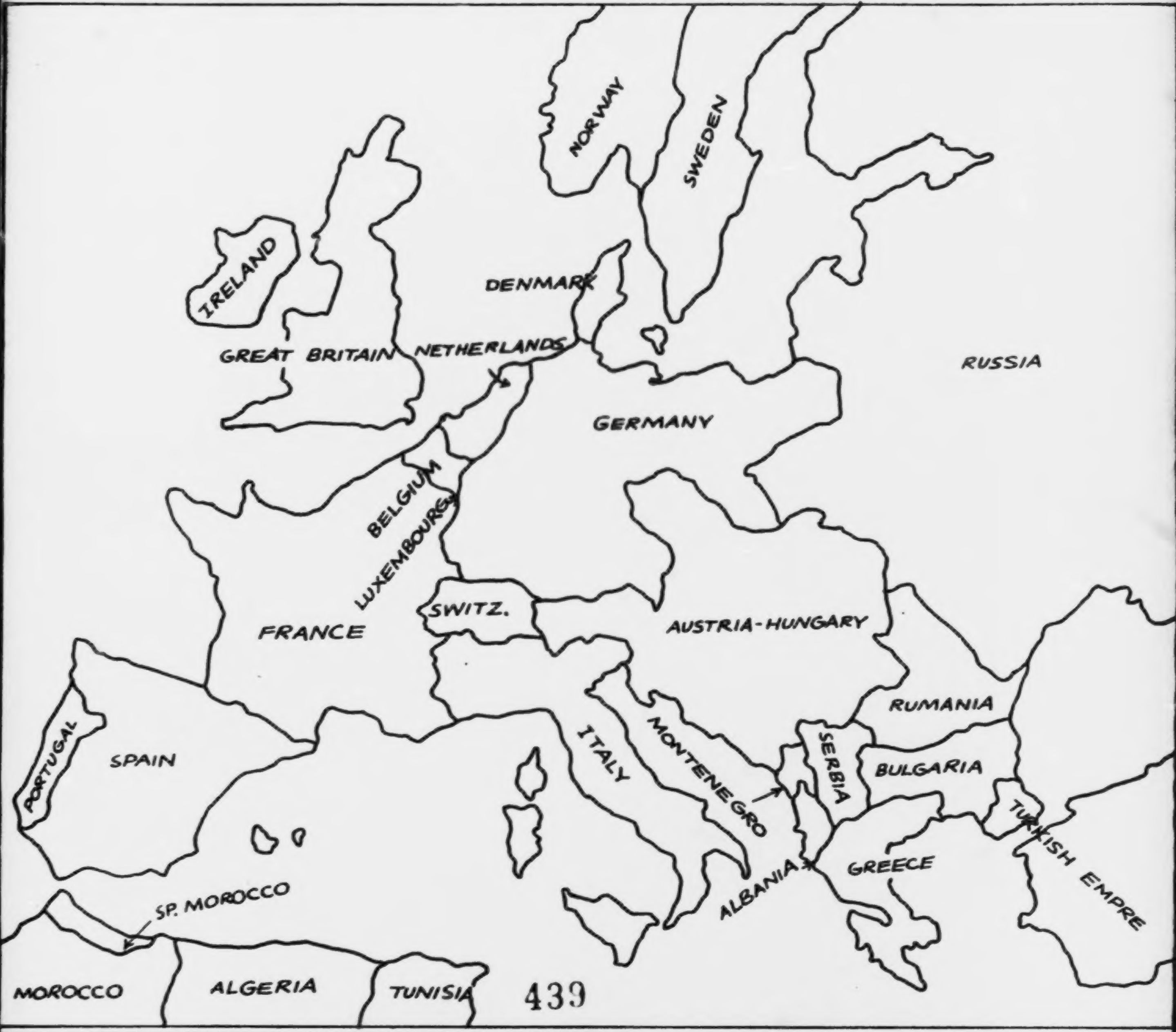
8. ເຢຣະມັນຕ້ອງການທັບມ້າງການ ___________ ຂອງອັງກິດ ດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ໃຊ້ອາວຸດຊະນິດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າຄື ເຮືອດຳນ້ຳ.

9. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນ ໄດ້ມີຄວາມ ______________ ຕໍ່ ເອກກະສານ ດັ່ງກ່າວ.

10. ຂໍ້ທີ່ສິບສີ່ ເປັນຂໍ້ທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດ ຊຶ່ງສເນີໃຫ້ມີການຈັດຕັ້ງ ______________ ຂຶ້ນ.

໔. ການຝຶດໃຊ້ແຜນທີ່:

ຈົ່ງໃສ່ສີ ປະເທດທີ່ຂຶ້ນກັບ Triple Entente ແລະ ປະເທດທີ່ຂຶ້ນກັບ Triple Alliance


NORWAY
SWEDEN
IRELAND
DENMARK
GREAT BRITAIN
NETHERLANDS
RUSSIA
GERMANY
BELGIUM
LUXEMBOURG
SWITZ.
FRANCE
AUSTRIA-HUNGARY
RUMANIA
PORTUGAL
SPAIN
ITALY
MONTENEGRO
SERBIA
BULGARIA
TURKISH EMPRE
GREECE
ALBANIA
SP. MOROCCO
MOROCCO
ALGERIA
TUNISIA

ໝວດ ໘ : ບັນຫາໃນການມີອໍານາດແລະຄວາມມັ່ງຄັ່ງສົມບູນ.

ພາກ ໖໖ : ການກັບຄືນສູ່ສະພາບປົກກະຕິ.

ສັບໃໝ່ :

candidacy: ການແຂ່ງຂັນ.

In 1920, the Republicans did not renew President Wilson's candidacy.

partipation: ການມີສ່ວນ.

President Harding was aware of the Secretary of Interior's participation in the Teapot Dome Scandal.

straighten out: ແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍອອກ.

Harding tried to straighten out the corruption in his goverment.

scandale: ເຣື້ອງຕື້ນອງບັນ.

There were many scandals during Harding's administration.

electric motor: ເຄື່ອງຈັກໄຟຟ້າ.

The electric motor was a popular product during the 1920=s.

426

man-made product: ຜລິດຕາພັນເຮັດດ້ວຍມື.

Industries replaced old products with new man-made products.

rayon: ໄຫມທຽມ.

Many people bough products made of rayon.

surplus: ສ່ວນເຫຼືອ.

By 1925, many industries were producing a surplus of products.

depression: ສະພາບເສດຖະກິດຝືດເຄືອງ.

One of America's greatest depressions began in 1929.

in vain: ດ້ວຍຄວາມຜິດຫວັງ.

Workers and farmers waited in vain for things to get better.

READING

22.1. THE YEARS AFTER WORLD WAR I: THE ELECTION OF 1920

22.1.1. After the war, the American people were so tired of fighting and killing that they wanted the nation to return to its peacetime course. They wanted to avoid war, to withdraw American forces from Europe, and to limit American relations with other countries. For this reason, most Americans were afraid of President Wilson's League of Nations. They believed the United States should not mix in Europe's business. Because of the President's poor health, the Democrats did not choose President Wilson to run for another term. Instead they chose James M. Cox, a former governor from Ohio, as their candidate. The Republicans picked Senator Warren G. Harding from Ohio as their Presidential candidate.

22.1.2. Warren Harding campaigned for a return to "normalcy". He wanted to see American life return to the way it had been before the war. He also favored reducing government regulations on business. During the campaign, he said little about the League of Nations and the participation of the U.S. in that organization. On the other hand, the Democrats' candidate, James Cox, made U.S. membership in the League of Nations his main issue. This issue frightened and alienated the American people. Harding received 61 percent of the popular vote and won the election of 1920.

22.2. PRESIDENT HARDING AND THE "OHIO GANG"

22.2.1. When Harding become President, he made a serious mistake. He appointed his old friends from Ohio or party supporters to fill top government jobs. They were called the "Ohio Gang". Many of these men were either dishonest or did not do their jobs well. One of these men was Albert B. Fall, who was found guilty of stealing public money. President Harding himself was not directly involved in the corruption, but he knew what had happened in his cabinet. He hoped to straighten out the the scandals before they were exposed to the public. But in 1923 he suddenly became ill and died.

22.2.2 After President Harding died and Vice President Calvin Coolidge became the President, the scandals were exposed to the American people. The most serious scandal involved an oil field in Wyoming called "Teapot Dome" and the

Secretary of Interior Albert B. Fall. Fall leased oil lands reserved in Wyoming by the government to his friends. In return, he received large sums of money from them. Fall was sentenced to jail and became the first cabinet officer ever convicted on criminal charges.

22.2.3. In spite of the scandals and corruption, Americans in the 1920's were living in an era of prosperity. Two factors caused the economy to prosper: First, many new industries were growing and developing. Americans spent money for many things that they had not been able to buy during wartime. The most popular products of this time were automobiles, electric motors, refrigerators, and the radios. The 1920's was also a good time for the workers who produced these products. They had good wages, shorter hours and fairly high employment.

22.2.4. However, while new industries prospered, many of the old industries were threatened by the new products that stole their markets. The drop in use of coal was caused by the fact that many industries were turning to new sources of power, such as gas and electricity. The cotton and wool industries also ran into trouble because the companies began to use silk and new man-made products, such as rayon.

22.3. THE GREAT DEPRESSION BEGINS

22.3.1. After the war many rich people invested heavily in business. These investments helped businesses to grow, to produce more goods and to hire more workers. However, by 1925, growth in some industries had reached its peak. Many businesses were turning out more goods than could be marketed and sold. The American people did not need and could not afford to buy this surplus. As sales fell, many businesses cut back. This caused thousands of workers to lose their jobs.

22.3.2. The business growth caused the prices of most stocks to go up. Some people made enormous profits on the stock market. Stocks prices continued to go up during the summer of 1929. Many people wanted to buy more stocks, but in September of 1929 they could not sell them. During that month the total value of stocks fell nearly 3 billion dollars. On October 23, 1929, the stock market crash began. As stock prices fell, thousands of people sold their stocks at losses. The total losses for that month reached nearly 16 billion dollars. Many people lost all their savings.

22.3.3. The crash of the stock market affected all areas of the economy. Many businesses failed. Thousands of people lost their jobs. Banks were especially hard hit because many had invested large amounts of money in the stock market. From 1929 to 1933 about 9,000 banks were closed down. The Great Depression was beginning. Americans would suffer terribly in the years to come.

22.4. PRESIDENT HOOVER AND HIS FIGHT AGAINST THE DEPRESSION

22.4.1. President Herbert Hoover wanted to rescue the economy from the depression by strong action. He called on the Federal Reserve Board to help businesses get loans. He also asked Congress for a 400 million dollar increase in public work money. This money would be used to hire more people to work on public projects such as road construction. In January 1932, Congress set up the Reconstruction Finance Corporation. This was a giant loan agency. During 1932 this agency made loans of nearly 2 billion dollars mostly to banks, railroads, and large businesses.

22.4.2. President Hoover's plan for fighting depression was not successful because it only helped big businesses while most of the American people lived in poverty, unable to pay their debts. Farmers left their lands, went to the cities to find jobs, or moved to the western states. People in the city also suffered from hunger and poverty. They lived in vain and waited for a new change in the government.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

AFFAIRS
ELECTRICITY
SYSTEM
MOTOR
PARTICIPATION
SCANDAL
VOTER
OHIO GANG
CORRUPT

CANDIDACY
GOVERNMENT
JOBS
MULTIPLE
RAYON
SURPLUS
WAR
PROSPEROUS

COX
IN VAIN
LUXURIES
NORMALCY
REPUBLICAN
VOTE
WARREN
SITUATION

E L E C T R I C I T Y O O P O
R C O X A F F A I R S O O R H
A V O T E R I N V A I N S O I
R W A R R E N D O O S S I S O
T O L U X U R I E S C U T P G
I M V O T E R D O O A R U E A
O O O O O O R A Y O N P A R N
O T W A R O O C O O D L T O G
N O R M A L C Y O O A U I U S
O R M U L T I P L E L S O S O
P A R T I C I P A T I O N O U
R E P U B L I C A N V O T E R
G O V E R N M E N T J O B S C
C O R R U P T S Y S T E M S E

II. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put a F in that space if it is false.

______ 1. President Hoover's plan for fighting depression was not successful because it only helped big business.

______ 2. The city people did not suffer from hunger and poverty during the depression.

______ 3. The crash of the stock market hit all areas of the economy.

______ 4. The business growth caused the prices of most stocks to go down.

______ 5. Many businesses were turning out more goods than could be marketed and sold.

______ 6. The drop in use of coal was caused by the fact that many industries were turning to new sources of power such as gas and electricity.

______ 7. The Democrats' candidate, James Cox, made the U.S. membership in the League of Nations as his main issue.

______ 8. The Republicans chose Senator Warren G. Harding from Ohio as their Presidential candidate.

III. Fill in the blanks: Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: wartime, foreign policies, candidacy, League of Nations, Ohio Gang, affairs, electric motors, man-made products, stocks, the Great Depression.

1. After World War I, people spent more money for many things they had not been able to buy during ____________ .

2. Most American did not agree with President Wilson's _____ ____________ .

3. The Democrats picked James M. Cox, a former governor from Ohio, to replace President Wilson's __________ .

4. Warren Harding said little about the ________________ and the participation of the U.S. in that organization.

5. Warren Harding appointed his old friends from Ohio or party supporters. They were called the ______________ .

6. Albert B. Fall was the most corrupt person. He was involved in the Teapot Dome ___________ that related to the leasing of government reserved oil lands in Wyoming to his friends.

7. During the 1920's, the most important products of this time were automobiles, _____________ , refrigerators, and the radios.

8. The cotton and wool industries also ran into troubles because the companies began to use silk and new ______________ _________ .

9. The business growth caused the prices of most __________ to go up.

10. On October 23, 1929 the _______________ began.

1. After World War I, people spent more money for many things they had not been able to buy during ____________ .

2. Most American did not agree with President Wilson's _____ _____________ .

3. The Democrats picked James M. Cox, a former governor from Ohio, to replace President Wilson's __________ .

4. Warren Harding said little about the ________________ and the participation of the U.S. in that organization.

5. Warren Harding appointed his old friends from Ohio or party supporters. They were called the ______________ .

6. Albert B. Fall was the most corrupt person. He was involved in the Teapot Dome ___________ that related to the leasing of government reserved oil lands in Wyoming to his friends.

7. During tht 1920's, the most important products of this time were automobiles, _____________ , refrigerators, and the radios.

8. The cotton and wool industries also run into troubles because the companies began to use silk and new ______________ __________ .

9. The business growth caused the prices of most __________ to go up.

10. On October 23, 1929 the _______________ began.

ບົດອ່ານ

໒໒.໑. ໃນປີຕໍ່ຈາກສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ ໑

໒໒.໑.໑. ພາຍຫຼັງສົງຄາມ ປະຊາຊົນອາເມຣິກັນເກີດມີຄວາມເບື່ອໜ່າຍຕໍ່ການສູ້ລົບຕິດຕໍ່ແລະການອຳປັນລືນແສງ ດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງມີຄວາມປະສົງຢາກໃຫ້ປະເທດຊາດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າກັບຄືນສູ່ຄວາມສງົບດັ່ງທີ່ເຄີຍມີມາ. ເສຖກິດຂອງຊາດໄດ້ຈະເລີນງອກງາມຂຶ້ນ. ປະຊາຊົນທົ່ວໄປພາກັນຈັບຈ່າຍເງິນສຳລັບຊື້ເຄື່ອງຂອງແລະສິ່ງບຳລຸງຄວາມສຸກຕ່າງໆຫຼາຍກ່ວາເດີມເພາະວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າຂາດເຂີນສິ່ງເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນເປັນເວລາຍາວນານໃນລະຫວ່າງ

ສົງຄາມ. ຄົນອະເມຣິກັນສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ມີຄວາມພໍໃຈກັບສະພາບດັ່ງກ່າວ ແລະບໍ່ຕ້ອງການປ່ຽນແປງຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າແຕ່ປະການໃດ. ພ້ອມດຽວກັບເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງການຫຼີກລ່ຽງສົງຄາມແລະຕ້ອງການຖອນກຳລັງທະຫານອະເມຣິກັນອອກຈາກຢູໂຣບ.

໖໖.໑.໖. ເນື່ອງຈາກບັນຫາສຸຂພາບ ທ່ານປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson ຈຶ່ງບໍ່ສາມາດດຳເນີນການສມັກຮັບເລືອກຕັ້ງຕໍ່ໄປໄດ້. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນຄົນອະເມຣິກັນສ່ວນຫຼາຍບໍ່ເຫັນດີກັບນະໂຍບາຍຕ່າງປະເທດຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຫັນໄປໃຫ້ການສະໜັບສະໜູນແກ່ຜູ້ສມັກຮັບເລືອກຕັ້ງຂອງພັກການເມືອງອື່ນ. ພັກ Republican ໄດ້ເລືອກເອົາສະມາຊິກສະພາສູງຄືທ່ານ Warren G. Harding ຈາກ Ohio ເປັນຜູ້ສມັກແຂ່ງເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ. ສຳລັບພັກ Democratic ນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າເລືອກເອົາຜູ້ປົກຄອງຣັຖຄົນເກົ່າຈາກ Ohio ຄືທ່ານ James M. Cox ເປັນຜູ້ສມັກແທນປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson.

໖໖.໑.໗. ທ່ານ Warren Harding ມີນະໂຍບາຍໃນການນຳເອົາປະເທດຊາດກັບຄືນສູ່ສະພາບປົກກະຕິ. ທ່ານຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນມີຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ແບບດຽວກັນກັບໃນສໄມກ່ອນສົງຄາມ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນທ່ານຍັງໄດ້ສົ່ງເສີມໃຫ້ມີການຕັດກົດຂໍ້ບັງຄັບກ່ຽວກັບການຄ້າຂອງຣັຖບານລົງ. ໃນລະຫວ່າງການໂຄສະນາຫາສຽງ ທ່ານ Warren Harding ກ່າວເຖິງສະຫະພັນນາຊາດ ແລະການເຂົ້າຮ່ວມຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໃນອົງການດັ່ງກ່າວພຽງເລັກນ້ອຍ. ກົງກັນຂ້າມຜູ້ສມັກຈາກພັກ Democratic ຄືທ່ານ James M. Cox ນັ້ນຖືເອົາການເຂົ້າເປັນສະມາຊິກສະຫະພັນນາຊາດຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາເປັນນະໂຍບາຍໃຫຍ່ໃນການໂຄສະນາຫາສຽງ. ປາກົດວ່ານະໂຍບາຍດັ່ງກ່າວຂັດແຍ້ງຕໍ່ຄວາມປະສົງຂອງປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນເປັນຢ່າງຍິ່ງ ຈຶ່ງພາໃຫ້ທ່ານ Cox ພ່າຍແພ້ການເລືອກຕັ້ງໄປ. ຄຳຖແລງຂອງທ່ານ Harding ເປັນທີ່ປະທັບໃຈແກ່ຜູ້ປ່ອນບັດເລືອກຕັ້ງໃນເກືອບທຸກຣັຖ ແລະທ່ານໄດ້ຮັບຄະແນນສຽງຈາກປະຊາຊົນເຖິງ ໖໑ ເປີເຊັນ.

໖໖.໖. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Harding ແລະ The " Ohio Gang "

໖໖.໖.໑. ໃນເວລາປະທານາທິບໍດີ Harding ເຂົ້າຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງທ່ານໄດ້ນຳນະໂຍບາຍຂອງພວກຜູ້ນຳນັກທຸຣະກິດໃນພັກ Republican. ທ່ານບໍ່ໄດ້ແຕ່ງຕັ້ງເອົາຄົນທີ່ມີຄວາມຊື່ສັດເຂົ້າປະຈຳຕຳແໜ່ງໃນວົງຣັຖບານ. ກົງກັນຂ້າມທ່ານເລືອກເອົາພັກພວກໝູ່ເກົ່າຈາກ Ohio ທີ່ຜູ້ສນັບສນູນພັກຂອງທ່ານເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ພວກດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ຖືກເອີ້ນວ່າ The "Ohio Gang". ພວກຄົນເຫຼົ່ານີ້ປະຕິບັດໜ້າທີ່ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ໄດ້ດີເລີຍ.

ບາງຄົນມີຄວາມຄິດໃນທາງລົບ. ຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວປະທານາທິບໍດີ Harding ເອງບໍ່ໄດ້ພົວພັນໂດຍກົງໃນການສໍ້ໂກງແຕ່ທ່ານຮູ້ກ່ອນກ່ຽວກັບສິ່ງທີ່ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນວົງການຂອງທ່ານ. ທ່ານມີໂຄງການທີ່ຈະສະສາງການຜິດພາດດັ່ງກ່າວກ່ອນທີ່ປະຊາຊົນຈະຮູ້ເຫັນ. ແຕ່ທ່ານເກີດລົ້ມປ່ວຍແລະເສັຍຊີວິດໄປຢ່າງກະທັນຫັນ.

໒໒.໒.໒. ຫຼັງຈາກປະທານາທິບໍດີ Harding ເຖິງແກ່ກັມທ່ານຮອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Calvin Coolidge ໄດ້ຂຶ້ນເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີແທນ. ປະຊາຊົນທົ່ວໄປຮູ້ເລື່ອງການສໍ້ໂກງໃນວົງການຣັຖບານ. ຜູ້ສໍ້ໂກງຫຼາຍທີ່ສຸດແມ່ນຣັຖມົນຕຣີກະຊວງມະຫາດໄທ ຄືທ່ານ Albert B. Fall. ທ່ານມີການພົວພັນກັບເລື່ອງຂອງ The teapot Dome ຊຶ່ງກ່ຽວຂ້ອງກັບການທີ່ທ່ານໃຫ້ໝູ່ເພື່ອນຂອງທ່ານເອງໃນ Wyoming ເຊົ່າທີ່ດິນສງວນນ້ຳມັນຂອງຣັຖບານ. ໃນການອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ເຊົ່ານັ້ນທ່ານໄດ້ຮັບເງິນຈຳນວນມະຫາສານເປັນການແລກປ່ຽນ. ທ່ານ Fall ຖືກຕັດສິນຈຳຄຸກ ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ທ່ານຈຶ່ງເປັນຣັຖມົນຕຣີຄົນທຳອິດທີ່ຖືກສານລົງໂທດດ້ວຍກົດໝາຍອາຍາ.

໒໒.໒.໓. ເຖິງວ່າຈະມີການສໍ້ໂກງຢູ່ກໍ່ຕາມ ແຕ່ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນທັງຫຼາຍກໍຍັງມີຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຢ່າງອຸດົມສົມບູນ. ຄວາມອຸດົມສົມບູນສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ກັບຄືນມາຍ້ອນຄວາມຈເຣີນກ້າວໜ້າຂອງອຸດສາຫະກັມໃໝ່ໆ. ຄົນອະເມຣິກັນຕ້ອງການສິ່ງຂອງຫຼາຍຢ່າງທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ສາມາດຈະມີໄດ້ໃນຣະຫວ່າງສົງຄາມ. ເຄື່ອງຂອງທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດໃນເວລານັ້ນແມ່ນຣົດຍົນ ເຄື່ອງຈັກໄຟຟ້າ ຕູ້ເຢັນ ແລະ ວິທະຍຸ.

໒໒.໒.໔. ໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມເກົ່າທັງຫຼາຍໄດ້ຮັບການກະທົບກະເທືອນຍ້ອນສິນຄ້າຈະນິດໃໝ່ໆຕີຕລາດ. ການໃຊ້ຖ່ານຫີນຫຼຸດນ້ອຍຖອຍລົງກໍ່ເພາະວ່າໂຮງງານຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຫັນໄປໃຊ້ຢ່າງອື່ນເຊັ່ນ ແກສ ແລະ ໄຟຟ້າ. ໂຮງງານຝ້າຍ ແລະ ຂົນ ກໍ່ປະສົບບັນຫາຫຍຸ້ງຍາກເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ ເພາະວ່າພວກບໍຣິສັດຕ່າງໆເລີ່ມໃຊ້ໄໝແລະອຸປກອນທີ່ປະດິດຂຶ້ນໃໝ່ເຊັ່ນ rayon.

໒໒.໒.໕. ໑໙໒໐ ແລະ ໑໙໒໐ ປາກົດເປັນປີທີ່ພວກຄົນງານມີຄວາມສະດວກສະບາຍດີ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເງິນດີ ເວລາທຳງານກໍ່ສັ້ນລົງ ແລະວຽກງານທົ່ວໄປກໍ່ມີຢູ່ຫຼາຍ. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງນັ້ນສິນຄ້າທີ່ຜລິດອອກມາເພີ່ມທະວີຂຶ້ນຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍແຕ່ຫາຕລາດຂາຍບໍ່ໄດ້. ພືດປູກຕ່າງໆກໍ່ປະສົບບັນຫາໃນທຳນອງດຽວກັນຊຶ່ງເປັນເຫດໃຫ້ຊາວນາບໍ່ສາມາດຫາເງິນຈ່າຍໜີ້ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້.

໒໒.໓. ສະພາບເສດຖະກິດເສື່ອມໂຊມຄັ້ງໃຫຍ່

໒໒.໓.໑. ພາຍຫຼັງສົງຄາມພວກທີ່ຮັ່ງມີຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ທຸ້ມເທທຶນຮອນໃສ່ການຄ້າຢ່າງໜັກ. ການລົງທຶນດັ່ງກ່າວຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ການຄ້າຈະເລີນງອກງາມແລະມີສິນຄ້າຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນພ້ອມກັບສາມາດຈ້າງຄົນງານຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນອີກ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໒໘ ຄວາມຈະເລີນກ້າວໜ້າຂອງໂຮງງານບາງຈະບັນລຸເຖິງຂັ້ນສຸດຍອດ. ບໍລິສັດຫຼາຍບໍລິສັດຜະລິດສິນຄ້າຫຼາຍເກີນຄວາມສາມາດທີ່ຈະຂາຍໄດ້. ປະຊາຊົນອະເມລິກັນບໍ່ມີຄວາມຕ້ອງການແລະບໍ່ສາມາດທີ່ຈະຊື້ເອົາສິນຄ້າທີ່ເຫຼືອນັ້ນໄດ້. ໃນເມື່ອຂາຍບໍ່ອອກ ບໍລິສັດການຄ້າຫຼາຍບໍລິສັດກໍ່ຫຼຸບຕົວໄປ ຈຶ່ງເປັນເຫດໃຫ້ພວກຄົນງານຈຳນວນເປັນພັນໆຕ້ອງວ່າງງານກັນ.

໒໒.໓.໒. ການຈະເລີນເຕີບໂຕຂອງການຄ້າພາໃຫ້ລາຄາຂອງຮຸ້ນສ່ວນສ່ວນຫຼາຍສູງຂຶ້ນ. ບາງຄົນໄດ້ກຳໄລຈາກຕະຫຼາດຮຸ້ນສ່ວນຢ່າງມະຫາສານ. ລາຄາຂອງຮຸ້ນສ່ວນໄດ້ຂຶ້ນສູງຂຶ້ນເລື້ອຍໆໃນລະດູຮ້ອນຂອງປີ ໑໙໒໙. ຜູ້ຕ້ອງການຊື້ຮຸ້ນສ່ວນເພີ່ມຕື່ມກໍ່ມີຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ. ແຕ່ວ່າໃນເດືອນ ກັນຍາ ປີ ໑໙໒໙ ຮຸ້ນສ່ວນໄດ້ຂາດຕະຫຼາດໄປ. ໃນລະຫວ່າງເດືອນ ກັນຍາ ທີ່ກ່າວມານີ້ ຄ່າຂອງຮຸ້ນສ່ວນທັງຫຼາຍໄດ້ຕົກໄປເກືອບເຖິງ ໓ ພັນລ້ານໂດລາ. ໃນວັນທີ ໒໓ ເດືອນ ຕຸລາ ໑໙໒໙ ຕະຫຼາດຮຸ້ນສ່ວນເລີ່ມຫຼົ້ມຈົມ. ເມື່ອລາຄາຂອງຮຸ້ນສ່ວນຕົກ ຄົນຈຳນວນພັນໆກໍ່ຂາຍຮຸ້ນສ່ວນຂອງຕົນໃນລາຄາຕ່ຳແບບຂາດທຶນ. ການຂາດທຶນທັງໝົດໃນເດືອນ ຕຸລາ ມີເຖິງ ໑໓ ພັນລ້ານໂດລາ.

໒໒.໓.໓. ການຫຼົ້ມຈົມຂອງຕະຫຼາດຮຸ້ນສ່ວນກະທົບກະເທືອນເສດຖະກິດໝົດທຸກສ່ວນ. ການຄ້າຫຼາຍຢ່າງໄດ້ລົ້ມເຫຼວໄປ. ຄົນຈຳນວນນັບພັນເກີດວ່າງງານ. ສ່ວນທີ່ໄດ້ຮັບການກະທົບກະເທືອນຢ່າງໜັກໜ່ວງແມ່ນທະນາຄານ ເພາະວ່າທະນາຄານຫຼາຍແຫ່ງໄດ້ລົງທຶນໃສ່ຕະຫຼາດຮຸ້ນສ່ວນຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ. ຈາກປີ ໑໙໒໙ ຫາ ໑໙໓໓ ມີທະນາຄານປະມານ ໕.໐໐໐ ແຫ່ງໄດ້ຢຸດກິດຈະການໄປ.

໒໒.໔. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Hoover ແລະການຕໍ່ສູ້ກັບສະພາບເສດຖະກິດເສື່ອມໂຊມຂອງທ່ານ

໒໒.໔.໑. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Hoover ຕ້ອງການໃຊ້ມາດຕະການອັນເຂັ້ມແຂງເພື່ອໃຫ້ເສດຖະກິດລອດພົ້ນຈາກການເສື່ອມໂຊມ. ທ່ານໄດ້ຮ້ອງໃຫ້ The Federal Rescue Board ຊ່ວຍພວກບໍລິສັດການຄ້າໄດ້ເງິນກູ້ຢືມ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນທ່ານກໍ່ໄດ້ຮ້ອງຂໍໃຫ້ສະພາເພີ່ມເງິນຈຳນວນ ໔໐໐ ລ້ານໂດລາ ສຳຫຼັບການສ້າງສາ ສາທາລະນະປະໂຫຍດ. ເງິນຈຳນວນດັ່ງກ່າວຈະໄດ້ໃຊ້ໃນການຈ້າງພະນັກງານເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນສຳຫຼັບເຮັດຕອກໃນ

ໂຄງການຂອງຣັຖບານເຊັ່ນ ການສ້າງສາຖນົນຫົນທາງ. ໃນເດືອນ ມົກກະຣາ ປີ ໑໙໓໒ ສະພາໄດ້ຈັດຕັ້ງອົງການທີ່ມີຊື່ວ່າ The Reconstruction Finance Corporation. ອົງການນີ້ແມ່ນອົງການສຳຫຼັບໃຫ້ກູ້ຢືມເງິນ. ພາຍໃນປີ ໑໙໓໒ ອົງການດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ໃຫ້ກູ້ເງິນເກືອບເຖິງ ໒ ພັນລ້ານ ສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ໃຫ້ແກ່ທະນາຄານບໍຣິສັດຣົດໄຟ ແລະ ບໍຣິສັດການຄ້າໃຫຍ່ໆ.

໒໒.໔.໒. ໂຄງການກູ້ເສດຖະກິດເສື່ອມໂຊມຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Hoover ບໍ່ໄດ້ຮັບຜົນສຳເຣັດ ເພາະວ່າໂຄງການດັ່ງກ່າວເປັນການຊ່ວຍແກ່ພວກບໍຣິສັດໃຫຍ່ໆເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ສ່ວນປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນສ່ວນຫຼາຍຍັງຢູ່ໃນຄວາມທຸກຍາກຈົນຢູ່. ພວກຊາວນາໄດ້ຍ້າຍຈາກຮົ້ວສວນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເພື່ອເຂົ້າໄປຊອກຫາວຽກເຮັດງານທຳໃນຕົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆ ຫຼື ຍ້າຍໄປຢູ່ຕາມຣັຖຕ່າງໆທີ່ຢູ່ທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ. ພວກປະຊາຊົນທີ່ຢູ່ໃນເມືອງກໍອຶດຢາກແລະຍາກຈົນເຊັ່ນກັນ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າຢູ່ກັນຢ່າງບໍ່ມີປະໂຍດແລະລໍຄອຍການປ່ຽນແປງຂອງຣັຖບານ.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ :

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວຕາມທາງຕັ້ງທາງນອນ ແລະທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວ ໃຫ້ຂຽນສັບທີ່ຫາໄດ້ນັ້ນໄວ້ ພ້ອມຂຽນຄວາມໝາຍຂອງສັບນັ້ນລົງໄປ.

AFFAIRS
ELECTRICITY
JOB
MOTOR
PARTICIPATION
SCANDAL
VOTER

CANDIDACY
GOVERNMENT
JOBS
MULTIPLE
RAYON
SURPLUS
WAR

COX
IN VAIN
LUXURIES
NORMALCY
REPUBLICAN
VOTE
WARREN

E L E C T R I C I T Y O O P O
R C O X A F F A I R S O O R H
A J O B S O I N V A I N S O I
R W A R R E N D O O S S I S O
T O L U X U R I E S C U T P G
I M V O T E R D O O A R U E A
O O O O O O R A Y O N P A R N
O T W A R O O C O O D L T O G
N O R M A L C Y O O A U I U S
O R M U L T I P L E L S O S O
P A R T I C I P A T I O N O U
R E P U B L I C A N V O T E R
G O V E R N M E N T J O B S C
C O R R U P T S Y S T E M S E

໒. ຈິງ ຫຼື ຜິດ

ຈົ່ງອ່ານຫມວດຄຳເວົ້າເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ຫມາຍ T ໃສ່ໜ້າຫາກວ່າຫມວດຄຳເວົ້ານັ້ນຈິງ. ຈົ່ງຫມາຍ F ໃສ່ໜ້າຫາກວ່າຜິດ.

_____ ໑. ໂຄງການຕໍ່ສູ້ເສຖກິດເສື່ອມໂຊມຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Hoover ບໍ່ເກີດຜົນສຳເລັດເພາະວ່າ ໂຄງການດັ່ງກ່າວສ້າງປະໂຫຍດໃຫ້ແກ່ພວກບໍຣິສັດການຄ້າໃຫຍ່ໆເທົ່ານັ້ນ.

_____ ໒. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງເສຖກິດເກີດເສື່ອມໂຊມຢ່າງຫນັກນັ້ນປະຊາຊົນທີ່ຢູ່ໃນເມືອງບໍ່ໄດ້ມີການອຶດຢາກຍາກຈົນແຕ່ຢ່າງໃດ.

_____ ໓. ການຫຼົ້ມຈົມຂອງຕລາດຮຸ້ນສ່ວນກະທົບກະເທືອນຕໍ່ເສຖກິດທຸກສ່ວນ.

_____ ໔. ການຈເຣີນເຕີບໂຕຂອງການຄ້າພາໃຫ້ຣາຄາຂອງຮຸ້ນສ່ວນ ສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ຊຸດລົງ.

_____ ໕. ບໍຣິສັດການຄ້າຫຼາຍບໍຣິສັດ ຜລິດສິນຄ້າອອກມາຫຼາຍເກີນກ່ວາທີ່ຈະຂາຍໄດ້.

_____ ໖. ການໃຊ້ຖ່ານຫີນຫຼຸດນ້ອຍຖອຍລົງກໍ່ເພາະວ່າພວກໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມຫຼາຍແຫ່ງໄດ້ຫັນໄປໃຊ້ຢ່າງອື່ນເຊັ່ນ ແກສ ແລະ ໄຟຟ້າ.

_____ ກ. ທ່ານ James Cox ຜູ້ສມັກຈາກພັກ Democratic ຖືເອົາການເຂົ້າເປັນສະມາຊິກຂອງສະຫະຣັຖໃນ The League of Nations ເປັນນະໂຍບາຍສຳຄັນ.

_____ ຂ. ພັກ Republican ໄດ້ເລືອກເອົາສະມາຊິກສະພາສູງຈາກ Ohio ຄືທ່ານ Warren G. Harding ເປັນຜູ້ສມັກຂອງພັກ.

໓. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ :

ຈົ່ງຂຽນຄຳເວົ້າ ຫຼື ໝວດຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍອັນຖືກຕ້ອງ:
ເຄື່ອງບຳຣຸງຄວາມສຸກຕ່າງໆ, ນະໂຍບາຍຕ່າງປະເທດ, ຜູ້ສມັກສະຫະພັນນາໆຊາດ,
ເຮືອງ, ເຄື່ອງຈັກໄຟຟ້າ, ອຸປກອນທີ່ຄົ້ນປະດິດຂຶ້ນ, ຮຸ້ນສ່ວນ, ການຫຼົ້ມຈົມຂອງຕລາດຮຸ້ນສ່ວນ.

໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມຄັ້ງທີ່ນຶ່ງ ປະຊາຊົນໄດ້ຈັບຈ່າຍເງິນເພື່ອຊື້ເຄື່ອງຂອງແລະ ____________________ ເພາະວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າຂາດເຂີນສິ່ງເຫຼົ່ານີ້ເປັນເວລາຍາວນານໃນຣະຫວ່າງສົງຄາມ.

໒. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນສ່ວນຫຼາຍບໍ່ເຫັນດີກັບ ____________________ ຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson.

໓. ພັກ Democratic ໄດ້ເລືອກເອົາທ່ານ James M. Cox ຜູ້ປົກຄອງຣັຖຄົນເກົ່າຈາກ Ohio ເພື່ອເປັນ ____________________ ແທນປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson.

໔. ທ່ານ Warren Harding ກ່າວເຖິງ ______________________________
ແລະການເຂົ້າເປັນສະມາຊິກຂອງອົງການດັ່ງກ່າວພຽງເລັກນ້ອຍ.

໕. ທ່ານ Warren Harding ໄດ້ແຕ່ງຕັ້ງໝູ່ຄູ່ເກົ່າແກ່ຂອງທ່ານເອງຈາກລັດ Ohio ຫຼືພວກທີ່ສນັບສນູນພັກຂອງທ່ານເອງເຂົ້າປະຈຳຕຳແໜ່ງໃນອົງລັດຖະບານ. ພວກດັ່ງກ່າວເອີ້ນວ່າ ___
__________________________________ .

໖. ທ່ານ Albert B. Fall ເປັນຄົນທີ່ຂີ້ໂກງທີ່ສຸດ. ທ່ານມີຄວາມພົວພັນກັບ _______________
ຂອງ The Teapot Dome ຊຶ່ງກ່ຽວຂ້ອງກັບການທີ່ທ່ານໄດ້ໃຫ້ໝູ່ເພື່ອນຂອງທ່ານເອງ
ໃນ Wyoming ເຊົ່າທີ່ດິນສງວນນ້ຳມັນຂອງລັດຖະບານ.

໗. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໒໐ ເຄື່ອງຂອງທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດແມ່ນຣົດຍົນ, _________________ , ຕູ້ເຢັນ ແລະ ວິທະຍຸ.

໘. ໂຮງງານຝ້າຍແລະພົມກໍປະສົບບັນຫາຫຍຸ້ງຍາກເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ ເພາະວ່າພວກບໍຣິສັດຕ່າງໆທັງຫຼາຍເລີ້ມໃຊ້ ໄໝ ແລະ _________________________ ໄໝ່.

໙. ການຈເຣີນເຕີບໂຕຂອງການຄ້າພາໃຫ້ຣາຄາຂອງ ________________________________ ສູງຂຶ້ນ.

໑໐. ໃນວັນທີ ໒໙ ຕຸລາ ໑໙໒໙ ການ ____ ໄດ້ເລີ້ມຂຶ້ນ.

ຫມວດ ຜ : ບັນຫາໃນການມີອຳນາດແລະຄວາມມັ່ງຄັ່ງສົມບູນ

ພາກ ໒໙ : ສັງຄົມໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໒໐

ສັບໃຫມ່:

automobile: ຣົດຍົນ

assembly line: ວິທີຜລິດຣົດຍົນອອກພ້ອມກັນຫຼາຍຄັນ ໂດຍຈັດໃຫ້ພະນັກງານເຮັດວຽກພຽງນຶ່ງຫຼືສອງຫນ້າທີ່ເທົ່ານັ້ນແລະປະກອບສິ້ນສ່ວນຕາມລຳດັບຂອງໃຫລາວ.

The production of the automobile greatly increased by using the assembly line method of production.

disturbance: ການລົບກວນ

Many disturbance were created as urban areas grew larger.

prejudice: ການກຽດຊັງ

discrimination: ການກັ່ນແກ້ງ.

The blacks were often the subjects of prejudice and discrimination.

communist: ສະມາຊິກຂອງພັກ ມາກຊິສ ເລນິນນິສ.

Many American feared the spread of communist ideas in the United States.

Bolshevick: ຜູ້ທີ່ເຂົ້າຮ່ວມໃນການປະຕິວັດຣັສເຊັຍ.

In 1917 the Bolshevik started a revolution in Russia.

radical: ຜູ້ທີ່ມີຄວາມຄິດເຫັນຮຸນແຮງ

Many foreigners were suspected of having radical ideas.

raid: ການໂຈມຕີ.

The attorney general ordered a raid on suspected radicals.

target: ຈຸດ ຫຼື ເປົ້າ

Blacks, Jews, and Catholics were the target of the Ku Klux Klan.

ghettos: ຄຸ້ມພວກທຸກຈົນຢູ່ຕາມຊານເມືອງຕ່າງໆ.

Immigrants and Blacks lived in ghettos.

strike breaker: ຜູ້ເຮັດວຽກໃນຖານະເປັນຜູ້ຕ້ານພວກປະທ້ວງ.

A strike breaker is hired to replace a striking worker.

fanatic: ມີຄວາມເຊື່ອຈົນເກີນເຫດຜົນ.

The Ku Klu Klan is a fanatic group.

robe: ກະໂປງ.

hood: ຜ້າປົກຫົວ.

The uniform of the Ku Klux Klan is a robe and a white hood.

entertainment: ຄວາມມ່ວນຊື່ນລື່ນເລີງ.

Different kinds of entertainment developed in the 1920's.

movie star: ດາຣາພາບພະຍົນ.

Movie star were popular in the 1920's.

jazz: ດົນຕຣີແບບໃຫມ່ທີ່ມີຄວາມນິຍົມກັນທີ່ສຸດໃນຣະຫວ່າງແລະຫຼັງ
ສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງໜຶ່ງ.

I love to listen to Jazz.

black quarter: ຄຸ້ມບ່ອນພັກເຊົາຂອງຄົນຜິວດຳ.

Jazz originated in the black quarter of New Orleans.

contribution: ສ່ວນປະກອບ.

Jazz music made a major contribution to American music.

READING

23.1. AMERICANS ON WHEELS AND PEOPLE ON THE MOVE.

23.1.1. Industrial growth in the United States was aided by many new inventions and techniques. The mass production of automobiles was one of the biggest changes that took place during the 1920's in the United States. Because the demand for automobiles was high, the automobile companies changed their method of production. By using the assembly line method, manufacturers were able to produce more cars. This method required the workers to do only one or two simple tasks. A conveyor belt was used to move all parts of the car and the workers fixed these parts in their positions. A complete automobile could be assembled in about two hours. The number of cars increased from 10 million in 1924 to 30 million in 1930. Because the price of a car decreased from $850 to $300, the average American family could easily own an automobile.

23.1.2. The growth of the automobile industry and of other industries was a major cause of urban growth. During World War I, thousands of people left their farms and moved to the cities to find jobs. The emigration of blacks looking for jobs also contributed to the growth of many cities, especially the Northern cities. As Northern cities and states grew larger, many farm states in the South lost population.

23.2. DISTURBANCES IN THE 1920's

23.2.1. An increase in population in urban areas brought with it many new problems. The 1920's saw prejudice and discrimination grow against some minority groups. Blacks continued to be the targets of abuse and violence. During

World War I, thousands of blacks got jobs in the North but they also found that they were often not welcomed by the people. They could not get decent housing and good jobs. They were forced to live in the **ghettos** and to work long hours for little pay. The blacks were hired as **strikebreakers** to replace striking workers. This caused bad feelings between black workers and white workers. The whites wanted to crush the blacks with the help of **fanatic** groups.

23.2.2. In 1915, one such fanatic group, a new Ku Klux Klan, was formed. In many ways this group was like the Klan which existed during the Reconstruction years. It was a secret group and its members hid behind white robes and **hoods**. Their goals were to attack not only the blacks, but also other groups such as the Jews, the Catholics, and the foreign born. The new Ku Klux Klan was very strong in the South, but it also had a strong influence in many other parts of the country. Klansmen were found in both major parties. By 1929, because of the great depression, the Klan had little power and almost completely disappeared in the cities. But it still existed in a few rural areas in the South and the Midwest.

23.2.3. Another group which became a target for prejudice and discrimnation were the Reds. In 1917, the **communist** group called **Bolsheviks**, or Reds, revolted in Russia and came to power. It was a violent and bloody revolution. Many American people feared that the communists could spread their ideas throughout the world and eventually to the United States.

23.2.4. Another cause of fear was the "radicals". Immigrants, newcomers, and foreigners were often suspected of holding radical ideas. Many people believed that the foreigners had caused the various strikes which took place in the United States. The government decided to act. Attorney General A. Mitchell Palmer, ordered a series of **raids** to round up suspected radicals those who were arrested would be forced to leave the country or sentenced.

23.3. SPORTS AND PASTIMES

23.3.1. The prosperity of the 1920's gave birth to many new forms of **entertainment**. The American people found many of their heroes in sports, such as football and boxing. In 1919, Jack Dempsey won the world heavyweight boxing championship. College football games drew million of spectators. One of the best known football players was Harold Grange of the University of Illinois. Many millions of Americans attended sports events and many millions more listened to sport events on the radios.

23.3.2. Radios also had a major impact on American life. The first regular radio broadcasting station, KDKA, was established in Pittsburgh in 1920. By 1930 there were 700 radio stations in the United States and the number of radios owned was over 12 million. Radio became a major source of entertainment and a significant cultural influence. It also help improve interest in politics. During the campaign of 1928 both Herbert Hoover and Al Smith made several radio speeches.

23.3.3. Before World War I, motion pictures had been very popular. But during the 1920's, they became a major source of entertainment for many Americans. By 1925, 50 million people were going to the movies at least once a week. The movie industry grew very fast and movie stars could earn one million dollars a year.

23.3.4. Another important event in the 1920's was the birth of jazz music. This was a new form of music that quickly gained popularity throughout the country. Jazz had its origin in the black quarter in New Orleans, Louisiana. There, black musicians had put together folk songs of their people and the musical rhythms of their African background. Many people believed that this new kind of music was the country's most precious contribution to the music of the world. The musicians who created it left their mark on music of the 1920's as well as the music of today.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

T N E M N I A T R E T N E Z C
A U T O M O B I L E Z X T H O
Z A S S E M B L Y L I N E O N
L J A Z Z S T A R H X X G C V
A M O V I E Z X R O B E R I E
C S U B U R B S Q O Z X A T Y
I G H E T T O S A D C O T A O
D I S C R I M I N A T I O N R
A T O M T S I N U M N O C H C
R B L A C K Q U A R T E R I I
C O N T R I B U T I O N O U T
S R E K A E R B E K I R T S I
P O P U L A T I O N A R E A E
I M M I G R A T I O N T O R E

AUTOMOBILE
DISCRIMINATION
COMMUNIST
CITIES
GHETTOS
FANATIC
HOOD
MOVIE
JAZZ
CONTRIBUTION
SUBURB
AREA
CONVEYOR
ASSEMBLY LINE
RADICAL
TARGET
STRIKE BREAKERS
ROBE
ENTERTAINMENT
STAR
BLACK QUARTER
POPULATION

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each in the space provided.

	A	B
_____	a. Ghetto	1. A new form of music which became popular during World War I.

_____ b. Bolshevik Revolution	2.	A section of a city where members of minority group live because of social or economic pressures.
_____ c. culture	3.	A period of low economic activity accompanied by high unemployment, low prices, and a general lack of buying power.
_____ d. depression	4.	The Revolution in Russia in 1917 by communist to overthrow the Czarist Government.
_____ e. jazz	5.	Relating to the towns or cities, usually to those with population of 2,500 people or more.
_____ f. radical	6.	People who support extreme change in ideas or conditions.
_____ g. strike	7.	A refusal to work by organized labor unions.
_____ h. urban	8.	The way of living worked out by a society or group of people.

III. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put a F in that space if it is false.

_____ 1. Jazz had its origin in the white quarter in New

Orleans, Louisiana.

_____ 2. Many people believed that this new kind of music was the country's most precious contribution to the music of the world.

_____ 3. During the 1920's, motion pictures became a major source of entertainment for many Americans.

_____ 4. During the campaign of 1928, both Hebert Hoover and Al Smith made several radio speeches.

_____ 5. College football game drew million of spectators.

_____ 6. In 1929 because of the great depression the Klan had much power in the cities.

_____ 7. "Radical" ideas grew among the blacks and the whites.

_____ 8. Many American people feared that the communists could spread their ideas throughout the world and eventually the United States.

_____ 9. The automobile industries did not bring along the growth of urban areas.

_____ 10. The automobile companies produced more cars by the assembly line.

IV. Fill in the blanks: Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: mass production, movie star, entertainment, robes, hoods, fanatic, ghettos, targets, communist, Bolsheviks, prejudice, discrimination, assembly line.

1. The __________ of automobiles were the biggest change that took place during the 1920's in the United States.

2. Manufactures produced more cars by the ____________.

3. There were _________ and __________ against some minority groups during 1920's.

4. In 1917 the ___________ group called ____________ or Reds revolted in Russia and came to power.

5. Black Americans were still the _________ for discrimination and violence.

6. The blacks were forced to live in the _________ and worked long hours and got little pay.

7. The whites wanted to crush the blacks with the help of __________ groups.

8. The Ku Klux Klan was a secret group and its members hid behind white ________ and __________ .

9. The prosperous life during 1920's led to the birth of many new ways of ___________ .

10. The movie industry grew very fast and _____________ could earn one million dollars a year.

ບົດອ່ານ

໒໓.໑. ການສ້າງລົດຍົນຂອງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນ ແລະ ການເຄື່ອນໄຫວຂອງປະຊາຊົນ

໒໓.໑.໑. ການປ່ຽນແປງທີ່ຍິ່ງໃຫຍ່ທີ່ສຸດຊຶ່ງເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໒໐ ນັ້ນ ແມ່ນການຜລິດລົດຍົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍອັນພ້ອມກັນ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໐ ຈຳນວນຂອງລົດຍົນໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນຈາກ ໙ ລ້ານຄັນ ເຖິງ ໓໐ ລ້ານຄັນ. ຄອບຄົວຄົນອະເມຣິກັນທົ່ວໄປ ສາມາດເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງລົດຍົນໄດ້ຢ່າງງ່າຍທີ່ສຸດ. ເນື່ອງຈາກຄວາມຕ້ອງການມີຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ສະນັ້ນບໍຣິສັດລົດຍົນຈຶ່ງໄດ້ປ່ຽນວິທີການຜລິດໂດຍໃຊ້ຣະບົບ Assembly line ຊຶ່ງຈັດໃຫ້ພະນັກງານເຮັດວຽກພຽງບາງໜ້າທີ່ເທົ່ານັ້ນ ເພື່ອຜລິດລົດຍົນໃຫ້ໄດ້ຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ. ຕາມວິທີດັ່ງກ່າວ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໃຊ້ສາຍພານສຳຫຼັບເຄື່ອນຍ້າຍສ່ວນຕ່າງໆຂອງລົດຍົນໄປຕາມລຳດັບ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ພະນັກງານປະກອບສ່ວນຕ່າງໆເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນເຂົ້າກັນຕາມບ່ອນໃຜບ່ອນລາວ. ດ້ວຍວິທີນີ້ພະນັກງານສາມາດປະກອບລົດຍົນໃຫ້ສຳເຣັດໄດ້ພາຍໃນປະມານສອງຊົ່ວໂມງຕໍ່ຄັນ.

໒໓.໑.໒. ໂຮງງານລົດຍົນເຮັດໃຫ້ຄຸ້ມຕ່າງໆຢູ່ຕາມນອກເມືອງ ຂຍາຍຕົວຂຶ້ນ. ນັບຈາກສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງເປັນຕົ້ນມາຄົນອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ພາກັນຍ້າຍເຂົ້າໄປອາໃສຢູ່ຕາມຫົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆ. ສາເຫດທີ່ພາໃຫ້ມີການຂຍາຍຕົວຂອງຫົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆນັ້ນມາຈາກການແຜ່ຂຍາຍຂອງອຸດສາຫະກັມ ໃນສໄມສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ນຶ່ງ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ປະຊາຊົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍພັນຄົນຈຶ່ງໄດ້ພາກັນຍ້າຍເຂົ້າໄປໃນເມືອງເພື່ອຊອກຫາວຽກເຮັດງານທຳ. ການໂຍກຍ້າຍຂອງພວກຜິວດຳ ກໍມີສ່ວນເຮັດໃຫ້ຫຼາຍຫົວເມືອງຂຍາຍຕົວຂຶ້ນເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ ໂດຍສະເພາະຕາມຫົວເມືອງໃນທາງພາກເໜືອ. ສະນັ້ນຣັຖທີ່ຕັ້ງຢູ່ທາງພາກໃຕ້ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຂາດພົນລະເມືອງໄປ.

໒໓.໒. ການປັ່ນປ່ວນໃນປີ ໑໙໒໐

໒໓.໒.໑. ການໃຊ້ຊີວິດໃນຫົວເມືອງໃຫຍ່ພາໃຫ້ເກີດມີບັນຫາຣະຫວ່າງຜິວພັນຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍຢ່າງ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໒໐ ພວກຊຸມຊົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍບາງກຸ່ມໄດ້ປະສົບບັນຫາກ່ຽວກັບການກົດຂີ່ ແລະ ການກັ່ນແກ້ງ. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງນັ້ນພວກຜິວດຳຍັງເປັນກຸ່ມທີ່ໄດ້ຮັບການທຳຮ້າຍຢູ່ເນື່ອງນິດ.

໒໓.໒.໒. ນອກຈາກບັນຫາຜິວພັນແລ້ວ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຍັງມີຄວາມຢ້ານກົວຕໍ່ພວກແດງ ແລະ ພວກມີຄວາມຄິດຮຸນແຮງອີກ. ໃນປະເທດຣັສເຊັຽໃນປີ ໑໙໑໗ ພວກຄອມມູນິສກຸ່ມນຶ່ງຊື່ວ່າ Bolshevick

ຫຼືພວກແດງໄດ້ທຳການປະຕິວັດຂຶ້ນ ແລະໄດ້ຄອງອຳນາດ. ການປະຕິວັດດັ່ງນັ້ນເປັນການປະຕິວັດທີ່ຮຸນແຮງແລະນອງເລືອດ. ປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຢ້ານວ່າພວກຄອມມູຍນິສ ຈະແຜ່ລັດທິຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄປທົ່ວໂລກ ແລະໃນທີ່ສຸດແຜ່ເຖິງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

໒໗.໒.໓. ສິ່ງທີ່ພາໃຫ້ເກີດມີຄວາມຢ້ານກົວອີກຢ່າງນຶ່ງກໍຄືພວກທີ່ມີຫົວຄິດຮຸນແຮງ ຊຶ່ງເຂົ້າໃຈກັນວ່າພວກດັ່ງກ່າວເກີດໃນກຸ່ມຂອງພວກຄົນຕ່າງດ້າວ ແລະພວກທີ່ເຂົ້າມາຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃໝ່ໆ. ໃນສໄມນັ້ນການປະທ້ວງໄດ້ມີຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍຄັ້ງໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ຄົນທັງຫຼາຍເຂົ້າໃຈວ່າການປະທ້ວງນັ້ນເກີດຈາກຄົນຕ່າງດ້າວ. ຄົນອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ຮ້ອງໃຫ້ຣັຖບານເອົາມາດຕະການ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ຫົວໜ້າສານສູງສຸດຄືທ່ານ A.Mitchell Palmer ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ອອກຄຳສັ່ງໃຫ້ກວດລ້າງຈັບຜູ້ສົງໄສຂຶ້ນ. ພວກທີ່ຖືກຈັບກໍຈະໄດ້ຖືກບັງຄັບໃຫ້ໜີອອກຈາກປະເທດໄປຫຼືບໍ່ກໍຖືກຕັດສິນລົງໂທດ.

໒໗.໒.໔. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຜິວດຳ ໃນຣະຫວ່າງນັ້ນກໍຍັງຖືກກົດແກ່ງແລະໄດ້ຮັບການທຳຮ້າຍຢູ່ຕາມເດີມ. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີນຶ່ງ ພວກຄົນຜິວດຳຫຼາຍພັນຄົນໄດ້ອອກເຮັດວຽກທຳຢູ່ໃນພາກເໜືອຂອງປະເທດ ແຕ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າເຫັນວ່າປະຊາຊົນໃນພາກນັ້ນບໍ່ຄ່ອຍມີນ້ຳໃຈນຳປະມານ. ສະນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງບໍ່ໄດ້ບ່ອນຢູ່ບ່ອນເຊົາແລະວຽກງານອັນດີເທົ່າທີ່ຄວນ. ພວກເຂົາເຈົ້າຖືກບັງຄັບໃຫ້ຢູ່ໃນຊຸມຕ່າງຫາກເອີ້ນວ່າ ghettos ພ້ອມກັບຕ້ອງເຮັດວຽກຫຼາຍຊົ່ວໂມງໂດຍໄດ້ຮັບຄ່າຈ້າງຕ່ຳ. ພວກດຳສ່ວນມາກໄດ້ວຽກໃນຖານະເປັນຜູ້ໄລ່ພວກປະທ້ວງ (Strike breakers) ຫຼື ເຮັດວຽກແທນບ່ອນຂອງພວກເຮັດປະທ້ວງດັ່ງນີ້ເປັນຕົ້ນ. ເຫດການດັ່ງກ່າວສ້າງໃຫ້ມີຄວາມຂັດຈ້ອງຣະຫວ່າງພະນັກງານຜິວດຳ ແລະ ພະນັກງານຜິວຂາວເກີດຂຶ້ນ. ພວກຜິວຂາວຕ້ອງການທຳລາຍພວກຜິວດຳໂດຍຂໍຄວາມຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຈາກພວກຫົວຮຸນແຮງ.

໒໗.໒.໕. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໕ ກຸ່ມ Ku Klux Klan ພວກໃໝ່ໄດ້ຖືກຈັດຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນ. ກຸ່ມນີ້ມີຄວາມຄ້າຍຄືກັນກັບພວກ Klan ໃນສໄມຂອງການຟື້ນຟູສ້າງສາປະເທດ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າເປັນກຸ່ມລຶກລັບ ພວກສະມາຊິກໃສ່ກະໂປງຍາວແລະຜ້າກວມຫົວເພື່ອປົກປິດຕົນຕົວແລະໜ້າຕາເອົາໄວ້. ຈຸດໝາຍຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ແມ່ນແຕ່ເພື່ອຈະໂຈມຕີພວກຊາວຜິວດຳເທົ່ານັ້ນ ພວກອື່ນເຊັ່ນພວກຢິວ ພວກສາສນາຄາໂຕລິກ ແລະພວກຕ່າງດ້າວກໍເຊັ່ນກັນ. ພວກ Ku Klux Klan ໃໝ່ນີ້ເປັນພວກທີ່ແຂງແກ່ງທີ່ສຸດຢູ່ໃນພາກໃຕ້ ນອກຈາກນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍຍັງມີອິດທິພົນໃນຫຼາຍແຫ່ງຂອງປະເທດອີກດ້ວຍ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໒໖ ຍ້ອນສະພາບເສດຖະກິດເສື່ອມໂຊມຢ່າງໜັກພວກ Klan ຈຶ່ງມີອຳນາດພຽງເລັກນ້ອຍແລະໄດ້ຫາຍຕົວໄປຈາກຕົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆ. ແຕ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າຍັງເຫຼືອຢູ່

ໃນບາງທ້ອງຖິ່ນຕາມຊົນນະບົດທີ່ຢູ່ທາງພາກໃຕ້ ແລະ ພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສ່ວນກາງ.

໒໓.໔. ກິລາ ແລະ ເວລາພັກຜ່ອນຢ່ອນໃຈ

໒໓.໔.໑. ຊີວິດອັນອຸດົມສົມບູນໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໒໐ ນັ້ນໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ເກີດມີການມ່ວນຊື່ນລື່ນເລີງແບບໃໝ່ຫຼາຍປະການ. ປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນມີດາຣາຫຼາຍຄົນດ້ານກິລາເຊັ່ນໃນການເຕະບານ ແລະ ການຕີມວຍ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໙ Jack Dempsey ໄດ້ເປັນນັກມວຍແຊມໂລກຮຸ່ນໃຫຍ່ສຸດ. ການແຂ່ງກິລາເຕະບານລະດັບມະຫາວິທະຍາໄລ ໄດ້ດຶງເອົາຜູ້ຊົມເປັນຈຳນວນລ້ານ. ນັກກິລາເຕະບານທີ່ມີຊື່ສຽງທີ່ສຸດຜູ້ນຶ່ງແມ່ນ Harold Grange ຈາກມະຫາວິທະຍາໄລ Illinois ຄົນອະເມຣິກັນຫຼາຍລ້ານຄົນໄດ້ພາກັນໄປຊົມການແຂ່ງຂັນກິລາຕ່າງໆ ແລະມີອີກຫຼາຍລ້ານທີ່ຕິດຕາມຟັງຂ່າວກິລາຜ່ານທາງວິທະຍຸ.

໒໓.໔.໒. ວິທະຍຸກໍ່ມີຄວາມສຳຄັນຕໍ່ຊີວິດຂອງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເຊັ່ນກັນ. ສະຖານີວິທະຍຸກະຈາຍສຽງພາກປົກກະຕິແຫ່ງທຳອິດນັ້ນຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໙໒໐ ທີ່ເມືອງ Pittsburg ຊຶ່ງແມ່ນສະຖານີ KDKA. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໐ ໃນສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາ ສະຖານີວິທະຍຸມີຢູ່ ໗໐໐ ສະຖານີ ແລະຈຳນວນຂອງໜ່ວຍວິທະຍຸໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນກວ່າ ໑໒ ລ້ານໜ່ວຍ. ວິທະຍຸໄດ້ກາຍເປັນແຫຼ່ງ ແຫ່ງຄວາມມ່ວນຊື່ນລື່ນເລີງ ແລະມີອິດທິພົນທາງດ້ານວັດທະນະທັມອັນສຳຄັນ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນວິທະຍຸຍັງຊ່ວຍສ້າງໃຫ້ຄົນມີຄວາມສົນໃຈກັບການເມືອງຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ. ໃນລະຫວ່າງການໂຄສະນາຫາສຽງໃນປີ ໑໙໒໘ ນັ້ນ ທ່ານ Herbert Hoover ແລະທ່ານ Al Smith ທັງສອງທ່ານໄດ້ກ່າວຄຳປາໄສທາງວິທະຍຸຫຼາຍຄັ້ງດ້ວຍກັນ.

໒໓.໔.໓. ສໄນກ່ອນສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີນຶ່ງ ພາບພະຍົນ ເປັນທີ່ນິຍົມກັນທີ່ສຸດ. ໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໒໐ ພາບພະຍົນ ກາຍເປັນແຫຼ່ງແຫ່ງຄວາມມ່ວນຊື່ນອັນສຳຄັນ ແກ່ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຫຼາຍຄົນ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໒໕ ຄົນທີ່ໄປເບິ່ງພາບພະຍົນຢ່າງນ້ອຍເທື່ອນຶ່ງຕໍ່ອາທິດນັ້ນມີຢູ່ປະມານ ໔໐ ລ້ານຄົນ. ບໍລິສັດພາບພະຍົນຈະເລີນຂຶ້ນໄວທີ່ສຸດ. ພວກດາຣາທັງຫຼາຍ ສາມາດຫາເງິນໄດ້ນຶ່ງລ້ານໂດລາໃນປີນຶ່ງ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າດຳເນີນຊີວິດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ່າງຫາກ.

໒໓.໔.໔. ເຫດການອີກຢ່າງນຶ່ງທີ່ປະຈັກຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໙໒໐ ກໍຄືດົນຕຣີ Jazz ຊຶ່ງເປັນດົນຕຣີຮູບໃໝ່ທີ່ມີຄົນນຳເອົາໄປຫຼິ້ນກັນຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວທົ່ວທັງປະເທດ. ດົນຕຣີ Jazz ມີຮາກເຫງົ້າມາຈາກກຸ່ມຂອງຊາວຜິວດຳ

ໃນເມືອງ New Orleans ລັດ Louisiana. ໃນເມືອງດັ່ງກ່າວພວກນັກດົນຕີຜິວດຳເຂົ້າແນວພື້ນເມືອງຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າປະສົມເຂົ້າກັບຈັງຫວະການແບບສະບັບເດີມຂອງດົນຕີໃນອາຟຣິກາ. ຫຼາຍຄົນເຂົ້າໃຈວ່າດົນຕີປະເພດໃໝ່ນີ້ເປັນການປະກອບສ່ວນທີ່ປະເສີດທີ່ສຸດ ທີ່ສະຫະລັດອາເມຣິກາ ມີຕໍ່ດົນຕີຂອງໂລກ. ພວກນັກດົນຕີທີ່ປະດິດດົນຕີແບບໃໝ່ນີ້ໄດ້ຈາລຶກຜົນງານຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄວ້ໃນທົດສະວັດຂອງປີ ໑໙໒໐ ໃນຫ້ານອງດອກກັນສັບສຸດອັນນີ້ເອງ.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ :

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຈົດເອົາໄວ້ພ້ອມກັບຂຽນຄຳອະທິບາຍກຳກັບໄວ້ອີກດ້ວຍ.

T	N	E	M	N	I	A	T	R	E	T	N	E	Z	C
A	U	T	O	M	O	B	I	L	E	Z	X	T	H	O
Z	A	S	S	E	M	B	L	Y	L	I	N	E	O	N
L	J	A	Z	Z	S	T	A	R	H	X	X	G	C	V
A	M	O	V	I	E	Z	X	R	O	B	E	R	I	E
C	S	U	B	U	R	B	S	Q	O	Z	X	A	T	Y
I	G	H	E	T	T	O	S	A	D	C	O	T	A	O
D	I	S	C	R	I	M	I	N	A	T	I	O	N	R
A	T	O	M	T	S	I	N	U	M	N	O	C	H	C
R	B	L	A	C	K	Q	U	A	R	T	E	R	I	I
C	O	N	T	R	I	B	U	T	I	O	N	O	U	T
S	R	E	K	A	E	R	B	E	K	I	R	T	S	I
P	O	P	U	L	A	T	I	O	N	A	R	E	A	E
I	M	M	I	G	R	A	T	I	O	N	T	O	R	E

AUTOMOBILE
DISCRIMINATION
COMMUNIST
CITIES
GHETTOS
FANATIC
HOOD
MOVIE
JAZZ
CONTRIBUTION
SUBURB
AREA
CONVEYOR
ASSEMBLY LINE
RADICAL
TARGET
STRIKE BREAKERS
ROBE
ENTERTAINMENT
STAR
BLACK QUARTER
POPULATION

໒. ປະກອບຄຳເວົ້າແລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ : ຈົ່ງປະກອບຄຳເວົ້າໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃສ່ປະໂຍກໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ. ໃຫ້ໝາຍເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງແທນຄຳຕອບ.

ໝວດ (ກ)

______ ກ. ຄອມມູຍນິສ

______ ຂ. ການປະຕິວັດຂອງພວກ

______ ຄ. ວັດທະນະທັມ

______ ງ. ເສຖກິດເສື່ອມໂຊມ

______ ຈ. Jazz

______ ຊ. ມີຫົວຄິດຮຸນແຮງ

______ ຍ. ການປະທ້ວງ

______ ດ. ເຂດກຳແພງເມືອງ

______ ຕ. Ghetto

ໝວດ (ຂ)

໑. ດົນຕຣີປະເພດໃໝ່ທີ່ໄດ້ຮັບຄວາມນິຍົມໃນສໄໝ
ສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ນຶ່ງ.

໒. ບໍຣິເວນຂອງຕົວເມືອງຊຶ່ງພວກຊຸມຊົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍອາໄສ
ຢູ່ຍ້ອນຄວາມກົດດັນດ້ານສັງຄົມຫຼືດ້ານເສຖກິດ.

໓. ຊ່ວງລະຍະເວລາທີ່ເສຖກິດຕົກຕ່ຳຊຶ່ງມີການວ່າງ
ງານສູງຣາຄາສິນຄ້າຕ່ຳແລະມີການບໍ່ສາມາດຈັບຈ່າຍໄດ້.

໔. ການປະຕິວັດຂອງພວກຄອມມູຍນິສໃນຣັສເຊັຍໃນປີ
໑໙໑໗ ເພື່ອໂຄ່ນລົ້ມຣັຖບານຊາຣິສ໌.

໕. ໝາຍເຖິງຕົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆຊຶ່ງມີພົນລະເມືອງແຕ່
໒.໐໐໐ ຄົນຂຶ້ນໄປ.

໖. ພວກທີ່ສນັບສນູນການປ່ຽນແປງແນວຄິດ ຫຼື ສະພາບ
ການຕ່າງໆຢ່າງຮຸນແຮງ.

ກ. ການປະຕິເສດເຂົ້າເຮັດວຽກຈັດໂດຍສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ.

ຂ. ວິຖີການເປັນຢູ່ຂອງສັງຄົມໃດສັງຄົມນຶ່ງ ຫຼື ກຸ່ມ
ຊຸມຊົນໃດກຸ່ມຊຸມຊົນນຶ່ງ.

ຄ. ຖືກ ຫຼື ຜິດ :

ຈົ່ງອ່ານທຸກໆປະໂຍກ ແລ້ວໃສ່ໝາຍ T ຕໍ່ໜ້າປະໂຍກນັ້ນໆຖ້າຫາກວ່າຖືກ ຫຼື ໝາຍ F ຖ້າຫາກຜິດ.

_____ ໑. Jazz ກຳເນີດມາຈາກຄຸ້ມຂອງພວກຜິວຂາວໃນເມືອງ New Orleans ຣັຖ Louisiana.

_____ ໒. ຫຼາຍຄົນເຊື່ອວ່າດົນຕຣີປະເພດໃໝ່ນີ້ເປັນສ່ວນປະກອບອັນລ້ຳຄ່າທີ່ສຸດທີ່ສະຫະຣັຖມີຕໍ່ດົນຕຣີ ໃນໂລກ.

_____ ໓. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໒໐ ພາພຍົນໄດ້ກາຍເປັນແຫຼ່ງແຫ່ງຄວາມມ່ວນຊື່ນລື່ນເລີງອັນສຳຄັນສຳຫຼັບ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນ.

_____ ໔. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງການໂຄສນາຫາສຽງໃນປີ ໑໙໒໘ ທ່ານ Herbert Hoover ແລະທ່ານ Al Smith ໄດ້ກ່າວຄຳຖແລງການທາງວິທະຍຸຫຼາຍຄັ້ງດ້ວຍກັນ.

_____ ໕. ການແຂ່ງຂັນເຕະບານຣະຫວ່າງມະຫາວິທະຍາໄລໄດ້ດຶງເອົາຜູ້ຊົມເປັນຈຳນວນລ້ານໆຄົນ.

_____ ໖. ໃນປີ ໑໙໒໙ ເນື່ອງຈາກເສຖກິດເກີດເສື່ອມໂຊມຢ່າງໃຫຍ່ຫຼວງດັ່ງນັ້ນພວກ Klan ຈຶ່ງມີອຳນາດຫຼາຍໃນຫົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆ.

_____ ໗. ຫົວຄິດຣຸນແຮງເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນຣະຫວ່າງພວກຜິວດຳແລະຜິວຂາວ.

_____ ໘. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍມີຄວາມຢ້ານກົວວ່າພວກຄອມມຸຍນິສຈະແຜ່ຄວາມນຶກຄິດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄປທົ່ວໂລກ ແລະ ໃນຂັ້ນຕໍ່ໄປຈະແຜ່ເຂົ້າມາໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

_____ ໙. ໂຮງງານສ້າງຣົດຍົນບໍ່ໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ຄຸ້ມຕ່າງໆທີ່ຢູ່ນອກເມືອງຂຍາຍຂຶ້ນ.

_____ ໑໐. ບໍຣິສັດສ້າງຣົດຍົນຜລິດຣົດຍົນໄດ້ຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ຍ້ອນການໃຊ້ assembly line.

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ : ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ຖືກຕ້ອງໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນປະໂຍກຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍ : ການຜລິດພ້ອມກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ, ghettos , ເປົ້າໝາຍ, ຄອມມູນິສ, Bolsvicks , ຄວາມກຽດຊັງ, ການກົ່ນແກ້ງ, Assembly line , ດາຣາພາບຍົນ, ຄວາມມ່ວນຊື່ນລື່ນເລີງ, ກະໂປ່ງແລະຜ້າຄຸມຫົວ, ມີຫົວຄິດຣຸນແຮງ.

໑. ການ ______________________ ຂອງຣົດຍົນເປັນການປ່ຽນແປງທີ່ຍິ່ງໃຫຍ່ທີ່ສຸດທີ່ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນ ລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໒໐ ໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

໒. ບໍຣິສັດຣົດຍົນຜລິດຣົດຍົນໄດ້ຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນດ້ວຍການໃຊ້ ______________________________.

໓. ໃນປີ ໑໙໒໐ ພວກຊຸມຊົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍບາງກຸ່ມໄດ້ປະສົບປັນຫາກ່ຽວກັບ _________________ ແລະ _________________ .

໔. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໗ ພວກ _________________ ເອີ້ນວ່າພວກ _________________ ຫຼືພວກແດງໄດ້ທຳການປະຕິວັດແລະໄດ້ຄອງອຳນາດໃນຣັສເຊັຍ.

໕. ພວກຄົນອະເມຣິກັນຜິວດຳຍັງເປັນ ____________________ ໃນການກົ່ນແກ້ງແລະໂຈມຕີ.

໖. ພວກຊາວຜິວດຳຖືກບັງຄັບໃຫ້ຢູ່ໃນ ___________________ ແລະເຮັດວຽກຫຼາຍຊົ່ວໂມງເກີນຄວນແລະໄດ້ຄ່າຈ້າງຕ່ຳ.

໗. ຊາວຜິວຂາວຕ້ອງການທຳລາຍພວກຜິວດຳໂດຍອາໄສການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຈາກກຸ່ມທີ່ _______________ .

໘. ພວກ Ku Klux Klan ເປັນກຸ່ມລັບສະມາຊິກຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າປົກປິດຮ່າງກາຍແລະໜ້າຕາດ້ວຍ __________________ .

໙. ຊີວິດທີ່ອຸດົມສົມບູນໃນປີ ໑໙໒໐ ພາໃຫ້ເກີດມີ ____________________ ຮູບໃໝ່ຂຶ້ນ.

໑໐. ບໍຣິສັດພາບຍົນໄດ້ຈເລີນກ້າວໜ້າໄວທີ່ສຸດແລະພວກ _________________ ສາມາດຫາເງິນໄດ້ເປັນລ້ານໃນແຕ່ລະປີ ພວກດັ່ງກ່າວດຳເນີນຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ໃນວິທີຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ.

Section VI: THE CHALLENGE OF POWER AND PROSPERITY

ໝວດ ໖ : ປັນຫາໃນການນຳອຳນາດແລະຄວາມອຸດົມສົມບູນ

Packet 24: THE WOMEN'S RIGHTS MOVEMENT

ພາກ ໒໔ : ຂະບວນການສິດທິຜູ້ຍິງ

ສັບໃໝ່ :
NEW WORDS:

equal rights: ສິດສເໝີພາບ

The women's struggle for equal rights began the Civil War.

convention: ກອງປະຊຸມ

Women and men attended a convention in 1848 to discuss social, religious, and civil rights for women.

dynamic ຂັນອັນແຂງ

Elizabeth Cady Stanton was a dynamic leader of the women's movement.

suffrage: ສິດໃນການປ່ອນບັດເລືອກຕັ້ງ

By the end of the Civil War, women were fighting for suffrage - the right to vote.

passage: ການຜ່ານກົດໝາຍ

Women fought for the passage of the 19th Amendment.

servitude: ການຮັບໃຊ້ແບບຂ້າທາດ

The 15th Amendment said "Former condition of servitude" could not be a reason to deny the right to vote.

unexpected: ຢ່າງບໍ່ຄາດຝັນ

Wyoming was an unexpected place to pass women's suffrage.

territory: ດິນແດນ ຫຼື ເຂດແດນ

The Wyoming Territory was the first area to give women the right to vote.

territorial legislature: ສະພາບັນເຮັດກົດໝາຍປະຈຳທ້ອງຖິ່ນ

The **territorial legislature** passed a law which gave women the right to vote.

pressure: ການບີບ ຫຼື ການກົດດັນ

ratify: ຮັບຮູ້

Women placed **pressure** on politicians to **ratify** the 19th Amendment.

READING

24.1. THE CALL FOR EQUALITY: SENECA FALLS CONVENTION.

24.1.1. Until the Civil War, women in the United States had only very limited rights. Single women could own property, but married women could not. Women could not appear as witnesses in court. They had almost no political rights and could not vote in elections.

24.1.2. The women's struggle for equal rights started before the Civil War. The fight for equal education played on important role in women's struggle for equality. In 1821, Emma Willard opened a girl's school in Troy, New York. A short time later, Oberlin College in Ohio opened its doors to women. In, 1837 Mary Lyon helped found Mount Holyoke College in Massachusetts. It was the first women's college in the United States.

24.1.3 Just as many had been active in equal education movements, others became active in reform movements. Some joined anti-slavery movements by making speeches, organizing meetings and sending anti-slavery petitions to Congress. Others worked for workers' reforms. In the 1820's working women joined with men workers in a strike in Rhode Island to ask for higher wages. Women gained valuable experience by taking part in reform movements. They learned how to organize, how to speak in public, and how to deal with the people and problems.

24.1.4. In July, 1848, 100 people, men and women, met at a **convention** in Seneca Falls, New York. The convention was organized by two **dynamic** women - Lucretia Mott and Elizabeth Cady Stanton. Both women were very active in the antislavery movement. The purpose of the Seneca Falls convention was to discuss the social, civil, and religious rights of women. The convention produced a Declaration of Sentiments and Resolutions which stated that men and women had equal rights and became a guide for the women's rights movement later.

24.2. THE WOMEN'S SUFFRAGE MOVEMENT

24.2.1. By the end of the Civil War the issue of women's suffrage - the right to vote - had become an important goal of

462

the women's rights movement. During the years between 1865 and 1910 women worked hard to win the vote.

24.2.2. In the summer of 1866 the draft of the Fourteenth Amendment was before the Congress. One part of this amendment stated that the vote would be given to all "male inhabitants of the states" regardless of race. This clause made the women upset and they worked to block passage of the 14th Amendment.

24.2.3. A few months later, the Fifteenth Amendment was submitted to Congress. It said that a citizen's right to vote could not be denied or taken away "on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude". Again many women were angry. They felt that the word "sex" should have been added to the amendment. By late 1868 the question of suffrage had probably become the most important issue in the women's rights movement.

24.2.4. The first real victory in the fight for women suffrage came in an unexpected part of the country - the Wyoming territory. In 1869 only a few thousand people lived in Wyoming and the territorial legislature of Wyoming gave women the right to vote. Women voted for the first time in Wyoming in 1870.

24.3. THE 19th AMENDMENT

24.3.1. After 1900, women worked ever harder to win the right to vote. They put great pressure on politicians and on the political system. In 1916, President Wilson responded to this pressure and attended the convention of the National American Suffrage Association. There he voiced his support for a woman's right to vote.

24.3.2. In 1918, the 19th Amendment came to the House of Representatives for consideration. In June, 1919, it was passed by the Senate and by August, 1920, the 19th Amendment had been ratified by three fourths of the states and became a part of the United States Constitution. Women had finally won the right to vote.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Direction: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳຫວຍຊອກຫາສັບ :

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບເຫລົ່ານີ້ຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບເຫລົ່ານີ້ ໃຫ້ຂຽນສັບທີ່ຫາໄດ້ນັ້ນໄວ້ພ້ອມຂຽນຄວາມໝາຍຂອງສັບນັ້ນຕື່ມໄປ.

EQUALITY
SENECA FALLS
WITNESSES
LEGISLATURE
SERVITUDE
RIGHTS
ELECTION

REFORM
ORGANIZE
SENTIMENT
PASSAGE
SENATE
VICTORIES
SYSTEM

RACE
CONVENTION
TERRITORIAL
DYNAMITE
PRESSURE
EDUCATION
ANTISLAVE

PETITION
SUFFRAGE
WYOMING
GAIN
POLITICAL
CONGRESS
PREVIOUS

C Y T I L A U Q E S O T S E L S P

O S E N E C A F A L L S E D E E O

N T E R R I T O R I A L R U G N L

V Z W I T N E S S E S R V C I T I

E J D Y N A M I T E R E I A S I T

N P R E S S U R E X I F T T L M I

T E L E C T I O N Z G O V I A E C

I A N T I S L A V E H R D O T N A

O O R G A N I Z E X T M E N U T L

N P E T I T I O N O S E C A R O S

S U F F R A G E S E N A T E E Z Y

V O T E H P A S S A G E G A I N S

W Y O M I N G V I C T O R I E S T

C O N G R E S S P R E V I O U S E

A M E N D M E N T T N E M E V O M

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A	B
____ a. territory	1. Passing of a Bill so that it becomes law.
____ b. witness	2. Differences between males and females.
____ c. ratify	3. District not admitted as a state but having its own law making body.
____ d. convention	4. Person who gives evidence under oath in a court.
____ e. suffrage	5. A large meeting held for some special purposes.
____ f. dynamic	6. Right to vote.
____ g. passage	7. Condition of being forced to work for others and having no freedom.
____ h. servitude	8. Related to physical power and forces producing motion.
____ i. pressure	9. To confirm an agreement by signature or other formality.
____ j. sex	10. Influencing or lobbying for the benefits of its members.

III. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put a F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. Until the Civil War, women in the United States had many rights.

____ 2. Before the Civil War, women could appear as witness in court.

____ 3. They had almost no political rights and therefore could not vote in the election.

____ 4. The women became active in the antislavery movement.

____ 5. In 1920 working women joined with men workers in a strike in Rhode Island to ask for higher wages.

____ 6. In 1919 the 19th Amendment was passed by the Senate and by August 1920 it had been ratified by three fourths of the states and became a part of the United States Constitution.

____ 7. During the years between 1865 and 1910 women worked hard to gain vote.

____ 8. Many women gained valuable experience by taking part in the reform movement.

____ 9. The convention was organized by two dynamic women -- Lucretia Mott and Elizabeth Cady Stanton.

----10. In the summer of 1866 the draft of the Fourteenth Amendment was before the Congress.

IV. Fill in the blanks: Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: women college, properties, President Wilson, girls' school, pressure, convention, the right to vote, Declaration of Sentiments and Resolutions, unexpected, suffrage.

1. Single women could own ________ , but married women could not.
2. In 1921, Emma Willard opened a ________ in Troy, New York.
3. In July 1848, men and women met in a __________ in Seneca Falls, New York.
4. The convention produced a __________ and ____________ that

served as the guide for the women's right movement later.

5. By the end of the Civil War, the issue of ________ , the right to vote, had become an important goal of the women's right movement.

6. The first real victory in the fight for women suffrage came in an ________ part of the country- the Wyoming territory.

7. After 1900, women worked in the suffrage gave women ________ .

8. The women put great ________ on politicians and on the political system.

9. In 1916, ____________ attended the convention of the National American Suffrage Association and voiced his support to women's right to vote.

10. In 1937, Mary Lyon helped found Mount Holyoke College in Massachusetts. It was the first ________ in the United States.

໒໒.໑. ການຮຽກຮ້ອງຂໍຄວາມສະເໝີພາບ : ກອງປະຊຸມ

໒໒.໑.໑. ຈົນເຖິງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງ ພວກຜູ້ຍິງໃນສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາມີສິດທິໃນຂອບເຂດອັນຈຳກັດເທົ່ານັ້ນ ຕົວຢ່າງ ຜູ້ຍິງທີ່ຍັງໂສດມີສິດເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງຊັບສິນແຕ່ວ່າພວກຜູ້ຍິງທີ່ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວບໍ່ມີສິດ. ອີກຢ່າງນຶ່ງ ພວກຜູ້ຍິງບໍ່ມີສິດທີ່ຈະເປັນທະນາຍຢູ່ໃນສານ ເຂົາເຈົ້າເກືອບຈະບໍ່ມີສິດທາງການເມືອງເລີຍ ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງບໍ່ມີສິດປ່ອນບັດລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງໄດ້.

໒໒.໑.໒. ການຕໍ່ສູ້ຂອງພວກຜູ້ຍິງເພື່ອໃຫ້ໄດ້ສິດສະເໝີພາບໄດ້ເລີ້ມມາແຕ່ໃນອະດີດ ສ່ວນຫຼາຍແມ່ນກ່ອນສໄໝສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງພຸ້ນ. ການຕໍ່ສູ້ອັນທຳອິດຂອງພວກຜູ້ຍິງເພື່ອມີສິດໄດ້ຮັບການສຶກສາຢ່າງສະເໝີພາບນັ້ນເປັນການຕໍ່ສູ້ອັນສຳຄັນ. ໃນປີ ໑໘໒໑ ນາງ Emma Willard ໄດ້ເປີດໂຮງຮຽນຜູ້ຍິງຂຶ້ນໃນເມືອງ Troy ລັດ New York. ບໍ່ນານຫຼັງຈາກນັ້ນມະຫາວິທະຍາໄລ Oberlin College ໃນລັດ Ohio ໄດ້ເປີດປະຕູຮັບເອົານັກສຶກສາຜູ້ຍິງ. ໃນປີ ໑໘໓໗ ນາງ Mary Lyon ເປັນຜູ້ທີ່ຊ່ອຍຕັ້ງມະຫາວິທະຍາໄລ Mount Holyoak College ໃນລັດ Massachusetts ຊຶ່ງເປັນມະຫາວິທະຍາໄລແຫ່ງແລກໃນສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາ.

໒໒.໑.໓. ຜູ້ຍິງຈຳນວນຫຼາຍເປັນຜູ້ທີ່ມີຄວາມຂັຍຂັນແຂງໃນຂະບວນການຕໍ່ຕ້ານຂ້າທາດ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເຮັດແຖລງການຫຼາຍຢ່າງອອກມາ ພ້ອມທັງຈັດການປະຊຸມແລະສົ່ງສານຕໍ່ຕ້ານຂ້າທາດໄປຍັງສະພາ. ໃນປີ ໑໘໒໐ ພວກພະນັກງານຜູ້ຍິງໄດ້ຮ່ວມການປະທ້ວງກັບພະນັກງານຜູ້ຊາຍໃນລັດ Rhode Island ເພື່ອຂໍຂຶ້ນເງິນຄ່າຈ້າງ. ພວກຜູ້ຍິງຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ມີປະສົບປະການອັນລ້ຳຄ່າໂດຍເຂົ້າຮ່ວມໃນຂະບວນການທີ່ມີຈຸດປະສົງດັດແປງແກ້ໄຂສະພາບການຕ່າງໆ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າຮູ້ວິທີການຈັດຕັ້ງ ຮູ້ວິທີແຖລງໃນທາງຊຸມຊົນ ຮູ້ວິທີເຮັດກັບຄົນທົ່ວໄປແລະຮູ້ວິທີແກ້ບັນຫາຕ່າງໆອີກດ້ວຍ.

໒໒.໑.໔. ໃນເດືອນ ກໍຣະກະດາ ປີ ໑໘໔໘ ພວກຜູ້ຍິງໄດ້ຈັດປະຊຸມຂຶ້ນທີ່ Seneca Falls ໃນລັດ New York. ກອງປະຊຸມດັ່ງກ່າວແມ່ນນາງ Lucretia ແລະນາງ Elizabeth Cady Stanton ເປັນຜູ້ຈັດຂຶ້ນ. ຜູ້ຍິງທັງສອງຄົນນີ້ເປັນຜູ້ທີ່ຂັຍຂັນແຂງທີ່ສຸດ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າທັງສອງໄດ້ມີບົດບາດອັນສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດໃນຂະບວນການຕໍ່ຕ້ານຂ້າທາດ. ຈຸດປະສົງຂອງການປະຊຸມຢູ່ທີ່ Seneca Falls ແມ່ນເພື່ອພິຈາຣະນາ ສິດທິຂອງຜູ້ຍິງທັງຫຼາຍກ່ຽວກັບດ້ານສັງຄົມ ດ້ານພົນລະເມືອງ ແລະດ້ານສາສນາ. ໃນກອງປະຊຸມດັ່ງກ່າວ ພວກຜູ້ຍິງໄດ້ເຮັດຄຳປະກາດກ່ຽວກັບຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກ ແລະ ຄວາມເຫັນຕ່າງໆອອກມາຊຶ່ງຂະບວນການສິດທິຂອງຜູ້ຍິງໄດ້ໃຊ້ເປັນແນວທາງໃນຂັ້ນຕໍ່ມາ. ຄຳປະກາດນັ້ນໄດ້ຍົກໄວ້ວ່າຜູ້ຊາຍແລະຜູ້ຍິງມີຄວາມສະເໝີພາບເທົ່າທຽມກັນພ້ອມທັງມີສິດທິບາງປະການອີກດ້ວຍ.

໒໒.໒. ຂະບວນການກ່ຽວກັບສິດທິໃນການລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງຂອງຜູ້ຍິງ

໒໒.໒.໑. ໃນຕອນທ້າຍຂອງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງເລື່ອງກ່ຽວກັບສິດທິຂອງຜູ້ຍິງໃນການລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງ

ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນເປົ້າໝາຍອັນສຳຄັນສຳລັບຂະບວນການສິດທິຂອງຜູ້ຍິງ. ໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໘໖໙ ແລະປີ ໑໙໑໐ ພວກຜູ້ຍິງໄດ້ໃຊ້ຄວາມພະຍາຍາມຢ່າງໃຫຍ່ຫຼວງເພື່ອໃຫ້ໄດ້ຕາມຄວາມປະສົງຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

໒໔.໒.໒. ໃນຣະດູແລ້ງປີ ໑໘໖໖ ຮ່າງກົດໝາຍການດັດແປງແກ້ໄຂຣັຖທັມມະນູນຄັ້ງທີ່ສິບສີ່ ໄດ້ຖືກເຈິງສະພາ. ສ່ວນນັ້ນໃນການແກ້ໄຂໄດ້ບົ່ງໄວ້ວ່າ "ຜູ້ທີ່ອາໃສຢູ່ໃນຣັຖຕ່າງໆທີ່ເປັນຜູ້ຊາຍ" ຈະມີສິດປ່ອນບັດລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງທຸກຄົນໂດຍບໍ່ຈຳກັດເຊື້ອຊາດ. ພວກຜູ້ຍິງບໍ່ພໍໃຈໃນຂໍ້ນີ້ ສະນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງຫາທາງຄັດຂວາງບໍ່ໃຫ້ການດັດແປງຣັຖທັມມະນູນຄັ້ງທີ່ສິບສີ່ອອກມາເປັນກົດໝາຍ.

໒໔.໒.໓. ບໍ່ເທົ່າໃດເດືອນຕໍ່ມາການສະເໜີດັດແປງຣັຖທັມມະນູນຄັ້ງທີ່ສິບຫ້າໄດ້ຖືກສົ່ງເຂົ້າສະພາໂດຍມີເນື້ອໃນໃຈຄວາມວ່າ ສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງໃນການປ່ອນບັດລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງນັ້ນຈະຖືກປະຕິເສດ ຫຼື ຕັດອອກດ້ວຍເຫດຜົນ "ການເຊື້ອຊາດ ຜິວພັນ ຫຼື ການທີ່ເຄີຍເປັນທາດມາກ່ອນ" ບໍ່ໄດ້. ໃນຂ້ວນທີ່ເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ ພວກຜູ້ຍິງບໍ່ດີໃຈເພາະເຂົາເຈົ້າຄິດວ່າໃນການດັດແປງນັ້ນຄວນຕື່ມຄຳວ່າ "ເພດ" ເຂົ້າໄປນຳ. ໃນທ້າຍປີ ໑໘໖໙ ປັນຫາກ່ຽວກັບສິດທິໃນການປ່ອນບັດລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງເປັນປັນຫາທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດສຳລັບຂະບວນການສິດທິຂອງຜູ້ຍິງ.

໒໔.໒.໔. ໄຊຊະນະຄັ້ງທຳອິດທີ່ແທ້ຈິງໃນການຕໍ່ສູ້ເອົາສິດທິໃນການປ່ອນບັດລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງຂອງຜູ້ຍິງນັ້ນມີຂຶ້ນຢ່າງບໍ່ນຶກບໍ່ຝັນໃນສ່ວນໜຶ່ງຂອງປະເທດຄືໃນດິນແດນຂອງຣັຖ Wyoming . ໃນປີ ໑໘໖໙ ປະຊາຊົນທີ່ອາໃສໃນຣັຖ Wyoming ມີພຽງບໍ່ເທົ່າໃດພັນຄົນເທົ່ານັ້ນ ແຕ່ກົດໝາຍປະຈຳທ້ອງຖິ່ນດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ໃຫ້ສິດແກ່ພວກຜູ້ຍິງປ່ອນບັດລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງໄດ້. ດັ່ງນັ້ນພວກຜູ້ຍິງທີ່ປ່ອນບັດລົງຄະແນນສຽງເປັນຄັ້ງທຳອິດແມ່ນຢູ່ຣັຖ Wyoming ໃນປີ ໑໘໗໐.

໒໔.໓. ການດັດແປງຣັຖທັມມະນູນຄັ້ງທີ່ ໑໙

໒໔.໓.໑. ຫຼັງຈາກປີ ໑໙໐໐ ພວກຜູ້ຍິງໄດ້ໃຊ້ຄວາມພະຍາຍາມຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍໃນການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອໃຫ້ໄດ້ສິດໃນການປ່ອນບັດ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າບີບພວກນັກການເມືອງແລະທຸກສ່ວນໃນວົງການເມືອງເປັນການໃຫຍ່. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໖ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson ໄດ້ເຂົ້າຮ່ວມກອງປະຊຸມຂອງສະມາຄົມການປ່ອນບັດແຫ່ງຊາດທີ່ເອີ້ນວ່າ The National American Suffrage Association ແລະໄດ້ອອກສຽງສນັບສນູນສິດໃນການປ່ອນບັດຂອງຜູ້ຍິງ.

໒໕.໓.໔. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໘ ການດັດແປງລັຖທັມມະນູນຄັ້ງທີ່ ໑໙ ຖືກພິຈາລະນາໃນສະພາຕ່ຳ. ໃນເດືອນມິຖຸນາ ໑໙໑໙ ສະພາສູງເຫັນດີການດັດແປງແລະໃນເດືອນ ສິງຫາ ໑໙໒໐ ການດັດແປງດັ່ງກ່າວຖືກຮັບຮູ້ຈາກສາມສ່ວນສີ່ຂອງຈຳນວນລັຖທັງໝົດ ໃນທີ່ສຸດກໍໄດ້ກາຍເປັນສ່ວນໜຶ່ງໃນລັຖທັມມະນູນຂອງສະຫະລັຖ.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ :

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວ ໃຫ້ຂຽນສັບທີ່ຫາໄດ້ນັ້ນໄວ້ພ້ອມຂຽນຄວາມໝາຍຂອງສັບນັ້ນລົງໄປ.

EQUALITY
SENECA FALLS
WITNESSES
LEGISLATURE
SERVITUDE
RIGHTS
ELECTION

REFORM
ORGANIZE
SENTIMENT
PASSAGE
SENATE
VICTORIES
SYSTEM

RACE
CONVENTION
TERRITORIAL
DYNAMITE
PRESSURE
EDUCATION
ANTISLAVE

PETITION
SUFFRAGE
WYOMING
GAIN
POLITICAL
CONGRESS
PREVIOUS

C	Y	T	I	L	A	U	Q	E	S	O	T	S	E	L	S	P
O	S	E	N	E	C	A	F	A	L	L	S	E	D	E	E	O
N	T	E	R	R	I	T	O	R	I	A	L	R	U	G	N	L
V	Z	W	I	T	N	E	S	S	E	S	R	V	C	I	T	I
E	J	D	Y	N	A	M	I	T	E	R	E	I	A	S	I	T
N	P	R	E	S	S	U	R	E	X	I	F	T	T	L	M	I
T	E	L	E	C	T	I	O	N	Z	G	O	V	I	A	E	C
I	A	N	T	I	S	L	A	V	E	H	R	D	O	T	N	A
O	O	R	G	A	N	I	Z	E	X	T	M	E	N	U	T	L
N	P	E	T	I	T	I	O	N	O	S	E	C	A	R	O	S
S	U	F	F	R	A	G	E	S	E	N	A	T	E	E	Z	Y
V	O	T	E	H	P	A	S	S	A	G	E	G	A	I	N	S
W	Y	O	M	I	N	G	V	I	C	T	O	R	I	E	S	T
C	O	N	G	R	E	S	S	P	R	E	V	I	O	U	S	E
A	M	E	N	D	M	E	N	T	T	N	E	M	E	V	O	M

໒. ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ : ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາແຕ່ລະສັບຄຳເຂົ້າໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ຂ). ຈົ່ງຂຽນຄຳຕອບຕາມຕົວເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງ ວ່າງທີ່ປະໄວ້ໜ້າສັບຄຳຕອບທຸກຄຳ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
______ ກ. ດິນແດນ	໑. ການຮັບຮູ້ຄຳສະເໜີໃຫ້ເປັນກົດໝາຍ
______ ຂ. ພະຍານ	໒. ຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງລະຫວ່າງຊາຍແລະຍິງ
______ ຄ. ຮັບຮູ້	໓. ເຂດຊຶ່ງຍັງບໍ່ທັນຖືກຮັບຮູ້ໃຫ້ເປັນລັດ ແຕ່ມີສະຖາບັນ ເຮັດກົດໝາຍຂອງຕົນເອງ.
______ ງ. ການປະຊຸມ	໔. ຜູ້ທີ່ໃຫ້ຫຼັກຖານໂດຍການປະຕິຍານໃນສານ
______ ຈ. ການປ່ອນບັດ	໕. ການຊຸມນຸມຂອງຫຼາຍຝ່າຍເພື່ອພິຈາລະນາເລື່ອງໃດເລື່ອງ ນຶ່ງພິເສດ.
______ ສ. ຂຍັນຂັນແຂງ	໖. ສິດໃນການລົງຄະແນນສຽງ
______ ຊ. ຫ້າມ	໗. ການຖືກບັງຄັບໃຫ້ເຮັດວຽກສຳລັບຜູ້ອື່ນໂດຍບໍ່ມີ ອິສະລະພາບ.
______ ຍ. ເປັນທາດ	໘. ໝາຍເຖິງຄວາມກົດດັນໃຫ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນ
______ ດ. ບີບ	໙. ເງິນຕົ້ນຂອງລາຍເງິນ
______ ຕ. ເພດ	໑໐. ຄວາມພະຍາຍາມເພື່ອໃຫ້ເກີດປະໂຍດ.

໓. ຖືກ ຫຼື ຜິດ :

ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຫຍກແຕ່ລະປະໂຫຍກຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ໝາຍ T ໃສ່ໜ້າຖ້າເຫັນວ່າປະໂຫຍກນັ້ນຖືກ. ຖ້າຜິດໃຫ້ໝາຍ F.

________ ໑. ຈົນເຖິງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງ ພວກຜູ້ຍິງໃນສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາມີສິດທິຫຼາຍຢ່າງ.

________ ໒. ກ່ອນສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງ ພວກຜູ້ຍິງມີສິດເປັນພະຍານໃນສານ.

________ ໓. ເຂົາເຈົ້າເກືອບຈະບໍ່ມີສິດທາງການເມືອງດັ່ງນັ້ນຈຶ່ງບໍ່ມີສິດລົງຄະແນນສຽງເລືອກຕັ້ງ.

________ ໔. ພວກຜູ້ຍິງມີບົດບາດສຳຄັນໃນຂະບວນການຕໍ່ຕ້ານຂ້າທາດ.

________ ໕. ໃນປີ ໑໙໒໐ ພະນັກງານຜູ້ຍິງເຂົ້າຮ່ວມການປະທ້ວງກັບພະນັກງານຜູ້ຊາຍເພື່ອຂໍຮ້ອງ
ຂຶ້ນຄ່າຈ້າງໃນ Rhode Island.

________ ໖. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໙ ຄຳສເນີດັດແປງລັດຖທັມມະນູນຄັ້ງທີ່ ໑໙ ໄດ້ຜ່ານສະພາສູງ ແລະໃນເດືອນ
ມິຖຸນາ ໑໙໒໐ ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນສ່ວນນຶ່ງຂອງລັດຖທັມມະນູນຂອງສະຫະລັດ.

________ ໗. ໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໘໖໔ ແລະ ໑໙໑໐ ພວກຜູ້ຍິງໄດ້ໃຊ້ຄວາມພະຍາຍາມຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍເພື່ອ
ໃຫ້ໄດ້ສິດໃນການປ່ອນບັດ.

________ ໘. ຜູ້ຍິງຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ ມີປະສົບປະການອັນລ້ຳຄ່າໃນການເຂົ້າຮ່ວມຂະບວນການທີ່ມີຈຸດ
ປະສົງແກ້ໄຂສະພາບການຕ່າງໆ.

________ ໙. ກອງປະຊຸມນີ້ຈັດຂຶ້ນໂດຍນາງ Lucretia Mott , ແລະນາງ Elizabeth
Cady Stanton ຊຶ່ງເປັນຜູ້ຂັນອັນແຂງ.

________ ໑໐. ໃນລະດູແລ້ງຂອງປີ ໑໘໖໖ ຮ່າງດັດແປງລັດຖທັມມະນູນຄັ້ງທີ່ ໑໔ ໄດ້ມາເຖິງສະພາ.

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ :

ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ບອກຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍອັນຖືກຕ້ອງ.

ມະຫາວິທະຍາໄລຜູ້ຍິງ, ຈັບສິນດາວງ, ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Wilson, , ຫີບ, ກອງປະຊຸມ, ສິດປ່ອນບັດ, ຄຳປະກາດຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກແລະຄວາມເຫັນ, ຢ່າງບໍ່ຄາດຝັນ, ການປ່ອນບັດ, ໂຮງຮຽນຜູ້ຍິງ.

໑. ຜູ້ຍິງທີ່ຍັງເປັນໂສດມີສິດເປັນເຈົ້າຂອງ ____________________ , ແຕ່ຜູ້ທີ່ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວບໍ່ມີ.

໒. ໃນປີ ໑໘໒໑ ນາງ Emma Willard ໄດ້ເປີດ ____________________ ໃນເມືອງ Troy ລັດ New York.

໓. ໃນເດືອນ ກໍຣະກະດາ ປີ ໑໘໔໘ ພວກຜູ້ຍິງເຂົ້າ ____________________ ທີ່ Seneca Falls ລັດ New York.

໔. ໃນກອງປະຊຸມພວກຜູ້ຍິງໄດ້ເຮັດ ____________________ ແລະ ____________________ ຊຶ່ງຂະບວນການສິດທິຂອງຜູ້ຍິງໄດ້ໃຊ້ເປັນແນວທາງໃນຂັ້ນຕໍ່ມາ.

໕. ໃນທ້າຍຂອງສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງ ເຣື່ອງກ່ຽວກັບ ____________________ ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນເປົ້າໝາຍສຳຄັນສຳລັບຂະບວນການສິດທິຂອງຜູ້ຍິງ.

໖. ໄຊຊະນະຄັ້ງທຳອິດທີ່ແທ້ຈິງໃນການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອສິດໃນການປ່ອນບັດເລືອກຕັ້ງຂອງຜູ້ຍິງນັ້ນ ເກີດຂຶ້ນ ____________________ ໃນແຫ່ງນຶ່ງຂອງປະເທດຄືໃນດິນແດນຂອງ Wyoming.

໗. ຫຼັງຈາກປີ ໑໙໐໐ ຄວາມພະຍາຍາມພາໃຫ້ພວກຜູ້ຍິງໄດ້ ____________________.

໘. ພວກຜູ້ຍິງໄດ້ ____________________ ພວກນັກການເມືອງແລະທຸກສ່ວນໃນວົງການການເມືອງ.

໙. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໘ ____________________ ໄດ້ເຂົ້າກອງປະຊຸມຂອງ The National American Suffrage Association ແລະໄດ້ອອກສຽງສນັບສນູນສິດທິຂອງຜູ້ຍິງໃນການປ່ອນບັດ.

໑໐. ໃນປີ ໑໘໓໗ ນາງ Mary Lyon ເປັນຜູ້ນຶ່ງທີ່ຊ່ອຍໃນການກໍ່ຕັ້ງມະຫາວິທະຍາໄລ Holyoke College ໃນ Massachusetts ຊຶ່ງເປັນ ______________ ________ ແຫ່ງແລກໃນສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາ.

Section VII
Depression
And Global Conflict

Section VII: DEPRESSION AND GLOBAL CONFLICT

ໝວດ ກ : ການເສື່ອມໂຊມດ້ານເສຖກິດແລະຂັດແຍ່ງທົ່ວໄປ

Packet 25: THE ERA OF FRANKLIN DELANO ROOSEVELT

ພາກ ໒໕ : ສໄໝການປົກຄອງຂອງ

ສັບໃໝ່ :
NEW WORDS

despair: ຄວາມສິ້ນຫວັງ

The 13 million unemployed felt despair.

inspection: ການສຳຫຼວດ ຫຼື ກວດກາ

There was an inspection at the American Bank.

Emergency Banking Act: ດຳລັດກ່ຽວກັບການຄຸ ຂຸມກິຈການຂອງທະນາຄານ

Congress passed the Emergency Banking Act to regulate banking business.

Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation: ອົງການຈັດຕັ້ງໂດຍສະພາເພື່ອໃຫ້ການປ້ອງກັນເງິນຂອງ ຜູ້ເອົາເຂົ້າຝາກຕາມທະນາຄານຕ່າງໆ

The Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation insured saving accounts to protect depositors.

depositors: ຜູ້ທີ່ເອົາເງິນຝາກໄວ້ໃນທະນາຄານ.

Civilian Conservation Corps Act: ດຳລັດຈັດຕັ້ງເພື່ອຫາວຽກໃຫ້ຊາວໜຸ່ມ

The Civilian Conservation Corps hired men to work in reforestation and flool control.

reforestation: ການປູກປ່າໄມ້

flood control: ການປ້ອງກັນນ້ຳຖ້ວມ

Work Progress Administration: ໂຄງການສ້າງເຂື່ອນ ສ້າງຂົວ ສ້າງເດີ່ນບິນ ແລະ ສ້າງຕຶກຂອງລັຖບານ.

The Work Progress Administration built public building.

477

public building: ຕຶກຣັຖບານ.

Agricultural Adjustment Act: ດຳຣັດກ່ຽວກັບການປັບປຸງກະເສດກັມ

The Agricultural Adjustment Act helped farmers.

Tennessee Valley Authority: ໂຄງການປ້ອງກັນນ້ຳຖ້ວມແລະຜລິດໄຟຟ້າຂອງຣັຖບານ Tennessee

The Tennessee Valley Authority was established to control floods and to produce cheap electric power.

electric power: ກະແສໄຟຟ້າ

direction: ທິດທາງ

In 1935 Roosevelt changed the direction of the New Deal.

Social Security Act: ດຳຣັດກ່ຽວກັບການວາງແຜນປະກັນພັຍສຳຫຼັບຜູ້ສູງອາຍຸ

Unemployment insurance was a part of the Social Security Act.

insurance: ປະກັນພັຍ.

READING

25.1. A NATION IN DESPAIR: FRANKLIN DELANO ROOSEVELT ELECTED

25.1.1. 1929 to 1933 were terrible years for the American people. Thirteen million people were unemployed with no unemployment insurance, no pension, and no welfare system to help them. Farm prices were so low that farmers could not get enough money to pay their debts. The people no longer trusted the banking system because two-thirds of the nation's banks were closed. The people wanted a change in leadership. They elected the Democrat, Franklin Delano Roosevelt, who was promising the nation a "New Deal".

25.2. THE FIRST NEW DEAL

25.2.1. President Roosevelt took office in 1932 at the worst point in the Depression. Under the President's leadership, Congress moved quickly to pass many laws that gave him more power to implement his New Deal Programs. Roosevelt also organized a new cabinet to deal with the bad situation and set up a group of advisors to give him new ideas. This group was called the "Brain Trust". Both the cabinet and the "Brain Trust" helped the President to state the main objectives of the New Deal: to provide jobs for the unemployed, to restore the economy and to prevent the failure of the banking system.

25.3. RESTORING THE BANKING SYSTEM

25.3.1. President Roosevelt wanted to restore order to the banking system. He declared a "bank holiday" and closed down all the banks in the United States. During this time all the banks were **inspected**. Only the strong ones were allowed to reopen. Congress passed the **Emergency Banking Act** to regulate the banking business. To protect the **depositors**, Congress also set up the **Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation** that insured savings accounts.

25.4. JOBS FOR THE UNEMPLOYMENT

25.4.1. In 1933, there were 13,000,000 people who lost their jobs. The federal government set up many agencies to create new jobs and to hire more workers. In March 1933, the **Civilian Conservation Corps** was established, and 300,000 young men were hired to work in **reforestation** and **flood control** projects. In 1935, the **Work Progress Administration** was set up to put more unskilled and skilled workers to work on the new projects. WPA workers built dams, bridges, airports, and **public buildings**. Some 8,000,000 people had found jobs with WPA by 1943.

25.5. HELPING THE FARMERS

25.5.1. The government also helped the farmers by passing the **Agricultural Adjustment Act**. This act established minimum farm prices and government control over farm production.

Farmers were paid subsidies to reduce production and keep farm prices up. They also could benefit from cheap electric power that was supplied by the Rural Electrification Administration.

25.6. THE TENNESSEE VALLEY AUTHORITY (TVA)

25.6.1. One of the most remarkable results of the New Deal was the TVA. The TVA was a government project established in 1933 to control floods and produce cheap electric power in the Tennessee River Valley. This project also added cultivated lands to six states: Virginia, Kentucky, Tennessee, Alabama, Georgia, and North Carolina.

25.6.2. The American people believed that the TVA was a great success, and there were demands for the same kind of project in other parts of the country. But the TVA also brought sharp attacks, especially from the businessmen. They criticized the project as unfair competition by the government against private business.

25.7. THE SECOND NEW DEAL

25.7.1. Beginning in 1935, President Roosevelt began to change the direction of the First New Deal. This change was considered to be the start of the Second New Deal. The First New Deal was criticized by businessmen and industrialists. They thought the government wanted to control their business. But the majority of the American people were very pleased with the measures taken by President Roosevelt. They elected him for a second term in 1936.

25.7.2. The Second New Deal focused on social reforms. President Roosevelt was concerned for retired and disabled people. He urged Congress to pass the **Social Security Act** which set up a plan for old age **insurance**. Under this act the retired and disabled received a **pension** from the government. Another part of the act set up an unemployment insurance plan that let qualified persons who lost their jobs receive an income for a limited time.

25.7.3. By the early part of 1937 there were signs of a business **recovery**. The rate of umemployment was down and productions and profits were up. President Roosevelt felt that his measures were taking hold. He began to **cut back** spending for public aid and job programs. However, this cutback caused many damages to business. Production fell sharply and some factories were closed. The jobless rate went up. To fight this business turndown, Roosevelt urged Congress to increase funding for the New Deal and it was prolonged for two more years.

25.7.4. In 1939, President Roosevelt declared that the New Deal would come to an end. However, he did ensure the continuance of a very important part of the New Deal, the Social Security Act. The New Deal had given help to thousands of Americans but it also received a great deal of **opposition** from businessmen and industrialists. They were afraid that the government projects would compete with private projects.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Direction: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບຄຳສັບນັ້ນແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ພ້ອມກັບຂຽນຄຳອະທິບາຍກຳກັບໄວ້ພ້ອມ.

DEBT
BANKING
ADVISOR
PUBLIC
FLOOD
UNFAIR
CUTBACK
PENSION
INSPECTION

REFORESTATION
FLOOD CONTROL
TENNESSEE
VALLEY
AUTHORITY
SOCIAL SECURITY ACT
INSURANCE

NEW DEAL
CRASH
RESTORE
BUILDING
COMPETITION
OPPOSITION
RECOVERY
DESPAIR
DEPOSITOR

I N S P E C T I O N D I R E C T I O N

D E P O S I T O R E C O V E R Y T B E

E P U B L I C B U I L D I N G G O A W

S O P P O S I T I O N P E N S I O N D

P F L O O D C O N T R O L D O O R K E

A T E N N E S S E E V A L L E Y O I A

I A U T H O R I T Y C U T B A C K N L

R E F O R E S T A T I O N D E B T G E

D I R E C T I O N I N S U R A N C E R

S O C I A L S E C U R I T Y A C T S A

C R A S H A D V I S O R R E S T O R E

P U B L I C B U I L D I N G F L O O D

C O M P E T I T I O N U N F A I R S I

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each in the space provided.

A	B
____ a. despair	1. Undertaking by a company or government to provide safeguard against loss in return for regular payment.
____ b inspection	2. Regular payment made by the State to somebody old, disabled, or widowed, or by a former employer to an employee after long service.
____ c. depositor	3. Point towards which a person or things looks or faces.
____ d. reforestation	4. A person who deposits money in a banks.
____ e. direction	5. The state of having lost all hope.
____ f. Insurance	6. An official visit to see that work is done properly or rules are obeyed.
____ g. pension	7. Replanting with forest trees.
____ h. recovery	8. The state of being opposite or opposed.
____ i. dam	9. Get well again quickly or quickly regain one's position after losing for a time.
____ j. opposition	10. Barrier built to keep back water and raise its level.

III. True or False

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put a F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. From 1929 to 1933, the American people were in the worst situation.

____ 2. During the depression people did not trust the banking system.

____ 3. The main objectives of the New Deal were: to provide jobs for employed, to restore the economy, and to prevent the crash of the banking system.

____ 4. President Roosevelt did not want to put the banking system back on its course.

____ 5. Congress passed the Emergency Banking Act to regulate the banking business.

____ 6. One of the remarkable results of the New Deal was the Tennessee Valley Authority (TVA).

____ 7. The First New Deal was appreciated by businessmen and industrialists.

____ 8. The Second New Deal focussed on social reforms.

____ 9. The cutback of money for public aid and job programs caused much damage to business.

____10. One of the social reforms was the unemployment insurance plan that let qualified persons who lost their jobs receive an income for a limited time.

IV. Fill in the blanks: Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: direction, Brain trust, unfair, bank holiday, farm production, reforestation, pension, Agricultural Ajustment Act, electric power, social reforms.

1. President Roosevelt organized a new cabinet to deal with the bad situation and set up a group of advisors to give him new ideas. This group was called the _______ .
2. President Roosevelt declared a ________ closing down all the banks in the United States.
3. In March, 1933, the Civilian Conservation Corps was established and 300,000 young men were hired to work in _________ and flood control projects.
4. The government also helped the farmers by the _________.
5. The TVA was a government project established in 1933 to control floods and produce cheap ____________ in the Tennessee River Valley.
6. The Second New Deal focussed on __________ .
7. Under the Social Security Act, retired and disabled persons received a _________ from the government.
8. The Agricultural Adjustment Act set up minimum farm prices and government control over ___________ .
9. The businessmen criticized the TVA Project as the ______ competition by the government against private business.
10. Beginning in 1935, President Roosevelt began to change the ________ of the First New Deal.

ບົດອ່ານ

໒໘.໑. ປະເທດຊາດຢູ່ໃນຄວາມສິ້ນຫວັງ : ທ່ານ Franklin Delano Roosevelt ຖືກເລືອກຕັ້ງ.

໒໘.໑.໑. ຈາກປີ ໑໙໒໙ ຫາ ໑໙໓໓ ປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນຕົກຢູ່ໃນສະພາບອັດສົນທີ່ສຸດ. ຈຳນວນຄົນວ່າງງານໄດ້ຖີບຕົວຂຶ້ນເຖິງໃນລະຫວ່າງ ໑໒ ລ້ານຄົນ ລາຄາຂອງເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງຕົກຕ່ຳ ຈົນພວກຊາວນາບໍ່ມີເງິນພຽງພໍທີ່ຈະໃຊ້ໜີ້ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້. ທະນາຄານໃນປະເທດຈຳນວນສອງສ່ວນສາມໄດ້ປິດກິຈການໄປ ຊຶ່ງເປັນເຫດໃຫ້ປະຊາຊົນບໍ່ມີຄວາມໄວ້ໃຈຕໍ່ທະນາຄານອີກຕໍ່ໄປ. ຕໍ່ໜ້າສະພາບການເຊັ່ນນີ້ ປະຊາຊົນຕ້ອງການປ່ຽນຜູ້ນຳ ສະນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ເລືອກເອົາທ່ານ

໒໘.໒. ໂຄງການ New Deal ໜຶ່ງ

໒໘.໒.໑. ໃນເວລາທີ່ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ເຂົ້າຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງນັ້ນປະເທດຊາດຢູ່ໃນຄວາມມືດມົນຢ່າງທີ່ສຸດ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນທ່ານຈຶ່ງໄດ້ເອົາມາດຕະການອັນສຣບຂາດ. ພາຍໃຕ້ການນຳພາຂອງທ່ານໄດ້ມີດຳຣັດຫຼາຍດຳຣັດດ້ວຍກັນທີ່ສະພາຮັບຮູ້ໃຫ້ເປັນກົດໝາຍອອກມາເພື່ອໃຫ້ທ່ານມີອຳນາດຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນໃນການປະຕິບັດໂຄງການທີ່ເອີ້ນວ່າ The New Deal Program.

໒໘.໒.໒. ຈຸດໝາຍອັນສຳຄັນຂອງ The New Deal ຄື : ເພື່ອຈັດຫາວຽກງານໃຫ້ແກ່ຜູ້ວ່າງງານ ເພື່ອຟື້ນຟູເສດຖກິດ ແລະ ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນບໍ່ໃຫ້ທະນາຄານລົ້ມລະລາຍ. ທ່ານ Roosevelt ໄດ້ຈັດຕັ້ງຄະນະຣັຖບານໃໝ່ເພື່ອແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາຫຍຸ້ງຍາກທົ່ວໄປ ພ້ອມດຽວກັນນັ້ນທ່ານຍັງໄດ້ຕັ້ງຄະນະທີ່ປຶກສາຂຶ້ນເພື່ອທ່ານຈະໄດ້ຄວາມຄິດໃໝ່ໆ. ຄະນະດັ່ງກ່າວເອີ້ນວ່າ the "Brain Trust". ທັງສອງຄະນະຄື ຄະນະຣັຖບານແລະຄະນະທີ່ປຶກສາເປັນຜູ້ຊ່ວຍປະທານາທິບໍດີໃນການປະຕິບັດໂຄງການ The New Deal.

໒໘.໓. ການຟື້ນຟູທະນາຄານ

໒໘.໓.໑. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ທະນາຄານທັງຫຼາຍກັບຄືນສູ່ສະພາບເດີມ. ທ່ານໄດ້ປະກາດໃຫ້ທະນາຄານຢຸດພັກຮ້ອງວ່າ " bank holiday " ເພື່ອປິດທະນາຄານ

ທັງຫມົດໃນສະຫະຣັຖ. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງຍຸດນັ້ນ ທະນາຄານທັງຫມົດຖືກສັ່ງອັດ. ຫຼັງຈາກນັ້ນທາງການອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ພຽງແຕ່ທະນາຄານທີ່ມີຄວາມແຫນ້ນຫນາເທົ່ານັ້ນເປີດກິຈການໄດ້. ສະພາໄດ້ອອກດໍາຣັດ The Emergency Banking Act ເພື່ອຄວບຄຸມກິຈການຂອງທະນາຄານຕໍ່ໄປ. ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນຜູ້ຝາກເງິນໃນທະນາຄານ ສະພາໄດ້ຕັ້ງບໍຣິສັດປະກັນໄພອັນຫນຶ່ງຄືບໍຣິສັດ The Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ເພື່ອປະກັນເງິນທອງສິນທີ່ຜູ້ຄົນຝາກໄວ້ໃນທະນາຄານຕ່າງໆ.

໒໕.໔. ການຈັດວຽກສໍາລັບແກ້ໄຂການວ່າງງານ

໒໕.໔.໑. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໓ ມີຄົນວ່າງງານຢູ່ທັງຫມົດ ໑໓ ລ້ານຄົນ. ຣັຖບານກາງໄດ້ຕັ້ງອົງການຂຶ້ນຈໍານວນຫຼາຍທັງນີ້ກໍເພື່ອໃຫ້ວຽກການໃຫມ່ພ້ອມກັບຈ້າງເອົານັກວຽກງານຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ. ໃນເດືອນ ມີນາ ໑໙໓໓ ໄດ້ມີການຈັດຕັ້ງອົງການນຶ່ງຂຶ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ The Civilian Conservation Corps. ອົງການນີ້ໄດ້ຈ້າງເອົາຊາວຫນຸ່ມສາມແສນຄົນເພື່ອເຮັດວຽກໃນໂຄງການປູກປ່າ ແລະໂຄງການປ້ອງກັນນໍ້າຖ້ວມ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໕ ໄດ້ມີແຜນການໃຫມ່ເກີດຂຶ້ນເພື່ອຮັບເອົາທັງນັກວຽກງານທີ່ມີຝີມື ແລະບໍ່ມີຝີມື ເຂົ້າເຮັດວຽກໃນໂຄງການໃຫມ່ ເຊັ່ນ ໂຄງການສ້າງເຂື່ອນ ສ້າງຂົວ ສ້າງເດີ່ນບິນ ແລະສ້າງຕຶກຂອງຫຼວງ. ເຖິງປີ ໑໙໔໓ ມີປະມານ ໘ ລ້ານຄົນທີ່ໄດ້ວຽກຈາກແຜນການທີ່ກ່າວມານັ້ນ.

໒໕.໕. ການອຸ້ມຊູຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອພວກຊາວນາ

໒໕.໕.໑. ຣັຖບານໄດ້ໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອແກ່ພວກຊາວນາເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນຊຶ່ງຣັຖບານໄດ້ປະຕິບັດຕາມດໍາຣັດກ່ຽວກັບການປັບປຸງກະເສດ Agricultural Adjustment Act. ດໍາຣັດດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ວາງອັດຕາຣາຄາເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງຕໍ່າສຸດໄວ້ແລະໄດ້ມອບໃຫ້ຣັຖບານເປັນຜູ້ຄວບຄຸມການຜລິດຂອງຊາວນາ. ເພື່ອຕັດການຜລິດເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງຝັງລົງແລະເພື່ອໃຫ້ຣາຄາສູງຂຶ້ນ ພວກຊາວນາໄດ້ຮັບເງິນຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອພິເສດ. ນອກຈາກນີ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າຍັງໄດ້ຮັບອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ໃຊ້ໄຟຟ້າໃນຣາຄາຖືກ ຊຶ່ງແມ່ນ The Rural Electrification Administration ເປັນຜູ້ຈໍາຫນ່າຍໃຫ້.

໒໕.ຕ. ໂຄງການ The Tennessee Valley Authority (TVA)

໒໕.ຕ.໑. ຜົນຂອງໂຄງການ New Deal ຢ່າງນຶ່ງທີ່ເດັ່ນກໍ່ຄືໂຄງການ TVA. ໂຄງການ TVA ເປັນໂຄງການຂອງຣັຖບານທີ່ໄດ້ຈັດຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໙໓໓ ເພື່ອຄວບຄຸມແລະປ້ອງກັນນ້ຳຖ້ວມແລະເພື່ອຜລິດກະແສໄຟຟ້າໃນຂາລາຈັກຢູ່ທີ່ Tennessee River Valley. ໂຄງການນີ້ໄດ້ເພີ້ມດິນປູກຝັງໃນຫົກຣັຖດ້ວຍກັນຄື : Virginia, Kentucky, Tennessee, Alabama, Georgia, North Carolina.

໒໕.ຕ.໒. ປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນເຫັນວ່າໂຄງການ TVA ເປັນໂຄງການທີ່ໄດ້ຜົນສຳເຣັດຢ່າງໃຫຍ່ຫລວງ ດັ່ງນັ້ນຈຶ່ງໄດ້ມີການຂໍຮ້ອງໃຫ້ຣັຖບານຈັດໂຄງການໃນທຳນອງດຽວກັນນີ້ໃນແຂວງອື່ນຂອງປະເທດ. ໃນຂະນະດຽວກັນ ໂຄງການ TVA ກໍ່ໄດ້ຮັບການໂຈມຕີເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ ໂດຍສະເພາະຈາກນັກທຸຣະກິດການຄ້າຕ່າງໆ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າເຫັນວ່າໂຄງການປະເພດນີ້ເປັນການແຂ່ງຂັນທີ່ບໍ່ເປັນທັມລະຫວ່າງຣັຖບານແລະກິຈການຂອງເອກກະຊົນ.

໒໕.ຖ. ໂຄງການ New Deal ທີ່ສອງ

໒໕.ຖ.໑. ເລີ້ມຈາກປີ ໑໙໓໕ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ໄດ້ທຳການປ່ຽນທິດທາງໂຄງການ New Deal ທີ່ນຶ່ງ. ການປ່ຽນແປງທິດທາງຄັ້ງນີ້ເປັນການເລີ້ມຕົ້ນຂອງໂຄງການ New Deal ທີ່ສອງໃນຕົວ. ໂຄງການທີ່ນຶ່ງນັ້ນຖືກໂຈມຕີຈາກນັກທຸຣະກິຈການຄ້າແລະພວກເຈົ້າຂອງໂຮງງານເພາະເຂົາເຈົ້າວ່າຣັຖບານມີຄວາມປະສົງຄວບຄຸມກິຈການຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ແຕ່ປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ມີຄວາມພໍໃຈກັບພາກປະຕິບັດຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ເອງເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ເລືອກຕັ້ງໃຫ້ທ່ານດຳເນີນກິຈການຕື່ມອີກຊຸດນຶ່ງໃນປີ ໑໙໓໖.

໒໕.ຖ.໒. ໂຄງການ New Deal ທີ່ສອງນັ້ນເນັ້ນໜັກໃສ່ການປະຕິຮູບທາງສັງຄົມ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ມີຄວາມເປັນຫ່ວງກັບພວກທີ່ອອກກິນເບັ້ຍບຳນານແລະພວກເສັຽອົງຄະຕ່າງໆ. ທ່ານໄດ້ຊຸກຍູ້ໃຫ້ສະພາອອກດຳຣັດກ່ຽວກັບສວັສດິການສັງຄົມຄື Social Security Act ເພື່ອຈັດໃຫ້ມີປະກັນໄພສຳຫລັບຜູ້ທີ່ສູງອາຍຸໝາຍຄວາມວ່າຜູ້ທີ່ອອກກິນເບັ້ຍບຳນານແລະຜູ້ເສັຽອົງຄະມີສິດໄດ້ຮັບເງິນຊ່ວຍເຫລືອຈາກຣັຖບານ. ນອກຈາກນີ້ດຳຣັດດັ່ງກ່າວຍັງຈັດໃຫ້ມີແຜນປະກັນການວ່າງງານຊຶ່ງອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ຜູ້ທີ່ຕົກງານແລະທີ່ທາງການເຫັນວ່າມີສິດໄດ້ຮັບອາຍໄດ້ໃນຣະຍະເວລາຈຳກັດຈາກຣັຖບານ.

໒໕.ກ.໓. ໃນຕົ້ນປີ ໑໙໓໗ ປາກົດວ່າ ກິຈການການ[illegible]ດີຂຶ້ນ. ຈຳນວນຂອງຄົນວ່າງງານມີນ້ອຍລົງ ສ່ວນການຜລິດຜົນແລະຜົນກຳໄລໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີຄິດວ່າແຜນການທີ່ທ່ານວາງໄປນັ້ນໄດ້ຜົນເປັນທີ່ໃຈໄດ້ ດັ່ງນັ້ນທ່ານຈຶ່ງເລີ່ມທຳການຕັດເງິນຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຂອງຣັຖແລະໂຄງການຈັດວຽກງານລົງ. ແຕ່ການຕັດເງິນຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອດັ່ງກ່າວສ້າງຄວາມເສັຍຫາຍຕໍ່ກິຈການການຄ້າເປັນຢ່າງຫຼາຍ. ເປັນເຫດໃຫ້ການຜລິດຂອງໂຮງງານຫຼຸດລົງຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ ແລະໂຮງງານບາງໂຮງງານກໍໄດ້ປິດກິຈການໄປ. ການວ່າງງານກໍສູງຂຶ້ນ. ເພື່ອປັບປຸງສະພາບການ ສະພາຈຶ່ງຕົກລົງເຫັນດີອະນຸມັດງົບປະມານສຳລັບໂຄງການ New Deal ເພີ່ມຕື່ມອີກສອງປີ.

໒໕.ກ.໔. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໘ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ປະກາດຢຸດຕິໂຄງການ New Deal. ເຖິງແມ່ນວ່າໂຄງການນີ້ໄດ້ໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອແກ່ວອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍລ້ານຄົນກໍຕາມ ແຕ່ກໍຍັງໄດ້ຮັບການຄັດຄ້ານຈາກພວກນັກທຸລະກິດແລະເຈົ້າຂອງໂຮງງານຢູ່ເພາະວ່າພວກນັ້ນມີຄວາມຢ້ານກົວຕໍ່ການແຂ່ງຂັນຈາກຣັຖບານ. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍດີຜົນໄດ້ຮັບຈາກໂຄງການ The New Deal ທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດນັ້ນກໍຄືດຳຣັດ Social Security Act ຊຶ່ງຍັງໃຊ້ກັນຢູ່ຈົນເຖິງປັດຈຸບັນນີ້.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ :

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນກະດານສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນຕາມແນວຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບຄຳສັບນັ້ນແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ພ້ອມກັບຂຽນຄຳອະທິບາຍກຳກັບໄວ້ພ້ອມ.

DEBT
BANKING
ADVISOR
PUBLIC
FLOOD
UNFAIR
CUTBACK
PENSION
INSPECTION

REFORESTATION
FLOOD CONTROL
TENNESSEE
VALLEY
AUTHORITY
SOCIAL SECURITY ACT
INSURANCE

NEW DEAL
CRASH
RESTORE
BUILDING
COMPETITION
OPPOSITION
RECOVERY
DESPAIR
DEPOSITOR

I N S P E C T I O N D I R E C T I O N
D E P O S I T O R E C O V E R Y T B E
E P U B L I C B U I L D I N G G O A W
S O P P O S I T I O N P E N S I O N D
P F L O O D C O N T R O L D O O R K E
A T E N N E S S E E V A L L E Y O I A
I A U T H O R I T Y C U T B A C K N L
R E F O R E S T A T I O N D E B T G E
D I R E C T I O N I N S U R A N C E R
S O C I A L S E C U R I T Y A C T S A
C R A S H A D V I S O R R E S T O R E
P U B L I C B U I L D I N G F L O O D
C O M P E T I T I O N U N F A I R S I

໒. ການປະກອບສັບເຂົ້າປະໂຫຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ : ຈົ່ງປະກອບສັບແຕ່ລະສັບທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃສ່ປະໂຫຍກໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຢ່າງຖືກຕ້ອງ. ໃຫ້ໝາຍເລກໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີແທນຄຳຕອບ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ກ. ຄວາມສິນຫວັງ	໑. ການປະຕິບັດຂອງບໍລິສັດ ຫຼື ອົງການເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນການເສັຍຫາຍໂດຍຈ່າຍເງິນທົດແທນຢ່າງສະໝ່ຳສະເໝີ.
_____ ຂ. ການສຳຫຼວດ	໒. ການຈ່າຍເງິນຢ່າງສະໝ່ຳສະເໝີຈາກລັຖໃຫ້ແກ່ຊະລາ ຜູ້ເສັຍອົງຄະ ຫຼື ນາງໝ້າຍ ເງິນປະເພດນີ້ບາງຄັ້ງກໍແມ່ນນາຍຈ້າງເປັນຜູ້ຈ່າຍໃຫ້ແກ່ພະນັກງານຂອງຕົນທີ່ປະຕິບັດງານມາເປັນເວລາດົນນານ.
_____ ຄ. ຜູ້ຝາກເງິນ	໓. ຈຸດຈົ້ງດິນ ຫຼື ສິ່ງຂອງຕັ້ງໜ້າເອົາສາ.
_____ ງ. ການປູກປ່າ	໔. ຜູ້ທີ່ເອົາເງິນເຂົ້າໄວ້ໃນທະນາຄານ.
_____ ຈ. ທິດທາງ	໕. ສະພາບທີ່ສູນເສັຍຄວາມຫວັງ.
_____ ສ. ປະກັນພັຍ	໖. ການຢ້ຽມຢາມທາງການເພື່ອເບິ່ງວ່າອົງການນັ້ນປະຕິບັດຢ່າງຖືກຕ້ອງຫຼືບໍ່ຫຼືເພື່ອເບິ່ງວ່າລະບຽບການຕ່າງໆນັ້ນມີການປະຕິບັດຕາມຫຼືບໍ່.
_____ ຊ. ເບັ້ຍບຳນານ	໗. ການປູກຕົ້ນໄມ້ໃຫ້ເປັນປ່າຄືນ.
_____ ຍ. ຟື້ນຕົວ	໘. ການມີຄວາມເຫັນແບບກົງກັນຂ້າມຫຼືບໍ່ເຫັນດີ.
_____ ດ. ເຂື່ອນ	໙. ການກັບຄືນດີຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວ.
_____ ຕ. ຄັດຄ້ານ	໑໐. ຄັນຄູສ້າງເພື່ອກັ້ນນ້ຳໄວ້ແລະເຮັດໃຫ້ລະດັບຂອງນ້ຳນັ້ນສູງຂຶ້ນ.

໓. ຖືກ ຫຼື ຜິດ :

ຈົ່ງອ່ານທຸກໆປະໂຍກ ແລ້ວໝາຍ T ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກ ແລະໃຫ້ໝາຍ F ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກຜິດ.

_____ ໑. ຈາກປີ ໑໙໒໙ ຫາປີ ໑໙໓໓ ປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນຕົກຢູ່ໃນສະພາບທີ່ອັດຕະຄັດ ຂັດສົນທີ່ສຸດ.

_____ ໒. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງທີ່ເສຖກິດຝືດເຄືອງນັ້ນປະຊາຊົນບໍ່ມີຄວາມໄວ້ໃຈທະນາຄານອີກຕໍ່ໄປ.

_____ ໓. ຈຸດປະສົງອັນສຳຄັນຂອງໂຄງການ New Deal ຄື: ເພື່ອຈັດຫາວຽກງານໃຫ້ແກ່ຜູ້ທີ່ຕົກງານ ເພື່ອຟື້ນຟູເສຖກິດ ແລະເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນທະນາຄານບໍ່ໃຫ້ລົ້ມລະລາຍ.

_____ ໔. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ບໍ່ຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ທະນາຄານກັບຄືນສູ່ສະພາບເດີມ.

_____ ໕. ສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳຣັດ Emergency Banking Act ເພື່ອຄວບຄຸມກິຈການຂອງທະນາຄານ.

_____ ໖. ຜົນງານອັນເດັ່ນຢ່າງນຶ່ງຂອງໂຄງການ New Deal ກໍຄືການຕັ້ງໃຫ້ມີ Tennessee Valley Authority (TVA)

_____ ໗. ໂຄງການ New Deal ທີ່ນຶ່ງໄດ້ຮັບການສນັບສນູນຈາກພວກນັກທຸຣະກິດແລະເຈົ້າຂອງໂຮງງານຕ່າງໆ.

_____ ໘. ໂຄງການ New Deal ທີ່ສອງເນັ້ນໜັກໃສ່ການປັບປຸງດ້ານສັງຄົມ.

_____ ໙. ການຕັດງົບປະມານຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອປະຊາຊົນແລະໂຄງການຈັດຫາວຽກໄດ້ສ້າງຄວາມເສັຍຫາຍໃຫ້ແກ່ທຸຣະກິດການຄ້າຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ.

_____ ໑໐. ສ່ວນນຶ່ງຂອງໂຄງການປັບປຸງສັງຄົມແມ່ນແຜນການປະກັນການວ່າງງານຊຶ່ງອະນຸຍາດຜູ້ທີ່ຕົກງານທີ່ຫາງານເຮັດບໍ່ມີສິດໄດ້ຮັບລາຍໄດ້ຈາກຣັຖບານໃນຂອບເຂດເວລາອັນຈຳກັດ.

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ໝວດຄຳເວົ້າໝົດລົງໄປນີ້ ຕື່ມໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ : ທິດທາງ, Brain Trust , ບໍ່ທອງທັມ, ການຢຸດພັກຂອງທະນາຄານ, ຜົນຜລິດຂອງຊາວນາ, ການປູກປ່າ, ເບ້ຍບຳນານ, Agricultural Adjustment Act , ກະແສໄຟຟ້າ, ການປັບປຸງສັງຄົມ.

໑. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ໄດ້ຕັ້ງຄະນະຣັຖບານໃຫມ່ເພື່ອແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາຫຍຸ້ງຍາກແລະໄດ້ຕັ້ງຄະນະທີ່ປຶກສາຂຶ້ນເພື່ອປ້ອນຄວາມຄິດໃຫມ່ໆໃຫ້ແກ່ທ່ານ. ຄະນະດັ່ງກ່າວເອີ້ນວ່າ ______________ .

໒. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ປະກາດ ______________________ ເພື່ອປິດທະນາຄານທຸກແຫ່ງໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

໓. ໃນເດືອນ ມີນາ ປີ ໑໙໓໓ ໄດ້ມີການຕັ້ງອົງການ Civilian Conservation Corps ຂຶ້ນມາແລະອົງການນີ້ໄດ້ຈ້າງເອົາຊາວຫນຸ່ມ ໓ ແສນຄົນເພື່ອເຮັດວຽກໃນໂຄງການ ____________ ____________________ ແລະໂຄງການປ້ອງກັນນ້ຳຖ້ວມ.

໔. ຣັຖບານໄດ້ໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫລືອຊາວນາເຊັ່ນກັນຕາມ ______________________________ .

໕. ໂຄງການ TVA ແມ່ນຣັຖບານໄດ້ຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໙໓໓ ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນນ້ຳຖ້ວມແລະເພື່ອຜລິດ ______ __________________ ໃນຣາຄາຖືກ.

໖. ໂຄງການ New Deal ທີ່ສອງເນັ້ນຫນັກໃສ່ ______________________________ .

໗. ຕາມດຳຣັດ Social Security Act ຜູ້ໝົດອາຍຸການເຮັດວຽກແລະເສັຍອົງຄະມີສິດໄດ້ຮັບເງິນ ____________________ ຈາກຣັຖບານ.

໘. ດຳຣັດ Agricultural Adjustment Act ໄດ້ວາງຣາຄາເຄື່ອງປູກຂອງພັງ ຕ່ຳສຸດ ແລະມອບໃຫ້ຣັຖບານຄວບຄຸມ ____________________ .

໙. ພວກນັກທຸຣະກິດໂຈມຕີໂຄງການ TVA ວ່າເປັນການແຂ່ງຂັນທີ່ ____________________ ຕໍ່ຣັຖມົດກິຈການຂອງເອກກະຊົນ.

໑໐. ເລີ່ມຈາກປີ ໑໙໓໘ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ໄດ້ປ່ຽນແປງ ____________________ ຂອງໂຄງການ New Deal ໜຶ່ງ.

495

ໝວດ ກ : ບັນຫາເສດຖະກິດຝືດເຄືອງແລະບັນຫາຂອງໂລກ

ພາກ ໔໖ : ສັງຄົມໃນສໄມເສດຖະກິດຝືດເຄືອງ

ສັບໃໝ່ :

poverty : ຄວາມທຸກຈົນ

During the Depression, American people experienced both poverty and hunger.

hunger ; ຄວາມອຶດຫິວ

transient : ຜູ້ທີ່ຍ້າຍໄປຍ້າຍມາເພື່ອຊອກຫາວຽກການເຮັດແລະຊອກຫາເຂົ້າປາອາຫານ.

People who moved from place to place in order to find food and job were known as transients.

shanty towns : ຊຸ້ມທີ່ພວກທຸກຍາກອາໄສຢູ່

Many poor people lived in shanty towns.

breadlines : ໝາຍເຖິງແຖວທີ່ພວກທຸກຍາກເຂົ້າຕໍ່ກັນເພື່ອລໍຖ້າກິນອາຫານຟຣີ.

Hungry, undernourished people stood in long breadlines to receive free food.

undernourished : ຂາດເຂີນເຂົ້າປາອາຫານ ຫຼື ກິນບໍ່ພໍອີ່ມ.

dandelion : ພືດຊນິດນຶ່ງທີ່ຢູ່ໃນປ່າ.

When people had no food to eat, they often ate weeds and dandelions.

weed : ຫຍ້າ

roam : ຍ່າງເລາະຫຼິ້ນ

Many children roamed the streets hoping to find scraps of foods.

scraps of food : ເສດອາຫານ

necessity : ຄວາມຈຳເປັນ

The federal government gave the poor money to buy food and other necessities.

relief : ຄວາມບັນເທົາທຸກ

The Red Cross provided relief to thousands of needy people.

mural : ຮູບຂັວດຕາມຝາ.

During the Depression, artists painted murals which showed the harsh life in the cities.

harsh : ຄວາມທຸ້ງຍາກ.

movie goers : ພວກໄປເບິ່ງພາພຍົນ.

The number of movie-goers decreased during the Depression.

woes : ເຄາະກຳ

By 1939 movies and radios entertainment provided an escape from the woes of the Depression.

sulfa drug : ຢາຈຸ້ນຟາ.

The sulfa drug was successfully used to cure such serious illness as scarlet fever.

scarlet fever : ໄຂ້ອອກຕມາກ

antibiotic : ປະຕິຈິ້ວນນະ

Antibiotics helped cure tuberculosis.

tuberculosis : ພະຍາດປອດແຫ້ງ.

READING

26.1. UNEMPLOYMENT, POVERTY AND HUNGER

26.1.1. Unemployment, poverty, and hunger had never been more

apparent in American society than they were during President Roosevelt's first term. About a million Americans were forced to move from place to place in an effort to find jobs and food. These homeless, hungry, and poorly-clothed people were called **transients**. They lived in huts or in **shanty towns**. In the cities and towns, they could often be found standing in long **breadlines** waiting to get free meals and soup.

26.1.2. To illustrate how prevalent hunger was in American society, a 1935 report from the American Medical Association estimated that about 20,000,000 American people were **undernourished**. Some families were forced to live on **dandelions** and **weeds**. Starving children **roamed** the streets and dug in the garbage to look for **scraps of food**.

26.1.3. The federal and local governments responded by establishing many agencies to help poor people. The Public Works Administration hired many people to work on public construction projects. Many other poor people were given money to buy food and other **necessities**. The Red Cross also gave **relief** to thousands of poor and hungry people. Surplus food was bought by the government and distributed to needy people.

26.2. THE ARTS, LITERATURE, AND MOVIES DURING THE DEPRESSION:

26.2.1. During the Depression, novels, short stories, and works of art reflected the harsh reality of life in the cities and countryside during this difficult time. With the government's backing, many artists painted realistic murals and pictures on walls in public buildings. Almost all of these murals reflected the realistic and harsh circumstances of the Depression society.

26.2.2. The Depression also cut down on the number of movie-goers. But by 1939, the number of movie-goers had increased again after a long slowdown. Film producers began to make films in color. The American people saw entertainment as an escape from the woes of the depression. Radio entertainment, as well as movies, once again increased in popularity.

26.3. THE MEDICAL ADVANCES DURING THE DEPRESSION

26.3.1. During the Depression, the federal government set aside a lot of money for medical research and, a great deal of progress was made. Two scientists, Perrin H. Long and Eleanor A. Bliss, discovered a new drug called sulfa. This new medicine proved helpful in treating serious illnesses, such as scarlet fever. Another scientist, Selman Waksman, discovered a new antibiotic drug. This new antibiotic could kill germs that caused other serious diseases, such as tuberculosis.

26.3.2. Roosevelt's New Deal provided help to needy American people for almost a decade. The government spent a lot of money on public projects. Although the New Deal could not stop the Depression, it did help heal the depressed feeling which was prevalent among the affected people.

BAI TAP

I. **Word search puzzle:**

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

POOR
REPORT
RED CROSS
ARTS
ARTIST
PUBLIC
MEDICINE
SCARLET FEVER
GERMS

FILM
STOP
POVERTY
HUNGER
TRANSIENT
SHANTY
GOER
BREADLINES

ROAM
SCRAPS
FOOD
NECESSITY
RELIEF
MURAL
HARSH
MOVIE

SCARLET FEVER
ANTIBIOTIC
TUBERCULOSIS
DRUG (2 TIMES)
WEED
SULFA
WOES
DANDELION
UNDERNOURISHED

P	U	B	L	I	C	D	R	E	P	O	R	T	B	M	T	R
D	R	U	G	R	H	A	R	S	H	O	P	Q	R	E	R	E
A	U	N	D	E	R	N	O	U	R	I	S	H	E	D	A	D
W	E	E	D	L	F	D	A	L	O	T	H	U	A	I	N	C
P	P	C	O	I	I	E	R	F	A	S	A	N	D	C	S	R
O	O	E	O	E	L	L	T	A	M	I	N	G	L	I	I	O
V	O	S	F	F	M	I	S	I	R	T	T	E	I	N	E	S
E	R	S	X	Y	G	O	E	R	S	R	Y	R	N	E	N	S
R	E	I	V	O	M	N	M	U	R	A	L	S	E	O	T	G
T	S	T	V	D	O	O	F	S	P	A	R	C	S	N	O	E
Y	T	Y	W	C	I	T	O	I	B	I	T	N	A	T	T	R
T	U	B	E	R	C	U	L	O	S	I	S	W	O	E	S	M
S	C	A	R	L	E	T	F	E	V	E	R	S	T	O	P	S

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

	A		B
_____	a. hunger	1.	the state of being poor.
_____	b. breadline	2.	a strong desire for food or the weakness caused by a prolonged lack of food.
_____	c.poverty	3.	a line of people waiting to be given free food either from a relief agency or a charity.
_____	d. roam	4.	assistance, in the form of money or food,given to the needy people of any disaster stricken region.
_____	e. relief	5.	a picture or decoration usually a very large one, applied directly to a wall or ceiling.
_____	f. transient	6.	a communicable disease of man and animals caused by micro organisms.
_____	g. mural	7.	one who moves from one place to another to find job during the depression time.
_____	h. tuberculosis	8.	to travel without purpose or plan.

III. True or False: Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put a F in that space if it is false.

_____ 1. During the first term of President Roosevelt, the American society was in a happy state.

______ 2. The transients were homeless, hungry, and poorly clothed.

______ 3. The Public Works Administration hired people to work on public projects.

______ 4. Some poor families during the Depression had to live on dandelions and weeds.

______ 5. Many artists painted murals or pictures painted on the walls in public buildings and got paid by the government.

______ 6. The Depression also increased the number of movie goers because these people did not have jobs to work.

______ 7. The film producers began to make color films in 1939.

______ 8. The federal government set aside a lot of money for medical research, and two scientists, Perrin H Long and Eleanor A. Bliss, discovered a drug called sulfa.

______ 9. Sulfa was good in treating some dangerous illnesses such as scarlet fever.

______10. Selmon Waksman discovered a new antibiotic drug that could kill the germs found in some diseases.

IV Fill in the blanks: Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: transients, shanty towns, scraps of food, agencies, relief, murals, movie goers, sulfa drug, tuberculosis, antibiotic.

1. The people that moved from place to place to find jobs were called ____________.

2. These poor people were homeless, hungry, and poorly clothed. They lived in the huts or ________________ .

3. Children roamed the streets and dug the garbage to look for ______________ .

4. The federal and local governments established many _____ to help the poor people.

5. The Red Cross also gave _________ to the poor and hungry people.

6. Many artists painted _________ that showed the realistic and harsh pictures of the society during the Depression.

7. The Depression also cut down the number of _________ .

8. Two scientists, Perrin H. Long and Eleanor A. Bliss, discovered a drug called ___________ .

9. Antibiotic drugs can kill germs that caused diseases such as _________ .

10. Selman Waksman discovered the new ___________ drugs.

ບົດອ່ານ

໒໓.໑. ການວ່າງງານ ຄວາມທຸກຍາກ ແລະຄວາມອຶດຫິວ

໒໓.໑.໑. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງທີ່ທ່ານປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງໃນຊຸດທຳອິດນັ້ນ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຕົກຢູ່ໃນສະພາບຍາກຈົນເປັນຢ່າງຍິ່ງ. ປະຊາຊົນໄດ້ພາກັນອົບພະຍົບໄປມາຫຼາຍແຫ່ງເພື່ອຊອກຫາວຽກເຮັດງານທຳແລະເຂົ້າປາອາຫານ. ຄົນຈຳພວກດັ່ງກ່າວມີຢູ່ປະມານນຶ່ງລ້ານຄົນເອີ້ນວ່າພວກ transcients. ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ມີບ່ອນມີເຮືອນອຶດຫິວ ແລະຂາດເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງຫົ່ມ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າຢູ່ຕາມຕູບຕາມຫາມທີ່ຢູ່ຕາມຄຸ້ມທຸກຍາກຕ່າງໆເອີ້ນວ່າ Shanty towns. ຕາມເມືອງຕ່າງໆຈະເຫັນຄົນພວກນີ້ເຂົ້າແຖວຍາວຢູ່ຄອຍຖ້າຮັບອາຫານຟຣີ.

໒໓.໑.໒. ຕາມລາຍງານຂອງສະມາຄົມ American Medicaid Associationໃນປີ ໑໙໓໔ ປາກົດວ່າພວກຄົນທີ່ຂາດເຂີນອາຫານອຶດຢາກມີຢູ່ປະມານ ໒໐ ລ້ານຄົນ. ບາງຄອບຄົວກໍ່ຕ້ອງໄດ້ກິນໃບໄມ້ກິນຫຍ້າເພື່ອຢູ່ລອດ. ເດັກນ້ອຍເລາະຕາມຖະໜົນຫົນທາງແລະຂວັດຄ່ອຍຖັງຂີ້ເຫຍື້ອເພື່ອຊອກຫາອາຫານ.

໒໓.໑.໓. ຣັຖບານກາງແລະຣັຖບານທ້ອງຖິ່ນໄດ້ຈັດຕັ້ງອົງການຫຼາຍອົງການເພື່ອໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອແກ່ຄົນທຸກຕ່າງໆ. ກົມໂຍທາໄດ້ຈ້າງຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍສຳລັບເຮັດວຽກໃນໂຄງການຕ່າງໆ. ອົງການສະພາກາຊາດກໍ່ໄດ້ຊ່ວຍບັນເທົາພວກທຸກແລະພວກອຶດຢາກເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນຣັຖບານຍັງໄດ້ຈັດການແຈກຢາຍເຂົ້າປາອາຫານໃຫ້ແກ່ຜູ້ທີ່ຢູ່ໃນຄວາມຕ້ອງການອີກດ້ວຍ.

໒໓.໒. ວັນນະຄະດີ ສິລປະ ແລະ ບານເທີງ ໃນສໄມເສຖກິດເສື່ອມໂຊມ

໒໓.໒.໑. ໃນສໄມເສຖກິດເສື່ອມໂຊມ ການຂຽນເລື່ອງແລະສິລປະຕ່າງໆກໍ່ໄດ້ກ່າວແລະສະແດງເຖິງຊີວິດຈິງຂອງຄົນທີ່ຢູ່ຕາມຫົວເມືອງແລະຕາມຊົນນະບົດຕ່າງໆ. ດ້ວຍການຊຸກຍູ້ຈາກຣັຖບານ ນັກແຕ້ມຫຼາຍຄົນໄດ້ແຕ້ມຮູບຕ່າງໆຕາມຝາຂອງໂຮງການຂອງຣັຖ. ການແຕ້ມເກືອບທັງໝົດນັ້ນໄດ້ສະແດງໃຫ້ເຫັນເຖິງຊີວິດອັນຍາກຈົນຂອງໃນສໄມນັ້ນເອງ.

໒໓.໒.໒. ການຟືດເຄືອງທາງເສຖກິດໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ຈຳນວນຄົນທີ່ໄປເບິ່ງໄປຈິມພາບຍົນລຸດນ້ອຍລົງເໝືອນກັນ ຈົນເຖິງປີ ໑໙໓໓ ຈຳນວນຂອງຄົນທີ່ໄປເບິ່ງພາບຍົນຈຶ່ງເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນຄືນ. ໃນເວລານັ້ນເຈົ້າຂອງບໍຣິສັດສ້າງພາບຍົນໄດ້ເລີ່ມສ້າງຟິມສີຂຶ້ນມາ. ເພື່ອເປັນການບັນເທົາຄວາມທຸກຍາກ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ພາກັນອາໃສຄວາມເພີດເພີນເປັນທີ່ເພິ່ງ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນພາບຍົນແລະວິທະຍຸຈຶ່ງສາມາດຄອງຄວາມນິຍົມໄວ້ໄດ້ຢ່າງສູງ.

໒໓.໓. ຄວາມກ້າວໜ້າດ້ານການແພດໃນສໄມເສຖກິດເສື່ອມໂຊມ

໒໓.໓.໑. ຣັຖບານກາງໄດ້ອະນຸມັດເງິນສຳຫຼັບການຄົ້ນຄ້ວາດ້ານການແພດເປັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຫຼວງ. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງນັ້ນທ່ານ Perrin H. Long ແລະທ່ານ Eleanor A. Bliss ຊຶ່ງເປັນນັກວິທຍາສາດທັງສອງໄດ້ຄົ້ນພົບຢາຊັນຟາ (Sulfa drug). ຢາຊັນຟານີ້ເປັນຢາທີ່ໃຊ້ປ້ອງກັນໄຂ້ອັນຕະລາຍບາງຢ່າງ ເຊັ່ນໄຂ້ອອກຕຸ່ມແດງຮາກແລະເຈັບຄໍ Scarlet fever ນັກວິທະຍາສາດອີກຜູ້ນຶ່ງຄືທ່ານ Selman Waksman ເປັນຜູ້ຄົ້ນພົບຢາປະຕິຊີວະນະແບບໃໝ່ຊຶ່ງສາມາດຂ້າເຊື້ອໂຣກທີ່ເກີດຈາກພະຍາດບາງຢ່າງ ເຊັ່ນພະຍາດປອດແຫ້ງ.

໒໓.໓.໒. ໂຄງການ New Deal ໄດ້ສ້າງປະໂຍດໃຫ້ແກ່ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເປັນເວລາເກືອບ ໑໐ ປີ. ຣັຖບານໄດ້ໃຊ້ເງິນເປັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍສຳຫຼັບໃຊ້ໃນໂຄງການດັ່ງກ່າວ. ຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວໂຄງການ New Deal ນີ້ບໍ່ສາມາດຈະເຮັດໃຫ້ການຟືດເຄືອງຂອງເສຖກິດຢຸດຕິໄປໄດ້ຢ່າງແທ້ຈິງແຕ່ມັນເປັນການຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ຈິດໃຈຂອງຜູ້ທີ່ໄດ້ຮັບການກະທົບກະເທືອນໃຫ້ຫາຍດີໄດ້.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

I. Word search puzzle :

Direction : Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບເຫລົ່ານັ້ນໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບພວກນັ້ນແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ ພ້ອມດ້ວຍຄວາມໝາຍ ຫຼື ຄຳອະທິບາຍ.

POOR
REPORT
RED CROSS
ARTS
ARTIST
PUBLIC
MEDICINE
SCARLET FEVER
GERMS
FILM
STOP
POVERTY
HUNGER
TRANSIENT
SHANTY
GOER
BREADLINES
ROAM
SCRAPS
FOOD
NECESSITY
RELIEF
MURAL
HARSH
MOVIE
SCARLET FEVER
ANTIBIOTIC
TUBERCULOSIS
DRUG (2 TIMES)
WEED
SULFA
WOES
DANDELION
UNDERNOURISHED

P U B L I C D R E P O R T B M T R
D R U G R H A R S H O P Q R E R E
A U N D E R N O U R I S H E D A D
W E E D L F D A L O T H U A I N C
P P C O I I E R F A S A N D C S R
O O E O E L L T A M I N G L I I O
V O S F F M I S I R T T E I N E S
E R S X Y G O E R S R Y R N E N S
R E I V O M N M U R A L S E O T G
T S T V D O O F S P A R C S N O E
Y T Y W C I T O I B I T N A T T R
T U B E R C U L O S I S W O E S M
S C A R L E T F E V E R S T O P S

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຊອກຫາສັບ : (ເບິ່ງຕາມພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. ການປະກອບສັບ ແລະ ຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັນ : ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາຄຳເວົ້າແຕ່ລະຄຳໃນຫມວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍໃນຫມວດ (ຂ) ໂດຍຂຽນຄຳຕອບຊຶ່ງເປັນໂຕເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ປະໄວ້ນັ້ນ ສຳຫລັບຄຳຕອບທຸກຄຳ.

ຫມວດ (ກ)	ຫມວດ (ຂ)
_____ (ກ) ຄວາມອຶດຫິວ	(໑) ສະພາບທີ່ຂາດເຂີນເງິນຄຳ.
_____ (ຂ) Breadline	(໒) ຄວາມຕ້ອງການຢາກກິນອາຫານຢ່າງເຫລືອຫລາຍ.
_____ (ຄ) ຄວາມທຸກຈົນ	(໓) ແຖວຄົນເພື່ອລໍຖ້າລັບເອົາອາຫານຟຣີຈາກອົງການຊ່ອຍເຫລືອ.
_____ (ງ) ຍ່າງເລາະ	(໔) ການມອບເງິນຫລືອາຫານສຳຫລັບຊ່ອຍຜູ້ທີ່ມີຄວາມຈຳເປັນຍ້ອນໄດ້ລັບໄພທຳມະຊາດ.
_____ (ຈ) ການບັນເທົາທຸກ	(໕) ຮູບພາບຫລືເຄື່ອງປະດັບຊຶ່ງທຳມະດາແລ້ວມີຂະຫນາດໃຫຍ່ຂີດຕາມຝາຫລືເພດານ.
_____ (ສ) Transient	(໖) ພະຍາດຕິດຕໍ່ຂອງມະນຸດແລະສັດ.
_____ (ຊ) ຮູບຂີດຕາມຝາ	(໗) ຄົນທີ່ຍ້າຍຈາກບ່ອນນຶ່ງໄປຫາບ່ອນນຶ່ງເພື່ອຊອກວຽກເຮັດງານທຳ.
_____ (ຍ) ໂຣກປອດແຫ້ງ	(໘) ການຍ່າງທ່ອງໂດຍບໍ່ມີຈຸດຫມາຍ.

໓. ຖືກ ຫລື ຜິດ :

ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກ ແລ້ວຫມາຍອັກສອນ T ໃສ່ຕໍ່ຫນ້າປະໂຍກທີ່ທ່ານເຫັນວ່າຖືກ ແລະ ຫມາຍອັກສອນ F ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກປະໂຍກນັ້ນຜິດ.

_____ ໑. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງທີ່ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ຮັບຕຳແຫນ່ງໃນຊຸດທຳອິດນັ້ນ ປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນທັງຫລາຍມີຄວາມສຸກສະບາຍ.

_____ ໒. ພວກ Transient ຂາດບ່ອນເພິ່ງພາອາໄສ ມີຄວາມອຶດຫິວ ແລະ ຂາດເຂີນການນຸ່ງຫົ່ມ.

_____ ໓. ພະແນກໂຍທາໄດ້ຈ້າງຄົນເພື່ອເຂົ້າເຮັດວຽກໃນໂຄງການຕ່າງໆ.

_____ ໔. ໃນສມັຍທີ່ເສດຖະກິດຝືດເຄືອງ ຄອບຄົວຄົນທຸກຈົນບາງຄອບຄົວ ຕ້ອງໄດ້ກິນໃບໄມ້ ແລະ ຫຍ້າ ເພື່ອຄວາມຢູ່ລອດ.

_____ ໕. ນັກແຕ້ມຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຄົນໄດ້ຂີດຮູບ ຫຼື ແຕ້ມຮູບໃສ່ຝາໂຮງການຂອງຫຼວງ ແລະ ໄດ້ຮັບເງິນຄ່າຈ້າງຈາກລັດຖະບານ.

_____ ໖. ສະພາບເສດຖະກິດຝືດເຄືອງໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ຈຳນວນຄົນທີ່ໄປຊົມພາພຍົນ ເພີ່ມຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ເພາະວ່າ ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ມີວຽກເຮັດງານທຳ.

_____ ໗. ບໍລິສັດສ້າງພາພຍົນໄດ້ເລີ້ມສ້າງຟິມສີ ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໙.

_____ ໘. ລັດຖະບານກາງ ໄດ້ແຍກເງິນສຳຫຼັບໃຊ້ໃນການຄົ້ນຄວ້າທາງການແພດເປັນຈຳນວນຫຼວງຫຼາຍ ແລະ ມີນັກວິທະຍາສາດ ສອງທ່ານ ຄືທ່ານ Perrin H.Long ແລະ Eleanor A. Bliss ໄດ້ຄົ້ນພົບຢາປົວພະຍາດເອີ້ນວ່າ Sulfa.

_____ ໙. ຢາ Sulfa ເປັນຢາສຳຫຼັບປົວພະຍາດອັນຕະຣາຍບາງຢ່າງ ເຊັ່ນ Scarlet Fever

_____ ໑໐. ນັກວິທະຍາສາດ Selmon Waksman ເປັນຜູ້ຄົ້ນພົບ ຢາປະຕິຊີວະນະ ຊະນິດໃໝ່ ຊຶ່ງສາມາດ ຂ້າເຊື້ອໂຣກຂອງພະຍາດບາງຢ່າງໄດ້.

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ :

ຈົ່ງຂຽນຄຳເວົ້າຫຼືພວກຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ໄປນີ້ ໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ :

Transients , ຄຸ້ມຂອງພວກທຸກຍາກ, ເສດອາຫານ, ອົງການ, ການບັນເທົາທຸກ, ຮູບຂີດຕາມຝາ, ພວກທີ່ໄປຊົມພາພຍົນ, ຢາ Sulfa , ໂຣກປອດແຫ້ງ, ຢາປະຕິຊີວະນະ.

໑. ຄົນທີ່ຍ້າຍອອກຈາກບ່ອນນຶ່ງໄປຫາບ່ອນນຶ່ງ ເພື່ອຊອກຫາວຽກເຮັດງານທຳນັ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ ______________.

໒. ພວກຄົນທຸກຈົນເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ຂາດບ່ອນຢູ່ອາໃສ ອຶດຫິວ ແລະ ຂາດເຂີນເຄື່ອງນຸ່ງຫົ່ມ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າອາໃສຢູ່ ໃນຕູບ ຫຼື ຢູ່ຕາມ ______________________________.

໓. ພວກເດັກນ້ອຍມາກັນຍ່າງເລາະຕາມຖນົນຫົນທາງ ແລະ ມາກັນຂັວດເຂ່ຍຖິ້ງຂີ້ເຫຍື່ອ ເພື່ອຊອກຫາ ______________________________ .

໔. ລັດຖະບານກາງ ແລະ ລັດຖະບານທ້ອງຖິ່ນ ໄດ້ຈັດຕັ້ງຫຼາຍ ____________________ ເພື່ອ ຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອພວກຄົນທຸກຍາກ.

໕. ສະພາກາຊາດກໍໄດ້ຊ່ວຍ ____________________ ແກ່ພວກຄົນທຸກຍາກ ແລະ ອຶດຫິວເຊັ່ນກັນ.

໖. ພວກນັກແຕ້ມຫຼາຍຄົນໄດ້ ____________________ ເພື່ອສະແດງເຖິງຊີວິດອັນຍາກຈົນ ໃນສໄມນັ້ນ.

໗. ສະພາບເສດຖະກິດຝືດເຄືອງໄດ້ເຮັດຈຳນວນ _________________________ ລຸດລົງ.

໘. ນັກວິທະຍາສາດສອງທ່ານຄືທ່ານ Perrin H.Long ແລະ Eleanor A. Bliss ໄດ້ຄົ້ນພົບຢາປົວພະຍາດທີ່ເອີ້ນວ່າ ___________________ .

໙. ຢາປະຕິຊີວະນະ ສາມາດຂ້າເຊື້ອໂຣກຂອງພະຍາດອັນຕະຣາຍບາງຢ່າງເຊັ່ນໂຣກ ___________ __________________ .

໑໐. ທ່ານ Selman Waksman ໄດ້ຄົ້ນພົບຢາ ____________________ ແນວໃໝ່.

ຫມວດ ກ : ບັນຫາເສດຖະກິດຝືດເຄືອງແລະບັນຫາຂອງໂລກ

ພາກ ໔໗ : ນະໂຍບາຍຕ່າງປະເທດແລະບັນຫາຂອງໂລກ

ສັບໃໝ່ :

foreign policy : ນະໂຍບາຍຕ່າງປະເທດ

Since 1972, the United States has changed its foreign policy toward China.

World Economic Conference : ກອງປະຊຸມເສດຖະກິດຂອງໂລກ

Representatives from several countries discussed monetary problems at the World Economic Conference.

Reciprocal Agreement Act : ດຳຣັດຍ່ງອກັບຖານມອບສິດໃຫ້ປະທານາທິບໍດີຫຼຸດຄ່າພາສີຂາເຂົ້າໃຫ້ແກປະເທດທີປະຕິບັດໃນທຳນອງດຽວກັນຕໍ່ສະຫະຣັຖ.

The Reciprocal Agreement Act gave the President the right to lower tariff rates.

Latin America : ອະເມຣິກາໃຕ້ ຫຼື ລາຕິນອະເມຣິກາ.

Almost all of the countries in Latin America are poor and undevelopped.

the good neighbor policy : ນະໂຍບາຍຜູກມິດກັບປະເທດໃກ້ຄຽງ.

President Roosevelt had a new policy toward Latin American countries. It was called the good neighbor policy.

Pan American Conference : ກອງປະຊຸມລະຫວ່າງຜູ້ຕາງໜ້າຈາກປະເທດຕ່າງໆໃນຊີກໂລກຕາເວັນຕົກ.

The Pan American Conference was held in Lima, Peru.

Western hemisphere : ຊີກໂລກຕາເວັນຕົກ

The uUnited States hoped to protect the Western hemisphere in case of war.

continent : ທະວີບ

Asia is the largest continent on earth.

dictator : ຜະເດັດການ

Hitler was a dictator during the Second World War.

unrest : ຄວາມບໍ່ສງົບ

The arms race caused a great deal of unrest in Europe.

Fascist Party : ພັກການເມືອງໃນປະເທດອິຕາລີຊຶ່ງແມ່ນ Mussolini ເປັນຫົວໜ້າ.

Benito Mussolini was the leader of Italian Fascist Party.

violate : ຝ່າຝືນ.

The Japanese violated the regulations of the League of the Nations when they invaded China in 1937.

League of Nations : ສະຫະພັນນາວຊາດ.

The U.S. Congress refused to sign the Versailles Treaty which established the League of Nations.

rearm : ສ້າງອາວຸດເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນ.

After World War I, Japan rearmed its forces.

cash and carry policy : ນະໂຍບາຍຂາຍອາວຸດໃຫ້ປະເທດໃດປະເທດນຶ່ງໂດຍການຈ່າຍສົດແລະຂົນເອງ

Britain bought many many weapons and supplies by the cash and carry policy.

dominate : ຄອບຄອງ

Germans invaded and dominated France in 1943.

destroyer : ເຮືອລົບ

The United States gave Great Britain 50 overaged destroyers.

Selective Service Act : ດຳຣັດເກນທະຫານ.

The Selective Service Act enabled the armed forces to draft recruits during peace time.

Nazi Party : ພັກການເມືອງໃນເຢຍຣະມັນຊຶ່ງແມ່ນ Hitler ເປັນຫົວໜ້າ.

The Nazir Party committed a great many crimes against the Jews.

READING

27.1 FOREIGN ECONOMIC POLICY AND THE GOOD NEIGHBOR POLICY

27.1.1. The Great Depression affected the entire world and the value of money decreased sharply worldwide. The leaders of many countries felt that monetary problems could be solved if all nations worked together. In 1933, representatives from over 60 countries met at the **World Economic Conference** in London. They hoped to find a way to stabilize world currencies in an effort to boost trade. Increased trade would help encourage worldwide economic recovery. However, because of actions taken by the United States, the conference failed to achieve the desired results. Shortly before the conference opened, the United States abandoned the gold standard. Therefore, President Roosevelt did not want to support the stabilization of currency in countries still on the gold standard. He only wanted to facilitate economic recovery by increasing international trade.

27.1.2. President Roosevelt and Secretary of State Cordell Hull agreed that one way to increase international trade would be to lower the tariff rates between nations. They were able to convince Congress, and the **Reciprocal Agreement Act** was passed in 1934. This act gave the President the right to lower tariff rates for nations that agreed to lower their rates for the United States. By 1937, the U.S. had made over 20 trade agreements with other countries based on this principle.

27.1.3. Between the end of the Spanish American war in 1898 and the end of World War I in 1918, the United States did not always treat **Latin American** countries fairly. During the 1920's, relations between the U.S. and Latin America continued to be inconsistent. When President Roosevelt took office, he wanted to change this unfair, inconsistent treatment. His policy became known as **"the good neighbor policy"**. This meant that those countries who respected the rights of others would be rewarded in two ways. First, the U.S. would not interfere in their internal affairs, and second, American trade to these countries would be increased. In 1938, representatives of countries in the **western hemisphere** met at the **Pan American conference** in Lima, Peru. They agreed to stand together and help each other in the event of a war.

27.2. THE RISE OF THE NEW DICTATORS AND THE BEGINNING OF THE SECOND WORLD WAR

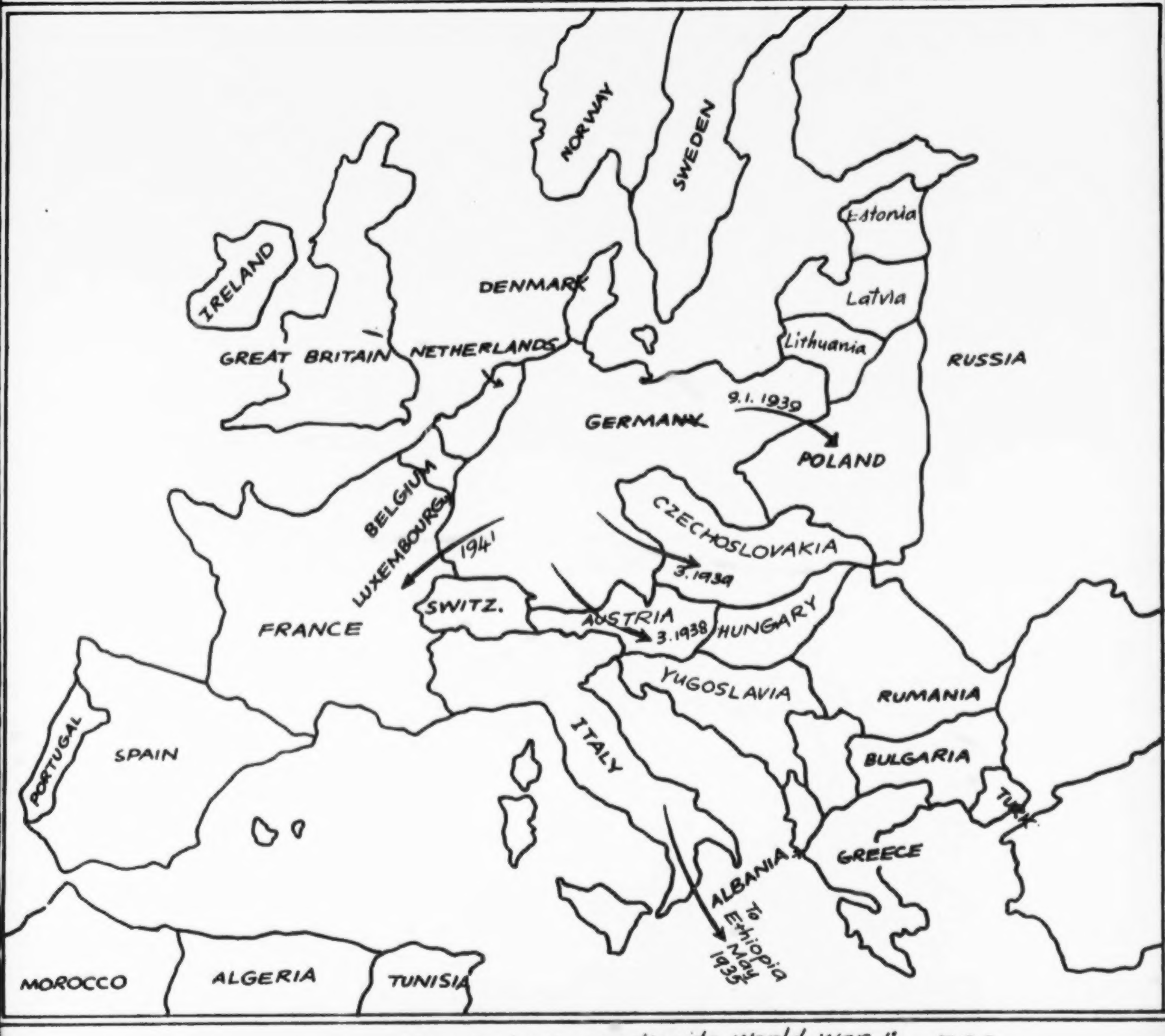
27.2.1. After World War I, people all over the world hoped that there would never be another war. However, two factors made a worldwide peace impossible. First, the Treaty of Versailles, which ended World War I, had created a lot of dissension among European nations. In addition, many European countries had been so heavily affected by the Depression that they wanted new leaders.

27.2.2. In 1923, Benito Mussolini, the leader of the **Fascist Party**, became the **dictator** in Italy. Ten years later, Adolf Hitler, the head of the **Nazi Party**, came to power in Germany. During that time, a group of Japanese army and naval officers took power in Japan. One of these officers was Uideki Tojo.

The leaders of these three countries were very much alike. They wanted the state to be all powerful and the central government to control everything. To curtail criticism, they ended all forms of freedom.

27.2.3. The foreign policies, as well as the domestic policies, of these three countries were very similar. From 1930 to 1940, Germany, Italy, and Japan all violated the peace treaty of Versailles and used force to take over neighboring countries. In 1931, Japan attacked Manchuria, a province of China. In 1935, Italian soldiers suddenly attacked and took over Ethiopia, a small country in Africa. At the same time, Germany was secretly rearming and rebuilding its armed forces. In 1936, Germany invaded Rhineland, the land between Germany and France. Also, in this year, Germany and Italy formed the military alliance known as the Rome-Berlin Axis. In 1938, Germany took over Austria, and Italy went to war with Albania. Many countries protested these invasions but they did nothing. In 1939, Germany invaded Czechoslovakia while, at the same time, Japan was putting all of its efforts into the war against China. World war could no longer be avoided. On September 1, 1939, Nazi forces suddenly attacked and invaded Poland. France and Great Britain, who were allies of Poland, declared war on Germany. The Second World War began.

27.2.4. During the first two years of World War II, the Axis forces of Germany and Italy controlled almost all of Europe and North Africa. In the Pacific, Japan controlled many


NORWAY
SWEDEN
Estonia
Latvia
Lithuania
RUSSIA
IRELAND
DENMARK
GREAT BRITAIN
NETHERLANDS
GERMANY
9.1.1939
POLAND
BELGIUM
LUXEMBOURG
1941
CZECHOSLOVAKIA
3.1939
SWITZ.
AUSTRIA
3.1938
HUNGARY
FRANCE
YUGOSLAVIA
RUMANIA
PORTUGAL
SPAIN
ITALY
BULGARIA
TURK.
ALBANIA
GREECE
To Ethiopia May 1935
MOROCCO
ALGERIA
TUNISIA

Aggressions Leading to World War II

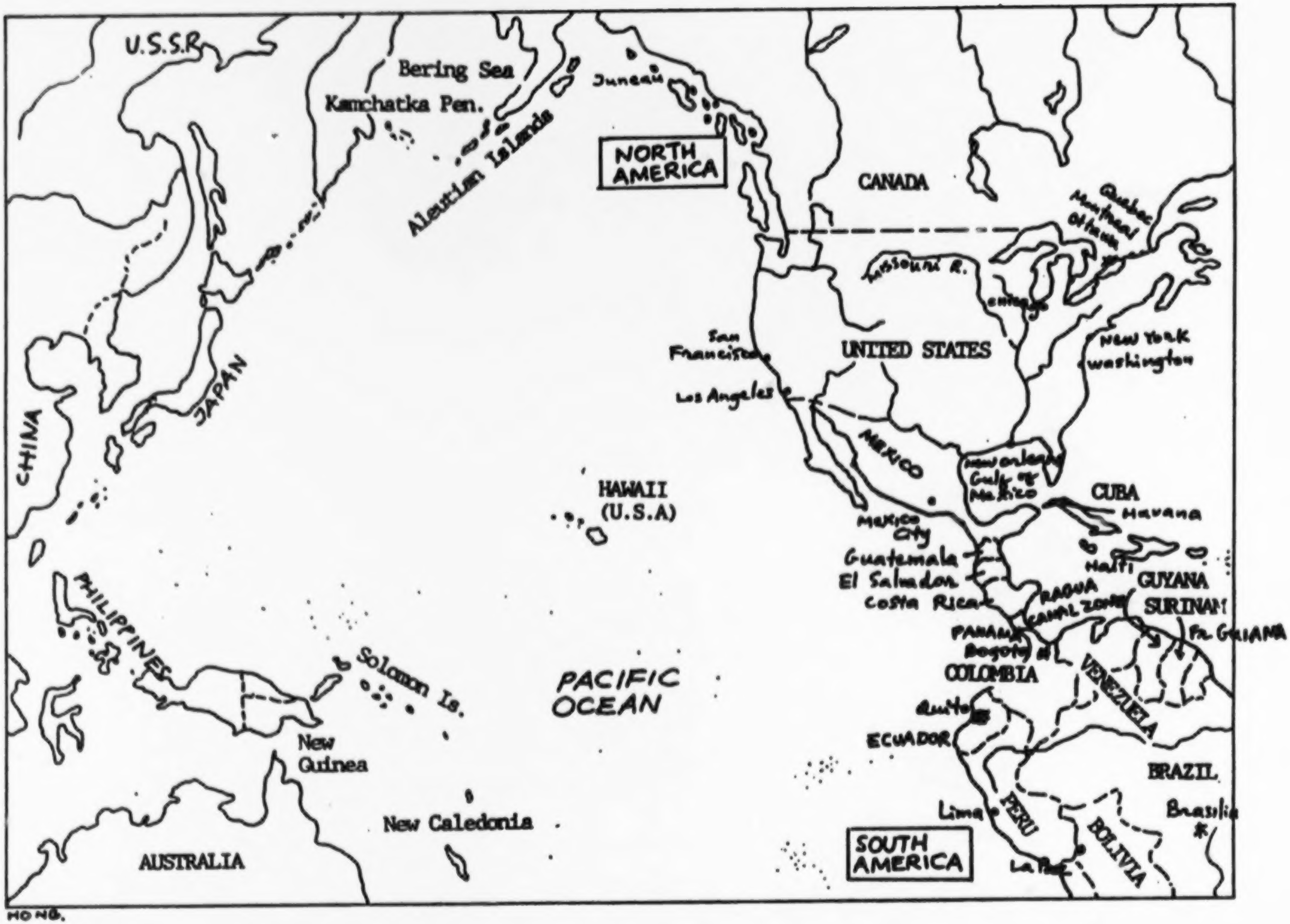
Chinese cities along the seacoast. Also, Japan was becoming a threat to all the countries in South East Asia and the islands in the South Pacific Ocean.

27.2.5. When the Second World War began, Congress passed many neutrality acts in an effort to help the U.S. remain neutral. These acts cut off all sales of weapons to the nations at war. However, in 1937, a new provision was added to the neutrality acts. It was called the **"cash and carry"** provision. This provision let the warring countries buy U.S. weapons if they paid cash and carried the goods by their own ships. The cash and carry provision helped the British by allowing them to obtain many things that they badly needed. In 1940, Great Britain stood alone in Europe against the Axis. Increasingly, the American people feared that the U.S. might be attacked by Germany or Japan.

27.3. THE ATTACK ON PEARL HARBOR: JAPAN AT WAR WITH THE U.S.

27.3.1. By 1940, Germany **dominated** Europe, and the U.S. began to prepare for war. In 1940, President Roosevelt gave Great Britain 50 old **destroyers** in return for many naval and air bases. In the same year, Congress passed the **Selective Service Act**.This was the first peacetime draft in U.S. history. In 1941, the Lend Lease Act was also passed. This act led to a greater production of war goods. In addition, the U.S. gave and sold a huge quantity of weapons to other countries whose defense was important to the defense of the United States.

27.3.2. As the war expanded, the relations between the U.S. and Japan became worse. The U.S. wanted to keep an open-door


U.S.S.R.
Bering Sea
Kamchatka Pen.
Aleutian Islands
Juneau
NORTH AMERICA
CANADA
Quebec
Montreal
Ottawa
Missouri R.
Chicago
UNITED STATES
New York
washington
San Francisco
Los Angeles
MEXICO
New orleans
Gulf of Mexico
CUBA
Havana
Haiti
Mexico City
Guatemala
El Salvador
Costa Rica
RAGUA
CANAL ZONE
PANAMA
Bogota
COLOMBIA
GUYANA
SURINAM
Fr. GUIANA
VENEZUELA
Quito
ECUADOR
BRAZIL
Brasilia
Lima
PERU
BOLIVIA
La Paz
SOUTH AMERICA
CHINA
JAPAN
HAWAII (U.S.A)
PHILIPPINES
Solomon Is.
PACIFIC OCEAN
New Guinea
New Caledonia
AUSTRALIA

HONG.

policy in China, but Japan did not agree. In an effort to weaken Japan's power, the U.S. cut off trade with Japan. Japanese leaders became very angry and prepared to attack the U.S.

27.3.3. On December 7, 1941, Japanese air and naval forces suddenly attacked Pearl Harbor, a U.S. naval base in Hawaii. Almost 2,500 American soldiers were killed and the Pacific Fleet was almost destroyed. On December 8, 1941, President Roosevelt asked Congress to declare war on Japan and the Congress agreed. Japan's allies, Germany and Italy, also declared war on the U.S. and at last the U.S. would begin fighting both in Europe and in the Pacific.

EXERCISES

I. Word Search Puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

REARM
HITLER
DOMINATE
FORCES
POLAND
WAR
PRINCIPLE
NAZI PARTY

CONTINENT
TOJO
CONFERENCE
NORTH AFRICA
FRANCE
GERMAN
TRADE
AMERICA

DESTROYER
ROME
ATTACK
FASCIST PARTY
JAPAN
UNREST
DICTATOR
PRINCIPLE

PRESIDENT ROOSEVELT
LEAGUE OF NATIONS
CASH AND CARRY
PAN AMERICAN
ECONOMIC CONFERENCE
GOOD NEIGHBOR POLICY
FOREIGN POLICY
CZECHOSLOVAKIA

A C O N V D E S T R O Y E R F R A N C E Y Y
F O R E I G N P O L I C Y U N R E S T T R A
C N E H O C A S H A N D C A R R Y X M O A T
A T A E L E A G U E O F N A T I O N S J T T
S I R F A S C I S T P A R T Y W O R L O E A
H N M T T D I C T A T O R T R A D E O N S C
A E N O E T A N I M O D P R I N C I P A L K
N N A L A I T N A M E R I C A H I T L E R F
D T Z E C O N O M I C C O N F E R E N C E O
C J I G O O D N E I G H B O R P O L I C Y R
A A P R E S I D E N T R O O S E V E L T I C
R P A N A M E R I C A N C O N F E R E N C E
R A R R F O R T M X O R P O L A N D A N D S
Y N T O O W A R I O A F R I C A G E R M A N
O E Y M L L A S N O R T H A F R I C A A N T
S S O E Y F C Z E C H O S L O V A K I A O X

II. True or False

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put a F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. The Great Depression affected the whole world and the value of money increased sharply.

____ 2. President Roosevelt and Secretary of State Cordell Hull wanted to see world trade increased.

____ 3. Until after World War I, the U.S. had always treated Latin American countries fairly.

____ 4. The Treaty of Versailles created a lot of unrest in European countries.

____ 5. In 1933, Benito Mussolini became the dictator in France.

____ 6. Hitler was the head of the Nazi Party in Germany.

____ 7. Undeki Tojo became Emperor of Japan.

____ 8. In 1931, Japan attacked Manchuria, a province of China.

____ 9. When Germany dominated Europe, the U.S. did not begin to prepare for war.

____10. On December 7, 1941, Japanese Air and Naval Forces suddenly attacked Pearl Harbor in Hawaii.

III. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A	B
____ 1. reciprocal tariff	a. A United States policy toward Latin America, involving respect and a pledge of non-intervention in the internal or external affairs of Latin America.
____ 2. Cordell Hull	b. United States would lower tariffs if other nations agreed to lower theirs.
____ 3. Axis Powers	c. Secretary of State, negotiated reciprocal tariff agreement.
____ 4. good neighbor policy	d. Germany, Italy, and Japan allies.
____ 5. foreign policy	e. To rule by superior authority or power.
____ 6. destroyer	f. The idea or plan behind a government's dealings with other nations.
____ 7. dominate	g. A small, fast warship armed

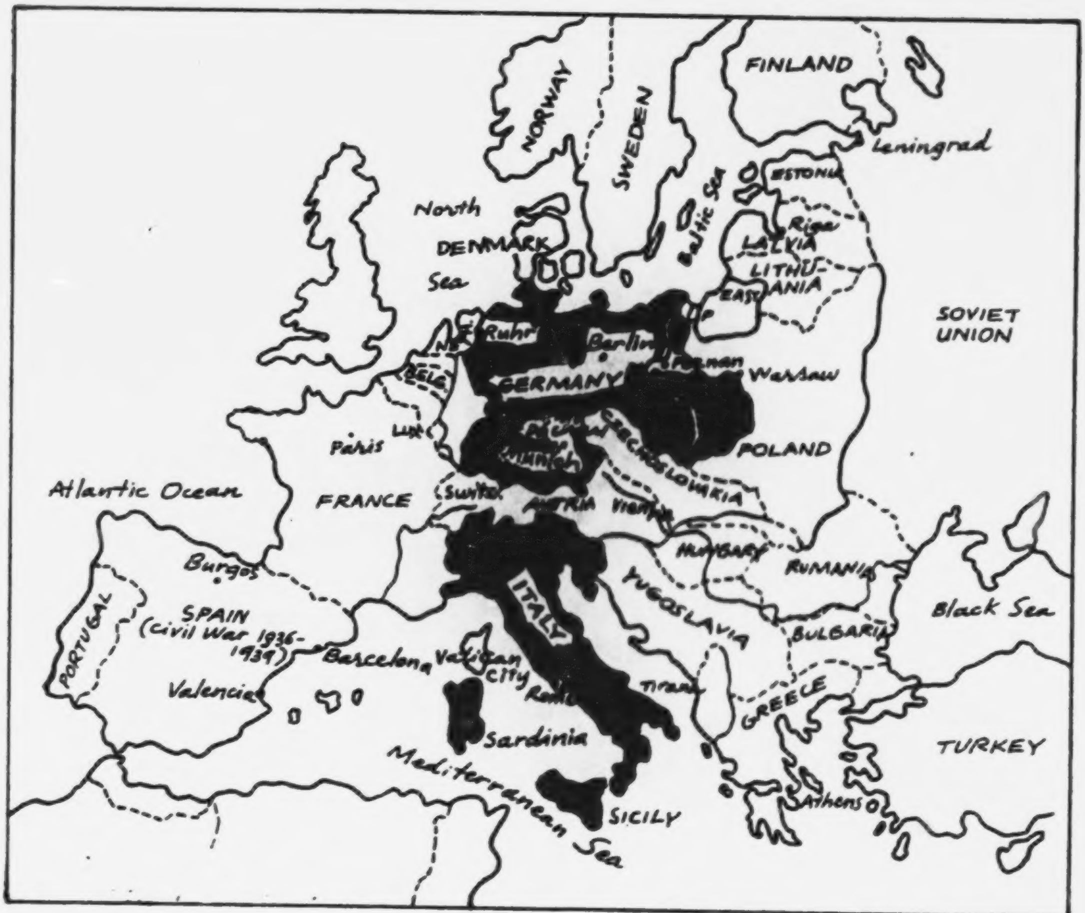
with guns, torpedos, and noted for its high maneuverability.

____ 8. Nazi Party h. The U.S. policy that let the warring countries buy U.S. weapons if they paid cash and carried the goods by their own ships.

____ 9. cash and carry i. The National Socialist German Workers' Party, founded in Germany in 1919 and brought to power in 1933 under Adolf Hitler.

IV. Map Work

Color the nations that were under the control of Germany and Italy during the World War II.


FINLAND
NORWAY
SWEDEN
Leningrad
ESTONIA
Baltic Sea
North Sea
DENMARK
Riga
LATVIA
LITHUANIA
EAST
SOVIET UNION
Ruhr
Berlin
Posnan
Warsaw
NE
BELG
GERMANY
LUX
Paris
Munich
CZECHOSLOVAKIA
POLAND
Atlantic Ocean
FRANCE
Switz.
AUSTRIA
Vienna
HUNGARY
RUMANIA
Burgos
SPAIN (Civil War 1936-1939)
PORTUGAL
ITALY
YUGOSLAVIA
Black Sea
BULGARIA
Barcelona
Vatican City
Valencia
Rome
Tirana
GREECE
TURKEY
Sardinia
Mediterranean Sea
SICILY
Athens

ບົດອ່ານ

໒໗.໑. ນະໂຍບາຍເສຖກິດຕ່າງປະເທດແລະນະໂຍບາຍຫຼາມິດກັບປະເທດໃກ້ຄຽງ

໒໗.໑.໑. ການຝືດເຄືອງດ້ານເສຖກິດຊຶ່ງໄດ້ມີທົ່ວກະທົບກະເທືອນທົ່ວທັງໂລກ ພ້ອມກັບເຮັດໃຫ້ຄ່າຂອງເງິນຕາຕົກລົງຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ. ຜູ້ນຳຂອງບັນດາປະເທດໃນໂລກເຫັນດີພ້ອມກັນວ່າຖ້າບັນດາປະເທດຫາກຮ່ວມມືກັນແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາກ່ຽວກັບເງິນຕາກໍ່ຕ້ອງໝົດໄປໄດ້. ດັ່ງນັ້ນໃນປີ ໑໙໓໓ ຜູ້ແທນຂອງປະເທດຕ່າງໆກວ່າ ໖໐ ປະເທດຈຶ່ງໄດ້ພາກັນເຂົ້າກອງປະຊຸມເສຖກິດຂອງໂລກ (The World Economic Conference) ຢູ່ທີ່ເມືອງ London ເຂົາເຈົ້າມີຈຸດປະສົງຊອກຫາຊ່ອງທາງເພື່ອເຮັດໃຫ້ສະພາບຂອງເງິນຕາໃນໂລກມີຄວາມໝັ້ນທ່ຽງເພື່ອ ສົ່ງເສີມການຄ້າລະຫວ່າງປະເທດແລະເພື່ອປົວແປງສະພາບເສຖກິດຂອງໂລກ. ໃນລະຍະເວລາບໍ່ນານກ່ອນການເປີດກອງປະຊຸມ ສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ລົບລ້າງການໃຊ້ຄຳເປັນການຄ້ຳປະກັນເງິນຕາ. ເຫດການດັ່ງກ່າວສະແດງໃຫ້ເຫັນວ່າປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ບໍ່ມີຄວາມປະສົງໃຫ້ປະເທດຕ່າງໆທີ່ໃຊ້ຄຳເປັນການຄ້ຳປະກັນເງິນຕາຢູ່ນັ້ນຊ່ອຍແກ້ໄຂການໝັ້ນທ່ຽງເງິນຕາຂອງໂລກ. ຈຸດປະສົງຂອງທ່ານມີພຽງແຕ່ຢາກແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາເສຖກິດຝືດເຄືອງເທົ່ານັ້ນໂດຍເພີ່ມພູນການຄ້າລະຫວ່າງປະເທດເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ກອງປະຊຸມຈຶ່ງເກີດລົ້ມເຫຼວ.

໒໗.໑.໒. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ແລະລັດຖະມົນຕີກະຊວງຕ່າງປະເທດທ່ານ Cordell Hull ປາຖະໜາຢາກໃຫ້ການຄ້າລະດັບໂລກມີການຂະຫຍາຍຕົວອອກ. ເພາະທ່ານທັງສອງເຊື່ອວ່າການລຸດພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າໃນປະເທດຕ່າງໆນັ້ນຈະສາມາດຊ່ອຍໃຫ້ການຄ້າລະຫວ່າງປະເທດດີຂຶ້ນ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໔ ສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳລັດ Reciprocal Agreement Act. ດຳລັດດັ່ງກ່າວອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ປະທານາທິບໍດີມີສິດລຸດພາສີສິນຄ້າຂາເຂົ້າໃຫ້ແກ່ປະເທດທີ່ປະຕິບັດໃນທຳນອງດຽວກັນກັບສະຫະລັດ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໗ ສະຫະລັດໄດ້ເຮັດສັນຍາການຄ້າກັບປະເທດອື່ນໆຊຶ່ງຍຶດຫຼັກການດຽວກັນກວ່າ ໒໐ ຄັ້ງ.

໒໗.໑.໓. ແຕ່ໃດມາຈົນເຖິງສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີໜຶ່ງສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ປະຕິບັດນະໂຍບາຍແບບບໍ່ຄ່ອຍເປັນທັມເທົ່າໃດກັບປະເທດຕ່າງໆໃນອະເມຣິກາໃຕ້. ສະນັ້ນເວລາທີ່ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ເຂົ້າຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງທ່ານຈຶ່ງມີຄວາມປະສົງດັດແປງນະໂຍບາຍດັ່ງກ່າວ. ນະໂຍບາຍຂອງທ່ານຮູ້ກັນໃນນາມ "ນະໂຍບາຍຫຼາມິດກັບປະເທດໃກ້ຄຽງ" ຊຶ່ງໝາຍເຖິງວ່າສຳລັບປະເທດໃກ້ຄຽງປະເທດໃດປະເທດໜຶ່ງ

ນັບຖືສິດທິຂອງປະເທດອື່ນແລ້ວສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາຈະບໍ່ແຊກແຊງກິດຈະການພາຍໃນຂອງປະເທດນັ້ນ ພ້ອມກັບມີຄວາມປະສົງທີ່ຈະເພີ່ມການຄ້າກັບປະເທດນັ້ນອີກດ້ວຍ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ພວກຜູ້ແທນຈາກປະເທດຕ່າງໆ ໃນຊີກໂລກຕາເວັນຕົກຈຶ່ງໄດ້ພົບປະກັນຢູ່ທີ່ເມືອງ Lima ປະເທດ Peru ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໘. ກອງປະຊຸມດັ່ງກ່າວເອີ້ນວ່າ The Pan American Conference. ປະເທດຕ່າງໆເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ຕົກລົງຮ່ວມມືກັນຕໍ່ຕ້ານສົງຄາມໃນສ່ວນນີ້ຂອງໂລກ.

໖ກ.໔. ການລຸກຂຶ້ນຂອງຜະເດັດການພວກໃໝ່ແລະການເລີ່ມຕົ້ນຂອງສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງ

໖ກ.໔.໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ໜຶ່ງຜ່ານພົ້ນໄປແລ້ວປະຊາຊົນທົ່ວໂລກຄິດວ່າສົງຄາມຈະບໍ່ເກີດຂຶ້ນໄດ້ອີກຕໍ່ໄປພ້ອມດຽວກັນເຂົາເຈົ້າຄິດວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າຄົງຈະໄດ້ຢູ່ຢ່າງສັນຕິສຸກ. ແຕ່ສົນທິສັນຍາ Versailles ນັ້ນໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ເກີດມີຄວາມບໍ່ສົງບຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍປະການໃນປະເທດຕ່າງໆໃນຢູໂຣບຊຶ່ງໄດ້ຮັບການກະທົບກະເທືອນຍ້ອນສະພາບເສຖກິດຝືດເຄືອງ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ປະຊາຊົນຢູໂຣບຈຶ່ງມີຄວາມຕ້ອງການຜູ້ນຳໃໝ່.

໖ກ.໔.໒. ໃນປີ ໑໙໒໒ ທ່ານ Benito Mussolini ຜູ້ນຳຂອງພັກ Fascist Party ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນຜະເດັດການໃນປະເທດອີຕາລີ. ສິບປີຕໍ່ມາ Hitler ໄດ້ຂຶ້ນຄອງອຳນາດໃນປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນ. Hitler ແມ່ນຫົວໜ້າຂອງພັກ Nazi Party ໃນຣະຫວ່າງນັ້ນຢູ່ໃນປະເທດຍີ່ປຸ່ນນາຍທະຫານກຸ່ມໜຶ່ງໄດ້ຍຶດກຳອຳນາດ. ໃນປະມວນນາຍທະຫານເຫຼົ່ານີ້ແມ່ນທ່ານ Hideki Tojo ຄວາມຈິງແລ້ວຣັຖບານຂອງປະເທດຕ່າງໆທີ່ກ່າວມານີ້ມີຄວາມຄ້າຍຄືກັນທີ່ສຸດຄືວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ປະເທດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າມີອຳນາດຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນແລະຣັຖບານກາງເປັນຜູ້ດຳເນີນການທຸກຢ່າງ. ເພື່ອຫຼີກລ້ຽງການຕິຕຽນໂຈມຕີໃດໆທັງສິ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງທຳລາຍອິສຣະພາບທຸກຢ່າງ. ນອກຈາກນີ້ຜູ້ນຳຂອງປະເທດດັ່ງກ່າວຍັງໃຊ້ກຳລັງເພື່ອຍຶດປະເທດໃກ້ຄຽງຂອງຕົນ.

໖ກ.໔.໓. ຈາກປີ ໑໙໓໐ ຫາປີ ໑໙໔໐ ປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນ ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ ແລະ ອີຕາລີ ໄດ້ຝ່າຝືນສົນທິສັນຍາສັນຕິພາບ. ຕົວຢ່າງໃນປີ ໑໙໓໑ ປະເທດຍີ່ປຸ່ນໄດ້ໂຈມຕີ Manchuria ຊຶ່ງເປັນແຂວງໜຶ່ງຂອງປະເທດຈີນ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໕ ກອງທັບຂອງອີຕາລີໄດ້ຍຶດປະເທດ Ethiopia ຢູ່ໃນ Africa ຢ່າງກະທັນຫັນ. ຕໍ່ການກະທຳຂອງປະເທດເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ມີຫຼາຍປະເທດທຳການປະທ້ວງແຕ່ບໍ່ມີການລົງມືເໜັງຕີງແຕ່ປະການໃດ. ເມື່ອຮູ້ວ່າສະຫະພັນນາໆຊາດ (The League of Nations) ມີຄວາມ

ອ່ອນແອ ປະເທດເຢຣະມັນຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຕັ້ງກອງທັບພ້ອມກັບສ້າງອາວຸດຂຶ້ນຢ່າງລັບໆ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໖ ເຢຣະມັນຮຸກລານ Rhineland ຊຶ່ງເປັນແດນທີ່ຢູ່ລະຫວ່າງປະເທດເຢຣະມັນແລະຝຣັ່ງເສດ. ໃນປີດຽວກັນປະເທດເຢຣະມັນແລະອີຕາລີໄດ້ປະກອບພັນທະມິດທາງທະຫານຂຶ້ນມີຊື່ວ່າ The Rome-Berlin Axis. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໘ ປະເທດເຢຣະມັນຍຶດຄອງປະເທດ Austria ແລະປະເທດອີຕາລີໄດ້ເຮັດເສິກກັບປະເທດ Albania. ຫຼາຍປະເທດໄດ້ປະທ້ວງການຮຸກລານດັ່ງກ່າວແຕ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍ່ບໍ່ໄດ້ລົງໄມ້ລົງມືຫຍັງອີກ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໙ ເຢຣະມັນຮຸກລານປະເທດ Czechoslovakia ແລະໃນຣະຍະດຽວກັນຍີ່ປຸ່ນສົ່ງກຳລັງທັງໝົດເຂົ້າໂຈມຕີປະເທດຈີນ. ໃນວັນທີ ໑ ເດືອນກັນຍາ ໑໙໓໙ ກຳລັງຂອງພວກ Nazi ໄດ້ໂຈມຕີແລະຮຸກລານປະເທດ Poland ຢ່າງກະທັນຫັນ. ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ ແລະ ອັງກິດ ເຂົ້າຂ້າງປະເທດ Poland ດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງປະກາດສົງຄາມກັບເຢຣະມັນຊຶ່ງເປັນເຫດໃຫ້ສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີສອງເກີດຂຶ້ນ.

໖ກ.໔.໔. ໃນສອງປີຕົ້ນ ກຳລັງຂອງເບຣະມັນແລະອີຕາລີຍຶດຄອງຢູໂຣບແລະອາຟຣິກາເໜືອເກືອບທັງໝົດ. ໃນມະຫາສມຸດ ປາຊີຟິກ ຍີປຸ່ນ ຍຶດຄອງຫົວເມືອງຂອງຈີນຕາມແຄມທະເລຫຼາຍຫົວເມືອງດ້ວຍກັນ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນຍີ່ປຸ່ນຍັງເປັນອັນຕະລາຍຕໍ່ປະເທດທັງໝົດໃນເອເຊັຍຕາເວັນອອກໄກແລະຕໍ່ໝູ່ເກາະຕ່າງໆໃນມະຫາສມຸດປາຊີຟິກຕອນໃຕ້.

໖ກ.໔.໕. ໃນເວລາທີ່ສົງຄາມໂລກເລີ່ມຂຶ້ນນັ້ນ ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມຮັກສາຄວາມເປັນກາງເອົາໄວ້. ສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳຣັດກ່ຽວກັບຄວາມເປັນກາງຫຼາຍສະບັບດ້ວຍກັນ ເພື່ອຕັດການຂາຍອາວຸດຕ່າງໆໃຫ້ແກ່ປະເທດທີ່ທຳສົງຄາມ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໙ ສະພາໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂໍ້ກົດໝາຍໃສ່ໃນດຳຣັດແຫ່ງຄວາມເປັນກາງ. ຂໍ້ກົດໝາຍດັ່ງກ່າວເອີ້ນວ່າ The cash and carry provision ຊຶ່ງມີຄວາມໝາຍວ່າສະຫະຣັຖຈະອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ປະເທດທີ່ທຳສົງຄາມຕ່າງໆຢູ່ນັ້ນຊື້ອາວຸດຈາກສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຖ້າຫາກປະເທດເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນຈ່າຍເງິນສົດແລະໃຊ້ເຮືອບັນທຸກຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງສຳຫຼັບຂົນສົ່ງຂອງທີ່ຊື້ໄປ. ກົດໝາຍໃໝ່ນີ້ໄດ້ຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ປະເທດອັງກິດມີໂອກາດຊື້ເອົາເຄື່ອງຂອງທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າມີຄວາມຕ້ອງການຢູ່ຫຼາຍຢ່າງ. ສະນັ້ນໃນປີ ໑໙໔໐ ປະເທດອັງກິດ ຈຶ່ງເປັນປະເທດດຽວໃນຢູໂຣບທີ່ລຸກຂຶ້ນສູ້ກັບເຢຣະມັນແລະອີຕາລີ. ປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນເກີດມີຄວາມຢ້ານກົວວ່າສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາອາດຈະໂຈມຕີເຢຣະມັນ ຫຼື ຍີ່ປຸ່ນໄດ້.

໖ກ.໕. ການໂຈມຕີ Pearl Harbor ຍີ່ປຸ່ນທຳສົງຄາມກັບສະຫະຣັຖ

໒ກ.໓.໑. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງທີ່ເຢຣະມັນຄອບຄອງຢູໂຣບຢູ່ນັ້ນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ເລີ່ມທຳການຕຽມຕົວເພື່ອເຂົ້າສົງຄາມ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໔໐ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ໄດ້ມອບກຳປັ່ນລົບເກົ່າໃຫ້ແກ່ປະເທດອັງກິດເພື່ອເປັນການແລກປ່ຽນກັບທ່າເຮືອແລະຖານທັບອາກາດຂອງອັງກິດ. ໃນປີດຽວກັນສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳຣັດເກນທະຫານເປັນຄັ້ງແຣກໃນປະວັດສາດ. ດຳຣັດດັ່ງກ່າວມີຊື່ວ່າ The Selective Service Act. ຕໍ່ມາໃນປີ ໑໙໔໑ ສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳຣັດ The Lend and Lease Act ຕື່ມອີກ. ຍ້ອນດຳຣັດສະບັບນີ້ເອງສະຫະຣັຖຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຜລິດອຸປກອນສົງຄາມຂື້ນຢ່າງມະຫາສານ. ນອກຈາກນີ້ສະຫະຣັຖຍັງໄດ້ມອບແລະຂາຍອາວຸດຈຳນວນໃຫຍ່ຫລວງໃຫ້ແກ່ປະເທດຕ່າງໆຊຶ່ງການສູ້ລົບມີຜົນປະໂຍດແກ່ການປ້ອງກັນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

໒ກ.໓.໒. ເມື່ອສົງຄາມຂຍາຍຕົວອອກໄປຄວາມສັມພັນຣະຫວ່າງສະຫະຣັຖແລະຍີ່ປຸ່ນຈຶ່ງມີຄວາມຕຶງຄຽດຍິ່ງຂຶ້ນ. ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາຕ້ອງການຮັກສາໃຫ້ມີນະໂຍບາຍເປີດກວ້າງກັບປະເທດຈີນ ແຕ່ຍີ່ປຸ່ນບໍ່ເຫັນດີກັບການກະທຳຂອງສະຫະຣັຖ. ເພື່ອເປັນການຫ່ວງດຶງການບຸກໂຈມຕີຂອງຍີ່ປຸ່ນ ສະຫະຣັຖຈຶ່ງຕັດການຄ້າກັບຍີ່ປຸ່ນຊຶ່ງມາໃຫ້ຜູ້ນຳຂອງຍີ່ປຸ່ນເກີດບໍ່ພໍໃຈເປັນທີ່ສຸດ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ຍີ່ປຸ່ນຈຶ່ງຕຽມທີ່ຈະໂຈມຕີສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

໒ກ.໓.໓. ໃນວັນທີ ໗ ທັນວາ ໑໙໔໑ ກອງທັບອາກາດແລະກອງທັບເຮືອຂອງຍີ່ປຸ່ນໄດ້ໂຈມຕີ Pearl Harbor ໃນ Hawaii ຢ່າງກະທັນຫັນຊຶ່ງພາໃຫ້ທະຫານອະເມຣິກັນເກືອບ ໒໔໐໐ ຄົນເສັຍຊີວິດແລະພາໃຫ້ເຮືອລົບຂອງອະເມຣິກັນໃນສມຸດ ປາຊີຟິກ ເກືອບທັງໝົດຖືກທຳລາຍ. ໃນວັນທີ ໘ ທັນວາ ໑໙໔໑ ປະທານາທິບໍດີໄດ້ຮຽກຮ້ອງໃຫ້ສະພາປະກາດສົງຄາມກັບຍີ່ປຸ່ນຊຶ່ງສະພາໄດ້ຕົກລົງເຫັນດີ. ໃນຂະນະນັ້ນເຢຣະມັນແລະອີຕາລີກໍໄດ້ປະກາດສົງຄາມກັບສະຫະຣັຖເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ. ໃນທີ່ສຸດສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາກໍໄດ້ເຂົ້າຮ່ວມໃນສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງ.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດອ້ອມສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບທັ້ງ ກາວຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບນັ້ນແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຶ້ນເອົາໄວ້ ພ້ອມດ້ວຍຄວາມ ໝາຍ ຫຼື ຄຳອະທິບາຍ.

REARM
HITLER
DOMINATE
FORCES
POLAND
WAR
PRINCIPLE
NAZI PARTY
CONTINENT
TOJO
CONFERENCE
NORTH AFRICA
FRANCE
GERMAN
TRADE
AMERICA
DESTROYER
ROME
ATTACK
FASCIST PARTY
JAPAN
UNREST
DICTATOR
PRINCIPLE
PRESIDENT ROOSEVELT
LEAGUE OF NATIONS
CASH AND CARRY
PAN AMERICAN
ECONOMIC CONFERENCE
GOOD NEIGHBOR POLICY
FOREIGN POLICY
CZECHOSLOVAKIA

A C O N V D E S T R O Y E R F R A N C E Y Y
F O R E I G N P O L I C Y U N R E S T T R A
C N E H O C A S H A N D C A R R Y X M O A T
A T A E L E A G U E O F N A T I O N S J T T
S I R F A S C I S T P A R T Y W O R L O E A
H N M T T D I C T A T O R T R A D E O N S C
A E N O E T A N I M O D P R I N C I P A L K
N N A L A I T N A M E R I C A H I T L E R F
D T Z E C O N O M I C C O N F E R E N C E O
C J I G O O D N E I G H B O R P O L I C Y R
A A P R E S I D E N T R O O S E V E L T I C
R P A N A M E R I C A N C O N F E R E N C E
R A R R F O R T M X O R P O L A N D A N D S
Y N T O O W A R I O A F R I C A G E R M A N
O E Y M L L A S N O R T H A F R I C A A N T
S S O E Y F C Z E C H O S L O V A K I A O X

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຊອກຫາສັບ : (ເບິ່ງຕາມພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. ຖືກ ຫຼື ຜິດ :
ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກ ແລ້ວໝາຍອັກສອນ T ໃສ່ຕໍ່ໜ້າປະໂຍກທີ່ທ່ານເຫັນວ່າຖືກ ແລະ ໝາຍອັກສອນ F ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກປະໂຍກນັ້ນຜິດ.

_____ ໑. ການຝືດເຄືອງດ້ານເສດຖະກິດຄັ້ງໃຫຍ່ມີຜົນກະທົບກະເທືອນທົ່ວທັງໂລກ ພ້ອມກັບເຮັດໃຫ້ຄ່າຂອງເງິນຕາເພີ່ມສູງຂຶ້ນຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ.

_____ ໒. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ແລະ ລັຖມົນຕຣີກະຊວງການຕ່າງປະເທດ ທ່ານ Cordell Hull ຕ້ອງການຢາກໃຫ້ການຄ້າຂອງໂລກຂະຫຍາຍຕົວອອກ.

_____ ໓. ຈົນເຖິງສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ນຶ່ງ ສະຫະລັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ປະຕິບັດນະໂຍບາຍແບບເປັນທັມກັບປະເທດຕ່າງໆໃນອະເມຣິກາໃຕ້.

_____ ໔. ສົນທິສັນຍາ Versailles ໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ເກີດມີຄວາມບໍ່ສງົບຂຶ້ນໃນປະເທດຕ່າງໆໃນຢູໂຣບ.

_____ ໕. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໓ ທ່ານ Benito Mussolini ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນພະເດັດການໃນປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ.

_____ ໖. Hitler ເປັນຫົວໜ້າພັກ Nazi Party ໃນປະເທດເຢຍລະມັນ.

_____ ໗. Unideki Tojo ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນພະເຈົ້າຈັກກະພັດຂອງປະເທດຍີ່ປຸ່ນ.

_____ ໘. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໑ ປະເທດຍີປຸ່ນໄດ້ໂຈມຕີ Manchuria ຊຶ່ງເປັນແຂວງນຶ່ງຂອງປະເທດຈີນ.

_____ ໙. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງ ເຢຣະມັນ ຄອບຄອງຢູໂຣບນັ້ນ ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ບໍ່ໄດ້ຕຽມຕົວເພື່ອເຂົ້າສົງຄາມ.

_____ ໑໐. ໃນວັນທີ ໗ ທັນວາ ໑໙໔໑ ກອງທັບອາກາດ ແລະ ກອງທັບເຮືອ ຂອງຍີປຸ່ນ ໄດ້ໂຈມຕີ Pearl Harbor ໃນ Hawaii ຢ່າງກະທັນຫັນ.

໓. ການປະກອບສັບ ແລະ ຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັນ :
ຈົ່ງຈັດຄຳເວົ້າແຕ່ລະຄຳໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໂດຍຂຽນຄຳຕອບຊຶ່ງເປັນໂຕເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ປະໄວ້ນັ້ນ ສຳຫຼັບຄຳຕອບທຸກຄຳ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ໑. Reciprocal Tariff	ກ. ນະໂຍບາຍຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາກ່ຽວກັບການນັບຖືແລະປະຕິຍານບໍ່ແຊກແຊງກິດຈະການພາຍໃນແລະຕ່າງປະເທດຂອງອະເມຣິກາໃຕ້.
_____ ໒. Cordell Hull	ຂ. ສະຫະຣັຖຈະລຸດພາສີການຄ້າລົງຖ້າຫາກປະເທດອື່ນໆຕົກລົງຈະລຸດພາສີຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າລົງເຊັ່ນກັນ.
_____ ໓. Axis Power	ຄ. ຣັຖມົນຕຣີກະຊວງການຕ່າງປະເທດຜູ້ທີ່ທຳການຕົກລົງກ່ຽວກັບການລຸດພາສີຣະຫວ່າງປະເທດ.

_____ ໔. ນະໂຍບາຍຜູກມິດກັບປະເທດໃກ້ຄຽງ

_____ ໕. ນະໂຍບາຍຕ່າງປະເທດ

_____ ໖. Destroyer

_____ ໗. ຄອບຄອງ

_____ ໘. Nazi Party

_____ ໙. ສະຫະພັນນາໆຊາດ

_____ ໑໐. Cash and Carry

ງ. ປະເທດພັນທະມິດອັນປະກອບດ້ວຍປະເທດ
ເຢຍລະມັນ, ອີຕາລີ ແລະ ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ.

ຈ. ອົງການຈັດຕັ້ງຂອງໂລກຊຶ່ງຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນຫຼັງຈາກ
ສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີໜຶ່ງເພື່ອຮັກສາຄວາມສງົບ.

ສ. ຄວາມຄິດແລະແຜນການຂອງຣັຖບານໃນການ
ຕິດຕໍ່ກັບປະເທດອື່ນໆ.

ຊ. ເຮືອລົບຂນາດນ້ອຍແລະມີຄວາມໄວຕິດອາວຸດ.

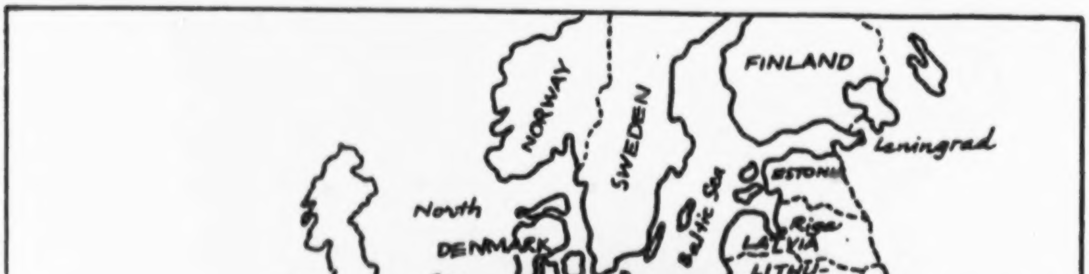
ຍ. ນະໂຍບາຍຂອງສະຫະຣັຖທີ່ອະນຸຍາດໃຫ້ປະເທດ
ທີ່ທຳສົງຄາມ ຊື້ອາວຸດຈາກສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຖ້າຫາກປະ
ເທດຕ່າງໆເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນຫາກຈ່າຍເງິນສົດແລະບັນ
ທຸກສິນຄ້າເອົາເອງ.

ດ. ການຄອງອຳນາດຈາກຜູ້ທີ່ມີອຳນາດ.

ຕ. ພັກການເມືອງໃນເຢຍລະມັນ ຊຶ່ງແມ່ນ Hitler
ເປັນຫົວໜ້າ.

໔. ຕັດໃສ່ສີແຜນທີ່

ໃຫ້ໃສ່ສີປະເທດທີ່ຢູ່ພາຍໃຕ້ການຄຸ້ມຄອງຂອງປະເທດ ເຢຣະມັນ ແລະ ອິຕາລີ ໃນສມັຍສົງຄາມໂລກ ຄັ້ງທີ່ ໒.


FINLAND
NORWAY
SWEDEN
Leningrad
ESTONIA
North
DENMARK
Sea
Baltic Sea
Riga
LATVIA
LITHUANIA
EAST
SOVIET UNION
Ruhr
Berlin
Poznan
Warsaw
BELG
GERMANY
LUX
Paris
Munich
CZECHOSLOVAKIA
POLAND
Atlantic Ocean
FRANCE
Switz
AUSTRIA
Vienna
HUNGARY
ROMANIA
Burgos
YUGOSLAVIA
ITALY
Black Sea
PORTUGAL
SPAIN
(Civil War 1936-1939)
Barcelona
Vatican City
BULGARIA
Valencia
Tirana
Rome
GREECE
Sardinia
TURKEY
Mediterranean Sea
Athens
SICILY

ພາກ ໒໑ : ສະຫະລັດອະເມລິກາແລະສົງຄາມໂລກ
ຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງ

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ

United Nations Declarations: ຄຳປະກາດຂອງສະຫະປະຊາຊາດ

On January 1, 1941 representatives from 26 countries signed the United Nations Declaration.

The Big Three: ໝາຍເຖິງສະຫະລັດອະເມລິກາ, ອັງກິດ, ແລະ ຣັສເຊັຍ

The U.S.A., Great Britain, and Russia were known as the Big Three.

allies: ປະເທດພັນທະມິດ

liberate: ປົດປ່ອຍ

The allies liberated France in 1941.

advance: ການເຄື່ອນທີ່

In North Africa, the British army stopped the advance of the Axis forces on their way to Egypt.

combined forces: ກຳລັງທະຫານປະສົມ

The U.S. and Great Britain combined forces to crush the German forces in North Africa.

mountain s areas: ເຂດພື້ນພູຜາ

Germans soldiers were still fighting in the mountainous areas of Northern Italy until the end of the war.

invasion: ການລຸກລານ

The German invasion of Poland led to the start of World War II.

operation: ການປະຕິບັດງານ

During World War II, General Dwight Eisenhower was the commander of Operation Overlord in Europe.

V.E. Day: ໝາຍເຖິງມື້ສຸດທ້າຍຂອງສົງຄາມໃນຢູໂຣບ

The last day of war in Europe was called V.E. Day.

Coral Sea: ຊື່ຂອງຍ່ານທະເລ

The British and American Navies defeated the Japanese Navy in the Coral Sea.

leapfrog strategy: ຍຸດທະສາດພິເສດຂອງປະເທດພັນທະມິດ

The allies used a special strategy, the leapfrog strategy, to win back the islands under Japanese control.

step up: ເພີ່ມ

Japanese armies stepped up their invasion in Manchuria.

ultimatum: ຄຳຂາດ

President Truman sent an ultimatum to the Japanese government.

atomic bomb: ລະເບີດປະລາມະນູ

The first atomic bomb was dropped on Hiroshima, Japan in 1945.

damage: ການເສັຍຫາຍ

The damage caused by the Second World War was tremendous, and 10 million civilians were left homeless.

civilian: ພົນລະເຮືອນ

homeless: ບໍ່ມີບ່ອນພັກພາອາໃສ

Jews: ຄົນຢິວ

Six million of Jews had been murdered by the Nazis in the concentration camps.

concentration camp: ຄ້າຍກັກຂັງນັກໂທດການເມືອງ

post war era: ສໄມຫລັງສົງຄາມ

The United Nations helped many European countries during the post war era.

United Nations: ສະຫະປະຊາຊາດ

Atlantic Charter: ກົດບັດເພື່ອສ້າງສັນຕິພາບໃນໂລກ

President Roosevelt and Prime Minister Churchill signed the Atlantic Charter in 1941.

General Assembly: ສະມັດຊາແຫ່ງສະຫະປະຊາຊາດ

The two major bodies of the United Nations are the General Assembly and the Security Council.

Security Council: ສະພາຄວາມໝັ້ນຄົງແຫ່ງສະຫະປະຊາຊາດ

permanent member: ສະມາຊິກຖາວອນ

The permanent members of the Security Council are the U.S.A., Great Britain, China, France, and Russia.

opposing blocs: ກຸ່ມທີ່ຄັດຄ້ານຜູ້ຕ້ານກັນ

There are two opposing bloc in the owrld today, the Free World and the Communist Bloc.

Cold War: ສົງຄາມເຢັນ

Differences between these two bbocs have caused many problems during the Cold War era.

READING

28.1. THE U.S. AND THE ALLIES

28.1.1. After the U.S. declared war on Japan, Germany, and Italy, it appeared that countries from all over the world were involved in the war. Battlefields spread from Asia to Europe and from the Atlanic Ocean to the Pacific Ocean. Both sides tried to get more allies to help them fight the war.

28.1.2. On the first day of January 1941, representatives from 26 countries signed the **United Nations Declaration.** This declaration said that all these nations agreed to use their forces and their resources to fight the Axis. The declaration also reaffirmed that none of them would sign a separate peace treaty with the Axis. All 26 of these nations became the members of the Allies. The three biggest countries, the U.S.A., Great Britain, and Russia, were called **the Big Three.** These countries gave help and many supplies to their allies during the war.

28.1.3. At the beginning of 1942, the allies agreed with each other on a common military plan. This plan established Europe

534

as the major and most important target. President Roosevelt and Prime Minister Churchill also believed that Germany was the main threat to world peace. All other Allied countries also agreed that Germany must be defeated first. As a result, the Allies put their major effort into fighting Germany. At the same time they also tried to slow down the gains of Japan in the Pacific Ocean. When Germany and Italy were finally defeated, the Allies were able to use all their forces to defeat Japan.

28.2. LIBERATING EUROPE

28.2.1. By the end of 1941, Germany controlled most of Eastern, Central and Western Europe. But in 1942 the war began to go better for the Allies when their troops started to win some victories. In North Africa, the British Army had stopped the advance of the Axis forces on their way to Egypt at Al Alamein. Some weeks later, the combined forces of British and American troops landed in North Africa and took control of this area. Within 6 months, the Axis forces in North Africa had totally surrendered. At the end of 1942, German forces invading Russia were stopped at Leningrad. The Russians defeated the Germans and held almost all of the German soldiers as prisoners. The victories at Al Alamein and Leningrad were the turning point of the war in Europe.

28.2.2. The situation continued to improve for the Allies. By the end of 1943, the Axis armies were wiped out in North

Africa, Italy, and Russia. Italy surrendered in September 1943, but German soldiers continued fighting in the mountainous areas in Northern Italy until the end of the war.

28.2.3. By 1944, the Allied forces in England were ready to cross the British Channel to invade Europe. This invasion was called Operation Overlord. U.S. General Dwight D. Eisenhower, the Commander-in-Chief of the Allies in Europe, directed this operation. On D-Day, or June 6, 1944, about 200,000 allied soldiers landed on the seacoast of Normandy, France. By April 1945, the German armies were trapped between two forces. From the East, the Russians were moving toward Berlin, and from the West, the Allies were moving in after crossing the Rhine River. Germany surrendered on May 8, 1945. This victory was called V-E. Day, or Victory in Europe Day.

28.3. DEFEATING THE JAPANESE

28.3.1. When the war ended in Europe, the Allies put all of their forces together in an effort to defeat Japan. The early battles on the Pacific front had not gone well for the Allied forces. By the middle of 1942, the Japanese controlled all the islands in the Pacific Ocean and the Japanese Navy was beginning to threaten Australia. In an effort to stop this Japanese advance toward Australia, the U.S. Navy and the Allies fought an important naval battle in the Coral Sea and destroyed almost all the Japanese warships. In June, 1942, the Allies were again victorious at the Battle of Midway. This victory proved to be the turning point of the Pacific war.

28.3.2. When the Japanese controlled the islands in the Pacific Ocean, they built many strong forts to be used in case of an Allied attack. In attempting to retake these islands, the Allies had planned a special strategy known as the **leap-frog strategy**. Only the major islands would be attacked and the lesser important islands would be bypassed. In 1945, under the leadership of General Douglas McArthur, the Philippine Islands were **liberated** after 5 years of Japanese control. In June, 1945, two more islands, Iwo Jima and Okinawa, fell to the United States Marines. The U.S. Air Force used these two islands to **step up** bombing raids on all cities and towns in Japan.

28.3.3. Efforts to end the war in the Pacific intensified. The U.S. also set up a naval blockade against Japan. Also President Harry S. Truman, who had become President in April, 1945 after Roosevelt's death, sent an **ultimatum** to the Japanese demanding surrender. The Japanese ignored that ultimatum. President Truman had to make a very forceful and difficult decision. He wanted the war to end as soon as possible. Therefore, he decided to use a new weapon, the **atomic bomb**, to defeat Japan. The first atomic bomb was dropped on Hiroshima on August 6, 1945, and another one was dropped on Nagasaki three days later. These two cities were completely destroyed and tens of thousands of people were killed. Japan was forced to surrender and, on September 2, 1945, the Japanese government signed the formal terms of surrender.

28.4. CREATING THE UNITED NATIONS

28.4.1. Six years of war had badly battered Europe. The war caused much **damage** and left countless soldiers and **civilians** dead, wounded, or missing. The war also left 10 million people **homeless** and millions more - mostly **Jews** - had been murdered by the Nazis in the **concentration camps**. It would take many years and great effort to rebuild the shattered world.

28.4.2. While the war was being fought, the Allies had prepared a plan for world peace. The peace plan for the **post war era** had been adopted in 1941 after many meetings between President Roosevelt and Prime Minister Churchill. These two leaders signed the **Atlantic Charter** that was an agreement to work for a world free from war. Another meeting was held at Dumbarton Oaks, near Washington D.C., to create a new world peacekeeping body to be called the **United Nations**. In April 1945, a charter for this new peace organization was drawn up and was approved at an international meeting in San Francisco.

28.4.3. According to the charter, the United Nations set up two main bodies to maintain world peace. The first was the **General Assembly**, made up of all member countries, and formed to discuss world problems. The second was the **Security Council**, whose main duty was to enforce world peace. However, the Security Council was to act only with the approval of all its **permanent members** - the U.S.A., Great Britain, France, China, and Russia.

28.4.4. Other U.N. bodies were set up to deal with world economic, social, and cultural problems. The United Nations has done much for world peace. But soon after the war ended, the world became divided into two **opposing blocs**: the communist bloc and the free bloc. This division has caused many problems for the U.N. and led to an era of **Cold War**.

EXERCISES

I. Word Search Puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and

UNITED NATIONS
SECURITY
JEWS
GENERAL ASSEMBLY
OCEAN
CORAL SEA
BIG
NAVY
MEMBER
DAMAGE
LEAP FROG

ATOMIC
LIBERATE
COMBINED
CAMP
POLAND
HOMELESS
ITALY
AIRFORCE
PERMANENT
CHARTER
BOMB

OPERATION
ADVANCE
MOUNTAINOUS AREAS
CONCENTRATION CAMPS
INVASION
BLOCS
DECLARATIONS
POST WAR ERA
EUROPE
MURDER
STEP UP

U N I T E D N A T I O N S S A T O M I C

B H B O P E R A T I O N O N R A E B L H

I O L S E C U R I T Y Y M S E O U O E A

G M O I R L I B E R A T E E R T R M A R

A E C T S A M N O D N P M C A N O B P T

E L S A T R N A E C O Q B R W E P P F E

S E I L L A D V A N C E E O T N E U R R

L S U Y L T V Y J E W S R F S A G P O E

A S X I C I T N A L T A Z R O M A E G D

R Y V Z C O M B I N E D X I P R M T O R

O I M O U N T A I N O U S A R E A S R U

C O N O I S A V N I D N A L O P D X R M

G E N E R A L A S S E M B L Y C A M P S

C O N C E N T R A T I O N C A M P S S O

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A	B
____ a. Axis	1. The alliance of Japan, Italy, and Germany, which fought the Allies in World War II.
____ b. threaten	2. the barring of normal traffic into and out of an area.
____ c. cold war	3. a person who is not a member of the armed forces.
____ d. civilian	4. a camp in which political opponents or minorities may be held prisoners or killed.
____ e. blockade	5. a useful material or skill.
____ f. concentration camp	6. a final proposition or demand, especially by a party in a conflict.
____ g. resource	7. May 8, 1945, the day Germany surrendered in World War II.
____ h. V-E. Day	8. a world organization established in 1945 for the purpose of maintaining international peace.
____ i. ultimatum	9. a conflict that does not involve the active use of military force.
____ j. United Nations	10. to promise a negative action, to give warning of trouble to come.

III. True or False: Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put an F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. President Roosevelt and Prime Minister Churchill believed that Germany was the main threat to world peace.

____ 2. The Allies did not win any victories at the end of 1942.

____ 3. At the end of 1942, on their way to invade Russia, German forces were stopped at Leningrad.

____ 4. By the end of 1943, the Axis armies stayed in North Africa, Italy, and Russia.

____ 5. In 1944, the Allied forces in England were ready to cross the British Channel to invade Europe.

____ 6. On D-Day or, June 6, 1944, about 200,000 allied soldiers landed on the seacoast of Normandy, France.

____ 7. When the war ended in Europe, the Allies could not put all of their forces together to defeat Japan.

____ 8. The U.S. Navy and the Allies fought an important naval battle in the Coral Sea.

____ 9. The Russians used the atomic bomb in 1945 to defeat the Japanese.

____10. The war caused much damage and left countless soldiers and civilians dead, wounded, or missing.

IV. Fill in the blanks: Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: permanent members, concentration camps, ultimatum, wiped out, atomic bomb, advance, United Nations Declaration, the Big Three, target, defeat.

1. On the first day of January 1941, representatives of 26 countries signed the ______________ .
2. The three biggest countries, the U.S.A., Great Britain, and Russia, were called __________ .
3. The allies agreed on a common military plan that made Europe the major and most important __________ .
4. When Germany and Italy were defeated, the Allies joined all their forces to ________ Japan.
5. In North Africa, the British Army had stopped the ________ of Axis forces on their way to Egypt at Al Almein.
6. By the end of 1943, the Axis armies were _________ in North Africa, Italy, and Russia.
7. The U.S. also set up a naval blockade against Japan and by an ___________ asked the Japanese to surrender.
8. President Truman decided to use a new weapon, the _______________ , to defeat Japan.
9. Most Jews had been murdered by the Nazis in ___________.
10. The U.S.A., Great Britain, France, Russia, and China are the _________________ in the Security Council.

543

ບົດອ່ານ

໒໘.໑. ສະຫະລັດແລະປະເທດພັນທະມິດ

໒໘.໑.໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສະຫະລັດໄດ້ປະກາດສົງຄາມກັບຍີ່ປຸ່ນ, ເຢຣະມັນ ແລະ ອີຕາລີໄປແລ້ວ ປາກົດວ່າ ປະເທດທັງຫຼາຍທີ່ໃຫຍ່ໃນໂລກໄດ້ພາກັນມີສ່ວນໃນສົງຄາມດັ່ງກ່າວ. ສົງຄາມຍັງໄດ້ແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍໄປຈາກ ເອເຊັຍເຖິງຢູໂຣບ ແລະ ຈາກມະຫາສະມຸດ Atlantic ເຖິງມະຫາສະມຸດ Pacific. ທັງສອງຝ່າຍກໍໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມຫາເອົາປະເທດພັນທະມິດໃຫ້ຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນເພື່ອຊ່ວຍທຳການສູ້ຮົບໃນສົງຄາມ.

໒໘.໑.໒. ໃນມື້ທຳອິດຂອງເດືອນ ມົກະຣາ ປີ ໑໙໔໑ ບັນດາຜູ້ແທນຈາກ ໒໖ ປະເທດໄດ້ເຊັນຄຳປະກາດຂອງສະຫະປະຊາຊາດ. ຄຳປະກາດດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຊີ້ແຈງຕົກລົງເຫັນດີໃຊ້ກຳລັງແລະຊັບສິນຂອງພວກຕົນ ເພື່ອຕໍ່ສູ້ກັບ ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ, ເຢຣະມັນ ແລະ ອີຕາລີ. ຄຳປະກາດທີ່ວ່ານັ້ນຍັງໄດ້ຢືນຢັນອີກວ່າຈະບໍ່ມີປະເທດໃດໃນ ໒໖ ປະເທດທີ່ເຊັນສັນຍາຮ່ວມກັນນັ້ນ ເຊັນສົນທິສັນຍາສັນຕິພາບຕ່າງຫາກກັບປະເທດ ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ, ເຢຣະມັນ, ແລະ ອີຕາລີ. ໒໖ ປະເທດທັງໝົດເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນເປັນສະມາຊິກຂອງພັນທະມິດ. ສາມປະເທດທີ່ໃຫຍ່ທີ່ສຸດ ຄື ສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາ, ອັງກິດ ແລະ ຣັສເຊັຍ ນັ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ The Big Thee. ສາມປະເທດດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອອຸປະກອນຕ່າງໆຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໃຫ້ແກ່ປະເທດພັນທະມິດຂອງພວກຕົນໃນລະຫວ່າງສົງຄາມ.

໒໘.໑.໓. ໃນຕົ້ນປີ ໑໙໔໔ ປະເທດພັນທະມິດທັງຫຼາຍໄດ້ພາກັນຕົກລົງເຫັນດີວາງແຜນດ້ານທະຫານຮ່ວມກັນ. ແຜນທະຫານດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຖືເອົາຢູໂຣບເປັນເປົ້າໝາຍສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ແລະສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ແລະ ນາຍົກລັດຖະມົນຕີ Churchill ເຊື່ອວ່າ ເຢຣະມັນ ເປັນການຂົ່ມຂູ່ຕໍ່ສັນຕິພາບໃນໂລກທີ່ສຳຄັນ. ປະເທດພັນທະມິດອື່ນທັງໝົດກໍໄດ້ເຫັນດີວ່າ ເຢຣະມັນ ຕ້ອງຖືກທຳລາຍກ່ອນເພື່ອນກັນ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນັ້ນ ບັນດາປະເທດພັນທະມິດຈຶ່ງໄດ້ທຸ້ມເທຄວາມພະຍາຍາມສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ໃນການຕໍ່ສູ້ເຢຣະມັນ. ໃນຂະນະດຽວກັນ ພວກປະເທດພັນທະມິດກໍໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມຕ້ານປັນໄຊຊະນະຂອງຍີ່ປຸ່ນໃນມະຫາສະມຸດ Pacific . ໃນທີ່ສຸດ ເມື່ອເຢຣະມັນ ແລະ ອີຕາລີ ໄດ້ຖືກທຳລາຍໄປແລ້ວ ບັນດາປະເທດພັນທະມິດກໍສາມາດໃຊ້ກຳລັງທັງໝົດຂອງພວກຕົນເພື່ອທຳລາຍຍີ່ປຸ່ນ.

໒໘.໒. ການປົດປ່ອຍຢູໂຣບ

໒໘.໒.໑. ໃນທ້າຍປີ ໑໙໔໑ ເຢຍລະມັນ ໄດ້ຄອບຄຸມ ຢູໂຣບພາກຕາເວັນອອກ, ກາງ ແລະ ຕາເວັນຕົກ ເປັນສ່ວນຫຼາຍ. ແຕ່ວ່າໃນປີ ໑໙໔໒ ສົງຄາມເລີ້ມມີທ່າທີອັນດີສຳລັບກຸ່ມປະເທດພັນທະມິດ ໂດຍສະເພາະໃນເວລາທີ່ກອງທະຫານຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເລີ້ມມີໄຊຊະນະບາງຈຳນວນ. ໃນອາຟຣິກາເໜືອ ກອງທັບອັງກິດ ໄດ້ສະກັດກັ້ນການບຸກໜ້າຂອງກຳລັງເຢຍລະມັນ, ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ ແລະ ອີຕາລີ ຢູ່ທີ່ Al Alamein ໃນເວລາທີ່ກອງທະຫານຂອງພວກດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ກຳລັງມຸ່ງໜ້າໄປສູ່ Egypt. ໃນຫຼາຍອາທິດຕໍ່ມາກຳລັງປະສົມຂອງທະຫານອັງກິດແລະອະເມຣິກັນ ໄດ້ຍົກພົນເຂົ້າໄປໃນອາຟຣິກາເໜືອແລະສາມາດຄອບຄຸມເຂດແດນດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້. ກຳລັງທະຫານຂອງເຢຍລະມັນ, ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ ແລະ ອີຕາລີ ທັງໝົດໄດ້ມອບຕົວພາຍໃນເວລາ ໓ ເດືອນ. ໃນທ້າຍປີ ໑໙໔໒ ກຳລັງທະຫານເຢຍລະມັນທີ່ບຸກລຸກ ຣັສເຊັຍ ໄດ້ຖືກສະກັດກັ້ນຢູ່ທີ່ Leningrad. ພວກຣັສເຊັຍໄດ້ທຳລາຍພວກເຢຍລະມັນ ແລະ ໄດ້ຈັບທະຫານເຢຍລະມັນ ເກືອບທັງໝົດເປັນສະເລີຍເສິກ. ໄຊຊະນະຢູ່ທີ່ Al Alamein ແລະ Leningrad ເປັນບາດລ້ຽວຂອງສົງຄາມໃນຢູໂຣບ.

໒໘.໒.໒. ສະຖານະການໄດ້ເປັນທີ່ດີຂຶ້ນຕໍ່ໄປສຳລັບບັນດາປະເທດພັນທະມິດ. ໃນຕອນທ້າຍປີ ໑໙໔໓ ກອງທັບຂອງພວກ ເຢຍລະມັນ, ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ ແລະ ອີຕາລີ ໄດ້ຖືກກວດລ້າງໄປໃນອາຟຣິກາເໜືອ, ອີຕາລີ, ແລະ ຣັສເຊັຍ. ອີຕາລີ ໄດ້ມອບຕົວໃນເດືອນ ກັນຍາ ໑໙໔໓ ແຕ່ທະຫານຂອງເຢຍລະມັນຍັງດຳເນີນການຕໍ່ສູ້ໃນເຂດພູເຂົາໃນພາກເໜືອຂອງປະເທດອີຕາລີຢູ່ຕໍ່ໄປຈົນເຖິງຕອນທ້າຍຂອງສົງຄາມ.

໒໘.໒.໓. ໃນປີ ໑໙໔໔ ກຳລັງຂອງປະເທດພັນທະມິດໃນອັງກິດ ໄດ້ມາກັນຕຽມພ້ອມເພື່ອຂ້າມຊ່ອງແຄບອັງກິດແລະເພື່ອບຸກລຸກຢູໂຣບ. ການບຸກລຸກດັ່ງກ່າວເອີ້ນວ່າການປະຕິບັດການ Overlord. ນາຍພົນອະເມຣິກັນ Dwight D. Einsenhower ຜູ້ບັນຊາການສູງສຸດຂອງກຸ່ມປະເທດພັນທະມິດໃນຢູໂຣບເປັນຜູ້ນຳພາການປະຕິບັດການດັ່ງກ່າວນັ້ນ. ໃນມື້ D.Day ຄືໃນວັນທີ່ ໓ ມິຖຸນາ ໑໙໔໔.

໒໘.໓. ການປາບພວກຍີ່ປຸ່ນ

໒໘.໓.໑. ໃນເວລາສົງຄາມໄດ້ສິ້ນສຸດລົງໃນຢູໂຣບກຸ່ມປະເທດພັນທະມິດທັງຫຼາຍ ໄດ້ຊຸມກຳລັງທັງໝົດຮ່ວມກັນເພື່ອປາບປະເທດຍີ່ປຸ່ນ. ການສູ້ຮົບຂັ້ນຕົ້ນໃນເຂດແນວໜ້າດ້ານ Pacific ນັ້ນບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນໄປຢ່າງດີສຳລັບກຳລັງຂອງພວກພັນທະມິດ. ໃນກາງປີ ໑໙໔໒ ພວກຍີ່ປຸ່ນໄດ້ຄອບຄຸມເກາະຕ່າງໆທັງໝົດໃນມະຫາສະໝຸດ Pacific ແລະ ກອງທັບເຮືອຍີ່ປຸ່ນໄດ້ເລີ້ມທຳການຂົ່ມຂູ່ປະເທດ Australia. ເພື່ອຢັບຢັ້ງການເຄື່ອນກຳລັງຂອງພວກຍີ່ປຸ່ນເຂົ້າໄປຫາ Australia. ກອງທັບເຮືອສະຫະຣັຖແລະປະເທດພັນທະມິດໄດ້ທຳການສູ້ຮົບທາງເຮືອຄັ້ງສຳຄັນຢູ່ໃນເຂດທະເລ Coral Sea ແລະ ໄດ້ທຳລາຍເຮືອຮົບຂອງຍີ່ປຸ່ນເກືອບທັງໝົດ. ໃນເດືອນ ມິຖຸນາ ໑໙໔໒ ພວກພັນທະມິດໄດ້ຮັບໄຊຊະນະອີກ ຢູ່ທີ່ສນາມບິນຂອງ Midway. ໄຊຊະນະຄັ້ງນີ້ເປັນບາດລ້ຽວຂອງສົງຄາມໃນມະຫາສະໝຸດ Pacific.

໒໘.໓.໒. ໃນເວລາທີ່ພວກຍີ່ປຸ່ນໄດ້ຄອບຄຸມເກາະຕ່າງໆໃນມະຫາສະໝຸດ Pacific ນັ້ນ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ສ້າງປ້ອມທີ່ແໜ້ນໜາຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄວ້ ເພື່ອໃຊ້ປ້ອງກັນການບຸກໂຈມຕີຂອງພວກພັນທະມິດ. ເພື່ອຍຶດເອົາເກາະຕ່າງໆເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ພວກພັນທະມິດໄດ້ວາງແຜນຍຸດທະສາດນຶ່ງເອີ້ນວ່າ the leap-frog strategy. ຕາມແຜນຍຸດທະສາດທີ່ວ່ານີ້ ມີແຕ່ເກາະຈຳພວກສຳຄັນເທົ່ານັ້ນທີ່ຈະຖືກໂຈມຕີ ສ່ວນເກາະທີ່ມີຄວາມສຳຄັນຮອງລົງມານັ້ນກໍຈະໄດ້ຖືກຜ່ານໄປ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໔໕ ພາຍໃຕ້ການນຳພາຂອງນາຍພົນ Darglas McArthur ເກາະ Philippine ໄດ້ຖືກປ່ອຍພາຍຫຼັງທີ່ປະເທດຍີ່ປຸ່ນໄດ້ຄອບຄອງມາເປັນເວລາ ໔ ປີ. ໃນເດືອນ ມິຖຸນາ ໑໙໔໕ ໄດ້ມີອີກສອງເກາະຄື ເກາະ Iwo Jima ແລະ Okinawa ໄດ້ຕົກຢູ່ໃນກຳມືຂອງທະຫານສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ກອງທັບອາກາດສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ໃຊ້ສອງເກາະດັ່ງກ່າວເພື່ອທຳການຣະດົມຖິ້ມຣະເບີດໃສ່ຫົວເມືອງທັງໝົດໃນປະເທດຍີ່ປຸ່ນ.

໒໘.໓.໓. ຄວາມພະຍາຍາມໃນການຢຸດຕິໃນມະຫາສະໝຸດ Pacific ໄດ້ເພີ່ມທະວີຂຶ້ນ. ສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ໃຊ້ເຮືອຮົບປິດລ້ອມຍີ່ປຸ່ນ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນທ່ານ Harry S. Truman ຊຶ່ງໄດ້ກາຍເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີໃນເດືອນ ເມສາ ຫຼັງຈາກການເສັຍຊີວິດຂອງທ່ານ Roosevelt ໃນປີ ໑໙໔໕ ນັ້ນ ກໍໄດ້ຍື່ນຄຳຂາດຕໍ່ພວກຍີ່ປຸ່ນເພື່ອໃຫ້ຍອມ. ພວກຍີ່ປຸ່ນໄດ້ເມີນເສີຍຕໍ່ການຍື່ນຄຳຂາດດັ່ງກ່າວ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Truman ມີຄວາມຈຳເປັນຕ້ອງໄດ້ທຳການຕັດສິນໃຈທີ່ໝັ້ນໃຈແລະຍາກທີ່ສຸດ. ທ່ານຕ້ອງການ

ໃຫ້ສົງຄາມສິ້ນສຸດລົງໄວເທົ່າທີ່ຈະໄວໄດ້. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ເອງ ທ່ານຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຕັດສິນໃຈໃຊ້ອາວຸດອັນໃຫມ່ນີ້ ກໍຄືລະເບີດປະລາມະນູເພື່ອປາບປະເທດຍີ່ປຸ່ນ. ລະເບີດປະລາມະນູຫນ່ວຍທຳອິດໄດ້ຖິ້ມໃສ່ Hiroshima ໃນວັນທີ ໖ ເດືອນ ສິງຫາ ໑໙໔໕ ແລະ ອີກຫນ່ວຍນຶ່ງໄດ້ຖິ້ມໃສ່ Nagasaki ໃນສາມມື້ຕໍ່ມາ. ສອງຫົວເມືອງເຫລົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ຖືກທຳລາຍຢ່າງຮາບຄາບແລະຜູ້ຄົນຈຳນວນຫລາຍສິບພັນໄດ້ຖືກເສັຍຊີວິດ. ປະເທດຍີ່ປຸ່ນໄດ້ຖືກບັງຄັບໃຫ້ຍອມແລະຣັຖບານຍີ່ປຸ່ນໄດ້ເຊັນການຍອມເປັນທາງການໃນວັນທີ ໒ ກັນຍາ ໑໙໔໕.

໒໗.໔. ການສ້າງຕັ້ງສະຫະປະຊາຊາດ

໒໗.໔.໑. ສົງຄາມຄັ້ງນີ້ໄດ້ທຳລາຍຢູໂຣບຢ່າງຫນັກຫນ່ວງ. ສົງຄາມໄດ້ສ້າງຄວາມເສັຍຫາຍຢ່າງໃຫຍ່ຫລວງແລະໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ພົນລະທະຫານແລະພົນລະເຮືອນເສັຍຊີວິດ, ບາດເຈັບ ຫຼື ຫາຍສາບສູນຢ່າງນັບບໍ່ຖ້ວນ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ສົງຄາມຍັງໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ຄົນເປັນຈຳນວນ ໑໐ ລ້ານຄົນບໍ່ມີບ່ອນພັກພາອາໃສ ແລະ ມີອີກຫລາຍລ້ານຄົນຊຶ່ງສ່ວນຫລາຍແມ່ນຊາວ Jews ໄດ້ຖືກຂ້າຕາຍໂດຍພວກ Nazis ໃນຄ້າຍກັກຂັງນັກໂທດການເມືອງ. ການສ້າງສາໂລກທີ່ຖືກທຳລາຍເສັຍຫາຍຄືນໃຫມ່ນັ້ນ ຈະຕ້ອງໄດ້ໃຊ້ເວລາຫລາຍປີແລະໃຊ້ເຫື່ອແຮງອັນໃຫຍ່ຫລວງ.

໒໗.໔.໒. ໃນລະຫວ່າງທີ່ມີການສູ້ຮົບໃນສົງຄາມຢູ່ນັ້ນ ພວກປະເທດພັນທະມິດໄດ້ວາງແຜນສຳຫຼັບສ້າງສັນຕິພາບໃນໂລກເອົາໄວ້. ແຜນສັນຕິພາບສຳຄັນໃນຫວ່າງສົງຄາມໄດ້ຖືກຮັບຮອງເອົາໃນປີ ໑໙໔໑ ພາຍຫລັງທີ່ມີການພົບປະກັນເປັນຫລາຍຄັ້ງຫລາຍຄາວລະຫວ່າງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ແລະນາຍົກຣັຖະມົນຕີ Churchill. ຜູ້ນຳສອງທ່ານເຫລົ່ານີ້ ໄດ້ເຊັນກົດບັດ Atlantic Charter ຊຶ່ງເປັນຫລັກການເພື່ອດຳເນີນການສ້າງສັນຕິພາບໃນໂລກ. ຢູ່ທີ່ Dumbarton Oaks ຊຶ່ງຢູ່ໃກ້ກັບກຸງ Washington, D.C. ນັ້ນ ກໍໄດ້ມີກອງປະຊຸມອີກອັນນຶ່ງ ຊຶ່ງຈັດຂຶ້ນເພື່ອຕັ້ງອົງການຮັກສາຄວາມສງົບຂອງໂລກອັນໃຫມ່ຂຶ້ນ ເອີ້ນວ່າ ອົງການສະຫະປະຊາຊາດ. ກົດບັດ ຂອງອົງການດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຂຽນຂຶ້ນແລະໄດ້ຖືກຮັບຮອງເອົາຢູ່ທີ່ກອງປະຊຸມລະຫວ່າງຊາດ ໃນນະຄອນ San Francisco ໃນປີ ໑໙໔໕.

໒໗.໔.໓. ອົງການສະຫະປະຊາຊາດໄດ້ຈັດຕັ້ງສອງອົງການທີ່ສຳຄັນຂຶ້ນຕາມກົດບັດ ເພື່ອປົກປັກຮັກສາ

ສັນຕິພາບໃນໂລກ. ອົງການທຳອິດແມ່ນສະມັດຊາແຫ່ງສະຫະປະຊາຊາດ (General Assembly) ຊຶ່ງປະກອບດ້ວຍປະເທດສະມາຊິກທັງໝົດຈັດຂຶ້ນເພື່ອປຶກສາຫາລືບັນຫາຕ່າງໆຂອງໂລກ. ອົງການທີ່ສອງໄດ້ແກ່ ສະພາຄວາມໝັ້ນຄົງແຫ່ງສະຫະປະຊາຊາດ (Security Council) ຊຶ່ງມີໜ້າທີ່ອັນສຳຄັນໃນການຮັກສາຄວາມສງົບຂອງໂລກ. ແຕ່ວ່າສະພາຄວາມໝັ້ນຄົງດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ຕ້ອງໄດ້ຮັບການເຫັນຈາກສະມາຊິກຖາວອນທັງໝົດຂອງຕົນເສັຽກ່ອນ ກ່ອນທີ່ລົງມືປະຕິບັດໜ້າທີ່ໄດ້. ສະມາຊິກຖາວອນທີ່ວ່ານີ້ໄດ້ແກ່ ສະຫະຣັດອະເມຣິກາ, ອັງກິດ, ຝຣັ່ງເສດ, ຈີນ ແລະ ຣັສເຊັຍ. ອົງການຕ່າງໆຢ່າງອື່ນຂອງສະຫະປະຊາຊາດຈັດຂຶ້ນ ເພື່ອແກ້ໄຂກ່ຽວກັບບັນຫາດ້ານເສດຖະກິດ, ສັງຄົມ ແລະ ວັດທະນະທັມຂອງໂລກ. ສະຫະປະຊາຊາດໄດ້ປະຕິບັດຫຼາຍສິ່ງຫຼາຍຢ່າງເພື່ອສັນຕິພາບຂອງໂລກ. ແຕ່ພາຍຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໄດ້ສິ້ນສຸດລົງ ໂລກໄດ້ແບ່ງອອກເປັນສອງກຸ່ມທີ່ຂັດຄ້ານຊຶ່ງກັນແລະກັນ ຄື ກຸ່ມໂລກຄອມມູນິສ ແລະ ກຸ່ມໂລກເສຣີ. ການແບ່ງແຍກດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ສ້າງບັນຫາຫຼາຍຢ່າງໃຫ້ແກ່ສະຫະປະຊາຊາດ ແລະ ໄດ້ນຳໂລກເຂົ້າໄປສູ່ຍຸກແຫ່ງສົງຄາມເຢັນ.

EXERCICES

I. **Word Search Puzzle:**
Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບເຫຼົ່ານີ້ຕາມ ທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບແລ້ວຂຽນໃສ່ນອນທັງຂຽນຄຳອະທິບາຍຄຳທັບໃສ່ນອນ.

UNITED NATIONS
SECURITY
JEWS
GENERAL ASSEMBLY
OCEAN
CORAL SEA
BIG
NAVY
MEMBER
DAMAGE
LEAP FROG

ATOMIC
LIBERATE
COMBINED
CAMP
POLAND
HOMELESS
ITALY
AIRFORCE
PERMANENT
CHARTER
BOMB

OPERATION
ADVANCE
MOUNTAINOUS AEAS
CONCENTRATION CAMPS
INVASION
BLOCS
DECLARATIONS
POST WAR ERA
EUROPE
MURDER
STEP UP

U	N	I	T	E	D	N	A	T	I	O	N	S	S	A	T	O	M	I	C
B	H	B	O	P	E	R	A	T	I	O	N	O	N	R	A	E	B	L	H
I	O	L	S	E	C	U	R	I	T	Y	Y	M	S	E	O	U	O	E	A
G	M	O	I	R	L	I	B	E	R	A	T	E	E	R	T	R	M	A	R
A	E	C	T	S	A	M	N	O	D	N	P	M	C	A	N	O	B	P	T
E	L	S	A	T	R	N	A	E	C	O	Q	B	R	W	E	P	P	F	E
S	E	I	L	L	A	D	V	A	N	C	E	E	O	T	N	E	U	R	R
L	S	U	Y	L	T	V	Y	J	E	W	S	R	F	S	A	G	P	O	E
A	S	X	I	C	I	T	N	A	L	T	A	Z	R	O	M	A	E	G	D
R	Y	V	Z	C	O	M	B	I	N	E	D	X	I	P	R	M	T	O	R
O	I	M	O	U	N	T	A	I	N	O	U	S	A	R	E	A	S	R	U
C	O	N	O	I	S	A	V	N	I	D	N	A	L	O	P	D	X	R	M
G	E	N	E	R	A	L	A	S	S	E	M	B	L	Y	C	A	M	P	S
C	O	N	C	E	N	T	R	A	T	I	O	N	C	A	M	P	S	S	O

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. **ບົດຫວຍຊອກຫາສັບ** : (ເບິ່ງຕາມພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. **ປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ** : ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາແຕ່ລະສັບຄຳເວົ້າໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍໃນໝວດ (ຂ). ຈົ່ງຂຽນຕົວເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ປະໄວ້ນັ້ນແທນຄຳຕອບ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ກ. Axis	໑. ພັນທະມິດລະຫວ່າງປະເທດ ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ, ອີຕາລີ, ແລະ ເຢຍລະມັນ ຊຶ່ງຕໍ່ສູ້ກັບປະເທດພັນທະມິດໃນສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງ.
_____ ຂ. ອື່ນຊູ່	໒. ການຫ້າມບໍ່ໃຫ້ມີການສົ່ງຂອງເຂົ້າ ແລະ ອອກເຂດໃດເຂດໜຶ່ງ.
_____ ຄ. ສົງຄາມເຢັນ	໓. ບຸກຄົນທີ່ບໍ່ໄດ້ສັງກັດຢູ່ໃນກອງທັບ.
_____ ງ. ພົນລະເຮືອນ	໔. ຄ້າຍທີ່ມີພວກຕໍ່ຕ້ານທາງການເມືອງຖືກຈັບເປັນນັກໂທດຖືກຂ້າ.
_____ ຈ. ການປິດທາງ	໕. ສິ່ງທີ່ເປັນປະໂຫຍດ.
_____ ສ. ຄ້າຍກັກຂັງນັກໂທດການເມືອງ	໖. ການສະເນີ ຫຼື ການຮ້ອງຂໍອັນສຸດທ້າຍໂດຍສະເພາະຈາກຝ່າຍກົງກັນຂ້າມໃນການຂັດແຍ່ງ.

_____ ຊ. ຊັບພະຍາກອນ ໗. ນັທີ່ເຢຍຣະມັນຍອມຈຳນົນໃນສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງ
ທີ່ສອງຄືໃນວັນທີ່ ໘ ພຶສະພາ ໑໙໔໕.

_____ ຍ. V.E. Day ໘. ອົງການຈັດຕັ້ງຂອງໂລກຊຶ່ງຈັດຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໙໔໕
ເພື່ອຮັກສາຄວາມສງົບຣະຫວ່າງຊາດ.

_____ ດ. ສຳອາດ ໙. ການຕັດແບ່ງຊຶ່ງບໍ່ມີການໃຊ້ກຳລັງທະຫານ
ຢ່າງຈິງຈັງ.

_____ ຕ. ສະຫະປະຊາຊາດ ໑໐. ການບອກເຕືອນວ່າຈະມີເຣື່ອງເກີດຂຶ້ນ.

ຄ. ຖືກຜິດ : ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ ແລ້ວໝາຍ T ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກເຫັນວ່າ
ປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກຕ້ອງ ແລະ ໝາຍ F ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກຜິດ.

_____ ໑. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ແລະ ນາຍົກຣັດຖະມົນຕີ Churchill
ເຊື່ອວ່າປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນນັ້ນເປັນການຂົ່ມຂູ່ທີ່ສຳຄັນຕໍ່ສັນຕິພາບຂອງໂລກ.

_____ ໒. ໃນທ້າຍປີ ໑໙໔໒ ນັ້ນ ກຸ່ມປະເທດພັນທະມິດບໍ່ໄດ້ຮັບໄຊຊະນະອັນໃດເລີຍ.

_____ ໓. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງມຸ່ງໜ້າເພື່ອລຸກລານຣັສເຊັຍໃນທ້າຍປີ ໑໙໔໒ ນັ້ນ ທະຫານເຢຍຣະມັນໄດ້ຖືກສະ
ກັດກັ້ນຢູ່ທີ່ Leningrad.

_____ ໔. ໃນຕອນທ້າຍຂອງປີ ໑໙໔໓ ກອງທັບຂອງເຢຍຣະມັນ ອີຕາລີ ແລະ ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ ໄດ້ຢູ່ໃນອາຟຣິກາ
ເໜືອ, ອີຕາລີ ແລະ ຣັສເຊັຍ.

_____ ໕. ໃນປີ ໑໙໔໔ ກຳລັງທະຫານປະເທດພັນທະມິດໃນອັງກິດ ໄດ້ຄຽມພ້ອມເພື່ອຂ້າມຊ່ອງແຄບ ອັງກິດເພື່ອບຸກຢູໂຣບ.

_____ ໖. ໃນມື້ D-Day ຫຼື ໃນວັນທີ ໖ ມິຖຸນາ ໑໙໔໔ ທະຫານພັນທະມິດປະມານ ໒໐໐.໐໐໐ ຄົນໄດ້ຂຶ້ນຝັ່ງຂອງ Normandy ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ.

_____ ໗. ໃນເວລາສົງຄາມຢຸດຕິລົງໃນຢູໂຣບ ປະເທດພັນທະມິດທັງຫຼາຍບໍ່ສາມາດຮວມກຳລັງເພື່ອ ປາບຍີ່ປຸ່ນ.

_____ ໘. ກອງທັບເຮືອສະຫະລັດແລະປະເທດພັນທະມິດໄດ້ທຳການສູ້ຮົບທາງເຮືອຄັ້ງສຳຄັນໃນທະເລ

_____ ໙. ໃນປີ ໑໙໔໔ ພວກຣັສເຊັຍໄດ້ໃຊ້ລະເບີດປະຣາມະນູເພື່ອປາບພວກຍີ່ປຸ່ນ.

_____ ໑໐. ສົງຄາມໄດ້ສ້າງຄວາມເສັຍຫາຍຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍແລະໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ທະຫານແລະພົນລະເຮືອນ ເສັຍຊີວິດ, ບາດເຈັບ ຫຼື ຫາຍສາບສູນຢ່າງນັບບໍ່ຖ້ວນ.

໕. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ : ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ໝວດຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍອັນຖືກຕ້ອງ : ສະມາຊິກຖາວອນ, ຄ້າຍກັກຂັງນັກໂທດການເມືອງ, ຄຳຂາດ, ກວດລ້າງ, ລະເບີດປະຣາມະນູ, ການເຄື່ອນທີ່, ຄຳປະກາດສະຫະປະຊາຊາດ, The Big Three ເປົ້າໝາຍ, ປາບ.

໑. ໃນມື້ທຳອິດຂອງເດືອນ ມົກກະຣາ ໑໙໔໒ ບັນດາຜູ້ແທນຈາກ ໒໖ ປະເທດໄດ້ພາກັນເຊັນ _____ _____________________________ .

໒. ສາມປະເທດທີ່ໃຫຍ່ທີ່ສຸດຄື ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ, ອັງກິດ ແລະ ຣັສເຊັຍ ນັ້ນເອີ້ນວ່າ ______
________________________ .

໓. ກຸ່ມປະເທດພັນທະມິດໄດ້ຕົກລົງເຫັນດີຮັບເອົາແຜນການດ້ານທະຫານຮ່ວມກັນຈຶ່ງເຮັດໃຫ້ຢູໂຣບເປັນ
________________________ ທີ່ໃຫຍ່ແລະສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດ.

໔. ໃນເວລາທີ່ ເຢຍຣະມັນ ແລະ ອີຕາລີ ຖືກປາບໄປແລ້ວ ພວກປະເທດພັນທະມິດໄດ້ຮວມກຳລັງທັງໝົດ
ຮ່ວມກັນເພື່ອ ________________ ປະເທດຍີ່ປຸ່ນ.

໕. ໃນອາຟຣິກາເໜືອ ກອງທັບອັງກິດໄດ້ສະກັດການ ____________________ ຂອງກຳ
ລັງທະຫານຂອງພວກ Axis ຢູ່ທີ່ Al Alamein ໃນຂະນະທີ່ກຳລັງມຸ້ງໜ້າໄປຍັງ
ປະເທດ Egypt.

໖. ໃນທ້າຍປີ ໑໙໔໓ ກອງທັບຂອງພວກ Axisໄດ້ຖືກ ________________ ໃນອາຟຣິກາ
ເໜືອ, ອີຕາລີ ແລະ ຣັສເຊັຍ.

໗. ສະຫະຣັຖຍັງໄດ້ສັ່ງໃຫ້ເຮືອຮົບຂອງຕົນເພື່ອທຳການປິດລ້ອມທາງເດີນທະເລຂອງປະເທດ ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ
ພ້ອມທັງຍື່ນ ________________ ເພື່ອຮ້ອງໃຫ້ພວກຍີ່ປຸ່ນຍອມຈຳນົນ.

໘. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Truman ໄດ້ຕັດສິນໃຈໃຊ້ອາວຸດແບບໃໝ່ຄື ________________
ເພື່ອປາບປະເທດຍີ່ປຸ່ນ.

໙. ພວກ Jews ສ່ວນຫລາຍໄດ້ຖືກຂ້າໂດຍພວກ Nazis ໃນ ________________ .

໑໐. ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ, ອັງກິດ, ຝຣັ່ງເສດ, ຣັສເຊັຍ ແລະ ຈີນ ເປັນ ______________
__________ ໃນສະພາຄວາມໝັ້ນຄົງແຫ່ງສະຫະປະຊາຊາດ.

ໝວດ ກ : ບັນຫາເສດຖະກິດຝືດເຄືອງແລະບັນຫາຂອງໂລກ

ພາກ ໖໓ : ລະບອບການແຮງງານຍຸກໃໝ່

ສັບໃໝ່ :

union: ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ

The unions were set up to help the workers.

vocational school: ໂຮງຮຽນການຊ່າງ

There are many vocational school in this country.

family experience: ປະສົບປະການຈາກຄອບຄົວ

In the 15th century, the workers were trained through family experiences.

factories: ໂຮງງານຕ່າງໆ

Today, there are not many factories in the cities, they were moved to the country.

textile factory: ໂຮງງານຕ່ຳຜ້າ

The textile factories hired the children and women to work because the owners wanted to pay low salary.

Department of Labor: ກະຊວງແຮງງານ

The federal goverment helped the workers by setting up the Department of Labor.

injunction: ການໃຊ້ອຳນາດບັງຄັບ

The strike was broken by the injunction.

open shop movement: ການຈ້າງເອົາຄົນງານຕາມໃຈຊອບຂອງນາຍຈ້າງ

The unions againsted the open shop movement.

union retreat: ການງຽບຕົວຂອງສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ

During the depression there was a retreat of the union.

by all means: ໂດຍທຸກວິທີທາງ

President Roosevelt wanted to help the workers by all means.

craft unions: ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນທີ່ມີຝີມືທາງຫັດຖະກັມ

The members of the American Federaion Labor was set up in 1886 and its members were craft union.

industrial workers: ຄົນງານປະຈຳໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມ

John L. Lewis set up his own organization for industrial workers called CIO.

split: ຫັກ

They split the bread into two pieces.

READING

29.1. THE WORK FORCE AND THE UNION:

29.1.1. One of the most important resources of American industry is the labor force. Before 1900, most of the workers in the U.S. were semiskilled or unskilled workers. They were not trained by **vocational schools**. They were trained either on the job or through **family experiences**. About 80% of the work force was male; the remaining 20% were female workers and children. Male workers handled all the heavy jobs in the factories or on the farms. Female workers and children used to work in the tabacco, clothing, or textile factories. Conditions for all workers were terrible. They received low wages and worked long hours. They did not have any insurance or fringe benefits. Early unions met with strong resistance from employers and were too small and ineffective to help workers obtain better working conditions and benefits.

29.1.2. As industries grew and expanded, business leaders were able to gain tremendous power by creating trusts or monopolies. Employers determined both the salaries and the working hours of workers. They were able to stop the influence of the early unions by firing the rebellious workers. However, as the power of management increased, labor organizations began to grow and expand. Workers realized that the only way they would ever receive better wages or improve conditions was to join together to fight employers.

29.1.3. Therefore, between 1890 and 1919 many labor organizations,such as the National Labor Union, the Knights of Labor, and the American Federation of Labor, were born in the United States. During that time labor organizations began to win some victories. The government was becoming more aware of the plight of workers. Congress started passing laws to help workers obtain better benefits and conditions. In 1913 the **Department of Labor** was created. In 1914 the Clayton Antitrust Act was passed. This act said that the government would not use **injunctions** to break up strikes. In 1915 the Folette Seaman's Act was passed to help sailors on merchant ships to obtain shorter working hours and more benefits. The government also attempted to protect child workers by creating an age limit for hiring them. Despite all these victories, workers' needs were still not fulfilled. They still wanted to get better wages, improved conditions and increased security, so they continued to organize many strikes and they asked the government to act further.

29.1.4. During the 1920's, the influence of the labor unions decreased for two reasons. First, the 1920's was a time of great prosperity and industrial growth. Employers were able to increase salaries and benefits. Second, they established new policies which enabled them to hire non-union workers. One of these policies was the **open shop**. The open shop could hire any workers they needed. Employees did not have to join the union in order to work. This policy also caused the union membership to fall sharply.

29.2. THE UNION RETREAT

29.2.1. In the 1930's, during the depression, the power of labor unions continued to decline. Unions were unable to help the workers because the number of unemployed was too great. About 4,000 workers were laid off every day. When President Roosevelt took office, 13 million people had already lost their jobs. The workers who were still fortunate enough to be working in the factories or companies were afraid of losing their jobs and did not want to make the employers upset by joining the labor union. The workers looked to the government for help.

29.2.2. President Roosevelt responded by creating the New Deal, a plan that he hoped would increase business and industry, provide jobs and end the Depression. During the First New Deal, President Roosevelt wanted to help workers by all possible means. He believed that if workers could get jobs and earn money they would use their money to buy products. This would help business to recover and ease the depression. Congress put more money into public projects which created hundreds of jobs. Congress also passed more laws to protect workers. The Wagner Act of 1935 said that yellow dog contracts and the black lists were illegal. The Social Security Act of 1935 helped insure the future of the workers when they became old or unemployed.

29.3. THE ADVANCE OF UNIONISM: THE AFL AND THE CIO

29.3.1. The American Federation Labor (AFL) was set up in 1886 and almost all of its members were from craft unions. In 1934 some people wanted to let the industrial unions become a part of AFL. William Greeen, the president of the AFL at that time, disagreed with that idea and voted against it. Therefore, John L. Lewis set up his own organization for industrial workers called the Committee for Industrial Organization (CIO). The CIO represented the workers in the big factories or heavy industries, such as ship building, automobile factories, or steel factories. Their philosophies of unionism were so different that the AFL and the CIO could not work together. The split continued until 1955 while both of these organizations grew steadily. The result was that the AFL and the CIO competed with each other by accepting all types of workers into their unions. The AFL had some unskilled and semiskilled members and the CIO represented some craft unions.

29.4. AMERICAN LABOR TODAY

29.4.1. In 1955, the AFL and CIO joined together and became the biggest labor organization in the United States. The joined union accepted all kinds of workers and its membership soon grew to 20 million. The AFL-CIO was very influential in helping workers get more benefits and improve their standard of living.

EXERCISES

I. Word Search Puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

OPEN SHOP
FAMILY
MALE
VOCATIONAL SCHOOL
DEPARTMENT OF LABOR
LABOR UNION
CRAFT
AMERICAN FEDERATION
JOB
WAGE
AFL
JOIN
CIO
MORE
AUTO
FORCES
MONEY
LABOR
SALARY
MEMBER
OFFICE
SYSTEM
STRIKE
SPLIT
UNION
BENEFIT
SAILORS
TEXTILE
TRUST
FARMER
MONOPOLY
UPSET
INFLUENCE
CONGRESS
TRAINING
INJUNCTION
SEMI SKILL
CRAFT UNION
OPEN SHOP
INSURANCE

A M E R I C A N F E D E R A T I O N O F L N
M O N E Y U M O N O P O L Y B I C H L O A O
S A I L O R S A F L C O N G R E S S O R B I
V O C A T I O N A L S C H O O L O A N C O N
I P C O N O S E M I S K I L L A U T O E R U
N E F O R C E S I T T R A I N I N G X N U R
S N S T R I K E L S J O M F A R M E R I I O
U S U P S E T O Y U O B A O F F I C E Z C B
R H M E M B E R E R B A L A B O U E C A T A
A O C R A F T E X T I L E C A N A C T T O L
N P P O H S N E P O S L W A G E E N H I R A
C V S S O S P L I T A I K C I O L L N S S N
E E A Y V A S E E I N F L U E N C E K N I O
I M L S M O R E N Z Y C R A F T U N I O N I
L E A T J O I N C E M P L O Y E R I A L L T
O N R E X B E N E F I T I N J U N C T I O N
R T Y M D E P A R T M E N T O F L A B O R N

II. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T text to each statement if it is true. Put an F in that space if it is false.

_____ 1. One of the most important resources of American industry is the labor force.

_____ 2. Before 1900, workers were trained in vocational schools.

_____ 3. Male workers made up about 80%, and female workers about 20% of the work force.

_____ 4. Female workers used to work in tobacco, clothing, or textile factories.

_____ 5. Workers had insurance and many benefits before 1900.

_____ 6. Business leaders wanted to control the business system and therefore created trusts or monopolies.

_____ 7. In 1913 Congress set up the Department of Labor.

_____ 8. In 1915 the Folette Seaman's Act was passed to help sailors on merchant ships to get shorter working hours and more benefits.

_____ 9. The open shop could not hire anyone they needed.

_____10. During the First New Deal, President Roosevelt wanted to help the workers by any posible means.

III. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provide.

	A	B
_____	1. strike	a. a union of skilled labor workers founded in 1886.
_____	2. black list	b. an organization of workers formed to bargain with employers for better wages, benefits, and working conditions.
_____	3. AFL-CIO	c. complete control of a product or service by one business concern.
_____	4. monopoly	d. a refusal to work by

		organized labor groups.
______	5. split	e. the large industrial and craft union formed in 1955.
______	6. Labor Union	f. a court order to stop a strike.
______	7. American Federation of Labor	g. a school where some skills were taught.
______	8. injunction	h. to divide into two parts.
______	9. vocational school	i. an agreement between employer and employee in which the worker states that he will not join a union.
______	10. yellow-dog contract	j. a list of known union members which is used by anti-union businesses to prevent employment of such persons.

IV. Fill in the blanks: Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: Labor Unions, Department of Labor, injunction, heavy industry, textile factories, trusts or monopolies, open shop movement, social security act, craft union, standard of living.

1. The membership of AFL-CIO was 20 million and the union helped them get more benefits and improve their ________ .
2. The American Federation Labor (AFL) was set up in 1886 and almost all of its members were ____________ .

3. The ____________ in 1935 insured the future of the workers when they became old or unemployed.

4. The leaders of the business system set up their own policie such as ______________ , so that they could hire anyone they needed.

5. During 1920's, the influence of the ___________ decreased because of the prosperity of the industries.

6. In 1913 Congress set up the __________________ to regulate labor activities.

7. The Clayton Antitrust Act said that the government could not use an _____________ to break up the strikes.

8. Business leaders wanted to control the system; therefore they created the ____________ .

9. Female workers used to work in the tobacco, clothing, or ____________ .

10. Male workers handled all _____________ in the factories or on the farms.

ບົດອ່ານ

໒໙.໑. ພະນັກງານ ແລະ ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ

໒໙.໑.໑. ສົມບັດທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດຢ່າງນຶ່ງສຳຫຼັບໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ແມ່ນພວກຄົນງານຕ່າງໆ. ພວກຄົນງານສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ໃນອະເມຣິກາໃນສະໄໝກ່ອນປີ ໑໙໐໐ ນັ້ນເປັນພວກທີ່ມີວິຊາເຄິ່ງກາງ ຫຼືບໍ່ມີວິຊາຕິດໄມ້ຕິດມືກັນເລີຍ ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ໄດ້ຜ່ານໂຮງຮຽນການຊ່າງແຕ່ຢ່າງໃດ. ພວກຄົນງານຜູ້ຊາຍມີ ໘໐ % ແລະຄົນງານຜູ້ຍິງມີຢູ່ ໒໐ % . ພວກຄົນງານຜູ້ຊາຍນັ້ນເຮັດວຽກໜັກຕາມໂຮງງານ ຫຼື ຕາມໄຮ່ນາຕ່າງໆ. ສ່ວນພວກຄົນງານຜູ້ຍິງນັ້ນເຮັດວຽກຕາມໂຮງງານຢາສູບ ໂຮງງານເຮັດເສື້ອຜ້າ ຫຼື ໂຮງງານຕ່ຳຜ້າດັ່ງນີ້ເປັນຕົ້ນ. ພວກຄົນງານເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ເງິນຄ່າຈ້າງຕ່ຳ ໂດຍເຮັດວຽກເປັນເວລາຫຼາຍຊົ່ວໂມງ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ມີປະກັນພັຍ ຫຼື ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອດ້ານອື່ນແຕ່ປະການໃດ. ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນໃນເວລານັ້ນຍັງອ່ອນແອຢູ່ແລະບໍ່ສາມາດຈະຊ່ວຍເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຢ່າງເຕັມເມັດເຕັມໜ່ວຍ. ອີກຢ່າງນຶ່ງພວກນາຍຈ້າງຫຼາຍຄົນກໍບໍ່ມັກສະມາຄົມດັ່ງກ່າວອີກດ້ວຍ.

໒໙.໑.໒. ໃນຣະຍະທີ່ໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມ ຂຍາຍຕົວຂຶ້ນຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວນັ້ນ ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນກໍໄດ້ກ້າວຂວາງອອກເຊັ່ນກັນເພື່ອໃຫ້ມີຄວາມສ້ຳເກື່ງກັນກັບພວກໂຮງງານດັ່ງກ່າວ. ໃນຕອນນີ້ພວກຄົນງານທັງຫຼາຍອາໃສສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນທຸກຢ່າງໃນການໃຫ້ໄດ້ມາຊຶ່ງຜົນປະໂຍດຕ່າງໆ. ພວກຜູ້ນຳໃນວົງການຄ້າຕ້ອງການຄວບຄຸມກິຈການທົ່ວໄປ ດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຕັ້ງສະມາຄົມການຄ້າ ຫຼື ຕັ້ງການຜູກຂາດຂຶ້ນ. ສະມາຄົມການຄ້າເຫຼົ່ານີ້ເປັນຜູ້ພິຈາຣະນາເຣື່ອງເງິນເດືອນແລະຊົ່ວໂມງເຮັດວຽກຂອງຄົນງານ. ນອກຈາກນີ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າມີນະໂຍບາຍຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງໃນການຈ້າງຫຼືໄລ່ຄົນງານ ນີ້ກໍເພື່ອບໍ່ໃຫ້ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນມີອິດທິພົນຢູ່ໃນໂຮງງານຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

໒໙.໑.໓. ໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາຕັ້ງແຕ່ປີ ໑໘໙໐ ຫາປີ ໑໙໑໙ ໄດ້ມີສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນເກີດຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍສະມາຄົມດ້ວຍກັນເຊັ່ນວ່າ The National Labor Union, the Knights of Labor ແລະ the American Federation of Labor ໃນຣະຫວ່າງນີ້ພວກສະມາຄົມດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຮັບຜົນສຳເຣັດບາງຢ່າງ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໓ ສະພາໄດ້ຕັ້ງກະຊວງແຮງງານຂຶ້ນເພື່ອຄວບຄຸມກິຈກັມຂອງພວກຄົນງານ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໔ ໄດ້ມີດຳຣັດ The Clayton Antitrust Act ອອກມາເພື່ອບໍ່ໃຫ້ຣັຖບານໃຊ້ອຳນາດສັ່ງຢຸດການປະທ້ວງຕ່າງໆ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໔ ສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳຣັດ The Folette Seaman's Act ເພື່ອຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ພວກຄົນງານປະຈຳເຮືອບັນທຸກສິນຄ້າໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກນ້ອຍຊົ່ວໂມງກວ່າເດີມພ້ອມທັງໄດ້ຮັບການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອເບິ່ງແຍງດ້ານອື່ນໆຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ. ສຳຫຼັບພວກຄົນງານທີ່ເປັນເດັກນ້ອຍຢູ່ ຣັຖບານກໍໄດ້ໃຫ້ການເບິ່ງແຍງແກ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນໂດຍວາງຂອບເຂດອາຍຸໃນການຈ້າງເອົາເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ແຕ່ໂດຍທົ່ວໄປແລ້ວຜົນປະໂຍດຕ່າງໆເຫຼົ່ານີ້ຍັງບໍ່ເປັນພື້ນຖານສຳຫຼັບຄົນງານທົ່ວໄປເທື່ອ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນພວກຄົນງານຈຶ່ງໄດ້ພາກັນປະກອບການປະທ້ວງຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍຄັ້ງດ້ວຍກັນ ພ້ອມກັບຮຽກຮ້ອງໃຫ້ຣັຖບານແກ້ໄຂຊ່ວຍເຂົາເຈົ້າອີກດ້ວຍ.

໒໙.໑.໔. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໒໐ ນັ້ນ ອິດທິພົນຂອງສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນຊຸບຕົວລົງຍ້ອນວ່າໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມຕ່າງໆມີຄວາມຮຸ່ງເຮືອງແລະມັ່ງຄັ່ງສົມບູນຂຶ້ນມາໃໝ່ໆແລະເຈົ້າຂອງບໍຣິສັດການຄ້າຕົວຫຼາຍສາມາດຂຶ້ນເງິນເດືອນແລະອຳນວຍການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອໃຫ້ແກ່ພວກຄົນງານຫຼາຍກວ່າທີ່ພວກສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນໄດ້ຮ້ອງຂໍມາ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນເຂົ້າເຈົ້າຍັງໄດ້ວາງນະໂຍບາຍຂອງເຂົ້າເຈົ້າເອງເພື່ອເອົາໃຈພວກຄົນງານເຊັ່ນ ນະໂຍບາຍ The open shop movement ຊຶ່ງເປີດໂອກາດໃຫ້ຫ້າງຮ້ານຕ່າງໆມີສິດຈ້າງເອົານັກງານຕາມໃຈຊອບ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນັ້ນຈຶ່ງມີຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍເຫັນຊອບກັບນະໂຍບາຍດັ່ງກ່າວ. ຍ້ອນນະໂຍບາຍທີ່ກ່າວມານີ້ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນໃນສໄມນັ້ນຈຶ່ງຂາດສະມາຊິກໄປຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ.

໒໙.໒. ການຊຸບຕົວຂອງສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ

໒໙.໒.໑. ໃນສໄມທີ່ເສດຖະກິດປັ່ນປ່ວນແລະຊຸດໂຊມຢ່າງໜັກນັ້ນສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນບໍ່ສາມາດໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອແກ່ຄົນງານໄດ້ກໍເພາະວ່າຈຳນວນຂອງຄົນວ່າງງານຢູ່ນັ້ນມີຫຼາຍເກີນໄປ. ໃນແຕ່ລະມື້ຈຳນວນຂອງຄົນທີ່ຖືກວ່າງງານມີປະມານ ໔໐໐໐ ຄົນ. ໃນເວລາທີ່ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ເຂົ້າຮັບຕຳແໜ່ງ ຄົນວ່າງງານມີ ໑໓ ລ້ານຄົນ. ດ້ວຍຄວາມຢ້ານກົວທີ່ຈະເສັຍວຽກເຮັດງານທຳ ແລະຍ້ອນບໍ່ຢາກເຮັດໃຫ້ນາຍຈ້າງເສັຍໃຈ ພວກຄົນງານທີ່ຍັງເຮັດວຽກໃຫ້ໂຮງງານຕ່າງໆຢູ່ນັ້ນຈຶ່ງບໍ່ເຂົ້າເປັນສະມາຊິກຂອງສະມາຄົມແຮງງານ. ແຕ່ເຂົ້າເຈົ້າຂໍຄວາມຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຈາກຣັຖບານຕ່າງຫາກ.

໒໙.໒.໒. ງານທີ່ໄດ້ຈັດໂຄງການ New Deal ທີ່ນຳຂຶ້ນມາກໍເພາະວ່າປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosevelt ມີຄວາມປະສົງຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອແກ່ພວກຄົນງານ ດ້ວຍວິທີທາງນັ້ນເອງ. ທ່ານມີຄວາມໝັ້ນໃຈວ່າເມື່ອພວກຄົນເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນມີວຽກເຮັດງານທຳແລະມີລາຍໄດ້ແລ້ວເຂົ້າເຈົ້າຈະຕ້ອງໃຊ້ເງິນທີ່ໄດ້ມານັ້ນຊື້ເອົາເຄື່ອງຂອງທີ່ຜລິດຈາກໂຮງງານຕ່າງໆ. ໃນທຳນອງນີ້ການຄ້າກໍຈະຟື້ນຕົວຂຶ້ນມາແລະການຝືດເຄືອງຂອງເສດຖະກິດກໍຈະສິ້ນສຸດໄປ. ສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳຣັດຫຼາຍຕັ້ງເພື່ອໃຫ້ຄວາມຄຸ້ມກັນແກ່ພວກຄົນງານພ້ອມກັບອະນຸມັດເງິນອອກມາເພີ່ມສຳຫຼັບໃຊ້ໃນໂຄງການຕ່າງໆຂອງຣັຖ. ຕົວຢ່າງຂອງດຳຣັດທີ່ເປັນປະໂຍດແກ່ພວກນັກງານກໍຄືດຳຣັດ The Wagner Act ຂອງປີ ໑໙໓໕ ຊຶ່ງຖື The yellow dog contract ແລະ The black list ເປັນສິ່ງຜິດກົດໝາຍ. ອີກດຳຣັດໜຶ່ງກໍຄືດຳຣັດ The Social Security Act ຂອງປີ ໑໙໓໕ ຊຶ່ງຄ້ຳປະກັນອານາຄົດຂອງພວກນັກງານໃນເວລາເຖົ້າແກ່ ຫຼື ເວລາວ່າງງານ.

໖໙.໓. ຄວາມກ້າວໜ້າຂອງສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ : AFL ແລະ CIO

໖໙.໓.໑. ສະຫະພັນສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນທີ່ມີຊື່ວ່າ The American Federation Labor (AFL) ໄດ້ຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໘໘໖. ສະມາຊິກຂອງສະຫະພັນດັ່ງກ່າວເກືອບທັງໝົດແມ່ນສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນທີ່ມີຝີມືທາງຫັດຖະກັມ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໕ ໄດ້ມີຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນປະຈຳໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມເຂົ້າຮ່ວມສະຫະພັນ AFL ແຕ່ວ່າທ່ານ William Green ປະທານສະຫະພັນ AFL ໃນເວລານັ້ນບໍ່ເຫັນດີ. ສະນັ້ນທ່ານຈຶ່ງໄດ້ລົງຄະແນນສຽງຄັດຄ້ານ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ເອງທ່ານ John L.Lewis ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຈັດຕັ້ງອົງການສຳຫຼັບພະນັກງານປະຈຳໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມຂອງທ່ານເອງເອີ້ນວ່າ The Committee for Industrial Organization (CIO) ອົງການ CIO ປະກອບດ້ວຍສະມາຊິກຊຶ່ງເປັນຄົນງານປະຈຳໂຮງງານໃຫຍ່ຕ່າງໆເຊັ່ນ ໂຮງງານສ້າງກຳປັ່ນ ໂຮງງານສ້າງຣົດຍົນ ຫຼື ໂຮງງານຫຼໍ່ເຫຼັກ ດັ່ງນີ້ເປັນຕົ້ນ. ອົງການ AFL ແລະອົງການ CIO ມີແນວທາງຄວາມຄິດຜິດແປກກັນຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ ຈຶ່ງເປັນເຫດໃຫ້ສອງອົງການດັ່ງກ່າວບໍ່ສາມາດຮ່ວມງານກັນໄດ້. ການແຕກແຍກໄດ້ດຳເນີນຈົນເຖິງປີ ໑໙໕໕. ທັງສອງອົງການຕ່າງຝ່າຍຕ່າງກໍຈະເຣີນເຕີບໂຕຂຶ້ນມາຢ່າງສມ່ຳສເມີ. ໂດຍຊ່ວງຊິງກັນຮັບເອົາຄົນງານທຸກປະເພດເຂົ້າໃນອົງການຂອງຕົນ. ສະມາຊິກຂອງອົງການ AFL ເປັນຄົນງານທີ່ມີມືອາຊີບ ຫຼື ມີວິຊາແບບດຽວກັນ ສ່ວນອົງການ CIO ປະກອບດ້ວຍພະນັກງານທີ່ບໍ່ມີຝີມືຮ່ວມນຳເປັນບາງຈຳນວນ.

໖໙.໔. ພວກຄົນງານໃນອະເມຣິກາປັດຈຸບັນ

໖໙.໔.໑. ໃນປີ ໑໙໕໕ ອົງການ AFL ແລະ CIO ໄດ້ຮ່ວມເຂົ້າກັນແລະໄດ້ກາຍເປັນການຈັດຕັ້ງຂອງກັມມະກອນຄົນງານທີ່ໃຫຍ່ທີ່ສຸດໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ອົງການຈຳພວກນີ້ຮັບເອົາພະນັກງານຫຼືຄົນງານທຸກປະເພດເຂົ້າເປັນສະມາຊິກຖ້າຫາກເຂົາຫາກມີຄວາມປະສົງ. ສະມາຊິກຂອງ AFL-CIO ໃນເວລານີ້ມີເຖິງ ໖໐ ລ້ານຄົນ. ພວກສະມາຊິກຕ່າງໆເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ຮັບຜົນປະໂຫຍດຕ່າງໆຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ພ້ອມກັບມີຄວາມຢູ່ດີກິນດີກວ່າເດີມກ່ອນສະຫະພັນກັມມະກອນທີ່ກ່າວມານັ້ນເອງ.

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຊອກຫາສັບ:

ຄຳແນະນຳ: ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບ ແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນໃນຕະລາງສັບອ້າງຊຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບ ດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບສັບນັ້ນແລ້ວ ໃຫ້ຂຽນເອົາໄວ້ ພ້ອມຄວາມໝາຍ ຫຼື ຄຳອະທິບາຍ.

Direction: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

OPEN SHOP MOVEMENT
FAMILY EXPERIENCE
MALE WORKER
VOCATIONAL SCHOOL
SEMI SKILL
DEPARTMENT OF LABOR
CRAFT UNION
NATIONAL LABOR UNION
ORGANIZATION
OPEN SHOP
VICTORIES
AMERICAN FEDERATION OF LABOR

JOB
PROFIT
WAGE
LABOR
BENEFIT
SALARY
STRIKE
FORCE
CONGRESS
SPLIT
FARMER

KNIGHT
AFL
INFLUENCE
INSURANCE
RURAL AREA
TRAINING
TEXTILE
SYSTEM
INJUNCTION
MONOPOLY
UPSET
JOIN

MONEY
CRAFT
UNION
CIO
SAILOR
TRUST
LEADERS
FACTORY
OFFICE
MEMBER
MORE
AUTO

A	M	E	R	I	C	A	N	F	E	D	E	R	A	T	I	O	N	O	F	L	N
M	O	N	E	Y	U	M	O	N	O	P	O	L	Y	B	I	C	H	L	O	A	O
S	A	I	L	O	R	S	A	F	L	C	O	N	G	R	E	S	S	O	R	B	I
V	O	C	A	T	I	O	N	A	L	S	C	H	O	O	L	O	A	N	C	O	N
I	P	C	O	N	O	S	E	M	I	S	K	I	L	L	A	U	T	O	E	R	U
N	E	F	O	R	C	E	S	I	T	T	R	A	I	N	I	N	G	X	N	U	R
S	N	S	T	R	I	K	E	L	S	J	O	M	F	A	R	M	E	R	I	I	O
U	S	U	P	S	E	T	O	Y	U	O	B	A	O	F	F	I	C	E	Z	C	B
R	H	M	E	M	B	E	R	E	R	B	A	L	A	B	O	U	E	C	A	T	A
A	O	C	R	A	F	T	E	X	T	I	L	E	C	A	N	A	C	T	T	O	L
N	P	P	O	H	S	N	E	P	O	S	L	W	A	G	E	E	N	H	I	R	A
C	V	S	S	O	S	P	L	I	T	A	I	K	C	I	O	L	L	N	S	S	N
E	E	A	Y	V	A	S	E	E	I	N	F	L	U	E	N	C	E	K	N	I	O
I	M	L	S	M	O	R	E	N	Z	Y	C	R	A	F	T	U	N	I	O	N	I
L	E	A	T	J	O	I	N	C	E	M	P	L	O	Y	E	R	I	A	L	L	T
O	N	R	E	X	B	E	N	E	F	I	T	I	N	J	U	N	C	T	I	O	N
R	T	Y	M	D	E	P	A	R	T	M	E	N	T	O	F	L	A	B	O	R	N

໔. ບົດຝຶກ:

ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຫຍກຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ແຕ່ລະປະໂຫຍກ ແລ້ວໝາຍອັກສອນ T ໃສ່ໜ້າປະໂຫຍກທີ່ທ່ານເຫັນວ່າຖືກ ແລະ ໝາຍອັກສອນ F ໃສ່ຖ້າທ່ານເຫັນວ່າປະໂຫຍກນັ້ນຜິດ.

________ ໑. ສິ່ງທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດຢ່າງນຶ່ງສຳຫຼັບໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມໃນສະຫະຣັດອະເມຣິກາ ແມ່ນພວກ ພວກຄົນງານ.

_____ ໒. ກ່ອນປີ ໑໙໐໐ ພວກຄົນງານຕ່າງ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຫ້າມໂຮງຮຽນການຊ່າງ.

_____ ໓. ພວກຄົນງານຜູ້ຍິງມີ ໒໐% ແລະ ຄົນງານຜູ້ມີ ໘໐%.

_____ ໔. ພວກຄົນງານຜູ້ຍິງ ເຮັດວຽກຕາມ ໂຮງງານຢາສູບ ໂຮງງານເຮັດເສື້ອຜ້າ ຫຼື ໂຮງງານ ຕຳຫ້າ.

_____ ໕. ກ່ອນປີ ໑໙໐໐ ພວກຄົນງານມີ ປະກັນພັຍ ແລະ ມີການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອດ້ານອື່ນໆ.

_____ ໖. ພວກຜູ້ນຳໃນວົງການຄ້າ ຕ້ອງການຄວບຄຸມກິຈການທົ່ວໄປ ດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຕັ້ງສະມາຄົມ ການຄ້າ ຫຼື ຕັ້ງການຜູກຂາດຂຶ້ນ.

_____ ໗. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໓ ສະພາໄດ້ຕັ້ງ ກະຊວງແຮງງານຂຶ້ນ.

_____ ໘. ໃນປີ ໑໙໑໕ ສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳລັດ The Folette Seaman's Act ເພື່ອ ຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ພວກຄົນງານປະຈຳເຮືອບັນທຸກສິນຄ້າໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກນ້ອຍຊົ່ວໂມງກວ່າເດີມ ພ້ອມທັງໄດ້ ຮັບການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອເບິ່ງແຍງດ້ານອື່ນໆຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ.

_____ ໙. ການຈ້າງເອົາຄົນງານຕາມໃຈຊອບຂອງນາຍຈ້າງບໍ່ສາມາດຈ້າງຄົນງານຕາມໃຈເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

_____ ໑໐. ການທີ່ໄດ້ຈັດໂຄງການ New Deal ນັ້ນຂຶ້ນມາກໍ່ເພາະວ່າ ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Roosvelt ມີຄວາມປະສົງຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອແກ່ພວກຄົນງານໂດຍທຸກວິທີທາງນັ້ນເອງ.

ຄ. ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງກັນ : ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາຄຳເວົ້າແຕ່ລະຄຳໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໂດຍຂຽນຄຳຕອບຊຶ່ງເປັນຕົວເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ປະໄວ້ນັ້ນ ສຳຫຼັບ ຄຳຕອບທຸກຄຳ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
໑. ການປະທ້ວງ	ກ. ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນປະກອບດ້ວຍຜູ້ມີ ວິຊາຊີບ ໄດ້ຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໘໘໖.
໒. ບັນຊີມືດ	ຂ. ໂຮງການຂອງພວກຄົນງານໄດ້ຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນ ເພື່ອຕໍ່ສູ້ກັບນາຍຈ້າງ ເພື່ອຕໍ່ວ່າເວົ້າ ຄ່າແຮງງານສູງ ແລະ ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຢ່າງອື່ນ ແລະ ເຮັດວຽກນ້ອຍລົງ.
໓.	ງ. ຄວບຄຸມທັງໝົດ ຫຼື ຮັບໃຊ້ສະເພາະວຽກການສິ່ງດຽວເທົ່ານັ້ນ.
໔. ການຜູກຂາດ	ຈ. ງົດການແຮງງານບໍ່ຮັບເອົາເຮັດວຽກ.
໕. ຕົກ	ສ. ໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມ ແລະ ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນທີ່ມີສີມືທາງຫັດຖະກັມຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໙໕໕.
໖. ສະມາຄົມແຮງງານກັມມະກອນ	ຊ. ສານສັ່ງໃຫ້ຢຸດການປະທ້ວງ.
໗. ສະຫະພັນສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ	ຍ. ໂຮງຮຽນຝຶກສອນວິຊາຊ່າງ.
໘. ການໃຊ້ອໍານາດບັງຄັບ	ດ. ແບ່ງອອກເປັນສອງຈໍາພວກ.
໙. ໂຮງຮຽນການຊ່າງ	ຕ. ຄໍາຕົກລົງລະຫວ່າງນາຍຈ້າງ ແລະ ຄົນງານ ສັນຍາວ່າຈະບໍ່ເຂົ້າຮ່ວມໃນສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ
໑໐. ຕົກ	ຖ. ບັນຊີຊື່ຂອງສະມາຊິກສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ ຈາກພວກທີ່ຕ້ານສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນ ເພື່ອພວກນາຍຈ້າງຈະບໍ່ຮັບເອົາພວກທີ່ມີຊື່ນັ້ນເຮັດວຽກ.

໔. ການຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ : ຈົ່ງຂຽນຄຳເວົ້າ ຫຼື ຕອນຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ໃຫ້ໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກ ໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍອັນຖືກຕ້ອງ: ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນແຮງງານ ກະຊວງແຮງງານ ການໃຊ້ອຳນາດບັງຄັບ ວອຣກຊັອບ ໂຮງງານຕ່ຳຜ້າ ສະມາຄົມການຄ້າຫຼືການຜູກຂາດ ການຈ້າງເອົາຄົນງານຕາມໃຈຊອບຂອງນາຍຈ້າງ ເງິນເບັ້ຍບຳນານເວລາເຖົ້າ ສະມາຄົມກັມມະກອນພື້ນຝີມືທາງດ້ານຫັດຖະກັມ ມີຄວາມຮູ້ຝີມືດີ .

໑. ສະມາຊິກຂອງອົງການ   ໒໐ ລ້ານກ່ວາຄົນ ແລະ ສະມາຊິກເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນໄດ້ຮັບຜົນປະໂຍດຕ່າງໆຫຼາຍອັນພ້ອມກັບມີ ______________________________.

໒. ສະຫະພັນສະມາຄົມ   ໄດ້ຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໘໘໖ ແລະ ພວກສະມາຊິກແມ່ນພວກ ____________ ______________________________ .

໓. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໕ ______________________ ຕັ້ງຂຶ້ນເພື່ອປະກັນພວກຄົນງານ ໃນເວລາເຂົ້າເຈົ້າເຖົ້າ ຫຼື ວ່າງງານ.

໔. ພວກຜູ້ນຳໃນອົງການຄ້າ ໄດ້ຈັດຕັ້ງ ______________________________ ເພື່ອເຂົ້າເຈົ້າຈະໄດ້ຄວບຄຸມກິຈການທົ່ວໄປ.

໕. ໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໒໐ ນັ້ນ ອິດທິພົນຂອງ ______________________________ ຢຸບຕົວລົງ ຍ້ອນວ່າໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມຕ່າງໆມີຄວາມຮຸ່ງເຮືອງບົ່ງຕົວສົມບູນດີ.

໖. ໃນປີ ໑໙໓໘ ສະພາໄດ້ຕັ້ງ ______________________ ເພື່ອເບິ່ງແຍງຄົນງານຕ່າງໆ.

໗. ດຳລັດ   ບົ່ງໄວ້ວ່າ ຣັຖບານບໍ່ສາມາດໃຊ້ ____________ ______________ ເພື່ອລະງັບການປະທ້ວງ.

571

໘. ພວກຜູ້ນຳໃນວົງການ ຕ້ອງການຄວບຄຸມກິດຈະການທົ່ວໄປ ດັ່ງນັ້ນເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຕັ້ງ ____________
______________________________ .

໙. ຄົນງານຜູ້ຍິງເຮັດວຽກຕາມໂຮງງານ ຢາສູບ ໂຮງງານເສື້ອຜ້າ ຫຼື ____________________ .

໑໐. ຄົນງານຜູ້ຊາຍເຮັດວຽກ ______________ ຢູ່ຕາມໂຮງງານ ຫຼື ໄຮ່ນາຕ່າງໆ.

Section VIII
World Leadership In The Nuclear Age

ຫມວດ ຮ : ການນຳພາຂອງໂລກໃນຍຸກນິວເຄລັຍ

ພາກ ສອງ : ບັນຫາໃນການນຳພາຂອງໂລກ

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ :

cold war : ສົງຄາມເຢັນ

A cold war occured when the Communist Bloc and the Capitalist Free World tried to expand their influence and control over the rest of the world.

ideology : ລັດທິ

The difference between the communist and capitalist - democartic ideologies became greater and greater.

obtain : ມີ

In 1949 both the Soviet Union and the U.S.A. obtained the atomic bomb.

communism : ລະບອບຄອມມູຍນິສ

Eastern Europe : ຢູໂຣບຕາເວັນອອກ

The U.S. policy was to try to limit the expansion of Communism outside the nations of Eastern Europe.

sphere of influence : ວົງອິດທິພົນ

Many small countries in Eastern Europe belonged within the sphere of influence of Soviet Union.

rebel : ການຈາລະຈົນ

The Soviets helped rebel groups in Asia, Africa, and Latin America to revolt and to overthrow their governments.

guerilla : ກອງໂຈນ

The government forces were attacked by the guerillas near by the forest.

legitimate government : ລັດຖະບານທີ່ຖືກຕ້ອງຕາມກົດໝາຍ

Until 1972, the U.S. recognized Chiang Kai-Shek's Republic of China as the legitimate government of China.

subversion : ການກໍ່ກວນ

The U.S. helped South Vietnam fight against communist subversion.

multinational forces : ກຳລັງນາໆຊາດ

In the Dominican Republic, multinational forces replaced the American Army and helped to arrange a national election.

READING

30.1. THE ROOTS OF THE COLD WAR

30.1.1. After the Second World War, the world was divided into two blocs: the Communist Bloc and the Capitalist Free World. Both blocs tried to expand their influence and control over the rest of the world. Increasingly, the difference between the communist and capitalist-democratic **ideologies** became greater and greater. In 1949, both the Soviet Union and the U.S.A. **obtained** the atomic bomb. The entire world feared the possibility that the **cold war** would lead to an atomic war between these two countries.

30.1.2. At the end of World War II many of the small countries of **Eastern Europe** aligned themselves with the Soviet Union. The Soviet **sphere of influence** extended over Poland, Rumania, Hungary, Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia and Eastern Germany. There were many attempts to overthrow the Communist regimes in both Poland and Hungary, but all of these revolts were crushed by Russian forces. After 1945, American foreign policy was directed toward confining the expansion of Communism to Eastern Europe.

30.1.3. Despite the American efforts to limit the spread of Communism, the Soviet Union and her allies began helping **rebel** groups in Asia, Africa, and Latin America to revolt and to overthrow their governments. If the revolutions were successful, the new rebel governments would ally themselves with Russia. To curb further Communist expansion, the United States had many plans for helping these poor and underdeveloped countries. Along with economic aid, the U.S. government gave these vulnerable countries weapons to be used against the communist guerillas.

30.2. THE AREAS OF CONFROTATION

30.2.1. During the period known as the cold war, there were several areas throughout the world where the United States found itself in direct conflict with the Soviet Union. The first confrontation occurred in Eastern Germany. In 1945, when the Allies agreed on a plan to control a defeated Germany, the Soviet Union got control over the eastern part of Germany and one-fourth of the city of Berlin. The Allies were given control of West Germany and the rest of Berlin. Because Berlin was located inside the land which was under communist control, the Russians were able to cause many problems for West-Berliners. One of the most serious problems occurred in 1948 when the Russians and the East Germans blockaded all land transportation to West Berlin from West Germany. Soon the West Berliners found themselves facing a food shortages and starvation. The U.S. and its allies had to transport all supplies to Berlin by airplane for 321 days. At last, in 1949, the Communists backed off from their attempts to control West Berlin. After the Berlin Crisis, the Communists continued to create problems in other parts of the world.

30.2.2. The biggest victory of the Communist bloc occurred in China. In 1949 Communist forces under the leadership of Mao Tse-Tung defeated nationalist forces under the leadership of Chiang Kai-Shek. Chiang Kai-Shek and his followers,were forced to flee the Chinese Mainland. They withdrew to Taiwan where Chiang continued to head the government of the Republic of China. The American government refused to recognize the

Communist' government on mainland China. Because it recognized the Republic of China of Chiang Kai-Shek as the **legitimate government** of China, it let Taiwan maintain its membership in the Security Council of the United Nations.

30.2.3. Korea and Vietnam were other areas of confrontation between the Communist bloc and the Free World. In 1950 North Korean Armies invaded South Korea. American and United Nations forces stopped the invasion after three years of bloody fighting. In 1953, at the Pan Mun-Jong Conference, all countries agreed to maintain the division of the Korea Peninsula. The North belonged to the Communist Bloc and the South to the Free World. To protect this young nation, the U.S. kept a number of its armies in South Korea.

30.2.4. Vietnam was the stage for yet another confrontation. In 1945, when France wanted to reassert its control over Vietnam, it was opposed by Vietnam patriots who united themselves behind a coalition government led by Ho Chi Minh. Soon, conflict broke out between the Communists and the anti-communists within the coalition government; many anti-communists broke away from the Communist-dominated government and organized their own pro-western government that sided with France and the U.S. Ho Chi Minh and the Vietnamese Communists received economic aid, weapons and supplies from the Soviet Union and China. In 1954, Ho Chi Minh's forces defeated the French at Dien Bien Phu. At that time, both sides met at the Geneva Conference and agreed to stop the war. The outcome of that meeting was a divided Vietnam where the northern area, known as North Vietnam, sided with Soviet Union and Communist China, and the southern area, known as South Vietnam, allied itself with the Free World. The U.S. helped South Vietnam by many means, both economic and military, in an effort to protect South Vietnam against subversion and invasion from the North. In 1959, the communists started a guerilla war in South Vietnam. The war escalated in 1965 with the participation of American and North Vietnamese forces. In 1973, both sides signed a cease-fire agreement and the U.S. withdrew its forces from South Vietnam. In 1975, the North Vietnamese, with the help of massive aid from Russia and China, mounted a major offensive in South Vietnam and took control of the whole country.

30.2.5. In addition to Europe, Africa, and Asia, the Communists also wanted to extend their influence to the Caribbean Island. In 1959, Fidel Castro overthrew the regime of Fulgencio Batista in Cuba and established a pro-communist government. In 1960, hundreds of thousands of Cubans fled Cuba and came to live in the U.S. These people hoped to return to Cuba and fight for their freedom, but the plan failed at the Bay of Pigs in 1961. After this, the Cubans sided even more closely with the Russians. Elsewhere in the

Caribbean, the dictatorship of Trujillo in the Dominican Republic was overthrown by a revolution in 1961. In 1962, the Dominicans regained their right to vote after 38 years. They elected the leader of a left wing party, Juan Bosch, as their president. Juan Bosch established a socialist government. This socialist government lasted only 7 months and was overthrown by a group of military officers. Juan Bosch tried to regain his position by leading a mass uprising on April 24, 1965. A Civil War broke out in the Dominican Republic which threatened the lives and properties of the American citizens living in that country. The U.S. sent in marines to protect Americans as well as to stop the expansions of communist influences in this hemisphere. The American and Dominican forces were eventually replaced by a **multinational force** made up of troops from various Latin American countries. The mission of this multinational force was to keep peace and to arrange with the leaders of both sides to create a provisional government. This government held a national election on June 1, 1966, and Joaquin Balaguer become President.

EXERCISES

I. Word Search Puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

BOMB
FREE
WORLD
WAR
PART
REBEL
CUBA
VETO
ROOTS

ALLIES
SOVIET
CONTROL
OBTAIN
EXPAND
WEAPON
REPLACE
KOREA
CREATE

IDEOLOGY
DEFEAT
MILITARY
GUERILLA
ECONOMIC
RUSSIA
POLAND
LEADERS

OVERTHROW
LEGITIMATE
DOMINICAN
COMMUNIST
SUBVERSION
DIVISION
SOCIALIST
INFLUENCE

MULTINATIONAL FORCES
COLD WAR
CONFRONTATION
EASTERN EUROPE
ATOMIC BOMB
SOUTH VIETNAM
SECURITY COUNCIL
MAO TSE TUNG
WEST BERLIN

H C S E C U R I T Y C O U N C I L V E T O

E H C O N F R O N T A T I O N K O R E A M

M I O O C O I O U E R T H R O W E O C W A

I N N C O L D W A R O U R R S C C R R E O

S E T G M A E A S T E R N E U R O P E S T

P S R U M L O B T A I N R B B W N O A T S

H E O E U L L O F R E E S E V E O L T B E

E M L R N I O M W O R L D L E A M A E E T

R A P I I E G B R O O T S O R D I N N R U

E I A L S S Y E X P A N D O S O C D O L N

L N R L T Y E C N E U L F N I N M O L I G

E L T A T O M I C B O M B S O V I E T N C

A A L E G I T I M A T E N O N R U S S I A

D N M U L T I N A T I O N A L F O R C E S

E D I V I S I O N D O M I N A T E W A R O

R S O U T H V I E T N A M D E F E A T S E

S M I L I T A R Y D O M I N I C A N O A O

O S O C I A L I S T R E P L A C E C U B A

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

	A	B
____	1. cold war	a. an enlargement of the territory.
____	2. ideology	b. the struggle between the United States and the Soviet Union which followed the end of World War II.
____	3. sphere of influence	c. an area within a nation or territory in which another more powerful nation has more control over business or government.
____	4. rebel	d. one who lives in Berlin, Germany.
____	5. cease-fire	e. the body of ideas reflecting the social needs and aspirations of a group or culture.
____	6. legitimate	f. an uprising against an authority, a revolt.
____	7. crush	g. to stop fighting.
____	8. guerilla	h. in compliance with the law, lawful.
____	9. expansion	i. to suppress by force.
____	10. Berliner	j. warfare carried on by bands of people not part of a regular army; a fighter in such a band of people.

III. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put a F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. To stop the Communist expansion, the United States had many plans for helping poor and underdeveloped countries.

____ 2. After World War II, the Soviet Union controlled all parts of Germany.

____ 3. The U.S. and Great Britain had to carry all supplies to West Berlin by airplane for 321 days when the Communists forbade all land transportation from West Germany to West Berlin.

____ 4. Mao Tse Tung was the leader of the Chinese Communist.

____ 5. South Korea belonged to the Free World and the U.S. kept a number of its forces in this area.

____ 6. In 1975, North Vietnam, with massive aid from Russia and China, mounted a major offensive in South Vietnam and took control of the whole country.

____ 7. In 1959, Fidel Castro overthrew the regime of Fugencio Batista in Cuba and established a pro-communist government.

____ 8. The Cubans wanted to come back and fight for their freedom, but the plan failed at the Bay of Pigs in 1961

____ 9. The U.S. did not send their marines to protect the Americans nor to stop the expansion of communist influence in Dominican Republic.

____10. The American and Dominican forces were replaced by a multinational force made up of troops from various Latin American countries.

IV. Fill in the blanks: Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: the Communist Bloc and the Free World, atomic bombs, ideologies, sphere of influence, land blockade, starvation, rebel, confrontation, invaded, subversion.

1. The U.S. helped South Vietnam with many plans, both economic and military, in an effort to protect South Vietnam against _________ and invasion from the North.
2. In 1950 North Korean Armies ___________ South Korea.
3. Korea and Vietnam were other areas of ___________ between the Communists and the Free World.
4. The West Beliners were in a difficult situation and faced _________.
5. The Soviet Union and East Germany _________ all overland transportation to West Berlin from West Germany.
6. The Soviet Union and her allies helped the _________ groups in Asia, Africa, and Latin America to revolt and to overthrow their governments.
7. After the Second World War, the world was divided into two blocs: _____________ .
8. The small countries in Eastern Europe belonged to the ________________ of Russia.
9. In 1949, both the Soviet Union and the U.S.A. obtained the ___________.
10. The difference between the communist and capitalist democratic ____________ became greater and greater.

ບົດອ່ານ

ມ໐.໑. ຕົ້ນຕໍຂອງສົງຄາມເຢັນ :

ມ໐.໑.໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງ ໂລກໄດ້ຖືກແບ່ງອອກເປັນສອງກຸ່ມຄື ກຸ່ມຄອມມູນິສ ແລະ ກຸ່ມໂລກນາຍທຶນເສຣີ. ທັງສອງກຸ່ມດັ່ງກ່າວຕ່າງກໍໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມຂະຫຍາຍອິດທິພົນຂອງຕົນ ແລະ ຄອບຄຸມສ່ວນອື່ນຂອງໂລກ. ຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງຣະຫວ່າງລັດທິຄອມມູນິສ ແລະ ລັດທິປະຊາທິປະໄຕນາຍທຶນ ໄດ້ເພີ່ມທະວີຂຶ້ນເລື້ອຍໆ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໔໙ ທັງສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດ ແລະ ສະຫະຣັດອະເມຣິກາ ຕ່າງກໍມີຣະເບີດ ປະຣາມະນູ. ໂລກທັງໝົດເກີດມີຄວາມຢ້ານກົວວ່າ ສົງຄາມເຢັນນັ້ນອາດຈະພາໃຫ້ເກີດມີສົງຄາມຣະເບີດປະຣາມະນູຣະຫວ່າງສອງປະເທດດັ່ງກ່າວນັ້ນໄດ້.

ມ໐.໑.໒. ໃນທ້າຍສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງ ປະເທດນ້ອຍຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໃນຢູໂຣບຕາເວັນອອກໄດ້ມາກັບ ຣວມກຸ່ມກັບສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດ. ອິງອິດທິພົນຂອງໂຊວຽດໄດ້ຂະຫຍາຍໄປເຖິງປະເທດ Poland, Rumania, Hungary,Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia ແລະ Eastern Germany ຄວາມພະຍາຍາມເພື່ອໂຄ້ນລົ້ມລະບອບຄອມມູນິສ ໄດ້ມີຂຶ້ນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຄັ້ງ ທັງໃນປະເທດ Poland ແລະ Hungary ແຕ່ການຕໍ່ຕ້ານທັງໝົດເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນໄດ້ຖືກປາບໂດຍກຳລັງຂອງຣັສເຊັຍ. ຫຼັງຈາກ ໑໙໔໔ ນະໂຍບາຍການຕ່າງປະເທດອະເມຣິກາ ໄດ້ຫັນທິດທາງໃສ່ການຈຳກັດການແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍຂອງລະບອບຄອມມູນິສໄປສູ່ຢູໂຣບຕາເວນອອກ.

ມ໐.໑.໓. ເຖິງແມ່ນວ່າ ສະຫະຣັຖຈະໄດ້ໃຊ້ຄວາມພະຍາຍາມເພື່ອຈຳກັດການແຜ່ຫຼາຍຂອງລະບອບຄອມມູນິສກໍຕາມ ແຕ່ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດພ້ອມດ້ວຍປະເທດພັນທະມິດຂອງຕົນກໍຍັງໄດ້ໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອແກ່ພວກກຸ່ມຕໍ່ຕ້ານໃນເອເຊັຍ, ອາຟຣິກາ ແລະ ອະເມຣິກາລາຕິນ ເພື່ອຕໍ່ຕ້ານແລະໂຄ້ນລົ້ມຣັຖບານຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ຖ້າຫາກການປະຕິວັດ ໄດ້ຮັບສຳເຣັດ ຣັຖບານໃໝ່ຂອງພວກຕໍ່ຕ້ານກໍຈະເຂົ້າເປັນພັນທະມິດຂອງຣັສເຊັຍ. ເພື່ອຕັດການຂະຫຍາຍຂອງລະບອບຄອມມູນິສ ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ມີແຜນການຫຼາຍຢ່າງເພື່ອສຳຫຼັບຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອພວກລິບທຸກແລະປະເທດດ້ອຍພັດທະນາຕ່າງໆ. ພ້ອມດຽວກັນກັບການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອທາງເສດຖະກິດ ຣັຖບານສະຫະຣັຖ ໄດ້ມອບອາວຸດຕ່າງໆໃຫ້ແກ່ປະເທດທີ່ອ່ອນແອຕ່າງໆ ເພື່ອໃຊ້ສຳຫຼັບຕໍ່ສູ້ກັບພວກກອງໂຈນຄອມມູນິສ.

ມ໐.໔. ເຂດແດນແຫ່ງການຂັດແຍ່ງ :

ມ໐.໔.໑. ໃນສໄມທີ່ເອີ້ນກັນວ່າ ສົງຄາມເຢັນນັ້ນ ໄດ້ມີເຂດແດນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍແຫ່ງທົ່ວໄປໃນໂລກ ຈຶ່ງສະຫະລັດອະເມລິກາເອງໄດ້ມີການຂັດແຍ່ງໂດຍກົງກັບສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດ ເຂດແດນແຫ່ງການຂັດແຍ່ງເຂດທຳອິດນັ້ນເກີດໃນ ເຢຍລະມັນຕາເວັນອອກໃນປີ ໑໙໔໘ ໃນເວລາທີ່ກຸ່ມປະເທດພັນທະມິດໄດ້ຕັ້ງຄິດແຜນການເພື່ອລວບລວມເຢຍລະມັນທີ່ພ່າຍແພ້ສົງຄາມ. ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດໄດ້ຄອບຄອງດ້ານເຢຍລະມັນຕາເວັນອອກ ພ້ອມດ້ວຍນຶ່ງສ່ວນສີ່ຂອງເມືອງ Berlin. ສຳລັບພວກປະເທດພັນທະມິດນັ້ນ ຄອບຄອງເຢຍລະມັນຕາເວັນຕົກ ແລະ ສ່ວນເຫຼືອຂອງກຸງ Berlin . ເນື່ອງຈາກເມືອງ Berlin ຕັ້ງຢູ່ພາຍໃນດິນແດນຊຶ່ງຢູ່ພາຍໃຕ້ການຄວບຄຸມຂອງຄອມມູຍນິສ ດັ່ງນັ້ນພວກລັສເຊັຍຈຶ່ງສາມາດສ້າງບັນຫາຫຼາຍຢ່າງໃຫ້ແກ່ຊາວ Berlin ຕາເວັນຕົກ. ບັນຫານຶ່ງທີ່ໜັກໜ່ວງທີ່ສຸດນັ້ນໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໙໔໘ ໃນເວລາທີ່ພວກລັສເຊັຍ ແລະ ເຢຍລະມັນຕາເວັນອອກໄດ້ປິດການຂົນສົ່ງທາງພາກພື້ນດິນທັງໝົດທີ່ມາຈາກເຢຍລະມັນຕາເວັນຕົກໄປສູ່ Berlin ຕາເວັນຕົກ. ໃນບໍ່ນານຕໍ່ມາ ຊາວ Berlin ຕາເວັນຕົກໄດ້ປະເຊີນກັບບັນຫາຂາດແຄນອາຫານແລະອຶດຢາກ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນັ້ນສະຫະລັດ ແລະ ປະເທດພັນທະມິດຕ່າງໆຈຶ່ງຕ້ອງໄດ້ຂົນສະບຽງອາຫານໃນຈຳນວນພຽງພໍສຳລັບ ມ໒໑ ມື້ໄປຍັງ Berlin ໂດຍທາງເຮືອບິນ. ໃນທີ່ສຸດ ໃນປີ ໑໙໔໙ ພວກຄອມມູຍນິສໄດ້ຖອຍຄວາມພະຍາຍາມເພື່ອຄອບຄອງ Berlin ຕາເວັນຕົກ. ຫຼັງຈາກບັນຫາ Berlin ແລ້ວ ພວກຄອມມູຍນິສ ໄດ້ດຳເນີນການສ້າງບັນຫາຕໍ່ໄປໃນສ່ວນອື່ນຂອງໂລກ.

ມ.໔.໔. ໄຊຊະນະທີ່ຍິ່ງໃຫຍ່ທີ່ສຸດຂອງຝ່າຍຄອມມູຍນິສໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນປະເທດຈີນ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໔໙ ກຳລັງຂອງຄອມມູຍນິສພາຍໃຕ້ການນຳພາຂອງ Mao Tse Tung ໄດ້ທຳລາຍກຳລັງທັກຈາກຊຶ່ງຢູ່ພາຍໃຕ້ການນຳພາຂອງ Chiang Kai Shek: Chiang Kai Shek ແລະບັນດາພູດີຕາມໄດ້ຖືກບັງຄັບໃຫ້ລົບໜີຈາກແຜ່ນດິນໃຫຍ່. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຖອຍໄປຢູ່ໃນໄຕ້ຫວັນບ່ອນທີ່ Chiang Kai Shek ໄດ້ດຳເນີນການເປັນຫົວໜ້າຂອງລັດຖະບານສາທາລະນະລັດປະເທດຈີນ. ລັດຖະບານອະເມລິກັນ ປະຕິເສດບໍ່ຮັບຮູ້ລັດຖະບານຄອມມູຍນິສໃນແຜ່ນດິນໃຫຍ່ປະເທດຈີນ. ຍອມຮັບຮູ້ວ່າສາທາລະນະລັດປະເທດຈີນເປັນລັດຖະບານທີ່ຖືກຕ້ອງຕາມກົດໝາຍ ດັ່ງນັ້ນສະຫະລັດຈຶ່ງປ່ອຍໃຫ້ Taiwan ເປັນສະມາຊິກຂອງສະພາຄວາມໝັ້ນຄົງຂອງສະຫະປະຊາຊາດຢູ່ຕໍ່ໄປ.

໑໐.໖.໓. ປະເທດເກົາຫຼີ ແລະ ວຽດນາມ ເປັນເຂດຕັດແບ່ງລະຫວ່າງກຸ່ມປະເທດຄອມມຸຍນິສ ແລະ ໂລກເສຣີ ເຂດອື່ນອີກ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໕໐ ກອງທັບເກົາຫຼີເໜືອໄດ້ບຸກລຸກເກົາຫຼີໃຕ້. ກຳລັງທະຫານອະເມຣິກັນ ແລະ ສະຫະປະຊາຊາດ ໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ການບຸກລຸກນັ້ນຢຸດຕິລົງ ພາຍຫຼັງທີ່ມີການຕໍ່ສູ້ກັນຢ່າງນອງເລືອດເປັນເວລາສາມປີ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໕໓ ຢູ່ທີ່ກອງປະຊຸມໃນເມືອງ Pan Mun - Jong ປະເທດທັງໝົດໄດ້ຕົກລົງເຫັນດີໃຫ້ການແບ່ງແຍກເກົາຫຼີນັ້ນມີຢູ່ຕໍ່ໄປ. ພາກເໜືອຂອງເກົາຫຼີນັ້ນຂຶ້ນກັບກຸ່ມປະເທດຄອມມຸຍນິສ ສ່ວນພາກໃຕ້ຂຶ້ນກັບໂລກເສຣີ. ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນປະເທດໃໝ່ດັ່ງກ່າວ ສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ປ່ອຍກອງທະຫານຂອງຕົນໄວ້ໃນເກົາຫຼີໃຕ້ບາງຈຳນວນ.

໑໐.໖.໔. ປະເທດວຽດນາມໄດ້ເປັນເວທີແຫ່ງການຕັດແບ່ງອີກແຫ່ງໜຶ່ງ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໔໕ ໃນເວລາທີ່ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດຕ້ອງການກັບເຂົ້າໄປຄອບຄຸມວຽດນາມອີກເທື່ອໃໝ່ນັ້ນ ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດໄດ້ຖືກຕໍ່ຕ້ານຈາກບັນດາຜູ້ຮັກຊາດຂອງວຽດນາມຊຶ່ງໄດ້ທຳການຕ້ອນໂຮມກັນຢູ່ທາງເບື້ອງຂອງຣັຖບານປະສົມນຳໂດຍ Ho Chi Minh . ນັບແຕ່ນັ້ນມາການຕັດແບ່ງລະຫວ່າງພວກຄອມມຸຍນິສແລະພວກຕໍ່ຕ້ານຄອມມຸຍນິສໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນພາຍໃນຂອງຣັຖບານປະສົມ. ພວກຕໍ່ຕ້ານຄອມມຸຍນິສຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ຕັດຂາດຈາກຣັຖບານທີ່ພວກຄອມມຸຍນິສຄອບຄອງຢູ່ເປັນສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ແລະໄດ້ມາກໍ່ຕັ້ງຣັຖບານທີ່ພ້ອມກຸ່ມປະເທດຕາເວັນຕົກຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ ຊຶ່ງເຂົ້າຂ້າງປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດແລະສະຫະຣັຖ. Ho Chi Minh ແລະພວກຄອມມຸຍນິສວຽດນາມໄດ້ຮັບການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອດ້ານເສດຖະກິດ ດ້ານອາວຸດ ແລະ ສະບຽງສິ່ງຂອງຕ່າງໆຈາກສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດແລະຈີນ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໕໔ ກຳລັງຂອງ Ho Chi Minh ໄດ້ທຳລາຍພວກຝຣັ່ງເສດຢູ່ທີ່ Dien Bien Phu . ໃນເວລານັ້ນ ທັງສອງຝ່າຍໄດ້ພົບປະກັນຢູ່ທີ່ກອງປະຊຸມໃນກຸງ Geneva ແລະຕົກລົງເຫັນດີຢຸດຕິສົງຄາມ. ຜົນຂອງກອງປະຊຸມດັ່ງກ່າວແມ່ນການແບ່ງປະເທດວຽດນາມອອກເປັນສອງພາກຄື ພາກເໜືອທີ່ຮູ້ກັນໃນນາມວຽດນາມເໜືອນັ້ນ ໄດ້ເຂົ້າຂ້າງສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດ ແລະ ຈີນ ແລະ ສ່ວນພາກໃຕ້ຊຶ່ງຮູ້ກັນໃນນາມວຽດນາມໃຕ້ນັ້ນ ໄດ້ຜູກພັນທະມິດກັບໂລກເສຣີ. ສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອແກ່ວຽດນາມໃຕ້ຫຼາຍຢ່າງທັງໃນດ້ານເສດຖະກິດແລະດ້ານທະຫານ ເພື່ອພະຍາຍາມປ້ອງກັນວຽດນາມໃຕ້ຈາກການກໍ່ກວນແລະການລຸກລານຂອງວຽດນາມເໜືອ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໕໙ ພວກຄອມມຸຍນິສໄດ້ເລີ່ມສົງຄາມແບບກອງໂຈນຂຶ້ນໃນວຽດນາມໃຕ້. ສົງຄາມໄດ້ທະວີຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໙໖໔ ໂດຍມີການພົວພັນຂອງກຳລັງທະຫານອະເມຣິກັນແລະວຽດນາມເໜືອ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໗໓ ທັງສອງຝ່າຍໄດ້ຈັບສັນຍາຢຸດຍິງ ແລະ ສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຖອນທະຫານຂອງຕົນອອກຈາກວຽດນາມໃຕ້. ໃນປີ ໑໙໗໕ ດ້ວຍການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຢ່າງມະຫາສານ

ຈາກຣັສເຊັຍແລະຈີນ ພວກວຽດນາມເໜືອໄດ້ເປີດສາກໂຈມຕີລົງໃຕ້ໃນວຽດນາມໃຕ້ແລະສາມາດຍຶດຄອງທົ່ວທັງປະເທດ.

ມ໐.໒.໕. ນອກຈາກຢູໂຣບ, ອາຟຣິກາ, ແລະ ເອເຊັຍແລ້ວ ພວກຄອມມູຍນິສກໍຍັງຕ້ອງການແຜ່ອິດທິພົນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄປທາງເກາະ Caribbean ອີກ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໕໙ Fidel Castro ໄດ້ໂຄ່ນລົ້ມລະບອບການປົກຄອງຂອງ Fulgencio Batista ໃນ Cuba ແລະໄດ້ຕັ້ງຣັຖບານທີ່ເຂົ້າຂ້າງຄອມມູຍນິສຂຶ້ນ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໐ ຊາວ Cubans ຫຼາຍພັນໄດ້ເອົາຕົວໜີຈາກ Cuba ແລະເຂົ້າໄປອາໄສຢູ່ໃນສະຫະຣັຖ. ພວກລີ້ພັຍເຫຼົ່ານີ້ຕ້ອງຢາກກັບຄືນໄປ Cuba ແລະຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອເສຣີພາບຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ ແຕ່ວ່າ ແຜນການໄດ້ລົ້ມເຫຼວໄປຢູ່ທີ່ Bay of Pigs ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໑. ຫຼັງຈາກນັ້ນພວກ Cubans ໄດ້ເຂົ້າຂ້າງພວກຣັສເຊັຍຢ່າງໃກ້ຊິດຂຶ້ນກວ່າເກົ່າ. ໃນເກາະ Caribbean ແຫ່ງອື່ນໆ ຜູ້ຜະເດັດການ Trujillo ໃນ Dominicans Republic ໄດ້ຖືກໂຄ່ນລົ້ມໂດຍການປະຕິວັດໃນປີ ໑໙໖໑. ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໒ ຊາວ Dominicans ໄດ້ຮັບສິດໃນການເລືອກຕັ້ງຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າກັບຄືນມາຫຼັງຈາກ ໓໒ ປີ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເລືອກຕັ້ງເອົາຜູ້ນຳຈາກນັກການເມືອງຝ່າຍຊ້າຍ Juan Bosh ເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ. Juan Bosh ໄດ້ຕັ້ງຣັຖບານສັງຄົມນິຍົມຂຶ້ນ. ຣັຖບານສັງຄົມນິຍົມດັ່ງກ່າວມີອາຍຸພຽງ ໗ ເດືອນເທົ່ານັ້ນ ແລະ ໄດ້ຖືກໂຄ່ນລົ້ມໂດຍກຸ່ມນາຍທະຫານ. Juan Bosh ໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມເອົາຕຳແໜ່ງຄືນ ໂດຍນຳພາການລຸກຮືຂອງປະຊາຊົນໃນວັນທີ ໒໔ ເມສາ ໑໙໖໕. ສົງຄາມກາງເມືອງໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນ Dominican Republic ຊຶ່ງຂົ່ມຂູ່ຊີວິດແລະຊັບສົມບັດຂອງປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນທີ່ອາໄສຢູ່ໃນປະເທດດັ່ງກ່າວ. ສະຫະຣັຖ ໄດ້ສົ່ງທະຫານເຂົ້າໄປເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນຊາວອະເມຣິກັນ ແລະ ເພື່ອຂັດໄຕ້ການແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍອິດທິພົນຄອມມູຍນິສຂອງຄອມມູຍນິສຢູ່ຄົງໃນຊີກໂລກແຫ່ງນີ້. ໃນທີ່ສຸດ ກຳລັງຂອງອະເມຣິກັນແລະ Dominican ໄດ້ຖືກສັບປ່ຽນໂດຍກຳລັງນາໆຊາດ ຊຶ່ງປະກອບດ້ວຍກອງທະຫານມາຈາກອະເມຣິກາລາຕິນຫຼາຍປະເທດ. ການປະຕິບັດຂອງກຳລັງນາໆຊາດດັ່ງກ່າວແມ່ນເພື່ອຮັກສາຄວາມສງົບແລະເພື່ອຕົກລົງກັບບັນດາຜູ້ນຳທັງສອງຝ່າຍສຳຫຼັບຈັດຕັ້ງຣັຖບານຊົ່ວຄາວ. ຣັຖບານດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ໄດ້ຈັດການເລືອກຕັ້ງແຫ່ງຊາດຂຶ້ນໃນວັນທີ ໑ ມິຖຸນາ ໑໙໖໖ ແລະ ທ່ານ Joaquin Balaquer ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີ.

EXERCICES

I. Word Search Puzzle :

Direction: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນຕາມ ທາງຕັ້ງ ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບແລ້ວຂຽນໄວ້ ພ້ອມກັບຂຽນຄຳອະທິບາຍກຳກັບໄວ້ພ້ອມ.

BOMB
FREE
WORLD
WAR
PART
REBEL
CUBA
VETO
ROOTS

ALLIES
SOVIET
CONTROL
OBTAIN
EXPAND
WEAPON
REPLACE
KOREA
CREATE

IDEOLOGY
DEFEAT
MILITARY
GUERILLA
ECONOMIC
RUSSIA
POLAND
LEADERS

OVERTHROW
LEGITIMATE
DOMINICAN
COMMUNIST
SUBVERSION
DIVISION
SOCIALIST
INFLUENCE

MULTINATIONAL FORCES
COLD WAR
CONFRONTATION
EASTERN EUROPE
ATOMIC BOMB
SOUTH VIETNAM
SECURITY COUNCIL
MAO TSE TUNG
WEST BERLIN

H C S E C U R I T Y C O U N C I L V E T O
E H C O N F R O N T A T I O N K O R E A M
M I O O C O I O U E R T H R O W E O C W A
I N N C O L D W A R O U R R S C C R R E O
S E T G M A E A S T E R N E U R O P E S T
P S R U M L O B T A I N R B B W N O A T S
H E O E U L L O F R E E S E V E O L T B E
E M L R N I O M W O R L D L E A M A E E T
R A P I I E G B R O O T S O R D I N N R U
E I A L S S Y E X P A N D O S O C D O L N
L N R L T Y E C N E U L F N I N M O L I G
E L T A T O M I C B O M B S O V I E T N C
A A L E G I T I M A T E N O N R U S S I A
D N M U L T I N A T I O N A L F O R C E S
E D I V I S I O N D O M I N A T E W A R O
R S O U T H V I E T N A M D E F E A T S E
S M I L I T A R Y D O M I N I C A N O A O
O S O C I A L I S T R E P L A C E C U B A

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳທວຍຈອກຕາສັບ : (ເບິ່ງຕາມພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. ການປະກອບສັບແລະປະໂຫຍກໃຫ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ :
ຈົ່ງປະກອບສັບແຕ່ລະສັບທີ່ມີໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃສ່ປະໂຫຍກໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຢ່າງຖືກຕ້ອງ. ໃຫ້ໝາຍເລກໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຜ່ນຄຳຕອບ.

	ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
______	ກ. ສົງຄາມເຢັນ	໑. ການເຮັດໃຫ້ດິນແດນແຜ່ກວ້າງອອກໄປ.
______	ຂ. ລັດທິ	໒. ການຕໍ່ສູ້ລະຫວ່າງສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາແລະສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດພາຍຫຼັງສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີສອງ.
______	ຄ. ວົງອິດທິພົນ	໓. ເຂດແດນທີ່ດິນແດນພາຍໃນປະເທດໃດປະເທດໜຶ່ງ ຈຶ່ງປະເທດອື່ນທີ່ມີອຳນາດຫຼາຍກວ່າທຳການຄວບຄຸມດ້ານທຸລະກິດການຄ້າຫຼືຄວບຄຸມຣັຖບານ.
______	ງ. ການຈາລະຈົນ	໔. ຜູ້ທີ່ອາໃສຢູ່ໃນກຸງ Berlin ໃນປະເທດເຢຍລະມັນ.
______	ຈ. ການຢຸດຍິງ	໕. ຄວາມນຶກຄິດທີ່ສະທ້ອນເຖິງຄວາມຕ້ອງການຂອງສັງຄົມແລະຄວາມໃຝ່ຝັນຂອງກຸ່ມຫຼືອົດທະນະທັມໜຶ່ງ.
______	ສ. ຖືກຕ້ອງຕາມກົດໝາຍ	໖. ການລຸກຮື້ນຕ້ານອຳນາດການປົກຄອງ.
______	ຊ. ກຳຈັດ	໗. ການເຈົ້າການສູ້ຮົບ.

_____ ຍ. ກອງໂຈນ ໘. ເປັນໄປຕາມກົດໝາຍບົ່ງໄວ້.

_____ ດ. ການແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍ ໙. ການບິນ.

_____ ຕ. Berliner ໑໐. ການທຳສົງຄາມໂດຍຜູ້ຄົນຊຶ່ງບໍ່ເປັນສ່ວນຂອງ
ກອງທັບ.

໓. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ :
ຈົ່ງອ່ານແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກແລ້ວໝາຍ T ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກ ແລະ ໝາຍ F ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກ
ປະໂຍກນັ້ນຜິດ.

_____ ໑. ເພື່ອຢັບຢັ້ງການແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍຂອງຄອມມຸຍນິສ ສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາ ໄດ້ມີແຜນຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອ ເອີຣົບແລະປະເທດດ້ອຍພັດທະນາຫຼາຍຢ່າງ.

_____ ໒. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີສອງ ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດໄດ້ຄວບຄຸມພາກສ່ວນຂອງປະເທດເຢຍຣະມັນ.

_____ ໓. ສະຫະລັດແລະອັງກິດຕ້ອງໄດ້ຂົນສະບຽງອາຫານຈຳນວນມະຫາສານ ປີ໔໑ ນີ້ໄປຍັງ Berlin ຕາເວັນຕົກທາງເຮືອບິນ ໃນເວລາທີ່ພວກຄອມມຸຍນິສຫ້າມການຂົນສົ່ງທາງນ້ຳກັບດິນທັງໝົດທີ່ໄປຈາກເຢຍຣະມັນຕາເວັນຕົກຫາ Berlin ຕາເວັນຕົກ.

_____ ໔. Mao Tse Tung ເປັນຜູ້ນຳຂອງຈີນ Communist.

_____ ໕. ເກົາຫຼີໃຕ້ຂຶ້ນກັບໂລກເສລີ ແລະ ສະຫະລັດໄດ້ປ່ອຍທະຫານຂອງຕົນໄວ້ໃນເຂດດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ບາງຈຳນວນ.

_____ ໖. ໃນປີ ໑໙໗໕ ດ້ວຍການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອອັນມະຫາສານຈາກຣັສເຊັຍແລະຈີນ ວຽດນາມເໜືອໄດ້ເປີດສາກໂຈມຕີວຽດນາມໃຕຄັ້ງໃຫຍ່ ແລະ ສາມາດຍຶດຄອງທົ່ວທັງປະເທດ.

_____ ໗. ໃນປີ ໑໙໕໙ Fidel Castro ໄດ້ໂຄ່ນລົ້ມລະບອບການປົກຄອງຂອງ Fugencio Bastista ທີ່ Cuba ແລະໄດ້ຕັ້ງຣັຖບານທີ່ເຂົ້າຂ້າງຄອມມູຍນິສ.

_____ ໘. ຊາວ Cubans ຕ້ອງການກັບຄືນໄປຕໍ່ສູ້ຍາດເອົາອິສະຣະພາບໃນປະເທດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ ແຕ່ແຜນການໄດ້ເກີດລົ້ມເຫຼວໄປຢູ່ທີ່ Bay of Pigs ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໑.

_____ ໙. ສະຫະຣັຖບໍ່ໄດ້ສົ່ງທະຫານຂອງຕົນເພື່ອໄປປ້ອງກັນຊາວອະເມຣິກັນແລະຢັບຢັ້ງການແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍອິດທິພົນຂອງຄອມມູຍນິສໃນ Dominican Republic.

_____ ໑໐. ກຳລັງຂອງອະເມຣິກັນແລະຂອງ Dominican ໄດ້ຖືກສັບປ່ຽນໂດຍກຳລັງນາໆຊາດຊຶ່ງປະກອບດ້ວຍກອງທະຫານຈາກຫຼາຍປະເທດໃນອະເມຣິກາລາຕິນ.

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ບ່ອນວ່າງ : ຈົ່ງຂຽນຄຳເວົ້າ ຫຼື ໝວດຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ມີຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ບ່ອນວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ : ກຸ່ມປະເທດຄອມມູຍນິສແລະໂລກເສຣີ, ຣະບົບປະຊາມະນູ, ລັດທິ, ວົງອິດທິພົນ, ການປິດການຂົນສົ່ງທາງພາກພື້ນດິນ, ຄວາມອຶດຢາກ, ສານຈາລະຈົນ, ການຄັດແຍ່ງ, ລຸກລານ, ການກໍ່ກວນ.

໑. ສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອວຽດນາມໃຕ້ດ້ວຍແຜນຫຼາຍຢ່າງທັງໃນດ້ານເສດຖະກິດແລະດ້ານທະຫານ ເພື່ອພະຍາຍາມປ້ອງກັນວຽດນາມໃຕ້ _______________ ແລະການລຸກລານຂອງວຽດນາມເໜືອ.

໒. ໃນປີ ໑໙໕໐ ກອງທັບເກົາຫຼີເໜືອໄດ້ ______________________ ເກົາຫຼີໃຕ້.

໓. ເກົາຫຼີແລະວຽດນາມເປັນເຂດແດນແຫ່ງການ ____________________ ລະຫວ່າງພວກຄອມມູນິສແລະໂລກເສຣີແຫ່ງນຶ່ງອີກ.

໔. ຊາວ Berlin ຕາເວັນຕົກໄດ້ຢູ່ໃນຖານະລຳບາກແລະໄດ້ປະເຊີນກັບ ________________ .

໕. ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດແລະເຢຍຣະມັນຕາເວັນອອກໄດ້ພາກັນ ________________________ ການຂົນສົ່ງທາງພາກພື້ນດິນຈາກເຢຍຣະມັນຕາເວັນອອກໄປຍັງ Berlin ຕາເວັນອອກ.

໖. ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດແລະປະເທດມາຄີໄດ້ໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອແກ່ກຸ່ມ ____________________ ໃນເອເຊັຍ, ອາຟຣິກາ ແລະ ອະເມຣິກາລາຕິນ ເພື່ອທຳການປະຕິວັດແລະໂຄ່ນລົ້ມຣັຖບານຂອງຕົນ.

໗. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງໂລກໄດ້ຖືກແບ່ງອອກເປັນສອງກຸ່ມຄື ____________________

__________________________ .

໘. ບັນດາປະເທດເລັກປະເທດນ້ອຍໃນຢູໂຣບຕາເວັນອອກໄດ້ຂຶ້ນກັບ ____________________ ຂອງຣັສເຊັຍ.

໙. ໃນປີ ໑໙໔໙ ທັງສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດແລະສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ມີ __________________.

໑໐. ຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງລະຫວ່າງ ________________________ ຄອມມູນິສແລະນາຍທຶນປະຊາທິປະໄຕໄດ້ມີຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນໄປເລື້ອຍໆ.

ໝວດ VIII : ການນຳພາຂອງໂລກໃນຍຸກນິວຄະເລັຍ

ພາກ ໓໑ : ການສແວງຫາສັນຕິພາບໃນໂລກ

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ :

post-war era: ສໄໝຫຼັງສົງຄາມ

European countries were rebuilt in the post-war era.

confrontation: ການປະທະ

There was a big confrontation between Egypt and Israel in the Middle East.

superpower: ມະຫາອຳນາດ

The United States and the Soviet Union are two of the superpowers in the world.

struggle: ຕໍ່ສູ້

During the depression people struggled with starvation and unemployment.

Komecon: ອົງການພັດທະນາເສດຖະກິດຂອງກຸ່ມປະເທດຄອມມູຍນິສ

The members of the Komecon are small countries in Eastern Europe and Russia.

Warsaw Pact: ສົນທິສັນຍາ Warsaw

The Warsaw Pact is a military alliance among the communist countries in Europe.

missile: ຈຣວດ

The Russians installed many missiles in Europe.

outer space: ນອກອາວະກາດ

That spaceship is moving around the earth in outer space.

limitation: ການຈຳກັດ

Many people throughout the World wanted a limitation of the production of nuclear weapons.

friendship: ມິດຕະພາບ

President Nixon's visit to China in 1972 was an indication of America's willingess to form a new friendship with China.

insurgent: ພວກກະບົດ

The government troops crushed the insurgents in the mountainous areas.

infiltration: ການແຊກຊຶມ

The U.S. helped the anti-communist government of El Salvador to stop the infiltration of guerillas from Nicaragua.

READING

31.1. THE WORLD IN THE POST-WAR ERA

31.1.1. After the Second World War, in addition to an ideological **confrontation**, there was also an arms race between the two great **superpowers** - the Soviet Union and the United States. Both of these countries possessed many nuclear bombs and continued to produce them in large quantities. Other countries, such as France, Great Britain, and China also wanted to produce their own bombs. The world was full of nuclear weapons and the fear of a nuclear war led to a worldwide demand to limit or slow down the production of nuclear weapons.

31.1.2. Although the superpowers produced and stored nuclear weapons, they did not want to use them. Both the U.S. and the Soviet Union have tried to avoid a nuclear war and have been involved only in regional and limited wars. In these wars, only conventional weapons were used. The Russians continued to export their communist ideology to the poor countries in Asia, Africa, and Latin America. In an effort to stop the expansion of communism, the U.S. helped these countries to establish **anti-communist governments.**

31.1.3. In the 1960's and the 1970's, many crises such as those in Berlin, Greece, Indochina and the Carribbean Sea occurred. Both the U.S. and the Soviet Union provided their allies with economic aid and a protection against attack. By means of the Marshall Plan, the U.S. provided economic aid to help Western Europe recover from the devastation of the Second World War. Through NATO, Western Europe was insured against any attack by the Soviet Union. In response, the Communists created the **Komecon** and the **Warsaw Pact.** The Komecon helped communist countries to develop their economies, and the Warsaw Pact protected these countries against armed attack from the West.

31.1.4. In 1962, the Soviet Union precipitated a major crisis by installing offensive **missiles** in Cuba. President

Kennedy ordered a naval blockade of the island and demanded that the Russians remove these missiles. Finally, the Soviet Union agreed to withdraw their missiles from Cuba and war with the U.S. was avoided.

31.2. THE WORLD IN THE DETENTE ERA

31.2.1. After the Cuban crisis, people throughout the world put pressure on the superpowers to slow down the arms race. In 1963, the U.S., Great Britain, and the Soviet Union signed the Nuclear Test Ban Treaty. These three countries agreed not to test nuclear weapons in the air, in **outer space**, and under water. In 1968, many nations signed the Nuclear Nonproliferation Treaty. According to this treaty the nuclear powers pledged not to supply other countries with nuclear weapons or the knowledge of how to make the bomb.

In 1969, the U.S. and the Soviet Union began to discuss the **limitation** of strategic weapons. These discussions were called Strategic Arms Limitation Talks (SALT). These talks led to major agreements during Nixon's and Carter's administrations.

31.2.2. In addition to these arms control treaties, the United States also explored new ways to preserve world peace. President Nixon made many trips in **friendship** to Asia and Europe. He visited China in 1972, and in 1973 the U.S. and China exchanged ambassadors. President Nixon also visited Russia and Eastern Europe. Together, Nixon and the Soviet leaders reached many agreements on space research and pollution control. In 1975 a team of American and Russian astronauts completed the first joint U.S.- Soviet spaceflight.

31.2.3. Although great efforts had been made to preserve world peace there were still some troubled spots. The Middle East was one of those troubled areas. This area included many Arab countries and Israel. Wars between the Arab countries and Israel occurred frequently between 1956 and 1973. The Soviet Union helped the Arabs and the U.S. helped Israel. The United States has tried to negotiate a peace settlement in the Middle East. One major breakthrough occurred when Israel agreed to let Egypt take back their lands lost during the Egyptian-Israeli Wars. However, many other disputes between Israel and other Arab countries have not yet been resolved.

31.3. THE END OF THE DETENTE ERA

31.3.1. During the era of detente, the communists gained some victories while the U.S. seemed to withdraw into isolationism. In Southeast Asia, North Vietnam invaded and occupied the South and also set up communist regimes in Laos and Cambodia. In Central America, the Cubans and Russians helped the Sandinistas to overthrow the anti-communist government of Somoza and established a pro-marxist government in Nicaragua. From Nicaragua, the Cubans and Sandinistas helped the **insurgents** in El Salvador try to overthrow the government. The U.S. has helped the anti-communist government of El Salvador in an effort to stop this **infiltration** and to prevent that country from falling into communist hands.

31.3.2. The tension between the U.S. and the Soviet Union reached a critical point in 1979 when Soviet troops moved into Afghanistan. The U.S. government sent strong protests to the Soviet union and refused to sign the SALT II Agreement. President Carter also refused to let the U.S. athletes participate in the 1980 Olympic Games in Moscow and refused to renew contracts to sell more grain to Russia. From that time on, both countries continued to produce more deadly weapons and add them to their arsenals.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

DETENTE
SOMOZA
SPACE
NIXON
ISLANDS
GREECE
NATO
BERLIN
FRANCE
NUCLEAR
LIMIT
STRUGGLE
QUEST
DEMAND
EUROPE

POLLUTION
DISCUSSION
STRATEGIC
EXPANSION
SUPERPOWER
NICARAGUA
DEMOCRATIC
INSURGENCE
GUERILLA
INFILTRATION
FRIENDSHIP
ARMS RACE
VIETNAM
KOMECON

EL SALVADOR
SPACE FLIGHT
CARTER ADMINISTRATION
LIMITATION TALK
OFFENSIVE MISSILE
ANTICOMMUNIST
MARSHALL PLAN
GREAT BRITAIN
WARSAW PACT
OUTER SPACE
SOVIET UNION
CONFRONTATION
PEACEFUL WORLD
POSTWAR ERA
SLOW DOWN

E S D Q U E S T K O M E C O N V I E T N A M O N G
U L E U P E A C E F U L W O R L D L I M I T C O P
R O M C O N F R O N T A T I O N A R M S R A C E O
O W A E S U P E R P O W E R S O V I E T U N I O N
P D N S T R U G G L E O U T E R S P A C E B O M B
E O D T W A R S A W P A C T F R I E N D S H I P O
H W I B A I N F I L T R A T I O N N U C L E A T O
I N S U R G E N C E G U E R I L L A S F R A N C E
N U T D E M O C R A T I C N I C A R A G U A C A C
S U P E R P O W E R E X P A N S I O N B E R L I N
T G R E A T B R I T A I N M A R S H A L L P L A N
O A N T I C O M M U N I S T G R E E C E N A T O Y
O F F E N S I V E M I S S I L E X I S L A N D S X
D I S C U S S I O N S T R A T E G I C A R M S O O
L I M I T A T I O N T A L K S N I X O N P R E S I
C A R T E R A D M I N I S T R A T I O N S P A C E
S P A C E F L I G H T O N B P O L L U T I O N U N
D E T E N T E O R S O M O Z A E L S A L V A D O R

II. __Matching__: Match each word in colum A with the explanation or definition in column A. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A	B
____ a. confront	1. the weapon that is fired, thrown, dropped, or otherwise projected at a target.
____ b. insurgence	2. the contamination of soil,

	water, or the atmosphere by the discharge of harmful substances.
____ c. superpower	3. any region of space beyond limits determined with reference to the boundaries of a celestial body.
____ d. missile	4. increase in the dimensions of a body.
____ e. outer space	5. flight beyond the atmosphere of the earth.
____ f. expansion	6. a relaxing or easing, as of tensions between nations.
____ g. pollution	7. a powerful and influential nation.
____ h. spaceflight	8. to take part; join or share with others.
____ i. detente	9. uprising, revolt.
____ j. participate	10. to come up against; encounter.

III. True or False: In the blank write T if the statement is true or F is the statement is false.

____ 1. Before the Second Word War, France, Great Britain, and China had their own atomic bombs.

____ 2. The superpowers produced and stored nuclear weapons but did not want to use them.

____ 3. Russians kept on introducing their communist ideology to the poor countries in Asia, Africa, and Latin America.

____ 4. To stop the expansion of communism, the U.S. aided these countries in establishing anti-communist governments.

____ 5. The Marshall Plan gave economic aid to Western European countries to help them recover from the First World War.

____ 6. The Communists established the Komecon to help France and Great Britain after the Second Word War.

____ 7. In 1962, the Soviet Union installed offensive missiles in Cuba.

____ 8. President Kennedy ordered a naval blockade of the Soviet Union.

____ 9. After the Cuban crisis, people throughout the world put pressure on the superpowers to slow down the arms race.

____10. In 1969, the U.S. and the Soviet Union began to discuss the limitation of strategic weapons.

IV. Fill in the blanks: Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: participate, astronaut, offensive missiles, communist ideology, insurgents, limitation, anti-communist governments, detente, in outer space, confrontation.

1. After the Second World War, in addition to ideological ____________ there was also an arms race between the two great superpowers.
2. The Russians continued introducing their ____________ to the poor countries in the Asia, Africa, and Latin America.

3. In an effort to stop the expansion of communism, the U.S. helped these countries to establish ______________ .

4. In 1962, the Soviet Union precipitated a major crisis by installing ___________ in Cuba.

5. In 1962, the U.S.,Great Britain and the Soviet Union signed the Nuclear Test Ban Treaty. These three countries agreed not to test nuclear weapons in the air, ________________ , and under water.

6. In 1969, the U.S. and the Soviet Union began to discuss the _________ of strategic weapons.

7. In 1975 a team of American and Russian __________ completed the first joint U.S.-Soviet space flight.

8. During the era of ___________ , the communists gained some victories while U.S. seemed to withdraw into isolationism.

9. From Nicaragua, the Cubans and Sandinistas helped the ___________ in El Salvador try to overthrow the government.

10. President Carter also refused to let the U.S. athletes _____________ in the 1980 Olympic Games in Moscow and refused to renew contracts to sell more grain to Russia.

ບົດອ່ານ

໓໑.໑. ໂລກໃນສໄມຫຼັງສົງຄາມ.

໓໑.໑.໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງຜ່ານພົ້ນໄປ ນອກຈາກການປະທະດ້ານລັດທິແລ້ວ ກໍຍັງມີການແຂ່ງຂັນດ້ານອາວຸດຣະຫວ່າງມະຫາອຳນາດທັງສອງ ເຊັ່ນ ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດ ແລະ ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາອີກ. ທັງສອງປະເທດດັ່ງກ່າວແຕ່ລະຝ່າຍໄດ້ມີຣະເບີດນິວຄະເລັຍຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ ແລະ ໄດ້ພາກັນດຳເນີນຜລິດຣະເບີດປະເພດນີ້ຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍຢູ່ຕໍ່ໄປ. ປະເທດອື່ນອີກຫຼາຍປະເທດ ເຊັ່ນ ຝຣັ່ງເສດ, ອັງກິດ, ແລະ ຈີນແດງ ກໍມີຄວາມຕ້ອງການຜລິດຣະເບີດຂອງພວກຕົນຂຶ້ນເຊັ່ນກັນ. ໂລກໄດ້ເຕັມໄປດ້ວຍອາວຸດນິວຄະເລັຍ ແລະ ຄວາມຢ້ານກົວຣະເບີດນິວຄະເລັຍໃນໂລກໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ທັງໂລກຮຽກຮ້ອງໃຫ້ມີການຈຳກັດ ຫຼື ຜ່ອນການຜລິດອາວຸດນິວຄະເລັຍລົງ.

໓໑.໑.໒. ເຖິງວ່າປະເທດມະຫາອຳນາດຈະໄດ້ຜລິດ ແລະ ສະສົມອາວຸດນິວຄະເລັຍກໍຕາມ ແຕ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ໄດ້ຕ້ອງການທີ່ຈະໃຊ້ອາວຸດນັ້ນເລີຍ. ສະຫະຣັຖແລະສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດ ໄດ້ພາກັນພະຍາຍາມຫຼີກລ້ຽງສົງຄາມນິວຄະເລັຍ ໂດຍໄດ້ເຂົ້າໄປພົວພັນກັບສົງຄາມຕາມພາກສ່ວນ ແລະ ໃນຂອບເຂດຈຳກັດແຕ່ພຽງເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ໃນສົງຄາມດັ່ງກ່າວ ໄດ້ມີການໃຊ້ແຕ່ອາວຸດທັມມະດາເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ພວກຣັສເຊັຍໄດ້ດຳເນີນແຜ່ຫຼາຍລັດທິຄອມມູຍນິສຂອງຕົນໄປຍັງປະເທດທຸກຈົນຕ່າງໆໃນເອເຊັຍ, ອາຟຣິກາ ແລະ ໃນລາຕິນອະເມຣິກາ ຢູ່ຕໍ່ໄປ. ເພື່ອຢັບຢັ້ງການແຜ່ຫຼາຍຂອງລັດທິຄອມມູຍນິສ ສະຫະຣັຖຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຊ່ວຍປະເທດທຸກຈົນທັງຫຼາຍເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນ ຕັ້ງຣັຖບານຕໍ່ຕ້ານຄອມມູຍນິສ.

໓໑.໑.໓. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໔໐ ແລະ ໑໙໗໐ ນັ້ນໄດ້ມີບັນຫາປັ່ນປ່ວນເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນຫຼາຍແຫ່ງ ເຊັ່ນໃນ Berlin, Greece, Indochina ແລະໃນ Carribbean Sea . ສະຫະຣັຖ ແລະ ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດ ຕ່າງກໍໄດ້ພາກັນໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອດ້ານເສດຖະກິດ ແລະ ດ້ານການປ້ອງກັນໃຫ້ແກ່ພັນທະມິດຂອງພວກຕົນ. ສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຕັ້ງແຜນ Marshall Plan ຂຶ້ນເພື່ອໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອດ້ານເສດຖະກິດແກ່ຢູໂຣບຕາເວັນຕົກສຳຫຼັບຟື້ນຟູຈາກການທຳລາຍລ້າງຜານໃນສໄມສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງ. ຍ້ອນວົງການ ຢູໂຣບຕາເວັນຕົກ ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຮັບປະກັນຕໍ່ການໂຈມຕີຈາກສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດ. ເພື່ອເປັນການຕອບໂຕ້ພວກຄອມມູຍນິສກໍໄດ້ພາກັນຕັ້ງ Komecon ແລະ ສົນທິສັນຍາ Warsaw Pact ຂຶ້ນ.

Komecon ຈັດຂຶ້ນສຳຫຼັບຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອປະເທດຄອມມູນິສທັງຫຼາຍໃນການພັດທະນາເສດຖະກິດຂອງຕົນ ແລະ ສົນທິສັນຍາ Warsaw Pact ນັ້ນ ຈັດຂຶ້ນເພື່ອປົກປ້ອງປະເທດຄອມມູນິສດັ່ງກ່າວ ຈາກການໂຈມຕີຂອງກຸ່ມປະເທດຕາເວັນຕົກ.

໓໑.໑.໔. ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໒ ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດໄດ້ສ້າງຄວາມປັ່ນປ່ວນຂຶ້ນ ໂດຍຕັ້ງລູກຈຣວດໃນ Cuba. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Kennedy ໄດ້ອອກຄຳສັ່ງໃຫ້ກອງທັບເຮືອທຳການປິດລ້ອມເກາະ Cuba ແລະຮຽກຮ້ອງໃຫ້ພວກຣັສເຊັຽຖອນລູກຈຣວດດັ່ງກ່າວນັ້ນອອກໄປ. ໃນທີ່ສຸດ ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດກໍໄດ້ຕົກລົງຖອນລູກຈຣວດຂອງຕົນອອກຈາກ Cuba ແລະສົງຄາມກັບສະຫະຣັຖກໍບໍ່ໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນແຕ່ຢ່າງໃດ.

໓໑.໒. ໂລກໃນຍຸກແຫ່ງການຜ່ອນຄາຍຄວາມເຄັ່ງຕຶງ.

໓໑.໒.໑. ພາຍຫຼັງຄວາມປັ່ນປ່ວນໃນ Cuba ປະຊາຊົນທົ່ວໄປໃນໂລກ ໄດ້ກົດດັນໃຫ້ພວກມະຫາອຳນາດ ຜ່ອນຄາຍການແຂ່ງຂັນດ້ານອາວຸດລົງ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໓ ສະຫະຣັຖ, ອັງກິດ ແລະ ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດ ໄດ້ລົງນາມໃນສົນທິສັນຍາຫ້າມການທົດລອງອາວຸດນິວຄະເລັຍ. ສາມປະເທດເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ຕົກລົງຈະບໍ່ທຳການທົດລອງອາວຸດນິວຄະເລັຍໃນອາກາດ, ຢູ່ນອກອາວະກາດ, ແລະ ໃນພື້ນນ້ຳ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໘ ຫຼາຍປະເທດໄດ້ພາກັນເຊັນສົນທິສັນຍາບໍ່ຂະຫຍາຍອາວຸດນິວຄະເລັຍ. ອິງຕາມສົນທິສັນຍາທີ່ວ່ານີ້ ປະເທດອຳນາດນິວຄະເລັຍ. ອິງຕາມສົນທິສັນຍາທີ່ວ່ານີ້ ປະເທດອຳນາດນິວຄະເລັຍໄດ້ປະຕິຍານຈະບໍ່ລຳລຽງອາວຸດນິວຄະເລັຍ ຫຼື ຄວາມຮູ້ກ່ຽວກັບວິທີສ້າງຣະເບີດໃຫ້ແກ່ປະເທດອື່ນ.

ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໙ ສະຫະຣັຖ ແລະ ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດ ໄດ້ພາກັນເລີ່ມທຳການປຶກສາຫາລືກ່ຽວກັບການຈຳກັດອາວຸດຍຸດທະສາດຕ່າງໆ. ການປຶກສາຫາລືດັ່ງກ່າວເອີ້ນວ່າ ການເຈຣະຈາກ່ຽວກັບການຈຳກັດອາວຸດຍຸດທະສາດ (SALT). ການເຈຣະຈາທີ່ວ່ານີ້ ໄດ້ບັນລຸເຖິງຂໍ້ຕົກລົງທີ່ສຳຄັນໃນສະໄໝປົກຄອງຂອງທ່ານ Nixon ແລະ ທ່ານ Carter.

໓໑.໒.໒. ນອກຈາກສົນທິສັນຍາກ່ຽວກັບການຄວບຄຸມອາວຸດເຫຼົ່ານີ້ແລ້ວ ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາກໍຍັງໄດ້ຄົ້ນຄວ້າຊອກຫາວິທີທາງໃນການຮັກສາສັນຕິພາບໃນໂລກ ວິທີໃໝ່ອີກ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Nixon ໄດ້ທຳການເດີນທາງໃນມິດຕະພາບໄປຍັງເອເຊັຽ ແລະ ຢູໂຣບ ຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຄັ້ງ. ທ່ານໄດ້ໄປຢ້ຽມຢາມປະເທດຈີນ

ຕົກຢູ່ໃນກຳມືຂອງພວກຄອມມູນິສ.

ພ໑.ສ.໔. ຄວາມເຄັ່ງຕຶງລະຫວ່າງສະຫະລັດແລະສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດໄດ້ເຂົ້າເຖິງຂັ້ນອັນຕະລາຍທີ່ສຸດໃນປີ ໑໙໗໙ ໃນເວລາທີ່ກອງທະຫານໂຊວຽດໄດ້ເຄື່ອນເຂົ້າໄປໃນປະເທດ Afghanistan . ລັດຖະບານສະຫະລັດໄດ້ສົ່ງຄຳປະທ້ວງຕໍ່ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດຢ່າງຮຸນແຮງ ແລະ ໄດ້ປະຕິເສດການເຊັນຮັບຮອງກ່ຽວກັບການເຈລະຈາຈຳກັດອາວຸດຍຸດທະສາດຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງ (SALT II). ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Carter ກໍໄດ້ປະຕິເສດບໍ່ສົ່ງນັກກິລາສະຫະລັດເຂົ້າຮ່ວມໃນການແຂ່ງຂັນກິລາ Olympic ໃນປີ ໑໙໘໐ ຢູ່ເມືອງ Moscow ແລະ ໄດ້ປະຕິເສດບໍ່ຕໍ່ສັນຍາຂາຍເຂົ້າໃຫ້ແກ່ຣັດເຊັຍ. ຈາກເວລານັ້ນມາ ທັງສອງປະເທດກໍໄດ້ດຳເນີນຜະລິດອາວຸດທີ່ຮ້າຍກາດຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນຕໍ່ໄປ ແລະ ໄດ້ເພີ່ມອາວຸດດັ່ງກ່າວເຂົ້າໃນສາງຂອງພວກຕົນ.

EXERCISES

I. WORD SEARCH PUZZLE:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ, ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນສັບທີ່ຫາໄດ້ນັ້ນໄວ້ພ້ອມຂຽນຄວາມໝາຍແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍດ້ວຍ.

DETENTE
SOMOZA
SPACE
NIXON
ISLANDS
GREECE
NATO
BERLIN
FRANCE
NUCLEAR
LIMIT
STRUGGLE
QUEST
DEMAND
EUROPE

POLLUTION
DISCUSSION
STRATEGIC
EXPANSION
SUPERPOWER
NICARAGUA
DEMOCRATIC
INSURGENCE
GUERILLA
INFILTRATION
FRIENDSHIP
ARMS RACE
VIETNAM
KOMECON

EL SALVADOR
SPACE FLIGHT
CARTER ADMINISTRATION
LIMITATION TALK
OFFENSIVE MISSILE
ANTICOMMUNIST
MARSHALL PLAN
GREAT BRITAIN
WARSAW PACT
OUTER SPACE
SOVIET UNION
CONFRONTATION
PEACEFUL WORLD
POSTWAR ERA
SLOW DOWN

E S D Q U E S T K O M E C O N V I E T N A M O N G

U L E U P E A C E F U L W O R L D L I M I T C O P

R O M C O N F R O N T A T I O N A R M S R A C E O

O W A E S U P E R P O W E R S O V I E T U N I O N

P D N S T R U G G L E O U T E R S P A C E B O M B

E O D T W A R S A W P A C T F R I E N D S H I P O

H W I B A I N F I L T R A T I O N N U C L E A T O

I N S U R G E N C E G U E R I L L A S F R A N C E

N U T D E M O C R A T I C N I C A R A G U A C A C

S U P E R P O W E R E X P A N S I O N B E R L I N

T G R E A T B R I T A I N M A R S H A L L P L A N

O A N T I C O M M U N I S T G R E E C E N A T O Y

O F F E N S I V E M I S S I L E X I S L A N D S X

D I S C U S S I O N S T R A T E G I C A R M S O O

L I M I T A T I O N T A L K S N I X O N P R E S I

C A R T E R A D M I N I S T R A T I O N S P A C E

S P A C E F L I G H T O N B P O L L U T I O N U N

D E T E N T E O R S O M O Z A E L S A L V A D O R

ໃນປີ ໑໙໗໒ ແລະ ໃນປີ ໑໙໗໓ ສະຫະຣັຖ ແລະປະເທດຈີນ ໄດ້ແລກປ່ຽນເອກອັກຄະຣາຊທູດຊຶ່ງກັນແລະກັນ. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Nixon ກໍໄດ້ໄປຢ້ຽມຢາມຣັສເຊັຽ ແລະ ຢູໂຣບຕາເວັນອອກເຊັ່ນກັນ. ທ່ານ Nixon ແລະ ບັນດາຜູ້ນຳໂຊວຽດໄດ້ບັນລຸເຖິງຂໍ້ຕົກລົງກ່ຽວກັບການຄົ້ນຄວ້າດ້ານອາວະກາດ ແລະ ດ້ານການຄວບຄຸມອາກາດເສັຍ ແລະ ອື່ນອີກຫຼາຍຢ່າງ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໗໕ ຄະນະນັກອາວະກາດສະຫະຣັຖ ແລະ ຣັສເຊັຽ ໄດ້ສຳເຣັດການບິນໃນອາວະກາດຮ່ວມກັນ.

໓໑.໒.໓. ເຖິງແມ່ນວ່າ ຈະໄດ້ມີການໃຊ້ຄວາມພະຍາຍາມເພື່ອຮັກສາສັນຕິພາບຂອງໂລກຢູ່ກໍ່ຕາມ ແຕ່ຄວາມປັ່ນປ່ວນກໍຍັງມີຢູ່ໃນບາງແຫ່ງ. ພາກຕາເວັນອອກກາງເປັນບ່ອນນຶ່ງທີ່ມີຄວາມປັ່ນປ່ວນ. ບໍຣິເວນດັ່ງກ່າວ ປະກອບດ້ວຍ ປະເທດ Israel ແລະ ປະເທດອາຣັບອີກຫຼາຍປະເທດ. ສົງຄາມຣະຫວ່າງກຸ່ມປະເທດປະເທດອາຣັບ ແລະ Israel ໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນເລື້ອຍໆໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໔໘ ແລະ ໑໙໗໓. ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດໄດ້ຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອພວກອາຣັບ ແລະ ສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຊ່ວຍ Israel . ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມຕົກລົງເຈຣະຈາຫາຄວາມສງົບໃນພາກຕາເວັນອອກກາງ. ການປັບຫາຈຸດຫັກທີ່ສຳຄັນຢ່າງນຶ່ງໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນເວລາທີ່ Israel ໄດ້ຕົກລົງໃຫ້ປະເທດ Egypt ເອົາດິນແດນທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າເສັຍໄປໃນສມັຍສົງຄາມຣະຫວ່າງ Egypt ແລະ Israelນັ້ນຄືນ. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍດີຍັງມີຂໍ້ຂັດແຍ່ງອື່ນອີກຫຼາຍຢ່າງທີ່ຍັງບໍ່ທັນໄດ້ແກ້ໄຂເທື່ອຣະຫວ່າງ Israel ແລະ ກຸ່ມປະເທດອາຣັບ.

໓໑.໓. ການສິ້ນສຸດຂອງຍຸກແຫ່ງການຜ່ອນຄາຍຄວາມເຄັ່ງຕຶງ.

໓໑.໓.໑. ໃນສມັຍຍຸກແຫ່ງການຜ່ອນຄາຍຄວາມເຄັ່ງຕຶງນັ້ນ ພວກຄອມມູຍນິສໄດ້ຮັບໄຊຊະນະບາງຢ່າງໃນຣະຫວ່າງທີ່ສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ມີທ່າທີເກັບຕົວຢູ່ໃນຄວາມໂດດດ່ຽວນັ້ນ. ໃນເອເຊັຽຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງໃຕ້ ວຽດນາມເໜືອ ໄດ້ບຸກລຸກ ແລະ ຍຶດຄອງວຽດນາມໃຕ້ ພ້ອມທັງໄດ້ຕັ້ງຣະບອບຄອມມູຍນິສຂຶ້ນຢູ່ໃນປະເທດລາວ ແລະ ຂະເມນ. ໃນອະເມຣິກາກາງ ພວກ Cubans ແລະຣັສເຊັຽໄດ້ຊ່ວຍພວກ Sandinistas ໃນການໂຄ່ນລົ້ມຣັຖບານຕໍ່ຕ້ານຄອມມູຍນິສຂອງທ່ານ Somozar ແລະ ໄດ້ພາກັນຕັ້ງຣັຖບານທີ່ສນັບສນູນຄອມມູຍນິສຂຶ້ນໃນປະເທດ Nicaragua . ຈາກປະເທດ Nicaragua ພວກ Cubans ແລະພວກ Sandinistas ໄດ້ຊ່ວຍພວກກະບົດໃນ El Salvador ເພື່ອພະຍາຍາມທຳການໂຄ່ນລົ້ມຣັຖບານ. ສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອແກ່ ຣັຖບານຕໍ່ຕ້ານຄອມມູຍນິສຂອງປະເທດ El Salvador ເພື່ອຢັບຢັ້ງການແຊກຊຶມຂອງພວກຄອມມູຍນິສ ແລະ ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນບໍ່ໃຫ້ປະເທດດັ່ງກ່າວ

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳຫວຍຈອກຕາລັບ : (ເບິ່ງພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ :
ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາແຕ່ລະຄຳເວົ້າໃນຫມວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍໃນຫມວດ (ຂ) ໂດຍໃຫ້ເລືອກເອົາຕົວເລກໃນຫມວດ (ຂ) ນັ້ນ ຫມາຍໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນຫມວດ (ກ) ເພື່ອແທນຄຳຕອບ.

ຫມວດ (ກ)	ຫມວດ (ຂ)
______ ກ. ການປະທະ	໑. ອາວຸດທີ່ໃຊ້ຍິງໃສ່ເປົ້າຫມາຍຂອງສັດຕູ.
______ ຂ. ການກະບົດ	໒. ການເສື່ອມເສັຍຂອງອາກາດແລະຢ່າງອື່ນເຊັ່ນດິນແລະນ້ຳ.
______ ຄ. ມະຫາອຳນາດ	໓. ເຂດນອກໂລກທີ່ປາສຈາກອາກາດ.
______ ງ. ລູກຈຣວດ	໔. ການເພີ້ມຂະຫນາດຂອງສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງນຶ່ງ.
______ ຈ. ນອກອາວະກາດ	໕. ການບິນໃນເຂດນອກໂລກ.
______ ສ. ການແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍ	໖. ການຜ່ອນຄາຍຄວາມເຄັ່ງຕຶງຣະຫວ່າງປະເທດຕ່າງໆ.
______ ຊ. ອາກາດເສັຍ	໗. ປະເທດທີ່ມີອຳນາດແລະອິດທິພົນ.
______ ຍ. ການບິນໃນອາວະກາດ	໘. ການມີສ່ວນກັບຄົນອື່ນ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ດ. detente	໙. ການລຸກຮື້, ການລຸກຕໍ່ສູ້.
_____ ຕ. ຮ່ວມ	໑໐. ການຕໍ່ສູ້ກັນ.

໓. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ :

ຈົ່ງອ່ານແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ໝາຍຕົວອັກສອນ T ໃສ່ ຖ້າຫາກປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກ. ຖ້າຫາກປະໂຍກນັ້ນຜິດໃຫ້ໝາຍ F ໃສ່.

_____ ໑. ປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ, ອັງກິດ, ແລະ ຈີນ ໄດ້ມີຣະບົບປະຊາມະນູນ ກ່ອນສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີສອງ.

_____ ໒. ພວກມະຫາອຳນາດໄດ້ສ້າງແລະສະສົມອາວຸດນິວຄະເລັຍໄວ້ ແຕ່ບໍ່ຕ້ອງການເອົາອອກມາໃຊ້.

_____ ໓. ພວກຣັສເຊັຍໄດ້ດຳເນີນການແຜ່ຫຍາຍລັດທິຄອມມູຍນິສຂອງຕົນໄປຍັງບັນດາປະເທດ ຫຼາຈີນ ຕ່າງໆໃນເອເຊັຍ, ອາຟຣິກາ, ແລະ ລາຕິນອະເມຣິກາ.

_____ ໔. ເພື່ອຢັບຢັ້ງການແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍຂອງລັດທິຄອມມູຍນິສ ສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຊ່ວຍປະເທດເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນໃນການຕັ້ງຣັຖບານຕໍ່ຕ້ານຄອມມູຍນິສ.

_____ ໕. ແຜນ Marshall Plan ໄດ້ຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອດ້ານເສດຖະກິດໃຫ້ແກ່ກຸ່ມປະເທດຢູໂຣບຕາເວັນຕົກ ເພື່ອໃຫ້ຟື້ນຕົວຈາກສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ນຶ່ງ.

_____ ໖. ພວກຄອມມູຍນິສໄດ້ Komecon ຂຶ້ນເພື່ອຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອປະເທດຝຣັ່ງເສດ ແລະ ອັງກິດ ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີສອງ.

_____ ໗. ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໒ ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດໄດ້ຕັ້ງລູກຈຣວດໃນປະເທດ Cuban.

_____ ໘. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Kennedy ໄດ້ອອກຄຳສັ່ງໃຫ້ກອງທັບເຮືອທຳການປິດລ້ອມສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດ.

_____ ໙. ຫຼັງຈາກບັນຫາປັ່ນປ່ວນໃນ Cuban ປະຊາຊົນທົ່ວທັງໂລກໄດ້ໃຊ້ຄວາມກົດດັນພວກມະຫາອຳນາດ ຜ່ອນຄາຍການແຂ່ງຂັນດ້ານອາວຸດ.

_____໑໐. ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໙ ສະຫະຣັຖແລະສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດ ໄດ້ເລີ່ມທຳການປຶກສາຫາລືກ່ຽວກັບການຈຳກັດອາວຸດຍຸດທະສາດ.

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ :

ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າຫຼືພວກຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍອັນຖືກຕ້ອງ :
ເຂົ້າຮ່ວມ, ນັກອາວະກາດ, ລູກຈຣວດ, ລັດທິຄອມມູນິສ, ພວກກະບົດ, ການຈຳກັດ, ຣັຖບານຕໍ່ຕ້ານຄອມມູນິສ, ການຜ່ອນຄາຍຄວາມເຄັ່ງຕຶງ, ໃນນອກອາວະກາດ, ການປະທະ.

໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງຜ່ານພົ້ນໄປແລ້ວນອກຈາກ ______________________________ ທາງດ້ານລັດທິແລ້ວກໍຍັງມີການແຂ່ງຂັນດ້ານອາວຸດຣະຫວ່າງສອງມະຫາອຳນາດອີກ.

໒. ພວກຣັສເຊັຍໄດ້ນຳເງິນແມ່ຫຼາຍ ______________________________ ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄປຍັງບັນດາປະເທດທຸກຍາກໃນເອເຊັຍ, ອາຟຣິກາ, ແລະ ລາຕິນອະເມຣິກາ.

໓. ເພື່ອປັບປັ້ງການແຜ່ຂະຫຍາຍຂອງລັດທິຄອມມູນິສ ສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຊ່ວຍປະເທດເຫຼົ່ານັ້ນ ________
__________________ .

໔. ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໒ ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດໄດ້ສ້າງຄວາມປັ່ນປ່ວນອັນສຳຄັນຂຶ້ນໂດຍຕິດຕັ້ງ ______________ ໃນປະເທດ Cuba.

໕. ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໒ ສະຫະຣັຖ, ອັງກິດ, ແລະ ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດ ໄດ້ພາກັນລົງນາມໃນສົນທິສັນຍາ ຫ້າມການທົດລອງອາວຸດນິວຄະເລັຍ. ສາມປະເທດເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ພາກັນຕົກລົງຈະບໍ່ທຳການທົດລອງອາວຸດ ນິວຄະເລັຍໃນອາກາດ ______________________________ ແລະໃນພື້ນນ້ຳ.

໖. ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໙ ສະຫະຣັຖ ແລະ ສະຫະພາບໂຊວຽດໄດ້ເລີ່ມປຶກສາຫາລືກ່ຽວກັບ ______________ ອາວຸດຍຸດທະສາດ.

໗. ໃນປີ ໑໙໗໔ ຄະນະ ____________________________ ອະເມຣິກັນ ແລະ ຣັສເຊັຍໄດ້ສຳເຣັດ ການບິນໃນອາວະກາດຮ່ວມກັນເປັນຄັ້ງທຳອິດ.

໘. ໃນສໄໝ ______________________________ ພວກຄອມມູນິສໄດ້ຮັບໄຊຊະນະບາງຢ່າງ ໃນຣະຫວ່າງທີ່ສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ມີທ່າທີເກັບຕົວຢູ່ໃນ ໂດດດ່ຽວນັ້ນ.

໙. ຈາກປະເທດ Nicaragua ພວກ Cubans ແລະ ພວກ Sandinistas ໄດ້ຊ່ວຍ ______________________________ ໃນປະເທດ El Salvador ເພື່ອ ຫາທາງໂຄ່ນລົ້ມຣັຖບານ.

໑໐. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Carter ກໍໄດ້ປະຕິເສດບໍ່ສົ່ງນັກກິລາອະເມຣິກັນ ________________________ ໃນການແຂ່ງຂັນກິລາ Olympic ໃນປີ ໑໙໘໐ ຢູ່ທີ່ກຸງ Moscow ແລະ ໄດ້ປະຕິ ເສດບໍ່ຕໍ່ສັນຍາຂາຍເຂົ້າໃຫ້ພວກຣັສເຊັຍ.

ພາກ ທີ6 : ການເມືອງແລະການເຕີບໂຕດ້ານເສດຖະກິດ

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ :

defense: ການປ້ອງກັນ

The national defense budget is billions of dollars.

foreign aid: ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຕ່າງປະເທດ

The United States had many foreign aid programs.

challenge: ບັນຫາ

Competing with the Soviet Union in the exploration of outer space is a major challenge for the United States.

opposition party: ພັກຄ້ານ

The U.S. President had problems with a Congress which was controlled by the opposition party.

promote: ສົ່ງເສີມ

The Full Employment Act urged the federal government to use all means and resources to promote maximum employment, production, and purchasing power.

recession: ເສດຖະກິດຕົກຕ່ຳ

In periods of recession or when business is slow, the government may cut taxes.

inflation: ສະພາບເງິນເຟີ້

In periods of inflation or when the prices of goods rise quickly, the government may raise taxes.

level off: ຫຸ່ນທ່ຽງ

The government wanted to level off the prices of goods.

excesses: ເກີນ (ຄວາມຕ້ອງການເກີນຂອບເຂດ)

In 1947 Congress passed the Taft Harley Act to control union excesses.

electronic computer: ເຄື່ອງຄອມພິວເຕີເອເລັກໂທຣນິກ

The electronic computer changed technology in the 1970's.

aerospace industry: ອຸດສາຫະກັມທາງບິນ

In the late 1950's the U.S. aerospace industry began to grow.

communication satellite: ດາວທຽມສື່ສານ

Communication satellites made it possible to receive television programs from most parts of the world.

surge: ຈິບກັອຍ

The surge in oil price caused a recession in the United States in 1974.

READING

32.1. THE POLITICS OF CHANGE

32.1.1. The years between 1945 and the 1970's were years of growth and change for the United States economy. National defense and foreign aid made continuing demands upon the nation's economic system. At the same time, an expanding population needed more goods and services. Once again, government and the political parties faced a major challenge.

How could government make sure that the economic needs of Americans would be met? What kinds of political action would help to meet that economic goal?

31.1.2. Eight Presidents have served the country since 1945. They were Harry Truman, Dwight Eisenhower, John F. Kennedy, Lyndon Johnson, Richard Nixon, Gerald Ford, James Carter, and Ronald Reagan. All these Presidents had problems with a Congress, which was sometimes controlled by the opposition party. But one thing upon which the President and the Congress did agree was the need to find a way to deal with the economic challenges of the postwar years.

32.1.3. As early as the 1870's many groups of Americans were asking the government to help guide the nation's economy. Such demands increased during the Progressive era and during the New Deal years. Then in 1946, Congress passed the Full Employment Act which declared that the Federal Government should use all means and resources to promote maximum employment, production, and purchasing power. While economists did not always agree, they suggested a number of measures that could be taken to help the national economy grow.

32.1.4. Such measures were passed to help stabilize the economy in periods of **recession**, when business is slow, and in periods of **inflation**, when the prices of goods rise quickly. In periods of recession, measures were taken to cut taxes in the hope that a tax cut would help business to recover. People would buy goods with the money they save by the tax cut. Such spending is expected to help business and bring better times for everyone. In periods of inflation, the government may raise taxes and cut government spending. Then people would have less money to spend, and prices should level off. Sometimes, it appears that neither taxing and spending policies nor controlling the money supply seem to keep the economy healthy.

32.2. THE CHALLENGE OF ECONOMIC EXPANSION

32.2.1. The years between 1945 and 1960 were good years for the American economy. People bought goods they had not been able to get during the war which had ended in 1945. Because the population increased, there were more customers to buy goods. Government spending stayed at a high level in peacetime. Employment rose from 54 million in 1945 to over 70 million in 1960 and the average family income rose from $3,575 to over $5,000.

32.2.2. During World War II, workers stood behind the nation's war effort. Take-home pay was high during the war for many workers who earned overtime as well as regular pay. After the war, however, workers became dissatisfied because the prices rose faster than wages during the inflation of 1946-1948. Many strikes occurred during that time and over 4 million workers took part in strikes. In the following years, unions gained greater benefits for their membership, such as higher wages, shorter working hours, paid vacations, and health insurance. But strikes turned many people against the unions. Some Americans began to fear that the unions had become too powerful. This feeling became so strong that Congress, in 1947, passed the Taft Harley Act to limit Union **excesses**.

32.2.3. As labor unions grew, big business also became bigger. Many companies became billion-dollar corporations. Such corporations generally became that large by buying up a number of different smaller companies. As huge corporations made and sold more and more goods, small-and middle-size businesses suffered. Giant corporations could sell goods at prices that most small companies could not match; therefore, many small businesses were forced to close.

32.2.4. The postwar years saw major changes in technology. The electronic industries became more and more important. Television and, later, the **electronic computer**, have changed the American way of life. In the late 1950's, the **aerospace industry** began to grow. In the 1960's, the American space program brought about many changes in the American economy.

32.3. THE IMPACT OF ECONOMIC CHANGE:

32.3.1. The 1960's were, in general, years of rapid industrial growth in the United States. Such gains were largely caused by a greater demand for goods. But industrial growth was also made possible by research and by breakthroughs in technology.

32.3.2. In July 1969, two American astronauts became the first people to set foot on the moon. No one knows what benefits may come from that landing and from those that followed. But there is no doubt that the research that made those spaceflights possible led to gains in other fields. Communications, weather forecasting, and aircraft engineering all benefited. **Communication satellites** make it possible to broadcast and receive television programs from most parts of the world. Other satellites give new kinds of information to weather forecasters. Aviation, medicine, data processing, automation, and many other fields also benefited from advancements in technology. Whole new industries, such as the computer industry, came into being.

32.3.3. The most important development in the industry was the electronic computer. Computers can translate foreign languages. They can store information for use when needed, and they can work out difficult mathematical problems. But perhaps most importantly, a computer can tell other machines what to do.

32.3.4. In the mid 1970's, the Gross National Product of the United States was over 1 trillion dollars. As the American economy grew, it became increasingly dependent on the foreign market for its products and on foreign oil to run its industries. The surge in oil prices in 1973, following the war in the Middle East, caused the economic recession of 1974-1975. The second period of recession began in 1979 with another surge in oil prices, accompanied by a decline in international trade, high unemployment, high inflation, and high interest rates in the United States. Through a combination of tax cuts and other measures, the government has successfully combatted inflation, lowered unemployment and the American economy began to move out of the recession towards another period of growth. Some economists believe that such economic growth is good for the nation. It is needed if the economy is to meet the increasing needs of a growing population. However, others are not sure. Rapid economic growth has often caused trouble. Too much production has caused recession, unemployment, and poverty. Moreover, air and water pollution are often caused by rapid industrial growth.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ROSE
FORD
MOON
SPACE
DEMAND
GOODS
REAGAN
NIXON
SURGE

DEFENSE
POWER
ELECTRONIC
COMPUTER
SATELLITE
POLITICS
TRUMAN
GROWTH
BENEFIT
PROMOTE

EXCESSES
CARTER
JOHNSON
KENNEDY
MONEY
STRIKE
UNIONS
TELEVISION
INDUSTRIAL
AEROSPACE

ECONOMIC EXPANSION
FOREIGN AID
OPPOSITION PARTY
EISENHOWER
INFLATION
RECESSION
LEVEL OFF
DISSATISFIED
TAFT HARLEY ACT
CORPORATION

B	E	N	E	F	I	T	O	A	E	R	O	S	P	A	C	E	M
C	D	E	F	E	N	S	E	W	E	S	O	R	J	E	T	T	D
O	F	O	R	E	I	G	N	A	I	D	P	S	H	C	A	E	E
R	M	L	E	V	E	L	O	F	F	X	P	V	O	O	F	L	M
P	P	O	L	I	T	I	C	R	E	W	O	P	N	N	T	E	A
O	E	X	C	E	S	S	E	S	S	W	S	W	S	O	H	V	N
R	L	N	N	O	I	T	A	L	F	N	I	W	O	M	A	I	D
A	E	T	R	U	M	A	N	S	I	S	T	T	N	I	R	S	G
T	C	N	I	X	O	N	H	U	F	N	I	O	R	C	L	I	L
I	T	G	O	O	D	S	P	R	O	M	O	T	E	E	E	O	A
O	R	C	A	R	T	E	R	G	R	W	N	R	C	X	Y	N	I
N	O	M	O	N	E	Y	X	E	D	O	P	E	E	P	A	S	R
G	N	S	A	T	E	L	L	I	T	E	A	A	S	A	C	P	T
R	I	K	E	N	N	E	D	Y	T	O	R	G	S	N	T	A	S
O	C	O	M	P	U	T	E	R	O	V	T	A	I	S	M	C	U
W	E	I	S	E	N	H	O	W	E	R	Y	N	O	I	O	E	D
T	S	T	R	I	K	E	U	N	I	O	N	S	N	O	O	T	N
H	D	I	S	S	A	T	I	S	F	I	E	D	O	N	N	W	I

II. Matching: Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A	B
____ a. computer	1. control of machines or of sets or systems of machines by other machines instead of directly by human operators.
____ b. inflation	2. electronic device which stores information on discs or magnetic tapes, analyses it and produces information as required from the data on the tapes.
____ c. insurance	3. the act of protection from danger, attack, or harm.
____ d. surge	4. quality exceeding what is normal or sufficient.
____ e. recession	5. the time in which the prices of goods rise quickly.
____ f. opposition party	6. the coverage by a contract binding a party to indemnify another against specific loss in return for premiums paid.
____ g. level off	7. a political party or organized group opposed to

		the group, party, or government in power.
____	h. excessive	8. to move toward stability or consistence.
____	i. defense	9. the time in which business is slow.
____	j. automation	10. to increase suddenly.

III. True or False: Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put an F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. The years between 1945 and the 1970's were years of growth and change for the American economy.

____ 2. All the Presidents who served after 1945 have had problems with a Congress, which was sometimes controlled by the opposition party.

____ 3. In periods of recession, or when business is slow, the government may cut taxes.

____ 4. In periods of inflation, or when the prices of goods rise quickly, the government may raise taxes.

____ 5. Because the population increased, there were more customers to buy goods.

____ 6. Government spending stayed at a low level in peacetime.

____ 7. As labor unions grew, big business became smaller.

____ 8. As the American economy grows, it becomes increasingly dependent on the foreign market for its products and on foreign oil to run its industries.

____ 9. The second period of recession began in 1979 with another surge in oil prices, accompanied by a decline in international trade, high unemployment, high inflation, and a high interest rate in the United States.

____10. Some economists believe that such economic growth is good for the nation. It is needed if the economy is to meet the increasing needs of a growing population.

IV. Fill in the blanks:

Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: to help, level off, corporations, economy, the Full Employment Act, the inflation, the tax cut, challenge, astronauts, technology.

1. The years between 1945 and the 1970's were years of growth and change for the United States ___________ .
2. Once again, government and the political parties faced a major _____________ .
3. As early as the 1870's many groups of Americans were asking the government _________ the nation's economy.
4. Then in 1946, Congress passed ______________ which declared that the Federal Government should use every means and resource to promote maximum employment, production, and purchasing power.
5. That will help business to recover. People will buy goods with money they save by ___________ .

6. In periods of inflation, or when the prices of goods rise quickly, government may raise taxes. It may cut government spending. Then people will have less money to spend, and prices should _______________ .

7. After the war, however, workers became dissatified because the prices rose faster than wages during ___________ of 1946-1948.

8. As labor union grew, big business also became bigger. Many companies became billion-dollar _____________ . Such corporations generally became that large by buying up a number of different small companies.

9. The postwar years saw major changes in ____________ .

10. In July 1969, two American ____________ became the first people to set foot on the moon.

ບົດອ່ານ

໓໒.໑. ການເມືອງຂອງການປ່ຽນແປງ.

໓໒.໑.໑. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໔໕ ຫາ ໑໙໗໐ ນັ້ນ ເປັນຣະຍະເວລາແຫ່ງການຈະເຣີນເຕີບໂຕແລະການປ່ຽນແປງສຳຫຼັບເສດຖະກິດຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ການປ້ອງກັນປະເທດ ແລະ ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຕ່າງປະເທດ ເປັນພາລະອັນຕໍ່ເນື່ອງໃຫ້ແກ່ຣະບົບເສດຖະກິດຂອງປະເທດ. ໃນຂະນະດຽວກັນ ປະຊາຊົນທີ່ມີຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນນັ້ນກໍໄດ້ມີຄວາມຕ້ອງການເຄື່ອງໃຊ້ຂອງສອຍ ແລະ ການບໍຣິການຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ ຣັຖບານພ້ອມດ້ວຍພັກການເມືອງກໍໄດ້ປະສົບກັບບັນຫາອັນສຳຄັນອີກຄັ້ງນຶ່ງ. ບັນຫາດັ່ງກ່າວກໍຄືວ່າ ຣັຖບານຈະກະທຳວິທີໃດເພື່ອໃຫ້ເປັນທີ່ພຽງພໍກັບຄວາມຕ້ອງການທາງດ້ານເສດຖະກິດຂອງຊົນອະເມຣິກັນທັງຫຼາຍ ? ຈະປະຕິບັດການເມືອງໃນທຳນອງໃດຈຶ່ງຈະບັນລຸເຖິງເປົ້າໝາຍເສດຖະກິດທີ່ວ່ານັ້ນ ?

໓໑.໑.໒. ປະທານາທິບໍດີທີ່ໄດ້ຮັບໃຊ້ປະເທດຊາດມາຕັ້ງແຕ່ປີ ໑໙໔໕ ນັ້ນ ມີຢູ່ແປດທ່ານ ຊຶ່ງໄດ້ແກ່ທ່ານ Harry Truman, Dwight Eisenhower, John F.Kennedy, Lyndon Johnson, Richard Nixon, James Carter, ແລະ ທ່ານ Ronald Reagen. ປະທານາທິບໍດີທັງໝົດເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ໄດ້ມີບັນຫາກັບສະພາຊຶ່ງໃນບາງຄັ້ງແມ່ນພັກຝ່າຍຄ້ານເປັນຜູ້ຄວບຄຸມ. ແຕ່ວ່າມີສິ່ງນຶ່ງທີ່ປະທານາທິບໍດີ ແລະ ສະພາໄດ້ເຫັນດີຮ່ວມກັນນັ້ນກໍຄື ຄວາມຈຳເປັນໃນການຫາຊ່ອງທາງເພື່ອແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາເສດຖະກິດໃນສໄມຫຼັງສົງຄາມ.

໓໒.໑.໓. ໄດ້ດົນນານມາແລ້ວ ຄື ຕັ້ງແຕ່ໃນປີ ໑໘໗໐ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຫຼາຍກຸ່ມດ້ວຍກັນ ໄດ້ຮຽກຮ້ອງໃຫ້ຣັຖບານຊ່ວຍແບບນຳເສດຖະກິດຂອງປະເທດ. ການຮຽກຮ້ອງດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ເພີ່ມຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນໃນສໄມກ້າວໜ້າຫຼື Progressive era ແລະ ໃນສໄມ New Deal . ຕໍ່ມາໃນປີ ໑໙໔໖ ສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳລັດ Full Employment Act ຊຶ່ງໄດ້ຖແລງວ່າ ຣັຖບານກາງຕ້ອງໃຊ້ພາຫະນະແລະຊັບສິນທຸກຢ່າງ ເພື່ອສົ່ງເສີມໃຫ້ຄົນມີວຽກເຮັດງານທຳ ໃຫ້ມີການຜລິດ ແລະ ໃຫ້ມີອຳນາດການຊື້ໃຫ້ຫຼາຍທີ່ສຸດ. ເຖິງແມ່ນວ່າ ນັກເສດຖະສາດບໍ່ໄດ້ເຫັນພ້ອມສເມີໄປກໍຕາມ ແຕ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍໄດ້ແນະນຳໃຫ້ໃຊ້ມາດຕະການຫຼາຍຢ່າງ ເພື່ອຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ເສດຖະກິດຂອງປະເທດຈະເຣີນເຕີບໂຕຂຶ້ນ.

໓໒.໑.໔. ສະພາໄດ້ຜ່ານມາດຕະການດັ່ງກ່າວເພື່ອຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ເສດຖະກິດມີຄວາມໝັ້ນທ່ຽງໃນວາລະເສດຖະກິດຕົກຕ່ຳ ໃນເວລາທຸລະກິດການຄ້າຝືດເຄືອງ ໃນວາລະທີ່ມີສະພາບເງິນເຟີ້ ແລະໃນເວລາທີ່ລາຄາຂອງສິນຄ້າຖີບຂຶ້ນສູງຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວ. ໃນເວລາເສດຖະກິດຕົກຕ່ຳນັ້ນ ກໍໄດ້ມີການຕັດພາສີລົງ ໃນຄວາມຫວັງທີ່ວ່າ ການຕັດພາສີນັ້ນ ຈະຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ທຸລະກິດການຄ້າຟື້ນຕົວຄືນມາ ຊຶ່ງປະຊາຊົນຈະຊື້ເອົາສິນຄ້າດ້ວຍເງິນທີ່ສະສົມໄດ້ຈາກການຕັດພາສີ. ເປັນທີ່ຄາດກັນວ່າ ການຈັບຈ່າຍດັ່ງກ່າວຈະເປັນການຈ້ອນຊູການຄ້າ ແລະ ຈະນຳເອົາຄວາມສະບາຍມາສູ່ທຸກຄົນ. ໃນວາລະສະພາບເງິນເຟີ້ ລັດຖະບານກໍອາດຈະຂຶ້ນພາສີ ແລະ ຕັດລາຍຈ່າຍຂອງລັດຖະບານລົງ. ຊຶ່ງຈະພາໃຫ້ປະຊາຊົນມີເງິນຈັບຈ່າຍນ້ອຍກວ່າເດີມ ແລະ ພາໃຫ້ລາຄາສິນຄ້າໝັ້ນທ່ຽງຂຶ້ນ. ໃນບາງຄັ້ງກໍປາກົດວ່າ ນະໂຍບາຍກ່ຽວກັບການເກັບພາສີ ແລະ ການຈັບຈ່າຍຫຼືການຄວບຄຸມການໝູນວຽນຂອງເງິນຕານັ້ນບໍ່ໄດ້ຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ເສດຖະກິດດີຂຶ້ນເລີຍ.

໓໒.໒. ບັນຫາໃນການຂະຫຍາຍເສດຖະກິດ.

໓໒.໒.໑. ຊ່ວງເວລາໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໔໕ ແລະ ໑໙໖໐ ນັ້ນ ເປັນຊ່ວງເວລາທີ່ດີສຳຫຼັບເສດຖະກິດຂອງສະຫະລັດອະເມຣິກາ. ປະຊາຊົນໄດ້ພາກັນຊື້ເອົາເຄື່ອງໃຊ້ຂອງສອຍ ຊຶ່ງເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ສາມາດຈະຫາໄດ້ໃນສະໄໝສົງຄາມ ຊຶ່ງໄດ້ຢຸດຕິລົງໃນປີ ໑໙໔໕ ນັ້ນ. ເນື່ອງຈາກຈຳນວນຂອງປະຊາຊົນໄດ້ເພີ່ມຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ດັ່ງນັ້ນຈຶ່ງໄດ້ມີລູກຄ້າຊື້ສິ່ງຂອງຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ. ໃນຍາມສງົບນັ້ນ ການໃຊ້ຈ່າຍຂອງລັດຖະບານໄດ້ຢູ່ໃນລະດັບອັນສູງ. ຈຳນວນຂອງພວກທີ່ເຮັດວຽກເຮັດງານໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນຈາກ ໕໔ ລ້ານຄົນໃນປີ ໑໙໔໕ ມາຫຼາຍກວ່າ ໗໐ ລ້ານຄົນໃນປີ ໑໙໖໐ ແລະ ລາຍໄດ້ສະເລັ່ຍຂອງຄອບຄົວໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນຈາກ ໓.໕໗໔ ໂດລາ ຫາຫຼາຍກວ່າ ໕.໐໐໐ ໂດລາ.

໓໒.໒.໒. ໃນສະໄໝສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງ ພວກຄົນງານໄດ້ຢູ່ທາງເບື້ອງຫຼັງການຄ້ຳສົງຄາມຂອງປະເທດ. ໃນສະໄໝທີ່ສົງຄາມກຳລັງດຳເນີນຢູ່ນັ້ນ ພວກຄົນງານຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ເງິນດີ ຍ້ອນວ່າ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກລ່ວງເວລາ. ແຕ່ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໄດ້ຜ່ານພົ້ນໄປແລ້ວ ພວກຄົນງານທັງຫຼາຍເກີດບໍ່ມີຄວາມພໍໃຈ ເພາະວ່າລາຄາສິ່ງຂອງໄດ້ຂຶ້ນໄວກວ່າເງິນເດືອນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ເຫດການດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໔໖ ແລະ ໑໙໔໗ ຊຶ່ງເປັນສະໄໝທີ່ມີສະພາບເງິນເຟີ້. ໃນລະຫວ່າງນັ້ນ ໄດ້ມີການປະທ້ວງເກີດຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍຄັ້ງ ຊຶ່ງມີພວກຄົນງານເຂົ້າຮ່ວມຫຼາຍກວ່າ ໔ ລ້ານຄົນ. ໃນປີຕໍ່ມາ ສະຫະພັນແຮງງານໄດ້ນຳເອົາປະໂຍດ

ຫຼາຍຢ່າງມາສູ່ສະມາຊິກຂອງຕົນ ເຊັ່ນໄດ້ເງິນເດືອນຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ, ຊົ່ວໂມງເຮັດວຽກນ້ອຍລົງ, ຢຸດພັກໂດຍໄດ້ຮັບເງິນແລະມີປະກັນພັຍສຸກຂະພາບ. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນບາງຄົນໄດ້ເລີ່ມມີຄວາມຢ້ານກົວວ່າ ສະຫະພັນແຮງງານຈະມີອິດທິພົນຫຼາຍເກີນໄປ. ຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ຈົນສະພາໄດ້ອອກດຳລັດ Taft Harley Act ເພື່ອຈຳກັດຄວາມຕ້ອງການຂອງສະຫະພັນໃນປີ ໑໙໔໗.

໓໒.໒.໓. ເມື່ອສະຫະພັນແຮງງານໄດ້ເຕີບໂຕຂຶ້ນ ບໍລິສັດການຄ້າໃຫຍ່ໆກໍໄດ້ເຕີບໂຕຂຶ້ນເຊັ່ນກັນ. ຫຼາຍບໍລິສັດໄດ້ກາຍເປັນບໍລິສັດທີ່ມີທຶນເປັນພັນລ້ານໂດລາ. ການທີ່ບໍລິສັດໄດ້ເຕີບໂຕໃຫຍ່ເຊັ່ນນັ້ນ ກໍເພາະເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຊື້ເອົາບໍລິສັດນ້ອຍໆຕ່າງໆເຂົ້າມາຢູ່ໃນອົງການຂອງຕົນນັ້ນເອງ. ເມື່ອບໍລິສັດທີ່ໃຫຍ່ມະຫາສານ ໄດ້ຜະລິດແລະຂາຍສິນຄ້າຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ພວກບໍລິສັດຂະໜາດນ້ອຍແລະຂະໜາດກາງທັງຫຼາຍກໍໄດ້ຮັບຄວາມກະທົບກະເທືອນ. ຍ້ອນວ່າ ບໍລິສັດໃຫຍ່ສາມາດຂາຍສິນຄ້າໃນຣາຄາທີ່ບໍລິສັດນ້ອຍສ່ວນຫຼາຍ ບໍ່ສາມາດຈະຕລບທັນໄດ້ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ບໍລິສັດນ້ອຍຫຼາຍບໍລິສັດຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຖືກບັງຄັບໃຫ້ປິດປະຕູໄປ.

໓໒.໒.໔. ໃນສະໄໝຫຼັງສົງຄາມນັ້ນ ໄດ້ມີການປ່ຽນແປງທາງດ້ານເທັກໂນໂລຈີທີ່ສຳຄັນຫຼາຍຢ່າງ. ໂຮງງານອີເລັກໂທຣນິກ ໄດ້ມີຄວາມສຳຄັນຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນເປັນລຳດັບ. ໂທຣະທັດແລະຄອມພິວເຕີ ອີເລັກໂທຣນິກ ໄດ້ຫັນປ່ຽນຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຂອງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນ. ໃນປີຖັດຈາກ ໑໙໔໐ ຕໍ່ມານັ້ນໂຮງງານສ້າງເຮືອບິນໄດ້ເລີ່ມເຕີບໂຕໃຫຍ່ຂຶ້ນ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໐ ໂຄງການອາວະກາດອະເມຣິກັນ ໄດ້ນຳການປ່ຽນແປງຫຼາຍຢ່າງມາສູ່ເສດຖະກິດຂອງສະຫະຣັຖ.

໓໒.໓. ຜົນກະທົບກະເທືອນຂອງການປ່ຽນແປງດ້ານເສດຖະກິດ.

໓໒.໓.໑. ໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໖໐ ຫາ ໑໙໗໐ ນັ້ນ ໂດຍທົ່ວໄປແລ້ວ ໂຮງງານອຸດສະຫະກັມໄດ້ຈະເຣີນເຕີບໂຕຂຶ້ນຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ແຕ່ການດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນກໍຍ້ອນຄວາມຕ້ອງການດ້ານເຄື່ອງໃຊ້ຂອງສອຍໄດ້ມີຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນນັ້ນເອງ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ກໍເປັນຍ້ອນຜົນຂອງການຄົ້ນຄວ້າແລະກ້າວໜ້າທາງດ້ານເທັກໂນໂລຈີ.

໓໒.໓.໒. ໃນເດືອນກໍຣະກະດາ ໑໙໖໙ ນັກອາວະກາດອະເມຣິກັນສອງຄົນ ໄດ້ເປັນຄົນທຳອິດທີ່ໄດ້ຂຶ້ນດວງເດືອນ. ບໍ່ມີໃຜຮູ້ໄດ້ວ່າການຂຶ້ນໄປດວງເດືອນໃນຄັ້ງທຳອິດ ແລະ ຄັ້ງຕໍ່ມານັ້ນໃຫ້ຜົນປະໂຍດຫຍັງແນ່.

ແຕ່ການຄົ້ນຄວ້າທີ່ພາໃຫ້ການບິນຂຶ້ນໄປດວງເດືອນສາມາດເກີດຂຶ້ນໄດ້ນັ້ນຕ້ອງໄດ້ຮັບຜົນປະໂຍດໃນດ້ານອື່ນຢ່າງບໍ່ຕ້ອງສົງໃສ ເຊັ່ນໃນດ້ານສື່ສານ, ການພະຍາກອນອາກາດ ແລະ ດ້ານອຸສາຫະກັມການບິນດັ່ງນີ້ເປັນຕົ້ນ. ດາວທຽມສື່ສານເຮັດໃຫ້ສາມາດຖ່າຍທອດແລະຮັບລາຍການໂທລະທັດເກືອບຈາກຫມົດທຸກສ່ວນຂອງໂລກໄດ້. ດາວທຽມຢ່າງອື່ນກໍນຳຄວາມຮູ້ແບບໃຫມ່ໃຫ້ແກ່ນັກພະຍາກອນອາກາດ. ຄວາມກ້າວຫນ້າທາງດ້ານເທັກໂນໂລຈີກໍໄດ້ປະໂຍດແກ່ການບິນ, ການແພດ, ການຄຳນວນຄິດເລກ, ການໃຊ້ເຄື່ອງຈັກແທນຄົນ ແລະ ແກ່ຄົນອື່ນໆອີກເຊັ່ນກັນ. ແລະຍ້ອນເທັກໂນໂລຈີ ອຸດສາຫະກັມໃຫມ່ໆທັງມວນເຊັ່ນອຸດສາຫະກັມຄອມພິວເຕີ້ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນ.

໓໒.໓.໓. ການພັດທະນາທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດຂອງອຸດສາຫະກັມ ແມ່ນໃນດ້ານເຄື່ອງຄອມພິວເຕີ ອິເລັກໂທຣນິກ. ເຄື່ອງຄອມພິວເຕີ້ນີ້ ສາມາດແປພາສາຕ່າງປະເທດ, ສາມາດສະສົມຂໍ້ມູນສຳຫຼັບໃຊ້ໃນຍາມຕ້ອງການ ແລະ ສາມາດຄຳນວນໂຈດເລກທີ່ຍາກໄດ້. ແຕ່ບາງທີ ສິ່ງທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດກໍອາດຈະແມ່ນວ່າ ເຄື່ອງຄອມພິວເຕີສາມາດບອກເຄື່ອງຈັກອື່ນໃຫ້ເຮັດສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງນຶ່ງໄດ້ນັ້ນເອງ.

໓໒.໒.໔. ໃນລະຫວ່າງກາງຂອງປີ ໑໙໗໐ ແລະ ໑໙໘໐ ນັ້ນ ການຜລິດຂອງຊາດທັງຫມົດຂອງສະຫະຣັຖ ມີຈຳນວນຫຼາຍພັນລ້ານໂດລາ. ເມື່ອເສດຖະກິດໄດ້ເຕີບໃຫຍ່ຂະຫຍາຍຕົວຂຶ້ນ ສະຫະຣັຖກໍໄດ້ອາໃສຕລາດຕ່າງປະເທດຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ເພື່ອຂາຍສິນຄ້າຂອງຕົນແລະອາໃສນ້ຳມັນຈາກຕ່າງປະເທດເພື່ອປ້ອນໂຮງງານຂອງຕົນ. ການຖີບຕົວຂຶ້ນສູງຂອງຣາຄານ້ຳມັນໃນປີ ໑໙໗໓ ຄືໃນສໄມພາຍຫຼັງສົງຄາມໃນພາກຕາເວັນອອກກາງນັ້ນ ໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ເສດຖະກິດໃນປີ ໑໙໗໔ ແລະ ໑໙໗໕ ຕົກຕ່ຳ. ສະພາບເສດຖະກິດຕົກຕ່ຳຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງໄດ້ເລີ່ມຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໙໗໙ ຍ້ອນຣາຄາຂອງນ້ຳມັນໄດ້ຖີບຂຶ້ນສູງອີກເທື່ອນຶ່ງ ຊຶ່ງຕິດຕາມໄປດ້ວຍການຄ້າລະຫວ່າງຊາດຕົກຕ່ຳ, ການວ່າງງານອັນສູງ, ສະພາບເງິນເຟີ້ຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ ແລະ ອັດຕາດອກເບ້ຍອັນສູງ. ຍ້ອນການຕັດພາສີ ແລະ ມາດຕະການຢ່າງອື່ນ ຣັຖບານຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຮັບຜົນສຳເຣັດໃນການແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາເງິນເຟີ້ ແລະ ການວ່າງງານ. ຫຼັງຈາກນັ້ນ ເສດຖະກິດຂອງສະຫະຣັຖກໍໄດ້ເລີ່ມເຄື່ອນຕົວອອກຈາກສະພາບຝືດເຄືອງໄປສູ່ສໄມແຫ່ງການຈເຣີນເຕີບໂຕອີກຄັ້ງນຶ່ງ. ນັກເສດຖະກິດບາງຄົນເຊື່ອວ່າ ການເຕີບໂຕຂອງເສດຖະກິດດັ່ງກ່າວເປັນສິ່ງທີ່ດີສຳຫຼັບປະເທດ. ການເຕີບໂຕນັ້ນ ເປັນສິ່ງຈຳເປັນແກ່ເສດຖະກິດເພື່ອອຳນວຍຄວາມຕ້ອງການຂອງປະຊາຊົນທີ່ຂະຫຍາຍຕົວຂຶ້ນເລື້ອຍໆ. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍດີ ຍັງມີຄົນອີກຈຳນວນຫຼາຍທີ່ບໍ່ມີຄວາມແນ່ນອນໃຈ ເພາະວ່າ ການເຕີບໂຕອັນວ່ອງໄວຂອງເສດຖະກິດມັກຈະພາໃຫ້ເກີດມີຄວາມ

ປັ່ນປ່ວນ. ການຜລິດທີ່ຫຼາຍເກີນໄປ ໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ເກີດມີເສດຖະກິດຕົກຕ່ຳ, ມີການວ່າງງານ ແລະ ມີຄວາມທຸກຈົນ. ຍິ່ງໄປກວ່ານັ້ນ ການເຕີບໂຕອັນວ່ອງໄວຂອງໂຮງງານອຸດສາຫະກັມ ມັກຈະພາໃຫ້ອາກາດ ແລະ ນ້ຳເສັຍ.

EXERCISES

I. WORD SEARCH PUZZLE:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້ . ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ, ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນສັບຄຳໃດນັ້ນໄວ້ພ້ອມຂຽນຄວາມໝາຍແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍດ້ວຍ.

B	E	N	E	F	I	T	O	A	E	R	O	S	P	A	C	E	M
C	D	E	F	E	N	S	E	W	E	S	O	R	J	E	T	T	D
O	F	O	R	E	I	G	N	A	I	D	P	S	H	C	A	E	E
R	M	L	E	V	E	L	O	F	F	X	P	V	O	O	F	L	M
P	P	O	L	I	T	I	C	R	E	W	O	P	N	N	T	E	A
O	E	X	C	E	S	S	E	S	S	W	S	W	S	O	H	V	N
R	L	N	N	O	I	T	A	L	F	N	I	W	O	M	A	I	D
A	E	T	R	U	M	A	N	S	I	S	T	T	N	I	R	S	G
T	C	N	I	X	O	N	H	U	F	N	I	O	R	C	L	I	L
I	T	G	O	O	D	S	P	R	O	M	O	T	E	E	E	O	A
O	R	C	A	R	T	E	R	G	R	W	N	R	C	X	Y	N	I
N	O	M	O	N	E	Y	X	E	D	O	P	E	E	P	A	S	R
G	N	S	A	T	E	L	L	I	T	E	A	A	S	A	C	P	T
R	I	K	E	N	N	E	D	Y	T	O	R	G	S	N	T	A	S
O	C	O	M	P	U	T	E	R	O	V	T	A	I	S	M	C	U
W	E	I	S	E	N	H	O	W	E	R	Y	N	O	I	O	E	D
T	S	T	R	I	K	E	U	N	I	O	N	S	N	O	O	T	N
H	D	I	S	S	A	T	I	S	F	I	E	D	O	N	N	W	I

ROSE
FORD
MOON
SPACE
DEMAND
GOODS
REAGAN
NIXON
SURGE

DEFENSE
POWER
ELECTRONIC
COMPUTER
SATELLITE
POLITICS
TRUMAN
GROWTH
BENEFIT
PROMOTE

EXCESSES
CARTER
JOHNSON
KENNEDY
MONEY
STRIKE
UNIONS
TELEVISION
INDUSTRIAL
AEROSPACE

ECONOMIC EXPANSION
FOREIGN AID
OPPOSITION PARTY
EISENHOWER
INFLATION
RECESSION
LEVEL OFF
DISSATISFIED
TAFT HARLEY ACT
CORPORATION

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ : (ເບິ່ງພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ :

ຈົ່ງຈັດແຕ່ລະຄຳເວົ້າໃນຫມວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍທີ່ມີໃນຫມວດ (ຂ) ໂດຍໃຫ້ເລືອກເອົາຕົວເລກທີ່ມີໃນຫມວດ (ຂ) ຫມາຍໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນຫມວດ (ກ) ແທນຄຳຕອບ.

ຫມວດ (ກ)	ຫມວດ (ຂ)
______ ກ. ເຄື່ອງຄອມພິວເຕີ	໑. ການຄວບຄຸມເຄື່ອງຈັກຫຼືລະບົບເຄື່ອງຈັກ ໂດຍໃຊ້ເຄື່ອງຈັກອັນອື່ນແທນທີ່ຈະໃຊ້ຄົນໂດຍກົງ.
______ ຂ. ສະພາບເງິນເຟີ້	໒. ເຄື່ອງອີເລັກໂທຣນິກ ທີ່ສະສົມຂໍ້ມູນເພື່ອໃຊ້ໃນຍາມຕ້ອງການ.
______ ຄ. ປະກັນພັຍ	໓. ການທຳການປົກປ້ອງຈາກອັນຕະຣາຍ ຈາກການໂຈມຕີ ຫຼື ຈາກການທຳຮ້າຍ.
______ ງ. ຖີບຂຶ້ນສູງ	໔. ສະພາບທີ່ເກີນເຂດທັມມະດາ.
______ ຈ. ເສດຖະກິດຕົກຕ່ຳ	໕. ເວລາທີ່ຣາຄາສິນຄ້າຂຶ້ນສູງຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວ.
______ ສ. ພັກຄ້ານ	໖. ການຈ່າຍເງິນໂດຍສັນຍາເພື່ອທົດແທນການເສັຍຫາຍໃຫ້ແກ່ຜູ້ທີ່ໄດ້ຊຳລະເງິນເປັນປະຈຳ.
______ ຊ. ຫຸ່ມທ່ຽງ	ກ. ພັກການເມືອງທີ່ຄັດຄ້ານຄະນະຣັຖບານທີ່ຢູ່ໃນອຳນາດ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
______ ຍ. ເກີນ	໘. ສມ່ຳສເມີ.
______ ດ. ການປ້ອງກັນ	໙. ເວລາທີ່ທຸຣະກິດການຄ້າຝືດເຄືອງ.
______ ຕ. ການໃຊ້ເຄື່ອງຈັກແທນຄົນ	໑໐. ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວ.

໓. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ.

ຈົ່ງອ່ານແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ໝາຍຕົວອັກສອນ T ໃສ່ຖ້າຫາກປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກ. ຖ້າຫາກປະໂຍກນັ້ນຜິດໃຫ້ໝາຍ F ໃສ່.

______ ໑. ສໄມໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໔໕ ແລະ ໑໙໗໐ ນັ້ນ ເປັນສໄມແຫ່ງການຈເຣີນເຕີບໂຕ ແລະ ປ່ຽນແປງຂອງເສດຖະກິດອະເມຣິກັນ.

______ ໒. ບັນດາປະທານາທິບໍດີທີ່ໄດ້ຮັບໃຊ້ພາຍຫຼັງປີ ໑໙໔໕ ນັ້ນ ໄດ້ມີບັນຫາກັບສະພາທຸກຄົນ ຈຶ່ງສະພາດັ່ງກ່າວໄດ້ຖືກຄວບຄຸມດ້ວຍພັກຝ່າຍຄ້ານໃນບາງຄັ້ງ.

______ ໓. ໃນສໄມທີ່ເສດຖະກິດຕົກຕ່ຳຫຼືໃນເວລາທີ່ທຸຣະກິດການຄ້າຝືດເຄືອງນັ້ນ ຣັຖບານກໍອາດຈະຕັດພາສີລົງ.

______ ໔. ໃນວາຣະຂອງສະພາບເງິນເຟີ້ໃນເວລາທີ່ຣາຄາສິນຄ້າເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນຢ່າງວ່ອງໄວນັ້ນ ຣັຖບານກໍອາດຈະຂຶ້ນພາສີ.

______ ໕. ຍ້ອນວ່າຈຳນວນຂອງປະຊາຊົນໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນ ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ລູກຄ້າຊື້ສິ່ງຂອງຈຶ່ງມີຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ.

______ ໖. ໃນເວລາສງົບ ລາຍຈ່າຍຂອງຣັຖບານໄດ້ຢູ່ໃນຣະດັບຕ່ຳ.

______ ໗. ເມື່ອສະຫະພັນແຮງງານໄດ້ເຕີບໂຕຂຶ້ນ ບໍຣິສັດການຄ້າໃຫຍ່ໆກໍໄດ້ນ້ອຍລົງ.

______ ໘. ເມື່ອເສດຖະກິດຈເຣີນເຕີບໂຕຂຶ້ນ ສະຫະຣັຖຕ້ອງອາໃສຕຼາດຕ່າງປະເທດຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນເພື່ອ
ຂາຍສິນຄ້າຂອງຕົນ ແລະ ອາໃສນ້ຳມັນຕ່າງປະເທດເພື່ອປ້ອນໂຮງງານຂອງຕົນ.

______ ໙. ການຕົກຕ່ຳຂອງເສດຖະກິດຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງໄດ້ເລີ່ມຂຶ້ນໃນປີ ໑໙໗໙ ຍ້ອນຣາຄາຂອງນ້ຳມັນ
ໄດ້ຖີບຕົວຂຶ້ນສູງອີກເທື່ອນຶ່ງ ອັນຕິດຕາມໄປດ້ວຍການຕົກຕ່ຳຂອງການຄ້າຕ່າງປະເທດ,
ການວ່າງງານອັນສູງ, ສະພາບເງິນເຟີ້ຢ່າງຫຼວງຫຼາຍ, ແລະ ອັດຕາອັນສູງຂອງດອກເບ້ຍ.

______໑໐. ນັກເສດຖະກິດບາງຄົນເຊື່ອວ່າ ການເຕີບໂຕຂອງເສດຖະກິດເປັນການດີສຳຫຼັບປະເທດ.
ການເຕີບໂຕນັ້ນ ເປັນສິ່ງຈຳເປັນແກ່ເສດຖະກິດ ເພື່ອອຳນວຍຄວາມຕ້ອງການຂອງປະຊາຊົນ ທີ່ຂະຫຍາຍຕົວຂຶ້ນເລື້ອຍໆ.

ໝວດ ໙ : ການນຳພາຂອງໂລກໃນຍຸກນິວຄະເລັຍ

ພາກ ໓໓ : ການເມືອງແລະການປ່ຽນແປງດ້ານສັງຄົມ

ສັບໃຫມ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ :

Social injustice: ຄວາມບໍ່ຍຸດຕິທັມໃນສັງຄົມ

After World War II, Americans started to express their views about civil rights, social injustice, and human needs.

spying: ການສອດແນມ, ການສືບລັບ

The Watergate Scandal related to government spying, burglaries, and illegal acts.

mobile society: ສັງຄົມທີ່ເຄື່ອນໄຫວຢູ່ສເມີ

Americans formed a mobile society.

westward movement: ການຍົກຍ້າຍໄປທາງທິດຕາເວັນຕົກ

There was a westward movement of people trying to find a better climate and better jobs.

technology: ວິທະຍາການ

New social values came about as a result of the advances of technology and economic growth.

deterioration: ການເສື່ອມໂຊມ

environment: ສະພາບສິ່ງແວດລ້ອມ

pollution: ການເຮັດໃຫ້ເປິ້ະເປື້ອນ, ສົກກະປົກ, ຫຼື ເສັຍຫາຍ

Pollution became a major danger and caused the deterioration of the environment.

READING:

33.1. POLITICS AND INDIVIDUAL RIGHTS: THREATS TO CIVIL LIBERTIES

33.1.1. After World War II many Americans took a new look at their society and their social values. They started to express their views and new ideas about civil rights, social injustice, and human needs. The federal government was expected to safeguard civil rights, to prevent social injustice, and to meet human needs. The First Amendment of the Constitution guarantees the freedom of speech and the freedom of expressing an opinion. A serious threat to these civil liberties occurred in the 1950's. During that time, Senator Joseph McCarthy of Wisconsin charged that many high officials of the federal government were influenced by Communists. Athough the Senate censured Senator McCarthy's excessive accusations, Congress did pass some strict laws against Communism.

33.1.2. Civil liberties were again threatened in the 1970's. During the Nixon administration, a scandal was discovered in which members of the Republican administration were caught spying on government officials that were thought to be "enemies" of the administration. Party officials were also caught performing buglaries and other illegal acts. This scandal, known as the Watergate Scandal, involved President Nixon. He resigned the presidency in August, 1974 when it appeared that he would be impeached by the Congress.

33.2. MINORITIES AND CIVIL RIGHTS

33.2.1. In the years before World War II, some groups of American citizens did not have the same rights as other groups. These minority groups were victims of discrimination - unfair and unequal treatment - by other Americans. For these minorities, many of their civil rights had been kept from them.

Many protests by minorities were declared unlawful in some places and their leaders were jailed. Violence broke out many times. Many Americans agreed with the minorities, but others were against any change. At the beginning, the federal government was reluctant to do anything about it. But, as the demands for equal rights increased, the government began to listen and eventually started to act. Several measures against discrimination have since been adopted by the Congress to protect the voting and employment rights of minorities, to desegregate public schools, to outlaw discrimination by employers, to forbid discrimination in public places and in the sale and rental of most housing.

33.2.2. By the 1970's, most discrimination in the United States had been forbidden by laws. Nonetheless, discrimination still remained and the drive for equal rights continued. Many groups of minorities asked for equal rights in health, education, and welfare. By the mid 1970's, Congress had passed several bills that would provide for some kind of health care for all Americans. Moreover, the federal government has continued to set aside money for hospital construction and health research.

In the field of education, similar progress has been made. In general, public schools in the U.S. have been supported largely by local and state government funds. By the mid - 1970's, school enrollment in the United States increased to almost 45 million students. To prevent the collapse of the school system, the federal government began to help the states pay some of their education expenses.

In housing, the federal government has tried to help city slum dwellers. It set aside money for new housing for the poor. Besides, it has also tried to end racial discrimination in the sale and rental of most housing. By 1970 about 80 percent of all housing was protected by the Civil Rights Act of 1968 which outlawed discrimination in housing.

33.3. A SOCIETY OF ABUNDANCE: A PEOPLE ON THE MOVE

33.3.1. Americans have formed a **mobile society**. According to the 1970's census, one of every five Americans changed his or her address. The trend of this population movement is toward the cities and the suburbs which accounted for 75 percent of the nation's population. Minority groups, such as Blacks, Spanish-surname persons, and American Indians were among these big city dwellers. As the economy expanded, people had better jobs and higher salaries. The number of middle class families with average incomes increased. Many of them moved to the suburbs in search of what they considered to be a better life. However, some minority groups still found discrimination in the suburbs.

33.3.2. Besides the population movement from the rural areas to the cities and from the cities to the suburbs, there was a **westward movement** of people trying to find a better climate and better jobs. One example was the movement to California. During the 1980's people also moved to the South, such as Florida and Texas, to save the cost of energy for heating.

33.4. NEW PATTERNS OF LIVING

33.4.1. After World War II, the conflict between old and new social values began to surface in American society. This mainly came as a result of the advances of **technology** and a national economic boom. More people than before had the time and money to create their own style of living. Some young persons turned completely away from their parents' life style. Many of them became active in political struggles, some peaceful and some violent, to push for positive social changes.

33.4.2. The opportunity to grow economically was not evenly distributed. Poverty still existed and was not confined to one area in the United States. It was a condition experienced by many people in urban as well as in rural areas. Most of the poor had to turn to the government for help. So, the government created some welfare programs to help the poor to help themselves. The federal government set up a Job Corps to train thousands of young people, to give them appropriate skills, and to find gainful employment. Local and state governments also set up many job training programs of one kind or another.

33.4.3. Despite government help, poverty and unemployment still haunted many Americans, especially those who lived in the cities. As a result, crime rose in the cities and often those who broke the law were young, between fourteen and twenty years of age. State and local governments as well as the federal government, have created programs to cut unemployment and improve living conditions and therefore helped to reduce the causes of crime.

33.5. SAFEGUARDING THE ENVIRONMENT

33.5.1. Along with the progress of technology and the economic boom came the **deterioration** of the **environment**. **Pollution** has become a major danger to the health of the American people. Automobiles, airplanes, and factories have poured unlimited quantities of dangerous gases into the air. Sewage, industrial wastes, and oil spills have polluted land and water. Many lakes, streams, and coastal waters have become deadly for the wildlife which inhabit them. And some bodies of water have become dangerous for human use.

33.5.2. In the 1970's Congress passed several national antipollution laws and gave certain enforcement powers to the Environmental Protection Agency. By the mid - 1970's some headway in the cleaning of the environment had been made. Subsequent major gains would cost a great deal of money to the American taxpayers.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

CRIME
SPY
AGAIN
SALE
ENEMIES
RENTAL
CENSURE
LOAD
IMPEACH
ADOPTED
MINORITY
BURGLARY
DANGER

ABUNDANCE
ECONOMY
CONFLICT
WESTWARD MOVEMENT
SOCIAL INJUSTICE
TAXPAYER
SAFEGUARDING
INDUSTRIAL WASTES
ENVIRONMENT
DISCRIMINATION
REMAIN
OPINION

TECHNOLOGY
CIVIL
ILLEGAL
SCANDAL
WATERGATE
SOUTH
POLLUTION
HEATING
ENERGY
ADVANCE
RULE
COMMUNIST

N	S	O	C	I	A	L	I	N	J	U	S	T	I	C	E	S	P	Y
H	R	P	O	M	O	A	G	A	I	N	C	E	L	S	N	W	O	G
I	E	I	M	R	E	W	S	A	L	E	I	C	L	C	V	A	L	R
L	M	N	M	E	N	E	M	I	E	S	V	H	E	A	I	T	L	E
O	A	I	U	R	E	N	T	A	L	O	I	N	G	N	R	E	U	N
V	I	O	N	C	E	N	S	U	R	E	L	O	A	D	O	R	T	E
E	N	N	I	M	P	E	A	C	H	U	N	L	L	A	N	G	I	A
L	E	U	S	A	D	O	P	T	E	D	O	O	C	L	M	A	O	D
A	D	N	T	M	I	N	O	R	I	T	Y	G	U	L	E	T	N	V
N	B	U	R	G	L	A	R	I	E	S	C	Y	M	A	N	E	H	A
T	D	I	S	C	R	I	M	I	N	A	T	I	O	N	T	S	E	N
D	A	B	U	N	D	A	N	C	E	C	O	N	O	M	Y	O	A	C
A	C	O	N	F	L	I	C	T	E	B	R	U	N	U	S	U	T	E
N	W	E	S	T	W	A	R	D	M	O	V	E	M	E	N	T	I	R
G	C	R	I	M	E	T	A	X	P	A	Y	E	R	C	O	H	N	U
E	S	A	F	E	G	U	A	R	D	N	G	O	C	T	O	T	G	L
R	I	N	D	U	S	T	R	I	A	L	W	A	S	T	E	S	O	E

II. Matching:

Match each word in column A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provide.

A	B
_____ a. environment	1. to charge a government official with misbehavior in office.
_____ b. impeach	2. an outlying part of a city,

	often with a different government than the central city.
_____ c. suburb	3. the knowledge and skills used to provide objects necessary for human survival and comfort.
_____ d. abundance	4. the movement of the American people from the Eastern Seaboard to the Pacific Coast.
_____ e. urban	5. the capacity to produce more goods than people are able to buy.
_____ f. censure	6. to keep or keep up, to carry on.
_____ g. technology	7. to criticize or blame; to condemn.
_____ h. maintain	8. having to do with cities or towns.
_____ i. pollution	9. making or being unclear or impure.
_____ j. Westward Movement	10. surrounding; all the conditions which influence the way people live.

III. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to each statement if it is true. Put an F in that space if it is false.

____ 1. After World War II many Americans took a new look at their society and their social values.

____ 2. The federal government was not expected to safeguard civil rights, to prevent social injustice, and to meet human needs.

____ 3. Senator Joseph McCarthy charged that many high officials of the federal government were influenced by Communists.

____ 4. President Nixon was involved in the Watergate Scandal and he had to resign from his post.

____ 5. Many protests by minorities were declared unlawful in some places and their leaders were jailed.

____ 6. By the 1970's, most discrimination in the U.S. had been forbidden by laws.

____ 7. Many groups of minorities asked for equal rights in health, education, and welfare.

____ 8. In housing, the federal government has not tried to help city slum dwellers.

____ 9. During the 1980's people also moved to the South, such as Florida and Texas, to save on the cost of energy for heating.

____10. After World War II, the conflict between old and new social values began to surface in American society.

IV. Fill in the blanks:

Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: spying, impeached, minorities, hospital construction, local and state governments, new housing, political struggles, social justice, discrimination, progress.

1. The Americans started to express their views and new ideas about civil rights, ____________ , and human needs.
2. During the Nixon administration, a scandal was discovered about government ______________ , burglaries, and other illegal acts directed against the people.
3. President Nixon resigned the presidency in August 1974 when it appeared that he would be ____________ by the Congress.
4. Many Americans agreed with _____________ but others were against the change.
5. By the 1970's, most ______________ in the U.S. had been forbidden by laws.
6. The federal government has continued to set aside money for ____________ and health researches.
7. In the field of education, similar _____________ has been made.
8. Public schools in the U.S. have been supported largely by __________ funds.
9. The federal government set aside money for ___________ for the poor.
10. Many young people became active in ______________, some peaceful and some violent, to push for positive social changes.

ບົດອ່ານ

ມມ.໑. ການເມືອງແລະສິດທິສ່ວນຕົວຂອງບຸກຄົນ : ການນາບຂູ່ສິດເສຣີພາບຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ :

ມມ.໑.໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີສອງ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ ໄດ້ມອງເບິ່ງສັງຄົມ ແລະ ຄຸນຄ່າດ້ານສັງຄົມຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໃນທຳນອງໃໝ່. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເລີ່ມພາກັນສະແດງທັດສະນະແລະຄວາມຄິດຄວາມເຫັນອັນໃໝ່ກ່ຽວກັບສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ, ຄວາມບໍ່ຍຸດຕິທຳດ້ານສັງຄົມ ແລະ ຄວາມຕ້ອງການຂອງຄົນ. ເປັນທີ່ເຊື່ອກັນວ່າ ຣັຖບານກາງຈະປົກປັກຮັກສາສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ, ຈະປ້ອງກັນບໍ່ໃຫ້ມີຄວາມບໍ່ຍຸດຕິທຳໃນສັງຄົມ ແລະ ຈະສນອງຄວາມຕ້ອງການຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ. ຂໍ້ແກ້ໄຂຣັຖທັມມະນູນຂໍ້ໜຶ່ງ ໃຫ້ການຄ້ຳປະກັນດ້ານເສຣີພາບໃນການປາກເວົ້າ ແລະ ໃນການສະແດງຄວາມຄິດຄວາມເຫັນ. ການນາບຂູ່ອັນຮ້າຍແຮງແກ່ເສຣີພາບຂອງພົນລະເມືອງເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໕໐. ໃນລະຫວ່າງນັ້ນ ສະມາຊິກສະພາສູງທ່ານ Joseph McCathy ຈາກຣັຖ Wisconsin ໄດ້ກ່າວຫາວ່າ ເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ຂັ້ນສູງຂອງຣັຖບານກາງ ໄດ້ຖືກຊັກຈູງໂດຍພວກຄອມມູນິສ. ເຖິງແມ່ນວ່າສະພາສູງຈະໄດ້ຕິຕຽນການກ່າວຫາອັນເກີນຂອບເຂດຂອງທ່ານ McCathy ກໍຕາມ ແຕ່ສະພາກໍໄດ້ອອກກົດໝາຍທີ່ເຄັ່ງຄັດບາງຢ່າງເພື່ອຕໍ່ຕ້ານລັດທິຄອມມູນິສ.

ມມ.໑.໒. ໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໗໐ ສິດເສຣີພາບຂອງພົນລະເມືອງກໍໄດ້ຖືກຂົ່ມຂູ່ອີກເທື່ອໜຶ່ງ. ໃນສໄມຣັຖບານຂອງທ່ານປະທານາທິບໍດີ Nixon ໄດ້ມີການຄົ້ນພົບວ່າ ເຣື່ອງທີ່ວ່າສະມາຊິກຂອງຣັຖບານພັກ Republican ໄດ້ຖືກຈັບໃນລະຫວ່າງທຳການສອດແນມເບິ່ງບັນດາເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ໃນວົງການຣັຖບານ ຊຶ່ງເຂົາເຈົ້າຄິດວ່າເປັນສັດຕູຂອງຄະນະຣັຖບານທີ່ປົກຄອງຢູ່ນັ້ນ. ບັນດາເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ຂອງພັກກໍໄດ້ຖືກຈັບເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ ຍ້ອນວ່າທຳການຂະໂມຍສິ່ງຂອງແລະທຳສິ່ງທີ່ຜິດກົດໝາຍຢ່າງອື່ນອີກ. ເຣື່ອງດັ່ງກ່າວ ຊຶ່ງເປັນທີ່ຮູ້ກັນວ່າ Watergate Scandale ນັ້ນ ໄດ້ພົວພັນເຖິງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Nixon . ທ່ານໄດ້ລາອອກຈາກຕຳແໜ່ງປະທານາທິບໍດີໃນເດືອນ ສິງຫາ ໑໙໗໔ ເມື່ອເປັນທີ່ປາກົດວ່າທ່ານຈະຖືກຟ້ອງຈາກສະພາ.

ມມ.໒. ພວກຄົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍແລະສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ :

ມມ.໔.໑. ໃນສໄມກ່ອນສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງ ພົນລະເມືອງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນບາງກຸ່ມບໍ່ໄດ້ມີສິດຄືກັນກັບກຸ່ມອື່ນ. ກຸ່ມດັ່ງກ່າວ ແມ່ນພວກຄົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍ ຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຮັບການກັ່ນແກ້ງຈາກຊາວອະເມຣິກັນກຸ່ມອື່ນ. ສິດທິພົນລະເມືອງຫຼາຍຢ່າງຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຖືກຕັດອອກ.

ໃນບາງແຫ່ງ ການປະທ້ວງຂອງພວກຄົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍໄດ້ຖືກຖືວ່າເປັນການຜິດກົດໝາຍ ແລະ ພວກຫົວໜ້າຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຖືກຈຳຄຸກ. ການໃຊ້ກຳລັງໄດ້ເກີດຂຶ້ນຫຼາຍຄັ້ງດ້ວຍກັນ. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຫຼາຍຄົນໄດ້ເຫັນພ້ອມກັບຄົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍ ແຕ່ຍັງມີອີກຫຼາຍຄົນທີ່ບໍ່ເຫັນພ້ອມແລະຄັດຄ້ານຕໍ່ການປ່ຽນແປງໃດໆ. ໃນຂັ້ນຕົ້ນ ຣັຖບານກາງບໍ່ໄດ້ເຕັມທີ່ຈະກະທຳສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງນຶ່ງເພື່ອແກ້ໄຂບັນຫາ. ແຕ່ວ່າເມື່ອການຮ້ອງຂໍໃຫ້ມີສິດທິເທົ່າທຽມກັນຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ ຣັຖບານກໍໄດ້ເລີ່ມຮັບຟັງ ແລະ ໃນທີ່ສຸດກໍໄດ້ເລີ່ມລົງມືຫາທາງແກ້ໄຂ. ນັບຈາກເວລານັ້ນເປັນຕົ້ນມາ ສະພາໄດ້ຮັບຮອງເອົາມາດຕະການຫຼາຍຢ່າງເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນບໍ່ໃຫ້ມີການກັ່ນແກ້ງເກີດຂຶ້ນ ແລະ ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນສິດໃນການເຮັດວຽກເຮັດງານ ແລະ ໃນການປ່ອນບັດລົງຄະແນນສຽງຂອງພວກຄົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍ, ເພື່ອລົບລ້າງການແຍກຜິວພັນໃນໂຮງຮຽນ, ເພື່ອຫ້າມບໍ່ໃຫ້ນາຍຈ້າງທຳການກັ່ນແກ້ງ, ເພື່ອຫ້າມບໍ່ໃຫ້ມີການກັ່ນແກ້ງໃນສະຖານທີ່ສາທາຣະນະ ແລະ ໃນການຂາຍແລະເຊົ່າເຮືອນຊານ.

ມມ.໔.໔. ພໍຕົກເຖິງໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໗໐ ການກັ່ນແກ້ງສ່ວນຫຼາຍໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ຖືກຫ້າມດ້ວຍກົດໝາຍ. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍຕາມ ການກັ່ນແກ້ງກໍຍັງມີເຫຼືອຢູ່ ແລະ ການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອໃຫ້ໄດ້ສິດທິເທົ່າທຽມກັນກໍຍັງໄດ້ດຳເນີນຢູ່ຕໍ່ໄປ. ພວກຄົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍຫຼາຍກຸ່ມໄດ້ຮ້ອງຂໍໃຫ້ມີສິດເທົ່າທຽມກັນໃນດ້ານສາທາຣະນະສຸກ, ດ້ານການສຶກສາ ແລະ ດ້ານປະຊາສົງເຄາະ. ຕົກໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໗໐ ສະພາໄດ້ອອກກົດໝາຍຫຼາຍຢ່າງເພື່ອຈັດໃຫ້ມີການເບິ່ງແຍງປິ່ນປົວສຸກຂະພາບຂອງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນທັງໝົດໃນຮູບໃດຮູບນຶ່ງ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ຣັຖບານກາງກໍຍັງໄດ້ແຍກງົບປະມານໄວ້ສຳຫຼັບສ້າງສາໂຮງໝໍ ແລະ ສູນກາງຄົ້ນຄ້ວາດ້ານການແພດອີກດ້ວຍ. ໃນດ້ານການສຶກສາ ກໍໄດ້ມີຄວາມກ້າວໜ້າໃນທຳນອງດຽວກັນ. ໂດຍທົ່ວໄປແລ້ວ ໂຮງຮຽນຫຼວງຕ່າງໆໃນສະຫະຣັຖແມ່ນຣັຖບານປະຈຳທ້ອງຖິ່ນ ແລະ ປະຈຳຣັຖເປັນຜູ້ອອກທຶນອຸດໜູນເປັນສ່ວນຫຼາຍ. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໗໐ ນັ້ນ ຈຳນວນນັກຮຽນໃນໂຮງຮຽນຕ່າງໆໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາໄດ້ເພີ່ມຂຶ້ນເກືອບເຖິງ ໔໔ ລ້ານຄົນ. ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນບໍ່ໃຫ້ໂຮງຮຽນທັງໝົດຊຸດໂຊມລົງ ຣັຖບານກາງຈຶ່ງໄດ້ລົງມືຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຣັຖຕ່າງໆໃນດ້ານການຈັບຈ່າຍສຳຫຼັບໂຄງການການສຶກສາຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

ໃນດ້ານບ່ອນພັກພາອາໄສ ຣັຖບານກໍໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອແກ່ພວກທີ່ອາໄສຢູ່ໃນຍ່ານທຸກຈົນຕາມຊານເມືອງຕ່າງໆ. ຣັຖບານໄດ້ແຍກງົບປະມານອອກໄວ້ຕ່າງຫາກສຳຫຼັບສ້າງບ່ອນຢູ່ອາໄສໃໝ່ໃຫ້ແກ່

ພວກທຸກຈີນ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ຣັຖບານກໍຍັງໄດ້ພະຍາຍາມຢັບຢັ້ງການກັ່ນແກ້ງດ້ານຜິວພັນໃນການຊື້ຂາຍ ແລະການເຊົ່າເຮືອນຊານບ້ານຊ່ອງອີກດ້ວຍ. ຕົກເຖິງປີ ໑໙໗໐ ປະມານ ໕໐ ເປີເຊັນຂອງບ່ອນຢູ່ອາໃສທັງໝົດ ໄດ້ຖືກປ້ອງກັນດ້ວຍດຳຣັດກ່ຽວກັບສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງຂອງປີ ໑໙໖໕ ຈຶ່ງຖືວ່າ ການກັ່ນແກ້ງກ່ຽວກັບບ່ອນຢູ່ອາໃສນັ້ນ ເປັນການຜິດກົດໝາຍ.

໓໓.໓. ສັງຄົມທີ່ເຕັມໄປດ້ວຍຄວາມອຸດົມສົມບູນ: ການເຄື່ອນຍ້າຍຂອງປະຊາຈີນ .

໓໓.໓.໑. ສັງຄົມອະເມຣິກັນເປັນສັງຄົມທີ່ເຄື່ອນໄຫວຢູ່ສເມີ. ອີງຕາມການສຳຣວດໃນປີ ໑໙໗໐ ປາກົດວ່າ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຜູ້ທີ່ຍ້ອນທີ່ຢູ່ນັ້ນ ມີນຶ່ງໃນຈຳນວນຫ້າຄົນ. ທິດທາງຂອງການຍົກຍ້າຍຂອງປະຊາຈີນທີ່ວ່ານັ້ນ ແມ່ນເຂົາຍ້າຍເຂົ້າໄປສູ່ຕົວເມືອງແລະຊານເມືອງຕ່າງໆ ຈຶ່ງມີພົນລະເມືອງຢູ່ປະມານ ໗໒% ຂອງປະຊາຈີນໃນຊາດ. ພວກຄົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍເຊັ່ນພວກຫົວດຳ, ພວກສະເປນິສ ແລະ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນອິນເດັຍແດງ ເປັນພວກທີ່ອາໃສຢູ່ໃນຕົວເມືອງ. ເມື່ອເສດຖະກິດໄດ້ຂະຫຍາຍຕົວຂຶ້ນ ພວກປະຊາຈີນກໍໄດ້ມີວຽກດີຂຶ້ນ ແລະ ໄດ້ເງິນເດືອນສູງຂຶ້ນ. ຈຳນວນຂອງພວກປະຊາຈີນຊັ້ນປານກາງທີ່ມີລາຍໄດ້ປານກາງນັ້ນ ໄດ້ເພີ້ມຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ. ຄົນຈຳພວກນີ້ສ່ວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ພາກັນຍົກຍ້າຍເຂົ້າໄປສູ່ຕາມຊານເມືອງຕ່າງໆ ເພື່ອແສວງຫາຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ທີ່ດີຂຶ້ນ. ແຕ່ວ່າ ພວກຄົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍບາງຄົນກໍຍັງໄດ້ປະສົບກັບຄວາມກັ່ນແກ້ງນັ້ນຢູ່ໃນເຂດຊານເມືອງ.

໓໓.໓.໒. ນອກຈາກການຍົກຍ້າຍຂອງປະຊາຈີນຈາກເຂດຊົນນະບົດໄປສູ່ຕົວເມືອງ ແລະ ຈາກຕົວເມືອງໄປຍັງຊານເມືອງແລ້ວ ກໍຍັງມີການຍົກຍ້າຍຂອງປະຊາຈີນອອກໄປທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ ເພື່ອພະຍາຍາມຊອກຫາດິນຟ້າອາກາດ ແລະ ວຽກງານອັນດີອີກດ້ວຍ. ຕົວຢ່າງນຶ່ງກໍຄື ການຍົກຍ້າຍເຂົ້າໄປຫາ California ໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໕໐ ກໍໄດ້ມີຄົນຍົກຍ້າຍໄປທາງພາກໃຕ້ອີກເຊັ່ນ Florida ແລະ Texas ເພື່ອປະຢັດຄ່າໃຊ້ຈ່າຍພະລັງງານໃຫ້ຄວາມອຸ່ນ.

໓໓.໔. ຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ແບບໃໝ່ :

໓໓.໔.໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງ ບັນຫາຂັດແຍ່ງຣະຫວ່າງຄຸນຄ່າດ້ານສັງຄົມອັນເກົ່າ ແລະ ອັນໃໝ່ກໍໄດ້ເລີ່ມປາກົດໃຫ້ເຫັນໃນສັງຄົມອະເມຣິກັນ. ສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ແລ້ວການຂັດແຍ່ງດັ່ງກ່າວນີ້ ເປັນຜົນສືບເນື່ອງມາຈາກຄວາມກ້າວໜ້າທາງດ້ານວິທະຍາການແລະຄວາມຈະເຣີນງອກງາມຂອງເສດຖະກິດຂອງຊາດ.

ຄົນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍກ່ວາແຕ່ກ່ອນໄດ້ມີໂອກາດແລະເງິນຄຳ ເພື່ອສ້າງຖານະຄວາມເປັນຢູ່ໃນແບບຂອງຕົນເອງ. ຊາວໜຸ່ມບາງຄົນ ໄດ້ພາກັນຫັນເຫໄປຈາກວິທີໃນການເປັນຢູ່ຂອງພໍ່ແມ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າຢ່າງບໍ່ເຫຼືອຫຍັງເລີຍ. ບາງຄົນກໍໄດ້ເອົາການເອົາງານໃນດ້ານການຕໍ່ສູ້ທາງການເມືອງ ຊຶ່ງບາງຄົ້ງກໍໄດ້ກະທຳໄປແບບສງົບສງ່ຽມ ແລະ ບາງຄົ້ງກໍໃນແບບຮຸນແຮງເພື່ອຊຸກຍູ້ໃຫ້ສັງຄົມປ່ຽນແປງໄປໃນທາງດີ.

ມມ.໔.໒. ໂອກາດໃນການຈະເຣີນເຕີບໂຕທາງດ້ານເສດຖະກິດນັ້ນບໍ່ໄດ້ມີຂຶ້ນຢ່າງທົ່ວເຖິງ. ຄວາມທຸກຈົນກໍຍັງມີປາກົດຢູ່ ແລະ ບໍ່ໄດ້ມີຢູ່ແຕ່ໃນສະເພາະເຂດດອນເທົ່ານັ້ນໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ຄວາມທຸກຈົນເປັນສະພາບຊຶ່ງຄົນໃນເຂດເມືອງ ແລະ ໃນເຂດຊົນນະບົດຈຳນວນຫຼາຍເຄີຍໄດ້ປະສົບກັນມາ. ຄົນທຸກສ່ວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ພາກັນຫຼຽວຫາຣັຖບານເພື່ອຂໍຄວາມຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນຣັຖບານຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຕັ້ງໂຄງການປະຊາສົງເຄາະຂຶ້ນບາງໂຄງການ ສຳຫຼັບຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ພວກຄົນທຸກສາມາດຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງ. ຣັຖບານກາງໄດ້ຕັ້ງໂຄງການ Job Corps ຂຶ້ນ ເພື່ອທຳການຝຶກອົບຮົມພວກຊາວໜຸ່ມຈຳນວນຫຼາຍພັນຄົນ ເພື່ອໃຫ້ເຂົາເຈົ້າມີວິຊາອາຊີບອັນເໝາະສົມແກ່ການຊອກຫາວຽກເຮັດງານທຳທີ່ມີລາຍໄດ້ດີ. ຣັຖບານປະຈຳທ້ອງຖິ່ນ ແລະ ຣັຖບານປະຈຳຣັຖກໍໄດ້ຈັດໂຄງການຝຶກອາຊີບຂຶ້ນເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ.

ມມ.໔.໓. ເຖິງແມ່ນວ່າ ຣັຖບານຈະໄດ້ໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອດັ່ງກ່າວກໍຕາມ ແຕ່ຄວາມທຸກຈົນ ແລະ ການວ່າງງານກໍຍັງເກີດກັບຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຢູ່ ໂດຍສະເພາະ ພວກທີ່ອາໃສຢູ່ໃນຕົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ອາສຍາກັມຈຶ່ງໄດ້ມີຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນໃນຕົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆ ແລະ ພວກທີ່ເຮັດຜິດກົດໝາຍນັ້ນ ມັກຈະເປັນພວກໜຸ່ມທີ່ມີອາຍຸໃນຣະຫວ່າງສິບສີ່ຫາຊາວປີ. ຣັຖບານປະຈຳຣັຖ, ປະຈຳທ້ອງຖິ່ນ ແລະ ຣັຖບານກາງໄດ້ພາກັນຕັ້ງໂຄງການສຳຫຼັບຕັດການວ່າງງານລົງ ແລະ ເພື່ອປັບປຸງຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຂອງປະຊາຊົນ ຊຶ່ງເປັນສິ່ງທີ່ໄດ້ຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ສາເຫດຂອງອາສຍາກັມລຸດລົງ.

ມມ.໕. ການປ້ອງກັນສະພາບສິ່ງແວດລ້ອມ :

ມມ.໕.໑. ພ້ອມໆດຽວກັນກັບຄວາມກ້າວໜ້າທາງດ້ານວິທະຍາການ ແລະ ຄວາມຈະເຣີນງອກງາມດ້ານເສດຖະກິດນັ້ນ ກໍໄດ້ມີການເສື່ອມໂຊມຂອງສະພາບສິ່ງແວດລ້ອມ. ດິນ, ນ້ຳ ແລະ ອາກາດ ທີ່ສົກກະປົກເສັຍຫາຍໄດ້ກາຍເປັນພັຍອັນຕະຣາຍທີ່ສຳຄັນຕໍ່ສຸກຂະພາບຂອງປະຊາຊົນອະເມຣິກັນ. ຣົດຍົນ, ເຮືອບິນ, ແລະ ໂຮງງານຕ່າງໆໄດ້ພົ່ນແກສອັນຕະຣາຍໃນຈຳນວນອັນບໍ່ມີຂອບເຂດຈຳກັດອອກສູ່ອາກາດ.

ນ້ຳໂສໂຄກ, ເສດຂອງໂຮງງານ, ແລະ ນ້ຳມັນທີ່ຮົ່ວໄຫຼອອກມາ ໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ດິນແລະນ້ຳສົກກະປົກເສັຍຫາຍໃຊ້ການບໍ່ໄດ້. ນ້ຳໃນບຶງ, ໃນຫ້ວຍຮ່ອງ, ແລະ ຕາມແຄມທະເລຫຼາຍແຫ່ງ ໄດ້ກາຍເປັນພິດແກ່ສັດສາວາສິ່ງທີ່ອາໃສຢູ່ໃນແຫ່ງນັ້ນ. ແລະ ນ້ຳໃນບາງແຫ່ງກໍເປັນອັນຕະຣາຍແກ່ມະນຸດອີກດ້ວຍ.

໓໓.໔.໖. ໃນປີ ໑໙໗໐ ສະພາໄດ້ອອກກົດໝາຍຕໍ່ຕ້ານການທຳລາຍສະພາບສິ່ງແວດລ້ອມຫຼາຍຢ່າງແລະໄດ້ມອບອຳນາດໃນການປະຕິບັດກົດໝາຍບາງຢ່າງໃຫ້ແກ່ອົງການປ້ອງກັນສະພາບສິ່ງແວດລ້ອມ. ຕົກເຖິງປີ ໑໙໗໐ ການທຳຄວາມສະອາດສະພາບສິ່ງແວດລ້ອມ ໄດ້ຮັບຜົນສຳເຣັດບາງປະການ. ຜົນສຳເຣັດໃນຂັ້ນຕໍ່ໄປຈະເປັນການສິ້ນເປືອງເງິນຂອງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຜູ້ທີ່ເສັຍພາສີຢ່າງມະຫາສານ.

EXERCISES

I. WORD SEARCH PUZZLE:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ, ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນສັບທີ່ຫາໄດ້ນັ້ນໄວ້ ພ້ອມຂຽນຄວາມໝາຍແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍດ້ວຍ.

E	S	O	C	I	A	L	I	N	J	U	S	T	I	C	E	S	P	Y
N	R	P	O	M	O	A	G	A	I	N	C	E	L	S	N	W	O	G
V	E	I	M	R	E	W	S	A	L	E	I	C	L	C	V	A	L	R
I	M	N	M	E	N	E	M	I	E	S	V	H	E	A	I	T	L	E
R	A	I	U	R	E	N	T	A	L	O	I	N	G	N	R	E	U	N
O	I	O	N	C	E	N	S	U	R	E	L	O	A	D	O	R	T	E
N	N	N	I	M	P	E	A	C	H	U	N	L	L	A	N	G	I	A
M	E	U	S	A	D	O	P	T	E	D	O	O	C	L	M	A	O	D
E	D	N	T	M	I	N	O	R	I	T	Y	G	U	L	E	T	N	V
N	B	U	R	G	L	A	R	I	E	S	C	Y	M	A	N	E	H	A
T	D	I	S	C	R	I	M	I	N	A	T	I	O	N	T	S	E	N
D	A	B	U	N	D	A	N	C	E	C	O	N	O	M	Y	O	A	C
A	C	O	N	F	L	I	C	T	E	B	R	U	N	U	S	U	T	E
N	W	E	S	T	W	A	R	D	M	O	V	E	M	E	N	T	I	R
G	C	R	I	M	E	T	A	X	P	A	Y	E	R	C	O	H	N	U
E	S	A	F	E	G	U	A	R	D	I	N	G	C	H	I	M	G	L
R	I	N	D	U	S	T	R	I	A	L	W	A	S	T	E	S	O	E

CRIME
SPY
AGAIN
SALE
ENEMIES
RENTAL
CENSURE
LOAD
IMPEACH
ADOPTED
MINORITY
BURGLARY
DANGER
TECHNOLOGY
CIVIL
ILLEGAL
SCANDAL
WATERGATE
SOUTH
POLLUTION
HEATING
ENERGY
ADVANCE
RULE
COMMUNIST
ABUNDANCE
ECONOMY
CONFLICT
WESTWARD MOVEMENT
SOCIAL INJUSTICE
TAXPAYER
SAFEGUARDING
INDUSTRIAL WASTES
ENVIRONMENT
DISCRIMINATION
REMAIN
OPINION

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ : (ເບິ່ງພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ :

ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາຄຳເວົ້າແຕ່ລະຄຳໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໂດຍຂຽນຄຳຕອບ ຊຶ່ງເປັນຕົວເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ປະໄວ້ນັ້ນ ສຳຫຼັບຄຳຕອບທຸກຄຳ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
______ ກ. ສະພາບສິ່ງແວດລ້ອມ	໑. ການຍົກຂໍ້ຫາໃຫ້ສານພິຈາລະນາກ່ຽວກັບການປະພຶດທີ່ຜິດຕໍ່ກົດໝາຍຂອງເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ຣັຖບານ.
______ ຂ. ການຟ້ອງ	໒. ເຂດອ້ອມແອ້ມຂອງຕົວເມືອງ ສ່ວນມາກມັກຈະມີການປົກຄອງທີ່ຂຶ້ນກັບການປົກຄອງຂອງຕົວເມືອງ.
______ ຄ. ຊານເມືອງ	໓. ຄວາມຮູ້ແລະຄວາມຊຳນິຊຳນານ ໃຊ້ສຳຫຼັບປະດິດສິ່ງຂອງທີ່ຈຳເປັນແກ່ຄວາມຄົງຢູ່ແລະຄວາມສະດວກສະບາຍຂອງມະນຸດ.
______ ງ. ຄວາມອຸດົມສົມບູນ	໔. ການເຄື່ອນຍ້າຍຂອງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຈາກແຄມທະເລໃນພາກຕາເວັນອອກໄປຫາແຄມທະເລໃນມະຫາສະມຸດ Pacific.
______ ຈ. ກຳແພງເມືອງ	໕. ຄວາມສາມາດໃນການຜລິດສິນຄ້າຫຼືເຄື່ອງໃຊ້ຂອງສອຍຫຼາຍເກີນກວ່າປະຊາຊົນຈະຊື້ເອົາໄດ້.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ສ. ຕິດຮບ	໖. ຍຶດໃຫ້ມີຢູ່ຕໍ່ໄປ
_____ ຊ. ວິທະຍາການ	໗. ປະມານ ຫຼື ໂດຍ
_____ ຍ. ຮັກສາ	໘. ທີ່ມີສ່ວນກ່ຽວກັບຫົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆ.
_____ ດ. ການເຮັດໃຫ້ສົກກະປົກເສັຍຫາຍ	໙. ການເຮັດໃຫ້ບໍ່ສະອາດ ຫຼື ເສື່ອມເສັຍ.
_____ ຕ. ການຍົກຍ້າຍໄປທາງພາກຕາເວັນຕົກ	໑໐. ສິ່ງຫ້ອມລ້ອມ; ສະພາບທຸກສິ່ງທີ່ມີສ່ວນຈັກງຽງຊີວິດຄວາມເປັນຢູ່ຂອງຄົນ.

໓. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ :

ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ໝາຍຕົວ T ໃສ່ ຖ້າຫາກເຫັນວ່າປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກ. ຖ້າຫາກເຫັນວ່າປະໂຍກນັ້ນຜິດໃຫ້ໝາຍຕົວ F ໃສ່.

_____ ໑. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ ໄດ້ພາກັນມອງເບິ່ງສັງຄົມ ແລະຄຸນຄ່າດ້ານສັງຄົມຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໃນທ່າມອງໃໝ່.

_____ ໒. ເປັນທີ່ເຊື່ອກັນວ່າ ຣັຖບານກາງຈະບໍ່ປົກປັກຮັກສາສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ,. ຈະບໍ່ປ້ອງກັນຄວາມບໍ່ຍຸດຕິທັມໃນສັງຄົມ ແລະ ຈະບໍ່ສນອງຄວາມຕ້ອງການປະຊາຊົນ.

_____ ໓. ສະມາຊິກສະພາສູງທ່ານ Joseph McCathy ໄດ້ກ່າວຫາວ່າ ເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ຊັ້ນສູງຂອງຣັຖບານກາງໄດ້ຖືກພວກຄອມມູນິສຈັກຈູງ.

_____ ໔. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Nixon ໄດ້ມີສ່ວນພົວພັນກັບເຣື່ອງ Watergate ແລະທ່ານຈຳເປັນຕ້ອງລາຈາກຕຳແຫນ່ງ.

_____ ໕. ໃນບາງແຫ່ງການປະທ້ວງຂອງພວກຄົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍໄດ້ຖືກຖືວ່າ ເປັນການຜິດຕໍ່ກົດຫມາຍ ແລະ ພວກຫົວຫນ້າຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຖືກຈຳຄຸກ.

_____ ໖. ຕົກເຖິງປີ ໑໙໗໐ ການກັ່ນແກ້ງສ່ວນຫຼາຍໃນສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຖືກຫ້າມດ້ວຍກົດຫມາຍ.

_____ ໗. ກຸ່ມພວກຄົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍຫຼາຍກຸ່ມໄດ້ຮ້ອງຂໍໃຫ້ມີສິດເທົ່າທຽມກັນໃນດ້ານການປິ່ນປົວສຸກຂະພາບ, ດ້ານການສຶກສາ ແລະ ດ້ານປະຊາສົງເຄາະ.

_____ ໘. ຣັຖບານກາງບໍ່ໄດ້ລົງມືຊ່ວຍພວກທີ່ອາໄສຢູ່ໃນບໍຣິເວນທຸກຈົນໃນຫົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆກໍ່ຄືກັບບ່ອນຢູ່ອາໄສ.

_____ ໙. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໘໐ ປະຊາຊົນກໍໄດ້ພາກັນຍ້າຍລົງໄປທາງພາກໃຕ້ເຊັ່ນ Florida ແລະ Texas ເພື່ອປະຢັດລາຍຈ່າຍພະລັງງານທຳຄວາມອຸ່ນ.

_____ ໑໐. ຫຼັງຈາກສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີ່ສອງ ການຂັດແຍ່ງຣະຫວ່າງຄຸນຄ່າດ້ານສັງຄົມອັນໃຫມ່ແລະອັນເກົ່າກໍໄດ້ເລີ່ມປາກົດອອກໃຫ້ເຫັນໃນສັງຄົມອະເມຣິກັນ.

໔. ຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ :

ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າຫຼືຫມວດຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມຫມາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ : ການສືບຣາຊການລັບ, ຟ້ອງ, ພວກຄົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍ, ການສ້າງໂຮງຫມໍ, ຣັຖບານປະຈຳທ້ອງຖິ່ນແລະປະຈຳຣັຖ, ບ່ອນພັກພາອາໄສໃຫມ່, ການຕໍ່ສູ້ດ້ານການເມືອງ, ຄວາມບໍ່ຍຸດຕິທັມດ້ານສັງຄົມ, ການເກັ່ນແກ້ງ, ຄວາມກ້າວຫນ້າ.

໑. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນໄດ້ເລີ້ມສະແດງຄວາມເຫັນແລະຄວາມຄິດໃຫມ່ກ່ຽວກັບສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ
________________ ແລະ ຄວາມຕ້ອງການຂອງປະຊາຊົນ.

໒. ໃນສໄມຣັຖບານຂອງປະທານາທິບໍດີ Nixon ເຣື່ອງກ່ຽວກັບທັບ ________________
ການຂະໂມຍສິ່ງຂອງແລະການທຳຜິດກົດໝາຍຢ່າງອື່ນຂອງຣັຖບານໄດ້ຖືກຄົ້ນພົບ.

໓. ປະທານາທິບໍດີ Nixon ໄດ້ລາອອກຈາກຕຳແໜ່ງໃນເດືອນ ສິງຫາ ໑໙໗໔ ເມື່ອປາກົດວ່າ
ທ່ານຈະໄດ້ຖືກ ________________ ຈາກສະພາ.

໔. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ເຫັນພ້ອມກັບ ________________ ແຕ່ພວກ
ອື່ນໄດ້ຄັດຄ້ານຕໍ່ການປ່ຽນແປງດັ່ງກ່າວ.

໕. ຕົກເຖິງປີ ໑໙໗໐ ________________ ສ່ວນຫຼາຍໃນສະຫະຣັຖໄດ້ຖືກຫ້າມດ້ວຍ
ກົດໝາຍ.

໖. ຣັຖບານກາງໄດ້ແຍກງົບປະມານອອກໄວ້ສຳຫຼັບ ________________
ແລະ ການຄົ້ນຄວ້າທາງດ້ານການແພດ.

໗. ໃນດ້ານການສຶກສາ ກໍໄດ້ມີ ________________ ໃນທຳນອງດຽວກັນ.

໘. ໂຮງຮຽນຫຼວງທັງຫຼາຍໃນສະຫະຣັຖແມ່ນ ________________ ເປັນຜູ້
ອອກທຶນອຸດໜູນສ່ວນຫຼາຍ.

໙. ຣັຖບານໄດ້ແຍກງົບປະມານສຳຫຼັບສ້າງສາ ________________ ໃຫ້ແກ່ຄົນທຸກຈົນ.

໑໐. ຊາວໜຸ່ມຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ເອົາການເອົາງານໃນດ້ານ ________________
ຊຶ່ງບາງຄັ້ງກໍໄດ້ເປັນໄປແບບສງົບສງ່ຽມ ແລະ ບາງຄັ້ງໃນແບບຮຸນແຮງເພື່ອຊຸກຍູ້ໃຫ້ສັງຄົມປ່ຽນແປງ
ໄປໃນທາງດີ.

ໝວດ ໙ : ການນຳພາຂອງໂລກໃນຍຸກນິວຄະເລັຍ

ພາກ ໒໘ : ການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອຄວາມສະເໝີພາບດ້ານຜິວພັນແລະການສ້າງ
ສີວິດພາຍຈຶນຈາກດິນເກົ່າ.

ສັບໃໝ່ແລະການໃຊ້ສັບ :

equality : ຄວາມສະເໝີພາບ

The Blacks organized protest marches to demand racial equality.

segregrated ການແຍກຜິວພັນ

During the war years, thousands of blacks served in the armed forces, although in segregated units.

boycott: ການປະທ້ວງ

sit in: ການນັ່ງປະທ້ວງ

The Blacks began to organize direct-action protest such as boycotts and sit-ins.

Spanish-surname Americans: ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເຊື້ອສາຍສະເປັນ

Mexican Americans, Puerto Ricans, and Cubans were called Spanish-surname Americans.

boat people: ຊາວອົພຍົບໜີອອກຈາກປະເທດໂດຍທາງເຮືອ

The Vietnameses who fled their countries by boats were called "boat people".

genocidale persecution: ການປະຫັດປະຫານໂດຍຂ້າລ້າງກຸ່ມ

radical communist regime: ລະບອບຄອມມູຍນິສທີ່ມີຄວາມເຕັມຮຸນແຮງ

Cambodians were the victims of genocidale persecution imposed by the radical communist regime.

READING

34.1. THE BLACKS IN THE STRUGGLE FOR EQUALITY

34.1.1. The words "all men are created equal" express the spirit of the Declaration of Independence of the United States of America. They also set out the goal of equal rights for all Americans. However, the progress toward that goal had been slow. Nonwhite Americans had been denied access to the mainstream of American life. World War II changed this situation radically.

34.1.2. During the war years, thousands of blacks served in the armed forces, although in segregated units, and hundreds of thousands worked in war production plants throughout the country. As a result, over one million blacks moved to urban centers outside the South. As their economic power grew, both major political parties worked to attract black votes. This allowed blacks access to more political power. Soon, they were in a stronger position to demand equal rights.

34.1.3. The drive for racial equality came from several sources. Some of the early civil rights groups were led by Whites and some by Blacks. Among the civil rights groups, the four most important were the National Association for the Advancement of Colored People (NAACP), which fought against segregation through the courts; the National Urban League, whose aim was to improve the life of blacks who lived in the cities; the Congress for Racial Equality (CORE), which fought to protect and to extend economic and social gains to blacks; and the Southern Christian Leadership Conference (SCLC) founded by Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr.

34.1.4. Several legal victories have been gained for the civil rights cause. In May, 1954, the Supreme Court decided that separate public schools for blacks violated the Constitution. This act of the Supreme Court led to what some have called "a black civil rights revolution."

34.1.5. To fight segregation in jobs, in housing, in public facilities, in public schools and in public places, blacks began to organize direct-action protests, such as boycotts and sit-ins. As a result, many businesses lost clients and money. In 1963 the civil rights drive was accelerated by the protest march in Birmingham, Alabama, and later in the nation's capital. After President Kennedy was assassinated in November 1963, his civil rights bill was passed and was known as the Civil Rights Act of 1964. It was the most sweeping civil rights reform measure in history.

34.1.6. During the mid - 1970's, the pace of black civil rights activity was slowing down. The racial violence of the

1960's seemed to be a thing of the past. Many blacks were taking stock of their gains. Their economic and political power had grown. More than ever, blacks were contributing to the nation's cultural and social growth.

34.2. INDIANS, AMERICANS OF ASIAN DESCENT AND SPANISH SURNAME AMERICANS AND THE STRUGGLE FOR EQUALITY

34.2.1. The struggle for racial equality has not been for blacks only. American Indians, **Spanish-surname** Americans, Americans of Asian descent, and other smaller groups also suffered from discrimination. Today the voices of these racial minorities are being heard. These minorities and blacks have a common cause -- the struggle for equal rights.

34.2.2. The civil rights drive of the 1950's and 1960's had still another major impact. It proved to be a testing ground for methods and tactics for carrying on the fight for equality. Some methods, such as the sit-in, proved very successful. Because of the black civil rights drive, other minorities knew which methods were best for their purposes. Indians and Mexican Americans soon began to make use of boycotts, sit-ins, picketing, and other successful protest methods.

34.2.3. Early in 1973, the tiny town of Wounded Knee, South Dakota, was seized by a small band of American Indians. The Indians were protesting past and present wrongs done to them.

Their protest drew nation-wide attention. In 1492, there were probably about 900,000 Indians living in the land now called the United States. By 1900 that number had been reduced to less than 250,000. Today, however, there are over 800,000 American Indians in the United States. While over half of that number still live on or near the reservations, some of them have already moved to cities such as Chicago and Los Angeles.

34.2.4. The Americans of Asian decent are formed of groups such as Japanese, Chinese, Korean, and some other small groups from different Asian countries. More than two million of them live in the United States mostly on the West coast. Immigration of Chinese and Japanese was restricted or forbidden by the U.S. for many years. In addition, the Americans of Asian descent have suffered from racial discrimination from time to time. In the early 1900's, Chinese Americans were victims of mob violence. And shortly after the attack on Pearl Harbor, all Japanese Americans in California, Oregon, and Washington were forced to live in concentration camps. Some historians look upon this action as one of the worst denials of civil rights in the nation's history.

34.2.5. The gains in the civil rights movements in the 1950's and 1960's helped both Japanese-Americans and Chinese-Americans. Today both groups are more widely accepted than ever before in American society. These people made many contributions to the nation's economy, government, and culture. Gains have been made, but prejudice dies hard. Complete equality for these people had not yet been won.

34.2.6. Spanish-surname Americans included mostly Mexican-Americans, Puerto Ricans, and Cubans. Together they made up almost five percent of the population. In the mid 1970's, there were about six million Mexican Americans,or Chicanos, in the Southwest of California. They were proud of their race and cultural heritage. Over 1.5 million Puerto Ricans live in the U.S. and 75 percent live in New York City. They came to the mainland to look for jobs or find a better life. Puerto Ricans have had U.S. citizenship since 1917.

34.2.7. Most Cubans living in the United States were refugees from Fidel Castro's dictatorship in Cuba. Almost one million Cubans are living in Florida. They generally seem to have suffered less from discrimination than other Spanish groups. Cuban refugees were middle class or rich people. Mexican Americans and Puerto Ricans often suffer from discrimination because they are poor and their neighborhoods are overcrowded. Spanish-surname Americans are proud people, and they want to keep their language. In recent years, steps have been taken to improve the life of Spanish groups.

34.3. THE SOUTHEAST ASIAN REFUGEES: OUR NEWEST IMMIGRANTS

34.3.1. In the mid 1970's, there was a new wave of refugees on arriving at American shores from South-East Asia. Most of them were Vietnamese. They came to the U.S. after their land fell to the Communists. The first group, about 130,000, left their country right after the collapse of South Vietnam in 1975. The Vietnamese lived mostly in California and Texas where they found the climate not too severe and jobs relatively easy to get.

34.3.2. After the first wave of refugees, many Vietnamese continued to flee their country by boats, because they could not live freely and peacefully under the new communist regime. They were called **"boat people"**. On the way out, many were killed and robbed by the pirates in the Gulf of Siam. Half of the "boat people" were drowned at sea or killed during their journey in search of freedom and compassion. The survivors generally landed on the sea coasts of Thailand, Malaysia, and Indonesia, where they lived in make-shift camps waiting to be settled in third countries. The majority of refugees preferred to settle in the U.S. because of their former association with the U.S. government.

34.3.3. Laotians and Cambodians were among the refugees from South East Asia. The Hmong in Laos, who were faithful allies of the United States during the war, have been given preference to settle in this country. Cambodians were mostly victims of **genocidal persecution** by the radical communist regime which came to power in Kampuchia in 1975. The total number of the South East Asian refugees in the United States today is over 600,000.

34.4. A NATION OF ETHNIC GROUPS

34.4.1. America is a nation of immigrants. More than 220,000,000 people live in the United States today. Except for American Indians, the rest are descendants of immigrants. They came from all over the world, but mostly from Europe. They were part of the greatest migration in all human history.

34.4.2. It is remarkable that such a great variety of ethnic groups can live in friendship together. Their contributions to the culture and customs make this country great. There is scarcely a part of American society that is not influenced by our ethnic diversity.

EXERCISES

I. Word search puzzle:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

EQUALITY
SEGREGATE
SPANISH
TRANSIT CAMP
BLACK
REVOLUTION
GAIN
BOYCOTT
SIT IN
BOAT PEOPLE
RADICAL COMMUNIST
ACCESS
CIVIL
SOUTH DAKOTA
SITUATION
POLITICS
POWER
MARTIN LUTHER KING
SUPREME COURT
VIOLENCE
DISCRIMINATION

CHICAGO
CALIFORNIA
KAMPUCHIA
GULF OF SIAM

PROTEST
PREJUDICE
GENOCIDAL
PERSECUTION

VICTIM
REFUGEES
IMMIGRANT
FREEDOM

E Q U A L I T Y S P A N I S H B I C P C G
S B O Y C O T T B O A T P E O P L E R A U
E S I T I N T R A N S I T C A M P C O L L
G R A D I C A L C O M M U N I S T N T I F
R B L A C K A C C E S S P O W E R E E F O
E S I T U A T I O N P O L I T I C L S O F
G M A R T I N L U T H E R K I N G O T R S
A S U P R E M E C O U R T G A I N I E N I
T R E V O L U T I O N C I V I L N V Y I A
E C H I C A G O S O U T H D A K O T A A M
D I S C R I M I N A T I O N V I C T I M O
P R E J U D I C E R E F U G E E S B O B L
K A M P U C H I A G E N O C I D A L B E L
I M M I G R A N T C O N T R I B U T I O N
P E R S E C U T I O N F R E E D O M C U B

II. Matching.

Match each word in colum A with the explanation or definition in column B. Write the number of each answer in the space provided.

A	B
____ a. surname	1. minority group who lived in the mountainous areas of Laos in Southeast Asia.

____	b. sit-in	2. the systematic, planned annihilation of a racial, political, or cultural group.
____	c. segregate	3. the state or quality of being equal.
____	d. mainstream	4. an organized refusal to buy goods or services.
____	e. Hmong	5. the people who fled their councountries by boats.
____	f. genocide	6. a prevailing current or direction of a movement or influence.
____	g. equality	7. to separate or isolate from others or from a main body.
____	h. boycott	8. a form of protest demonstration of the 1960's, when black Americans occupied seats previously thought to be off limits to members of minority groups.
____	i. boat people	9. a person's family name as distinguished from his given name. name.

III. True or False:

Read each statement. Put a T next to statement if it is true. Put an F in that space if if is false.

____ 1. The words "all men are created equal" express the spirit of the Declaration of Independence of the United States of America.

____ 2. During the war years, thousands of blacks served in the armed forces, although in segregated units.

____ 3. In May 1954, the Supreme Court decided that separate public schools for blacks did not violate the Constitution.

____ 4. The struggle for racial equality is not for blacks only but also for other ethnic groups.

____ 5. Early in 1973, the tiny town of Wounded Knee, South Dakota, was seized by a small band of American Indians. The Indians were protesting past and present wrongs done to them.

____ 6. Chinese and Japanese Americans did not make any contributions to the nation's economy.

____ 7. Spanish-surname Americans included mostly Mexican Americans, Puerto Ricans, and Cubans.

____ 8. Over 1.5 million Puerto Ricans live in the U.S. and 75 percent live in New York City.

____ 9. Cuban refugees were very poor and unskilled.

____10. The Vietnamese refugees left their country after their land fell to the Communists.

____11. Many Vietnamese fled their country by boats because they could not live freely and peacefully under the new communist regime. They were called "boat people".

IV Fill in the blanks:

Complete each statement by writing the correct word or group of words in the blanks: American, civil rights movement, refugees, pirates, cultural heritage, immigrants, association, descendants, ethnic groups, genocidal persecution.

1. It is remarkable that such a great variety of ___________ can live in friendship.
2. America is a nation of __________.
3. Cambodians were mostly victims of________________ by the radical communist regime who came to power in Kampuchia in 1975.
4. The majority of refugees preferred to settle in the U.S. because of their former _______________ with the U.S. government.
5. On the way out, many Vietnamese refugees were killed and robbed by the _________ in the Gulf of Siam.
6. Cuban ____________were middle class or rich people.
7. The Mexican Americans were proud of their race and ______.
8. The refugees and __________ made many contributions to the nation's economy .
9. The gains in the ______________ in 1950's and 1960's helped both Japanese Americans and Chinese Americans.
10. Asian _____________ have suffered from racial discrimination from time to time.

ບົດອ່ານ

ມ໔.໑. ຊາວຜິວດຳໃນການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອຄວາມສເມີພາບ.

ມ໔.໑.໑. ຄຳວ່າ "ຄົນທຸກຄົນເກີດມາເທົ່າທຽມກັນ" ແມ່ນຈິດໃຈຂອງຄຳປະກາດເອກະລາດຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ຄຳເວົ້າດັ່ງກ່າວຍັງໄດ້ວາງເປົ້າໝາຍໃຫ້ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນທຸກຄົນມີສິດເທົ່າທຽມກັນອີກດ້ວຍ. ເຖິງຢ່າງໃດກໍດີ ການຄືບໜ້າໄປສູ່ເປົ້າໝາຍດັ່ງກ່າວນັ້ນ ໄດ້ເປັນໄປຢ່າງລ່າຊ້າ. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນທີ່ບໍ່ແມ່ນຊາວຜິວຂາວນັ້ນ ໄດ້ຖືກປະຕິເສດບໍ່ໃຫ້ເຂົ້າໄປໃນກະແສຊີວິດຂອງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນສ່ວນໃຫຍ່. ແຕ່ສົງຄາມໂລກຄັ້ງທີສອງໄດ້ປ່ຽນແປງສະພາບດັ່ງກ່າວຢ່າງເຖິງຮາກເຖິງເຫງົ້າ.

ມ໔.໑.໒. ໃນສໄໝສົງຄາມ ຊາວຜິວດຳຈຳນວນຫຼາຍພັນຄົນ ໄດ້ຮັບໃຊ້ໃນກອງທັບ ເຖິງແມ່ນວ່າຈະສັງກັດຢູ່ໃນໜ່ວຍແຍກຜິວພັນກໍຕາມ ແລະ ມີຊາວຜິວດຳອີກຈຳນວນຫຼາຍຮ້ອຍພັນຄົນກໍໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກໃນໂຮງງານຜລິດອຸປະກອນສົງຄາມໃນທົ່ວທັງປະເທດ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ ຊາວຜິວດຳຫຼາຍກວ່າລ້ານຄົນຈຶ່ງໄດ້ພາກັນຍ້າຍເຂົ້າໄປສູ່ຕົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆຊຶ່ງຢູ່ໃນພາກອື່ນ ນອກຈາກພາກໃຕ້. ເມື່ອອຳນາດທາງເສດຖະກິດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເຕີບໂຕຂຶ້ນ ທັງສອງພັກການເມືອງສ່ວນໃຫຍ່ກໍໄດ້ພາກັນຊອກຫາຊ່ອງທາງເພື່ອດຶງດູດເອົາຄະແນນສຽງພວກຜິວດຳ. ສິ່ງນີ້ ໄດ້ເປີດໂອກາດໃຫ້ຊາວຜິວດຳໄດ້ອຳນາດທາງການເມືອງຫຼາຍຂຶ້ນ. ບໍ່ນານຕໍ່ມາ ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຢູ່ໃນຖານະທີ່ແຂງແຮງກວ່າເດີມ ເພື່ອຮຽກຮ້ອງຂໍສິດທິເທົ່າທຽມກັນກັບພວກອື່ນ.

ມ໔.໑.໓. ການເຄື່ອນໄຫວເພື່ອຮຽກຮ້ອງໃຫ້ມີຄວາມສເມີພາບດ້ານຜິວພັນໄດ້ມາຈາກຫຼາຍກະແສ. ກຸ່ມປ້ອງກັນສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງໃນຕອນຕົ້ນນັ້ນບາງກຸ່ມແມ່ນຊາວຜິວຂາວເປັນຜູ້ນຳພາ ແລະ ອີກບາງກຸ່ມກໍແມ່ນຊາວຜິວດຳ. ໃນປະມວນກຸ່ມປ້ອງກັນສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງນັ້ນ ສີ່ກຸ່ມທີ່ສຳຄັນທີ່ສຸດໄດ້ແກ່ The National Association for the Advancement of Colored People (NAACP) ຊຶ່ງໄດ້ທຳການຕໍ່ສູ້ການແຍກຜິວພັນໂດຍທາງສາສນາ, the National Urbon League ຊຶ່ງມີຈຸດປະສົງເພື່ອປັບປຸງສົ່ງເສີມຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຂອງພວກຊາວຜິວດຳທີ່ອາໃສຢູ່ຕາມຕົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆ, the Congress for Racial Equality (CORE) ຊຶ່ງທຳການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອປ້ອງກັນແລະສົ່ງເສີມຜົນປະໂຍດທາງດ້ານເສດຖະກິດ ແລະ ສັງຄົມ ໃຫ້ແກ່ຊາວຜິວດຳ ແລະ the Southern Christian Leadership Conference (SCLC) ຊຶ່ງຕັ້ງໂດຍທ່ານ Dr.Martin Luther King,Jr.

໖໔.໑.໔. ຈຸດໝາຍປາຍທາງຂອງການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ ໄດ້ຮັບໄຊຊະນະທາງດ້ານກົດໝາຍຫຼາຍປະການດ້ວຍກັນ. ໃນເດືອນ ພຶສພາ ປີ ໑໙໕໔ ສານສູງສຸດໄດ້ຕັດສິນວ່າ ການແຍກໂຮງຮຽນຫຼວງສຳຫຼັບຊາວຜິວດຳນັ້ນ ເປັນການລະເມີດຕໍ່ຣັຖທັມມະນູນ. ການຕັດສິນຂອງສານສູງສຸດດັ່ງກ່າວ ໄດ້ພາໃຫ້ເກີດມີສິ່ງທີ່ບາງຄົນເອີ້ນວ່າ "ການປະຕິວັດດ້ານສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງຂອງຊາວຜິວດຳ".

໖໔.໑.໕. ເພື່ອຕໍ່ສູ້ການແຍກຜິວພັນໃນວຽກງານ, ໃນບ່ອນຢູ່ອາໃສ, ໃນຕຶກສາທາຣະນະ, ໃນໂຮງຮຽນຫຼວງ ແລະ ໃນສະຖານທີ່ສາທາຣະນະ ຊາວຜິວດຳໄດ້ພາກັນລົງມືຈັດຕັ້ງການປະທ້ວງໂດຍກົງຂຶ້ນ ເຊັ່ນ ບໍ່ຍອມກະທຳສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງນຶ່ງ ແລະ ການນັ່ງປະທ້ວງ. ດ້ວຍເຫດນີ້ ບໍຣິສັດການຄ້າຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ເສັຍລູກຄ້າ ແລະ ລຸບທຶນ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໖໓ ການເຄື່ອນໄຫວເພື່ອຮຽກຮ້ອງສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງໄດ້ເລັ່ງໄວຂຶ້ນ ດ້ວຍການເດີນປະທ້ວງໃນ Birmingham, Alabama ແລະຕໍ່ມາໃນເມືອງຫຼວງຂອງປະເທດ. ຫຼັງຈາກປະທານາທິບໍດີ Kennedy ໄດ້ຖືກຄາດຕະກັມໃນເດືອນ ພຶສຈິກາ ໑໙໖໓ ຂໍ້ສະເໜີກົດໝາຍກ່ຽວກັບສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງຂອງທ່ານໄດ້ຜ່ານສະພາ ແລະ ເປັນທີ່ຮູ້ຈັກກັນໃນນາມດຳຣັດ Civil Rights Act ຂອງປີ ໑໙໖໔. ດຳຣັດດັ່ງກ່າວເປັນການປະຕິຮູບສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງຂະໜານໃຫຍ່ໃນປະວັດສາດ.

໖໔.໑.໖. ໃນລະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໗໐ ບາດກ້າວໃນການຕໍ່ຕ້ານເພື່ອສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງຂອງຊາວຜິວດຳໄດ້ຊັກຊ້າລົງ. ການປະທະອັນຮຸນແຮງດ້ານຜິວພັນໃນປີ ໑໙໘໐ ກາຍກັບເປັນເຣື່ອງຂອງອະດີດ. ຊາວຜິວດຳຈຳນວນຫຼາຍ ໄດ້ພາກັນນັບໄຊຊະນະຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ອຳນາດດ້ານເສດຖະກິດ ແລະ ດ້ານການເມືອງຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເຕີບໂຕຂຶ້ນ. ຊາວຜິວດຳໄດ້ມີສ່ວນປະກອບໃນການຈເຣີນເຕີບໂຕດ້ານວັດທະນະທັມ ແລະ ດ້ານສັງຄົມຂອງປະເທດຫຼາຍກວ່າທີ່ເຄີຍເປັນມາ.

໖໔.໒. ຊາວອິນດ້ຽນແດງ, ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເຊື້ອສາຍເອເຊັຍ, ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເຊື້ອສາຍສະເປນິສ ແລະ ການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອຄວາມສເມີພາບ.

໖໔.໒.໑. ການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອຄວາມສເມີພາບດ້ານຜິວພັນນັ້ນ ບໍ່ແມ່ນແຕ່ສຳຫຼັບພວກຊາວຜິວດຳເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ພວກອະເມຣິກັນທີ່ມີເຊື້ອສາຍເປັນອິນດ້ຽນແດງ, ສະເປນິສ ແລະ ເອເຊັຍ ກໍໄດ້ຖືກກັ່ນແກ້ງເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ.

ຫຼັກມັ້ນ ສຽງຂອງພວກຄົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍເຫຼົ່ານີ້ໄດ້ຖືກຮັບຟັງ. ພວກດັ່ງກ່າວແລະພວກຊາວຜິວດຳນີ້ຈຶ່ງມຸ່ງໝາຍ ຢ່າງດຽວກັນ ຄືການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອສິດທິສເມີພາບ.

໓໔.໒.໒. ການເຄື່ອນໄຫວກ່ຽວກັບສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງໃນປີ ໑໙໔໐ ແລະ ໑໙໖໐ ຍັງໄດ້ມີຜົນສະທ້ອນ ອັນສຳຄັນອີກຢ່າງອື່ນ. ການເຄື່ອນໄຫວທີ່ວ່ານີ້ ໄດ້ເປັນການທົດສອບເຖິງວິທີແລະຍຸດທະວິທີໃນການດຳເນີນ ການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອຄວາມສເມີພາບ. ບາງວິທີເຊັ່ນການນັ່ງປະທ້ວງ ໄດ້ພິສູດໃຫ້ເຫັນວ່າໄດ້ຜົນທີ່ສຸດ. ຍ້ອນການ ເຄື່ອນໄຫວດ້ານສິດທິພົນລະເມືອງຂອງຊາວຜິວດຳ ພວກຄົນກຸ່ມນ້ອຍພວກອື່ນຈຶ່ງໄດ້ຮູ້ວ່າວິທີໃດເປັນວິທີດີທີ່ສຸດ ສຳຫຼັບຈຸດປະສົງຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ບໍ່ນານຕໍ່ມາ ພວກອະເມຣິກັນເຊື້ອສາຍອິນເດັຍແດງ ແລະ ເມກຊິກັນ ກໍ ໄດ້ເລີ່ມລົງມືໃຊ້ການບໍ່ຍອມກະທຳສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງນຶ່ງ ການນັ່ງເປັນໝູ່, ການຊູປ້າຍ ແລະ ວິທີປະທ້ວງທີ່ໄດ້ຜົນຢ່າງ ອື່ນອີກ.

໓໔.໒.໓. ໃນຕົ້ນປີ ໑໙໗໓ ເມືອງນ້ອຍແຫ່ງນຶ່ງຊື່ວ່າ Wounded Knee ໃນ South Dakota ໄດ້ຖືກຍຶດໂດຍຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເຊື້ອສາຍອິນເດັຍແດງກຸ່ມນ້ອຍກຸ່ມນຶ່ງ. ຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງ ໄດ້ປະທ້ວງການ ກະທຳທີ່ບໍ່ດີຕໍ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າໃນອະດີດ ແລະ ໃນປະຈຸບັນ. ການປະທ້ວງຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ດຶງຄວາມສົນໃຈຂອງ ຄົນທົ່ວທັງປະເທດ. ໃນປີ ໑໙໔໒ ໄດ້ມີຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງປະມານ ໙໐໐.໐໐໐ ຄົນ ອາໄສຢູ່ໃນດິນແດນທີ່ ເອີ້ນກັນໃນປະຈຸບັນນີ້ວ່າ ສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ. ພໍເຖິງປີ ໑໙໗໐ ຈຳນວນຂອງຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງດັ່ງກ່າວ ໄດ້ລຸດນ້ອຍລົງ ນ້ອຍກວ່າ ໒໔໐,໐໐໐ ຄົນ. ແຕ່ວ່າໃນປະຈຸບັນ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນອິນເດັຍແດງໃນສະຫະຣັຖ ອະເມຣິກາ ມີຫຼາຍກວ່າ ໘໐໐.໐໐໐ ຄົນ. ເຖິງວ່າໃນເວລານີ້ ພວກອິນເດັຍແດງທີ່ຍັງອາໄສຢູ່ ຫຼື ຢູ່ໃກ້ ເຂດສງວນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າເອງນັ້ນ ມີຫຼາຍກວ່າເຄິ່ງຂອງຈຳນວນດັ່ງກ່າວກໍຕາມ ແຕ່ວ່າບາງຄົນກໍໄດ້ພາກັນ ຍ້າຍເຂົ້າໄປຢູ່ໃນຫົວເມືອງຕ່າງໆແລ້ວ ເຊັ່ນ Chicago ແລະ Los Angeles.

໓໔.໒.໔. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນທີ່ມີເຊື້ອສາຍເອເຊັຍ ແມ່ນກຸ່ມຈັດຕັ້ງຕ່າງໆ ເຊັ່ນພວກ ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ, ຈີນ, ເກົາຫຼີ ແລະ ກຸ່ມນ້ອຍໆຂອງພວກທີ່ມາຈາກປະເທດໃນແຖບເອເຊັຍຕ່າງໆອີກ. ການເຂົ້າມາໃນສະຫະຣັຖຂອງ ພວກຈີນ ແລະ ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ ໄດ້ຖືກຈຳກັດຫຼືຖືກຫ້າມຈາກສະຫະຣັຖເປັນເວລາຫຼາຍປີ. ນອກຈາກນັ້ນ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເຊື້ອສາຍອາເຊັຍກໍໄດ້ຖືກກັ່ນແກ້ງເປັນບາງຄັ້ງບາງຄາວອີກດ້ວຍ. ໃນຕົ້ນປີ ໑໙໐໐ ຊາວຈີນອະເມຣິກັນ ໄດ້ຮັບເຄາະຮ້າຍຈາກກຸ່ມຄົນທີ່ໃຊ້ຄວາມຮຸນແຮງ ແລະ ບໍ່ດົນພາຍຫຼັງຈາກການບຸກໂຈມຕີທ່າເຮືອ Pearl Harbor

ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນ ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ ທັງຫມົດໃນ California, Oregon ແລະ Washington ໄດ້ຖືກບັງຄັບໃຫ້ເຂົ້າໄປຢູ່ໃນສູນກັກຂັງ. ນັກປະວັດສາດບາງຄົນໄດ້ມອງເຫັນວ່າການກະທຳດັ່ງກ່າວເປັນການປະຕິເສດສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງທີ່ຕ່ຳຊ້າທີ່ສຸດໃນປະວັດສາດຂອງປະເທດ.

ມ໔.໖.໔. ໄຊຊະນະທີ່ບັນດາຂະບວນການເພື່ອສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງໄດ້ຮັບໃນປີ ໑໙໔໐ ແລະ ໑໙໕໐ ໄດ້ເປັນປະໂຍດແກ່ທັງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເຊື້ອສາຍຍີ່ປຸ່ນແລະຈີນ. ໃນທຸກວັນນີ້ ທັງສອງກຸ່ມດັ່ງກ່າວຖືກຮັບເຂົ້າໃນສັງຄົມອະເມຣິກັນຢ່າງກວ້າງຂວາງກວ່າແຕ່ກ່ອນ. ພວກຄົນເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ໄດ້ໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອຫຼາຍຢ່າງແກ່ເສດຖະກິດຂອງຊາດ ແກ່ຣັຖບານ ແລະ ວັດທະນະທັມ. ເຖິງແມ່ນວ່າໄຊຊະນະຈະໄດ້ເກີດມີຂຶ້ນກໍ່ຕາມ ແຕ່ຄວາມກຽດຊັງນັ້ນເປັນສິ່ງທີ່ສາບສູນໄດ້ຍາກ. ຄວາມສເມີພາບອັນຄົບຖ້ວນສຳຫຼັບພວກຄົນເຫຼົ່ານີ້ ຍັງບໍ່ທັນໄດ້ປາກົດຂຶ້ນເທື່ອ.

ມ໔.໖.໕. ສ່ວນຫຼາຍແລ້ວ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນສະເປນິສນັ້ນ ປະກອບດ້ວຍພວກທີ່ມີເຊື້ອສາຍ Mexican, ພວກ Puerto Rican ແລະພວກ Cubans . ຈຳນວນຂອງພວກຄົນເຫຼົ່ານີ້ທັງຫມົດມີເກືອບເຖິງຫ້າເປີເຊັນຂອງປະຊາກອນ. ໃນກາງປີ ໑໙໗໐ ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເຊື້ອສາຍ Mexican ທີ່ອາໃສຢູ່ໃນ California ພາກຕາເວັນຕົກສ່ຽງໃຕ້ນັ້ນມີປະມານຫົກລ້ານຄົນ. ເຂົາພູມໃຈກັບເຊື້ອສາຍແລະວັດທະນະທັມຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ. ຊາວ Puerto Rican ທີ່ຢູ່ໃນສະຫະຣັຖມີຫຼາຍກວ່າ ໑,໔ ລ້ານຄົນ ແລະ ພວກທີ່ຢູ່ໃນນະຄອນ New York ມີ ໗໔ ເປີເຊັນຂອງຈຳນວນທັງຫມົດ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເຂົ້າມາໃນແຜ່ນດິນໃຫຍ່ ເພື່ອສະແວງຫາວຽກເຮັດງານທຳ ແລະ ຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ອັນດີກວ່າເດີມ. ຊາວ Puerto Ricans ໄດ້ຮັບສັນຊາດສະຫະຣັຖຕັ້ງແຕ່ປີ ໑໙໑໗ ເປັນຕົ້ນມາ.

ມ໔.໖.໗. ຊາວ Cuban ສ່ວນຫຼາຍທີ່ຢູ່ໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ ເຄີຍເປັນອົພຍົບທີ່ລີ້ຫນີຈາກຣະບອບພະເດັດການຂອງ Fidel Castro ໃນປະເທດ Cuba . ຊາວ Cuban ເກືອບນຶ່ງລ້ານຄົນ ອາໃສຢູ່ໃນ Florida . ໂດຍທົ່ວໄປແລ້ວ ປາກົດວ່າຊາວ Cuban ເປັນພວກທີ່ໄດ້ຮັບການກັ່ນແກ້ງນ້ອຍກວ່າກຸ່ມສະເປນິສກຸ່ມອື່ນໆ. ພວກອົພຍົບຊາວ Cuban ເປັນພວກທີ່ມາຈາກຣະດັບຊັ້ນປານກາງຫຼືເປັນພວກຮັ່ງມີ. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນ Mexican ແລະ ຊາວ Puerto Rican ມັກຈະຖືກກັ່ນແກ້ງ ເພາະວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າເປັນຄົນທຸກຈົນແລະຊຸມທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າຢູ່ອາໃສນັ້ນ ມີຄົນຫນາແຫນ້ນເກີນໄປ.

ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນສະເປນິສ ເປັນພວກທີ່ມີຄວາມພູມໃຈໃນຕົວເອງ ເຂົາເຈົ້າຕ້ອງການຮັກສາພາສາຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄວ້. ໃນບໍ່ເທົ່າໃດປີທີ່ຜ່ານມານັ້ນ ໄດ້ມີການລົງມືປັບປຸງຊີວິດການເປັນຢູ່ຂອງຊາວສະເປນິສ.

໓໕.໓. ຊາວອົພຍົບຈາກເອເຊັຍຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງໃຕ້ : ບັນດາຄົນເຂົ້າເມືອງທີ່ໃໝ່ທີ່ສຸດຂອງພວກເຮົາ.

໓໕.໓.໑. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງປີ ໑໙໗໕ ໄດ້ມີຊາວອົພຍົບພວກໃໝ່ຈາກເອເຊັຍຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງໃຕ້ເຂົ້າມາເຖິງສະຫະຣັຖ ຊຶ່ງສ່ວນຫຼາຍແມ່ນຊາວວຽດນາມ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າເຂົ້າມາໃນສະຫະຣັຖຫຼັງຈາກປະເທດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຕົກຢູ່ໃນອຳນາດຂອງພວກຄອມມູນິສ. ກຸ່ມທຳອິດ ຊຶ່ງມີຈຳນວນປະມານ ໑໓໐.໐໐໐ ໄດ້ໜີປະເທດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໃນທັນໃດ ຫຼັງຈາກວຽດນາມໃຕ້ໄດ້ຕົກໄປ. ສ່ວນຫຼາຍແລ້ວຊາວວຽດນາມອາໃສຢູ່ໃນ California ແລະ Texas ຊຶ່ງເປັນບ່ອນທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າເຫັນວ່າດິນຟ້າອາກາດບໍ່ໜາວແລະເປັນບ່ອນທີ່ຫາວຽກເຮັດໄດ້ງ່າຍພໍສົມຄວນ.

໓໕.໓.໒. ຫຼັງຈາກພວກອົພຍົບຊຸດທຳອິດແລ້ວ ໃນປີຕໍ່ມາ ກໍໄດ້ມີຊາວວຽດນາມຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ພາກັນລົບໜີຈາກປະເທດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ ໂດຍທາງເຮືອ ຍ້ອນວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ມີສິດຢູ່ຢ່າງມີອິສຣະເສຣີແລະຢ່າງມີຄວາມສົງບພາຍໃຕ້ຣະບອບຄອມມູນິສໃໝ່. ພວກດັ່ງກ່າວຖືກຂນານນາມວ່າ "boat people". ໃນຣະຫວ່າງເຂົາຕົວລົບໜີຈາກປະເທດນັ້ນ ມີຫຼາຍຄົນໄດ້ຖືກຂ້າ ແລະ ຖືກປຸ້ນຈາກພວກໂຈນສລັດໃນອ່າວສຍາມ. ພວກ "boat people" ຈຳນວນເຄິ່ງນຶ່ງ ໄດ້ຈົມນ້ຳຕາຍໃນກາງທະເລຫຼືຖືກຂ້າຕາຍໃນຣະຫວ່າງທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າເດີນທາງເພື່ອຕິດຕາມຫາອິສຣະພາບແລະຄວາມເມດຕາກະຣຸນາ. ພວກຍັງມີຊີວິດຢູ່ສ່ວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ພາກັນຂຶ້ນຝັ່ງທະເລຂອງປະເທດໄທ, ມະເລເຊັຍ ແລະ ອິນໂດເນເຊັຍ ຊຶ່ງເປັນບ່ອນທີ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າອາໃສຢູ່ໃນຄ້າຍທີ່ເຮັດດ້ວຍຕົນເອງ ເພື່ອລໍຖ້າການໄປຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນປະເທດທີສາມ. ຊາວອົພຍົບສ່ວນຫຼາຍຕ້ອງການຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນສະຫະຣັຖ ຍ້ອນຄວາມພົວພັນຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າທີ່ມີກັບຣັຖບານສະຫະຣັຖໃນສໄມອະດີດ.

໓໕.໓.໓. ຊາວລາວແລະຊາວຂະເມນ ກໍຢູ່ໃນຈຳພວກອົພຍົບທີ່ມາຈາກເອເຊັຍຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງໃຕ້. ຊາວມົ້ງ ທີ່ມາຈາກປະເທດລາວ ຊຶ່ງເຄີຍເປັນພັນທະມິດທີ່ມີຄວາມຊື່ສັດຕໍ່ສະຫະຣັຖໃນສໄມສົງຄາມນັ້ນ ໄດ້ຮັບສິດເລືອກເຂົ້າມາຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນປະເທດນີ້. ຊາວຂະເມນສ່ວນຫຼາຍແລ້ວ ເປັນຜູ້ໄດ້ຮັບເຄາະຮ້າຍຈາກການສັງຫານ ໂດຍຣະບອບຄອມມູນິສ ທີ່ມີຄວາມເຫັນຮຸນແຮງ ຊຶ່ງໄດ້ກຳອຳນາດໃນປະເທດກຳປູເຈັຍໃນປີ ໑໙໗໕. ໃນທຸກມື້ນີ້ ຈຳນວນທັງໝົດຂອງພວກອົພຍົບຈາກເອເຊັຍຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງໃຕ້ໃນສະຫະຣັຖນັ້ນ

ມີຫຼາຍກ່ວາ ໕໐໐.໐໐໐ ຄົນ.

໓໔.໔. ປະເທດຂອງຊົນຊາດຊົນເຜົ່າຕ່າງໆ.

໓໔.໔.໑. ອະເມຣິກາ ເປັນປະເທດຂອງຊົນຊາດຊົນເຜົ່າຕ່າງໆ. ຜູ້ຄົນທີ່ອາໄສຢູ່ໃນສະຫະຣັດໃນທຸກມື້ນີ້ ມີຈຳນວນຫຼາຍກ່ວາ ໒໒໐.໐໐໐.໐໐໐ ຄົນ. ຍົກເວັ້ນຊາວອະເມຣິກັນອິນເດັຍແດງແລ້ວ ນອກນັ້ນແມ່ນພວກ ລູກຫຼານຂອງຄົນທີ່ມາຈາກປະເທດອື່ນທັງນັ້ນ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ມາຈາກທຸກມຸມໂລກ. ແຕ່ສ່ວນຫຼາຍແລ້ວ ແມ່ນ ມາຈາກຢູໂຣບ. ເຂົາເຈົ້າເປັນພາກສ່ວນຂອງການຍົກຍ້າຍທີ່ໃຫຍ່ຫຼວງທີ່ສຸດໃນປະວັດສາດຂອງມະນຸດ.

໓໔.໔.໒. ເປັນທີ່ໜ້າສັງເກດວ່າ ກຸ່ມຊົນຊາດຊົນເຜົ່າທີ່ມີຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງກັນຢ່າງໃຫຍ່ຫຼວງເຊັ່ນນັ້ນ ສາມາດ ຢູ່ຮ່ວມກັນໄດ້ດ້ວຍຄວາມເປັນມິດ. ສ່ວນປະກອບທາງດ້ານວັດທະນະທັມແລະປະເພນີຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ເຮັດໃຫ້ ປະເທດນີ້ ມີຄວາມຍິ່ງໃຫຍ່. ເປັນການຫາຍາກທີ່ສຸດ ທີ່ພາກສ່ວນຂອງສັງຄົມອະເມຣິກັນຈະບໍ່ຖືກຊັກຈູງ ໂດຍ ຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງດ້ານເຜົ່າພັນຂອງເຂົາ.

EXERCISES

I. WORD SEARCH PUZZLE:

Directions: Find and circle the words in the word puzzle below. The words will be found vertically, horizontally, and diagonally. When you find a word in the puzzle, write it and then define it.

ຄຳແນະນຳ : ຈົ່ງຊອກຫາສັບແລ້ວຂີດວົງກົມອ້ອມສັບຕ່າງໆທີ່ມີໃນຕະລາງສັບຂ້າງລຸ່ມນີ້. ໃຫ້ຊອກຫາສັບດັ່ງກ່າວ ຕາມທາງຕັ້ງ, ທາງນອນ ແລະ ທາງຂວາງ. ເມື່ອພົບເຫັນສັບແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂຽນສັບທີ່ຫາໄດ້ນັ້ນໄວ້ ພ້ອມຂຽນຄວາມຫມາຍແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍດ້ວຍ.

EQUALITY
SEGREGATE
SPANISH
TRANSIT CAMP
BLACK
REVOLUTION
GAIN
CHICAGO
CALIFORNIA
KAMPUCHIA
GULF OF SIAM

BOYCOTT
SIT IN
BOAT PEOPLE
RADICAL COMMUNIST
ACCESS
CIVIL
SOUTH DAKOTA
PROTEST
PREJUDICE
GENOCIDAL
PERSECUTION

SITUATION
POLITICS
POWER
MARTIN LUTHER KING
SUPREME COURT
VIOLENCE
DISCRIMINATION
VICTIM
REFUGEES
IMMIGRANT
FREEDOM

E Q U A L I T Y S P A N I S H B I C P C G

S B O Y C O T T B O A T P E O P L E R A U

E S I T I N T R A N S I T C A M P C O L L

G R A D I C A L C O M M U N I S T N T I F

R B L A C K A C C E S S P O W E R E E F O

E S I T U A T I O N P O L I T I C L S O F

G M A R T I N L U T H E R K I N G O T R S

A S U P R E M E C O U R T G A I N I E N I

T R E V O L U T I O N C I V I L N V Y I A

E C H I C A G O S O U T H D A K O T A A M

D I S C R I M I N A T I O N V I C T I M O

P R E J U D I C E R E F U G E E S B O B L

K A M P U C H I A G E N O C I D A L B E L

I M M I G R A N T C O N T R I B U T I O N

P E R S E C U T I O N F R E E D O M C U B

ບົດຝຶກຫັດ

໑. **ຄຳທວຍຊອກຫາສັບ** :   (ເບິ່ງພາສາອັງກິດ)

໒. **ການປະກອບສັບແລະຄຳອະທິບາຍໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງ** :
ຈົ່ງຈັດເອົາຄຳເວົ້າແຕ່ລະຄຳໃນໝວດ (ກ) ໃຫ້ຖືກກັບຄຳອະທິບາຍໃນໝວດ (ຂ) ໂດຍຂຽນຄຳຕອບຊຶ່ງເປັນຕົວເລກໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ປະໄວ້ນັ້ນສຳຫຼັບຄຳຕອບທຸກຄຳ.

ໝວດ (ກ)	ໝວດ (ຂ)
_____ ກ. ນາມສະກຸນ	໑. ເຜົ່ານຶ່ງທີ່ອາໃສຢູ່ຕາມເຂດພູພາໃນປະເທດລາວ ໃນເອເຊັຍຕາເວັນອອກສ່ຽງໃຕ້.
_____ ຂ. ການນັ່ງປະທ້ວງ	໒. ການວາງແຜນທຳລາຍລ້າງກຸ່ມຜິວພັນ, ກຸ່ມການເມືອງ ຫຼື ກຸ່ມຄົນພວກໃດພວກນຶ່ງ.
_____ ຄ. ແຍກຜິວພັນ	໓. ສະພາບຂອງການເຕົ້າໂຮມກັນ.
_____ ງ. ກະແສໃຫຍ່	໔. ການຈັດຕັ້ງເພື່ອທຳການປະຕິເສດຊື້ສິນຄ້າ ຫຼື ການບໍຣິການຕ່າງໆ.
_____ ຈ. ມົ້ງ	໕. ພວກທີ່ໜີອອກຈາກປະເທດຂອງຕົນໂດຍທາງເຮືອ.
_____ ສ. ການຂ້າລ້າງກຸ່ມ	໖. ກະແສ ຫຼື ທິດທາງຂອງຂະບວນການທີ່ມີອິດທິພົນ.
_____ ຊ. ຄວາມສເມີພາບ	໗. ການແຍກ ຫຼື ເຮັດໃຫ້ໂດດດ່ຽວຈາກກຸ່ມຄົນສ່ວນໃຫຍ່.

ຫມວດ (ກ)	ຫມວດ (ຂ)
_____ ຍ. ການປະທ້ວງໂດຍບໍ່ຍອມຊື້ສິນຄ້າ.	ຣ. ຮູບຂອງການປະທ້ວງຢ່າງນຶ່ງຊຶ່ງຊາວຜິວດຳໄດ້ກະທຳໄປໃນປີ ໑໙໖໐.
_____ ດ. boat people	ຜ. ຊື່ປະຈຳຄອບຄົວ ຫຼື ວົງຕະກູນ.

໓. ຖືກຫຼືຜິດ :

ຈົ່ງອ່ານປະໂຍກແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ຫມາຍຕົວ T ໃສ່ ຖ້າຫາກເຫັນວ່າປະໂຍກນັ້ນຖືກ. ຖ້າຫາກເຫັນວ່າປະໂຍກນັ້ນຜິດໃຫ້ຫມາຍຕົວ F ໃສ່.

_____ ໑. ຄຳວ່າ "ຄົນເກີດມາທຸກຄົນເທົ່າທຽມກັນ" ແມ່ນຈິດໃຈຂອງຄຳປະກາດເອກະຣາຊຂອງສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາ.

_____ ໒. ໃນສໄມສົງຄາມ ຊາວຜິວດຳຈຳນວນຫຼາຍພັນຄົນໄດ້ຮັບໃຊ້ໃນກອງທັບ ເຖິງແມ່ນວ່າຈະສັງກັດຢູ່ໃນຫນ່ວຍແຍກຜິວພັນກໍຕາມ.

_____ ໓. ໃນເດືອນພຶສພາ ໑໙໕໔ ສານສູງສຸດໄດ້ຕັດສິນວ່າ ການແຍກໂຮງຮຽນຫຼວງສຳຫຼັບຊາວຜິວດຳນັ້ນບໍ່ເປັນການລະເມີດຕໍ່ຣັຖທັມມະນູນ.

_____ ໔. ການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອຄວາມສເມີພາບດ້ານຜິວພັນນັ້ນ ບໍ່ແມ່ນແຕ່ສຳຫຼັບຊາວຜິວດຳເທົ່ານັ້ນ ແຕ່ກໍຍັງສຳຫຼັບກຸ່ມຊົນຊາດຊົນເຜົ່າອື່ນອີກ.

_____ ໕. ໃນຕົ້ນປີ ໑໙໗໓ ເມືອງນ້ອຍແຫ່ງນຶ່ງຊື່ວ່າ Wo ır ded Knee ໃນ South Dakota ໄດ້ຖືກຍຶດໂດຍຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເຊື້ອສາຍອິນເດັຍແດງກຸ່ມນ້ອຍກຸ່ມນຶ່ງ. ຊາວອິນເດັຍແດງໄດ້ປະທ້ວງການກະທຳທີ່ບໍ່ດີຕໍ່ເຂົາເຈົ້າໃນອະດີດແລະໃນປະຈຸບັນ.

______ ໖. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເຊື້ອສາຍຈີນແລະຍີ່ປຸ່ນ ບໍ່ໄດ້ໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອແກ່ເສດຖະກິດຂອງຊາດແຕ່ປະການໃດ.

______ ໗. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເຊື້ອສາຍສະເປນິສ ສ່ວນຫຼາຍປະກອບດ້ວຍພວກ ເມກຊິກັນອະເມຣິກັນ, Puerto Ricans ແລະ Cubans.

______ ໘. ຊາວ Puerto Ricans ທີ່ຢູ່ໃນສະຫະຣັຖມີຈຳນວນຫຼາຍກວ່າ ໑,໕ ລ້ານຄົນ ແລະພວກທີ່ຢູ່ໃນນະຄອນ New York ມີ ໗໕ ເປີເຊັນຂອງຈຳນວນທັງໝົດ.

______ ໙. ພວກອົພຍົບຊາວ Cubans ເປັນພວກທີ່ທຸກຍາກທີ່ສຸດ ແລະ ບໍ່ມີວິຊາອາຊີບ.

______໑໐. ຊາວອົພຍົບວຽດນາມໄດ້ໜີຈາກປະເທດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າຫຼັງຈາກປະເທດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າໄດ້ຕົກຢູ່ໃນອຳນາດຂອງພວກຄອມມຸຍນິສ.

______໑໑. ຊາວວຽດນາມໄດ້ພາກັນໜີຈາກປະເທດຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າທາງເຮືອ ເພາະວ່າເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ສາມາດຢູ່ພາຍໃຕ້ລະບອບຄອມມຸຍນິສຢ່າງເສຣີແລະຢ່າງສງົບສຸກ.

໕. ຕື່ມຄຳເຂົ້າໃສ່ຊ່ອງວ່າງ :

ຈົ່ງຕື່ມຄຳເວົ້າຫຼືໝວດຄຳເວົ້າຕໍ່ລົງໄປນີ້ ໃສ່ໃນຊ່ອງວ່າງທີ່ມີໃນແຕ່ລະປະໂຍກໃຫ້ໄດ້ຄວາມໝາຍຖືກຕ້ອງ : ຂະບວນການຕໍ່ສູ້ເພື່ອສິດທິຂອງພົນລະເມືອງ, ອົພຍົບ, ໂຈນສລັດ, ວັດທະນະທັມ, ຊາວຕ່າງດ້າວ, ການພົວພັນ, ເຊື້ອສາຍ, ກຸ່ມຊົນຊາດຊົນເຜົ່າ, ການຂ້າລ້າງກຸ່ມ, ຕ່າງດ້າວ.

໑. ເປັນທີ່ໜ້າສັງເກດວ່າ ______________________________ ທີ່ມີຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງກັນຢ່າງໃຫຍ່ຫຼວງເຊັ່ນນັ້ນ ສາມາດຢູ່ຮ່ວມກັນໄດ້ດ້ວຍຄວາມເປັນມິດ.

໒. ອະເມຣິກາເປັນປະເທດຂອງ ________________________ .

໓. ຊາວຂະເມນສ່ວນຫຼາຍເປັນຜູ້ຮັບເຄາະຈາກ ________________________ ໂດຍລະບອບ ຄອມມຸຍນິສ ທີ່ມີຄວາມເຫັນຮຸນແຮງ ຊຶ່ງກຳອຳນາດໃນປະເທດກຳປູເຈຍໃນປີ ໑໙໗໕.

໔. ຊາວອົພຍົບສ່ວນຫຼາຍມັກເຂົ້າມາຕັ້ງຖິ່ນຖານໃນສະຫະຣັຖອະເມຣິກາຍ້ອນ ________________________ ກັບຣັຖບານສະຫະຣັຖໃນອະດີດ.

໕. ໃນຣະຫວ່າງເອົາຕົວລົບໜີນັ້ນ ຊາວອົພຍົບວຽດນາມຈຳນວນຫຼາຍໄດ້ຖືກຂ້າ ແລະ ປຸ້ນຈາກພວກ ________________________ ໃນອ່າວສຍາມ.

໖. ພວກ ________________ Cuban ເປັນພວກຊົນຊັ້ນຣະດັບປານກາງ ຫຼື ເປັນຄົນຮັ່ງມີ.

໗. ຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເມກຊິກັນ ມີຄວາມພູມໃຈໃນເຊື້ອຊາດແລະ ________________________ ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ.

໘. ຊາວອົພຍົບແລະ ________________________ ໄດ້ໃຫ້ການຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອແກ່ເສດຖະກິດຂອງປະເທດຫຼາຍຢ່າງ.

໙. ໄຊຊະນະທີ່ບັນດາ ________________________ ໄດ້ຮັບໃນປີ ໑໙໕໐ ແລະ ໑໙໖໐ ໄດ້ເປັນປະໂຍດແກ່ທັ້ງຊາວອະເມຣິກັນເຊື້ອສາຍຍີ່ປຸ່ນແລະຈີນ.

໑໐. ພວກ ________________________ ເຄີຍໄດ້ຖືກກັ່ນແກ້ງດ້ານຜິວພັນເປັນບາງຄັ້ງ ບາງຄາວ.

Glossary

Abolition:	the ending of something, often of slavery.
Abundance:	a great or plentiful amount.
Accused:	said to have done something wrong.
Administration:	the activities of a sovereign state in the exercise of its powers or duties.
Advance:	to go or move foward or onward.
Ambassador:	a person who represents a government in a foreign nation.
The American Federation of Labor (AFL):	Association founded in 1886 by skilled workers. Samuel Gompers was the first president of this union.
Amendment:	a change, addition, or correction, often in a constitution.
Annex:	to add or to join to a larger area or a region.

Annexation:	a joining together, especially of a new territory.
Architecture:	art and science of design and construction of buildings.
Arms race:	a rivalry between nations in which each tries to build more fighting power than the other.
Arsenal:	a place where military equipments are made and stored.
The Articles of Confederation:	The agreement of 1781 under which the thirteen original states formed a loose union.
Assembly:	a group of persons gathered together for a common purpose.
Assimilation:	being absorbed into another culture.
Atlantic Charter:	an agreement to work for world peace, signed in 1941 by President Franklin D. Roosevelt and British Prime Minister Winston Churchill.
Atomic:	having to do with atoms, the tiny particles in matter, a kinds of weapon or energy.
Atomic bomb:	an explosive weapon of great destructive power derived from the rapid release of energy in the fission of heavy atomic nuclei, as of uranium 235.
Axis:	the alliance of Japan, Italy, and Germany which fought the Allies in World War II.
Automation:	control of machines or of sets or systems of machines by other machines instead of directly by human operators.
Backcountry:	a sparsely inhabited rural region of the Appalachian Mountains.
Battle:	fight between organized and armed forces.
Benefit:	payments made available in accordance with a wage agreement, insurance contract, or public assistance program.
Berliner:	one who lives in Berlin, Germany.
Bering strait:	waterway between Asia and North America that

	was part of the migration route of the first Americans.
Bicameral:	composed of two legislative chambers or branches.
Bill of Rights:	the first ten amendments to the Constitution, which guarantee the rights of individuals.
Blacklist:	a list of known union members which is used by anti-union businesses to prevent employment of such persons.
Bloc:	a unified group of people or nations.
Boat people:	people one who fled their countries by boats.
Bonanza farmer:	the most successful farmers on the frontier. The most remarkable bonanza farmers were in North and South Dakota.
Booker T. Washington:	leading Negro spokesman from 1890-1915, advocated black self-help through vocational training, farm and home ownership, and development of small businesses.
Booklet:	a small bound book or pamphlet, usually with paper cover.
"Boss" Tweed:	the person who controlled New York City Government in the 1860's and 1870's.
Boundary:	something that indicates a border or limit.
Boycott:	a refusal to buy certain goods or products; refusal to buy from a certain source.
Breadline:	People who were waiting for aid during the depression.
Cabinet:	a body of persons appointed by a chief of state or a prime minister to head the executive departments of the government.
Candidate:	a person who seeks or is nominated for an office, prize, or honor.
Capital:	a town or city that is the official seat of government in a state or nation.
Caribbean Islands:	the islands in the sea of Central America

	outside Florida.
Carpetbagger:	a Northerner who went South after the Civil War for political or financial advantage.
Cash crop:	a crop grown to be sold rather than used by the farmer.
Centralism:	the assignment of power and authority to a central leadership in an organization or in a political system.
Charter:	a contract to start a colony in America.
Cheap money:	increase of currency in circulation to cheapen the dollar.
Chief:	one who is highest in rank in an Indian tribe.
Chief justice:	the presiding judge of a high court having several judges, especially the United States Supreme Court.
Civil service:	public jobs in federal, state, and local governments awarded on the basis of merit.
Civil War:	internal war, war between people in the same country. The war between the North and the South of the United States of America from 1861 to 1865.
Cold war:	the struggle between the United States and the Soviet Union which followed the end of World War II. It was carried on largely by means of propaganda and political and economic pressures - without outright warfare.
Colony:	a settlement or territory created by a group of people who have left their native land, but who continue to live under the control of their mother country.
Concentration camp:	a camp in which political opponents or minorities may be held prisoners or killed.
Confederate States of America:	organization of those states which seceded from the Union in 1861.
Congressman:	a member of the United States Congress, especially of the House of Representatives.

Constitution:	the system of fundamental laws and principles that prescribed the nature, functions, and limits of a government.
Compromise:	a settlement of a dispute, reached by each party giving up part of its demands.
Computer:	electronic device which stores information on disks or magnetic tapes, analyses it, and produces information as required from the data on the tapes.
Commander:	one who commands or directs.
Crop-lien farmer:	a farmer who borrowed money from merchants and landowners to buy lands, tools, and supplies. At harvest time they had to pay off these loans with most of their crops.
Country	the area outside a city.
County:	unit of local government in the South. The Middle colonies used both town and country local government.
Court:	place where people are judged to have done wrong or not.
Cotton Gin:	a machine that separates the seeds, seed hulls, and other small objects from the fibers of cotton.
Crisis:	a crucial or decisive point or situation, a turning point.
Custom:	the way something is usually done by a person or group of people.
Dawes Act of 1887:	the act law provided that each head of an Indian family could claim 160 acres of reservation land as his own.
Decision:	the act of making up one's mind.
Declaration of Independence:	the document which declared the thirteeen colonies free and independent.
Defense:	the act of protection from danger, attack, or harm.

Delay:	to postpone until a later time.
Delegate:	a person authorized to act as a representative for another.
Demarcation line:	a line to mark the boundaries.
Descendant:	an offspring child, grand child, or greatgrand child.
Deterioration:	making or becoming of less value, or worse in quality.
Discrimination:	making a distinction in favor of or against a particular group of people.
Dominant culture:	habits and ways of doing things that are accepted by the majority of people.
Elect:	to choose by a vote.
Electoral college:	a body of electors chosen to elect the President and Vice President of the United States.
Emancipation Proclamation:	Lincoln's order that slaves in rebellious states be freed; it did not free slaves in the border states.
Empire:	a group of countries and territories united under one rule.
Enclosure movement:	the change over from small farms to sheep raising.
Environment:	the circumstances or conditions that surrounded one area.
Equality:	the state or quality of being equal.
Excess:	the state of exceeding what is normal or sufficient.
Executive Department:	the branch of government that carries out the laws.
Expedition:	a journey undertaken by an organized group of people with a definite objective.

Explorer:	a person who travels into a country for the purpose of learning about it.
Export:	an article sent out of one country for sale in another country.
Facist:	having to do with a political system in which a strong central government controls all parts of life in a nation; a person who supports such a system.
Factory:	a buiding or group of buildings in which goods are manufactured.
Federalism:	the doctrine or system of federal government.
Federalist:	political party that believed the central government should be powerful.
Fertile:	Rich in material needed to sustain plant growth.
First Americans:	the people who probably came from Asia many thousands of years ago across what is now the Bering Strait off Alaska; ancestors of the American Indians.
Forces:	Army, Navy, or Air Force.
Fort Sumter:	a fort located in the harbor of Charleston, South Carolina. It was the site of the opening battle of the Civil War.
Free economy:	economy based on free enterprise and use of paid labor.
Frontier:	the unsettled wilderness land just beyond the settled area.
Fund:	a sum of money or other resources set aside for a specific purpose.
Frontiersman:	one who lived in the western edge of the settled territory.
genocide:	the systematic, planned annihilation of a racial, political, or cultural group.
Ghost town:	a town that was left behind by the miners after they moved to another place to look for gold or precious ore.

Gold rush:	the large movement of miners into California, Colorado, and Arizona in the 1850's, 1860's, and 1870's following the discovery of gold in these areas.
Good Neighbor Policy:	the popular term given to the Latin American policy of the early administration of Franklin D. Roosevelt. The United States began, in the early 1930's, to promote better relations with Latin American nations.
Governor:	person who is in charge of the affairs of a state.
Grant:	land or money given by a government, an organization, or a private person.
Harpers Ferry:	site of an attack on a federal arsenal in Virginia.
Harriet Beecher Stowe:	author of Uncle Tom's Cabin.
Hmong:	minority group who lived in the mountainous areas of Laos in South East Asia.
Home rule:	the right of local communities to form their own type of government.
ICC:	a commission established by Congress in 1877 to regulate railroads and to prevent them from engaging in unfair practices.
Ideology:	the body of ideas reflecting the social needs and aspirations of an individual, group, class, or culture.
Impeach:	to charge a government official with misbehavior in office. The method for removing federal officers was provided for in Article I of the Constitution.
Indentured servants:	people who signed a contract which stipulated that in return for transportation to America they would work without wages for periods of time ranging from two to seven years.
Indian reservation:	tract of land set aside for Indian tribe.

Infiltration:	the act or process of passing or entering a country.
Inflation:	the time during which the prices of goods rise quickly.
Injunction:	a court order requiring a party to do or to stop doing certain acts.
Immigrant:	a person born in one nation who enters another nation to become a permanent resident.
Impressment:	a British practice, exercised before the war 1812, of taking men from American ships and forcing them to serve in the British Navy.
Indigo:	a blue dye obtained from indigo or other plants or produced synthetically.
Individual:	relating to a single human being; by or for one person.
Insurance:	the coverage by a contract binding a party to indemnify another against specified loss in return for premiums paid.
Insurgent:	a person rising in revolt against civil authority or government in power.
Interchangeable:	duplicates of the same part of a manufactured article.
Invade:	to enter by force in order to conquer.
Invention:	the act or process of producing something previously unknown by the use of immagination.
Jane Addams:	opened the Hull House in the Chicago slums in 1889.
Jew:	a descendant of the Hebrew people.
John Dewey:	education pioneer who stressed the idea that education is not something apart from the rest of life but an essential part of life itself.
John Smith:	leader of the Jamestown settlement.
Joint Stock Company:	one kind of business in which investments, risks, and profits were shared.

Judges:	public officers who hear and decide cases in courts of law.
Judical department:	the branch of government that interprets and applies the laws through a system of courts.
Jury:	a body of persons sworn to judge and give a verdict on a given matter.
Knights of The White Camelia:	a secret organization of white Southerners formed to strike against scalawags, carpetbaggers, and politically ambitious negroes.
Ku Klux Klan:	a secret society formed in the South during the Reconstruction, which terrorized blacks in order to prevent them from exercising their civil rights.
Labor Union:	an organization of workers formed to bargain with employers for better wages, benefits, and working conditions.
Law:	a rule that a group of people agrees to follow.
League:	a group of nations, states, or associations.
League of Nations:	the first general international organization created to preserve peace and security and to promote cooperation among nations in economic and social fields. The League was created by the victorious powers of world war I in 1919 under the leadership of President Woodrow Wilson, but the United States did not join.
Legislative Department:	The branch of government that makes the laws. In the Federal Government Congress makes up the legislative department.
Legitimate:	in compliance with the law, lawful.
Level-off:	to move toward stability or consistency.
Liquor:	an alcoholic beverage made by distillation rather than by fermentation.

Local government:	government of a community by its own members.
Lockout:	the refusal of an employer to give jobs to workers. It was used to destroy or cripple union organizations.
Long Drive:	a term used to refer to the driving of cattle from Texas to railroads in Kansas and Nebraska in the years after the Civil War.
Loom:	a machine from which cloth is produced.
Louisiana Purchase:	the purchase by the United States from France in 1803 of an area lying between the Mississippi River and the Rocky Mountains and between Canada and the Gulf of Mexico.
Mainstream:	a prevaling current or direction of a movement or influence.
Majority:	a number more than half of the total number of a given group.
Mansion:	a big, beautiful house.
Marshall Plan:	the popular name for the European Recovery Program, an American aid program which helped Europe recover from the effects of World War II.
Mass production:	the making of large number of goods by use of machinery.
Master:	a person having control over the action of another or others.
Melting pot:	the mixing and mingling of cultures to create a new one.
Mexican Cession:	the western lands, including the territories of California and New Mexico, ceded to the United States by Mexico as a result of the Mexican War.
Minority:	a racial, religious, political, national, or another group regarded as different from the large group of which it is part.

Missile:	an object or weapon that is fired, thrown, or otherwise projected at a target.
Monopoly:	control of an industry or the supply of an item by one group or company; a group that has such control.
Multinational Force:	the armies made up of forces of different nationalities.
Nationalism:	the feeling of pride and loyalty that a person has toward his/her nation.
The National Labor Union (NLU):	the first large nationwide labor union. Founded in 1866, the goal of the NLU was the eight-hour working day.
Naturalization:	the process of becoming a citizen.
Navigation:	travel or traffic by vessels.
Navigator:	sailor with skill and experience who guides the ship.
Neutrality:	a policy of favoring neither one side nor the other in a dispute, conflict, or war.
New England Colonies:	Maine, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, and New Hamsphire.
Nisei:	Japanese second-generation.
Nullify:	to make worthless. In law, the act by which a state sets aside a federal law and prevents its enforcement within its boundaries.
Patent:	legal right of an inventor to the exclusive ownership of the invention.
Patriot:	a person who loves, supports, and defends his country.
Perfume:	a volatile liquid distilled from flowers.
Permanent:	lasting or intended to last for a long time.

Plantation:	a huge spread of land worked by laborers who live on the estate. A plantation usually produces one main crop.
Pocahontas:	Indian princess who saved the life of John Smith.
Political machine:	group, headed by a boss, that runs city government.
Pollution:	the contamination of soil, water, or the atmosphere by the discharge of harmful substances.
Poll tax:	a tax required to be paid before a person could vote; now illegal.
Post-war era:	the time after the Second-World War.
Powhatan:	chief of a tribe that lived fairly peaceful with the Jamestown settlers.
Pragmatism:	the doctrine that defines truth as anything that works or produces good results.
Precedent:	an act or instance that may be used as an example in dealing with subsequent similar cases.
Prevent:	to keep from happening.
Prince Henry:	The King of Portugal; his efforts ushered in the Age of Exploration.
Prohibition:	the period when liquor was not made or sold in the United States.
Problem:	something to be worked out or solved.
Progressive:	a group of reformers active in the period between 1890 and World War I. They attacked mostly the evils of industrialization.
Progressive movement:	new reform movement, offspring of populist movement, underway by 1900.
Property:	a possession, ownership.
Purchase:	to obtain in exchange for money.

Pursuit:	going after in order to catch up with.
Oil spill:	an overflowing of oil into an ocean or other body of water.
Open-door policy:	a policy first suggested by the U.S. in 1899, which declared that all nations should have equal trading rights in China.
Opposition party:	a political party or organized group opposed to the group, party, or government in power.
Outer-space:	any region or space beyond limits determined with reference to the boundaries of a celestial body or system.
Queen Liliuokalani:	Queen of Hawaii overthrown in a revolution.
Quota:	an assigned number of immigrants from a specific country.
Quota system:	a method of limiting immigration which allows only a certain number of people from each foreign nation to enter the U.S. each year.
Recession:	the time in which business is slow.
Reconstruction:	the period following the Civil War during which the government of the former Confederate States was reorganized and readmitted to the Union.
Radical Republicans:	a group in Congress which wanted to deal harshly with the defeated South after the Civil War.
Red Scare:	fear of foreign influence prevalent around 1919-1920.
Religious freedom:	the right to worship in one's own way.
Reparation:	money paid or agreed to be paid for war damages by a defeated nation to the victorious nation.
Research:	scholarly or scientific investigation or inquiry.

Revolution:	a sudden political overthrow or seizure of power brought about from within a given system.
Robert E. Lee:	the Virginia general who refused command of Union forces and became a Confederate general.
Royal colony:	a colony ruled by a king and his ministers.
Rural:	related to the country or to an agricultural area which is thinly populated.
Ranch:	an extensive farm, especially in the Western region, on which large herds of cattle, sheep, or horses are raised.
Reformer:	one who wants to improve conditions.
Rio Grande:	the river in the South of Texas that marks the boundary between the U.S. and Mexico.
Ratify:	to approve or accept.
Rebel:	to refuse allegiance to and oppose by force an established government or ruling authority.
Raw material:	unprocessed natural products used in manufacture.
Reciprocal Agreement Act:	or Reciprocal Trade Agreement Act of 1934: A broad tariff program under which the President negotiates trade agreements with foreign countries that provide for mutual reductions in tariff rates.
Revolt:	to attempt to overthrow the authority of the state; rebel.
Rebate:	returning to the buyer some of the money paid for goods or services.
Relocation centers:	camps in which Japanese Americans were placed in World War II.
Representative:	a person who was chosen to speak for other people.
Runaway:	a person who runs away as a fugitive.
Sailor:	one that serves in a navy or works on a ship.

Scalawag:	a Southern white who supported and cooperated with the Reconstruction government; generally, it was for personal gains.
Scandal:	an act or circumstance that brings about disgrace or offends the morality of the social community.
Seaway:	the way of the ship through the sea.
Secede:	to withdraw formally from membership in an organization, association, or alliance.
Security Council:	the executive agency of the United Nations which has responsibility for keeping international peace.
Sectionalism:	excessive devotion to local interests and customs.
Segregate:	to separate or isolate from others or from a main body or group.
Selective Service Act:	this law provided for registration of men between 18 and 45.
Senator:	a member of a senate.
Separation of church and state:	no official state church, no taxes to support any one church, but all churches guaranteed freedom.
Servant:	one who is privately employed to perform domestic services.
Settler:	a person that lives in a new region.
Settlement House:	recreational and educational center in poor section of a city.
Sewage-disposal system:	the system in which the carrying off of waste matter in special drains and pipes occurs.
Share-crop farmer:	a farmer who pays his landlord with a part of his crop. Many blacks and poor whites became

	share-crop farmers in the South following the Civil War.
Sherman's "March to the Sea":	General Sherman's campaign to split the South into two parts by marching from Chattonooga, Tennessee, to Savanah, Georgia.
Sit-in:	a form of protest demonstration. In the sit ins of the 1960's, black Americans occupied seats preveously thought to be off limits to members of minority groups.
Slavs:	a people widely spread over Central, Eastern, and Southern Europe.
Slave-economy:	economy based on the use of slaves as the major labor force. Slave economy developed on the cotton plantations in the South prior to the Civil War.
Slave codes:	special laws dealing with blacks.
Slums:	thicky populated areas of a city inhabited by the poorest people.
St. Augustine:	oldest city in the United States.
Standard Oil Company:	the first and biggest oil company at the end of the 19th century. John D. Rockefeller was the founder of this company.
State religion:	government-sanctioned church, supported by taxes.
States' rights:	the theory that a state could decide which federal laws would be obeyed within its own borders.
Strict:	kept within narrow and specific limits.
Strike:	a refusal to work by an organized labor group.
Sweatshop:	a factory or businesss in which employees had bad working conditions and low wages.
Sphere of influence:	a territorial area over which political or economic influence is wielded by one nation.

Spices:	any kind of aromatic substance used to flavor foods.
Spoil system:	a phrase applied to the practice of removing public office holders of the defeated party and replacing them with faithful members of the victorious party.
Spy:	a clandestine agent employed by a state to obtain intelligence relating to its eventual or actual enemies at home or abroad.
Suffrage:	the right to vote.
Superior:	higher in rank, or authority.
Superpower:	a powerful and influential nation, especially one that dominates its satellites and allies in an international bloc.
Supremacy:	the condition or quality of being supreme or highest.
Supremacy clause:	portion of the Constitution that states it is the primary law of the land.
Supreme Court:	the highest federal court in the United States, consisting of nine justices and having jurisdiction over all other courts in the nation.
Surge:	to increase suddenly.
Surname:	a person's family name as distinguished from his given name.
Tariff:	tax levied on imports to help protect a nation's industry, business, labor, and agriculture from foreign competition, or to raise revenue. Tariffs have been used by the United States since 1789 as the principal means of protecting domestic producers from foreign competition.
Taxes:	money paid by people to run the government.
Tenant farmer:	a farmer who rented the land which he cultivated.
Tidewater:	low coastland along the Atlantic Ocean that drained by tidal streams.

Trade:	the business of buying and selling commodities; commerce.
Transcontinental:	extending across a continent.
Trapper:	one whose occupation is trapping animals for their furs.
Trench warfare:	fighting along the 600 miles line of German and Allied trenches in which neither side broke through the other's line.
Treasury:	a place where treasure is kept or stored.
Treaty:	a formal agreement between two or more states.
Triple Alliance or Central Powers:	Germany, Austria-Hungary, and their allies.
Triple Entente or Allied Powers:	Russia, France, Great Britain, and their allies.
Turning point:	point in time which is critical.
Tutor:	a private teacher.
Tweed Ring:	"Boss" Tweed and his friends who gained control of the city government and filled their pockets with graft.
Underground Railroad:	A system which helped runaway slaves escape from the South into the North or into Canada.
United Nations:	a world organization established in 1945 for the purpose of maintaining international peace.
Unskilled Worker:	one whose job requires little or no training and the use of only the simplest tools.
Ultimatum:	a final proposition or demand, especially by a party in a conflict.
U.S. Steel Corporation:	the first steel company in the U.S. which applied the Bessemer method to produce steel from iron. The founder was Andrew Carnegie.

Urbanization:	the change in emphasis from country to city.
Utopia:	described and ideal society supposedly located on an island off the American coast.
V-E. Day:	May 8, 1945, the day Germany surrendered in World War II.
Vertical organization:	a plan by which a company controls everything needed for its operation.
Village:	a small group of houses in a rural area.
Vocational school:	a school where job skills were taught.
Voyage:	a long trip to a foreign country.
Welfare capitalism:	an arrangement by which an employer provided benefits, such as paid vacations, health care, and so on.
Whisky ring:	a group of distillers and black-mailers who defrauded the government.
Yarn:	a continous strand of twisted threads of natural or synthetic material such as wool or nylon, used in weaving or knitting.
The Yellow-Dog Contract:	an agreement between employer and employee in which the worker states that he will not join a union.